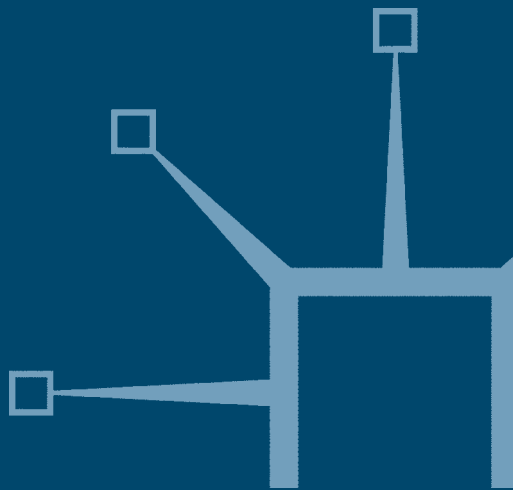


palgrave  
macmillan

# A Chronology of the Byzantine Empire

---

Edited by  
Timothy Venning



# A Chronology of the Byzantine Empire

*Also by Timothy Venning*

CROMWELLIAN FOREIGN POLICY

*Also by Jonathan Harris*

GREEK ÉMIGRÉS IN THE WEST, 1400–1520

BYZANTIUM AND THE CRUSADES

PALGRAVE ADVANCES IN BYZANTINE HISTORY (*editor*)

# A Chronology of the Byzantine Empire

Edited by

Timothy Venning

With an introduction by

Jonathan Harris



Chronology © Timothy Venning 2006  
Introduction © Jonathan Harris 2006

All rights reserved. No reproduction, copy or transmission of this publication may be made without written permission.

No paragraph of this publication may be reproduced, copied or transmitted save with written permission or in accordance with the provisions of the Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988, or under the terms of any licence permitting limited copying issued by the Copyright Licensing Agency, 90 Tottenham Court Road, London W1T 4LP.

Any person who does any unauthorised act in relation to this publication may be liable to criminal prosecution and civil claims for damages.

The authors have asserted their rights to be identified as the authors of this work in accordance with the Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988.

First published 2006 by  
PALGRAVE MACMILLAN  
Houndmills, Basingstoke, Hampshire RG21 6XS and  
175 Fifth Avenue, New York, N.Y. 10010  
Companies and representatives throughout the world

PALGRAVE MACMILLAN is the global academic imprint of the Palgrave Macmillan division of St. Martin's Press, LLC and of Palgrave Macmillan Ltd. Macmillan® is a registered trademark in the United States, United Kingdom and other countries. Palgrave is a registered trademark in the European Union and other countries.

ISBN-13: 978-1-4039-1774-4 hardback  
ISBN-10: 1-4039-1774-4 hardback

This book is printed on paper suitable for recycling and made from fully managed and sustained forest sources.

A catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library.

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

A chronology of the Byzantine Empire / edited by Timothy Venning; with an introduction by Jonathan Harris.

p. cm.

Includes bibliographical references and index.

ISBN 1-4039-1774-4 (cloth)

1. Byzantine Empire—History—Chronology. I. Venning, Timothy.

DF552.C55 2005

949.5'02'02—dc22

2004065799

10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1  
15 14 13 12 11 10 09 08 07 06

Printed and bound in Great Britain by  
Antony Rowe Ltd, Chippenham and Eastbourne

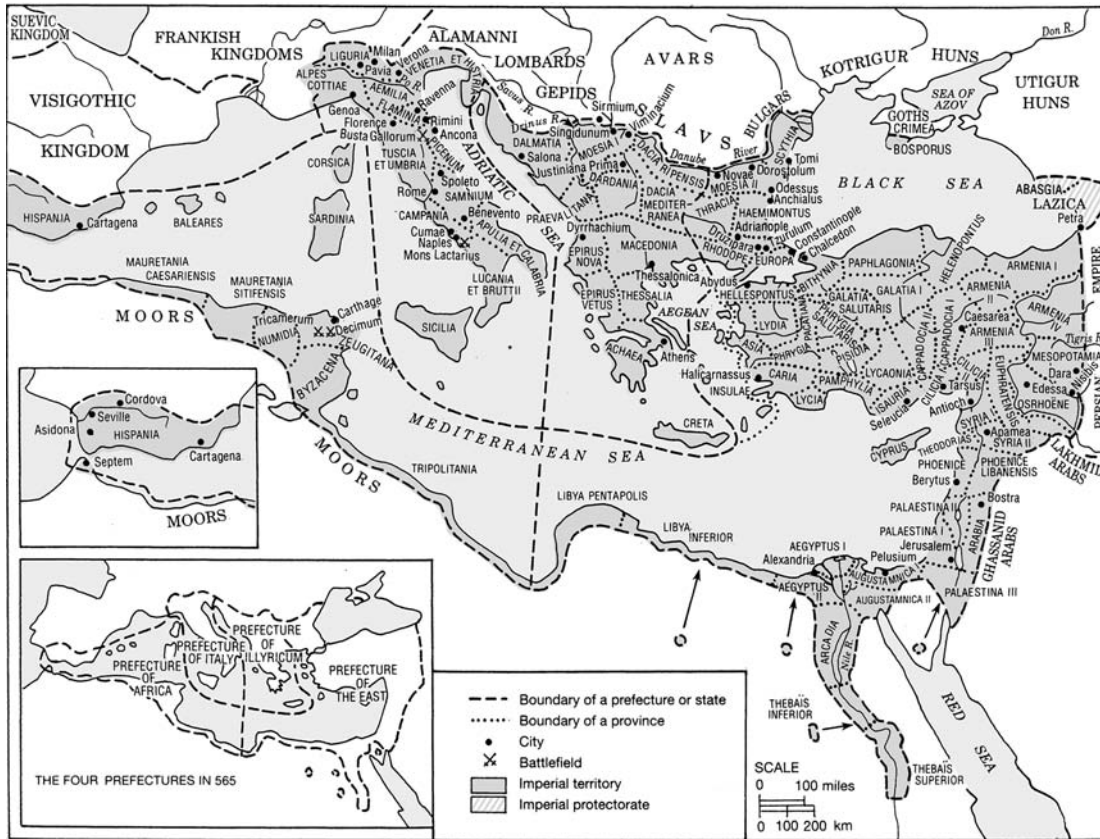
# Contents

<i>Acknowledgements</i>	vi
<i>Maps</i>	
1 The Eastern Roman Empire, c. 565	vii
2 The Empire, c. 780	viii
3 The Empire, c. 1025	ix
4 The Empire, c. 1143	x
5 The Empire, c. 1282	xi
6 The Empire, c. 1350	xii
<i>Introduction</i>	xiii
Jonathan Harris	
Chronology	1
Part I Prelude to Creation of Empire c. 274–328	3
Part II From Formal Dedication of Constantinople 330–476	9
Part III 477–609	75
Part IV 610–867	145
Part V 868–1066	269
Part VI 1067–1204	393
Part VII 1205–1261	551
Part VIII 1262–1502	599
<i>Sovereigns of the Byzantine World</i>	737
<i>Glossary</i>	749
<i>Index</i>	752

# Acknowledgements

My thanks are due to the editorial staff at Palgrave Macmillan, in particular to Luciana O'Flaherty for supporting this long-term project of mine and to Ann Marangos for her sterling work on editing and the index. I would also like to pay tribute to the inspirational teaching of my lecturers at King's College London in the late 1970s, my notes from whose course formed the original kernel of this book – particularly Julian Chrysostomides, Averil Cameron, and the late Donald Nicol.

TIMOTHY VENNING  
LYMINGTON 2005



Map 1 The Eastern Roman Empire, c. 565

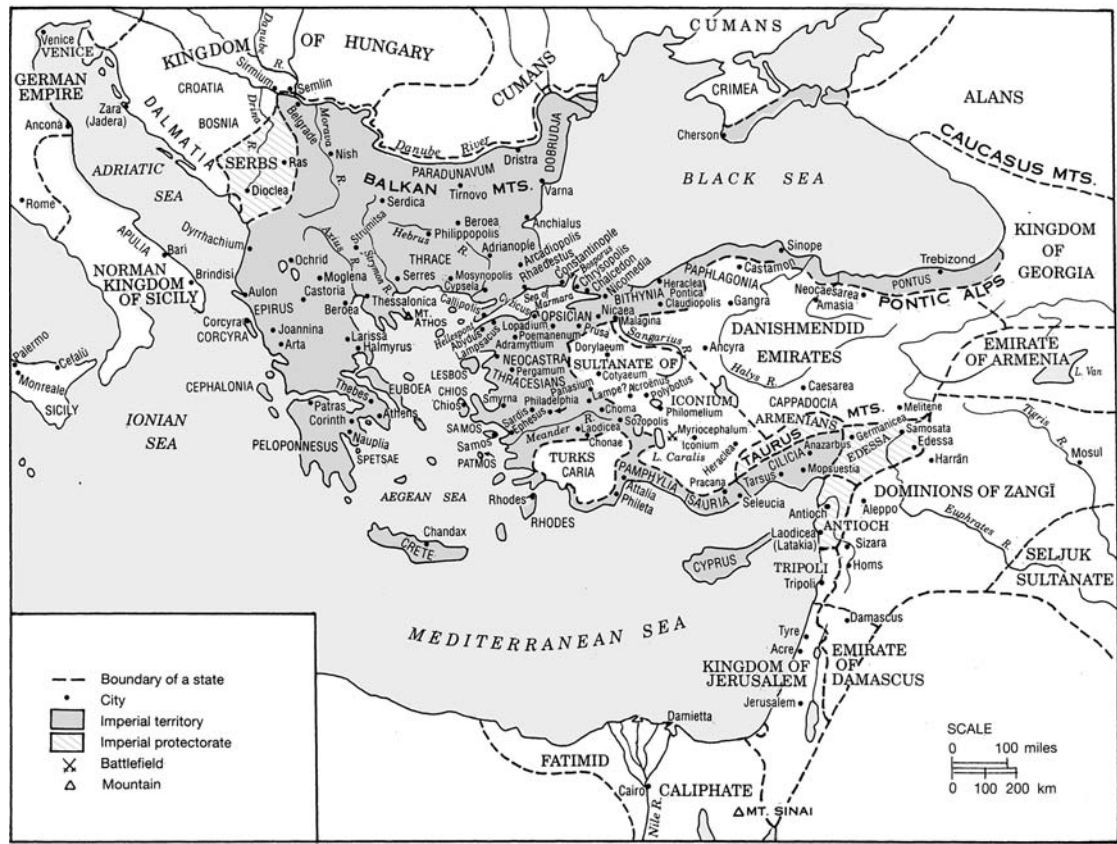




Map 2 The Empire, c. 780



Map 3 The Empire, c. 1025



Map 4 The Empire, c. 1143



Map 5 The Empire, c. 1282



Map 6 The Empire, c. 1350. Page 359, from *The Oxford Dictionary of Byzantium*, 3 vol. set, ed. Alexander P. Kazhdan, © 1991 by Dumbarton Oaks, Trustees for Harvard University, Washington, DC. Used by permission of Oxford University Press, Inc.

# Introduction

*Jonathan Harris*

The Byzantines were as aware as any of us of the passing of the years. The historian and princess, Anna Komnene (1083–c.1149), lamented that ‘the stream of time, irresistible, ever-moving, carries off and bears away all things that come to birth and plunges them into utter darkness’. They also understood the need to record and analyse the past. ‘The science of History’, Komnene went on, ‘is a great bulwark against this stream of Time: in a way it checks this irresistible flood, it holds in a tight grasp whatever it can seize floating on the surface and will not allow it to slip away into the depths of Oblivion’.<sup>1</sup>

Yet in spite of that realisation the Byzantine empire, or Byzantium as it is also known, is an era of human history that has come very close to oblivion. Unlike the countries of Medieval western Europe which were able gradually to evolve into the societies we know today, Byzantium was violently overthrown and submerged under an alien culture during the fifteenth century, following the capture of its capital city, Constantinople, by the Ottoman Turks on 29 May 1453. As a result, many of the physical monuments of the Byzantine period have disappeared without trace. Although the great cathedral of the Holy Wisdom or Hagia Sophia still stands in Istanbul, the modern name for Constantinople, many of its other great churches, monasteries and palaces no longer exist. Moreover, while historians of western European can examine well-preserved documents produced by medieval courts and governments in collections such as the Venetian State Archives, the Archives Nationales in Paris, and the National Archives in London, almost nothing of this nature has survived from Byzantium. There can be no doubt that such documentation was produced and carefully preserved by the Byzantine court. Judicial records, for example, were kept in daily registers which were then stored in vaults beneath the seating area of the Hippodrome in Constantinople.<sup>2</sup> None of these documents has survived to the present day, leaving a huge gap in our understanding of the workings of Byzantine society.

In the centuries that followed the fall of Constantinople, the memory of Byzantium suffered a second blow. When western Europeans became interested in studying the literature and preserved the surviving artefacts of ancient Greece and Rome, that enthusiasm and curiosity did not extend to the society that had continued the literary traditions of the one and the political institutions of the other. Throughout the eighteenth and for much of the nineteenth centuries, Byzantium was almost universally written off as a dark and obscurantist theocracy, given over, as Jean-Jacques Rousseau (1712–78) declared, to ‘the most shameful debauchery and corruption, the blackest betrayals, murders and poisonings’.<sup>3</sup> Only in the later nineteenth century

did attitudes change and the systematic study of Byzantium begin. Even today, Byzantium remains, for most people, a rather mysterious and obscure period of a very remote past.

In their attempts to piece together the history of the Byzantine empire, scholars have encountered two difficulties both of which are connected with the measurement of time. The first was establishing the chronological parameters of Byzantine history. There was not too much difficulty deciding when it was that the Byzantine empire came to a close. The fall of Constantinople in 1453 brought the long succession of Byzantine emperors to an abrupt end, although one could continue to 15 August 1461 when Trebizond, the last independent Byzantine territory, surrendered to the Ottomans. Much more problematic has been deciding when it was that Byzantine history can be said to have begun.

As far as the Byzantines themselves were concerned their empire had been inaugurated by the emperor Augustus following his victory over Mark Anthony and Cleopatra at the Battle of Actium in 31 BC. They referred to themselves as 'Romans' and their empire as the Roman empire. After all, a direct line of succession could be traced from Augustus to the last emperor who died defending the walls of Constantinople in 1453. From a more recent perspective, however, that was hardly satisfactory. It was only too clear that Byzantium was a body politic which was very different from the empire of Augustus. It was Christian in religion. Its capital city was Constantinople rather than Rome. Its language was Greek rather than Latin, and for most of its history it dominated a far smaller territory than that of the Roman empire at its height. To denote the difference German scholars of the nineteenth century coined the terms 'Byzantine empire' and 'Byzantium'. Not everyone agreed with the new terminology. The English Byzantinist, J.B. Bury (1861–1927), insisted to the end in referring to the 'East Roman Empire'.<sup>4</sup> In general, however, the words stuck.

Yet if most scholars had now reached an agreement on a name for the empire, the problem remained of when it had begun, or rather when one could cease to speak of a Roman empire and start to discuss a Byzantine one. Several possible starting points have been proposed. One is the accession of Diocletian (284–305), since this emperor began to implement some of the reforms which characterise the change from a Roman to a Byzantine world. Others are the death of Theodosius I in 395, the fall of the western half of Roman empire in 476, the reign of Justinian (527–65), or that of Heraclius (610–41).

The most convincing dates, however, are those associated with the Emperor Constantine I or the Great. Born in what is now Nish in Serbia, Constantine was proclaimed emperor at York, in the Roman province of Britain in July 306, following the death of his father, the Emperor Constantius. More than any other individual, Constantine was responsible for the changes which marked the shift from Rome to Byzantium.

The first of these changes was the Christianisation of the empire. In 312, on the eve of a battle against a rival for the imperial throne, Constantine had some kind of

vision which convinced him that the God of the Christians was promising him victory over his enemy. The next day, at the Battle of the Milvian Bridge just outside Rome, Constantine won a famous victory and he was quick to pay his debt. Not only did he proclaim toleration for the Christian church, which in the past had been subject to sporadic persecution, but he also took to subsidising it from public funds. Constantine's personal conversion to Christianity seems to have been slow and tentative, but there can be no doubt that he was a Christian by the end of his life, when he received baptism on his death bed. Thereafter all the emperors, with the exception of Julian (361–63), were Christians and by the end of the fifth century Christianity was the official religion of the empire.

The second development associated with Constantine was the inauguration of a new capital. For some time, the Roman emperors had been having great difficulty in defending their frontiers from incursions by Germanic tribes across the Rhine and Danube and by the Persians into Syria. They had therefore largely abandoned Rome as a base, since it was much too far from the scene of the action. Instead the emperors tended to reside at Milan, Ravenna or even Trier in the western half of the empire, and at Antioch or Nikomedia in the East. Constantine, however, decided to adopt a new base and his choice fell on the city of Byzantium. The place had certain very clear advantages: it stood at the bridge between Europe and Asia, on a narrow and easily defensible promontory. On its north side lay the Golden Horn, one of the finest natural harbours in the world. It was relatively well placed for reaching both the Danube and eastern frontiers. In 324 Constantine resolved to found a completely new city on the site. This he inaugurated in a solemn ceremony in 330 and remained in his own honour, calling it Constantinople, the city of Constantine.

It therefore seems logical to begin Byzantine history with Constantine, either with his proclamation as emperor in York in 306, his victory at the Milvian Bridge in 312 or his inauguration of Constantinople in 330, though it always has to be remembered that the developments of Constantine's reign had begun earlier, under Diocletian.

Consequently Byzantine history, as we understand it, covers a very long period, of over a thousand years. It has become customary to divide this long span into three. The first period runs from about 330 to about 610 and is often referred to as 'Late Antique', 'early Byzantine' or 'Late Roman', since it was a time of transition. Following Constantine's reforms, the empire enjoyed a period of stability until the defeat of the emperor Valens by the Goths at Adrianople in 378. Thereafter the frontiers came under increasing pressure, culminating in the end of imperial rule over the western half of the empire, including Gaul, Spain and Britain, by 476. In the following century an attempt by Justinian I to reconquer the western empire enjoyed some success but left the treasury exhausted. By 600, the empire was once more in crisis as its frontiers gave way to Avar and Slav invasions in the Balkans and Persian attacks in Syria.

The years 610 to 1204 are often said to constitute the 'middle period' of Byzantine history. From this time on, Greek completely replaced Latin as the language of the empire. Under Heraclius (610–41) the situation was briefly restored but from 636



onwards the Arabs conquered the Byzantine eastern provinces of Syria, Palestine and Egypt to form the new Islamic caliphate. By 678, Constantinople itself was under Arab siege and it looked likely that the empire would be overrun. It survived, however, and it also weathered a grave internal crisis over Iconoclasm, the attempt by some emperors to ban the veneration of pictures or icons of Christ and the saints. By the mid-tenth century, the empire had recovered and was starting to reconquer some of its lost territory from the Arabs. The defeat of the Byzantines by the Seljuk Turks at Manzikert in 1071 threw them onto the defensive once more and the attempt by Alexios I Komnenos (1081–1118) to enlist western help against the Turks helped to precipitate the First Crusade in 1099. The Byzantines had an uneasy relationship with these expeditions launched by their fellow Christians to recapture Jerusalem and that tension came to a head in April 1204 when the army of the Fourth Crusade captured and sacked Constantinople.

Finally the period 1204 to 1453 is regarded as 'Late Byzantine'. The Byzantine emperor, Michael VIII Palaiologos (1259–82), recovered Constantinople from the crusaders in 1261 and reconstituted a rather smaller version of the empire. Unfortunately, the restored Byzantine empire proved incapable of defending its eastern frontier. By 1354 the Turks had conquered the whole of Asia Minor (what is now Turkey) and had crossed to Europe. Under the leadership of the Ottomans, they embarked on the conquest of the Balkans, laying the foundations of the Ottoman empire. The last century of the empire's existence was taken up with desperate efforts by the emperors to hold off the Turks in the hope that help would be sent by the Christians of western Europe. These efforts ultimately proved unavailing and Constantinople was finally taken by the Ottoman Sultan, Mehmed II (1451–81), in 1453.

That, broadly speaking, set the chronological parameters of Byzantine history. There remains the second difficulty encountered by scholars when they embarked on their systematic study of Byzantium: the establishment of an exact sequence of events and dates within that long period. There were abundant sources of information from which a chronology could be extracted. Although most archival documentation from Byzantium has been lost, there was a flourishing tradition of historiography, written in Greek, within the empire and many such works have survived until the present day. They range from major literary histories, such as Anna Komnene's *Alexiad*, to short family chronicles which individuals would write in the margins of manuscripts or anywhere else where there was space. These histories and chronicles are our major sources of information about Byzantine society and history.

When it comes to dates, the chronicles are by far the most important source. First and foremost of them was that compiled by Eusebius (c.260–339), bishop of Caesarea in Palestine and an older contemporary of Constantine the Great. First published in the 280s, the chronicle was revised in about 326 so that it began with the Old Testament Patriarch Abraham and ended with the situation in the early fourth century AD. It enjoyed wide circulation, especially after it was continued up to 378 and translated into Latin by St Jerome (c.345–419),<sup>5</sup> and it provided a model for future

generations of chroniclers such as John Malalas and the anonymous author of the so-called *Paschal Chronicle*.<sup>6</sup> Two of the most influential of the Byzantine chroniclers were George Synkellos (died c.813) and his continuator, the monk Theophanes Confessor (c.760–818). Theophanes provided a carefully worked out chronological system, beginning each year with tables that gave the year since creation and the birth of Christ, the current year of the Byzantine emperor, and those of the Persian and Arab rulers, the Pope and the four patriarchs of Constantinople, Antioch, Alexandria and Jerusalem. This work has provided a basis for the chronology of the seventh and eighth centuries AD, a notoriously obscure period.<sup>7</sup> The chronicle tradition continued, with gaps, throughout the Byzantine era. For the later period we have a wealth of short chronicles and that compiled by the courtier, George Sphrantzes (1401–c.1478), who kept a record of the events of his lifetime, including the fall of Constantinople in 1453 which he personally witnessed.<sup>8</sup>

Literary histories differed from chronicles in that they were modelled on the more complex language and style that were to be found in the works of the ancient Greek historians, such as Herodotus and Thucydides. To take some famous examples, Anna Komnene's *Alexiad* covers the period 1078–1118 and especially the reign of her father, the Emperor Alexios I Komnenos. Procopius of Caesarea's *History of the Wars* describes the campaigns fought in the years 527 to 554 by Justinian I.<sup>9</sup> The *Chronographia* of the statesman and scholar Michael Psellos (c.1022–c.1080) recounts events in Constantinople from 976 to 1077 and the *History* of Niketas Choniates covers the years 1118 to 1207.<sup>10</sup> Laonikos Chalkokondyles, who was active in the 1480s wrote an account of the period 1300 to 1463, in a style reminiscent of Herodotus.<sup>11</sup> There are, of course, many others too numerous to mention here.

Given this wealth of historical writing, it might be thought that the establishment of a chronology of the Byzantine empire would be an easy task. In fact, the task has been a long and arduous one, involving intense scholarly debate. Part of the difficulty arises from the way in which the Byzantines themselves established chronology. As regards past years, we have become used to numbering them in accordance with a system worked out some 1500 years ago by a monk called Dionysius Exiguus. This system designated the birth of Christ as occurring in the year 1 and subsequent years were reckoned from that. This introduction is being written in 2004 'in the year of Our Lord' (*Anno Domini* or AD). Years prior to 1 AD are designated 'Before Christ' or BC, in English at least. Introduced into western Europe from the seventh century on, this system is now used throughout the world, although AD and BC are sometimes replaced with the less specifically Christian CE (Common Era) and BCE (Before the Common Era).<sup>12</sup>

The Byzantines did not use this system and had their own way reckoning past dates. Unfortunately, they did not have just one. In Late Antiquity, Byzantine chroniclers tended to use the dating systems which they had inherited from the Classical world. One was the Roman system of dating by Consulship, though this was fast going out of fashion as the appointment of consuls was by now very irregular and had long since lost any meaning.<sup>13</sup> Another form of dating inherited from

the Classical world was Olympiads. These were periods of four years between celebrations of the Olympic games beginning in 776 BC. Thus we are told by the sixth-century writer John Lydus, that the city of Byzantion was originally founded during the thirty-eighth Olympiad, which works out somewhere between 624 and 628 BC.<sup>14</sup>

Then there was dating by indiction, especially for events in the recent past. Indictions were cycles of fifteen years from 1 September, used to mark the official administrative year of the Roman state for tax purposes. They were referred to as First, Second, Third Indiction etc, up to Fifteenth, whereupon the cycle would begin again at the First Indiction. Unfortunately, although the years within any particular cycle were numbered, the cycles themselves were not, so that indictions are of little use in dating unless they were used in conjunction with some other system.<sup>15</sup> This was, in practice, what most early Byzantine chroniclers did. The author of the *Paschal Chronicle*, for example, dated an invasion by the Huns across the Danube to 'Olympiad 305, Indiction 10, consulship of Eudoxius and Dioscurus' which must be sometime in 442 AD.<sup>16</sup>

For the early Byzantines, however, Olympiads, consulships and other methods inherited from the past left a great deal to be desired. They had been developed in a pagan society to date secular events, whereas in the newly Christian empire what was wanted was a way of dating events of the Old Testament, especially the Creation, and the life of Christ, particularly the Incarnation. The first Byzantine chronicler, Eusebius, set out to rectify this deficiency by counting back from indications given in the Bible in order to reconcile events with Olympiads. Eusebius was motivated not by mere antiquarian curiosity, but had a polemical purpose of showing that Christianity was as ancient, and therefore as respectable, as other institutions of the Graeco-Roman world. His chronicle began with Abraham, and was written in parallel columns recording Hebrew, Greek, Roman events. People like the Greeks dropped out as they were conquered, so that by the time he reached his own day in the early fourth century, all history, Christian and pagan, had been incorporated into a single column.<sup>17</sup>

Largely thanks to the work of Eusebius, in the following centuries the Byzantines were able to adopt a more specifically Christian system for numbering the years, from the Creation of the world (*Annus Mundi* or AM).<sup>18</sup> Once again, unfortunately, in Late Antiquity and for part of the Middle Byzantine period, there was no agreement as to exactly when it was that Creation had taken place. In the later sixth century, John Malalas appears to have believed that it happened in around 5967 BC, though some manuscripts of his work have different dates.<sup>19</sup> The seventh-century *Paschal Chronicle* used 5509 BC.<sup>20</sup> George Synkellos reckoned it to have occurred in 5501 BC, while Theophanes Confessor used the year 5492 BC, the so-called Alexandrian era.<sup>21</sup> After the ninth century, however, the equivalent of 5508 BC was generally accepted. Thus George Sphrantzes, using this standard reckoning, recorded that John VIII Palaiologos (1425–48) set out for the Council of Florence in 6946 AM which we would call 1437 AD. Theophanes, using the

Alexandrian era, dated the beginning of Iconoclasm to 6218 AM which we would call 726 AD and not 710.<sup>22</sup>

When it came to months and days the Byzantines often used the same system as we do. As in the Medieval west, however, it was common in the Middle and Later periods to refer to a saint's day, rather than to a day of the month. Anna Komnene describes the arrest of a would-be assassin of Alexios I, Nikephoros Diogenes, 'on the evening on which honour is paid to the great martyr Theodore'. St Theodore Stratelates was allegedly a Roman general martyred for his faith and his feast falls on 9 February, though Komnene is probably referring to the evening of the day before the feast.<sup>23</sup> Another complication is that the Byzantines did not begin the year on 1 January, as has become standard in the modern world, but on 23 September before 462 AD and on 1 September thereafter. That means that Byzantine years do not correspond exactly with ours. Theophanes' 6262 AM is the equivalent of 1 September 769 to 31 August 770 AD. George Sphrantzes records that John VIII Palaiologos sent a peace-making mission to his two quarrelsome brothers in the Peloponnese 'in the year 6945'.<sup>24</sup> This would have to have happened, by our reckoning, sometime between 1 September 1436 and 31 August 1437.

The Byzantines then certainly had sophisticated dating systems, albeit rather diverse and inevitably subject to change over the centuries. Using the various dating systems in their writings to establish a chronology has presented a challenge to scholars but one which has generally been overcome by careful study. There are, however, other factors which create obstacles to a smooth chronology. One of them is that, inevitably, Byzantine historians often made mistakes and omissions. Theophanes is one year out in his reckoning of the years from 609/10 until 772/3, although this can be corrected from the indictions which he always gave.<sup>25</sup> Anna Komnene left a space to insert the year and indiction of the arrival of Peter the Hermit and the first wave of the First Crusade at Constantinople but apparently forgot to fill them in.<sup>26</sup> Different sources ascribe different dates to the same event. Niketas Choniates tells us that the clash between the forces of the regency and those of Maria the Porphyrogenita in the area around Hagia Sophia took place in May 1181. Another contemporary witness, Eustathios of Thessalonica, says that it happened in April.<sup>27</sup> Other events were not even mentioned, probably because they did not appear important at the time. Michael Psellos and others who wrote about events in the eleventh century completely failed to mention the ecclesiastical squabble of 1054 when three Roman legates excommunicated the patriarch of Constantinople. Finally, there were also periods when no one wrote history at all, such as the seventh and eighth centuries and the later fourteenth century. For these periods we often have to rely on later and possibly very inaccurate accounts.

Errors, gaps and omissions are not the only problems. In the literary histories, specific dates are often very hard to come by because their authors did not aim to give a year-by-year account of events but tended to take a more thematic approach to the past. Laonikos Chalkokondyles, for example, was not interested in establishing an exact chronology but in exploring the reasons behind the success of the

Ottoman Turks.<sup>28</sup> Michael Psellos openly stated that in his *Chronographia* 'the years have not been numbered by Olympiads nor divided into seasons...but I have simply drawn attention to the most important facts': his real aim was to construct a memoir and defence of his own political conduct.<sup>29</sup>

The chronological information given in such works is therefore often either minimal or non-existent. The seventh-century writer, Theophylact Simocatta, tells us that a military campaign was launched 'at the beginning of Autumn' but omits to give us a year.<sup>30</sup> Procopius of Caesarea is slightly more helpful. He notes, for example, that 'the winter drew to its close, and the fifteenth year ended in this war'. It is, however, difficult to tell what the fifteenth year is counted from.<sup>31</sup> Yet for an important event like the Nika insurrection in Constantinople, Procopius gives no date at all.<sup>32</sup> Anna Komnene tells us that she was born on 1 December in the Seventh Indiction which gives no clue of the year or of the cycle she was using. Only from context can it be worked out that she was born in 1083.<sup>33</sup>

Consequently, the chronology of Byzantine history has had to be pieced together over the past hundred and fifty years by a process of painstaking scholarship and often protracted debate. Some gaps can be filled in from other, non-historical, sources. For example, it was for a long time believed that the Ottoman Turks must have captured the city of Adrianople in 1362, only eight years after their capture of Gallipoli in 1354, although no chronicle or history supplies a precise date.<sup>34</sup> A poem composed in Adrianople around 1366, however, clearly indicates that the city was still in Byzantine hands at that time, so that 1369 now seems a more likely date.<sup>35</sup>

Other clarifications have been made by reference to contemporary historians writing in other societies, such as those writing in Latin in western Europe. It is from the anonymous author of the *Gesta Francorum* that we can make up for Anna Komnene's forgetfulness and work out that Peter the Hermit and his followers arrived at Constantinople on 1 August 1096.<sup>36</sup> In spite of the silence of Michael Psellos, it is known that the excommunication of the patriarch of Constantinople took place at around nine o'clock in the morning on 16 July 1054, because one of the legates involved wrote a short account of the whole affair.<sup>37</sup>

Comparison with Arabic accounts is often particularly helpful, since the contemporary Islamic world had a sophisticated chronological system in which years were (and are) counted from the Hijra (AH), the migration of the Prophet Muhammad from Mecca to Medina on the equivalent of 15/16 July 622 AD.<sup>38</sup> Sometimes Arabic sources enable us to date an important event. It is only from the Arab record that we know that John I Tzimiskes (969–76) mounted his first expedition on the eastern frontier into Mesopotamia in 972, taking Nisibis on 1 Moharrem 362 AH (12 October 972).<sup>39</sup> Moreover, Arabic sources often describe and date events which are not even mentioned by the Byzantine historians. From a biographer of the Ayyubid Sultan, Saladin (d.1193), for example, we learn that on 1 Jumada I 588 AH (15 May 1192) an embassy from the Byzantine emperor Isaac II Angelos (1185–95) reached Saladin's court, to discuss action against the western crusaders who had seized the island of Cyprus the previous year.<sup>40</sup> The Byzantine historian of the period, Niketas Choniates,

says nothing of these negotiations, except to say that they were a mere rumour.<sup>41</sup> We know from Michael Psellos that Constantine IX Monomachos (1042–55) was in diplomatic contact with the Fatimid caliph of Egypt, though the historian does not say when or even what the correspondence was about. Typically he prefers to dwell on his own skill in drawing up the letters to be sent to Egypt.<sup>42</sup> It is the Arab historian Ibn al-Athir who describes how in 439 AH (1047) Constantine IX renewed an earlier treaty of 418 AH (1027) which permitted the emperor to restore the church of the Holy Sepulchre in Jerusalem and provided for the Friday bidding prayer in the mosque in Constantinople to be said in the name of the Shi'ite Fatimid Caliph, rather than of his Abbasid rival in Baghdad.<sup>43</sup>

Contemporary accounts in other languages also help to fill in the chronological gaps. For the notoriously obscure seventh century, there is the work of the Armenian bishop, Sebeos.<sup>44</sup> It is thanks to an account of a journey to Constantinople by a Russian traveller that we know of an attempted seizure of power by John VII Palaiologos on 'Wednesday of the second week after Easter' 6898 AM (13 April 1390), an episode which Laonikos Chalkokondyles completely ignores.<sup>45</sup>

Natural phenomena such as earthquakes and comets are another helpful supplement to the vague chronology of Byzantine historians since they can often be verified and dated in other ways. Anna Komnene, for example, mentions what she calls a comet, which appeared in the sky shortly before the invasion of the Byzantine Balkans by the Norman prince, Bohemond. This is almost certainly the large meteor noted by Chinese astronomers in February 1106.<sup>46</sup> Similarly, Komnene describes how her father, Alexios I, used his foreknowledge of a solar eclipse to overawe some envoys from the unsophisticated Pecheneg people. This too can be precisely dated, to 2 October 1084.<sup>47</sup>

Although the main chronological outline of Byzantine history has now been established, there remain some elusive dates for which no other source or corrective has been found and which will probably never be known. One example is the famous battle of Manzikert in 1071 when the Emperor Romanos III Diogenes (1068–71) was defeated and captured by the Seljuk sultan, Alp Arslan. We know that the battle took place on a Friday but whether on 5, 19 or 26 August is still a matter for debate.<sup>48</sup> Even less precise is the date of the treaty made by John V Palaiologos (1341–91) with the Ottoman emir, Murad I (1362–89) in the early 1370s. The treaty was clearly of great significance as it marked the moment when the shrunken and impoverished Byzantine empire became a tributary vassal state to the Ottoman Turks. John even sent his son Manuel to the sultan's court with instructions to accompany the Ottoman ruler on his military campaigns. Only one source mentions the treaty, Laonikos Chalkokondyles, but as usual he gives no date, other than to say that it occurred after John V returned to Constantinople from Italy.<sup>49</sup> We know that John returned on 18 October 1371 and that, by the spring of 1373, Byzantine troops were serving in the Ottoman armies. Beyond that nothing is known so that the treaty can only be dated very approximately to 1372 or 1373.<sup>50</sup>

All this serves to emphasise that the course of Byzantine history can never be known as precisely as can events in the more recent past. There will always be an element of doubt remaining and it is likely that, in the future, even dates of which we are relatively sure now will have to be revised in the light of new research. Nevertheless is no reason why the sequence of dates as it has been established so far should not be laid out and made available to students and researchers. This is what Timothy Venning has done, selecting 274 AD, the approximate date of Constantine's birth, as his starting point and taking the time line forward to 1502 when Andreas Palaiologos, the nephew of the last Byzantine emperor died in exile in Rome. His work brings home how long a slice of human history and experience is contained in what we call the Byzantine empire. It is also a formidable bulwark against the stream of time.

## Notes

1. Anna Komnene (Comnena), *Alexias*, ed. D.R. Reinsch and Athanasios Kambylis, *Corpus Fontium Historiae Byzantinae* 40, 2 vols (Berlin and New York, 2001), vol. 1, p. 5; trans. E.R.A. Sewter, *The Alexiad of Anna Comnena* (Harmondsworth, 1969), p. 17.
2. John Lydus, *On Powers, or The Magistracies of the Roman State*, ed. and trans. A.C. Bandy (Philadelphia, 1983), pp. 160–3.
3. Jean-Jacques Rousseau, 'Discours si le rétablissement des sciences et des arts a contribué à épurer les moeurs', in *Du Contrat Social et autres oeuvres politiques*, ed. Jean Ehrard (Paris, 1975), p. 7; George Ostrogorsky, *History of the Byzantine State*, trans. J.M. Hussey (2nd edn, Oxford, 1968), pp. 4–5.
4. J.B. Bury, *A History of the Eastern Roman Empire from the Fall of Irene to the Accession of Basil I (A.D. 802–867)* (London, 1912).
5. St Jerome, *Chronicon*, ed. Rudolf Helm, *Eusebius Werke* 8 (Berlin, 1956); trans. M.D. Donalson, *A Translation of Jerome's Chronicon with Historical Commentary* (Lewiston NY, 1996)
6. John Malalas, *Chronographia*, ed. J. Thurn, *Corpus Fontium Historiae Byzantinae* 35 (Berlin and New York, 2000); trans. E.M. Jeffreys, M.J. Jeffreys, and R. Scott, *The Chronicle of John Malalas* (Melbourne, 1986); *Chronicon Paschale*, ed. L. Dindorf, *Corpus Scriptorum Historiae Byzantinae*, 2 vols (Bonn, 1832); trans. M. and M. Whitby, *Chronicon Paschale 284–628* (Liverpool, 1989).
7. George Synkellos, *Chronographia*, ed. B.G. Niebuhr, *Corpus Scriptorum Historiae Byzantinae*, 2 vols (Bonn, 1829); trans. William Adler and Paul Tuffin, *The Chronography of George Synkellos: a Byzantine Chronicle of Universal History from the Creation* (Oxford, 2002); Theophanes, *Chronographia*, ed. C. de Boor, 2 vols (Leipzig, 1883–5); trans Cyril Mango and Roger Scott, *The Chronicle of Theophanes Confessor. Byzantine and Near Eastern History AD 284–813* (Oxford, 1997).
8. *Die Byzantinischen Kleinchroniken*, ed. Peter Schreiner, *Corpus Fontium Historiae Byzantinae* 12, 3 vols (Vienna, 1975–7); George Sphrantzes, *Memorii (Chronicon Minus)*, ed. V. Grecu (Bucharest, 1966), pp. 2–147; trans M. Philippides, *The Fall of the Byzantine Empire: A Chronicle by George Sphrantzes, 1401–1477* (Amherst MA, 1980), pp. 21–95.
9. Procopius of Caesarea, *History of the Wars*, ed. and trans. H.B. Dewing and G. Downey, Loeb Classical Library, 5 vols (London and Cambridge MA, 1914–28).
10. Michael Psellos, *Chronographie, ou histoire d'un siècle de Byzance (976–1077)*, ed. E. Renauld, 2 vols (Paris, 1926–8); trans. E.R.A. Sewter, *Fourteen Byzantine Rulers*, Harmondsworth, 1966); Niketas Choniates, *Historia*, ed. J.-L. Van Dieten, *Corpus Fontium Historiae Byzantinae*

- 11, 2 vols (Berlin and New York, 1975); trans. H.J. Magoulias, *O City of Byzantium. Annals of Niketas Choniates* (Detroit, 1984).
11. Available in two editions: Laonikos Chalkokondyles, *Historiarum Libri Decem*, ed. I. Bekker, *Corpus Scriptorum Historiae Byzantinae* (Bonn, 1843), and *Historiae Demonstrationes*, ed. E. Darkó, 2 vols (Budapest, 1922–7); trans. of Books I–III by N. Nicoloudis, *A Translation and Commentary of the Demonstrations of Histories* (Athens, 1996), and of Book VIII by J.R. Melville-Jones in *The Siege of Constantinople: Seven Contemporary Accounts* (Amsterdam, 1972), pp. 42–55.
  12. C.R. Cheney and M. Jones, *Handbook of Dates for Students of British History* (Cambridge, 2000), pp. 1–2.
  13. Cyril Mango, *Byzantium: The Empire of New Rome* (London, 1980), p. 190; Brian Croke and A.P. Kazhdan, ‘Chronology’, in *Oxford Dictionary of Byzantium*, ed. A.P. Kazhdan, 3 vols (Oxford, 1991), vol. 1, pp. 448–9.
  14. John Lydus, p. 245. On Olympiads, see V. Grumel, *La Chronologie, Traité d’études Byzantines* 1, ed. P. Lemerle (Paris, 1958), pp. 191–2; Croke and Kazhdan, ‘Chronology’, pp. 448–9.
  15. On indictions see Cheney and Jones, *Handbook of Dates*, pp. 2–4; Grumel, *Chronologie*, pp. 192–203; Croke and Kazhdan, ‘Chronology’, p. 448.
  16. *Chronicon Paschale*, vol. 1, p. 583; trans. M. and M. Whitby, p. 73.
  17. Timothy D. Barnes, *Constantine and Eusebius* (Cambridge MA and London, 1981), pp. 111–20; Brian Croke, ‘The Origins of the Christian world chronicle’, in *History and Historians in Late Antiquity*, ed. Brian Croke and A.M. Emmett (Oxford, 1983), pp. 116–31, at 123–5.
  18. Grumel, *Chronologie*, pp. 73–128; Croke and Kazhdan, ‘Chronology’, p. 449.
  19. Malalas, *Chronographia*, pp. 357–8; trans. Jeffreys, Jeffreys and Scott, p. 247; Roger Scott, ‘Malalas, *The Secret History*, and Justinian’s propaganda’, *Dumbarton Oaks Papers*, 39 (1985), 99–109.
  20. *Chronicon Paschale*, trans. Whitby and Whitby, p. xxiii.
  21. George Synkellos, *Chronographia*, vol. 1, pp. 1–2; trans. Adler and Tuffin, p. 1; Mango, *Byzantium*, pp. 193–4; A.S. Proudfoot, ‘The sources of Theophanes for the Heraclian dynasty’, *Byzantion* 44 (1974), 367–439, at 372.
  22. Sphrantzes, *Memorii (Chronicon Minus)*, pp. 56–7; trans. Philippides, p. 49; Theophanes, *Chronographia*, vol. 1, p. 404; trans. Mango and Scott, p. 559.
  23. Komnene, *Alexias*, vol. 1, p. 273; trans. Sewter, p. 283.
  24. Theophanes, *Chronographia*, vol. 1, p. 444; trans. Mango and Scott, p. 614; Grumel, *Chronologie*, p. 128; Sphrantzes, *Memorii (Chronicon Minus)*, pp. 56–7; trans. Philippides, p. 49.
  25. Proudfoot, ‘Sources’, 374–5.
  26. Komnene, *Alexias*, vol. 1, pp. 296–7; trans. Sewter, p. 308.
  27. Choniates, *Historia*, vol. 1, p. 236; trans. Magoulias, p. 133; Eustathios of Thessalonica, *The Capture of Thessaloniki*, trans. J.R. Melville Jones (Canberra, 1988), pp. 24–5; Charles M. Brand, *Byzantium Confronts the West, 1180–1204* (Cambridge MA, 1968), pp. 323–4.
  28. Jonathan Harris, ‘Laonikos Chalkokondyles and the rise of the Ottoman Empire’, *Byzantine and Modern Greek Studies* 27 (2003), 153–70.
  29. Psellos, *Chronographie*, vol. 1, p. 152; trans. Sewter, p. 191.
  30. Theophylact Simocatta, *Historiae*, ed. C. de Boor and P. Wirth (Stuttgart, 1972), p. 230; trans. M. and M. Whitby, *The History of Theophylact Simocatta* (Oxford, 1986), p. 167.
  31. Procopius, *Wars*, vol. 5, p. 37.
  32. Procopius, *Wars*, vol. 1, p. 219.
  33. Komnene, *Alexias*, vol. 1, pp. 183–4; trans. Sewter, p. 196.
  34. Ostrogorsky, *History*, p. 536.
  35. E.A. Zachariadou, ‘The conquest of Adrianople by the Turks’, *Studi Veneziani*, 12 (1970), 211–17 and reprinted in E.A. Zachariadou, *Romania and the Turks* (London, 1985), no. XII
  36. *Gesta Francorum et aliorum Hierosolimitanorum*, trans. R. Hill (Oxford, 1962), p. 2.



37. Humbert of Silva-Candida, *Brevis et succincta commemoratio*, in *Patrologia Latina*, ed. J.-P. Migne, 161 vols (Paris, 1857–66), vol. 143, cols 1001–4.
38. Grumel, *Chronologie*, pp. 280–96.
39. M. Canard, 'La date des expéditions mésopotamiennes de Jean Tzimiscès', *Annuaire de l'Institut de Philologie et d'Histoire Orientales et Slaves*, 10 (1950), 99–108, at 107.
40. Baha al-Din ibn Shaddad, *The Rare and Excellent History of Saladin*, trans. D.S. Richards (Aldershot, 2001), p. 201–2.
41. Choniates, *Historia*, vol. 1, pp. 409–10; trans. Magoulias, p. 225; Jonathan Harris, *Byzantium and the Crusades* (London, 2003), pp. 129–32.
42. Psellos, *Chronographie*, vol. 2, p. 64; trans. Sewter, p. 253.
43. Abbas Hamdani, 'Byzantine Fatimid relations before the Battle of Manzikert', *Byzantine Studies* 1 (1974), 169–79, at 173–4.
44. *The Armenian History Attributed to Sebeos*, trans. R.W. Thomson, 2 vols (Liverpool, 1999).
45. George P. Majeska, *Russian Travelers to Constantinople* (Washington, DC, 1984), p. 100.
46. Komnene, *Alexias*, vol. 1, p. 368; trans. Sewter, p. 378. Cf John Williams, *Observations of Comets from BC 611 to AD 1640 Extracted from the Chinese Annals* (London, 1971), p. 60; Grumel, *Chronologie*, p. 473..
47. Komnene, *Alexias*, vol. 1, pp. 207–8; trans. Sewter, p. 221. Cf K. Ferrari d'Occhieppo, 'Zur Identifizierung der Sonnenfinsternis während der Petschenegenkriege Alexios I. Komnenos (1084)', *Jahrbuch der österreichischen Byzantinistik*, 23 (1973), 179–84.
48. Ostrogorsky, *History*, p. 344; J.-C. Cheynet, 'Manzikert. Une désastre militaire?', *Byzantion* 50 (1980), 410–38, at 412; Alfred Friendly, *The Dreadful Day: the Battle of Manzikert 1071* (London, 1981), p. 178.
49. Chalkokondyles, ed. Bekker, p. 51; ed. Darkò, vol. 1, p. 34; trans. Nicoloudis, p. 149.
50. Peter Charanis, 'The strife among the Palaeologi and the Ottoman Turks, 1370–1402', *Byzantion* 16 (1942–3), 286–314, at 292–3; Donald M. Nicol, *The Last Centuries of Byzantium, 1261–1453* (2nd edn, Cambridge, 1993), pp. 276–7.

## Further reading

### General Overviews of the Whole Byzantine period

- Michael Angold, *Byzantium. The Bridge from Antiquity to the Middle Ages* (Weidenfeld and Nicolson, 2001).
- John Haldon, *Byzantium 300–1453* (Stroud, 2000).
- Jonathan Harris, ed., *The Palgrave Guide to Byzantine Studies* (Palgrave Macmillan, 2005).
- J.M. Hussey, *The Orthodox Christian Church in the Byzantine Empire* (Oxford University Press, 1986).
- Rowena Loverance, *Byzantium* (British Museum, 1994, 2nd edn.).
- Cyril Mango, *Byzantium: the Empire of New Rome* (Weidenfeld and Nicolson, 1980).
- Cyril Mango, ed., *The Oxford History of Byzantium* (Oxford University Press, 2002).
- George Ostrogorsky, *A History of the Byzantine State* (Blackwells, 1968, 2nd edn.).
- Warren Treadgold, *A History of the Byzantine State and Society* (Stanford University Press, 1997).
- Warren Treadgold, *A Concise History of Byzantium* (Palgrave Macmillan, 2001).

### The Early Period 330–602

- Peter Brown, *The World of Late Antiquity, from Marcus Aurelius to Muhammad* (Thames and Hudson, 1971).
- Averil Cameron, *The Mediterranean World in Late Antiquity* (Routledge, 1993).

- Averil Cameron, *The Later Roman Empire* (Fontana, 1993).  
 J.A.S. Evans, *The Age of Justinian: the Circumstances of Imperial Power* (Routledge, 1996).  
 A.H.M. Jones, *Constantine and the Conversion of Europe* (Penguin, 1972).  
 John Moorhead, *Justinian*. (Longman, 1994).

## The Middle Period 602–1204

- Michael Angold, *The Byzantine Empire, 1025–1204* (Longman, 1997, 2nd edn.).  
 Michael Angold, *The Fourth Crusade* (Longman, 2004).  
 Jonathan Harris, *Byzantium and the Crusades* (Hambledon and London, 2003).  
 Judith Herrin, *Women in Purple. Rulers of Medieval Byzantium* (Weidenfeld and Nicolson, 2001).  
 Paul Magdalino, *The Empire of Manuel I Komnenos, 1143–1180* (Cambridge University Press, 1993).  
 Dimitri Obolensky, *The Byzantine Commonwealth* (Weidenfeld and Nicolson, 2000).  
 Warren Treadgold, *The Byzantine Revival 780–842* (Stanford University Press, 1988).  
 Mark Whittow, *The Making of Orthodox Byzantium 600–1025* (Macmillan, 1996).

## The Later Period 1204–1453

- D.M. Nicol, *The Last Centuries of Byzantium, 1261–1453* (Cambridge University Press, 1993, 2nd edn.).  
 Steven Runciman, *The Fall of Constantinople* (Cambridge University Press, 1965).

## Original Sources in Translation

- Eusebius, *The History of the Church from Christ to Constantine*, trans. G.A. Williamson and A. Louth (Penguin, 1989).  
 Ammianus Marcellinus, *The Later Roman Empire (AD 354–378)*, trans. W. Hamilton (Penguin, 1986).  
 Procopius, *The Secret History*, trans. G.A. Williamson (Penguin, 1966).  
 Michael Psellos, *Fourteen Byzantine Rulers*, trans. E.R.A. Sewter (Penguin, 1966).  
 Anna Comnena (Komnene), *The Alexiad*, trans. E.R.A. Sewter (Penguin, 1969).

## Byzantine Art and Architecture

- John Beckwith, *Early Christian and Byzantine Art* (Yale University Press, 1997).  
 Robin Cormack, *Byzantine Art* (Oxford University Press, 2000).  
 J. Freely and A.S. Çakmak, *The Byzantine Monuments of Istanbul* (Cambridge University Press, 2004).  
 John Lowden, *Early Christian and Byzantine Art* (Phaidon, 1997).  
 Thomas F. Mathews, *The Art of Byzantium* (Weidenfeld and Nicolson, 1998).  
 David Talbot-Rice, *Art of the Byzantine Era* (Thames and Hudson, 1963).

*This page intentionally left blank*

# Chronology

*This page intentionally left blank*

# Part I

## Prelude to Creation of Empire c. 274–328

*This page intentionally left blank*

- c. 274 Birth of Constantine 'the Great', son of Constantius (?nicknamed 'Chlorus' 'The Pale'), a Danubian officer in Roman army, by Helena, daughter of innkeeper at Nalssus/Nis – unknown if married.
- 284 **November** Accession of (Caius Aurelius Valerius) Diocletian as Emperor, aged around 41, as choice of official entourage of the young co-Emperor Numerian, on the latter's death during return from late father Carus' Persian campaign.
- 285 c. 1 **April** Numerian's elder brother Carinus, co-emperor in West, killed in battle at Margus, Illyria – Diocletian unchallenged.  
Diocletian appoints fellow-Danubian officer (Marcus Aurelius Valerius) Maximian as 'Caesar'.
- 286 Maximian co-emperor, and centres his activities in the West while Diocletian concentrates on East – based at Nicomedia near the Bosphorus (and future site of Constantinople).
- c. 289 Constantius becomes Maximian's stepson-in-law? and Praetorian Praefect, divorcing Helena.
- 293 **1 March** Formal division of Empire – Diocletian rules East and Maximian the West. Each 'Augustus' has a deputy – 'Caesar' – and future successor, Galerius shadowing Diocletian and Constantius shadowing Maximian (known as the 'Tetrarchy'). The division of Empire and accompanying creation of extended bureaucracy, enlarged armed forces and legalized State direction of economy and society in the 'Diocletianic' reforms created the basic system that underpinned the early Eastern (→ Byzantine) Empire to the seventh century.
- 303–4 Diocletian launches 'Great Persecution' of Christians, mostly concentrated in the East, restricted in West. Many of the Christian martyrs thus created were the objects of later cults throughout the Christianised Empire.



- 305** **March** Abdication of Diocletian and Maximian; Galerius succeeds to East, Constantius to West. Maximian's son is Galerius' new 'Caesar' and Severus is Constantius' 'Caesar'.
- 306** **July** Death of Constantius at York during British campaign; his troops hail Constantine as his successor as 'Augustus', and Constantine commences undermining the 'Tetrarchy'.
- Maximian's son Maxentius seizes Rome and Italy in revolt against Severus; Constantine secures Britain, Gaul, and Spain, but his rank of 'Augustus' is only sporadically accepted by the other Emperors.
- 307** Maximian resumes rule in joining Maxentius, but later quarrels with him and joins Constantine; Constantine divorces his first wife Minervina, mother of heir Crispus, to marry Maximian's daughter Fausta (mother of his three subsequent sons, Constantine II, Constantius II, and Constans).
- 311** **April** Galerius abandons persecution of Christians in East and dies; Maximian, most notorious and ferocious of persecutors, and Galerius' co-'Augustus' Licinius fight over the East.
- 312** Constantine invades Italy, and according to legend is promised victory in a dream if he puts Christian symbol (? the 'Chi-Ro') on his men's shields;
- 28 October** after doing so he wins battle of the Milvian Bridge outside Rome, and Maxentius is drowned in the Tiber in flight; Constantine secures Rome and all the West.
- 313** Constantine and Licinius meet at Western capital, Milan, 'Edict of Milan' confirms toleration of Christianity, and thereafter Constantine gradually moves towards active promotion of the religion.
- Licinius defeats Maximian who dies.
- 314** First Western Church Council, at Arles.
- 317** Constantine makes Crispus and Constantine II 'Caesars'.

**323** Constantine's presence in Licinius' area of Thrace in breach of agreement on boundaries precipitates war.

**324** Constantine attacks Licinius and **3 July** wins land-battle at Adrianople; **18 September** his son Crispus wins naval victory in Bosphorus at Chrysopolis. Licinius flees towards Nicomedia and is captured but spared due to his wife Constantia, being executed later for alleged plot.

**November** Constantine chooses the site of Byzantium, former Greek colony founded by Byzas from Megara c. 667 BC, as his new capital – the triangular site at Southern mouth of Bosphorus is protected by Propontis (Sea of Marmara) to South and harbour of 'Golden Horn' to North, and provides easy access to both Danube and Eastern frontiers and to Black Sea and Mediterranean.

Marble-quarries at Proconnessus near Cyzicus and Thracian forests are used in creation of a city intended to rival Rome; Constantine strips leading Greek works of art from cities like Athens to adorn the City, bringing statue of Athena from the Parthenon and giant statue of Zeus from Olympia among his many trophies.

'Forum of Constantine' created on the site of Constantine's camp during his siege of Licinius in the town before battle of Chrysopolis, with one Senate-House there and a second at the Eastern end of principal street ('Mèse') by the Christian Basilica of 'Holy Wisdom' ('Hagla Sophia') and the nearby 'Sacred Palace'; the latter becomes main Imperial residence until late c.11th. and joint residence to 1204.

'Hippodrome' created West of the Palace, adorned with obelisks and the 'Triple Serpent' column commemorating Greek victory over Persians at Plataea in 479 BC

Much is made of Constantinople having seven hills like Rome; Constantine creates a new Senate and 14 regions like in Rome, proclaims the City the principal 'Colonia' of Rome, and encourages noble families to move there from Rome.

**325** **20 May** Opening of first 'Oecumenical Council' for Christian Bishops from all over the Empire with around 225 Bishops present, mostly from the East; Constantine presides.

In dealing with theological dispute between Bishop Alexander of Alexandria and his presbyter Arius, the latter is condemned on metaphysical grounds and the Son is declared to be 'of one substance' (*homoousius*) to the

Father. The two are ambiguously declared to be 'the same', but despite all but two Bishops signing the decrees the dispute with Arius later resumes and 'Arianism' becomes first major 'heresy'. Doctrinal and disciplinarian Canons issued, and precedence of Bishoprics of Rome (in Italy) and Antioch and Alexandria in own areas confirmed, Jerusalem granted status of honour but Caesarea principal Bishopric in Palestine.

**326** Constantine executes his eldest son Crispus and later his second wife Fausta, leaving his three sons by the latter as heirs.

Constantine's mother Helena tours Palestine as first 'pilgrim' and identifies the principal sites of Christ's life and the 'Passion' for collection of relics and building of Christian churches.

The 'True Cross' is discovered in Jerusalem and basilica of the Holy Sepulchre built on site of Christ's tomb; another important church founded on site of Christ's birth at Bethlehem.

**328** **April** Athanasius succeeds Alexander as Bishop of Alexandria; Constantine instructs him to restore Arius to communion as he has signed the Nicene decrees, but he refuses.

## **Part II**

# **From Formal Dedication of Constantinople 330–476**

*This page intentionally left blank*

**330 East**

**11 May** Dedication ceremony of Constantinople marks official inauguration of the new Eastern capital, with Alexander as Bishop.

**331 East/West**

Constantine's chief minister Ablabius consul.

Constantine confiscates pagan temple treasures.

? Foundation of St Peter's Basilica, Rome.

Arius' supporters, led by Bishop Eusebius of Nicomedia, appeal to Constantine.

**6 November** Birth of Constantine's half-brother Julius. Constantius' second son Julian, later Emperor.

**332 East**

Sarmatians (in modern Wallachia) appeal to Constantine for help against Goths on steppes; Constantine and second son Constantius march into steppes to defeat Goths and Greeks in Cherson (Crimea) attack Goths in rear; Goths surrender and hand over hostages including son of 'King'.

Constantine agrees to Arian and Alexandrian 'Meletian' faction's requests for trial of Athanasius on trumped-up charges, he is acquitted.

**333 West/East**

Constantine's third son Constans made 'Caesar'.

Constantine's half-brother Dalmatius consul, then goes to Antioch as 'Censor'.

**334 East**

Constantius sent to Antioch as 'Vicar' of Eastern dioceses; Constantine's eldest son Constantine granted Vicariate of Britain, Gaul, and Spain and Constans of Italy, Africa, and upper Danube.

Constantine campaigns against Sarmatians, but loses nerve and abandons camp to retire by sea as attack threatened by superior enemy force.

Athanasius tried at Caesarea (Palestine) for magic practices and murder, at instigation of 'Meletian' faction in Alexandria; he is acquitted after produces a Bishop the charges said had been murdered by him.

### 335 **East/West**

Constantine makes the younger Dalmatius 'Caesar' and destined successor in lower Danube lands; his brother Hannibalianus to rule Pontus and Armenia.

Rebellion of Calocaerus, commander of Camel Corps in Cyprus; defeated and killed by Dalmatius.

**August** Church council at Tyre, where Arian Bishop Eusebius of Nicomedia secures Athanasius' deposition for acts unworthy of Christian Bishop; he shows Constantine evidence that Athanasius threatened dock-strike at Alexandria to halt grain-supplies to Constantinople; Athanasius exiled to Trier.

Constantine holds inauguration of Church of Holy Sepulchre at Jerusalem, with accompanying Church council to reconcile orthodox 'Nicens' and Arians; Bishop Marcellus of Ancyra refuses to attend so he is deposed.

**31 December** Death of Bishop Sylvester of Rome.

? Constantine settles Sarmatians in Empire.

### 336 **West**

**18 January** Mark becomes Bishop of Rome.

#### **East**

Hannibalianus, as designated 'King of Kings', marches into Armenia and restores Roman authority.

**Early** Athanasius deposed by council at Constantinople; Arius is invited to capital to be reconciled with Constantine and receive communion and dies suddenly there, according to his enemies in public lavatory.

#### **West**

**7 October** Death of Bishop Mark.

337 **West**

**6 February** Julius elected Bishop of Rome.

**East**

Paul succeeds Alexander as Bishop at Constantinople.

Shapur II of Persia invades Armenia, deporting and blinding King Diran; Constantine prepares war to take over Armenia and starts to march East to join troops at Antioch.

Constantine falls ill in Bithynia, receives baptism from the Arian Bishop Eusebius of Nicromedia at Helenopolis as condition deteriorates, and **May** dies at a nearby village aged probably 61/63.

Constantine's campaign abandoned and body returned to Constantinople; sons join assembly of leadership in capital for funeral; Bishop Eusebius plots against Constantine's half-brothers and nephews and spreads rumours.

**June** Shapur invades Mesopotamia and unsuccessfully besieges Nisibis; Bishop James dies during 63-day siege.

Constantine buried in Church of Holy Apostles at Constantinople, but his sons resist Dalmatius' claim to lower Danube and Hannibalianus' to Pontus and Armenia.

Imperial guardsmen riot and murder Dalmatius, Hannibalianus, their father Dalmatius, and latter's brother Julius Constantius together with some sympathetic ministers, probably at Constantius' initiative – the sons of Constantine are left sole heirs. Julius' sons Gallus and Julian hidden in church and are spared.

**9 September** Constantine's sons agree to division of Empire in meeting at Viminacium in Illyricum. Constantius sends Gallus to school at Tralles, and Julian to Nicomedia under Bishop Eusebius.

Shapur of Persia attacks Nisibis.

Athanasius returns to Alexandria and Marcellus to Ancyra with the acceptance of the Emperors, but they are refused entry by opponents led by Arians; they return to West with other expelled anti-Arian Bishops and Bishop Julius publicly accepts orthodoxy and admits them to communion.



**338 West/East**

**September** Division of Empire confirmed in formal agreement – Constantine II senior and in Spain, Gaul, and Britain; Constans Italy, Africa, Illyricum; Constantius East.

**East**

**Spring** Constantius at Sirmium; he crosses Danube and campaigns successfully against Sarmatians.

**339 East**

Constantius returns to Constantinople, deposes Bishop Paul, and replaces him with his Arian adviser Bishop Eusebius of Nicomedia; he starts Eastern tour en route to Persian war, as Persians withdraw to frontier.

**340 East**

Constantius at Antioch and starts campaigns against Persia.

(or 341) Eusebius consecrates Ulfilas as Bishop to convert Goths – to Arianism.

**West**

Constantine II attempts to invade Italy, but is ambushed near Aquileia and killed, aged 28; Constans rules all of West and proceeds to Trier to take over.

**Autumn** Bishop Julius calls religious council at Rome which backs Athanasius and Marcellus of Ancyra as orthodox; he reproaches their congregations for deposing them without reference to other Bishops, particularly Rome, but Eastern Bishops do not attend or respond.

**341 East**

Constantius in Antioch for **6 January** dedication of 'Greek Church' (cathedral); the accompanying Church Council there supports Eusebius of Nicomedia against Nicene orthodoxy as interpreted by Marcellus of Ancyra,

omitting phrase in Nicene creed; Bishop Julius of Rome appeals for general Church Council.

Death of Bishop Eudoxius of Constantinople; Paul elected after dispute and riots.

**342 East**

? Death of theologian Bishop Eusebius of Nicomedia.

Constantius returns to Constantinople to sort out disputed election of Bishop, sacks Paul, and installs Macedonius.

Western and Eastern Bishops assemble at Sardica/Sofia in Balkans to sort out the correct orthodoxy and the positions of Athanasius and of Marcellus of Ancyra.

**343 East/West**

(or end of 342) General Council at Sardica/Sofia, but it breaks up as Western Bishops insist on Athanasius and Marcellus of Ancyra participating and Easterners refuse, withdraw and anathematize all concerned; two separate Councils follow, and Western majority upholds Athanasius and Nicene orthodoxy and issues revised creed that can admit Marcellus (accused of 'Sabellianism') to communion but which East condemns; West also anathematizes pro-Arian Bishop Valens of Mursa.

Constantius campaigns in Adiabene against Persia.

**344 East**

Stephen, Bishop of Antioch and opponent of Athanasius, discredited for attempt to frame a Bishop with a harlot during Constantius' church council at Antioch.

Persians invade Roman Armenia across the river Tigris; Constantius II defeated at battle of Singara.

**345 East**

Persians besiege Nisibis, which Constantius II relieves.

**346 East**

Bishop Macedonius of Constantinople deposed; Paul restored.

Athanasius visits Constantinople, gains imperial approval, and is allowed to return to Alexandria as Bishop; Gregory expelled.

**348 West**

Constans holds Games to celebrate 1100th anniversary of traditional date of Rome's foundation.

**350 West/East**

**18 January** Marcellinus the Count of Privy Purse ('Res Privatae') hails German general Magnentius as Emperor at his son's birthday-party at Augustodunum, Gaul, while Constans is out hunting, troops join in and revolt and Constans is killed in flight, aged 33. Magnentius secures control of West, aided by his Arian wife Justina (later married to Valentinian I) and Marcellinus, and sends to Constantius who refuses to recognise him and marches West into Balkans.

Constantia, widow of Constantine I's half-brother Hannibalianus, raises Vetranio, governor of Illyricum, to throne as her candidate but he refrains from fighting Constantius and assures him of good will.

**3 June** Nepotianus, nephew of Constantine I, leads revolt outside Rome and he enters to evict Praetorian Praefect Anicetus, **10 June** Marcellinus restores Magnentius' control of city after fighting, and Nepotianus and his mother Eutropia among the killed.

Persia invades Armenia, deports King Tiridates II, and installs son Arsaces III as ruler. **Late** Constantius summons nephews Gallus and Julian from Cappadocian exile to Sirmium.

**351 East/West**

Death of Bishop Paul of Constantinople; Macedonius restored

Magnentius makes brother Decentius 'Caesar' and sends him to defend Rhine.

**15 March** Gallus elevated to be 'Caesar' at Sirmium and sent to Antioch to govern East; Julian becomes student at Ephesus where he is taught by pagan philosopher Maximus.

Constantius confronts Vetranio, and by secret agreement they meet in front of armies and Vetranio announces his abdication and support for Constantius; his army joins Constantius and **Summer** the latter and Magnentius manoeuvre in Pannonia.

Constantius offers Gaul and Britain to Magnentius, who is defeated at Mursa and retires to Italy; Bishop Valens of Mursa, having prayed publicly for Constantius' victory and been joined by Constantius at service during battle, joins him as adviser and influences him in favour of Arian settlement of all Church.

Part of Senate defects from Italy to Constantius.

## 352 West

**12 April** Death of Bishop Julius of Rome, **17 May** Liberius elected.

Magnentius sets up base at Aquilela, but **September** Italy revolts in his rear as Constantius' fleet lands at mouth of Po; he flees to Gaul, where brother Decentius attempts to seize Trier, and Constantius leaves Italy.

## East

Samaritans revolt but are brutally suppressed by Gallus; Sepphoris is sacked.

## 353 West/East

Gaul revolts against Magnentius who is defeated by Constantius at Mount Seleucus in South-West and **10 August** commits suicide; Constantius sends ministers to restore rule to Magnentius' provinces and round up suspects, particularly the brutal Paulus 'The Chain' who terrorizes Britain.

**Winter** Constantius holds Games at Arles.

Gallus, based at Antioch, plans Persian campaign but becomes arrogant and unstable and comes under influence of Arian deacon Aetius.

## 354 West

Constantius holds Church Council of West at Arles to condemn Athanasius and his rigid orthodoxy and to open compromise to Arians, bullying Bishops into signing; Liberius of Rome refuses and demands General Council.

## East

Gallus, hearing of food-shortages at Antioch, fixes food-prices and arrests protesting Senators; only prevented from executing them as scapegoats by 'Count of Orlens' Honoratus. Constantius sends his new Praetorian Praefect of East Domitain to investigate, and Gallus arrests him and orders him to be killed then has 'Quaestor' Montius killed as well for trying to stop execution; Constantius lures him to Milan with hints of co-rulership, separates him from entourage en route, and has him executed; brother Julian exiled to Athens where he learns pagan philosophy avidly.

## 355 West/East

**October** Church Council of Milan to uphold Arianism and denounce Bishop Athanasius; Constantius deposes and exiles all Bishops who refuse to sign including Hilarius of Poitiers, Hosius of Cordoba, and Dionysius of Milan; Bishop Liberius of Rome is summoned and is exiled to Berroea in Thrace for obduracy and a faction at Rome elects Felix to replace him.

Praetorian Praefect Strateglus Musonianus negotiates with Persia.

Bandit rebellion in Cilicia; Seleucia besieged.

Rebellion of Silvanus at Trier after false accusation of treason; killed.

Julian summoned to Milan and granted rank of 'Caesar' and **November** the hand of Constantius' sister Helena.

**December** Julian sent to Gaul to drive out raiding Germans, and winters in Rhône valley.

## 356 East

**February** Bishop George installed in Alexandria by troops, and Athanasius flees to the desert and continues to write against Arians

Death of St. Antony, leading monastic pioneer in Egyptian desert.

## West

Julian clears barbarians out of central Gaul, from Autun to Troyes, and then retakes Cologne and winters at Sens.

### 357 West/East

Julian defeats the Alemanni at Strasbourg, restores peace to Gaul, and crosses the Rhine.

**April** Constantius pays grand State visit to Rome, and donates Egyptian obelisk to Circus Maximus; he is noted for his rigid bearing at processions, and is lobbied on behalf of Liberius.

**July** Constantius forbids courtiers to consult oracles.

Constantius goes to Illyricum to fight Sarmatian incursions, and wipes out rebel tribe, the Limigantes.

**Winter** Constantius, in winter quarters at Sirmium, receives Bishop Basil of Ancyra who has formulated rival proposals to Valens of Mursa's to put to Emperor – that the son's essence is 'like' the Father's ('homoiousios') without being 'identical' (which seems close to 'Sabellian' heresy).

### 358 East/West

Eudoxius, Arian, made Bishop of Antioch.

Constantius summons Liberius from Berroea to meet him at Sirmium.

Constantius allows Liberius to return to Rome, but also enables his rival Felix to set up separate congregation in the city.

Shapur II of Persia starts war in Mesopotamia.

Constantius defeats Sarmatians and Quadi on the Danube.

Bishop Valens of Mursa and Basil of Ancyra compete for Constantius' support over the nature of the religious compromise formula to include Arians – whether the Son is merely 'like' the Father or 'of same essence'?

### 359 West

Julian defeats Alemanni in North-East Gaul and persuades troops not to mutiny over Constantius' scanty provisioning.

#### East/West

Execution of 'Master of Soldiers' Barbatio for alleged hopes of succession.

The corrupt financial official Autoninus defects to Persia with secrets and encourages Shapur to invade; suspicious Constantius decided to replace popular Eastern commander Ursinicus with elderly Sabinian but sends him back when Shapur invades.

**July?** Shapur besieges Amida, which **November?** is taken; Constantius plans campaign in Mesopotamia, and recalls Julian's friend and general Sallust. The historian Ammianus, Ursicinus' aide, is among those who escape Amida.

Praefecture of Constantinople is created.

Constantius organizes church council for West at Rimini and for East at Seleucia (South-East Anatolia), to uphold the compromise doctrine; Bishop Valens of Mursa secures triumph for his version at Rimini, and Eudoxius of Constantinople and George of Alexandria do so for him in East.

### 360 **East/West**

'Constantius' commission into fall of Amida exonerates timid Sabinian and unjustly blames Ursicinus, who is dismissed.

**Early** Constantius issues orders for many of Julian's troops in Gaul to march East to join his Persian war, reducing Julian's military strength.

**Early** Death of Bishop Macedonius of Constantinople.

Constantius translates Bishop Eudoxus from Antioch to Constantinople, and installs non-partisan Miletius at Antioch.

Church council at Constantinople, centring on **18 February** dedication of Hagia Sophia; new creed issued that 'the son is like the Father', taking Arian line, and despite the broad nature of statement in deliberate ambiguity orthodox Bishops resist and depositions follow.

**February** Gallic troops at Paris refuse Constantius' order to march East and declare Julian Emperor at parade; he accepts and secures control of Gaul and Rhine.

Julian sends envoys Pentaclius and Eutherius to Constantius to assure his peaceful intentions, but prepares for campaign and **November** holds 'quinquennial' Games at Vienne on Rhône. Constantius sends envoy Leonas to order Julian to be content with Caesarship; it is rejected. Death of Julian's wife Helena.

## 361 East/West

Death of Empress Eusebia, Julian's patron; Constantius refuses peace and prepares for war. Julian appoints Germanianus as Praetorian Praefect, replacing Constantius' nominee Nebridius.

Julian sends troops under Jovius and Jovinus via Alps to Northern Italy, and Rome surrenders; he marches through Black Forest to the Danube and sails downstream; Praetorian Praefect Taurus flees Italy.

Constantius marries, secondly, Faustina at Antioch.

Constantius replaces Miletius as Bishop of Antioch with the more Arian Euzoius on appeal of Eudoxus of Constantinople; Miletius and his rival Paulinus quarrel over leadership of Antiochene orthodox.

Constantius sets out for Constantinople, but falls ill en route as Julian secures Sirmium and advance guard under Nevitta reaches Balkan passes; surrendered Eastern troops land at Aquileia in Julian's rear but are surrounded by Jovinus.

**3 November** Constantius dies at Mopsucrene in Cilida aged 44 or 47, and generals abandon ministers' plans for election of successor and send officers to Julian to accept him as Emperor; Constantius' army at Aquileia surrenders.

Julian recalls all exiled orthodox Bishops, and sends his uncle Julian to Antioch as 'Count of the East' to secure provinces.

Julian enters Constantinople in triumph, buries Constantius at Church of Holy Apostles, and pardons Constantius' officers.

**24 December** Bishop George of Alexandria lynched by mob; Athanasius allowed to return as Julian takes no action but deprecates inter-Christian violence.

## 362 East/West

Claudius Mamertinus, orator, and general Nevitta Consuls.

Julian organizes judicial commission at Chalcedon, including generals Jovinus, Arbetio, and Nevitta, to execute Constantius' favourites including Paulus, and soldiers secure execution of unpopular treasurer Ursulus; Artemius, tyrannical Arian Praefect of Egypt, executed, replaced by Ecdicius Olympus; Salutius Secundus Praefect of East; orator Libanius of Antioch's pupil Celsus governs Syria; Anatolicus, Julian's administrator, 'Master of Offices'; Felix finance-minister ('Count of Sacred Largesses').



Julian restores official pagan sacrifices, reopens temples, and cancels all Christian clergy's privileges but declares universal toleration rather than repressing Christianity and seeks to ridicule the latter, pointing out incongruity of Christian teachers accepting pagan classics; later Christians are banned from teaching. Salaries given to pagan priesthoods. pagan temples granted charitable functions to counter-act Christians' appeal.

Julian orders compilation of pagan dogma, encourages Christian sects to fight each other, and plans rebuilding of Jewish temple in Jerusalem.

**May** Julian leaves Constantinople; **18 July** he reaches Antioch, on ill-omened day of Adonis lamentations, to prepare for Persian war, and encourages pagan shrines and festivals in the area especially the sacred grove at Daphne with its prostitutes; **October** Temple of Apollo at Daphne, centre of cult, is burnt and Julian blames Christians and closes Antioch cathedral.

Athanasius calls council at Alexandria to rule on rival non-Arian churches of Miletius and Paulinus at Antioch, and accepts the latter as does Pope.

### 363 East

Julian and Sallust assume consulship at Antioch; riots over shortage of grain in city. Julian gathers large army to invade Persia, and writes *Against the Galileans* against Christians and a satire on ungrateful Antiochenes. Deaths of Julians' uncle Count Julian and finance-minister Felix.

? Athanasius expelled from Alexandria again.

**5 March** Julian leaves Antioch; his army and fleet cross frontier **6 April** to descend Euphrates, taking Perisabora and Morozamalcha where Julian joins in assaults, to cross via canal to the Tigris at Ctesiphon while cousin Procopius marches down Tigris via Adiabene; Procopius fails to arrive on time, so Julian abandons siege of Ctesiphon, burns ships, and marches up-river; **26 June** he is fatally wounded in side by arrow during skirmish, probably by assassins, and dies aged 31 or 32; **27 June** Christian officer Jovian elected Emperor by officers as compromise as Constantius' old generals and Julian's loyalists oppose each other's nominees.

Jovian cancels all Julian's anti-Christian legislation and secures a hasty peace with Persia at Dara, surrendering Nisibis and 5 provinces in Mesopotamia and Armenia and abandoning Roman protectorate over kingdom of Armenia. Jovian leads evacuation of Nisibis by distraught citizens as Persian garrison arrives; he sends to his father-in-law Lucillian to take over West as 'Master of Soldiers'.

Bishop Athanasius and other exiles recalled.

Julian buried at Tarsus ; riots in Antioch.

### 364 East

Jovian and young son Varronian consuls; **February** Jovian dies suddenly at Ancyra en route to Constantinople, aged around 34/40, possibly of noxious paint-fumes at lodgings, and generals hold election-meeting at Nicaea.

Sallust is offered the throne but refuses and Jorianus' relative Januarius rejected; Pannonian military commander Valentinian, son of Count Gratian, elected (aged 43) and marches to Constantinople **28 March**; he makes his younger brother Valens co-ruler despite advice not to appoint relative if he puts state above family.

Valentinian announces division of the Empire at Mediana near Naissus, Illyricum – Valens is to rule the East and proceeds to Constantinople, where his Arian wife Alba Dominica and Bishop Eudoxius influence him in favour of Arians and Alba's father Petronias, leading minister, is resented for misrule.

Victor and Arintheus appointed 'Masters of Soldiers' in the East.

Shapur II invades Armenia.

Valens confirms decrees and appointments of Constantius' Arian church councils.

### 365 East

**28 September** Julian's refugee cousin Procopius seizes Constantinople with support from guards-regiments during Valens' absence and is joined by Constantius II's widow Faustina and the armies in Thrace and on Danube; he marches into Bithynia, **November** defeating Valens at Chalcedon; Valens flees to interior and considers abdicating but rallies troops in Lycia with generals Arintheus, Lupicinus, and the recalled Arbetio.

### 366 West

Valentinian fights Alemanni on the Rhine.

## East

**27 May** Procopius defeated at Nacoli, and later captured hiding in Phrygia and executed; his relative Marcellinus and Gothic mercenaries are driven out of Chalcedon and his general Equitius defeated in Thrace; Valens starts war against Goths North of Danube for aiding rebels.

**24 September** Death of Pope Liberius; deacon Ursinus elected at Julian Basilica, but a faction elects Damasus whose partisans storm Basilica and massacre enemies; **1 October** he is consecrated in stormed Lateran Basilica, and fighting until **26 October** Liberian Basilica stormed too to secure his control of Church of Rome; the disorders seriously damage Papacy's reputation.

## 367 East

Persians overrun Armenia, capturing and imprisoning Arsaces III who commits suicide, burning cities and terrorizing population.

Valens leads campaign against Goths, based at Marcianopolis on lower Danube.

## West

Valentinian makes elder son Gratian, aged 8, co-emperor.

## 368 East

Isaurian rebels raid across Anatolia and kill Imperial 'Vicar' Musonius.

Roman army installs late ruler Arsaces' son Pap as king of Armenia.

## 369 East

Valens crosses the Danube, defeats Goths, and captures 'king' Athanaric; successful conclusion to Gothic war.

Persians overrun Iberia and expel king Sauromax.

**370 East**

Death of Eudoxius, Bishop of Constantinople; succeeded by another Arian, Demophilus. **9 April** dedication of Church of Holy Apostles, Constantinople.

Valens leaves his capital for Antioch to take charge of Persian war.

Terentius restores Sauromax to Iberia.

Basil, leading orthodox theologian, appointed Bishop of Caesarea-in-Cappadocia and starts active promotion of orthodox candidates in local appointments.

**371 East**

Valens campaigns from Antioch against Persians.

Basil of Caesarea and Athanasius fail to settle dispute over rightful Bishop of Antioch.

**Autumn** Valens tortures and executes Imperial secretary Theodore after he discovers that he and others consulted prophecy on next Emperor whose name begins with 'Theod'; divination is banned.

**372 East**

**6 January** Basil of Caesarea disappoints orthodox zealots by allowing Valens into his cathedral for Epiphany though he is an Arian.

Valens campaigns against Persia.

**373 East**

Death of (St) Athanasius, Bishop of Alexandria, last of the Church leaders at 325 Council of Nicaea; rôle of leading orthodox voice in East against Valens and Arians passes to less outspoken Basil of Caesarea.

**28 March** Valens holds 'Decennalia' Games (10 years on throne), early, at Antioch.

**374 West**

Gratian marries Constantia, daughter of Constantius II.

Ambrose becomes Bishop of Milan.

**375 East**

Valens starts removing orthodox Bishops in East and installing Arians.

Huns destroy the Ostrogothic kingdom on South Russian steppes, and many Goths flee towards Roman territory seeking sanctuary; thousands of Tervingi (Visigoths) arrive at the Danube, others under Athanaric in Transylvania.

**West**

Valentinian has a stroke at meeting with envoys from Iazyges tribes at Brigetio (in modern Hungary) and **17 November** dies aged 34; generals led by Merobaudes summon 16-year-old elder son Gratian who is **23 November** proclaimed, but his infant half brother Valentinian (II) is proclaimed at Milan by mother Justina who secures division of West between them.

**376 West**

**Early** Execution of Count Theodosius, father of the later Emperor Theodosius, at Carthage, probably due to Gratian's ministers' fear of his popularity.

**East**

**Spring** Alavivus and Fritigern, commanders of Visigoths, send embassy to Valens at Antioch requesting permission to settle in Empire with people; it is granted and Goths cross Danube but are cheated over supplies by governor Lupicinus.

**377 East**

Goths revolt against Lupicinus' extortion and start ravaging Moesia but are blockaded by Trajan and Profutus in the Dobrudja at mouth of Danube.

Gothic reinforcements force Trajan and Profutus to withdraw, and Goths move South.

Valens arranges truce with Persia to concentrate on Goths.

Alatheus and Saphrax lead 'Gaethungi' over Danube to reinforce Fritigern, and Valens' generals retire towards Constantinople.

## 378 West

Gratian defeats Alemanni on Rhine and prepares to march East.

### East

Valens arrives in Constantinople from Syria to lead Gothic campaign.

**9 June** Valens leaves Constantinople to set up base at Adrianople; he receives Western advance-guard under Richomer but, emboldened by victory of general Sebastian, refuses to wait for Gratian's arrival or to listen to Fritigern's peace-envoys; he advances on Gothic fortified camp near the city and **9 August** attacks.

**Battle of Adrianople:** Roman cavalry reaches Gothic baggage-train but is cut off, and main infantry is surrounded and destroyed in hours of assaults; Valens missing, accepted as killed, aged c. 51.

Goths' siege of Adrianople fails.

News of disaster reaches West; Gratian leads army to Sirmium to gain control of East, and recalls Bishops exiled by Valens.

Goths ravage Thrace, but are defeated attacking Perinthus and Scythian cavalry drive them back from near Constantinople; Eastern generals Victor and Richomer join Gratian at Sirmium to launch campaign while 'Master of Soldiers' in East, Julius, orders massacre of all Gothic settlers and families so they cannot aid Fritigern.

## 379 East

**19 January** Gratian raises Theodosius (aged 31/32), son of executed Count Theodosius recalled from Spain, to Emperorship of East at Sirmium; Praefect of Illyricum Olybrius takes charge of transfer of generals and men to Eastern army and a few months later Gratian returns to Rhine campaign.

**July** Based at Thessalonica, Theodosius issues new conscription-laws to raise recruits as army rebuilt, inconclusive campaigning against Fritigern.

**September** 153 Bishops meet at Antioch to restore Nicene orthodoxy to churches of the East and expel Arian clergy.

Theodosius enrolls large number of Goths in rebuilt Eastern army; his Gothic defector general Modares wins victory in Thrace and Fritigern's main horde moves West into Illyricum.

## 380 East

**February** Theodosius issues edict restoring Nicene orthodoxy in East and declaring it to be sole legitimate faith, as practiced by Pope Damasus and Bishop Peter of Alexandria.

**February/March** Theodosius critically ill at Thessalonica; baptised by Bishop Acholius.

Gratian campaigns Westwards from Sirmium into Pannonia as more Goths invade.

Theodosius campaigns Southwards from Sirmium.

**Summer/Autumn** Theodosius campaigns, largely unsuccessfully, against Fritigern who ravages South-West into Macedonia and then Thessaly; fortified cities hold out but countryside plundered.

**November** Theodosius enters Constantinople, supposedly in triumph after successes.

Bishop Demophilus of Constantinople deposed as Arian, and Theodosius summons and installs respected Cappadocian theologian Gregory of Nazianzus as successor; Gregory's inauguration booed by crowds.

Theodosius expels Arian clergy from churches in Constantinople; Arians, ('ultra-Arian') Eunomians and Photinians condemned to banishment.

Miletius installed as Patriarch of Antioch, not pro-Rome rival Paulinus.

## 381 East

Atharnaric, Fritigern's Tervingian Goth rival, receives permission to settle his followers inside Empire as allies and **January** is received by Theodosius for state visit to Constantinople; he dies in city and is honoured with a grand funeral.

**10 January** Theodosius orders that all churches be served by orthodox bishops.

**May** New 'Oecumenical Council' opens at Constantinople under Patriarch Miletius of Antioch, but no Papal representative and Miletius' position questioned; Miletius dies, and Patriarch Gregory of Constantinople proposes restoration of rival Paulinus whereupon he is attacked too, offers resignation, and Theodosius accepts it; Miletius' ally Flavius sent to Antioch, and popular civilian praetor Nectarius (not even baptised) appointed at Constantinople; Gregory retires to Cappadocia.

Nicene Orthodoxy re-defined, and Constantinople declared second in rank to Rome in Patriarchates as Imperial capital – not accepted by Pope Damasus.

**July** Arian clergy expelled from all their churches in East, and a list announced of all acceptable, orthodox bishops.

Theodosius and Gratian's general Bauto drive Fritigern out of Thessaly back to Thrace.

## 382 West

Gratian orders removal of 'Altar of Victory' in Senate House of Rome and abolishes State subsidies to priesthoods.

## East

**21 February** Valentinian I is re-buried at Church of Holy Apostles, Constantinople.

Famine in East. Theodosius declares acceptance of pagan gods' statues permissible only as art.

Theodosius wears down Goths in Balkans, aided by death or deposition of Fritigern, and opens negotiations without any talk of expelling them over Danube due to Roman military weakness.

**3 October** Peace signed with Goths by Theodosius' generals Saturninus and Richomer; they are granted Moesia/Northern Thrace as settlers, first acceptance of a Germanic people within Roman territory under own leaders.

## 383 Persia

Ardashir II succeeded by elderly ? half-brother, Shapur III.



## West

**Spring** Magnus Maximus, 'Count of Britain' and former subordinate to Theodosius' father in Britain in 367, revolts, proclaims himself Emperor, and seizes Britain; he crosses to mouth of Rhine and wins over garrisons, seizes Trier as capital, and confronts Gratian near Paris.

Maximus wins over Gratian's Moorish cavalry after skirmishes; Gratian flees South, is caught up at Lyons by Maximus' general Andragathus and supposedly spared but then **25 August** stabbed at banquet, aged 24; 12-year-old Valentinian II and mother Justina resist at Milan.

Theodosius does not reply to Maximus' envoys offering alliance or war.

Maximus sends envoy Victor to Milan to request Valentinian II to join him at Trier 'like a son' and Justina sends Bishop Ambrose to Trier **October** to refuse; Justina's army blocks Alpine passes before winter and Maximus accepts continuance of separate regime at Milan.

## East

Themistius, leading Christian orator from Antioch, Praefect of Constantinople.

## 384 West

**11 December** Death of Pope Damasus; Siricius elected.

## East

Shapur sends embassy to Constantinople for peace and offers Theodosius gifts including elephants; in return a Roman embassy goes to Ctesiphon, headed by Theodosius' Vandal general Stilicho.

Theodosius appoints fervently orthodox 'Praefect of East', fellow-Spaniard Maternus Cynegius; he tours from Syria to Egypt shutting and wrecking temples, e.g. Edessa and Apamea.

## 385 East

Theodosius' elder son Arcadius consul.

? Stilicho marries Theodosius' niece Serena.

? 'Great King' Shapur attacks Armenia.

Militantly anti-pagan Theophilus becomes Patriarch of Alexandria.

## 386 East

Maximus' choice of Consul, Flavius Evodius, recognised.

c. 30,000 'Gaethungi' Goths arrive at Danube demanding right to cross into Balkans; Theodosius' general Petronius Probus lures them into setting sail across river, then Roman ships attack and sink them midway; Theodosius and 'Master of Soldiers' Promotus campaign with army to force the rest to submit; Probus given Praefectorian Praefecture of Italy for 387.

Death of Theodosius' wife Aelia Flacilla.

## West

Maximus' brother Marcellinus visits Valentinian II at Milan, and Bishop Ambrose sent to Trier in reply; **June** Ambrose besieged in Milan Cathedral by Justina's Arian troops on her order after he refused to allow them an Arian church.

## 387 East

Theodosius makes peace with Persia; Armenia divided under client princes, but four-fifths of it goes to Persia.

**Spring** Riots against new taxes in Antioch lead to smashing of imperial statues and portraits, and when 'Count of East' and troops regain control the leaders are executed; Imperial commissioners announce Theodosius has reduced Antioch to status of a village, but after Bishop Flavius and senator Hilarius lead deputation Theodosius repents of anger and cancels order.

## West

**Autumn** Maximus suddenly invades Italy and takes Milan; Valentinian II and Justina flee to East and meet Theodosius at Thessalonica to request aid; Theodosius agrees and marries Justina's daughter Galla.

### 388 East/West

Theodosius gathers army at Thessalonica and discovers plot by German troops; Tatian made Praetorian Praefect of East and son Proculus Praefect of Constantinople, and Theodosius' elder son Arcadius left in nominal command at the capital.

Promotus commands cavalry, Timasius infantry, and Richomer 'barbarians' as Theodosius advances via Illyria into Julian Alps; **August?** Theodosius outmanoeuvres Maximus to cross river near Aquileia, then defeats Maximus' brother Marcellinus with Noricum forces; Maximus retreats to Aquileia, as city surrenders he gives himself up and is taken to Theodosius' camp and executed.

Maximus' fleet defeated off Sicily, and commander Andragathus throws himself overboard; Frankish general Argobastes sent to Trier to arrest and execute Maximus' eldest son Victor.

Maximus' widow Helena and younger children and supporters are spared; Trifolius Praetorian Praefect of Italy and Illyricum and Constantinian Praefect of Gaul; Theodosius resides at Milan and encounters Bishop Ambrose and his staunchly Catholic supporters.

Fanatical monks pull down Jewish synagogue at Callinicum on river Euphrates, and Theodosius orders their bishop to pay for rebuilding; he corrects this to payment by all citizens, but Ambrose writes to him that God will give him no more victories if he assists Jews; he bans Theodosius from Communion in Milan until rebuilding and enquiry cancelled, and Theodosius gives way despite advice of Eastern commander Timasius.

### 389 West

Theodosius sends Valentinian II to rule Western provinces (Gaul, Spain, Britain) from Trier, assisted by Frankish 'Master of Soldiers' Argobastes.

**13 June–30 August** Theodosius on State visit to Rome; he receives ceremonial reception and a panegyric delivered in Senate House.

### 390 East

'Column of Theodosius' imported from Egypt to Constantinople.

**Summer?** Botheric, Theodosius' Gothic military commander at Thessalonica, imprisons a popular Greek charioteer for homosexuality so he cannot appear

at Games; after Botheric refuses appeal at Games for release he and officers are murdered, and on Theodosius' orders from Milan the garrison sets on citizens in hippodrome and kills c. 7000 people; Bishop Ambrose refuses Theodosius entry to cathedral or communion and forces him to do penance for massacre like an ordinary citizen until **December** crime regarded as expiated.

Arcadius expels his stepmother Galla from palace in Constantinople in dispute.

### 391 West/East

**Early Spring** Theodosius sets out for East via Illyricum, leaving Argobastes as 'Master of Both Services' to Valentinian II in Gaul and senior (pagan) aristocrat Nicomachus Flavianus as Praetorian Praefect of Italy, North Africa and Illyricum; anti-pagan legislation arranged.

**24 February** Anti-pagan edict issued, banning all sacrifices and entry into or veneration of images in pagan temples, with traditional public ceremonial outlawed; 15 lb of gold fine for higher-ranking offenders.

**9 June** Anti-pagan edict bans apostasy from Christianity to paganism on pain of loss of testamentary rights; **16 June** the February law re-issued specifically for Egypt as pagan cults especially strong there.

**Summer?** Theodosius' edicts lead to temple-smashing across the East, especially in Egypt; Patriarch Theophilus of Alexandria leads assault on pagan temples there, and after rioting in the city Theodosius authorizes destruction of pagan headquarters at temple of Serapis; ?remnant of 'Great Library of Alexandria' destroyed too.

**Summer** En route to Constantinople, Theodosius fights rebellious Visigoths in Thrace.

### 392 West

**15 May** Valentinian II found dead at residence at Vienne, aged 21; probably suicide but rumours blame Argobastes who avoids seizing throne.

**22 August** Argobastes proclaims his chief secretary Eugenius, a Christian, as Emperor at Lyons; attempts to avoid breach with Theodosius and no immediate promotion of paganism.

Eugenius unsuccessfully sends two missions, one of clergy, to Theodosius to obtain recognition.

Argobastes takes Eugenius to Trier and defeats Franks.

## East

**8 November** Theodosius bans all pagan sacrifice and divination and use of pagan symbols; offenders' houses to be confiscated and huge fines.

Theodosius' fellow Spaniard and 'Master of Offices' Rufinus made Consul and Praetorian Praefect, having secured dismissal and exile of predecessor Tatian.

## 393 West/East

Eugenius regards Theodosius as fellow-consul, but he refuses to co-operate and **January** makes younger son Honorius 'Augustus'.

**April** Eugenius and Argobastes arrive in Italy; pagan Nicomachus Flavianus made Praetorian Praefect of Italy and organizes pagan revival, and his son made Praefect of Rome; Ambrose flees from Milan.

New anti-pagan legislation in East implemented and temples closed.

## 394 East

Empress Galla dies in childbirth.

Theodosius marches into Illyria with army under 'Master of Soldiers' Stilicho (a Vandal married to his niece Serena) and Timasius, he consults hermit John of Lycopolis who says he will be victorious but die in Italy.

End of Olympic Games due to Theodosius' ban.

Flavianus celebrates pagan festivals in Rome, declares a 'Great Year', and returns to join Argobastes' army in Julian Alps.

Theodosius confronts Argobastes at the River Frigidus in the Julian Alps.

**5 September** Theodosius' army fails to break Western lines and are disheartened; Theodosius spends night in prayer and **6 September** Alpine wind blows snow in Westerners' faces and they are defeated, regarded as Divine intervention; Eugenius killed and Argobastes and Flavianus commit suicide.

Stilicho appointed 'Master of Both Services' in the West; Theodosius and Ambrose celebrate with service at Milan cathedral.

**Late** Theodosius ? visits Rome and returns to Milan, where he falls ill with dropsy and his younger son Honorius is urgently summoned West from Constantinople; Honorius made co-emperor of West.

## 395 East/West

**17 January** Theodosius attends Games at Milan with the just-arrived Honorius, but dies that night aged 47, leaving Arcadius (aged 17/18) to rule East under guidance of Rufinus and Stilicho as commander-in-chief and regent of West for 10-year-old Honorius.

Rufinus fails to engage his daughter to Arcadius, and is regarded with increasing hostility for venality.

**27 April** In Rufinus' absence on administrative tour to Antioch, Arcadius marries Eudoxia, daughter of the late Frankish mercenary general Bauto who is in the care of Promotus' widow Marsa; the prime mover in the episode is the ambitious eunuch Chamberlain Eutropius.

Stilicho pays a visit to the Rhine defences.

Alaric, now Gothic 'King', marches his troops on Constantinople and has secret meeting with Rufinus near walls; he ravages Thrace and marches into Thessaly, allegedly intending to secure control of the Praefecture of Illyricum (which both Western and Eastern empires claim) for Rufinus to thwart Stilicho's claims.

Stilicho, bringing Theodosius I's Eastern troops home from Italy, arrives in Thessaly to confront Alaric and tries to secure Western control of all 'Illyricum' Praefecture (including Greece); Arcadius and Rufinus are alarmed.

Stilicho traps Alaric in the Peneius valley, but Arcadius orders him to call off campaign and return to Italy.

Stilicho returns to Italy, and his ally Gainas the Goth leads Eastern levies back to Constantinople where **27 November** at reception outside walls they murder Rufinus, presumably on Stilicho's orders; Eutropius secures influence over Arcadius.

Huns cross the Caucasus while most Eastern troops are in Europe and ravage Syria and Cilicia, blockading Antioch and raiding through Orontes valley as far as Phoenicia, as reported by St. Jerome at Bethlehem.

### 396 East/West

Alaric passes Thermopylae without resistance, ravages Boeotia except for fortified Thebes, and ravages Attica but accepts invitation to dinner in Athens in return for sparing city; he? sacks sanctuary at Eleusis, he burns Corinth and Argos and ravages the valley of Eurotas including Sparta; the humiliation to the Eastern Empire of his ravaging of heartland of their Greek culture draws comment from St. Jerome and others.

? Eutropius has his former employer Abundiantus banished to Pityus, Pontus, and seizes his wealth.

Eutropius gets ex-‘Master of Soldiers’ Timasius’ client Bargus to accuse him of treason; after a dubious trial he is banished to Libya and wealth seized, and Eutropius then ruins Bargus too.

Augustine becomes Bishop of Hippo.

? Arcadius orders demolition of pagan temples.

### 397 West/East

Death of (St.) Ambrose, Bishop of Milan.

Stilicho leads Western expedition to Greece and blockades Alaric on Mount Pholoe in Elis, but is declared a public enemy by Senate at Constantinople for not seeking their permission for the campaign.

Hearing that Gildo, commander in North Africa, is negotiating with Arcadius to transfer allegiance to East, Stilicho negotiates with Alaric, lets him escape to Epirus, and July? returns to Rome to announce Gildo’s treason to Senate; Gildo cuts off corn-supplies to Rome, but his brother Maczael defects to Stilicho.

(or early 398) Eutropius reaches agreement with Alaric in Epirus, making him Eastern ‘Master of Soldiers’ in Illyricum with lands for his followers in Northern Epirus.

? Eutropius makes Galnas the Goth ‘Master of Soldiers’ in the East, but this German triumph is resented by aristocracy in capital.

**September** Death of Patriarch Nectarius of Constantinople; Patriarch Theophilus of Alexandria puts forward his candidate Isidore, but Eutropius persuades Theophilus to back off with warnings of possibility of investigation of his dubious political dealings; Eutropius secures election of dynamic Antiochene priest, the zealous ascetic ex-hermit John ‘Chrysostom’

(Golden Mouth), who is smuggled out of Antioch by Praefect Asterius to avoid trouble from populace who do not want to lose him.

## 398 East

**26 February** Consecration of John Chrysostom as Patriarch of Constantinople; his fiery sermons against wealth and vanity make admirers and enemies.

John organizes counter-demonstrations of the orthodox faithful in capital to challenge the intimidating hymn-singing parades of Arian congregations; Eudoxia supports him and lends attendant Briso to organise his choirs; after Arians retaliate with stone-throwing the Emperor bans all their parades; Eudoxia joins in John's procession to translate relics from Hagia Sophia cathedral to suburban church of St. Thomas in Drypia and is commended by him in sermon.

Eutropius conducts successful campaign against barbarian raiders from Caucasus who are ravaging Cappadocia.

## West

Stilicho marries Honorius to his daughter Maria.

Maczael leads Western forces to Africa and defeats Gildo, who tries to sail to East but ship is driven back so **31 July** he kills himself; on return to Milan Maczael dies in 'accident' as bridge collapses, rumours blaming Stilicho.

Stilicho refuses to accept Arcadius' nomination of Eutropius for the 399 consulship.

## 399 Persia

Accession of Yazdegerd I as 'Great King'.

## East

Eutropius consul, which is much resented.

**19 January** Birth of Arcadius and Eudoxia's second, but eldest surviving daughter Pulcheria.



**Summer** Revolt of Theodosius I's Ostrogothic settlers in Phrygia under Tribigild, a commander bitter at refusal of promotion and at Eutropius' insults, postpones Arcadius' holiday visit to Ancyra; Gainas and general Leo sent to suppress their pillaging, but Gainas secretly allies to Tribigild against Eutropius and as rebels head for Pamphylia Gainas saves them from Leo's ambush; Gainas insists that Tribigild's demand for Eutropius' dismissal be met, and Empress Eudoxia complains to Arcadius of Eutropius' insolence after he told her that he brought her into Palace and could just as easily have her evicted.

**August** Eutropius takes sanctuary in Hagla Sophia, where John protects him but forces him to listen to sermon denouncing his greed and vanity, and is dismissed and exiled to Cyprus; soon recalled for trial and executed at Chalcedon.

Praetorian Praefect Eutylichian dismissed too; Aurelian's appointment annoys Gainas.

## West

**26 November** Death of Pope Siricius; **27 November** Anastasius elected.

## East

Gainas encamps at Chalcedon, and Arcadius has to call on him and accept his demand to be made 'Master of Both Services', supreme military commander; he condescends to accept John's mediation and abandon demand for execution of his leading opponents Aurelian and Saturninus who flee court.

## 400 East

**9 January** Eudoxia crowned 'Augusta'; Aurelian Consul of East but not present in capital due to fear of Gainas, and brother Caesarius Praetorian Praefect.

**January–?July** Gainas resident in Constantinople with his army of Goths, and clashes with citizens; his agents fail to steal the contents of City banks as hidden, and Patriarch refuses him use of church for his Arian soldiers.

**12 July** Gainas leaves capital to attend services at Arian church at Hebdoman in suburbs, and orders army to follow in sections to prevent violence but a clash with citizens leads to general assault and massacre; Gainas and survivors plunder Thrace, march to Hellespont but are unable to cross and face Fravitta's loyalists who sink their rafts, and retreat; Gainas flees to Danube and **December** killed there by Uldin's Huns; his head is sent to Arcadius.

## 401 East

Fravitta given consulship, but resented as pagan and 'barbarian' and later executed.

Criticism grows of John Chrysostom, especially over his attitude to women which alienates several of Empress Eudoxia's closest friends.

**10 April** Birth of Arcadius and Eudoxia's son Theodosius (II); baptism at Hagia Sophia with grand ceremonial, and Eudoxia assists Bishop Porphyrius of Gaza (Palestine) to obtain Imperial funds for a new church there after Arcadius refused by pretend appeal to the new prince.

John soon leaves capital to investigate simony charges against Bishop Antonius of Ephesus, and tours Western Anatolia where he dismisses 13 Bishops; Bishop Severian of Gabala in charge of his church in absence.

**August?** John returns to Constantinople and quarrels with Severian who is facing charges of heresy from deacon Serapion; he requires Severian to leave for diocese, and the bishop complains to Eudoxia who persuades John to recall him and accept innocence.

## West

Alaric invades Northern Italy and **November?** occupies Milan, Imperial residence, as Honorius flees to the impenetrable marshes protecting seaport of Ravenna on Adriatic; Stilicho returns from campaign against Germans in Rhaetia across Alps to campaign in Po valley.

## West

**19 December** Death of Pope Anastasius; **21 December** – his son Innocent elected successor.

## East

Patriarch Theophilus of Alexandria holds synod to condemn heretical views of third century theologian Origen, and concentrates on the desert monks at Nitria oasis and their leaders the four 'Tall Brothers'; he evicts them and sacks monasteries, then when they settle in Palestine demands their expulsion by bishops.

## 402 West

**6 April** Stilicho attacks and routs the Goths in camp at Pollentia while they are celebrating Easter; Alaric rallies the survivors and Stilicho accepts him as 'Master of Soldiers' in Illyricum in return for withdrawal there.

## East

John receives the 'Nitrian' leaders with honour in Constantinople and lodges them at Church of St. Anastasia; their piety impresses Eudoxia who persuades Arcadius to summon a synod to investigate their complaints against Theophilus; Theophilus summoned to answer.

Bishop Epiphanius of Cyprus, Theophilus' ally, holds a synod to condemn Origen's writings, and Theophilus asks him to go to Constantinople on his behalf.

## 403 West

Alaric invades North-East Italy again; besieges Verona, is defeated by Stilicho, and is granted peace in lenient treaty as a useful ally.

## East

Theophilus excommunicates 'Nitrian' leaders and censures John; Epiphanius goes to Constantinople at his instigation, insists that John censure 'Nitrians', and boycotts cathedral until they are evicted, but cannot obtain satisfaction and John insists a 'General Council' alone can rule on Origen; Epiphanius leaves to die exhausted **12 May** on voyage home.

Eudoxia, offended by John's behaviour and in particular sermon against women, supports Theophilus as he arrives in capital with supporters, including Bishops Severian of Gabala and Antiochus of Ptolemais/Acre who hate John, to answer John's accusations. John refuses to lead enquiry into incidents in another diocese (i.e. Theophilus); Theophilus and his supporters secretly meet at Chalcedon to draw up charges against him.

Synod meets at 'The Oak', Rufinus' palace near Chalcedon, and Egyptian bishops and archdeacon John lead accusations against the Patriarch including gluttony, arrogance, abuse of power, intrigues, and corruption; he refuses to attend or to accept verdict of any trial not carried out by 'General Council' and is deposed in absence **June?**, and Arcadius announces his banishment.

Populace gather at Hagia Sophia to protect John who holds out for three days and preaches sermons calling Eudoxia 'Jezebel'; to avoid bloodshed he leaves at night and is deported to Praenetus in Bithynia.

**July** Populace demand John's return, and opportune earthquake terrifies Eudoxia; she sends plea to him to return and he does so, paying compliments to her in subsequent sermon.

Preparations for 'General Council' of Eastern bishops at John's request, but Theophilus returns home as his and John's supporters clash in streets; **November** John protests at 'pagan' ceremonies, music, and dancing to inaugurate new statue of Eudoxia in Augusteum square during his service in adjoining Hagia Sophia; Eudoxia takes it as affront and he makes matters worse by calling her 'Herodias' demanding 'John's' head in sermon.

Arcadius and Eudoxia refuse to celebrate Christmas in Hagia Sophia with John as no communion with him advisable till Council decides on his status; bishops start to gather for Council.

## 404 West

Stilicho celebrates triumph at Rome with Honorius; during Games the monk Telemachus is killed protesting at gladiatorial combat, which is abolished.

## East

**Early** Council of Church in East meets, with Theophilus not present but supporters using argument of 341 Council of Antioch that if bishop deposed by synod and appeals to Emperor latter's verdict should be irrevocable; however that Council was tainted with Arianism and as Arcadius insists that its canons be accepted the meeting does agree to remove John.

Arcadius deposes John again; **Good Friday 15 April** 40 bishops address Arcadius and Eudoxia at Church of Forty Martyrs urging John's restoration for the Easter baptism of catechumens in cast the disappointed crowds riot and he relents but insists John should not enter Hagia Sophia at Easter in case of disorder; **16 April** at night soldiers evict the huge crowds gathering at the Cathedral for baptisms, and clergy reassemble them at Baths of Constantine but evicted again; **Easter, 17 April** service held in field; John refuses to leave his episcopal palace for exile as deposition should be by God not Emperor.

**20 June** Synod deposes John.

**25 June** The late Patriarch Nectarius' brother Arsacius, ineffectual, made Patriarch.

John reluctantly leaves Constantinople after Imperial orders supported by his episcopal enemies; a fire breaks out that night (presumably arson) and Hagia Sophia and Senate House are destroyed; his supporters are blamed and punished and he is deported to Cucusus in Armenia.

Pope Innocent condemns John's deposition and refuses to accept Arsacius as Patriarch.

**6 October** Eudoxia dies of miscarriage; new Praetorian Praefect Anthemius heads government in name of weak-minded Arcadius.

Arbazacius suppresses Isaurian bandits but accepts bribe not to punish them.

## 405 East

? Arcadius imprisons Honorius' envoys sent to protest at John Chrysostom's treatment.

### West

Stilicho's second consulship.

**Autumn?** Radagaisus and horde of Ostrogoths from Pannonia invade Italy, and bypass Stilicho's headquarters at Ticinum to start ravaging Italy.

Honorius issues edict against 'Donatists'.

## 406 East

Atticus succeeds Arsacius as Patriarch of Constantinople

### West

Ostrogoths ravage Northern Italy and besiege Florence but are cornered by Stilicho at Fiesole near Florence and **23 August** defeated and slaughtered; Radagaisus captured and executed.

Rebellion of Marcus in Britain; he is murdered and replaced by civilian Gratian.

Stilicho breaks off relations with East and closes Italian ports to Eastern shipping in retaliation for arrest of Honorius' envoys.

**31 December** Horde of Germanic tribes crosses frozen Rhine at Moguntiacum/Mainz; the end of old Western frontier.

## 407 East

Death of Isaac the Syrian, founding abbot of the first important monastery in Constantinople (at Psamathia).

### West

Stilicho prepares to invade Illyricum and annex it to Western Empire, and alliance with Alaric's Visigoths organized; Stilicho is preparing fleet at Ravenna when he hears false story that Alaric is dead and attacks halted.

Revolt of Constantine III, private soldier, as candidate of British armies; Gratian murdered, and Constantine leads British troops into Gaul to fight the invaders and relieve besieged cities; other tribes press on towards Pyrenees.

Stilicho sends Sarus the Goth against Constantine, who defeats barbarians in Northern Gaul and advances to Vienne on the Rhône; he kills two of Constantine's generals and besieges Vienne but has to retreat back across the Alps.

Alaric starts march Westwards through Illyricum towards heart of the Western Empire.

**14 September** John Chrysostom dies at Pityus in Pontus, under military escort on his way into further exile.

## 408 West/East

Alaric moves into Noricum and forces Empire to pay him 8000 lb of gold for his services. Honorius, widowed, marries Stilicho's younger daughter Thermantia. Constantine III sends general Gerontius to conquer Spain.

**May** Death of Arcadius, aged ?31; Theodosius II succeeds, aged 7, under regency of Praetorian Praefect Anthemius; Arcadius nominates Yazdegerd as his protector.

## West

**May** Hearing of Arcadius' death, Honorius wants to go to Constantinople but Stilicho persuades him to let him go as new Regent and to send Alaric against Constantine III; Stilicho's enemies decide to bring him down and stir up mutiny among troops alleging Stilicho wants son Eucherius to rule East; at Ticinum during imperial visit, **13 August** minister Olympus rouses troops to revolt and Stilicho's principal supporters seized and executed.

Stilicho, at Bononia (Bologna), refuses entreaties of soldiers to revolt but Sarus the Goth leads loyal troops in night attack on his Hun bodyguard; Stilicho flees, goes to Ravenna, and as Olympus' troops under Count Heraclian arrive he takes refuge in church but **23 August** is persuaded to surrender with promise that life to be spared and is executed; son Eucherius killed and Honorius divorces daughter Thermantia.

Government orders massacre of German mercenaries' families; most of the Germans escape to Alaric urging revenge and **Autumn** he marches on Rome.

## East

Famine in Constantinople due to lack of ships to transport corn from Egypt; rioting mobs burn City Praefect Monaxius' house; Anthemius and the Senate secure corn from elsewhere to ease problems.

? Uldin the Hun threatens Anatolia from Caucasus, but his tribes bribed to desert.

## West

**October/November** Alaric reaches and besieges Rome; authorities execute Stilicho's widow Serena.

## 409 East

Anthemius reforms Constantinople's corn-supply to prevent further riots.

## West

Alaric demands all wealth and all slaves from Senate, but is persuaded to reduce demands to 5000 lb of gold, 30,000 lb of silver, and other items; he

is paid off and marches on Ravenna, joined by c. 40,000 slaves; his brother-in-law Athaulf brings reinforcements from Danube.

Alaric sends demands for rule of Noricum but rejected; Olympus' government summons army from Dalmatia but they are defeated and Olympus is deposed and exiled in plot by Palace eunuchs; Praetorian Praefect Jovius chief minister.

Alaric returns to Rome.

Alaric sends Pope Innocent and other envoys to Ravenna, with Gothic escort against bandits; Jovius meets them at Rimini but refuses terms; Alaric seizes Ostia and blockades Rome to compel Senate to proclaim his nominee Attalus as Emperor.

Attalus is installed in Imperial Palace, assisted by Alaric's brother-in-law Athaulf as 'Count of Domestics', and promises restoration of Empire; he accompanies 'Master of Foot' Alaric in march on Ravenna to attempt to depose Honorius, and Bononia (Bologna) resists but Milan joins rebels.

Attalus sends Constans to secure Africa and corn-supply but he is defeated and killed.

## 410 West

Honorius' ministers Jovius, 'Master of Soldiers' Valens, and Julian the Chief Notary visit Alaric's camp to offer division of West between Honorius and Attalus; it is refused and they desert Honorius. 4,000 Eastern troops arrive at Ravenna to rally Honorius, Count Heraclian, commander at Carthage, refuses to supply corn to rebel Rome.

Honorius appoints Sarus the Goth, hereditary foe of Alaric's family, military commander at Ravenna; Alaric advances on Ravenna and deposes Attalus at Rimini, but is defeated in skirmish by Sarus and marches back to Rome.

Gerontius revolts against Constantine III at Tarraco in Spain, proclaims Maximus his 'Emperor', and enlists invading barbarians as allies.

**23 October** Slaves open the gates of Rome to Alaric.

**23–26 August** Sack of Rome by the Visigoths, with looting and massacres, and many citizens flee to Africa including Gratian's widow Laeta and her family, also Pelagius the British leader of heretic sect; Jerome receives the news at Bethlehem and in Africa 'Count' Heraclian runs a trade in refugee girls as prostitutes.

Alaric carries off Honorius' sister Galla Placidia amid captives and train of loot, and marches South through Italy, plundering en route.



Planning to cross to Sicily, Alaric loses new fleet in storm and ?**December** dies at Consentia; buried in diverted river-bed and succeeded by brother-in-law Athaulf.

## **East**

Patriarch Cyril of Alexandria consecrates the renowned orator and philosopher Synesius, ex-pupil at Athens and envoy from his home-town to Constantinople in 399, as Bishop of the 'Pentapolis' to secure his services for orthodox Christianity.

## **411 West**

Gerontius advances against Constantine III, captures elder son Constans at Vienne and executes him and besieges Constantine in Arles; he retreats to Spain as Honorius' new 'Master of Both Services' Flavius Constantius and Ulfila the Goth lead Imperial army into Provence.

**June ?** Constantius besieges Constantine III in Arles for three months; the rebel's Frankish general Ebodich arrives from Rhine with Frank and Allemanni reinforcements but is defeated, and as city surrenders Constantine flees to sanctuary and gives himself up on promise that life will be spared.

**September** Constantine taken to Ravenna as prisoner and executed; Gerontius' troops revolt and besiege his headquarters and he kills himself.

Gundohar the Burgundian and Goar the Alan support the revolt of Jovius on the Rhine.

## **412 East**

Fortifications of Illyrian cities restored.

## **West**

**Spring** Athaulf and Visigoths, with Placidia and Attalus as captives, enters Gaul, while Jovius and his barbarian allies secure Northern provinces.

Athaulf negotiates with Jovinus' rebels in Northern Gaul, but breaks off after they are joined by his enemy Sarus; he defeats and kills Sarus.

Jovinus makes his brother Sebastian his 'Emperor'.

## East

**October** Death of Patriarch Theophilus of Alexandria; succeeded **18 October** by equally forceful and unscrupulous nephew Cyril.

## 413 West

Athaulf makes alliance with Western government against Jovinus, and defeats and executes Sebastian; he besieges Jovinus in Valence and on its fall hands him over to Praetorian Praefect Dardanus for execution; lack of corn-supplies due to African revolt revives breach between Athaulf and Rome.

Heraclian sails to invade Italy, lands at Ostia but is defeated, returns to Africa to face revolt, and **Summer** is captured and executed at Carthage.

St. Augustine commences *Civitas Dei* ('City of God') at Hippo.

Athaulf fails to storm Marseilles, but takes Narbonne **Autumn?**

## East

Coelestius the 'Pelagian' preaches at Ephesus.

Praefect Anthemius starts to construct the gigantic triple land-walls of Constantinople, the 'Theodosian Wall', West of new suburbs (untaken till 1204)

Tension between Patriarch Cyril and the Jews in Alexandria, and between Cyril and pagan Praefect Orestes over the latter's arrest of leading 'Cyrillite' troublemaker at the Games at instigation of Jews; a mob of militant Jews stages co-ordinated massacre of Christian citizens.

## 414 West

**January** Athaulf marries Placidia at Narbonne; their son Theodosius born and dies; Constantius forces the Visigoths over Pyrenees into Spain.

## East

Pelagius quarrels with Jerome in Palestine; Coelestius goes to Constantinople to seek support but is expelled by Patriarch Atticus.

**4 July** Death of Praefect Anthemius of Constantinople, regent of the East; Theodosius' 15-year-old sister Pulcheria takes vow of virginity and assumes control of government as 'Augusta', with 'Master of Offices' Helio; she turns the palace into centre of pious endeavour, aided by sisters Arcadia and Marina.

Patriarch Cyril of Alexandria closes heretic 'Novationist' churches, and exceeds authority in expelling Jews from city and inciting riotous followers to seize their property; Cyril's enemy, Praefect Orestes, complains to the government, is stoned by Cyril's militant Nitrian monks, and executes their leader Ammonius who Cyril declares a 'martyr'.

## 415 East

**March** Patriarch Cyril's lay-brother attendants attack Praefect Orestes' pagan philosopher friend Hypatia, female head of philosophy at University of Alexandria (in succession to her father Theon), drag her from carriage in street and cut her to pieces; outrage leads to government sending commission of enquiry under Aedesius.

**10 October** Inauguration of the new cathedral of Hagia Sophia.

## West

**Summer** Athaulf murdered in stable at Tarraco by former servant of his enemy Sarus in blood-feud; Sarus' brother Sigeric seizes power and slaughters Athaulf's family but is killed after a week; Athaulf's brother Wallia takes over and leads Goths down Mediterranean coast into Baetica.

**December** Pelagius criticised by Palestinian council of bishops at Diosopolis but escapes condemnation.

## 416 West/East

Wallia, based in Southern Spain, plans to invade Africa; his fleet is wrecked off Gibraltar and he opens negotiations with Constantius.

Wallia signs peace with Constantius, and returns Placidia who Constantius escorts back to her brother.

**29 September** Eastern laws limiting number of Patriarch Cyril's attendants to 500 and banning their political involvement, in response to Hypatia's murder.

**7 December** Pagans banned from high civil office in East and West.

**417 West**

**1 January** Honorius and Constantius consuls; Placidia marries Constantius.

**27 January** Pope Innocent declares Pelagius and Coelestius excommunicate unless they return to orthodoxy on question of Divine grace.

**12 March** Death of Pope Innocent; **18 March** Greek presbyter Zosimus, protégé of John Chrysostom elected and weakens hostility to ‘Pelagians’; after receiving Coelestius and receiving Pelagius’ letters he declares that they are not heretics, but Catholic bishops in Africa lead protests.

**1 May** Council of Carthage condemns ‘Pelagians’.

**East**

Mob attacks Jerome’s monasteries in Jerusalem and Bethlehem; Pope protests.

St. Simeon ‘Stylites’ ascends his first column at Telanissos near Antioch.

**418 East**

Count Plintha’s revolt in Palestine suppressed.

**3 February** Cyril gets his legislation against his attendants reversed.

**West**

**30 April** Honorius issues edict condemning ‘Pelagians’; Zosimus has to agree.

Annual assembly of representatives of Gallic provinces in Arles arranged.

Constantius settles Visigoths under Wallia in Aquitaine; Toulouse (Tolosa) capital

**26 December** Death of Pope Zosimus; **27 December** a minority of clergy elect archdeacon Eulalius, but **28 December** rival majority elects Boniface; both consecrated by factions, and Praefect Symmachus writes in support of Eulalius who Honorius initially recognises; Placidia supports Boniface.

**419 West**

Honorius summons Boniface and Eulalius to synod at Ravenna, which fails to decide on rightful Pope; both ordered to stay out of Rome pending

**June** synod's decision but Eulalius refuses so **3 April** Honorius recognises Boniface.

**July** Birth of Constantius' and Placidia's son Valentinian III.

Theodoric succeeds Wallia as King of Visigoths in Gaul.

## 420 East/Persia

Death of 'Great King' Yazdegerd of Persia, succeeded by son Bahram; after a recent attack by Christian bishop on 'pagan' Zoroastrian fire-altar Bahram instigates persecution of Christians, and Theodosius receives pleas for aid and declares war.

## 421 West

**8 February** Honorius makes Constantius co-emperor and 'Augustus'; Theodosius and Pulcheria refuse to acknowledge him.

### East

Athenais, daughter of late pagan Athenian philosopher Leontius, comes to Constantinople to argue inheritance law-suit against brothers; Pulcheria is impressed when hears her and selects her as wife for her brother, and insists on converting her to Christianity first.

Theodosius II transfers ecclesiastical control of Eastern Illyricum (Balkans) from papacy to Patriarchate of Constantinople; temporarily suspended at Papal request.

Patriarch Atticus baptises Athenais as 'Eudocia' and **7 June** she marries Theodosius II.

### West

**2 September** Death of Constantius III; Placidia secures rank of 'Nobilissimus' for their son Valentinian but his position as heir not certain.

### East

Eastern army under Ardaburius fights Persians in Mesopotamia and relieves siege of Amida.

Praefect Aetius builds large cistern in Constantinople.

Juvenal becomes Patriarch of Jerusalem.

## 422 West

Castinus, new 'Master of Soldiers' in West, attacks Vandal-occupied Baetica (Spain) but is defeated.

**4 September** Death of Pope Boniface; **10 September** succeeded by archdeacon Celestine.

## East

Roman peace with Persia ('Hundred Year Peace'); Eudocia celebrates with Greek poem and gives birth to daughter Licinia Eudoxia.

? Huns attack East and paid subsidy.

? Theodosius sent threatening letter by St Simeon Stylites for edict protecting Jews.

## 423 East/West

**2 January** Empress Eudocia of East made 'Augusta'.

Placidia quarrels with Honorius (or late 422) and retires to Constantinople with her children Valentinian and Honoria.

**15 August** Death of Honorius at Ravenna, aged probably 39; Theodosius II plans to assume control of West by installing Placidia and Valentinian and seeks support of 'Master of Soldiers' of West, Castinus, with promise of 424 consulship, but Castinus proclaims chief notary ('Primacerius') John Emperor at Ravenna; **December** John crowned at Rome.

## 424 West/East

John sends to Theodosius asking for recognition but is refused; he sends general Aetius to Huns in East Pannonia to ask for assistance.

Valentinian proclaimed 'Caesar' at Thessalonica by Helio, travelling with him and Galla Placidia towards Italy as Theodosius' representative, and Ardaburius leads Eastern army to Salona to prepare invasion of West.

Aspar, Ardaburius' son, leads land-army on Italy accompanied by Placidius and Valentinian; Ardaburius sails parallel at sea but is blown across Adriatic to Italy by storm, wrecked, and arrested; John treats him leniently and while under house-arrest in Ravenna he rallies support for Valentinian.

## 425 East

**27 February** Foundation of University of Constantinople: based at 'Capitol' with 10 'grammarians' and 3 'rhetors' in Latin and 10 'grammarians' and 5 'rhetors' in Greek: one chair of philosophy and two of jurisprudence.

Death of Patriarch Atticus; succeeded by Sisinnius.

## West

Aspar reaches Aquileia, leaves Placidia there, and marches on to Ravenna where Ardaburius leads revolt to assist him and his soldiers are led through the marshes by a shepherd to surprise defenders; John is captured, taken to Aquileia, paraded round racecourse, and executed **May?June**.

Valentinian III is escorted to Rome and **23 October** proclaimed and crowned by 'Master of Offices' Helio in place of Theodosius who is ill at Thessalonica; Castinus executed; Aetius returns with a large Hunnic force and makes terms, being sent to command in Gaul as 'Count'.

**July** Pope Celestine condemns 'Pelagians' in Gaul.

## 427 West

Placidia's chief minister Felix recalls Boniface, commander in Africa, to Rome but he suspects arrest and refuses; Boniface sends Sanoeces, Gallio, and Mavordius with army to depose him but Sanoeces betrays the others to Boniface, they are killed, and he is later defeated and killed too.

## East

**24 December** Death of Patriarch Sisinnius; Theodosius appoints a Syrian theologian, deacon Nestorius, as successor.

**428 East**

**10 April** Nestorius consecrated Patriarch of Constantinople, and induces Theodosius to issue edict **30 May** banning 18 heretical sects, Manichaeans condemned to exile or execution. Nestorius' friend John Patriarch of Antioch.

Palestinian monastic pioneer Euthymius founds the 'Lavra' at Sahel, particularly important for converting Arabs.

**West**

Gaiseric succeeds half-brother Gunthamund as King of Vandals in Spain.

Boniface invites Gaiseric to assist him in Africa after Sigisvult's loyalists invade.

**429 East**

Theodosius sets up a commission of nine jurists, including Apelles from Constantinople's 'University', to revise and up-date law-codes (last reissued c. 330).

Nestorius writes to Pope Celestine condoning 'Pelagians'.

**Easter** Nestorius forbids Pulcheria entry to most hallowed sanctuary in Hagia Sophia as she is a woman which takes precedence over usual right of sovereign to enter; he campaigns against 'sin', games, theatre etc., but his secretary Anastasius causes riot by sermon alleging that Virgin Mary cannot be regarded as the 'Mother of God' ('Theotokos').

**May** Gaiseric the Vandal crosses from Spain to invade North Africa.

Cyril of Alexandria and other bishops call for Church Council to condemn Nestorius' religious views for heresy, particularly his denial of the Virgin Mary as 'Mother of God'.

Florus, Julian and other refugee 'Pelagians' arrive in Constantinople.

**430 West/East**

Gaiseric invades Numidia and defeats commander Boniface, who is besieged in Hippo, Carthage and Cirta among cities that resist.



Aetius stirs up mutiny at Ravenna where Felix is murdered by troops and succeeds him as 'Master of Soldiers'.

Patriarch Cyril writes work *Against the Blasphemies of Nestorius* and sends letters to Theodosius, Pulcheria, Emperor's other sisters, and Pope Celestine.

**10 August** Pope Celestine holds synod and declares Nestorius to be excommunicate if he does not repent in 10 days; Cyril allowed to forward the order to him.

**18 August** Death of St. Augustine at Hippo, besieged by Vandals.

**November** Cyril holds synod at Alexandria, condemns 12 named 'Nestorian' doctrines that Nestorius is ordered to denounce or else, and forwards excommunication.

## 431 East

Famine in Constantinople; stones thrown at Theodosius in a riot.

Theodosius calls a Church Council, which opens at Ephesus **7 June** under presidency of Imperial representative Count Candidian; Patriarch Cyril opens proceedings with John of Antioch not arrived and Nestorius boycotting it despite Candidian's request for delay, and **22 June** Nestorius condemned and dismissed in absence; John then arrives and calls dissenters to a rival synod, which **26 June** with Candidian attending deposes Cyril and his ally Bishop Memnon of Ephesus; Pulcheria supports Cyril.

**11 July** Papal legates arrive and declare that first synod's decision correct, and that is largely accepted as authentic; however Cyril's arrogant defiance of second synod having any legitimacy despite Imperial representative attending causes Theodosius to declare him deposed too; Cyril ignores him.

Cyril returns to Alexandria in defiance of Theodosius; Nestorius replaced **25 October** by Maximian as Patriarch of Constantinople and sent to his home monastery, Euprepios near Antioch.

Eastern army under Aspar joins Western expedition against Gaiseric in Numidia but defeated.

## 432 East

Theodosius allows Cyril to resume Patriarchate; **15 March** Pope Celestine approves of Maximian's replacement of Nestorius.

## West

**27 July** Death of Pope Celestine; **31 July** Sixtus (Xystus) elected.

Aetius, consul, is dismissed by Placidia and replaced by his rival, 'Count' Boniface of Africa; Aetius resists and is defeated at Ariminium and flees to Huns in Pannonia, but Boniface dies of wounds and replaced by son-in-law Sebastian.

## 433 West

**Spring** Pope Sixtus mediates in controversy between Patriarchs Cyril of Alexandria and John of Antioch; *Symbol of Union* agrees to Antiochene proposal that orthodoxy affirmed if Nestorius is condemned rather than anything more rigid.

Aetius returns to Italy with Hunnic mercenaries, and Placidia agrees to accept him as 'Master of Soldiers' and effective chief minister; Sebastian flees to Constantinople; ? some territory on Danube ceded to Huns.

## 434 East

Rua, king of the Huns, attacks the Balkans but is killed by lightning; his nephews Attila and Bleda succeed, and Roman envoys, 'quaestor' Epigenes and Plinthis, pay 350 lb gold per annum in peace-agreement.

**12 April** Maximian dies; Proclus succeeds as Patriarch of Constantinople.

## 435 East/West

**19 February** Secret agreement between Aspar and Gaiseric to end Eastern campaign in Africa, recognising Gaiseric's conquest of Mauretania; Carthage is abandoned to Vandal attack but continues to hold out.

Accession of Bishop Ibas of Edessa, leading patron of Nestorians in Mesopotamia.

**August** Patriarch John of Antioch complains to Theodosius about renewed trouble from Nestorians in diocese; Theodosius condemns Nestorian doctrine and forbids its dissemination.

**20 December** Order issued giving powers to Theodosius' legal commission to conclude investigation and form legal 'Code'.

**436 East**

Visit of Western Christian philanthropist Melania to Constantinople.

**437 East**

**29 October** Valentinian III marries Theodosius' daughter Licinia Eudoxia at Constantinople; they winter at Thessalonica before return home.

Laws against the Jews in East.

**438 West**

Birth of Valentinian III and Licinia Eudoxia's daughter Eudocia.

**Persia**

Yezdagerd succeeds Bahram as 'Great King'.

**East**

**15 February** 'Theodosian Code', collection of laws, issued in the East.

Anatolius 'Master of Soldiers' at Eastern court.

Patriarch Proclus secures the return of relics of St. John 'Chrysostom' to Constantinople and places them in Church of Holy Apostles.

Empress Eudocia goes on pilgrimage to Jerusalem, and delivers homily at Antioch.

**25 September** Earthquake at Constantinople; panicking citizens hold procession to shrine at Hebdoman.

**West**

**23 December** 'Theodosian Code' issued in the West by agreement between the Emperors.

**439 West**

**6 August** Licinia Eudoxia made 'Augusta'.

**19 October** Gaiseric takes Carthage in surprise attack in breach of treaty; many Carthaginians flee to Italy or the East.

Death of the wealthy Christian benefactress Melania.

**East**

Theodosius' friend Cyrus, Praefect of capital, made Praetorian Praefect of East.

**440 East**

? **January** Arrest and deportation to Cappadocia of Theodosius' friend Paulinus, 'Master of Offices', for alleged affair with Empress Eudocia, after Theodosius became angry that Eudocia sent an Epiphany gift on to him; believed to be at instigation of Theodosius' rising adviser, eunuch chamberlain Chrysaphius.

**West**

**19 August** Death of Pope Sixtus; deacon Leo elected Pope (later 'The Great') on absence on Imperial mission in Gaul and **29 September** consecrated.

**441 East**

Praefect Cyrus made consul for East.

Theodosius sends fleet to Sicily to fight Gaiseric, Yezdagerd of Persia breaks peace in East and raids Eastern Anatolia; Attila the Hun takes the opportunity to cross Danube and besiege Ratiaria, telling Roman envoys tribute not paid and deserters not returned; Ratiaria, Viminacum, and Singidunum sacked and Margus punished for bishop's alleged expedition to rob Hunnic kings' tombs; Attila marches up valley to Naissus and then over Balkan mountains to ravage Thrace and take Philippopolis and Arcadiopolis.

Death of Patriarch John of Antioch; succeeded by nephew Domnus.

**Autumn** Cyrus dismissed due to Theodosius' jealousy of his friendship with Empress Eudocia, encouraged by Chrysaphius; made Bishop of Cotyaeum, Phrygia.

**442 East**

Peace between Eastern Empire and Yezdagerd of Persia.

Theodosius recalls his troops from Sicilian campaign against Vandals to send them against Huns, but no success.

? Pulcheria leaves court after a quarrel with Chrysaphius, who she failed to persuade Theodosius to remove, and retires to Hebdoman palace.

**443 East**

Empress Eudocia leaves Theodosius' court and moves to Jerusalem with a large entourage; Chrysaphius in effective control at court.

? Attila wins victory over Romans in the Thracian Chersonese.

**East**

Theodosius' general Anatolius makes peace with Attila; annual tribute of 700 lb of gold trebled and an additional 6000 lb paid at once, and all Hun deserters to be returned to Attila.

**444 East**

Theodosius sends Saturninus, 'Count' of 'Domestics' (regiment), to Jerusalem to investigate members of wife Eudocia's entourage; he executes two of them.

**27 June** Death of Patriarch Cyril of Alexandria; succeeded by Dioscurus.

? Eudocia arranges Saturninus' assassination, Theodosius deprives her of entourage.

? Attila kills Bleda and becomes sole ruler of Huns.

Execution of exiled Paulinus, ex-'Master of Offices'.

**446 East**

Death of Proclus; Flavian Patriarch of Constantinople.

Plague in Constantinople.

**447 East**

Attila crosses the Danube again and devastates Lower Moesia and 'Scythia', killing general Arnegisclus; a second horde of Huns ravages Macedonia and Thrace as far as Thermopylae; **26 January** the walls of Constantinople are damaged in inopportune earthquake and panic leads many inhabitants to flee the city.

Theodosius opens negotiations as Praefect Constantine restores walls.

Zeno, first important Isaurian general, 'Master of Soldiers' in East (to 451).

**448 East**

Peace between the East and Attila: the district South of Danube from Singidunum to Novae, of five days journey's distance, to be left abandoned by both Romans and Huns and frontier at Naissus.

Huns occupy Sirmium.

Patriarch Flavian and Bishop Eusebius of Dorylaeum investigate Chrysaphius' monk protégé Eutyches for denying that Christ has two natures ('Monophysitism'), a theological doctrine especially promoted by Patriarch Dioscurus of Alexandria; **8 November** Eusebius denounces Eutyches to local Synod in capital and demands enquiry of his heresy; **22 November** Eutyches tried, bullied by Eusebius into admitting Christ can only have one nature, and excommunicated, but Chrysaphius and Dioscurus take up his case.

Attila sends Edeco on mission to Constantinople demanding more money.

Chrysaphius bribes Edeco to murder Attila on return to his camp with a Roman embassy led by Maximin; Edeco informs Attila but the Romans are allowed to leave.

Attila sends his Pannonian secretary Orestes to Constantinople with the bag containing Edeco's bribe, to show it to Chrysaphius and ask if he recognizes it; punishment unsuccessfully demanded.

Theodosius sends ex-‘Master of Offices’ Nomus and ‘Master of Soldiers’ at court Anatolius on mission to pacify Attila; he accepts their assurances with tribute and recognition of Danube frontier.

? Valentinian III’s sister Honoria banished to Constantinople for adultery with her steward Eugenius.

#### 449 East/West

Pope Leo hears of the Eutyches affair and **18 February** writes to Flavian demanding an explanation; he sends his doctrinal submission on Christ’s two natures, the *Tome*, to Flavian **13 June**; Theodosius calls Church Council at Ephesus to re-try Eutyches, presided over by Dioscurus of Alexandria, and Leo sends legates with his *Tome* expecting its approval; however **8 August** the Council, ‘packed’ with ‘Monophysites’, refuses to accept ‘Tome’ or legates’ advice and Dioscurus of Alexandria leads Eutyches’ acquittal; **22 August** Flavian and Eusebius of Dorylaeum deposed, and Flavian dies on way into exile.

**August** Maximus succeeds Domnus as Patriarch of Antioch.

Zeno, ‘Master of Soldiers’ in Isauria, threatens revolt against misrule by Chrysaphius.

Leo refuses to accept verdict of ‘robber council’ at Ephesus and leads resistance.

**November/December** Anatolius, a Monophysite, made Patriarch of Constantinople at Chrysaphius’ instigation.

#### 450 East/West

**22 February** Pope Leo persuades Valentinian, Galla Placidia, and Licinia Eudoxia to write in vain to Theodosius requesting a re-trial for Flavian.

**28 July** Theodosius II dies from spinal injury after being thrown from horse in Lycus valley outside capital, aged 49, Pulcheria and ‘Master of Soldiers’ Aspar declare that Theodosius nominated Aspar’s aide-de-camp Marcian, distinguished officer; Pulcheria agrees to nominal marriage with Marcian and **25 August** crowns him at Hebdoman Palace parade-ground, 7 miles West of Constantinople, before ceremonial assembly.

Marcian refuses to pay tribute to Attila but sends gifts; he executes Chrysaphius and restores good government.

Florus appointed new civil/military governor of Upper Egypt to defeat desert raiders.

**27 November** Death of Galla Placidia, aged c. 62; her grand-daughter Honoria sends messenger Hyacinthus and ring to Attila asking for his hand to save her from forced marriage to senator Flavius Bassus Herculanus, for which she is imprisoned; Attila demands her hand and on refusal plans to invade the West.

## 451 East

Council summoned to meet at Chalcedon.

### West

Attila invades and ravages Gaul with huge coalition of Germanic vassals including Ardaric's Gepids, Theodemir's Ostrogoths, the Rugians, Scirians, Heruls, Alans, and Thuringians; **April** they cross the Rhine with Burgundian reinforcements and sack Metz; they plunder South-Westwards, heading for the Loire valley; Aetius and an army of Romans and allied Visigoths reaches Orleans first and they retreat; **June?** Attila is defeated at 'Campus Mauriacus' on plains near Troyes by Aetius' Romans and Theodoric's Visigoths with other German allies; Theodoric killed but Aetius refuses son Theodemir's proposal to assault the Hunnic fortified camp; Attila retires to Pannonia and there are rumours against Aetius for not pursuing him.

### East

**22–25 October** Council at church of St. Euphemia, Chalcedon, with position of honour for Pope Leo's legates and approval of his *Tome* as defining Orthodoxy; Christ declared to have dual nature and Eutyches and 'Monophysites' condemned; Patriarchate of Constantinople declared equal to Rome as Imperial city, which Pope rejects.

2000 guardsmen assist new orthodox Patriarch Proterius at Alexandria against 'Monophysite' resistance; ex-Patriarch Dioscurus deported.

? Death of Nestonius in exile in Egypt.

'Monophysite' resistance to Patriarch Juvenal in Palestine, led by monks.



**452 West**

Plague in Italy; Attila invades, razes Aquileia, and devastates Northern Italy but Marcian sends troops to Ravenna and Pope Leo leads embassy to Attila's camp near Mantua to call on him to retire; probably due to fear of plague and Eastern troops not Church displeasure, Attila retires to Pannonia.

**East**

**28 July** Eutyches and assorted monkish supporters are banished from Constantinople.

Patriarch Juvenal returns to Jerusalem from Chalcedon to impose orthodoxy, but is evicted by mob of 'Monophysite' monks and supporters with assistance of Empress Eudocia; they install Theodosius as Patriarch and defy government.

Aspar's son Ardaburius fights Arab raiders in Palestine.

**453 East**

Death of Pulcheria, aged 54; Marcian sole ruler.

**East/West**

Death of Attila during night after riotous wedding-feast to celebrate his marriage to Ildico; succeeded by son Ellac but subject tribes plot revolt? with Marcian's encouragement.

Imperial troops restore order to Palestine and evict Patriarch Theodosius of Jerusalem; Juvenal restored.

**454 West/East**

Studius (East), later the founder of the prestigious 'Monastery of Studius/Studios' in Constantinople, and Aetius (West) consuls.

Hunnic power destroyed in rebellion of subject tribes, led by Ardaric's Gepids, at battle of the Nedao; Eliac killed and brother Gerdich leads Huns in retreat from Pannonia to Steppes north of Black Sea.

**21 September** Instigated by eunuch Heraclius and Praefect of Rome, wealthy and ambitious Petronius Maximus, jealous Valentinian murders Aetius in Palace

## Armenia

King Vardan killed in battle by Persians at Avarair.

## 455 West

**16 March** Petronius Maximus persuades two retainers of Aetius to kill Valentinian III while riding on the Campus Martius; **17 March** he secures throne, forces Eudoxia to marry him, and betrothes his son Palladius to her elder daughter Eudocia; the Empress secretly appeals to Gaiseric who sets sail for Italy bent on revenge.

**31 May** Petronius Maximus lynched by mob as tries to flee Rome; Pope Leo goes out to meet Gaiseric and request no massacre; **3–15 June** Vandals methodically pillage Rome and carry off most of treasures and many captives to Carthage, including Empress Eudoxia and daughters of whom Eudocia is married to Gaiseric's son Hunneric.

**9/10 July** Marcus Flavius Eparchus Avitus, elderly noble appointed 'Master of Both Services' in Gaul by Maximus, proclaimed Emperor by Gothic king Theodoric II at Toulouse; he is escorted to Italy via Imperial investiture at Arles.

## East

Marcian sends embassy to Africa to remonstrate with Gaiseric and unsuccessfully requests return of Imperial captives.

? Marcian marries his daughter Euphemia to patrician Anthemius, grandson of Praetorian Praefect (408–14) Anthemius who? avoids becoming heir due to Aspar's antagonism.

Ex-Empress Eudocia (Athenais) consults St. Euphemius on St. Simeon Stylites' advice and repents of causing civil disturbances in East.

## East

? Marcian settles Ostrogoths in Northern Thrace as 'foederati' to defend the Danube.

## 456 West

Avitus assumes consulship at Rome; his new general Count Ricimer, Suevic mercenary grandson of Wallia the Visigoth, defeats Vandal attack on Sicily then defeats Vandal fleet off Corsica; Avitus unpopular in Rome due to famine and extortions to pay Goths; Ricimer leads revolt and pursues Avitus from Rome, capturing him at Placentia and **17/18 October** forcing him to abdicate and become bishop of city; Ricimer rules Italy and Avitus soon murdered by him.

## East

?**December** Basil succeeds the late Maximus as Patriarch of Antioch.

## 457 East

**26 January** Marcian falls ill with gout during procession to Hebdoman to commemorate the 447 earthquake ten years before.

**27 January** Death of Marcian, aged ?65; Aspar, as 'Master of Soldiers' at capital, has decisive rôle in election but does not put himself forward as he is an Arian and successfully promotes his personal/military steward Leo the Thracian, tribune of 'Mattiarii' regiment; Senate elects Leo and **7 February** he is acclaimed by the assembled Guards and officials then crowned by Patriarch Anatolius (first Patriarchal coronation) in nearby palace at the parade-ground of Hebdoman; he then returns to capital for ceremonial entry.

Aspar chief minister; his eldest son Ardaburius 'Master of Soldiers' in Thrace.

**Easter** Patriarch Proterius of Alexandria lynched and replaced by intriguing Timotheus 'Aelurus' ('the Cat').

## West

**1 April** Sanctioned by Leo, Ricimer makes new 'Master of Soldiers' Julius Valerianus Majorian(us) Emperor.

## 458 West

Majorian enters Gaul; relieves Arles from attack by Theodoric II the Visigoth and confirms his status as 'foederatus'. ? In preparation for African war, Count Marcellinus sent from Dalmatia to Sicily.

## **Persia**

Death of 'Great King' Yazdegerd; succeeded by son Firuz.

## **East**

**July** Gennadius succeeds Anatolius as Patriarch of Constantinople; Anastasius succeeds Juvenal as Patriarch of Jerusalem.

**13–14 September** Severe earthquake at Antioch and much damage, including at St. Simeon Stylites' complex near the city.

?Raid by the Huns or the Tzani on Pontus.

## **459 West**

Majorian enters Spain and starts to construct fleet to attack Vandals.

## **East**

Patricius (probably not Aspar's eponymous son) consul.

Death of St. Simeon Stylites, still living on column at 'Qalat Symeon' near Antioch; his carefully-secured relics placed at center of cathedral complex as focus for pilgrims.

Leo makes Vivius, opponent of Aspar, Praetorian Praefect.

Theodemir, Ostrogothic, chieftain of Eastern 'federates' in Thrace, sends his young son Theodoric (future king of Italy) to Constantinople for education as hostage at court for his loyalty.

## **460 West**

Majorian's fleet destroyed by Gaiseric at Alicante; he recognises Gaiseric's conquests.

## **East**

**August** Leo deposes Patriarch Timotheus 'Aelurus' of Alexandria; succeeded by Timotheus III ('Salophacialus').

**461 West**

Majorian returns via games at Arles to Italy, discredited and powerless, and despite popularity is unable to resist Ricimer who **2 August** seizes him at Tortona and beheads him.

**10 November** Death of Pope Leo.

**19 November** Ricimer makes obscure aristocrat, Libius Severus, Emperor.

**19 November** Hilarius becomes Pope.

Count Marcellinus withdraws to Dalmatia from Sicily after Ricimer instigates mutiny of troops; rules the province in alliance with Leo and is assisted by nephew Julius 'Nepos' (later emperor).

**462 East**

Treaty between Leo and Gaiseric re-establishes (temporary) peace and allows for return of Valentinian III's wife Eudoxia and younger daughter Placidia to Constantinople, but elder daughter Eudocia remains married to Gaiseric's son Hunneric and dowry sent; Gaiseric's annexation in West accepted.

**463 East**

Ex-consul Studius founds monastery of St. John in the South-West district of Constantinople, near Propontis and 'Golden Gate' in Long Walls, it becomes the leading monastic centre in capital for centuries ahead.

? Placidia marries the aristocrat Olybrius in Constantinople (Anician relative).

**464 East**

Olybrius the future Emperor, married to Princess Placidia (daughter of Valentinian III), Eastern consul.

Expedition into Lazica to suppress defiance of King Gobazes, who agrees to abdicate in favour of his son in peace-treaty but later manages to persuade Leo in personal interview in capital to retain him.

**465 East**

Aspar's son Ermaneric and Leo's wife Verina's brother Basiliscus consuls.

## West

**15 August** Death of Libius Severus, possibly murdered by Ricimer.

## East

**2 September** Disastrous fire in Constantinople, consuming area around Forum of Constantine, Acropolis, and Harbour of Julian.

## 467 East/West

Huns and Goths cross Danube and raid Balkans, but quarrel and are defeated by Marcian's son-in-law Anthemius, Gaiseric raids Peloponnesse.

Leo decides to send Anthemius, potential rival, to West to fight Vandals and secures Ricimer's agreement; Anthemius' daughter to marry Ricimer.

Count Marcellinus and army accompanies Anthemius to Italy; **12 April** he is proclaimed Emperor near Rome and later takes up office with Ricimer as commander-in-chief.

? Leo marries elder daughter Ariadne to Isaurian chieftain Tarasius who is renamed 'Zeno' and takes charge of a new corps of Isaurian guards, the 'Excubitors', formed as a challenge to Aspar's power; struggle between Aspar and Zeno follows.

## 468 East/West

c. ?100,000 soldiers and ?1000 vessels in giant expedition sails against Vandal Africa, commanded by Empress Verina's incompetent and vain brother Basiliscus; Western troops under Marcellinus join in to attack Sardinia and Eastern general Heraclius lands another force in Tripolitania to advance by land, but after Vandal fleet defeated Basiliscus delays landing and attack on Carthage; Gaiseric sends fire-ships which decimate fleet and Basiliscus flees to Sicily; expedition abandoned and Basiliscus returns home to such resentment that he seeks sanctuary in Hagia Sophia.

## Persia

'Great King' Firuz executes the Jewish leader in his lands, 'Exiliarch' Mar Huna, and thousands of followers in persecution.

## West

**29 February** Death of Pope Hilarius; **3 March** Simplicius elected.

## 469 East

Zeno consul; as 'Master of Soldiers' in Thrace he fights incursion of Huns, but has to escape attempted assassination near Sardica by soldiers hired by Aspar; Leo transfers him to command safer Eastern armies.

Peter 'the Fuller', 'Monophysite' supporter, installed as Patriarch of Antioch by Zeno to replace absent Martyrius.

## 470 East

Aspar induces Leo to make his second son Patricius 'Caesar' and thus probable heir, and to betroth him to younger daughter Leontia; monks lead demonstrations against Patricius as Arian and Leo assures he is about to convert. ? Zeno suppresses Isaurian rebel Indacus.

## 471 East

Anagast, German 'Master of Soldiers' in Thrace, arrested for attempted revolt and implicates Ardaburius, who then tries to meddle with Isaurian guards' loyalty; Zeno recalled as far as Chalcedon; Aspar and Ardaburius are summoned to palace and murdered by eunuchs, 'Caesar' Patricius wounded, but younger son Ermaneric escapes; Aspar's follower Count Ostrys breaks into palace but driven out by 'Excubitors' guards-regiment, and flees to Thrace where he assists revolt of Ostrogothic 'federates' under Theodoric 'Strabo' ('the Squinter').

Zeno restored to power, assisted by Isaurian reinforcements who defend capital from German threat but are much resented.

Peter 'the Fuller', 'Monophysite' ex-Patriarch of Antioch, detained in Constantinople.

**November** Acacius succeeds Gennadius as Patriarch of Constantinople.

## West

? Ricimer retires to army base at Milan after dispute with Anthemius.

**472 West/East**

Hostility between Anthemius' government in Rome and Ricimer's headquarters in Milan; Bishop Epiphanius of Ticinum fails to mediate. Leo sends the suspected aristocrat Olybrius, married to Valentinian III's daughter Placidia and threat to him, to Rome to mediate and tells Anthemius to kill him, but Ricimer intercepts letter and **April** marches on Rome, proclaiming Olybrius emperor; Rome is besieged, Imperial troops defeated, and **11 July** Anthemius found hiding in church of St. Chrysogonus disguised as beggar and killed; Olybrius rules Italy as Ricimer's puppet.

**Late August** Death of Ricimer; his nephew Gundobad succeeds as 'Master of Soldiers' and rules Italy; **2 November** Olybrius dies of dropsy and Gundobad keeps throne vacant.

**473 West**

Gundobad makes his 'Count of Domestics' Glycerius emperor **5 March**; he diverts Ostrogothic attack to Gaul.

**East**

Theodoric 'Strabo' made 'Master of Soldiers' in Thrace with subsidy.

Leo I's health deteriorates and **November** he makes his infant grandson Leo co-emperor

**474 East**

**18 January** Leo I dies, aged around 65; grandson Leo II succeeds under Zeno's regency; **9 February** Zeno crowned co-emperor in Hippodrome on Senate's formal request.

**West**

Leo I's choice for emperor, Verina's niece's husband Julius Nepos, commander in Dalmatia, invades Italy; Glycerius is abandoned or defeated, Gundobad retires to Burgundy, and **24 June** Julius proclaimed Emperor in Rome as Glycerius surrenders at Portus and is ordained Bishop of Ostia.



## East

**17 November** Death of Leo II, aged around 5; Zeno succeeds as Emperor and concludes final peace with Gaiseric; Theodoric 'Strabo' revolts in Thrace and kills 'Master of Soldiers' but is defeated by Zeno's Isaurian adviser Illus. Verina plots against Zeno on behalf of her lover Patricius, ex-'Master of Offices', and wins over Illus and brother Trocandrus.

## 475 East

**9 January** Verina instigates riots in Constantinople and persuades Zeno to flee danger of attack to Chalcedon then instigates coup; populace massacres Isaurians and Zeno flees to Isauria with small force, but Senate chooses Basiliscus not Patricius as Emperor and she is excluded from power; Basiliscus executes Patricius.

Basiliscus makes wife Zenonis 'Augusta' and son Marcus 'Caesar'; nephew Armatus, an extravagant fop and Zenonis' lover, made 'Master of Soldiers' which alienates Theodoric 'Strabo'.

Basiliscus favours 'Monophysites' – Patriarchs Timothy 'Aelurus' restored to Alexandria and Peter to Antioch; he issues encyclical letter condemning Council of Chalcedon and *Tome* of Leo I.

Basiliscus favours visiting 'Monophysite' Patriarch Timotheus 'Aelurus' of Alexandria and allows other Eastern Patriarchs to declare autonomy from authority of Constantinople; Patriarch Acacius drapes Hagia Sophia in black and the orthodox resist Basiliscus. Zeno holds out at Salmon, Isauria.

## West

Revolt of Count Orestes, Attila's former secretary, against Julius Nepos who flees Rome to Ravenna and **28 August** as Orestes advances sails to Salona, Dalmatia; he maintains rule there as Emperor, but is deposed in Italy as **31 October** Orestes raises his teenage son Romulus to Imperial rank (nicknamed 'Augustulus', the 'little Augustus') as his puppet – the last Western emperor.

## 476 East

Illus and Trocandius are sent against Zeno but, encouraged by letters from ministers in capital, desert to Zeno who marches on capital; Basiliscus recalls ecclesiastical edicts to conciliate people and sends Armatus against Zeno, but Zeno

offers Armatus 'Master of Soldiers' for life and 'Caesarship' for son and he avoids Zeno's army; Zeno invests Armatus' son, the younger Basiliscus, at Nicaea.

**August** Zeno enters Constantinople unopposed, and Basiliscus is captured fleeing with his family, sent to Cucusus in Cappadocia in exile as promised his life, and later killed with family; once Zeno is securely on throne Armatus is assassinated at Illus' instigation and son Basiliscus soon made a monk at Blachernae (later Bishop of Cyzicus); Illus is chief adviser to Zeno and 'Patrician' and 'Master of Offices' and Basiliscus' 'Monophysite' supporters exiled.

The Palestinian abbot Theodosius founds monastery at 'Grotto of the Magi', Bethlehem.

## West

German 'federates' revolt against Orestes' land-settlement, wanting full division of Italian lands as in Gothic territories, and elect Odovacer, son of Edeco the Scirian, as king; Orestes flees army to Ticinum which is stormed, and **23 August** he is executed at Placentia; Romulus Augustulus captured at Ravenna, deposed, and sent to Campania.

## Primary sources

Brian Croke, *Christian Chronicles and Byzantine History, Fifth and Sixth Centuries* (Variorum Press, Vermont, 1992).

*The Chronicle of John Malalas: A Translation*, Elizabeth & Michael Jeffreys and Roger Scott (Australian Association for Byzantine Studies, Melbourne, 1996).

*The Chronicle of Theophanes Confessor: Byzantine and Near Eastern History AD 284–813*. (translated with an introduction and commentary by Cyril Mango and Roger Scott) (Clarendon Press, 1997).

*Chronicon Paschale 284–628 AD*, transl. Michael Whitby (Translated Texts for Historians, vol. IX) (Liverpool University Press, 1989).

*The Histories of Ammianus Marcellinus*, translated and edited by J.C. Rolfe, 3 vols, Cambridge, Mass. (1935–9).

*Marcellinus Comes ('History' of Count Marcellinus)*, ed. Theodore Mommsen (*Auctores Antiquissimi*, vol. 11, 1894).

Theodoret of Cyrillus, *History*, translated by B. Jackson, in *Select Library of the Nicene and Post-Nicene Fathers* (New York, 1893).

Zosimus' 'New History', translation with commentary by Ronald T. Riley (Australian Association for Byzantine Studies, Melbourne, 1982)

## Secondary sources

Timothy Barnes, *Constantine and Eusebius* (Cambridge, Mass., 1981).

—, *Athanasius and Constantine* (Cambridge, Mass., 1993).

- R.C. Blockley, *East Roman Foreign Policy; Formation and Conduct From Diocletian to Anastasius* (Leeds, 1992).
- J.B. Bury, *History of the Later Roman Empire from the death of Theodosius I to the death of Justinian*, vol. 1 (Dover, New York, 1958).
- R. Browning, *The Emperor Julian* (Berkeley, 1976).
- Alan Cameron & Jacqueline Long, *Barbarians and Politics at the Court of Arcadius* (Berkeley, 1993).
- Owen Chadwick, *The Church in Ancient Society: From Galilee to Gregory the Great* ((Oxford, 2001).
- W.H.C. Frend, *The Rise of the Monophysite Movement: Chapters in the History of the Church in the fifth and Sixth Centuries* (Cambridge, 1972).
- Edward Gibbon, *The Decline of the Roman Empire* (vols 2 & 3 of Everyman edition).
- Andre Grabar, *Byzantium from the Death of Theodosius to the Rise of Islam* (London, 1966).
- Michael Grant, *The Fall of the Roman Empire: A Reappraisal* (London, 1976).
- Patrick Gray, *The Defence of Chalcedon in the East, 451–553* (Leyden, 1979).
- A.H.M. Jones, *The Later Roman Empire, AD 284–602* (Oxford, 1964).
- , *The Decline of the Ancient World* (Longmans, 1966).
- J. Lieberscheutz, *Barbarians and Bishops: Army, Church and State in the Age of Arcadius and Chrysostom* (Oxford, 1990).
- E.N. Luttwak, *The Grand Strategy of the Roman Empire* (Baltimore, 1976).
- John Matthews, *Western Aristocracies and Imperial Court, AD 364–425* (Clarendon Press, 1975).
- , *The Roman Empire of Ammianus* (London, 1989).
- Stephen Williams and Gerald Friell, *Theodosius: The Empire At Bay* (Batsford, 1994).

## Articles

- American Journal of Ancient History*, vol. 3 (1998): T.D. Barnes, 'Emperors and Bishops, AD 324–344: Some Problems'.
- Byzantina Zeitschrift*, vol. 74 (1981): R.M. Harrison, 'The Emperor Zeno's Real Name', pp. 27–8.
- Byzantion*, vol. 45 (1975): Evagre, '*Histoire Ecclesiastique*', Traduction par A.J. Festiguere', pp. 187–488. (Translation of Evagrius' *Ecclesiastical History*).
- Byzantion*, vol. 48 (1978): Brian Croke, 'The Date and Circumstances of Marcian's decease, AD 457', pp. 5–9.
- Byzantion*, vol. 51 (1981): Brian Croke, 'Two Early Byzantine Earthquakes and their Liturgical Commemoration', pp. 122–47.
- Byzantion*, vol. 55 (1985): M. Whitby, 'The Long Walls of Constantinople', pp. 560–83.
- Byzantion*, vol. 61 (1991): Mark Johnson, 'The Burial Places of the Theodosian Dynasty', pp. 330–9.
- Byzantion*, vol. 62 (1992): T.D. Barnes, 'Per Vim, Per Caedem, Per Bellum: A study of Murder and ecclesiastical Politics in the Year 337 AD', pp. 158–76.
- Byzantion*, vol. 69 (1999): R.W. Burgess, 'The Dates of the First Siege of Nisibis and the Death of James of Nisibis', pp. 7–17.
- Byzantine and Modern Greek Studies*, vol. 15 (1991): A. Laniardo, 'Some Problems in the Sources for the Reign of the Emperor Zeno', pp. 473–80.
- Chiron*, vol. 13 (Munich, 1983): Brian Croke, 'AD 476. The Manufacture of a Turning-Point', pp. 81–119.
- Greek, Roman, and Byzantine Studies*, vol. 24 (Durham, N. Carolina, 1984): Brian Croke, 'Basiliscus the Boy-Emperor', pp. 81–91.

- Harvard Studies in Classical Philology*, vol. 73 (1969): Alan Cameron, 'Theodosius The Great and the Regency of Stilicho', pp. 247–80.
- Hermathena*, vol. 68 (1946): E.A. Thompson, 'The Isaurians Under Theodosius II', pp. 347–67.
- Historia*, vol. 22 (1973): T.S. Burns, 'The Battle of Adrianople: A Reconsideration', pp. 336–45.
- Journal of Roman Studies*, vol. 19 (1952): R. Browning, 'The Riot at Antioch in AD 387'.
- Phoenix*, vol. 34 (1980): T.D. Barnes, 'Imperial Chronology, AD 337–50', pp. 160–6.

*This page intentionally left blank*

# Part III

477–609

*This page intentionally left blank*

## 477 North Africa

**25 January** Death of Gaiseric, aged probably over 70; succeeded by son Hunneric as Vandal king, and Catholics persecuted.

## Empire/Italy

Roman senatorial embassy arrives at Constantinople with the Imperial Insignia, saying that Odovacer can rule Italy sufficiently as representing Zeno as the only Emperor and requesting rank of 'patrician' that previous 'barbarian' real rulers such as Ricimer held; Zeno grants requests and rebuffs a rival claim from Julius Nepos in Illyria to still be Emperor.

Illus becomes 'Master of Offices' and Zeno's chief minister but is resented, both by Empresses Verina and Ariadne and by citizens of the capital.

## 478 Empire

Theodoric Strabo rejects Zeno's terms for stopping plundering Thrace; Zeno sends Illus' brother-in-law Martinianus against him but he is incompetent so Zeno appeals to Theodoric the Amal; the latter insists that Zeno and the Senate swear not to make a separate peace, then arranges to meet Zeno's army at Mount Sondis (Haemus range); however his army comes upon Strabo's instead and the two Theodorics make peace; Zeno threatens war, but instead causes near-mutiny in his army by agreement with Theodoric Strabo who becomes 'Master of Soldiers'; the other Theodoric ravages Thrace.

Verina suborns 'Praefect' of City, Epinicus, to have Illus assassinated; the attempt is foiled though he is wounded; assassin implicates Epinicus who is sacked and sent to a fortress in Eastern Anatolia.

Illus sponsors the appointment of pagan orator and philosopher Pamprepicus of Panopolis, a pupil of Proclus at Athens, to a 'chair' at the Constantinople university but he is resented by the orthodox.

Martyrius succeeds Anastasius as Patriarch of Jerusalem

## 479 Empire

Illus visits the exiled Epinicus, who confesses about Verina; Verina is arrested and sent to Isaurian fortress as nun; **25 September** after earthquake



in Constantinople causes panic, Leo I's son-in-law Marcian, claiming that his wife Leontia should be Empress instead of her elder sister Verina as was born when Leo was Emperor, and his brother Procopius lead anti-Isaurian riots and try to march on the Palace in coûp; loyalists defeated, but next day Illus brings Isaurian troops from Chalcedon and revolt suppressed; Marcian sent to Cappadocia as a monk.

Theodoric Strabo approaches Constantinople alleging he wants to aid Zeno against Marcian but is not trusted, especially after he refuses to surrender two refugee conspirators; Zeno proclaims him a public enemy and he retires to plan revolt, reconciling with Theodoric the Amal.

Ariadne persuades Zeno to obtain Illus' agreement to recall Verina, but Illus refuses so Zeno backs down.

## 480 Italy

Ex-Emperor Glycerius, now a monk in Illyria, assassinates his supplanter Julius Nepos; Odovacer takes over Illyria.

## Empire

? Empress Ariadne hires assassin to murder Illus; they ambush him in passageway from Palace to Hippodrome but only cut ear off.

## 481 Empire

Sabinian assassinated on Zeno's orders; succeeded by John 'the Scythian' as commander in Thrace. Theodoric Strabo and Theodoric the Amal join forces to ravage Thrace; Zeno calls in the Bulgars, but Strabo defeats them and advances on the capital; Illus gets gates guarded in time, and Imperial ships defeat his attempt to cross to Bithynia; Strabo retires to Thrace, and sets out to invade Greece but is killed at the 'Stable of Diomedé' as horse throws him onto spear; succeeded by son Recitach.

Illus, fearing assassination, is transferred to Antioch at own request as 'Master of Soldiers in the East'; ?Pamprepius, his philosopher protégé, driven out of Constantinople as pagan.

Zeno, advised by Acacius and Peter Mongus, promulgates the *Henoticon* doctrine in letter to Church of Egypt: a compromise, declaring Councils of Nicaea (325) and Constantinople (381) sufficient for correct doctrine, denouncing 'Nestorians' and criticising innovations made at Chalcedon;

'Monophysites' largely satisfied but Pope Simplicius denounces it, not least for Imperial decision on doctrine.

## 482 Empire

Death of Patriarch Timotheus 'Salophaciolus' of Alexandria; struggle over succession, and John Talaia is consecrated but **June** evicted by Imperial candidate Peter Mongus; John flees to Rome to appeal to papal authority.

Theodoric revolts against Zeno, invades and ravages Thessaly, and sacks Larissa.

## 483 Empire

Zeno buys Theodoric off with land for followers in Moesia and title of 'Master of Soldiers'.

Illus, in command at Antioch, plots treason and wins over ecclesiastical opponents of *Henoticon* but also contacts the Persians; ? his pagan ally Pamprepius of Panopolis rejoins him (either now or during 484 rebellion) as 'quaestor'.

## Italy

**10 March** Death of Pope Simplicius, **13 March** Felix elected Pope under supervision of 'Praetorian Praefect' Basilius, he denounces the *Henoticon* and receives ex-Patriarch John Talaia of Alexandria, whose removal is declared illegal; Acacius summoned to Rome but wins over Felix's legates.

## Persia

Persians attack Iberia and fight Mamikonid prince Vahan.

## 484 Persia

**January** 'Great King' Firuz, ally of Illus, killed by Epthalite Huns on the River Oxus and Persia is invaded; son Palasch succeeds.

## **Empire**

**January** Theodoric consul; Illus revolts and proclaims Leo I's son-in-law Marcian as Emperor, he rescues Verina from her Isaurian prison and at Tarsus she proclaims that she is rightful ruler and her choice is 'Patrician' Leontius to whom Illus transfers allegiance; they enter Antioch and Patriarch Calandrio crowns Leontius, but Zeno sends army under 'Master of Soldiers', John 'the Scythian', and (temporarily) Theodoric and Illus' pagan followers such as Pamprepius can be used in propaganda against him; rebels defeated and besieged in Isaurian fort, Cheris, where Verina soon dies.

## **North Africa**

**23 December** Death of Hunneric the Vandal; succeeded by nephew Gunthamund.

## **Italy**

Pope Felix denounces his legates' laxity and **28 July** excommunicates both them and Acacius, withdrawing recognition of the latter as Patriarch; a monk pins his excommunication on Acacius' vestments as he is celebrating mass, and he excommunicates Felix in return – the 'Acacian Schism'.

## **Empire**

Cottomenes succeeds Theodoric as 'Master of Soldiers', Longinus of Kardala 'Master of Offices' – both Isaurians.

? Justatus leads Samaritan revolt in Palestine; Caesarea sacked.

## **485 Empire**

Death of Proclus, head of the 'Academy' at Athens; succeeded by Marinus. Zeno's brother Longinus 'Princeps' of Senate.

## **486 Persia**

Synod of Christian leadership declares in favour of 'Nestorianism'.

## Empire

Sallustius succeeds Martyrius as Patriarch of Jerusalem.

Patriarch Calandio of Antioch sacked for supporting Illus, Peter restored.

Theodoric quarrels with Zeno and devastates Thrace.

Zeno quarrels with Odovacer, ? over suspected negotiations with Illus, and stops recognizing his Western consuls.

## Persia

Death of 'Great King' Palasch; succeeded by brother Kavadh.

## 487 Italy

Zeno commissions the Rugians to invade Italy from Pannonia beyond Danube to remove Odovacer.

Odovacer attacks them first and captures and executes King Felethius.

## Empire

Theodoric advances on Constantinople; Zeno's envoys meet him at Rhegium and induce him to retire to Moesia.

## North Africa

Gunthamund halts persecution of Catholics and recalls exiled priests.

## 488 Empire

**Early** Zeno allows Theodoric to enter Constantinople to celebrate 'Triumph'.

Zeno captures Illus and Leontius at fortress of Cherris in Isauria; their execution ends rebellion.

Zeno commissions Theodoric to invade Italy and take over from Odovacer as his nominee, thus restoring Imperial 'authority' but ridding the Balkans of the Ostrogoths; Theodoric agrees.

**Autumn** Theodoric defeats the Gepids at Sirmium, occupies the town, and later marches on into Illyria as they reoccupy it behind him.

## 489 Empire

Zeno closes 'Monophysite' theological school at Edessa; many scholars migrate into Persia.

Deposition of Peter III 'Mongus', Patriarch of Alexandria.

## Italy

**August** Theodoric and the Ostrogoths cross the River Sontius (Isonzo) into Italy and storm Odovacer's fortified camp, commencing invasion.

## Empire

Death of Patriarch Acacius of Constantinople; succeeded by Fravitta (German descent), who Papacy does not recognise.

## 490 Italy

**11 August** Theodoric defeats Odovacer at the River Adda with Visigothic help; he overruns Northern Italy and besieges Odovacer in Ravenna.

## Empire

Euphemius succeeds Fravitta as Patriarch of Constantinople.

Athanasius II becomes Patriarch of Alexandria.

## 491 Empire

**9 April** Death of Zeno, aged around 60; despite the claims of his brother Longinus the Senate supports widow Ariadne who **10 April** appears to crowds in Imperial Box ('Cathisma') at Hippodrome to announce that she will choose a new husband and Emperor; Isaurian 'Praefect' of city arrested to prevent coup, replaced by Julian; Ariadne chooses the 'Silentiary' (Palace

official) Anastasius of Dyrrachium, around Zeno's age, who is brought to Palace and acclaimed, but as he is rumoured to be 'Monophysite' Patriarch Euphemius makes him sign statement of orthodoxy, **20 April** Anastasius marries Ariadne and crowned.

Longinus stirs up riots by racing-factions, and is arrested and exiled to Egypt; Isaurian soldiers in army are dismissed in case of revolt and join revolt in Isauria; rebels set out for capital but defeated at Cotyaeum by 'Master of Soldiers' John the Scythian.

Anastasius refuses Persian request for financial aid to pay for defence of Caucasian passes against raiding Huns.

## 492 Empire

John 'the Hunchback' defeats Isaurians again and starts prolonged campaign to reconquer their mountain fortresses.

### Italy

**1 March** Death of Pope Felix III; Gelasius consecrated as Pope, and receives Patriarch Euphemius' overtures but insists that Acacius' name cannot be accepted in official 'diptychs' and that he as Pope can rule on the issue; he subsequently informs Anastasius in a letter that of the two powers in the world, spiritual (church) and temporal (Emperor), the Pope as head of Church is superior as responsible for salvation.

**August** Having built fleet, Theodoric starts naval blockade of Ravenna.

## 493 Empire

First Bulgar invasion of Thrace; 'Master of Soldiers' Julian killed.

'Praefect' Julian of Constantinople mishandles theatre riots and Anastasius mishandles Hippodrome riots; statues of Anastasius and Ariadne smashed and dragged through streets by mob.

### Italy

Theodoric persuades Odovocar to surrender on easy terms **25 February**, enters Ravenna, then **15 March** kills him at banquet; undisputed ruler of Italy.

## East

**11 December** Death of St. Daniel, the pre-eminent 'Stylite' of the era, after 33 years on pillar near Constantinople.

## 494 Empire

(St.) Sabas becomes head of 'Great Lavra' monastery in Palestine, appointed by Patriarch Sallust; Sallust succeeded by Elias.

Diogenes, relative of Empress Ariadne, besieged in Claudiopolis by raiding Isaurians; relieved by general John 'the Hunchback', who ambushes Isaurians in a mountain-pass and Diogenes sallies to assist his victory; rebel leader, ex-bishop Conon, killed; ? Justin the Illyrian, later Emperor, comes to notice as a successful officer in Isaurian war.

## 495 Italy

Pope Gelasius condemns the celebration of pagan 'Lupercalia' in Rome.

## Empire

Anastasius secures trial and dismissal of Patriarch Euphemius, accused of supporting Isaurians, by Synod for 'Nestorianism'.

## 496 Empire

Macedonius, moderate 'Chalcedonian', Patriarch of Constantinople.

## North Africa

Thrasamund succeeds brother Gunthamund as King of Vandals; starts to close Catholic churches and persecute the orthodox.

## Italy

**21 November** Death of Pope Gelasius; **24 November** Anastasius II elected and sends conciliatory letter to Anastasius promoting reunion.

## 497 Empire/Italy

Papal embassy to Constantinople, simultaneous with one from Theodoric requesting recognition, Pope Anastasius agrees to recognize Acacius' appointees but not him, and Roman/Alexandrian church representatives work out a declaration of faith close to *Henoticon*; Emperor Anastasius agrees to recognise Theodoric in return for acceptance of *Henoticon* and sends him the Western Imperial Insignia; opposition in Rome to compromise heightened after Pope receives pro-Acagian deacon Photinus from Thessalonica.

? Anastasius starts construction of 'Long Wall' across Thrace from Black Sea to Propontis, 30 miles West of capital, to halt barbarian raids.

## 497/8 Empire

Isaurian revolt concluded by Priscus and leaders Longinus and Athenodorus executed at Nicaea; Isaurians deported to Thrace to re-settle ravaged lands.

## 498 Empire

John 'the Scythian', general, Eastern consul.

Financial reforms, led by Marinus and 'Court of Sacred Largesses' John: abolition of unpopular sales-tax, the *Chrysargyon*.

New copper coinage issued.

Creation of 'Vindex Civitatis' ('defender of city'), new position of State-controlled supervisor of local tax-collection to decrease corruption.

? Free issue of soldiers' rations and equipment replaced with more generous allowances to cover cost of purchase.

'Greens' petition Anastasius to release several leading members from prison; Anastasius refuses so they stone him in Hippodrome and have to be put down by troops; Plato appointed 'Praefect' of Constantinople.

Bulgars raid Thrace; 'Master of Soldiers' Priscus killed.

Al Nu'man's Arabs from Hira raid Syria but are defeated by 'dux' Eugenius, commander at Melitene; more Arabs raid Palestine but are driven out by frontier-troops under 'dux' Romanus.



## **Italy**

**19 November** Death of Pope Anastasius II; **22 November** majority of clergy elect Symmachus at Lateran but senators and others elect rival Laurentius at Sta Maria Maggiore; serious faction-fighting; Theodoric summons rivals and rules for Symmachus.

## **499 Empire**

John 'the Hunchback', general, Eastern consul.

Anastasius bans wild-beast-hunts in Hippodrome after more rioting by 'Blues' and 'Greens'.

Famine and plague in Osrhoene (Western Mesopotamia).

## **c. 500 Caucasus**

Death of King Vakhtang 'Gorgesal' ('Wolf-Lion'), greatest early king of Iberia, after a reign of allegedly 64 years.

## **500 Empire**

Anastasius' eldest nephew Hypatius Eastern consul.

## **Italy**

Theodoric visits Rome, and received by Symmachus and the Senate.

## **501 Persia**

'Great King' Kavadh is restored to Persian throne in invasion by Ephthalite Huns, and Hamazasp abdicates; Kavadh has difficulty raising payment to his allies and unsuccessfully asks Empire for money.

## Empire

Severe faction-rioting and Anastasius' illegitimate son killed in 'Green' massacre following disturbances at 'Brytae' pagan festival which is banned.

## Italy

Symmachus' enemies complain of his actions to Theodoric, and he is summoned to Ravenna but loses heart and retreats to St. Peter's; Theodoric listens to enemies and appoints 'administrator' of see pending enquiry.

## 502 Italy

**Spring** Theodoric calls synod to sort out Symmachus/Laurentius dispute.

## Empire

Bulgars raid Thrace; Arabs raid Syria.

Kavadh demands that Anastasius pay tribute to preserve peace; he refuses so war follows.

**September** Persians invade Armenia; **October** Theodosiopolis captured by treachery and sacked; Martyropolis captured and Amida besieged; Anastasius sends envoy Rufinus to negotiate with besiegers but he is detained.

**Late** Eugenius, 'dux' of Melitene, recaptures Theodosiopolis.

## Italy

**23 October** Theodoric's synod decides that Symmachus is innocent and Pope can only be judged by God; triumphalist Symmachus' attack on alienating Church property leads to Goths restoring Laurentius to Lateran, and schism continues.

## 503 Empire

**11 January** Persian soldiers scale the walls of Amida at a place where drunken monk guards are asleep and storm the city, massacring population; other

sieges fail and Anastasius sends an army of around 52,000 men under his nephew Hypatius and generals Areobindus and Patricius; they quarrel over campaign-route towards Amida and split up so Persians can respond effectively; **September** Aerobindus besieged in Edessa.

## 504 **Empire**

Anastasius' minister Celer leads military expedition into Mesopotamia, and Imperial army goes on to raid Persian Armenia; 'Master of Soldiers' Patricius besieges and retakes Amida.

### **Italy**

? (St.) Benedict flees dissolute Roman society to live as a hermit in cave at Subiaco.

## 505 **Empire/Italy**

Tension with Theodoric over his aid for the independent chieftain Mundo in Pannonia, who has been raiding Moesia over Danube.

### **Empire/Persia**

Kavadh, campaigning against Huns, requests a truce which is granted; Anastasius pays 39,600 'nomismata' a year.

## 506 **Italy**

Theodoric agrees to confirm Symmachus as rightful Pope; the churches in city are returned to him and Laurentius and his followers driven out.

### **Empire**

Brief renewal of Persian war before **November** peace-treaty; Dara re-fortified.

## Armenia

Armenian and Iberian churches' leadership meet at Dvin and denounce orthodoxy and the Council of Chalcedon.

### 507 Empire

Faction-rioting in circus at Antioch, and the famous charioteer Porphyrius leads raid on a Jewish synagogue at Daphne; Anastasius dismisses 'Count of the East' Basilius; successor Porphyrius expelled and police-chief Menas lynched in new riots, and local Irenaeus made 'Count' instead.

### 508 Empire/Italy

Anastasius sends fleet to raid Apulia in retaliation for Theodoric attacking his ally Clovis the Frank, who receives Imperial consular Insignia after defeating Visigoths and expelling them from Aquitaine.

? Death of Acacius the Hippodrome bear-keeper, father of future Empress Theodora who is aged around 8/10 at time; his widow parades daughters at Games requesting pension from his employers, 'Green' faction; they refuse but rival 'Blues' do not.

### 509 Empire

? Anastasius comes under influence of new 'Monophysite' adviser, Pisidian monk Severus, who was recommended to him by Bishop Philoxenus of Hierapolis.

### 510 Italy

Boethius the philosopher is Western consul.

### 511 Empire

At instigation of 'Monophysite' adviser Severus, Anastasius orders synod to depose Patriarch Macedonius for 'Nestorianism'; succeeded by Timotheus.

Flavian, Patriarch of Antioch, survives a hostile synod at Antioch.

? 'Monophysites' riot at Antioch against Flavian.

## 512 Empire

Anastasius' finance-minister Marinus persuades him to make pro-'Monophysite' changes in the liturgy; **4 November** severe rioting in Hippodrome as 'Blues' and 'Greens' join orthodox demonstrators, and a mob at Forum of Constantine proclaims Areobindus (husband of Theodosius I's descendant Juliana Anicia) Emperor and stones minister Celer and 'Master of Soldiers' Patricus; **6 November** Anastasius appears without crown in Hippodrome and offers to abdicate, and the rising subsides.

**November** Synod at Antioch replaces Patriarch Flavian of Antioch with Severus, a leading Monophysite.

## 513 Empire

Vitalian, 'Count' of the (German and Bulgar) 'Federates' in Thrace, leads his troops in rebellion against Hypatius the Emperor's nephew, 'Master of Soldiers', and declares himself champion of orthodoxy; Hypatius deserted and flees to capital, and Odessus forced to surrender; peasants join Vitalian's army and he advances to suburbs of capital where 'Master of Soldiers' Patricius mediates; rebel's lieutenants are received by Emperor and are told he will call full Church Council; after they desert rebellion Vitalian retires into Thrace, but Anastasius sends out army; first commander Cyril murdered, then Hypatius defeated and captured.

## 514 Empire

**Spring** 'Praefect of the Watch' killed in riots in Hippodrome; Vitalian gathers army and fleet and sets out for Constantinople, but Anastasius sends envoys to meet him at Stenum; it is agreed that a Council of Church will be summoned to Heraclia, Thrace, under Pope's presidency, and truce established; Vitalian 'Master of Soldiers' in Thrace and Hypatius ransomed.

## Italy

**19 July** Death of Pope Symmachus, **20 July** Hormisdas (? Persian descent) consecrated as successor.

**515 Empire**

**Early** Anastasius invites Hormisdas to preside over Church Council at Heraclea but Vitalian does not believe the Emperor's sincerity and revolts again; he marches on Constantinople with Thraclan army, and sets up camp at Pera across the Golden Horn; his forces are defeated at sea and then on land by Marinus, now 'Praetorian Praefect', and he retires to Anchialus amidst many desertions, still hostile but powerless.

**August** Papal embassy arrives at Constantinople; no agreement reached or Church Council called on account of Hormisdas insisting on acceptance of strict orthodoxy and condemnation of Acacius.

Death of Empress Ariadne.

'Sabeiroi' barbarians from the Caucasus raid Southwest into Cappadocia.

**516 Empire**

Orthodox Patriarch Elias replaced by 'Monophysite' John at Jerusalem.

**517 Empire**

Papal request for reunion of Churches sent to Constantinople; no success.

Slavs and Bulgars raid Balkans as far as Thessaly.

**14 October** Death of Patriarch Dioscurus of Alexandria.

? Theodora, now a Hippodrome actress, goes to Alexandria with rich lover.

**518 Empire**

**17 April** John the Cappadocian succeeds Timotheus II as Patriarch of Constantinople.

**9 July** Death of Anastasius, aged around 88 ?; Celer the commander of 'Scholae' and Justin the Illyrian, commander of 'Excubitores' (guards-regiments), are informed and **10 July** at daybreak convene Senate meeting in Palace while people assemble in Hippodrome; various candidates are debated, and eventually Justin is selected as crowds grow restive; he accepts the nomination and is raised on a shield and then presented to crowds from Imperial Box ('Cathisma'), later crowned by Patriarch;

Justin, aged ?68, is a 'Chalcedonian' and return to orthodox doctrine confirmed.

Justin's effective chief minister is his nephew Justinian, born 'Petrus Sabbatius', now aged ?35, who becomes 'Count' of 'Domestics' (guard-regiment).

Justin executes Anastasius' chamberlain Amantius and his candidate for throne, his employee Theocritus.

Comet seen in the Empire.

Vitalian is called to Constantinople and abandons rebellion in return for 'Mastership of Soldiers' in capital with Justinian later becoming his colleague; succeeded in Thrace command by Justin's great-nephew Germanus.

**August** Synod at Jerusalem under Patriarch John to restore orthodoxy within his jurisdiction; Monophysite clerics removed from office.

**September** Synod at Tyre under Bishop Epiphanius to restore orthodoxy in area.

**September** Synod in Antioch restores orthodoxy to Church; Patriarch Severus and 54 other Monophysite bishops deposed; **November** Severus dodges orders to report to Constantinople for trial and flees to Egypt where Patriarch Timotheus III, a 'Monophysite' but too powerful to be removed, gives him sanctuary.

**7 September** Justin writes to Pope Hormisdas, inviting new mission to Constantinople to restore church unity; Justinian and Patriarch John also write, and envoy Gratus takes the letters; **18 December** Gratus arrives in Rome.

Apion, a disgraced 'Patrician' exiled in 510, recalled and made 'Praefect' of Constantinople; recalled 'Patrician' Diogenianus made 'Master of Soldiers' in the East.

## 519 **Italy**

Eutharic, Theodoric's son-in-law, Consul.

## **Empire**

Pope Hormisdas sends legates under Bishop Germanus of Capua and Bishop John to Constantinople; **25 March, Palm Sunday** they are welcomed to capital by Justinian, Vitalian and Anastasius' nephew Pompeius; **26 March** Papal letter presented to Justin and read out; Patriarch John refuses approval over accusations against late Patriarch Acaclus, **27 March** legates meet

Synod at Hagia Sophia, demand that accusations be listed, and 'Deacon' Dioscurus does so and convinces Justin of Acacius' heresy; **28 March** Justin signs 'Formula of Hormisdas', recognizing Chalcedonian orthodoxy and condemning Acacius and successors, and requires Synod to do so; Church unity restored.

? Theodora is abandoned in Alexandria by her lover.

? Death of 'Praefect of City' Apion; succeeded by Marinus.

Anti-Orthodox riots in Ephesus; Dioscurus of Thessalonica sacked for refusing to sign 'Formula'.

## 520 Empire

**February** Death of Patriarch John; succeeded by Epiphanius.

Vitalian Consul; **July** he is murdered, along with advisers Celer and Paul, at a banquet in the Palace at instigation of Justinian who secures his pre-eminency in government.

Demosthenes becomes 'Praetorian Praefect'.

Suppression of 'Olympic' Games at Antioch; Paul, the brutal head of Church hospices in Constantinople, installed as Patriarch to persecute Monophysites there.

?Earthquakes at Dyrrachium and Corinth.

## 521 Empire

Justinian's Consulship; magnificent Games.

### Italy

**March** Hormisdas writes to Justin, accepting new Patriarch Epiphanius and urging force against recalcitrant opponents of Church reunion.

## Empire

? Theodora returns to Constantinople from Egypt, and soon secures Justinian as her lover; their difference in rank means difficulty over marriage.



Patriarch Paul of Antioch abdicates under Imperial pressure over theological views and dies, succeeded by Euphrasius.

## 522 **Italy**

Boethius and Symmachus, two senior Roman Senators in Theodoric's employ, hold both Consulships and no Eastern Consul, by agreement with Justin.

### **Empire/Persia**

Justin refuses a request from 'Great King' Kavadh to 'adopt' Kavadh's son Chosroes as protector (and aid his succession against rivals), claiming a Christian cannot do so for pagan; Anastasius' nephew Hypatius leads inconclusive frontier-talks.

?Justin sends gifts to Zilgbi, king of the Huns on the steppes, which Persian government regards as aimed against them.

### **Caucasus**

Death of Zamnaxes, pro-Persian king of Lazica; his son and successor Tzath proposes to leave Persian alliance for Imperial alliance and visits Constantinople with State reception; he is baptised and conversion of people follows.

## 523 **Empire**

**Spring** Imperial government, ? at Justinian's instigation, launches anti-Arian legislation to force Arians to convert and close churches; particularly aimed at German 'Federate' troops and families.

### **North Africa**

**28 May** Death of Thrasamund King of the Vandals; succeeded by pro-Byzantine Hilderic who halts Arian persecution of Catholics and re-opens their churches.

## Persia

‘Mazdakite’ rebels defeated and massacred.

## Empire

Arab raiders from ‘Lakhimid’ confederation, led by Al-Mundhir, raid Syria as far as Apamea; Justin sends envoys Bishop George and Abram to their capital, Hira, to restore peace and ransom two captured generals.

Slavs raid the Balkans but are defeated by Justin’s great-nephew (Justinian’s cousin) Germanus.

## Italy

Theodoric arrests Boethius and other senators for correspondence with Constantinople discussing possibility of reconquest of Italy.

**6 August** Death of Pope Hormisdas; **23 August** John I elected Pope.

## Arabia

**October** Jewish king Dhu Nuwas of Yemen massacres Christians at Najran amidst persecution of their faith; survivors flee to Egypt appealing for assistance, and cause taken up by Patriarch Timotheus of Alexandria.

## 524 Italy

Theodoric executes Boethius.

## Empire

?Death of Empress Euphemia; Justinian marries Theodora after a delay of several years caused by Euphemia’s disapproval, and a new law permits Senators to marry actresses to ensure its legality.

?Death of Empress Euphemia’s friend St Matrona (aged ?in 90s), the charismatic founding abbess of Constantinople nunnery who has allegedly been in religious life for 67 years (after first joining monastery in male disguise).

Justin writes to Christian King Caleb/Elesboas of Abyssinia/Axum requesting aid to persecuted fellow-Christians in Yemen; expedition arranged.

Archelaus succeeds Demosthenes as 'Praetorian Praefect' of capital.

Peter succeeds John as Patriarch of Jerusalem.

? Journey of the writer Cosmas, who later records the expedition, and Menas from the Red Sea to Ceylon on Abyssinian/Axumite ship.

## 525 Italy

In response to closure of Arian churches in the Empire and forced conversions (especially of Germanic troops) to orthodoxy, Theodoric calls Pope John to Ravenna and instructs him to head embassy to Constantinople to halt it.

### Empire

Justin makes Justinian 'Caesar'.

**25 April** Flood devastates Edessa.

**October** Fire at Antioch.

### East Africa/Arabia

Caleb/Elesboas of Abyssinia/Axum invades the Yemen in answer to Christian appeals, and Byzantine shipping collects his troops at Adulis to transport them over Red Sea; Yemen is overrun and King Dhu Nuwas, defeated on seashore, last seen riding out into sea; Axumites garrison Yemen as Christian province.

## 526 Empire

Arrival of Pope John in Constantinople to grand reception at 12th. Milestone, where Justin prostrates himself before St. Peter's successor; **Easter, 19 April** he celebrates Mass at Hagia Sophia with Latin rite and puts crown on Justin's head in place of Patriarch doing so as usual; agreement in negotiations on most matters but not on crucial allowing forcibly rebaptised Arians to revert to old faith.

**29 May** Catastrophic earthquake at Antioch; around 250,000 killed including Patriarch Euphrasius; Justin sends commission under Carinus to aid rebuilding.

## Italy

Theodoric is furious with returned Pope John for not obtaining reciprocal orthodox/Arian toleration, but probably does not imprison him; **18 May** John dies at Ravenna.

**12 July** Felix IV elected Pope; **30 August** Theodoric dies, and his widowed daughter Amalasantha becomes Regent for her son Athalaric.

## Persia/Iberia

Kavadh demands that the king of Iberia convert to Zoroastrianism and the latter appeals to Justin who sends troops; however Persian invasion overruns Iberia and the royal family flee to Lazica.

## 527 Empire

Incompetent 'Duke' of Mesopotamia Libelarius is dismissed for raid across frontier near Nisibis that ended in flight; replaced by promising young general Belisarius (former officer in Justinian's guards-regiment) who builds new fort near Dara; Justinian's wife Theodora's sister Comito's husband Sittas joins Belisarius to raid Persian Armenia.

Justin starts to decline in health, particularly from an old foot-wound, and Senators and others encourage him to make Justinian co-ruler.

**4 April** Justinian proclaimed 'Caesar' at the Palace; effective co-ruler.

Anti-pagan legislation commences, presumably at the zealously Christian Justinian's instigation.

**1 August** Death of Justin, aged 77; Justinian becomes Emperor and Theodora a particularly forceful Empress.

Death of Juliana Anicia, last known member of Theodosian dynasty.

## 528 Empire

Justinian appoints Anastasius' nephew Pompeius as 'Master of Soldiers' in the East, and creates new 'Army of Armenia'.

**29 November** Antioch virtually destroyed in earthquake.

Kutrigur Bulgars from steppes raid over Danube into Thrace.

Justinian sets up first law-commission, headed by John 'the Cappadocian' and including Tribonian, to revise law-codes.

Grod, King of the Crimean Huns, is baptised at Constantinople and agrees to protect Byzantine province of Cherson.

Anti-pagan legislation; apostates threatened with execution.

## 529 **Empire**

**7 April** First version of Justinian's law-code ('Codex Vetus') issued, updating 'Theodosian Code' and weeding out outdated laws.

Justinian bans the teaching of (pagan) philosophy and law at Athens; this is usually cited as forcing closure of the famous 'Academy' after over 870 years; some teachers under Damascius and Simplicius emigrate to Persia.

? Narses the Armenian, Justinian's trusted eunuch adviser, sent to suppress pagan religion in Egypt.

Serious Samaritan revolt in Palestine, following Christian and Jewish children stoning their synagogues in Scythopolis and Samaritans killing them; Neapolis (Nablus) seized, where rebel leader Julian holds Games, and appeal to Persia, but Justinian sends in troops and up to 100,000 are killed or sold as slaves.

Demosthenes made 'Praetorian Praefect' of Constantinople.

Justinian appoints the Christian Arab Chieftain Al-Harith II, head of 'Ghassanid' tribal federation beyond the Syrian desert frontier, as 'Phylarch' (auxiliary-commander) to lead his troops in Imperial service.

Al-Mundhir, Arab 'Lakhimid' ruler of Hira allied to Persia and hereditary foe of the Ghassanids, raids Syria; Pompeius cannot stop him and is replaced as 'Master of Soldiers' by Belisarius with assistance of 'Master of Offices' Hermogenes.

**Autumn** Tribonian appointed 'Quaestor of the Sacred Palace', chief law-officer, to collect and revise law-codes.

Slavs raid Balkans; general Justin killed, Baduarius defeated, and Comentiolus held for ransom.

## 530 North Africa

Pro-Byzantine Vandal king Hilderic deposed and imprisoned by Gelimer.

### Empire

John 'the Cappodocian' appointed 'Praetorian Praefect' of Constantinople, able but extortionate and ruthless and much hated.

**June** Responding to appeals from Samaritans, Kavadh sends army to attack Dara; Belisarius defeats it in sharp encounter outside gates and Persians retreat.

**Autumn?** Tribonian and law commission issue a collection of new Imperial Laws issued since 527, the 'Fifty Decisions'.

Sittas defeats attack on Armeria by Persian general Mihr-Mihroe.

Slavs raid Balkans but defeated by Mundus.

Rufinus sent as peace-envoy to Persia; no success.

### Italy

**22 September** Death of Pope Felix IV; his nominated successor Boniface II, German, defied by popular choice Dioscurus who however **14 October** dies.

## 531 Empire

Persians invade Syria; **April** Belisarius' generals want him to fight the retreating Persians as they catch them up at Callinicum; troops weakened by Lent fasting so Belisarius unwilling but is forced to fight and is defeated; officers complain of him to Justinian who sends 'Master of Offices' Hermogenes to investigate.

Justinian recalls Belisarius, and Mundus commands until recall in **Autumn**.

### Empire/Persia

**13 September** Death of 'Great King' Kavadh, succeeded by son Chosroes I 'Anushirvan' ('Immortal Soul'); negotiations open with the Empire to restore peace, and continue for about 12 months.

**Autumn?** Tribonian's commission of lawyers starts to collect all civil laws issued in Roman Imperial history; Tribonian assisted by Dorotheus, head of the law school at Beirut, 'Magister Libellorum' Constantine, Constantinopolitan lawyers Theophilus and Cratinus, and Anatolius from Beirut.

## 532 **Empire**

**10 January** Two criminals take refuge in St. Lawrence's church in capital; **Tuesday 13 January** Justinian refuses petitions of both circus-factions at Games to release them and 'Greens' and 'Blues' unite in revolt under cry of *Nika!* ('Victory!') to attack Praetorium Prison, release prisoners, and start fires all over East of city; Hagia Sophia, Senate House, and palace gatehouse ('Chalke') burnt down.

**14 January** Mob ignores new Games; Xeuxippus Baths near Hippodrome burnt and mob demand removal of John 'the Cappadocian', Tribonian, and Eudaimon the City 'Praefect'; Justinian gives way but mob searches for Anastasius' nephews, now in Palace; **15 January** Belisarius and troops barricade the Palace, and severe fighting for several days while fires spread out of control, particularly around the 'Mese' avenue in city-centre; **17 January** Justinian tells Anastasius' nephews and other Senators to leave Palace as food running low and own homes in danger; **Sunday 18 January** Justinian appears in Hippodrome to offer amnesty, but is shouted at and the mob secures Hypatius, Anastasius' eldest nephew, at home, proclaims him at Forum of Constantine with regalia acquired from nearby 'Flacilliana' Palace, and takes over Hippodrome for coronation in Imperial Box ('Kathisma'); the doors from Box to Palace however cannot be forced open.

At Theodora's urging Justinian abandons idea of flight and sends in Belisarius and Mundus with troops to storm Hippodrome from several directions at once; 30,000 killed and order restored, and Hypatius is seized in the Imperial Box by loyal officers and asserts that he is innocent and Justinian should thank him for concentrating his foes in one place.

**23 February** Rebuilding of Hagia Sophia recommences on an immense scale; the architects are Anthemius of Tralles and Isidore of Miletus.

Hypatius and brothers executed; city rebuilt and only limited confiscations.

## **Italy**

**17 October** Death of Pope Boniface II; factional dispute over successor, following recent forced departure to Constantinople as 'apocrisarius' of his choice, Vigilus.

## Empire/Persia

'Endless Peace' confirms Byzantine/Persia peace: Empire keeps Lazica, Persia keeps Iberia, Justinian pays Chosroes 11,000 lb. of gold, and Byzantine frontier commanded from Constantina not Dara (comes into effect in 533).

Justinian holds conference of orthodox and Monophysite theologians.

Death of St. Sabas, great monastic leader in Palestine, founder and Abbot of 'Great Lavra' in Judaeen desert and reviver of 'Origenist' Neoplatonist influence on doctrine among his followers.

## 533 Italy

**2 January** John II consecrated Pope.

## Empire

Justinian prepares expedition to retake Vandal North Africa, and about 18,000 men assembled under Belisarius; opposed by John 'the Cappadocian'.

**15 March** After the religious conference, Justinian issues 'Theopaschite' edict to the Churches of the Empire (and later to Rome) – the unity of the Divine and human in Christ is emphasized, without precise technical explanation in order to appeal to both orthodox and Monophysites.

Pudentius leads pro-Byzantine revolt in Tripolitania; Gelimer sends brother Tata with fleet to suppress revolt in Sardinia. **15 March** Edict confirms Justinian's faith.

**21 June** Imperial fleet sails from Harbour of Julian with Patriarchal blessing;

**August** It arrives at Syracuse and Belisarius hears that Vandals are not expecting him.

**2 September** Fleet lands in Africa; **6 ? September** Troops reach Hadrumentum and meet enemy scouts; **13 September** Advance guard destroys a Vandal advance force, killing Gelimer's brother Ammatius, and then main Vandal army routed at 'Ad Decimum' ('Tenth Milestone'); **15 September** Belisarius enters Carthage and occupies Gelimer's palace as Arian clergy flee; Gelimer rallies at Bulla as Tata returns.

**December** Vandals advance to Tricameron, 20 miles from Carthage, but are routed by Belisarius with c. 800 Vandals killed including Tata; Gelimer escapes pursuit and joins Berbers on Mount Papas which is blockaded, but Belisarius receives others' submission and Gelimer's treasure at Hippo Regius.



**16 December** Tribonian's commission's great collection of all Roman jurists' law issued as 'The Digests'; accompanied by new official law textbook for legal schools, 'The Institutes'.

## 534 **Empire/Africa**

Gelimer is starved out on Mount Papas by Belisarius' Herul lieutenant Pharas and **March** surrenders; he is brought to Belisarius at Carthage and Belisarius hands over command to new arrival Soloman and accompanies Vandal prisoners to Constantinople as Justinian has been told he wants to revolt.

**April** Justinian issues decrees to restore civilian government under 'Praetorian Praefect' in Africa; Soloman in charge, but Arian services banned.

**Summer** Belisarius celebrates grand Triumph in Constantinople, ending at Hippodrome.

## **Italy/Empire**

**2 October** Death of Athalaric; his mother Amalasantha marries kinsman Theodahad, and sends envoys to reassure Justinian that she is still real ruler.

## **Empire**

**16 November** 'Codex Iustinianus' issued by Tribonian and assistants: revised and updated version of 'Code' of 529, containing 12 books of 'Constitutions' issued since the time of Hadrian (117–38).

## 535 **Empire/Italy**

Belisarius Consul.

Anthemius/Anthimus becomes Patriarch of Constantinople through the efforts of Theodora; he has Monophysite sympathies, ?unknown to Justinian.

Theodahad rallies anti-Byzantine Gothic leaders and imprisons Amalasantha; Justinian sends envoy Peter to demand her release but **5 April** she is murdered in bath at Lake Bolsena; Peter recalled and invasion prepared.

Theodahad sends envoys to Justinian for peace, and induces Roman Senate to do likewise; no effect.

**8 May** Death of Pope John II; **13 May** deacon Agapitus elected.

Mundus, 'Master of Soldiers' in Illyricum, overruns Dalmatia and takes Salona **Summer?**; Gothic reinforcements arrive and Mundus' son Maurice killed in ambush then Mundus killed in defeat of main Gothic force.

**Summer** Belisarius lands at Catania, overruns Sicily with only Panormus (Palermo) resisting, and **31 December** enters Syracuse to conclude his consulship.

**Autumn** Goths retake Salona, but driven out by 'Count of Stable' Constantinian.

**Late** Belisarius prepares Italian expedition in Sicily and discovers that adopted son Theodosius is having affair with his wife Antonina; Theodosius flees.

Theodahad sends Pope Agapitus to Justinian to plead for peace.

## 536 Empire

**February** Pope Agapitus arrives in Constantinople and offers Theodahad's peace-terms to no success; he discovers that Patriarch Anthemius is a 'Monophysite' and refuses communion on grounds of uncanonical translation from Trebizond; he refuses bribes and threats and after disputation with Anthemius Justinian agrees latter is heretic and sacks him; Menas made Patriarch but Anthemius' patron Theodora is furious.

### North Africa

**23 March, Easter** Troops at Carthage mutiny over denial of sacraments to Arians, and nearly murder their commander Soloman who escapes to Sicily with connivance of their choice as replacement, Theodore of Cappadocia; mutineers elect Stotzas as leader and prepare to attack city.

## Empire

**22 April** Death of Pope Agapitus at Constantinople.

### North Africa

**April** Belisarius arrives with reinforcements to save Carthage, and defeats mutineers at Membrasa; he has to return to Sicily as his troops there

discontented, and as Numidian troops mutiny too Justinian sends cousin Germanus to command; he defeats Stotzas at Cellas Vatari and executes conspirators in Carthage.

## Empire/Italy

**May–June** Pro-‘Chalcedonian’ orthodox synod in Constantinople, supported by Agapitus’ legates, to confirm Eastern church’s orthodox theology under Menas; Palestinian ‘Origenist’ leaders Theodore Askidas and Domitian among delegates and impress Justinian.

**8 June** On news of Agapitus’ death, Silverius elected Pope in Rome as Theodahad’s candidate; however in Constantinople Theodora has promised the see to ‘Aprocrisarius’ Vigilius in return for him then restoring ex-Patriarch Anthemius, and Vigilius returns to Rome too late for election.

**June** Belisarius lands at Reggium and Gothic commander deserts to him; he marches to Neapolis/Naples, which is besieged for 20 days till soldiers creep in along aqueduct and the city is sacked.

**November** Goths meet at Regata without Theodahad, who is in Rome, and elect non-royal Witigis as King; Theodahad tries to flee to Ravenna but is caught and killed on the road.

Witigis abandons Rome as Franks raid across the Alps and marches into Apennines, **9 December** Belisarius enters Rome, and surrendered Gothic commander Leuderis and keys of city sent to Justinian.

With Rome in Imperial control, Theodora plans to remove Silverius.

## 537 Empire/Italy

Witigis makes peace with Franks, marries Amalasantha’s daughter Matasuntha, and advances on Rome.

**February** Witigis besieges Rome; Belisarius sends away non-combatants.

Aqueducts cut; major assault on Vatican driven off as statues on Mausoleum of Hadrian thrown onto attackers’ heads, but at Theodora’s arranging Antonina produces forged letters from Silverius offering to surrender city to Goths; he is summoned to Pincian Palace before Belisarius and Antonina and **11 March** deposed and deported to Patara in Lycla; **29 March** Theodora’s candidate, deacon Vigilius, imposed as Pope.

1600 cavalry, mostly Bulgars and Slavs, reaches Rome; Belisarius risks battle outside walls but is defeated, the port at Portus taken, and Rome starved with minimal supplies.

Bishop of Patara visits Constantinople to intercede with Justinian on behalf of Silverius; Justinian sends Silverius back to Rome, ordering trial then restoration if innocent, but Vigilius' agents deport him to island in Gulf of Gaeta. Belisarius sends John (nephew of Vitalian) to winter in Picenum with part of army as free from Goths and then to return with reinforcements.

**September** Belisarius sends his secretary Procopius, the historian, to Naples for assistance but promised reinforcements do not arrive; after Antonina goes a convoy arrives at Ostia with 3,000 troops and Goths abandon Portus.

**26 December** Dedication of Cathedral of Hagia Sophia in Constantinople.

**December?** Truce arranged at Rome for three months. **2 December** – Death of Silverius.

## 538 Empire/Italy

John of Cappadocia Consul (first civilian non-Imperial Consul of reign).

Truce between Belisarius and Witigis; John halted in Picenum.

Goths break truce and evidence found of their attempt to use aqueduct to enter Rome, then open attack on Porta Pinciana; Belisarius tells John to advance and he sweeps through Picenum to Ariminium; **March** Goths abandon siege of Rome and retreat across Apennines, harassed by Belisarius; Martin and Ildiger capture crucial pass of 'Tunnelled Rock' while Mundilas sails to Genoa, invades Liguria, and takes Milan; John besieged in Ariminium but relieved by Belisarius; **June** Narses brings reinforcements via Ancona, but quarrels with Belisarius.

Franks, alarmed at Imperial troops' proximity to their territory, prepare for war to aid Goths; 10,000 Burgundians invade Liguria and others cross Alps to aid Witigis' nephew Uraias in advance on Milan.

Sittas killed in action in Armenia; succeeded by Buzes **Autumn** who is harsh but successful against rebels, some of whom flee to Persia seeking aid.

Death of Severus ex-Patriarch of Antioch, 'Monophysite' leader, in exile in Egypt.

## 539 North Africa

Eunuch Solomon becomes 'Praetorian Praefect' and 'Master of Soldiers'; cities rebuilt, army strengthened, and campaign against Berbers to take mountain forts.

## Empire

Appearance of portentous 'Sword-fish' comet. Peter becomes 'Master of Offices'.

## Empire/Italy

**March?** Goths, and a Frankish army under King Theodebert, resist in Northern Italy but advancing Franks kill civilians at Pavia and then attack Witigis' nephew Uraias at Tortona; meanwhile Goths bribe two Ligurian clerics to take appeal for aid to 'Great King' Chosroes and it is favourably received.

Goths retake Milan, slaughter menfolk, and sell women and children to Burgundians as slaves; however the Goths do not trust the Franks and are relieved when an outbreak of dysentery leads to retreat.

Belisarius takes Fiesole and starves Osimo out, then advances on Ravenna, the former Imperial residence in C5th; population starving as public granaries burnt, and John (nephew of Vitalian) and Martin prevent Uraias from relieving it.

## 540 Empire/Italy/Persia

Justinian receives envoys from Witigis requesting that Goths keep Northern Italy; **Winter** he agrees to let them have all land North of Po and half royal treasure, but Belisarius objects and Goths insist on his signature to treaty; he pretends to agree and **May** Ravenna surrenders to find that Belisarius has tricked them; Witigis, leading Goths, and treasury sent to Constantinople where Witigis receives pension; in Northern Italy the Gothic survivors propose Witigis' nephew Uraias who declines in favour of Ildebad, commander at Verona; quarrel between Uraias' and Ildebad's wives leads to Uraias' murder.

**Spring** Kutrigur Bulgar horde invades Balkans; one section raids Greece as far as Thermopylae and the other raids around Thessalonica, sacks

Cassandreia in Chalcidice, marches East to Chersonese, and then raids Thrace and forces the 'Long Wall' of Anastasius before retiring.

**April** Chosroes invades Mesopotamia, besieges Sura, and forces Sergiopolis to pay tribute.

**June** Chosroes invades Syria, with most of usual troops absent in Italy and North Africa; Belisarius' arrival delayed so Burtzes in command at Hierapolis but avoids battle; Justinian sends cousin Germanus and 300 'bucellarii' to Antioch, but they flee as Chosroes burns Berroea and approaches; citizens and racing-factions defend walls but Antioch sacked and burned and 30,000 citizens deported to Ctesiphon; Chosroes bathes in Mediterranean, burns cathedral at Daphne, and raids Apamea to hold races; Justinian promises 5,000 lb. of gold and Chosroes agrees and retreats, but attacks Dara so full amount not paid.

## 541 Empire/Italy

Ildebad, new Gothic leader in Northern Italy, rallies troops to invade Venetia; he is killed in blood-feud by Uraias' men and succeeded by Eraric the Rugian who sends ambassadors to Justinian.

**Winter** John the Cappadocian travels round East on inspection-tour; Antonina worms her way into his gullible daughter Euphemia's confidence to find secrets out.

Belisarius is last Eastern Consul; Antonina's son Photius tells him that Antonina plans affair with his adopted son Theodosius during his imminent Persian war command.

**Spring** Belisarius takes command in Mesopotamia and plans to invade Assyria; King Gobazes of Lazica appeals to Chosroes against extortionate Imperial agent John Tzibus so he secretly detours North to invade Lazica; Gobazes does homage and Imperial force is attacked at main garrison, Petra, where Tzibus killed, tower undermined, and garrison surrenders; Lazica becomes Persian vassal.

Belisarius camps near Nisibis, rescues generals Peter and John Troglita from ambush and besieges Sisaurana; city surrenders but Christian Arab 'Ghassanid' ally Al-Harith goes off raiding Assyria and fails to return so Imperial troops are without safe communications and **Summer** retreat due to heat.

Theodora and Antonina plot against John the Cappadocian; Antonina tells John she and her husband want him to help 'plot' and arrange

rendezvous at Belisarius' palace, 'Rufiniana' near Chalcedon, where Narses and 'Count of Excubitors' Marcellus are called to eavesdrop; they hear John agreeing to treason, and try to arrest him; his guards help him escape and he takes sanctuary in church near Cyzicus; John deposed, replaced by Theodotus as 'Praefect', but avoids clerical duties when ordered to be ordained in case he can be returned to office; Theodora gets him blamed for murder of unpopular bishop and exiled to Arsinoe, Egypt.

**October?** Ildebad's warlike nephew Totila seizes Gothic throne.

**Winter** Belisarius returns to capital and Theodora arranges his reconciliation with Antonina after he found her and Theodosius having an affair on campaign.

**Winter** Photius arrests Theodosius and deports him to secret prison in Cilicia, but Theodora captures and tortures him to make him reveal its location and has Theodosius rescued and restored to Antonina.

## 542 **Empire**

**Spring** Chosroes besieges Sergiopolis but retreats as plague ravages army; the plague enters Empire. Belisarius sent to Mesopotamia and bluffs Chosroes into abandoning campaign, but Callinicum taken as the Persians retreat.

Totila invades Tuscany and besieges Florence; general John makes him retreat but is routed at battle of Mucelium; Totila overruns central Italy, razes Beneventum, and besieges Conon in Naples; Maximin appointed 'Praetorian Praefect' of Italy but while he delays in Epirus Demetrius unsuccessfully attempts naval relief of Naples.

John Lydus, Bishop of Ephesus, sent on anti-pagan campaign in Caria, 'Asia', Lydia, and Phrygia and carries out forced conversions – allegedly 70,000 people converted, 95 temples demolished, and pagan trees and other sacred artefacts wrecked.

Plague strikes Constantinople and the Eastern provinces, devastating population.

Jacob Baradeus and Theodore, Bishop of Bostra, Syrian 'Monophysite' leaders, smuggled into Constantinople to be consecrated bishops by ex-Patriarch Theodosius of Alexandria under Theodora's protection; Jacob commences major 'Monophysite' proselytizing-campaign in Syria.

## 543 Empire/Italy

**January** Justinian issues an edict against the works of Origen (d 254) for his Neoplatonist speculation which has been winning supporters in Palestinian monasteries; all Patriarchs and Pope Vigilius required to sign it.

**Spring** Height of plague in Constantinople – about half population said to have died, and during Justinian’s illness Belisarius is reported to Theodora for allegedly saying he would not accept her as ruler if Justinian died.

Maximin arrives at Syracuse to meet Demetrius’ survivors, but fails in attempt to relieve Naples as storm drives ships ashore.

? Peter Barsymes succeeds Theodotus as ‘Praetorian Praefect’.

**April** Conon surrenders Naples to Goths; Totila gives people food and allows garrison to depart unmolested.

Chosroes invades Atropatene but is forced to retire by plague; despite plague Justinian musters army of 30,000 under ‘Master of Soldiers’ Martin to invade Armenia but they are routed by 4,000 Persians at Anglon; some Eastern commanders recalled after rumours that they agreed not to accept Theodora’s authority if Justinian died in plague; Belisarius accused of support and deprived of his ‘Comitatus’.

Palestinian monk Theodore Askidas advises Justinian on how to reconcile with ‘Monophysites’ by attacking pro-‘Nestorian’ orthodox writers.

Plague spreads on into the Western part of the Empire.

**Autumn?** Belisarius exonerated of plot and reconciled with Antonina.

## 544 Empire

Justinian considers a new way to reconcile with ‘Monophysites’ and **?Early spring** issues an edict condemning the ‘Three Chapters’, the works of Theodore of Mopsuestia (d. 428), Theodoret of Cyrrhus (d. 458 ?) and Ibas of Edessa (d. 457) which ‘Monophysites’ regard as virtually ‘Nestorian’ and offensive; all Patriarchs and Pope required to endorse edict, and though Menas does under protest Vigilius refuses.

**May** Justinian decides to send Belisarius back to Italy, ends his disgrace, and sends him West to raise troops; he has major difficulties in collecting army; meanwhile Totila invades central Italy and his forces take Tarentum.



## North Africa

'Praetorian Praefect' Soloman killed in skirmish at Cillium by rebel Tripolitanian tribes; rebel leader Antalas joined by deserters, while Soloman's nephew Sergius ('Duke' of Tripolitania) takes over command; Visigothic raiders from Spain driven out of Septem/Ceuta, but Sergius unable to stop widespread revolt and Areobindus appointed to military command, Athanasius as civilian Praefect.

## Empire

Chosroes besieges Edessa but is defeated by heroic citizens in attempt to storm city; siege of Theodosiopolis on River Khabur relieved by John Troglita and general Mihr-Mihroe captured.

**Late** Belisarius arrives back in Italy with 4,000 soldiers and Illyrian 'Master of Soldiers' Vitalius; he retakes Tarentum and marches successfully to Rome.

## 545 Empire/Italy

Vitalius sent to command at Bologna/Bononia.

Belisarius, short of soldiers, can only fight inconclusive campaign in central Italy; Totila sends secret emissaries with letter to Rome reminding people of the benefits Theodoric and Amalasantha did for city compared to the horrors of war; Goths take Tibur and massacre citizens.

Justinian sends ambassadors to Ctesiphon to negotiate with Chosroes; 5-year truce agreed, except in Lazica, and Empire pays 400lb gold per annum; Chosroes secures attentions of Greek doctor Tribunus, who persuades him to release a list of prisoners.

Anti-pagan persecution launched in Constantinople; teachers, lawyers, and doctors are among those prosecuted, and 529 victim 'Patrician' Phocas commits suicide.

**22 November** Justinian has Pope Vigilius arrested at Mass and deported from Rome, en route to Constantinople to be forced to agree to Imperial religious policy; taken to Sicily.

## 546 Empire/Italy

**Early** Totila besieges Belisarius in Rome.

## North Africa

‘Duke’ of Numidia, Gantarith, leads mutiny against Areobindus who is dragged from monastery and killed; Athanasius is spared and joins Armenian officer Artabanes (of royal Arsacid line) to lure Guntarith to banquet where their troops kill him and his lieutenants; Artabanes takes over as commander.

## Empire/Italy

Belisarius sends John son of Vitalian, commander of Rome, to Constantinople to get reinforcements; he delays there while marrying the daughter of Justinian’s cousin Germanus, a move that antagonizes Theodora; Justinian sends Narses to Belgrade to recruit more troops and he defeats the first major Slav raid on Illyria.

Leaving Bessas to command in Rome, ? **Summer** Belisarius sails to Dyrrachium to link up with John (son of Vitalian) and reinforcements but they quarrel over campaign plans.

Belisarius takes reinforcements to Portus and Rome; John retakes Southern Italy but halted by Gothic garrison at Capua.

Totila starves Rome out and blocks the Tiber with ships; Belisarius tries to break the boom but is driven off as Bessas fails to sortie from Rome while Belisarius’ lieutenant Isaac disobeys orders to raid Gothic camp and captured and executed; Belisarius abandons attack and returns to Portus where he falls seriously ill.

**17 December** Four Isaurian soldiers open Porta Asinaria to Totila; Rome is thoroughly sacked and Belisarius’ troops flee to Portus; Totila expels the remnants of Senate, and with population mostly abandoning city considers razing the city to make it indefensible; Belisarius persuades him to desist.

## 547 Empire/Italy

Vigilius arrives in Constantinople **January** and indulges in furious controversy with Menas over ‘Three Chapters’; they excommunicate each other.

**April** Belisarius eludes Goths and takes Rome in surprise attack; Totila attacks before he can fortify ruined gates but is driven off.

Persian plot fails to take Dara by surprise.

**June** Vigilius succumbs to Imperial pressure to restore communion with Menas, and takes part in intensive theological arguments over doctrine.

### **North Africa**

Justinian transfers John Troglita from Mesopotamia as commander; he finds Imperial forces withdrawn to Carthage and other cities, and mounts offensive to drive Berbers back.

## **548 Empire**

Inconclusive fighting between Belisarius and Totila, but Goths make no progress.

**11 April** Vigilius gives in to Imperial pressure and sends Menas his 'Iudicatum' saying that 'Three Chapters' should be condemned; the church leaders in Italy and Africa do not follow his lead.

**28 June** Death of Theodora, aged around 50; Justinian's isolation and suspicious nature get worse.

Beirut destroyed in shattering earthquake.

Abnormally high Nile flood; seen as portentous.

**Autumn?** Belisarius sends Antonina to Constantinople in failed effort to get reinforcements; without influence now, Antonina gives up and advises his recall.

### **North Africa**

John Troglita destroys Berber army at 'Field of Cato' and kills leader Carcasan personally with 17 chieftains, Berbers submit, peace restored, and John starts to rebuild prosperity of province.

## **549 Empire**

Hearing that Chosroes intends to deport him, King Gobazes of Lazica appeals to Justinian; Dagistheus and 8,000 men sent and Lazicans revolt in favour of Empire; Persian garrison at Petra besieged but reinforced by Persian

general Mihr-Mihroe from Iberia; Mihr-Mihroe sets up fortified camp near Iberian frontier to protect his supply-route.

## Empire/Italy

**Early** Belisarius recalled from Italy; he is made 'Master of Soldiers in East' and given a personal bodyguard but not allowed to fight again.

Before Belisarius' arrival, Artabanus (related to royal family of Armenia) and countryman Arsaces launch plot against Justinian and ask Germanus' son Justin to join in as his family the intended beneficiaries; Justin tells his father who tells Marcellus, 'Count' of Excubitors; Marcellus requires more proof and even then declines to tell Justinian for what seems to the Emperor when he is told a suspiciously long time; Justinian initially suspects Germanus, but Marcellus keeps post and Artabanus only loses his court military post.

**Spring** Gothic fleet raids Dalmatia.

3,000 (?) Slavs ravage Thrace and Illyria.

**Summer** Totila besieges Belisarius' successor Diogenes in Rome, but the few Imperial troops manage to hold the entire circuit of walls.

## 550 North Africa

Synod of bishops excommunicates Vigilius for giving way over 'Three Chapters'.

## Empire

**Early spring** Dagistheus destroys Mihr-Mihroe's supply-base.

## Empire/Italy

**16 January** Isaurian soldiers open Ostian Gate to Totila, and Rome falls as commander Diogenes flees to Centumcellae and other Imperial troops besieged in Mausoleum of Hadrian until surrender.

**April** Expiry of Byzantine/Persian truce; Chosroes, dealing with rebellion in Persia from Christian son, sends his chamberlain Izedh Gushnasp to Justinian to negotiate truce.

**Summer** Dagistheus and Iberian King Gobazes defeat Persians and Alan allies on River Hippius in Lazica, but Persians reinforce Petra.

Germanus is appointed to take command of Italian campaign, and is married to Amalasantha's sister Matasantha so he can appeal to partisans of Gothic royal house; **Autumn** he arrives at Sardica en route to Italy and campaigns successfully against Slavs, but falls ill and dies; the expedition is postponed, while Totila reaches Reggium and crosses to Sicily.

Justinian sends Liberius to defend Sicily.

Slavs ravage Thrace and reach the 'Long Wall' of Anastasius.

Birth of Germanus and Matasantha's posthumous son, Germanus Postumus.

## 551 **Empire**

Totila besieges Ancona and sends Gothic fleet to raid Corcyra; Valerian, commander at Ravenna, sends plea for aid to general John at Salona.

**Spring** Bessas replaces Dagistheus as commander in Lazica; he attacks and takes fortress of Petra; while he is campaigning in Armenia, Persian commander Mihr-Mihroe unsuccessfully attacks Imperial fortress at Archaeopolis.

**April** Narses sent from Constantinople to Illyria to prepare Italian campaign.

**July** Justinian, exasperated by Vigilius' procrastination, issues edict denouncing the 'Three Chapters', aided by theologian Askidas; Vigilius excommunicates Askidas, condemns edict, and takes refuge in church; Imperial agents try to arrest him and physically assault him at the altar; eventually he is persuaded to leave and return to lodgings with safe-conduct.

Gothic fleet harasses Imperial shipping carrying supplies up the Adriatic to Salona for Narses' campaign; John's Imperial fleet from Salona destroys Gothic fleet at 'Sena Gallica'; Goths abandon Ancona.

Totila offers Justinian to divide rule of Italy, but it is rejected; Gothic ships take Sardinia and Corsica.

Apollonaris, Patriarch of Alexandria, persecutes 'Monophysites' in Egypt.

Narses reaches Salona/Spalata in Dalmatia and raises troops including Lombard 'federates' from Pannonia and Heruls from steppe.

Goths blockade Croton.

Serious earthquake devastates Berytus (Beirut), whose famous law-school has to close; among the affected students is the future historian Agathias, who moves to Alexandria and later Constantinople.

**Autumn** Byzantine/Persian truce arranged in Constantinople; Justinian pays Chosroes 2,600 lb of gold. Slavs raid Illyricum.

**23 December** Vigilius flees across Bosphorus to Chalcedon, takes sanctuary in Church of St Euphemia where 451 Council took place, and issues encyclical condemning the 'Three Chapters' and Askidas; eventually reconcillation with Justinian patched up.

## 552 **Empire/Italy**

Narses marches around head of Adriatic with 30,000 men, evading Totila's general Teias at Verona, and **6 June** joins John and 'Patrician' Valerian at Ravenna while another force reaches Croton and Tarentum surrenders.

**Mid-late June** Narses puts Goths in Ariminium under siege and marches along Flaminian Way towards Apennines; at battle of 'Busta Gallorum' near Sentinum the Imperial infantry forms 'pike' defence against Gothic cavalry and archers shower them until they flee in evening; Totila killed and survivors retreat.

Goths at Portus (Ostia) surrender, but surviving nobles rally at Pavia and choose Teias as king, he appeals to King Theudebald of the Franks for aid, though only two Frankish nobles called Buccelin and Leutharis are interested and start to collect Franks and Alemanni.

Narses sends unruly Lombard allies home, takes Perugia and Narni, and marches on Rome which surrenders; Teias marches South to stop Narses besieging Gothic base (and treasury) at Cumae but after a two-month standoff is defeated and killed at 'Mount Lactantius' near Mount Vesuvius; Gothic army virtually wiped out.

**August** Death of Patriarch Menas of Constantinople; Justinian selects compliant visiting abbot from Amasea, Eutychius, as successor and has him consecrated even before predecessor's funeral; Pope Vigilius refuses to attend.

## **Spain**

Revolt against Visigothic King Agila by noble Athanagild; facing defeat, Athanagild appeals to Empire and Justinian sends Liberius 'the Patrician'

with naval expedition; Cartagena and other ports secured to form new Byzantine province, and Liberius aids Athanagild in civil war.

## Empire

? Around this year, two Nestorian monks arrive at Constantinople to tell Justinian they have discovered secret of manufacture of silk in China and offer to get him silkworms; they smuggle silkworms out of China on subsequent visit in hollow walking-sticks and manufacture of silk starts.

Peter succeeds Macarius as Patriarch of Jerusalem; he is deposed and succeeded by Eutychius.

Death of 'Mar' Abha, Nestorian 'Catholicos' in Persia.

## 553 Empire

**5 May** Justinian's 'Fifth General Council' opens at Constantinople; Vigilius boycotts it and **14 May** issues a compromise 'First Constitution', condemning 60 propositions attributed to Theodore and others of Theodoret's but not stating that they are authentic or anathematizing them; Justinian refuses to respond and **26 May** reveals Vigilius' secret letters condemning them to Council; Vigilius' name struck from diptychs but personally not as Pope; Council anathematizes the 'Chapters' and Justinian gaols Vigilius' assistants.

Narses leaves subordinates to besiege Cumae and invades Tuscany via Civitavecchia to round up Gothic survivors; Lucca breaks promise to surrender after rumours that Alemanni en route so Narses pretends to execute hostages; surrender.

Narses returns to Ravenna; Teias' brother Aligern, commander in Cumae, surrenders and delivers the keys to Narses.

Buccelin and Leutharis lead Frankish-Alemannic horde across the Alps to aid Gothic remnants and overrun the Po valley and Northern Umbria; they defeat a detachment of Heruls in Imperial service at Parma.

**8 December** Vigilius writes to Patriarch Eutychius revoking his earlier support of 'Three Chapters' and accepting that God has opened his eyes and they deserve condemnation.

## 554 Empire

Narses winters in Rome as the Alemanni invade across Apennines.

**23 February** Vigilius issues his ‘Second Constitution’ arathematizing the ‘Three Chapters’ and refuting all his earlier arguments in favour; he is released and permitted to return to Rome, but lingers in Constantinople ? to assist Justinian in preparing civil government for Italy.

**Early spring** Buccelin and his troops march down West coast of Italy to Reggium, while Leutharis raids down East coast then retires through Apulia and Umbria, is defeated in ambush by Artabanes of Pesaro at Fanum, and reaches Venetia to die of plague; Narses attacks returning Buccelin on River Volturno in Campania and kills him and routs army; survivors besieged in Compsa and surrender.

**13 August** Justinian issues ‘Pragmatic Sanction’ to confirm restoration of Imperial civilian rule in Italy: all privileges granted to Romans by Visigoths until 538 confirmed but Totila’s grants annulled, confiscated estates and freed slaves restored, and increased powers to Roman Church in orderly civil government.

## Spain

? Liberius’ conquest of new Imperial province completed; ‘Spania’ includes coast around capital Cartagena and Malaga, ? Cordoba, and Balearic Islands.

## Arabia

Al-Harith II, the Christian ‘Ghassanid’ Arab chieftain and ally of Empire, defeats and kills the pro-Persian ‘Lakhimid’ chieftain Al-Mundhir; the latter is succeeded by Amr, his son by Christian Queen.

## 555 Empire/Italy

Vigilius sets out for Italy but **7 June** dies of gallstones en route at Syracuse; Justinian imposes Pelagius, ‘apocrisarius’ in Constantinople in early 540s, as successor though he had previously written *Defence of the Three Chapters* against Imperial religious policy and accused Vigilius of treachery; he is required now to condemn ‘Three Chapters’ and does; Narses’ troops secure him in Rome but resentment is so great there that three bishops cannot be found who will consecrate him.

Gobazes, king of Lazica, complains to Justinian about behaviour of the Byzantine commanders in his country; ‘Master of Soldiers’ Bessas sacked and exiled to Lazica, but fellow-commander Martin and finance-officer



Rusticus are retained and decide on revenge; Rusticus sends brother John to tell Justinian that Gobazes plotting with Persia, and Justinian orders king to be arrested or killed if he resists; Rusticus lures Gobazes to a meeting to discuss siege of Onoguris, and John stabs him to death; Lazicans withdraw from campaign, but ask Justinian to send Gobazes' brother Tzath as replacement which he agrees; siege of Onoguris fails.

## 556 Empire

Chosroes sends envoy to Constantinople to start peace-negotiations; temporary truce except in Lazica.

### Italy

**16 April** Pelagius consecrated as Pope after Imperial approval, but rumours of his involvement in Vigilius' death and doctrinal unorthodoxy cause him to swear innocence of both in St. Peter's with Narses in attendance.

### Empire

**May** Riots in Hippodrome during Games, to Justinian's embarrassment with Persian ambassador present; **June?** Samaritans revolt in Caesarea, Palestine, and massacre Christians including proconsul Stephen; 'Master of Soldiers' Amantius slaughters them.

### Empire

**Spring?** Senator Athanasius accompanies Tzath to Lazica, the new king is honoured by Byzantine army and installed as king, and Athanasius holds inquiry into Gobazes' murder and arrests Rusticus and John; Martin continues in command, but Germanus' son Justin deputy; Byzantines defeat Persians, and Chosroes flays losing general; Rusticus and John executed, and Martin replaced with Justin and disgraced.

Masimian rebels on the Lazic frontier kill Imperial envoy; Persia prevents Byzantine reprisals.

**Autumn** Rome/Persia truce expires.

## 557 Empire

Chosroes' chamberlain Izedh ('Isdigunus') Gushnap sent to Constantinople and negotiates truce: no payment by either side, no time-limit, 'status quo' in Lazica.

## Empire

Revolt of Tzani, Pontic mountaineers South of Trebizond.

? Avars arrive on the steppes North of Crimea; their 'Khagan' Candich sends letter to Byzantine commander Justin in Lazica asking for land.

**14 December** Earthquake in Constantinople; residents camp in streets for a week due to after-shocks, and church services thronged.

## 558 Empire

**7 May** Eastern semi-dome of Hagia Sophia (? and part of main dome) collapses after recent earthquake; Justinian commissions Anthemius' nephew Anthemius 'the younger' to build reinforcement.

Conclusion of war between Kutrigur and Utigur Bulgars on the steppes; the Kutrigurs move down to the Danube to attack Empire.

Plague returns to Constantinople.

## 559 Empire

Kutrigurs cross the frozen Danube and **March** 'Khagan' Zabergan advances on capital while a second horde invades Greece to be halted at Thermopylae fortifications and a third reaches Chersonese to be held up at defensive wall and defeated by general Germanus; Justinian's 'Master of Soldiers' Sergius routed and 'Long Wall' of Anastasius stormed; Justinian appeals to Belisarius who leaves retirement to lead 300 personal troops and volunteers out into Thrace; Belisarius' 200 cavalry ambushes superior Kutrigur force which flees; enemy withdraws into Thrace thinking larger army coming; **April-July** they pillage Thrace while Justinian, based at Selymbria, rebuilds 'Long Wall'; then retire as Byzantine fleet sent to Danube; **May** – circus-faction rioting in capital. **August?** Justinian re-enters capital for triumph and service.

## **Persia**

Jacob Baradeus, 'Monophysite' leader, visits Chosroes to secure his toleration for co-religionists in Persia; Ahudemme 'Bishop of the East'.

## **560 Empire**

Justinian confined to palace with severe headaches after visit to Thrace and false rumours of death; conspiracy to elevate the son of 'Patrician' Peter to throne detected but offenders pardoned.

At Justinian's instigation, the Utigurs attack the Kutrigurs in exchange for promise of their subsidy; civil war weakens Huns from renewing attack on Empire.

## **561 Italy**

**3 March** Death of Pope Pelagius, **17 July** John III consecrated Pope.

## **Empire**

(or 562) Avars under 'Khagan' Baian arrive at the Danube and request permission to cross and settle in Dobrudja; envoys are sent to Justinian who refuses request and has envoys' purchases of weapons in capital confiscated on return journey; alliance however agreed.

**Autumn** Peter the 'Master of Soldiers' meets Chosroes' envoy Izedh Gushnap at Dara and negotiates 50-year peace: Byzantium to pay 30,000 gold pieces per annum, Lazica under Byzantine control, Christians in Persia tolerated, small garrison at Dara, all frontier trade through Dara and Nisiblis at fixed charges, Arab allies included in peace.

Terms broadly favourable to Empire, but requirement to pay first seven years' tribute in advance leads to forced loans and resentment.

## **562 Empire**

**Spring** Kutrigur Huns raid Thrace as far as the 'Long Wall' of Anastasius and defeat Justinian's nephew Marcellus.

**August** Justinian requires moneyers and jewel-smiths to provide costly gifts for dedication of Church of St Theodora. **October** Circus riots in capital.

**November** Drought in Constantinople and fighting over water at cisterns; conspiracy of Marcellus, Vitus, and Eusebius the bankers/moneyers, Sergius nephew of Aetherius the palace 'Curator', 'Belisarius' steward Paul and servant Isaac, and ex-moneyer and Imperial slave Ablabius to kill Justinian; Ablabius, who has right of access to Emperor, paid 50lb gold to attack Justinian in dining-room but intercepted; Marcellus kills himself and Sergius dragged out of sanctuary, tortured, and implicates Belisarius who is put under house-arrest.

Pagan priests in Constantinople rounded up and prosecuted.

Death of 'Monophysite' Patriarch Sergius of Antioch.

**November** Justinian receives keys of Verona and Brescia, last Gothic strongholds in Northern Italy.

**24 December** Justinian is present at reinauguration of dome of Hagia Sophia.

## Empire

Justinian leaves capital for rare excursion, a pilgrimage to shrine in Galatia.

**563** Peter, 'Master of Soldiers', visits Chosroes about Persian withdrawal from the region of Suania (Svanetia) in Lazica; no agreement.

Impressive visit of Christian Arab commander Al-Harith the 'Ghassanid' to Constantinople. Belisarius restored to court.

## North Africa

Justinian's nephew Marcian suppresses Moorish revolt in Mauretania, caused by the execution by governor John Rogathinus of chieftain Coutzina.

## 564 Empire

Negotiations with Avars; outbreak of inter-Arab conflict in North-East Syria.

## 565 Empire

**January** Justinian endorses a new edict proposing acceptance of doctrine that Christ's nature incapable of suffering and sin but still human ('Aphthartodocetism'), in vain attempt to win both orthodox and 'Monophysite' backing.

**31 January** Patriarch Eutychius dismissed and deported to monastery; replaced by John III.

**March** Death of Belisarius, perhaps survived by Antonina but certainly not a beggar at death as claimed by later legend.

Patriarch Anastasius of Antioch holds synod to denounce Justinian's new religious policy; only saved from deposition by Emperor's death.

Patriarch John III, dubious of 'Aphthartodocetism', delays endorsement.

**14 November** Death of Justinian, aged probably 83; according to chamberlain Callinicus he nominated his nephew Justin, aged c.45 and married to Theodora's niece Sophia, as successor; Callinicus informs them at their palace near Acropolis.

**15 November** Justin takes possession of the Palace and issues donative to guards-regiments.

**16 November** Justin crowned in Hagia Sophia by Patriarch, is elevated on shield, and distributes largesse; Justinian buried in Church of Holy Apostles.

Justin abandons Justinian's 'Aphthartodocetism' and reaffirms orthodox 'Chalcedonian' doctrine.

Justinian cancels Justinian's subsidies to Avars and some of his unpopular taxes, and issues large donatives to people; due to Justin's unstable character, Sophia is principal influence on government policy, but the Emperor's mental faculties probably not much impaired for some years.

## 566 Empire

**1 January** Justin revives the consulship in East, and uses the inauguration-ceremonies for donatives to the populace.

Justin has 'Patricians' Aetherius and Addaeus and Germanus' son Justin executed for conspiracy, allegedly involving attempt to get doctor to poison him.

Justin holds discussion with exiled Patriarch Theophilus of Alexandria, leader of 'moderate' 'Monophysites' against the radical argument that 'three persons' of Trinity must imply 'three natures' ('Tritheism').

**Autumn?** Justin and Patriarch John organize conference at Constantinople to bring together orthodox, 'Monophysite', and 'Tritheist' theologians; Jacob Baradeus and other senior figures attend.

## 567 Empire

Conclusion of Orthodox/'Monophysite' conference in capital; Justin issues statement of those points on which agreement is reached, but most of Syrian 'Monophysites' reject it at conference at Callinicum.

Avars make a pact with Imperial allies, Lombards, to attack Gepids; Justin accepts Gepids' offer of Sirmium and reoccupies the city, but does not intervene as their kingdom is destroyed and divided; the Avars are principal victors, and alarmed Lombards decide to emigrate to Italy.

### Spain

Athanagild's Visigoths attack Byzantine cities, Seville and Corboda.

### Italy

**Autumn?** Justin dismisses Narses from command; he retires to Rome.

## 568 Italy

Lombards under 'King' Alboin invade Northeast Italy **Spring** in mass migration; most of the countryside is overrun and Verona captured; refugees flee to the Venetian lagoon where? settlement on Rialto Islands founded.

### Empire

Justin receives an embassy from the Turks in central Asian steppes, and concludes alliance – aimed against Avars.

## 569 North Africa

Mauretanian rebellion, led by Garmoulius; 'Praetorian Praefect' Theodore killed.

## **Italy**

Lombards overrun most of Liguria; fall of Milan; fall of Genoa.

## **570 Arabia**

Abyssinian army in Yemen advances North to besiege Mecca, but withdraws due to epidemic.

? Birth of Mohammed in Mecca, shortly after father Abdallah died in epidemic.

## **Empire**

Apollinaris succeeded by John IV as Patriarch of Alexandria.

Justin deposes Patriarch Anastasius of Antioch; succeeded by Gregory.

## **571 Empire**

Justin and Church leaders win 'Monophysite' bishops' approval for a compromise doctrine that Christ has both a divine and a human nature but that the two are united; Jacob Baradeus and others take communion with Patriarch John, but later withdraw acceptance as followers refuse to accept it; angry Justin starts arresting 'Monophysite' bishops.

## **Persia**

? Expedition sent across central Arabia to Yemen to assist rebellion against Byzantine ally Axum, and installs garrisons in cities.

## **Italy**

Lombards take Spoleto in central Italy; Faroald becomes first 'Duke'.

? Lombards overrun Campania and take Benevento.

## **Armenia**

Persians persecute Christians in their part of territory.

## 572 Empire/Armenia

**Early** Revolt in 'Persarmenia'; Justin decides to assist rebels and insults the Persian envoys when they arrive for latest instalment of subsidy, refusing to pay and threatening to depose Chosroes if he interferes in Armenian rebellion; Justin's cousin Marcian appointed 'Master of Soldiers' in East and expedition prepared.

Marcian marches into Armenia to assist successful rebels, and then raids Atropatene.

?Persians fail to murder an envoy the Turks on steppes are sending to Constantinople for anti-Persian alliance, during his passage through Alan lands North of Caucasus; on his arrival in capital he tells the authorities.

?Justin shows first signs of mental instability, insulting his son-in-law Baduarius ('Count of the Stable') during interview and ordering attendants to assault him.

### North Africa

Giarmulius' Mauretanian rebels kill Byzantine 'Master of Soldiers' in Africa.

### Spain

Visigoths take Cordoba from Byzantines.

### Africa/Arabia

Justin sends envoy Julian to King Arethas of Abyssinia/Axum to arrange attack on Persian force occupying Yemen.

## 573 Empire

Marcian invades Mesopotamia from Armenia and besieges Nisiblis, and during siege receives news of his dismissal; the Byzantines retreat.

Persian army under Abdalrahman raids Syria and sack Apamea.

**November** Persians take Dara by surprise; Justin goes mad with the shock and Sophia takes control of Empire with her ally Tiberius, 'Count' of 'Excubitors'.



## **Italy**

Gregory, later Pope, becomes Praefect of Rome.

## **574 Italy**

Cleph assassinated; thirty rival Lombard commanders ('Dukes') divide lands.

**13 July** Death of Pope John III; Benedict elected successor but long wait for Imperial confirmation.

## **Empire**

**Spring–Autumn** Plague in Constantinople.

Avars paid subsidy of 80,000 'Nomismata' per annum for alliance whereby they protect the Danube frontier; Persia offers a five-year truce but it is rejected as too long.

**7 December** During a lucid interval Justin is persuaded to make Tiberius 'Caesar' and thus formal deputy; his authority confirmed but he does not move into Palace as Sophia will not tolerate his wife Ino.

## **575 Empire**

Tiberius starts to transfer large numbers of troops to East for new campaign; Justinian's taxes on wine and bread abolished.

'Quaestor' Trajan sent to Persia to negotiate peace but no success; Chosroes leads army through Armenia into Byzantium, besieging Theodosiopolis; Eastern army under Justinian, son of Germanus, evades battle as leaders quarrel; Chosroes sacks Melitene and retreats with Justinian in pursuit.

## **Italy**

**2 June** Benedict I consecrated Pope after Imperial approval.

Justin's son-in-law Baduarius sent to Ravenna with new army to attack Lombards.

## 576 Italy

Baduarius succeeds in bringing Lombards to battle but is defeated and killed.

### Empire

Theodore the 'Patrician' sent on peace-mission to Persia; three-year truce arranged, except in Armenia where fighting continues and Eastern commander Justinian leads Byzantine army to raid Atropatene in reprisal.

Turks on Russian steppes, angry at Byzantine alliance with their Avar enemies, insult Tiberius' envoy Valentinus, raid the Crimea, and sack Cherson.

## 577 Empire

Persians surprise and defeat Justinian in Armenia; he dies and Maurice, 'Count of Excubitors', appointed as successor; Maurice's relative Domitian made Bishop of Melitene; Tiberius raises 15,000 new mercenary 'Federates' to join Eastern army with a substantial part of the Balkan armies for offensive.

**31 August** Death of Patriarch John; Tiberius restores ex-Patriarch Eutychius.

Theophilus leads persecution of suspected 'pagans' at Hierapolis, Syria.

### Italy

Tiberius sends 200,000 'Nomismata' to buy allegiance of some Lombard 'Dukes'.

## 578 Empire

Persians break truce **Spring** and raid Mesopotamia; Byzantine general Maurice retaliates with invasion of Persian-held Arzanene (South-Eastern Armenia) then moves swiftly South into the plains to take city of Singara.

**4/5 October** Death of the deranged Emperor Justin II, aged ?58; Tiberius succeeds and remits a quarter of taxes for each of next four years but over-stretches Imperial expenditure.

Rome sends Pamphronius as envoy to Tiberius' coronation appealing for aid and is advised to use their taxes to bribe Lombards to fight each other;

Sophia fails to persuade Tiberius to divorce Ino and marry her and is expelled from palace for plot; retires to own palace near Harbour of Sophia.

Patriarch Gregory of Antioch pardoned.

Tiberius sends 'Praefect' Thomas and Germanus 'Postumus' to North Africa; Mauretanian rebels suppressed and leader Giarmulius killed.

? At around this time, Byzantine governor of North Africa becomes 'Exarch'.

Tiberius sends John, 'Master of Soldiers' in Illyricum, to transport Avar raiders into modern Wallachia to raid Slavs' lands and halt their advance.

Death of 'Monophysite' leader in Syria, Jacob Baradeus.

Copts in Egypt organise themselves into an 'underground' 'Monophysite' Church and elect 'Patriarch' Damianus.

## Italy

'Duke' Faroald of Spoleto attacks Ravenna and takes its port, Classis.

? St. Benedict's monks at Monte Cassino driven out by Lombards.

## 579 Empire

Avars cross Danube to encircle Sirmium and demand its surrender; Tiberius refuses so it is besieged and starved out, and a hoard of Slavs pours into undefended Moesia and Illyria to start settlement.

## Italy

**Summer** 'Duke' Faroald of Spoleto besieges Rome; Byzantines send grain-ships from Egypt, but famine soon spreads and **30 July** Pope Benedict dies; Pelagius, of Gothic family, elected Pope and ordained before **November** arrival of Imperial ratification; Pelagius sends his trusted deacon Gregory as 'Aprocrisarius' to Constantinople; he is advised to bribe Lombards and no troops.

## Persia

Death of 'Great King' Chosroes I; succeeded by son Hormisdas IV.

## Empire

Maurice appointed Byzantine commander in East; paying troops is increasingly difficult due to strain of Avar war, and Tiberius opens abortive peace-negotiations; he offers to surrender all Armenia and Iberia in return for Dara but no success.

## 580 Empire

Large-scale Slav migration into Balkans, as far South as Greece, starts at around this time.

Maurice and the Christian Arab 'Ghassanid' commander Al-Mundhir raid Persia across the River Tigris, but are held up by destruction of a strategic bridge and Maurice accuses Al-Mundhir of forewarning Persians.

Al-Mundhir visits Constantinople and honoured by Tiberius.

## Spain

After Visigothic King Leovigild persecutes Catholics, general rebellion joined by his son Hermenegild; Byzantines assist them.

## Italy

Lombard 'Duke' Zotto of Benevento besieges Naples and ? sacks Monte Cassino.

## 581 Empire

Abortive Byzantine/Persian peace-conference; war is renewed and Persian attack on a frontier-city defeated at cost of his own life by commander Constantine; Maurice raids Armenia and marches down Tigris nearly to Ctesiphon but has to return to aid Mesopotamia; ? 'Ghassanid' Arabs attack too.

Death of 'Monophysite' Patriarch Paul of Antioch.

## Spain

? Leovigild bribes Byzantines to abandon support for Hermenegild.

## 582 Empire

Tiberius agrees to cede Sirmium to Avars and pay 80,000 'nomismata' per annum tribute; Sirmium is evacuated.

Gundobald the Frankish pretender sent to Provence to try to take kingdom.

**12 April** Death of Patriarch Eutychius; succeeded by John IV 'The Faster'.

Maurice defeats Persians near Constantina, killing commander; he is called to Constantinople as Tiberius falls seriously ill **Summer**; Tiberius betrothes Maurice to daughter Constantina and makes him 'Caesar', and considers re-creating Western Empire for Germanus 'Postumus'. **6 August** Maurice marries Constantina; **13 August** Tiberius crowns Maurice; **14 August** Tiberius dies aged ? 55.

**October** Eustochius replaces Macarius as Patriarch of Jerusalem.

**Autumn** Maurice appoints John Mystacon ('the Moustached') commander-in-chief in East; he raids into Arzanene, North of the Tigris and South-West of Lake Van.

## 583 Empire

Avars demand increase in subsidy from 80,000 to 100,000 'nomismata' per annum; Maurice refuses; the Avars take Singidunum and Viminiacum near Sirmium and raid right across Thrace to Black Sea, wintering at Anchialus.

**Summer** Imperial army raids Arzanene again, and captures town of Akbas; Persians call truce to send embassy to Maurice.

**?4 August** Birth of Maurice's eldest son Theodosius.

? Empire deports 'Ghassanid' Arab chieftain Al-Mundhir to Sicily for raiding Empire; replaced by son Al-Nu'man.

## 584 Spain

Rebel Visigothic Prince Hermenegild captured and rebellion ends, but Frankish wife Ingund takes refuge in Byzantine territory.

## Empire

**Spring** Maurice agrees to increase Avars' subsidy in return for evacuation of occupied cities; embassy to Persia.

**Summer** Slavs raid Thrace as far as the 'Long Wall' of Anastasius but defeated by promising young general Comentiolus.

Maurice appoints brother-in-law Philippicus to Eastern command; he negotiates unsuccessfully with Persians, raises new troops, strengthens defences of Monocarton, and raids Eastern Mesopotamia (Beth Arabaye, near Nisibis).

## Italy

Paid 50,000 'nomismata' by Maurice's envoys, Frankish King Childebert of Austrasia invades Northern Italy and defeats Lombards; they elect Authari as king to lead resistance. Smaragdus 'Exarch'; ransoms captive Lombard dukes for territory.

## 585 Empire

Philippicus' Eastern army campaigns in Armenian frontier lands; he falls ill and campaign halted; Persians attack Monocarton.

Army in Balkans under Comentiolus defeats Slavs North-West of Adrianople at Ansinon and drives them back to the Danube; Maurice constructs defensive ditch beyond Adrianople to hinder raids.

## Italy

Childebert of Austrasia raids Lombardy again? Byzantine/Lombard truce.

## 586 Empire

Persians break truce and raid Mesopotamia; Philippicus defeats them at Solachon near Dara, and opens campaign to overrun Arzanene.

Avar 'Khagan' protests to Maurice at a fugitive Avar pagan priest, who has run off with one of his wives, being given refuge in the Empire.

?**September** Slavic horde besieges Thessalonica, possibly in co-ordination with Avar offensive.

**Autumn?** Avars cross Danube to raid Balkans and pillage the Southern banks of the Danube, then winter at river-mouth in the Dobrudja; most walled towns hold out. Maurice undertakes large-scale recruiting-drive for army, and has to impress unwilling men including some clerics

## Italy

'Aprocrisarius' Gregory returns to Rome and becomes Pope Pelagius' secretary and effective lieutenant.

## 587 Empire

**Spring** Constantinople army under Comentiolus marches to Dobrudja to besiege Avars, but is unable to bring them to battle and retreats; Avars invade Thrace as far as Adrianople where they are halted as John Mystacon brings army from Armenia; John and the Swabian mercenary general Droctulft win battle.

Fall of Dorystolon and Marcianopolis, leading fortresses of Eastern Danube plain, to Avars; most of inland Thrace lost.

Traditional date of end of Byzantine authority in Slav-ravaged Peloponnese.

Philippicus ill again; his deputy Heraclius (father of the future emperor Heraclius) takes two-thirds of army to raid over frontier, while Theodore and Andrew command the rest.

**Winter** Empire sends emissaries to Turkic 'Antes' tribes on the steppes, who attack Avars' rear.

## 588 Empire/Italy

Patriarch John IV claims title of 'Oecumenical' Patriarch; Pope Pelagius condemns it, mistakenly believing it implies supremacy in *all* Christian world not just Imperial territory.

**Spring?** Avars invade Balkans and take Anchialus on the Black Sea coast.

## Empire

Maurice replaces Eastern army's weapons-allowances with weapons, cutting effective pay by a quarter, and makes Priscus new commander; **Easter, 18 April** Priscus stoned in mutiny at Monocarton in Mesopotamia and flees, and Germanus 'Duke' of Phoenicia elected as successor; Maurice sends Philippicus out as commander; he is rejected but Germanus restores order to looting troops and relieves Persian siege of Constantina; he defeats Persians again; Maurice transfers Priscus to Balkans where Avars besiege him in Tzurolon and are bought off with 57,600 'nomismata'.

**Autumn** Avar horde retires to Sirmium amidst rumours of new Turkic threat to their rear.

## Italy

Childebert of Austrasia invades Lombardy unsuccessfully; ?Smaragdus arranges truce with Authari the Lombard ruler, and Pelagius objects to his interference in Istrian Church.

## 589 Empire

**Easter** Mutiny of Eastern troops ends after mediation of Patriarch Gregory and Philippicus restored but in interim Persians take Martyropolis; Philippicus fails to retake it and is replaced by Comentiolus; Maurice calls in Guaram of Iberia to raid into Azerbaijan.

**Autumn** Persian general Bahram Chobin pursues Iberians and Roman allies, is defeated by commander Romanus, and revolts against Hormisdas on resulting insult of effeminacy; to the South, Comentiolus wins battle of Sisarbanon.

## Italy

Smaragdus recalled as 'Exarch' after mental illness; replaced by Romanus.

## 590 Italy

**7 February** Death of Pope Pelagius in plague in Rome; deacon Gregory, former 'apocrisarius' in Constantinople, elected and tries to decline honour but organizes plague-relief.

## Empire

Maurice crowns his eldest son Theodosius, aged 6/7.

Maurice campaigns in Thrace to relieve Anchialus from Avar invasion.

**February** Bahram invades Mesopotamia, and nobles at Ctesiphon depose King Hormisdas and install his son Chosroes II; Bahram is undeterred and



**March** after loyalist army starts to break up Chosroes flees to the Byzantine frontier seeking asylum, halting at Edessa.

Chosroes arrives at Circessium and writes to Maurice for aid; he offers to restore old Byzantine/Persian frontier and hand over most of Armenia and Iberia in return for aid; Bahram offers Nisibis if Chosroes is abandoned; Maurice considers options and is advised against war by Patriarch John, while Bishop Domitian of Melitene accompanies Chosroes' order to his loyalists at Martyropolis to hand town over to Romans and persuades them to obey.

Maurice decides for Chosroes and prepares expedition to restore him.

## Italy

Death of Lombard King Authari, succeeded by Agilulf; 'Exarch' Romanus retakes Mantua and Modena while Franks under Childebert of Austrasia cross Alps but Byzantine attack on Pavia falls.

**3 September** Gregory consecrated as Pope.

## 591 Empire

Eastern army under Narses escorts Chosroes to Nisibis which surrenders, followed by Dara; one Byzantine force descends Euphrates towards Ctesiphon while Narses and Chosroes march East into Atropatene to link up with John Mysticon's army from North-East Anatolia; Bahram fails to prevent the two armies linking up near Lake Urmia and **Summer** is decisively defeated near River Blarathus; Chosroes restored.

Byzantine/Persian peace-treaty: all conquered Byzantine territory and most of Armenia and Iberia to Byzantium. Byzantines install Guaram as vassal-ruler, with rank of 'Curopalatus', in Iberia.

? Chosroes returns a precious cross looted from Antioch in 540 to the city as reward for Byzantine assistance ?Armenian and Iberian churches agree to Union with Orthodox.

Maurice transfers his main field-army to the Balkans to fight Slavs and Avars; Priscus to command.

## Italy

'Duke' of Spoleto cuts road-link from Rome to Ravenna; 'Exarch' Romanus retakes some of the forts and resists Pope's mediation-efforts.

**593 Empire**

Maurice's general Priscus invades Slav territories North of the Danube to draw them back from the Balkans, recaptures Singidunum, and wins two major victories; he crosses the Danube in first Roman invasion of Avar homeland and Avars protest at violation of their territory.

Death of Patriarch Gregory of Antioch; ex-Patriarch Anastasius restored.

?Deaths of Maurice's father Paul and mother-in-law Empress Ino.

**Autumn** Slavs in Macedonia sack Scupi/Skopje.

**Italy**

Agilulf defeats 'Exarch' Romanus and advances on Rome; the city is besieged but Pope Gregory mediates and persuades Agilulf to withdraw in return for promise of yearly tribute.

**Empire**

**Autumn** Maurice orders Priscus to winter North of Danube to save denuding Balkans of supplies and afflicting populace; troops mutiny against it so Priscus leads them to Odessus on coast. Maurice sacks Priscus and installs his own brother Peter.

**594 Empire**

**Spring** Maurice cancels regular pay-allowances for Balkans troops and proposes to pay them in kind, but mutiny forces Peter to restore original arrangements; Peter campaigns along the Danube valley and fights inconclusive skirmishes.

**Autumn** Peter crosses Danube to fight Avars and Slavs.

**595 Empire**

Priscus restored to Balkan command; crosses Danube, invades Avar homeland, and reaches Avar-held Singidunum before 'Khagan' can demolish walls; Avars avoid battle and resort to raiding Dalmatia.

**2 September** Death of Patriarch John IV; succeeded by Cyriacus, ex-steward of Hagia Sophia.

## **Africa**

'Exarch' Gennadius defeats Moorish revolt by trickery as troops under strength.

## **596 Italy**

? Death of 'Exarch' Romanus.

## **Empire**

Avars fight the Franks on Italian frontier.

## **597 Empire**

Despite Priscus' success in Balkans, Avar 'Khagan' launches counter-attack, vastly outnumbering him; he retreats to Black Sea coast and **autumn** is besieged at Tomi.

## **598 Empire**

Comentiolus marches into Balkans to relieve Tomi, but is defeated and forced to retreat; Avars invade Thrace and capture Druzipara; Maurice leads reinforcements to 'Long Wall' of Anastasius, but Avars suffer as plague strikes and agree to withdraw in return for 120,000 'nomismata' per annum.

?Army in Balkans complains about Comentiolus.

Heraclius, eponymous father of the future Emperor, made 'Exarch' of Africa; the younger Heraclius probably accompanies him to gain military experience.

Plague in Constantinople and across Empire.

## 599 Empire

Priscus defeats the Avars in four battles North of Danube while Comentiolus protects the rear at Singidunum; Avars sue for peace and agree to withdraw all forces beyond the Danube; in return Maurice returns 17,000 prisoners his armies have taken.

**Autumn** Comentiolus marches back through the Balkan Mountains (Sredna Gore) across the long-disused 'Trojan Pass', probably to survey it for later use.

## 601 Empire

Maurice's brother Peter keeps Avars from reaching the Danube cataracts.

Avars raid across Danube into Balkans; Maurice refuses to ransom Avars' captives who are massacred, adding to his unpopularity and allegations that he is stingy with money, and orders army to patrol Danube frontier intensively.

### Italy

Callinicus 'Exarch' and two-year truce with Lombards.

## 602 Empire

Priscus replaces Comentiolus in Balkans.

**2 February, Candlemas** Maurice insulted by mob as he processes with his family, and Theodosius' fiancée's father 'Patrician' Germanus, to Church of Virgin at Blachernae; Maurice has ringleaders arrested, whipped, and exiled but pardoned on Theodosius' marriage.

Priscus crosses the Danube, defeats the Avars, and pursues them into modern Hungary to win victory on River Theiss; he is replaced by Maurice's brother Peter who **Autumn** crosses Danube again and on withdrawal is ordered to winter in Avar territory to save provisioning troops from hard-pressed Balkans; **5? November** the soldiers mutiny, and Peter appeals to Maurice but is told to stand firm and refuses the demands of a delegation not to cross river; the soldiers revolt and proclaim one of junior officers, Phocas, aged c.50, as Emperor.

Peter and senior officers flee ahead of rebel march across Balkans; **21 November** the rebels arrive outside capital; Maurice receives delegation from 'Greens' and 'Blues' complaining about his Praetorian Praefect Constantine Lardys, and orders factions' militia to man the walls under Comentiolus; rebels order Maurice to abdicate in favour of Theodosius who is absent from capital on hunting-trip with Germanus

**22 November** Theodosius returns, with Germanus who Maurice accuses of treason so he flees to sanctuary; Germanus' guards prevent his arrest and Germanus moves to Hagia Sophia where crowds join him and fight Imperial troops sent to arrest him; Maurice loses control of city and flees with family across Bosphorus to Chrysopolis that night.

**23 November** Germanus tries to secure throne, but as he supports 'Blues' the 'Greens' send envoy to Phocas offering him throne; Phocas arrives at Hebdoman, seven miles from city, to popular acclaim and sends envoy to summon the Senate and Patriarch; they obey and Phocas claims that he will accept Germanus if people prefer but is 'persuaded' that he should be Emperor and after signing statement of orthodoxy is crowned.

**25 November** Phocas enters Constantinople; **27 November** Maurice, his ship delayed at Praenetus beyond Chalcedon by contrary winds, and his younger sons are arrested, taken back to Chalcedon, and killed by Phocas' officers, but uncertainty if eldest, Theodosius, is with them and over whether he is killed or not; buried at St. Mamas monastery by Contantina and his sister Gordia

## 603 Empire

'Greens' blame ex-Empress Constantina for discontent against Phocas, and at instigation of Germanus she and daughters flee Phocas' guards to Hagia Sophia in hope of stirring up populace; Patriarch Cyriacus refuses to surrender them; Phocas allows them to go to monastery; Germanus is suspected of still aiming for throne and forced to become a monk.

Phocas sends Lilius to Chosroes to make peace, but Chosroes puts him in prison and refuses to recognise Phocas as Emperor; Phocas appoints Germanus, commander at Dara, to replace Maurice's lieutenant Narses as 'Domestic of East' but Narses revolts at Edessa on behalf of youth claiming to be Maurice's son Theodosius and asks Chosroes for help; Germanus besieges Narses in Edessa, but Chosroes relieves siege, killing Germanus, and recognises 'Theodosius' as Emperor.

'Greens' and 'Blues' fight each other in Constantinople and start a devastating fire along the 'Mese' avenue from Forum of Constantine to Palace of Lausus; Phocas represses them with savagery and executes their 'demarch' John and others.

## Italy

Smaragdus replaces Callinicus as 'Exarch' of Italy.

## 604 Italy

**12 March** Death of Pope Gregory 'the Great'.

## Empire

Phocas signs treaty with the Avars and sends eunuch Leontius to command the armies in the East; he invades Mesopotamia, sends a force to relieve Dara, and confronts Narses who retreats; Chosroes takes custody of 'Theodosius' from Narses and defeats Leontius at battle of Arxamoun; Leontius is recalled and arrested and replaced by Phocas' nephew Domentziolus.

## Italy

**13 September** Sabinian consecrated as Pope.

## 605 Empire

Domentziolus is unable to make headway against the Persians; another Persian army under Datoyan invades and ravages Byzantine Armenia.

? Avars renew assault on the Empire and start to isolate Byzantine garrisons in Balkans, which are undermanned due to troops being sent to fight in East.

? Domentziolus persuades Narses to surrender on promise of immunity; Phocas has Narses burnt alive.

## Italy

**22 February** Death of Pope Sabinian.

## 606 Empire

Persians capture and sack Dara. ? Death of pretended 'Theodosius'.

Death of Patriarch Cyriacus; Thomas, deacon of Hagia Sophia, appointed Patriarch.

## 607 Italy

**19 February** Consecration of Pope Boniface III; Imperial recognition coupled with recognition of Rome as head of all Church, and statue of Phocas erected.

## Empire

**23 January** Consecration of Patriarch Thomas.

Persian general Ferouk/'Shahbaraz' ('Wild Boar') overruns most of Mesopotamia; Domentziolus is routed at Dou as Armenia raided as far as Satala.

Conspiracy of 'Eparch' (City Praefect) Theodore and 'Patrician' Romanus against Phocas in name of ex-Empress Constantina, who has contact with Theodore through maid Petronia; **7 June** Constantina and her three daughters among those executed, along with 'illustri' Patricius, Elpidius, and Andrew, finance-minister Athanasius/Anastasius, and 'spatharii' John and Tzittus; Germanus and family exiled to Princes' Islands and killed.

? Phocas marries his daughter Domentzia to wealthy noble Priscus, possibly as gesture of reconciliation to the capital's aristocracy after recent killings; Priscus thereafter hopes for succession but faces his father-in-law's fury after the factions display his and Domentzia's portraits along with the Emperor's at Hippodrome Games.

**12 November** Death of Boniface III; delay until Imperial confirmation of successor.

## 608 Empire

Famine and plague across the Empire heightens discontent; anti-government riots in Antioch, and Phocas sends in 'Count of Oriens' Bonosus to suppress them.

Persian general Shahin invades Armenia and takes Theodosiopolis.

Revolt of Heraclius, 'Exarch' of Africa, and his son the younger Heraclius, brother Gregory, and nephew Nicetas; grain-supplies to Constantinople stopped and the Heraclii strike coins as 'consuls'.

## Italy

**15 September** Boniface IV consecrated Pope after receiving Imperial permission.

## 609 Empire

?Prophecies of the holy Anatolian hermit Theodore of Syceon, claiming that the Empire is about to fall.

Persians take Edessa and reach the Euphrates; Shahin invades Anatolia and one force takes Caesarea-in-Cappadocia while a second force raids Pontus, Domentziolus is defeated and with no resistance Shahin raids as far as Chalcedon before retreating.

Bonosus suppresses revolt in Antioch with massacres.

Nicetas overruns Tripolitania, but delayed by siege of Tripoli; Leontius governor of 'Mareotis' province in Egypt revolts and Nicetas enters Egypt; governor John of Alexandria defeated and Copts and other malcontents revolt in Alexandria, enabling Nicetas to enter city.

Bad harvest across Empire adds to discontent.

Bonosus enters Egypt, wins battle at Athrib and kills Heraclian general Bonacis, recaptures Nikiu and executes Bishop Theodore, and besieges Nicetas in Alexandria; Nicetas defeats him in sortie.

## Primary sources

*The Chronicle of John Malalas: a Translation*, Elizabeth & Michael Jeffreys and Roger Scott (Melbourne, 1986).



- The Chronicle of Theophanes Confessor: Byzantine and Near Eastern History AD 284–813*, translated with commentary by Cyril Mango and Roger Scott (Clarendon Press, 1997).
- Chronicon Paschale 284–628 AD*, translated by Michael Whitby (Liverpool University Press, 1989).
- John of Ephesus, *Ecclesiastical History*, translated E.W. Brooks (Latin), *Corpus Scriptorum Christianorum Orientalium* (Paris, 1903).
- R.G. Blockley, *The Fragmentary Classicizing Historians of the Later Roman Empire*, 2 vols (Liverpool, 1981–3): contains: Malchus of Philadelphia Candidus of Isauria.
- Agathias of Myrina, *Historiarum Libri Quinque*, trans. J. Frendo (Berlin, 1975).
- Menander Protector: The History of Menander the Guardsman*, translated R. Blockley (Liverpool, 1985).
- Procopius of Caesarea, *History of the Wars*, translated with editing, H. Dewey and G. Downing, 7 vols. (Cambridge, Mass., 1914–40).
- *The Secret History*, translated by H. Downing (Cambridge, Mass., 1935).
- The Syriac Chronicle of Zachariah of Mytilene*, translated by F.J. Hamilton and E.W. Brooks (London, 1984).
- Theophylact Simocatta, *History*, translated Michael and Mary Whitby (Oxford, 1986).

## Secondary sources

- T.S. Brown, *Gentlemen and Officers: Imperial Administration and Aristocratic Power in Byzantine Italy, AD 554–800* (Rome, 1984).
- R. Browning, *Justinian and Theodora* (London, 1987).
- J.B. Bury, *A History of the Later Roman Empire from the death of Theodosius I To the death of Justinian*, vol. 2 (London, 1923).
- P. Charanis, *Church and State in the Later Roman Empire: The Religious Policy of Anastasius I* (2nd edn, Thessalonica, 1974).
- Alan Cameron, *Porphyrius the Charioteer* (Oxford, 1973).
- , *Circus factions: Blues and Greens at Rome and Byzantium* (Oxford, 1976).
- Averil Cameron, *Agathias* (Oxford, 1970).
- , *Procopius and the Sixth Century* (Berkeley, 1985).
- Owen Chadwick, *The Church in Ancient Society: From Galilee to Gregory the Great* (Oxford, 2001).
- Glanville Downey, *A History of Antioch in Syria: From Seleucus to the Arab Conquest* (Princeton, 1961).
- J.A.S. Evans, *The Age of Justinian: The Circumstances of Imperial Power* (London, 1996).
- W.H.C. Frend, *The Rise of the Monophysite Movement: Chapters in the History of the Church in the Fifth and Sixth Centuries* (Cambridge, 1972).
- Edward Gibbon, *Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire*, vols 4 & 5 (Everyman edition).
- Andre Grabar, *Byzantium from the Death of Theodosius to the Rise of Islam* (London, 1966).
- Patrick Gray, *The Defence of Chalcedon in the East, 451–553* (London, 1979).
- Tony Honore, *Tribonian* (London, 1978).
- A.H.M. Jones, *The Decline of the Ancient World* (Longman, London, 1966).
- , *The Later Roman Empire*, 3 vols (Oxford, 1964).
- Walter Kaegi, *Heraclius, Emperor of Byzantium* (Cambridge, 2003).
- David Olster, *The Politics of Usurpation in the Seventh Century* (Amsterdam, 1993).
- Liber Pontificalis*, translated by Raymond Davis (Liverpool, 1989–).
- J.B. Segal, *Edessa, 'The Blessed City'* (Oxford, 1970).
- Andrea Stratos, *Byzantium in the Seventh Century*, 5 vols (Amsterdam, 1968–80).
- A. Vasiliev, *Justin the First* (Cambridge, Mass., 1950).
- Michael Whitby, *The Emperor Maurice and his Historian* (Oxford, 1988).

## Articles

*Byzantion*, 45 (1975): Averil Cameron, 'The Empress Sophia', pp. 5–21.

*Byzantion*, 49 (1979): P. Allen, 'The "Justinianic" Plague', pp. 11–12.

*Byzantion*, 55 (1985): T. Olajos, 'Contribution a la Chronologie des Premieres Installations des Slaves dans l'Empire Byzantin', pp. 507–15.

*Byantion*, 66 (1996): M. Girves, 'The Treaties between Justinian and Athanagild and the Legality of the Byzantine Possessions in the Iberian Peninsula', pp. 208–18.

*Hesperia*, no. 31(1962): 'The Slavonic Threat to Greece c.a. 580: Some Evidence From Athens', pp. 134–57.

*Journal of Byzantine and Modern Greek Studies*, vol. 3 (1977): Averil Cameron, 'Early Byzantine Kaiserkitik: Two Case-Histories', pp. 1–18.

*This page intentionally left blank*

**Part IV**  
**610–867**

*This page intentionally left blank*

## 610 Empire

Bonosus fails to have Nicetas assassinated and retires to Palestine; Nicetas conquers Egypt and becomes Heraclius' 'Praefect'; ? Heraclian forces secure Cyprus and the port of Alexandretta (Syria).

**18 April** Sergius becomes Patriarch.

**June?** The younger Heraclius sails from Carthage to the East and lands at Thessalonica; **September** he reaches Abydos and is received by Bishop of Cyzicus on island of Calonymus and granted a crown from Church of the Virgin; Phocas holds Heraclius' mother Epiphania and fiancée Favia hostage at convent of Nea Metanoia, but 'Green' faction-7members rescue them and take them to him.

**Saturday 3 October** Heraclius' fleet arrives off Constantinople; **4 October** 'Greens' in charge of Harbour of Sophia (on the Propontis so easy access for rebel fleet) revolt and kill the returned Bonosus; 'Greens' under charioteer Calliopas attack 'Blues', set fire to the 'Caesarius' quarter, and proclaim Heraclius Emperor; **5 October** the rebels secure the city as Praefect Priscus withdraws to his mansion pretending to be ill, and Phocas is seized by 'Patrician' Probus/Photius and dragged from Palace to Heraclius' flagship; Heraclius reputedly asks him if this is how he has misgoverned Empire and Phocas retorts 'Will you do any better?'; Phocas is beheaded, aged c.58, and mutilated before being dragged through streets.

Phocas' family and advisers massacred and Phocas' body burnt in bronze bull at Forum of 'Bovium'. Heraclius crowned by Patriarch Sergius and marries Favia (renamed 'Eudocia').

Heraclius spares Phocas' nephew Domentziolus as request of St. Theodore of Siceon; ?death of his father at Carthage.

Phocas' brother Comentiolus, commanding troops at Ancyra, resists and arrests Heraclius' envoy Philippicus but is murdered.

## Arabia

? Mohammed announces his revelations and visions to his circle in Mecca and starts conversions of wife Khadija, cousin Ali, and others.

## 611 Italy

John Lemigius replaces Smaragdus as 'Exarch' in Italy.

## Empire

**20 April** Earthquake at Constantinople; **22 April** public prayers held.

**7 July** Birth of Heraclius' daughter Epiphania.

Two Persian armies manoeuvre between Priscus in Cappadocia and Nicetas in Southern Syria – Shahin takes Caesarea-in-Cappadocia, and Shahbaraz outmarches Nicetas and reaches Antioch first where factions and Jews are feuding; Antioch recaptured.

Shahbaraz marches South and takes Apamea and Emesa; he fights drawn battle with Nicetas near Emesa, and Nicetas goes to Constantinople to consult Heraclius.

## 612 Empire

Shahin breaks out of Caesarea and Priscus is unable to stop him; Priscus enters Caesarea and is reported to Heraclius for arrogance.

**3 May** Birth of Heraclius' and Eudocia's son Constantine.

Heraclius inspects Priscus' army in Cappadocia and summons him to capital.

**13 August** Death of Empress Eudocia, apparently of epilepsy.

**4 October** Heraclius has his daughter Epiphania crowned.

Priscus is rebuked by the Emperor in front of civic and ecclesiastical leaders and **December** enters monastery of Chora as a monk; Priscus' post as 'Count of Excubitors' given to Heraclius' cousin Nicetas on arrival from Egypt; Heraclius' brother Theodore 'curopalates'.

**25 December?** Baptism and coronation of Heraclius' son Constantine; Heraclius receives the prestigious St. Theodore of Siceon for blessings.

John of Amathus, son of a governor of Cyprus, is made Patriarch of Alexandria and through his generosity earns nickname of 'The Almsgiver'. ?Ephesus badly damaged in earthquake.

## 613 Empire

Shahin invades South-East Anatolia and takes Melitene; Philippicus, commander-in-chief of East, draws him off by invading Armenia and forcing Shahin to follow him. Heraclius marches into Syria and approaches Antioch, but Persian reinforcements arrive and he cannot link up with Nicetas' attack

North from Palestine; he fights a drawn battle but has to retire into Anatolia abandoning Cilicia.

**22 April** Death of St. Theodore of Siceon; Heraclius transfers his relics to capital.

Shahbaraz marches up the Orontes valley **Autumn**, fights drawn battle near Emesa, and after resuming advance takes Damascus; ? he defeats Nicetas at Dera'a.

## 614 Empire

Shahbaraz enters Palestine and marches through Galilee and the Jordan valley to Jerusalem, joined en route by thousands of Jews who start massacres of Greeks, Christians, and other enemies;? Patriarch Zacharias and Jerusalem authorities submit and accept garrison but revolt while Shahbaraz is campaigning to South; **May** the Persians return to Jerusalem and thousands are massacred as Jews attack Christians; Zacharias and most of Christian inhabitants are exiled to Persia, the 'True Cross' removed to Ctesiphon as trophy, and city handed over to Jews.

?Patriarch John 'the Almsgiver' of Alexandria sends Bishop Theodore and funds to ransom Palestinian captives; during the chaos Arabs join in looting and kidnapping.

? **Autumn** Shahin raids across Asia Minor as far as Chalcedon, but retreats as Philippicus leads the eastern armies into northern Persia; Philippicus retreats and dies.

Avars overrun most of Dalmatia and capture city of Spalata/Salona, besieging garrison in fortified Palace of Diocletian.

## Spain

? King Sisebut leads Visigothic army to take Cartagena, principal Empire garrison.

## Arabia

? Mohammed announces to first disciples that he is the Prophet of God; his conflicts with disbelievers intensify, but his uncle Abu Talib protects him.



## 615 Empire

? Avars besiege Thessalonica unsuccessfully.

? Avars take Naissus, Salona and Serdica, principal remaining Empire garrisons in Balkans.

Patriarch John of Alexandria sends men and treasure to Jerusalem to assist rebuilding after sack.

## Spain

? Byzantine commander Caesarius makes peace with Visigothic King Sisebut.

## Italy

**25 May** Death of Pope Boniface IV; **19 October** Adeodatus/Deusdedit consecrated after Imperial approval sent.

## 616 Empire

Shahin marches across Anatolia to Chalcedon via Ancyra, while raiders invade Western coastal provinces and sack Sardes; at Chalcedon Heraclius opens negotiations, and after he meets Shahin the Persians allow envoys (led by 'patrician' Olympius and 'Syncellus' Anastasius) to go to Ctesiphon, acting in the name of the Senate as Chosroes does not accept Heraclius as legitimate ruler; Chosroes has them imprisoned and war goes on.

?Patriarch Athanasius of Antioch visits Egypt to organise reunion with Monophysites in Imperial effort to unite the rival religious communities to resist invasion.

Heraclius announces that salaries to troops will have to be halved.

## Italy

'Exarch' John assassinated in mutiny at Ravenna by unpaid soldiers, John of Conza leads revolt at Naples.

**617 Empire**

Shahbaraz takes Gaza and enters Egypt to besiege and take Pelusium; he besieges Empire military headquarters, 'Babylon' citadel near Memphis.

**Italy**

? New 'Exarch', eunuch Eleutherius, restores order; John of Conza executed.

**618 Empire**

Heraclius suspends the free grain-dole in Constantinople due to inability to bring in corn from invaded Egypt.

Persians besiege 'Praefect' Nicetas in Alexandria.

**Italy**

**8 November** Death of Pope Adeodatus/Deusdedit; Boniface elected successor but delay in imperial confirmation.

**619 Empire**

Byzantines evacuate Alexandria as a force of Persians in fishing-boats sneak undetected into harbour and land; 'Praefect' Nicetas and Patriarch John flee to Cyprus.

**11 November** Patriarch John of Alexandria dies in exile in Cyprus.

Death of the great Palestinian monastic traveller John Moschus, who since 578 has wandered throughout the Orthodox world and wrote up his experiences in his book *The Spiritual Meadow*; buried at his monastery of St. Theodosius, sacked by Persians in 614, by his younger travelling-companion Sophronius 'the Sophist'.

'Onogur' Bulgar prince from North of the Crimea, Kovrat, visits Constantinople and is received with honour and baptised.

## Italy

'Exarch' Eleutherius revolts at Ravenna; murdered by soldiers as he marches on Rome.

**23 December** Pope Boniface V finally consecrated after delay in Heraclius' confirmation.

## 620 Empire

? Heraclius reassures Patriarch Sergius after rumours that he intends to abandon Constantinople and move capital to Carthage; the Church's treasures are loaned to the Emperor for the duration of the war and melted down to make coin to pay soldiers. ? Persians recognize Monophysite Church rule in Egypt.

## 621 Empire

Heraclius transfers the 'Army of Thrace' to Anatolia to reinforce main army facing the Persians; ? his envoys Athanasius and Cosmas negotiate truce with the Avars whereby Byzantium pays 150,000 'nomismata' per annum.

?Heraclius marries his niece Martina in defiance of Church disapproval of 'incest'; Patriarch Sergius accepts it.

Shahbaraz campaigns in East Anatolia and winters in Pontus.

## 621/2 Arabia

Death of Mohammed's wife Khadijah and uncle and protector Abu Talib; the latter is succeeded to chief position in Meccan merchant oligarchy by cousin Abu Sufyan (of 'Ommayad' clan) who tries to have Mohammed killed.

## 622 Empire

Heraclius prepares his armies at Hierea on East shore of Bosphorus, appoints Prince Constantine regent, and **Easter, 4 April** receives Church's blessing before he leads fleet from Constantinople to disembark at Pylae, Bithynia; departure celebrated with panegyric by poet George of Pisidia.

Heraclius leads army to Caesarea and thence into Armenia; Shahbaraz, unable to deflect him with attack on Cilicia, follows but **November?** is defeated in Armenia.

## Arabia

Mohammed and followers flee Mecca for more tolerant Medina: the *Hejirah*, start of Moslem calendar. Medina's inhabitants rally to Mohammed.

## 623 Empire

**23 January** Shahbaraz attacks Heraclius during eclipse of moon but defeated; **early February** Persians decisively defeated and camp looted.

Avars renew the war ? at Persian instigation and besiege Thessalonica. Slav raiders take to sea and raid Crete; **March** Heraclius returns to capital by sea leaving army in Pontus; he arranges a truce-meeting with the Avar 'Khagan' at Perinthus/Heraclea but **5 June** hears of an ambush as he approaches site and gallops back to capital carrying his crown under arm; **6 June** Avars reach suburbs of Constantinople and loot, but retire to Thrace; **Autumn** peace arranged in return for 200,000 'nomismata' p.a.

## Arabia

Mohammed's Moslems defeat the Meccan 'Quraysh'- led oligarchy at battle of Beder, but are defeated later at Mount Ohud.

## 624 Empire

?Heraclius sends failed request to Chosroes for negotiations, and has his insulting reply publicly read and displayed at Haghia Sophia.

**25 March** Heraclius leaves Constantinople with army, celebrates Easter at Nicomedia, and heads for Pontus to prepare invasion of Persia from less-defended Northern mountain frontier; he marches into Armenia and pillages Dvin, seat of Persian governor.

**Summer ?** Heraclius crosses River Araxes into Media, defeats Persian army, sacks Chosroes' abandoned base at Ganzak and Persian 'fire-temples', and ignores Persian 'scorched-earth' tactics; Chosroes flees and

Heraclius sacks ?Ecbatana before retreating into Azerbaijan; **autumn** he arrives in 'Albania' (the lower Kur valley) to summon local tribal leaders as allies.

## **Arabia**

Moslems defeat attacks on Medina by the oligarchs of Mecca.

## **625 Empire**

**Winter** Heraclius based in 'Alania', probably to negotiate with and await Khazar support from across the Caucasus; Chosroes sends Shahbaraz, Shahin, and Sarablangas against him with separate armies, and he evades battle until he is ready in complex manoeuvres; he confronts Shahbaraz near 'Tigranokert', and lures Shahin North and routs him. Shahbaraz attacks Heraclius but is ambushed and heavily defeated; Heraclius, still outnumbered, stages a feigned retreat across Siwnik, South of Lake Van, to lure the Persians back South towards their own frontiers and ?**summer** crosses the Western Armenian passes back to Martyropolis and fights off the pursuing Shahbaraz; drawn battle at the River Saros.

**Autumn** Heraclius at Sebastea.

?Heraclius sends 'Patrician' Andreas as envoy to the Khazars on the steppes beyond the Caucasus for aid in invading Persia.

## **Italy**

**25 October** Death of Pope Boniface V; **27 October** Honorius I elected. Revolt of Adaloald the Lombard's brother-in-law Arioald, count of Turin.

## **626 Empire**

Shahbaraz ordered to head for Constantinople and invades Anatolia; Shahin is sent against Heraclius, whose brother Theodore routs him; however the Imperial army has been detained too long to halt Shahbaraz's march to Bosphorus.

Heraclius reaches Trebizond and sends Theodore with reinforcements to Constantinople.

Birth of Heraclius and Martina's first surviving son, Heracleonas, in Pontus.

**14–15 May** Riots in Constantinople against minister John Seismus for cancelling bread-rations of the 'Scholae' guards-regiments; the government is forced to sack him and restore rations.

**May** Avars besiege Thessalonica unsuccessfully; **June** Shahbaraz reaches Chalcedon.

Avars march on Constantinople and **29 June** start siege, with construction of siege-engines and demands for surrender; 'Patrician' Bonus leads defence; **29 July** 'Khagan' arrives to lead attack in person; **31 July–1 August** attacks on walls are driven off, and Patriarch Sergius parades icon of Virgin around walls; Avars refuse offer of money for departure, but request negotiations. **2 August** 'Khagan' receives Byzantine envoys but orders abandonment of city, and Persian envoys attend to jeer that Heraclius has not relieved city.

Avar/Slav fleet of canoes is sent to Chrysopolis **3–4 August** to collect Persians to join the siege but **7 August** is defeated and sunk by Byzantine navy in Bosphorus as land-attack driven back; **8 August** Avars abandon siege and retreat; Shahbaraz gives up and marches back to Cappadocia; thanksgiving service at Blachernae, and new celebratory addition to the 'Akathistos' thanksgiving hymn is composed for the event and remains in Orthodox liturgy thereafter.

First Khazar raid through the Caucasus passes into northern Persia.

**Autumn** Heraclius marches into Lazica; ? Theodore marches into Thrace to assist rebel Slavs.

## Italy

Adaloard defeated and poisoned; Arioald rules Lombardy from Pavia.

## 627 Empire/Armenia/Persia

Collapse of the Avar empire as subject Slavs revolt; ?Theodore restores Byzantine garrison to Belgrade after march across Balkans receiving submission of tribes, but no lasting Byzantine presence possible.

? Serbs and Croats revolt against Avars and seize inland Illyria.

? Suspicious Chosroes sends message to a trusted officer in Shahbaraz's army to kill him as he fears treachery, but Imperial officers intercept it; Heraclius

acquires the letter and uses it to encourage Shahbaraz to revolt, and Shahbaraz indicates his willingness to postpone new advances – enabling Heraclius to march East.

Heraclius marches into Iberia and is joined by most princes except King Stephen (lord of Cholarzene); **Summer** he besieges Stephen in Tiflis and is joined by Khazar horde under Zerbil/Yabghu who swears allegiance to him; Stephen is killed, Tiflis surrenders, and 40,000 Khazars join Heraclius' march over mountains South into Persia.

**September** Heraclius at Lake Urmia, and outmanoeuvres Chosroes' Armenian general Roch Vehan ('Rhezates'); he descends into Mesopotamia without resistance and **4 December** enters Nineveh; **12 December** Roch Vehan's army is routed in battle in fog which incapacitates their archers; as Chosroes flees Heraclius marches unopposed into Persian heartland, spending Christmas with leading Sassanian Nestorian finance-officer Yazdin at or near Kirkuk.

## 628 Empire/Persia

Heraclius enters Chosroes' abandoned chief palace at Dastagerd **5 January** to liberate prisoners and sack palace; **late February** Heraclius avoids the defensible canals around Ctesiphon and retires into Atropatene to wait winter snows out at Ganzac.

Persian nobles, tired of war, conspire in favour of Kavadh, Chosroes' arrested eldest son, against Chosroes' own preferred heir, his son by Christian wife Shirin; on Chosroes' return to Ctesiphon they rescue Kavadh and attack capital; **23 February** Kavadh enters Ctesiphon; **24 February** Chosroes arrested hiding in palace gardens and subsequently murdered. **25 February** Kavadh crowned; **3 April** his envoys meet Heraclius and agree to peace with all prisoners released and all Byzantine territory evacuated; 'True Cross' to be restored.

Heraclius sends 'tabularius' Eustathius back with Kavadh's envoys to witness Persian order to Shahbaraz to return and to collect returned prisoners and loot; he receives ex-captives and retires to Western Mesopotamia to join Theodore in supervising Persian evacuation.

Some Persian garrisons resist Kavadh's orders ?with Jewish support, and Heraclius besieges obdurate Edessa on whose surrender Monophysites are evicted from cathedral which the Orthodox occupy; truce with Shahbaraz's army in Syria pending evacuation of occupied territories, and after Shahbaraz meets Heraclius Antioch is returned.

?**September** Death of Kavadh; succeeded by son Ardashir III.

**Winter** Heraclius returns to Constantinople for ceremonial welcome and nine days of celebrations.

## 629? Spain

Fall of last Byzantine possessions, coastal towns around Malaga, to Visigoths.

## 629 Byzantium

**March** First Imperial law ('Novel') using the Greek title *Basileus*'; significant in transformation from Latin to Greek as language of State business.

Shahbaraz prepares to march main Persian army home and **July** meets Heraclius at Arabissus in Cappadocia to confirm restoration of 592 frontier and the 'True Cross' and obtain support in seizing Persian throne; Heraclius grants title of 'patrician' to Shahbaraz's son Nicetas who is hostage for performance of agreement.

Prince Constantine marries Gregoria, daughter of Heraclius's cousin 'Exarch' Nicetas.

## Persia/Byzantium

Shahbaraz returns to Persia as regent for Ardashir, and restores the 'True Cross' to Heraclius' envoy David; Persians evacuate Egypt, Syria and Palestine and Theodore's Byzantine army marches into Syria; **28 October** the returned 'Holy Lance' from Crucifixion arrives in Constantinople.

## Arabia/Byzantium

Mohammed enters Mecca in triumph; toleration of former opponents with only four executions. First minor Moslem incursion into Palestine defeated at battle of Muta East of Dead Sea; Mohammed's son-in-law Ali's brother Ja'afar killed. Fall of Taif to Islam; idols are destroyed.



## 630 **Byzantium**

Heraclius in Syria, with base at Hierapolis to watch events in Persia; he enters Jerusalem in triumph **21 March** to restore the 'True Cross' to the Church of the Holy Sepulchre; he allows massacres of Jewish 'collaborators' and commences plans to enforce reunion of all Eastern Christian churches; Modestus made Patriarch of Jerusalem but soon dies.

## **Persia**

**April** Shahbaraz murders Ardashir and seizes throne; **9 June** he is assassinated and replaced by Chosroes' nephew Chosroes III; after more turmoil throne falls to Chosroes' daughter Boran who sends the Nestorian 'Catholicos' Ishoyahb to meet Heraclius at Berroea in Syria and confirm truce.

## **Empire**

**7 November** Birth of Heraclius' son Constantine's son Heraclius (later emperor as Constans II). Heraclius based at Edessa and Constantina, near Euphrates, for winter.

## **Armenia**

'Catholicos' Ezra meets Heraclius and accepts 'Chalcedonian' orthodoxy on behalf of his church; official 'reunion' with Orthodox.

## 631 **Byzantium**

**Spring** At Hierapolis, Heraclius persuades Athanasius, Monophysite Patriarch of Antioch, and twelve bishops into agreement on reunion of Churches; Athanasius agrees? and accepts 'Chalcedonian' Orthodoxy but **July** dies.

Heraclius appoints Cyrus, Bishop of Phasis in Iberia, as new Patriarch of Alexandria and returns to Constantinople.

**3 November** Heraclius' son Constantine's son Heraclius (Constans II) baptised at Blachernae.

## Arabia

Mohammed's expedition against tribes around Tabuc in North-West.

## 632 Byzantium

Prince/co-emperor Constantine consul; Heracleonas 'Caesar'.

**31 May** Heraclius orders the baptism of all Jews in Africa; possibly extended to other provinces.

## Persia

'Great King' Hormisdas V deposed in favour of Chosroes IV, great-nephew of Hormisdas IV; replaced by his brother Firuz II and then by Hormisdas' brother Chosroes V in quick succession.

## Arabia

Mohammed dies at Medina **7 June** while planning expedition against Byzantium, aged probably 62; his leading followers elect father-in-law Abu Bakr as 'Caliph' ('Deputy').

## 633 Arabia

Arab army under Khaled, 'Sword of God', conquers the Christian Arab capital at Hira; Christian Arab tribes converted to Islam and join Moslem armies, removing Byzantium's usual 'buffer'.

## Byzantium

? First major Arab raid on Byzantine territory; Abu Ubaydah takes Bostra near Damascus.

Patriarch Cyrus appointed 'Praefect' of Egypt to restore civil and ecclesiastical order; the imperial plan to force union of 'Chalcedonian' and Monophysite churches in Egypt is proclaimed **3 July** at Synod but much resistance.

Persecution of recalcitrant Copts in Egypt for Monophysitism; Patriarch Benjamin leads flight to Upper Egypt, but many bishops obey Cyrus' union.

## 634 **Persia**

Persian nobles make Chosroes' 12-year-old grandson Yazdagerd 'Great King'; Rustem chief general.

## **Arabia**

Death of Abu Bakr, probably in late 60s; devout 'companion' of Prophet, Omar, elected Caliph and plans attacks on Byzantium and Persia.

## **Byzantium**

Yazid, Amr, and Shurahbil lead three-pronged Arab invasion of Palestine; **February** Gaza area raided and 'patrician' Sergius killed; Heraclius, at Emesa in Syria, sends army under brother Theodore South but it is defeated at 'Gabitha' beyond Dead Sea; Shurahbil raids over Jordan but Byzantines then defend river-crossings against Khaled.

?Heraclius unsuccessfully orders Peter, commander in Numidia, to denude his garrisons and send men to Palestine.

Sophronius 'the Sophist', monk of monastery of St Theodosius and the former companion of great monastic traveller John Moschus, made Patriarch of Jerusalem.

## **Persia**

Muthanna and Khaled invade Mesopotamia and win battle of Ullais; Khaled recalled and **November** Arabs defeated and Muthanna killed at battle of 'The Bridge'.

## **Italy**

Patriarch Sergius writes to Pope Honorius that Christ has 'two natures but one operation' and his doctrine's promotion will help ease Orthodox/Monophysite religious conflict; Pope rejects it.

## 635 Byzantium

**23 January** Khaled crosses the Jordan and ravages around Damascus, encircling city before **13 March** siege; Heraclius based at Antioch, orders relief-army in but they are defeated and chased as far as Emesa.

Baanes relieves siege of Emesa; **September** surrender of Damascus which is spared in return for paying tax; fall of Heliopolis (Baalbek).

## Persia

Arabs invade Mesopotamia and win battle of Buwaib near River Euphrates.

## 636 Byzantium

Heraclius' new army sets out for Syria under 'Sacellarius' Theodore Trithurius, Baanes, Jabala the allied Arab 'Ghassanid' commander, and Persian defector Nicetas (son of Shahbaraz); Emesa retaken and Moslems evacuate Damascus, and Byzantines pursue them South into desert borderlands on River Yarmuk.

**16 July** Theodore's section of army ambushed and defeated by Khaled; Baanes' detachment defeated as wind blows sand in Byzantines' faces; **20 July** general engagement ('*Battle of the Yarmuk*') sees demoralized Byzantines virtually wiped out and Theodore among the killed.

Byzantines flee to Antioch, pursued by Abu Ubaydah; Heraclius, in city, retires to Edessa and thence Anatolia, and orders 'True Cross' taken from Jerusalem to Constantinople and creation of a 'scorched-earth' zone in Cilicia; Damascus surrenders and Byzantine Mesopotamian commander John of Cateas negotiates a truce at Chalcis/Qinnasrin to enable those who wish to leave occupied lands for Empire to do so; Heraclius replaces John with Ptolemy and cancels truce.

Sa'd invades eastern Mesopotamia, where Byzantine troops still occupy some Persian towns; **?winter** Heraclius, based at Melitene, orders his remaining garrisons in Syria and Palestine to avoid open battle.

## 637 Byzantium

**?Spring** Heraclius returns to Constantinople, but due to nervous disease cannot stand the sea and has 'bridge of boats' constructed across Bosphorus, lined with foliage, to enable him to cross.

Plot against Heraclius in Constantinople; his bastard son Athalaric(us) and his nephew Theodore, 'Master of Offices', implicated and mutilated, but Armenian general David Saharuni escapes to homeland; Armenian prince Varaz-Tirots exiled for being implicated.

## **Persia**

Three-day battle with Arabs led by Sa'd at Qadisiya; Persian general Rustem routed and Ctesiphon besieged; rest of Mesopotamia overrun.

Foundation of new Arab armed camp/city as headquarters in Mesopotamia, Kufa.

## **Byzantium**

Khaled fights in North Syria; general Minas killed, and Antioch surrenders as Arab army arrives; Yazid and his brother Muawiya invade Lebanon and Beirut and Tripoli surrender.

Shurahbil invades Northern Palestine and Amr invades Southern Palestine; Prince Constantine and Byzantine leadership in province embark at Caesarea for capital.

Shurahbil takes Tyre, Sidon and Acre; Amr at Jericho; Byzantine general Arretion flees into Egypt; Amr besieges Jerusalem and Abu Ubaydah brings reinforcements from Arabia; fall of Gaza.

## **638 Persia**

**January** Persians withdraw from that part of Ctesiphon West of Tigris, **March?** they evacuate remainder of city, and Yazdagerd flees into Zagros Mountains.

## **Byzantium**

Surrender of Jerusalem; **February** Omar enters dressed humbly and riding a camel, escorted by Patriarch Sophonius, and citizens unharmed; **March** Sophronius dies.

? Prince Constantine lands in Syria with army but fails to take Antioch.

**4 July** Heraclionas crowned co-emperor and brother David made 'Caesar' in palace church of St Stephen, presumably due to Heraclius' fears over his eldest son Constantine's health; acclaimed in ceremonies in 'Augustaeum' Square.

## Persia

? Arabs cross Zagros Mountains and overrun the plateau as far as heartlands of Persia; Christian Bedouin revolt in South-West Mesopotamia suppressed by Abu Ubaydah; Yazdagerd flees to Bactria.

## Italy

**12 October** Death of Pope Honorius; Severinus elected successor but Heraclius delays approving consecration until 'Exarch' Isaac has induced him to support new Byzantine theological policy.

## Byzantium

**October** Heraclius approves and issues the *Echthesis*: a religious compromise to unite Orthodox and Monophysites by banning all discussion of Christ's operations and insisting that he had two natures but operated with one 'will' ('Monotheletism'); **November** approved by Synod in capital.

**8/9 December** Death of Patriarch Sergius, chief supporter of Heraclius' new doctrinal plans; **20 December** Pyrrhus, abbot of Chrysopolis, made Patriarch.

## 639 Byzantium/Arabs

Severe famine in Arabia; Plague in Palestine claims Yazid, Abu Ubaydah and many other victims; the Prophet's distant cousin Muawiya Ibn Abu Sufyan becomes governor of Syria.

Ptolemy, governor of Mesopotamia, refuses to surrender; ?**Autumn** Iyad leads Arab invasion and Edessa surrenders; Dara captured; Harran, Callinicum, Amida, Martyropolis, Nisibis, Circessium and Samosata surrender and province overrun.

## 640 Byzantium/Egypt

**January** Fall of Pelusium; Amr crosses the desert to River Nile; **May** surrender of Heliopolis; governor John Marus killed in raid on the Fayyum.

### Italy

**28 May** Pope Severinus finally ordained after he agrees to ratify the *Ecthesis* amidst intimidation by 'Exarch' Isaac.

## Byzantium/Egypt

Zubayr and Arab reinforcements under Omar's sons arrive in Egypt; **July** Byzantines defeated attacking them at Heliopolis.

### Italy

**August** Death of Pope Severinus; John IV elected successor.

## Byzantium/Egypt

**Autumn** Cyrus makes agreement with Arabs to evacuate Egypt, and returns to Constantinople to get confirmation; Heraclius refuses it and dismisses him; Marianus the 'Cubicularius' sent as new 'Praefect' while in the interim 'duke' Theodore of Lower Egypt leads the defence.

**December** Arabs storm the Byzantine administrative/military headquarters in Egypt, Babylon, and besiege garrison in citadel.

## Armenia

Arabs invade and take capital, Dvin.

### Italy

**24 December** John IV consecrated Pope after Heraclius' confirmation arrives in Rome.

## 641 Italy

**January** Pope John holds synod to denounce *Ecthesis*.

### Byzantium/Egypt

Citadel of Babylon besieged by Zubayr; Domentius abandons the Fayyum to Kharijah; 'duke' John abandons Arsinoe and Upper Egypt.

Heraclius writes to Pope John abandoning support for *Ecthesis* and blaming it on Sergius; **11 February** he dies aged c.66 and his sons Constantine III and Heracleonas co-emperors under Martina's effective rule; Pyrrhus left funds to transmit to Martina if Constantine evicts her from Palace

**14 February** Funeral of Heraclius at Church of Holy Apostles; Senate and courtiers refuse to confirm Martina as regent amid rioting against her.

Cyrus recalled from exile; **May** Damietta besieged.

?**24 May** Death of consumptive Constantine III, aged 29, amid rumours of poison by Martina who becomes regent for Heracleonas and claims to be co-ruler; financé- minister Philagrius and others banished.

**July** Arab siege of Alexandria; Cyrus and Theodore lead relief-fleet into harbour but factional quarrels among leadership; Cyrus hailed as peacemaker and opens negotiations with Arabs at Babylon.

**September?** General Valentinus, leading force to Cilicia, marches to Chalcedon demanding that Constantine III's son Constans become co-emperor amidst popular support; Heracleonas agrees and ?**late September** crowns Constans himself. Pyrrhus banned from officiating; Pyrrhus replaced by Paul, treasurer of Hagia Sophia, as Patriarch.

Valentinus rewarded and made 'Caesar'; resumes campaign.

**28 November** Cyrus signs one-year truce with Arabs in Egypt, promising tribute and Byzantine evacuation of Alexandria at expiry of truce.

## 642 Byzantium/Egypt

**January?** Renewed rioting in Constantinople against Martina; Senate leads coup to arrest and depose Martina and Heracleonas; Martina has nose and tongue slit; Heracleonas and brothers David and Martinus have noses slit to incapacitate them for throne, and all are exiled to Rhodes.



Constans II sole emperor at age of 11/12; Valentinus chief minister and commander-in-chief, and marries daughter Fausta to Constans; he leads army to Armenia to fight Arabs.

**March** Death of Cyrus in Alexandria; **17 September** under agreement, Byzantines evacuate Alexandria in 100 ships; **29 September** Amr enters the city and taxes Christians, but the supposed mass-burning of the manuscripts of the Great Library in bath-furnaces is probably just later legend.

## Italy

**12 October** Death of Pope John IV; **24 October** Theodore elected and writes to Constans demanding abandonment of 'Monotheletism' and refusing to recognise Patriarch Paul until he has been elected in Papal legates' presence and confirmed orthodoxy.

## 643 North Africa

Amr of Egypt invades and conquers the 'Pentapolis' and Tripolitania but is unable to reach 'Exarchate' around Carthage.

## Byzantium/Armenia

Valentinus returns from Armenia, and Theodore Rshuni seizes power and becomes Arab vassal.

## Italy

'Exarch' Isaac killed by Lombards who conquer Liguria.

## 644? Byzantium

**or**  
**645?** Arrogant 'Caesar' Valentinus, Constans' father-in-law, leads troops into capital to stage coup and seize throne but is defeated by angry citizens, arrested, and lynched by mob; Theodore commander-in-chief.

**644 Byzantium**

Muawiya takes Euchaita.

**Caliphate**

**October** Omar goes to Mecca; **6 November** he is assassinated and a group of six senior associates of the Prophet choose the latter's secretary Othman, distant cousin from Omayyad family, rather than son-in-law Ali, Amr replaced as governor of Egypt by less dynamic Abdullah.

**645 Byzantium/Italy**

Ex-Patriarch Sergius joins in Synod debate in North Africa on 'Monotheletism', is won over by eloquent Constantinopolitan orthodox monk Maximus 'the Confessor', and recants; on arrival at Rome Pope Theodore recognizes him as rightful Patriarch but abandons him when he returns to 'Monotheletism'.

**Egypt**

Byzantine general Manuel the Armenian, as 'Praefect of Egypt', leads naval expedition to Alexandria and reoccupies city; welcomed as liberator but disperses forces around Nile delta and is unable to progress further into Egypt.

**646 Egypt/North Africa**

Amr sent back to Egypt with new Arab army and **summer** blockades Alexandria into surrender, negotiated by Coptic Patriarch Benjamin; Manuel's army returns home.

Maximus 'the Confessor' goes to North Africa and wins over province and 'Exarch' Gregory (son of Heraclius' cousin Nicetas) against 'Monotheletism'.

**Caliphate**

Othman's foster-brother Abdullah Ibn Abi Sarh sent to Egypt to prepare invasion of North Africa via Tripolitania.

## 647 Byzantium

Muawiya takes Caesarea-in-Cappadocia and besieges Amorium.

### North Africa

'Exarch' Gregory revolts against Constans; Arabs invade and he is killed and capital, Sufetala, sacked; self-appointed successor Gennadius loyal and evicts Arabs.

## 648 Byzantium

Constans and Patriarch Paul promulgate the *Typos* (Edict) on doctrine: all discussion of whether Christ had one or two natures banned, and no doctrine to be taught that the five 'General Councils' have not authorised; it fails to secure support or end fierce doctrinal disputes, and Papal 'apocrisiarius' in Constantinople, Anastasius, refuses to sign it so exiled to Trebizond.

## 649 Byzantium

Muawiya leads new Arab fleet to sea and invades Cyprus, sacking the capital, Constantia. Byzantine fleet drives Arab garrison out and regains island.

Habib invades Isauria.

Death of (St) John Climacus, abbot of St. Catherine's monastery at the alleged site of the 'Burning Bush' on Mount Sinai.

### Italy

**14 May** Death of Pope Theodore; **5 July** election of successor Martin I, formerly a Papal 'apocrisiarius' in Constantinople; he leads opposition to *Typos* and **5–31 October** holds Lateran Synod to denounce it and 'Monotheletism'; decrees of Synod are sent round Empire to be signed, and Archbishop Paul of Thessalonica excommunicated for refusing; Martin writes to Constans requiring him to abandon heresy but blaming his beliefs on errant Patriarchs; Church in North Africa especially strong for orthodoxy.

**c.650? Byzantium**

Most likely date for creation of ‘Themes’, at least for confirmation of previously informal arrangement to station Byzantine armies in different areas of Anatolia with powers over provinces to generals (‘strategoi’) – Armenian army (Armeniakon) in North-East; Thracian (Thraceseion) in Western coastal provinces; main army (Anatolicon) in Centre and East.

**650 Italy**

New ‘Exarch’ Olympius is ordered to arrest Martin; visits Rome, does nothing due to strength of feeling for Pope, and back at Ravenna starts rebellion.

**651 Byzantium**

But the Arab raids Isauria; Constans sends Procopius as envoy to Muawiya in Syria, and two-year truce arranged; Constans’ cousin Gregory among Byzantine hostages during negotiations.

**Armenia**

Synod at Manzikert overturns 630 synod’s acceptance of orthodox ‘Chalcedonian’ doctrine and reaffirms independence of Byzantine church and its doctrine.

**Italy**

Olympius dies of plague while marching on Sicily, rebellion collapses.

**652 Italy**

Death of Lombard king Rothari.

## **Byzantium**

Constans marches into Armenia, not being deflected by plot of commander of Thracian/'Thraceseion' army in capital in his absence; pro-Arab prince Theodore Rshtuni flees and Constans, received at Dvin by Church leader 'Catholicos' Narses, installs Musegh/Musel of the Mamikonid family as new ruler aided by Byzantine army under Maurianus.

Birth of Constans' eldest son Constantine.

? Muawiya raids Cilicia and West into Anatolia as far as Dorylaeum.

? Armenian dualist 'Paulician' sect, under leadership of Constantine of Manalali, emigrate to Byzantine territory; base at Cibossa near Colonea.

## **653 Italy/Byzantium**

New 'Exarch' Theodore Calliopas enters Rome and arrests bedridden Pope Martin at Lateran; clergy are handed order that he is not Pope as election fraudulent, and Martin smuggled out to Byzantine ship at Naples and sent to capital, stopping at Naxos while he is ill; **17 September** he arrives at Constantinople to be put in solitary confinement and **19 December** tried for treason in assisting rebellion of Olympius but as an imperial official not legitimate Pope; he is flogged and sentenced to death but reprieved and exiled on appeal of dying Patriarch Paul; **27 December** Paul dies.

## **Armenia**

Arab army restores Theodore Rshtuni to part of Armenia and fights Maurianus.

## **654 Byzantium**

**Easter** Prince Constantine proclaimed co-emperor.

## **Byzantium/Caliphate/Armenia**

Muawiya raids deep into North-East Anatolia and takes Theodosiopolis, Trebizond, and Amasea; another Arab army enters Armenia and drives Byzantine general Maurianus North into the Caucasus.

Muawiya's fleet raids Crete, Cos and Cyprus; they land on Rhodes to collect timber for ship-building and during occupation the bronze remains of 'Colossus' are sold off to an Alexandrian merchant for scrap-metal.

Theodore Rshtuni of Armenia and Stephen of Iberia installed as Arab vassals.

## Byzantium/Italy

**26 March** Pope Martin deported to Cherson in Crimea; Maximus 'the Confessor' is brought to Constantinople, condemned for treason in supporting rebellion, and exiled.

Pyrrhus restored as Patriarch but dies **1 June**; succeeded by Peter.

**10 August** Roman clergy accept that Papal throne is vacant and elect Eugenius as new Pope.

## 655 Byzantium

Muawiya invades Cappadocia; Arab fleet sails West along Anatolian coast, and is met by Constans with fleet off Phoenice in Caria; Constans heavily defeated at *Battle of the Masts* and has to flee flagship in disguise leaving a decoy to be killed; Severus the 'patrician' saves remnants of fleet.

## Byzantium/Italy

**Pentecost** Patriarch Peter meets Eugenius' legates and persuades them to accept compromise that Christ's human and divine natures may each have a different will but he only has one will as a 'person' ('hypostasis'); they recognise his appointment and take communion with him, but back in Italy Synod at Rome forced to reject it by popular demonstrations.

Maximus 'the Confessor' brought to Constantinople for trial, rejects Patriarch's mediation, and is exiled to Bizye (Thrace).

## Armenia

Hamazasp the Mamikonid succeeds Theodore Rshtuni as Arab governor of Armenia; ? pro-Byzantine 'Catholicos' Gregory flees to Byzantine territory.

## 656 Byzantium/Italy

**April** Pope Martin dies of starvation at Cherson; **September** Maximus refuses to recant, so beaten and exiled further.

### Caliphate

Prophet's widow Ayesha's brother leads revolt in Arabia against Othman and his Omayyad relatives; Othman besieged in Medina and when city surrenders is blockaded in palace for six weeks and **17 June** murdered as rebels enter; Ali, as husband of Prophet's daughter Fatima and the first convert to Islam, is proclaimed Caliph at Medina, but Prophet's distant cousin Muawiya, as new head of Omayyad clan, revolts in Syria; civil war in Caliphate, and Ayesha leads revolt with 'companions' Telha and Zubayr in Mesopotamia; Ali defeats them at battle 'of the Camel' **9 December** and treats Ayesha honourably but kills other leaders.

## 657 Caliphate

Muawiya invades Mesopotamia, and is facing defeat at battle of Siffin when his supporter, Amr of Egypt, has copy of Koran raised on a lance to propose a truce and persuades both sides to accept 'judgement of Koran' on rightful Caliph and set up theological commission on it; truce, but rigidly orthodox Moslem revolt in Mesopotamia against Ali.

### Byzantium/Armenia

Constans leads army into Armenia in support of bid for independence by Prince Hamazasp, who returns to Byzantine allegiance under his protection and is granted title of 'curopalatus'.

### Italy

**2 June** Death of Pope Eugenius; **30 July** Vitalian elected Pope and recognised by Patriarch of Constantinople.

**658 Caliphate**

Ali defeats Mesopotamian rebels at battle of Nahrawan on Tigris canal, but survivors hold out as 'Kharijites' (seceders).

**Byzantium**

Constans marches into Thrace in first major campaign against Slavs since 626, forces submissions, and takes prisoners; coastal settlements secured ? as far as Thessalonica.

**659 Byzantium/Caliphate**

Muawiya arranges truce with Constans so he can concentrate on Ali; Arabs to pay 365,000 'nomismata' per annum and one slave and one horse per day. Constans proclaims his two younger sons, Heraclius and Tiberius, co-emperors with himself and Constantine.

**660 Caliphate**

**July** Muawiya assumes the title of Caliph at Jerusalem and receives homage of Western governors.

**Byzantium**

? Constans forces his younger brother Theodosius to become monk to invalidate him from succession.

**661 Caliphate**

**24 January** All murdered in mosque at Kufa in plot to kill both rival Caliphs, but Muawiya escapes (with injury) and so does 'targeted' governor Amr of Egypt; Ali's elder son Hassan hailed as Caliph but **July?** surrenders as Muawiya advances from Syria and allowed to live in retirement.



## **Byzantium**

Constantine executes his brother Theodosius on suspicion of conspiracy, and criticized as 'Cain'; Maximus 'the Confessor' is mutilated and exiled to Lazica prison.

## **662 Italy**

? Grimoald of Benevento attacks Pavia, kills Godepert, and then exiles Perctarit of Milan to secure control of all Lombard Kingdom.

## **Byzantium**

Constans leaves his capital for Western expedition, and sails to Thessalonica; he marches overland to Athens and Corinth, asserting nominal control over Slavs en route.

**13 August** Death of exiled Maximus 'the Confessor' in Lazica.

## **Armenia**

Arabs install Gregory, Hamazasp's brother, as governor.

## **663 Byzantium/Italy**

Constans arrives at Taranto, and marches into Southern Italy to attack Benevento, where Prince Grimoald is besieged until he offers submission and surrenders hostages; Constans goes on via Naples to Rome **5 July** for a 12-day visit, the last imperial visit to old capital; he is honoured by Pope Vitalian and resides on Palatine but strips bronze roof-tiles off Pantheon amidst other confiscations ? to pay for supplies; he returns South to Reggium and crosses to Sicily leaving Italy quiescent.

## **664 Byzantium/Italy/Africa**

Constans settles at Syracuse, but is not trusted by his courtiers and ministers in Constantinople who fears he will establish capital there and refuse orders to send his wife and sons there.

Constans orders harsh new taxes in Italy, Sicily and Africa to pay for new armies; mutinous soldiers depose 'Exarch' Gennadius, who flees to Syria to seek Caliph's aid in rebellion.

### 665 **Byzantium/Africa**

Muawiya sends army to invade and conquer Tripolitania,, accompanied by rebel Gennadius who dies en route at Alexandria.

### 666 **Byzantium**

Death of Patriarch Peter; Malek raids Anatolia from Adata.

### **Italy**

Constans makes Ravenna archbishopric independent of Rome's control.

### 667 **Byzantium**

**17 April** Thomas appointed Patriarch of Constantinople.

Arab army under Busr raids West of Melitene in South-East Anatolia.

### 668 **Byzantium**

Sapor, 'strategus' of Armeniakon, revolts against Constans and sends eunuch Sergius to Muawiya to seek support; Constantinople government sends general Andrew to Muawiya to dissuade him, but Sergius is successful; en route home, Andrew has Sergius ambushed and killed.

**15 July/15 September** Palace servants at Syracuse murder Constans in his bath, aged 37, and proclaim Count of 'Opsicion' Mezezius emperor; at Constantinople Constans' eldest son Constantine IV proclaimed, aged ?16, and prepares expedition to Sicily.

Armies of Southern Italy and Sicily close in on Syracuse; Mezezius arrested before **November/December** Constantine, having met Severus and 'Carabisiani' fleet fleeing from rebels en route so they can join his forces, arrives in Sicily.

Sapor killed in fall from horse at Hadrianopolis, Bithynia; Muawiya's army, led by Fadalah, arrives too late as rebellion collapses.

## 669 **Byzantium**

**Spring** Constantine returns to Constantinople with fleet and armies; in his absence with most of Anatolian troops, Muawiya sends son Yazid and expedition across Anatolia to raid Opsicion; they reach Chalcedon to join Fadalah but retreat on Emperor's return.

Constantine nicknamed 'Pogonatus' on return from his new beard; birth of his son by Anastasia, Justinian.

**15 November** John V succeeds Thomas as Patriarch; Pope Vitalian refuses to accept his synodical letters as unorthodox.

Arab army retreats across Anatolia, taking Amorium en route and installing garrison; **Autumn** Constantine's general Andrew storms Amorium and kills Arabs.

## 670 **Byzantium**

Arab fleet raids the Propontis and **Autumn** takes Cyzicus to winter there; probably a first attempt by Muawiya to prepare 'staging-post' for naval attack on Constantinople.

## **Caliphate/Byzantium**

Army led by Uqba invades modern Tunisia and founds new capital, Qairouan.

## 671 **Byzantium**

**Spring** Arabs sail back to Caliphate from Cyzicus and Byzantines reoccupy it.

## **Italy**

Death of Grimoald of Benevento, Lombard King.

**672 Byzantium**

Arab fleet ravages coast of ‘Carabisiani’ ‘theme’ in South-West Anatolia and winters in three sections in Cilicia, Lydia, and Lycia.

**Italy**

Perctarit seizes Lombard kingship from Grimoald’s nephew.

**27 January** Death of Pope Vitalian; **11 April** Adeodatus II consecrated.

**673 Byzantium**

Constantine’s fleet sails to Egypt to destroy Arab fleet before it can sail to Aegean; misses main fleet, which occupies Rhodes, but wins naval battle off coast.

Arabs winter on Rhodes; land-army occupies Tarsus in Cilicia.

**674 Byzantium**

**Spring** Arab fleet sails up Hellespont to land in Thrace and launch first siege of Constantinople; six-month blockade by land, but Christian Syrian engineer Callinicus of Hierapolis has invented naphta-like ‘Greek Fire’ (inflammable oil to burn ships) and defects to Empire and Byzantine ships are adapted to use it; Arabs winter at Cyzicus in Bithynia.

**675 Byzantium/Italy**

**Spring–Autumn** Arabs blockade Constantinople from Cyzicus; a second fleet winters on Crete, and Muawiya sends his son Yazid to march overland from Syria with reinforcements.

**August** Constantine, ‘Monothelete’, succeeds John V as Patriarch; he sends profession of faith to Pope Adeodatus, who rejects it so Papal name is left off imperial documents.

**676 Byzantium**

**Spring–Autumn** Constantinople blockaded by Arabs from Cyzicus.

## Italy

**17 June** Death of Pope Adeodatus; **2 November** Donus consecrated after imperial acceptance.

## 677 Byzantium

**Spring–Autumn** Constantinople blockaded by Arabs from Cyzicus. Perboundas, Slav chieftain allied to Byzantium, caught planning treachery to Empire and executed; Slavs besiege Thessalonica but defeated.

**August** Theodore succeeds Constantine as Patriarch.

## 678 Italy

**11 April** Death of Pope Donus, succeeded by Agatho.

## Byzantium/Caliphate

**Spring** Constantinople is blockaded again; eventually the Byzantines attack Arab fleet with 'Greek fire' and drive it back with severe losses, and the army re-embarks to sail for home; en route many more are sunk off Pamphylia by freak storm; land-army routed by Byzantines on march to Syria.

? 'Mardaite' Christians revolt in Lebanon and seize several cities; Byzantines mount offensive on Eastern frontier.

## Italy

**27 June** Agatho consecrated Pope; receives letter from Constantine proposing theological conference.

## 678/9 Byzantium/Caliphate

Peace restored: Arabs to pay 216,000 'nomismata', 50 horses, and 50 slaves per annum to Byzantium. Frontier restored to previous position, ? except for temporary Arab occupation of Rhodes.

## 679 Byzantium

Preparations for a ‘General Council of Church’ rather than original plan for mere theological conference; ‘Monothelete’ Patriarch Theodore is deposed and succeeded by orthodox George.

? Byzantines retake or Arabs evacuate Rhodes.

## Caliphate

Muawiya orders oaths of allegiance to son Yazid, i.e. dynastic not elected succession to Caliphate.

## 680 Italy

**27 March** Pope Agatho holds synod in Rome preparatory to sending legates to General Council; orthodoxy confirmed and Monotheletism condemned.

## Byzantium

Constantine deposes brothers and co-emperors Heraclius and Tiberius to secure succession for son Justinian; troops of Anatolicon ‘theme’ mutiny and march to Chrysopolis maintaining that there should be three emperors like the Trinity; Constantine calms them and after surrender has ringleaders arrested and noses slit, but temporarily restores his brothers.

## Caliphate

**18 July** Death of Muawiya, aged around 60; son Yazid succeeds, but theocrats at Medina elect Abdullah Ibn Zubayr (nephew of Caliph’s wife Ayesha) and Ali’s son Hussain, encouraged by disaffection at Kufa, sets out to start rebellion there but **10 October** is caught and killed at Karbala by Yazid’s troops; his ‘martyrdom’ on the ‘10th Muharram’ regarded as seminal by ‘Shi’ites’.

## Byzantium

**7 November** Opening of ‘Sixth General Council’ in Trullan Hall of Palace, Constantine presiding with representatives from Rome and Eastern

patriarchates; the orthodox position that Christ has two wills is upheld despite the arguments of Patriarch Macarius of Antioch.

? Constantine persecutes 'Paulician' heretics in North-East Anatolia; leader Constantine of Manalali killed.

## 681 **Byzantium**

**Spring** Asparuch and Bulgars cross Danube into Balkans and occupy mouth of river; Constantine marches up coast to blockade them, but the marshy swamps bring on gout and he retires to Mesembria; troops panic and retreat as his desertion is rumoured, and Bulgars attack and defeat them and pursue them to take Varna; Constantine has to accept Bulgars' new realm North of Balkan mountains and pay tribute.

### **Italy**

**10 January** Death of Pope Agatho; Leo II elected and request for ratification sent to Constantinople.

### **Byzantium**

Constantine deposes his brothers again and slits their noses to make them ineligible for throne.

Council of Church continues, and at thirteenth session Monothelete leaders are anathematized; **7 March** Patriarch Macarius of Antioch deposed; **10 March** news of new Pope arrives, but Constantine delays his approval of election until legates have signed condemnation of Monotheletes with the rest; **16 September** Council concludes.

### **Armenia**

Gregory of Armenia and Adarnase of Iberia lead revolt against Arabs and temporarily return to Byzantine alliance.

## 682 **Byzantium**

?Constantine Silvanus, leader of 'Paulicians' based at Cibossa near Colonea, executed as heretic.

## Italy

**June** Papal legates return to Rome with Constantine's permission to consecrate Leo II, which is carried out **10 August**; taxes on Papal lands in Southern Italy and Sicily reduced in return for promotion of orthodox against Monotheletes.

## Caliphate

Rebellion of Kuseila and Moors in North Africa; Qairouan seized and Byzantine alliance.

## 683 Italy

**7 May** Pope Leo writes to Constantine confirming his acceptance of decrees of 'Sixth General Council' and anathematizing Monotheletes; **3 July** he dies and long delay until election of Benedict II ratified in Constantinople.

## Caliphate/Byzantium

**August** Revolt in Medina against Omayyads, led by Abdullah Ibn Zubayr, nephew of Prophet's wife Ayesha and claimant to Caliphate since 680; **28 August** death of Yazid, succeeded by sickly son Muawiya II; **October** Ommayyad forces besiege Mecca, but Yazid's cousin Marwan revolts in Syria; Constantine takes advantage of civil war to send fleet to raid Syrian coast, and Caesarea, Ascalon, and Ascalon sacked; 'Mardaite' Christians revolt in Lebanon.

## 684 Caliphate

Marwan's army invades Syria and **July** wins battle of Marj-ar-Rabit; Damascus falls and Muawiya II deposed, but Mukhtar leads 'Shi'ite' revolt in Kufa on behalf of Ali's illegitimate son; Marwan conquers Egypt.

## Italy

**26 June** Benedict II consecrated Pope after long delay awaiting imperial approval, and secures Constantine's agreement that in future 'Exarch' in



Ravenna should make ratification instead; Constantine sends locks of his sons' hair to Rome as the Pope's 'spiritual sons'.

## **Byzantium**

Constantine invades and reconquers most of Cilicia.

## **Georgia/Armenia (or 685)**

Gregory Mamikonean of Armenia and Adarnase of Iberia killed in Khazar raid South from the steppes; pro-Arab princes Ashot II of Armenia and Guaram of Iberia gain power.

## **685 Italy**

**8 May** Death of Pope Benedict II; **23 July** archdeacon John (V), former Papal legate to 'Sixth General Council', elected Pope.

## **Byzantium**

**July** Death of Constantine IV from dysentery, aged ?33; 16-year-old son Justinian II succeeds, vigorous but unstable, and launches major building-programme in Palace.

## **Caliphate/Byzantium**

Death of Caliph Marwan at Damascus, succeeded by son Abd-al-Malik; Abdullah holds out in Arabia and Mukhtar in Mesopotamia; Abd-al-Malik signs peace with Byzantium, agreeing to pay 1,000 'nomismata' every day and 365 slaves and 365 horses per year.

## **686 Byzantium/Armenia**

War with Arabs; Leontius, 'strategus' of Anatolicon, campaigns in Armenia and Iberia and installs pro-Byzantine princes, then goes on to raid Alania and modern Azerbaijan; returns with much loot.

Abd-al-Malik agrees to new treaty, renewing tribute at 1,000 ‘nomismata’ a day and sharing revenues of Iberia, Armenia and Cyprus; Justinian to withdraw ‘Mardaite’ Christian rebels from Lebanon to the Empire, which he starts to do in order to settle them on lands ravaged by Arabs and Slavs and increase army and tax-revenues.

Theodore, former ‘Monothelete’, restored to Patriarchate on death of George but has to confirm his orthodoxy.

## Italy

**2 August** Death of Pope John V; archpriest Theodore and militia’s choice, Theodore, both elected by rival meetings, and Sicilian priest Conon (son of Byzantine ‘Thraciesion’ general) elected **21 October** as compromise; Justinian writes to him to confirm that all civil and ecclesiastical leaders of Empire agreed to ‘Sixth General Council’ verdict on orthodoxy but he not Pope is guardian of faith; taxes on Papal estates in Southern Italy reduced.

## 687 Italy

**21 September** Death of Pope Conon; presbyter Theodore and deacon Pascal (latter has bribed ‘Exarch’ John Platyn) elected rival Popes, but popular majority in Rome meet on Palatine **15 December** to elect compromise, Sergius, and rivals deposed.

## Byzantium

Death of Patriarch Theodore, shortly after he has reassured anti-heretic synod called by Emperor of his sincerity in abandoning ‘Monotheletism’.

?Justinian divides ‘Carabislani’ theme into two sections, one in South-West Asia Minor and Aegean and the other in mainland Greece.

## 688 Byzantium

Justinian refuses tribute to Bulgars and marches his army overland to Thessalonica, defeating Bulgars and Slavs en route and regaining control of ‘Via Egnatia’ East of Thessalonica to secure land-route; c.100,000 Slavs deported to settle in depopulated Bithynia, many around Cyzicus, with a new Slav regiment in army under Nebulus.

Paul III becomes Patriarch.

? Paul leads 'Paulicians' to new base, Phanaroia, in Armeniacon 'theme'.

## **689 Byzantium**

Justinian leads army into Syria and to approaches to Mount Lebanon, possibly after Abd-al-Malik suspends paying tribute due to Mardaite raids; he deports around 12,000 Mardaites to the Empire to settle them in Pamphylia, Nicopolis (Epirus) Cephallonia, and the Peloponnese, principally as oarsmen to strengthen navy.

Peace with Caliphate resumed, with Arab tribute reduced to 1000 'nomismata' a week; Justinian granted free hand in Armenia, Iberia and Cyprus.

? After report from Bishop of Colonea, Justinian persecutes 'Paulician' heretics in Armeniacon and kills leader Simeon-Titus.

## **Caliphate**

Abd-al-Malik sets out from Syria to regain control of Mesopotamia, but returns temporarily when relative Amr Ibn Said seizes Damascus in revolt.

## **689/90 Armenia**

Justinian grants Narses Kamsarakan of Iberia title of 'curopalatus' as ally against Arabs; Church Council at Theodosiopolis reaffirms Union with Byzantine Church.

## **690 Caliphate**

Abd-al-Malik suppresses Abdullah's supporters in Mesopotamia.

## **Armenia**

Justinian makes new presiding prince, Sembat VI the Bagratid, 'patrician'.

**691 Byzantium**

Justinian transplants large number of Cypriots under Archbishop John to Cyzicus area to found new city of 'Nea Justinianopolis'.

Justinian calls Council of Church to meet in Trullan Hall of Palace and complete canon-law revision of 5th and 6th Councils ('Quinisext Council').

**Caliphate**

**December** Abd-al-Malik takes Kufa ending rebellion in Iraq.

**692 Caliphate**

Abd-al-Malik's general Hajjaj captures Mecca and kills Abdullah; Islam reunited.

**Byzantium**

Conclusion of 'Quinisext' Council; Justinian refuses Abd-al-Malik's tribute as his coinage has stopped using imperial head, and prepares campaign with 30,000 Slavs led by Nebulus; the Byzantines invade Arab territories and meet in battle at Sebastopolis, but Slavs desert; Byzantines have to retreat and Justinian disbands the Slav regiment and has many of them and families executed or enslaved; Leontius 'strategus' of Anatolicon arrested and put in 'Praetorium' prison.

**Italy**

Pope Sergius refuses to sign decrees of 'Quinsext' Council.

**693 Armenia**

Justinian calls the Khazars over Caucasus to ravage pro-Arab territories, and with his lands raided Prince Guaram III of Iberia calls in Arab help; Arab army marches in and Sambat VI of Armenia becomes their vassal.

## Italy

Justinian sends 'protospatharius' Zacharias to Rome to arrest Pope Sergius for defying him; however 'Exarchate' troops from Ravenna rally to Sergius and join popular mutiny, and Zacharius has to hide under Pope's bed then flee.

## 694 Byzantium

Death of Patriarch Paul; succeeded by Callinicus.

? Death of Empress Eudocia; Justinian becomes more brutal and unstable and his eunuch 'sacellarius' (treasurer) Stephen and co-finance-minister Theodotus (monk) are especially unpopular.

## 695 Byzantium

Justinian founds the 'theme' of Hellas in central and southern Greece, and releases Leontius to become 'strategus'; encouraged by a monkish prophecy that he will be emperor, he mounts coup and takes his troops to 'Praetorium' prison to release inmates and pretend that Emperor is planning massacre of citizens; crowds gather and next day Patriarch Callinicus crowns Leontius in Hagia Sophia while Justinian and ministers are arrested in Palace.

Justinian taken before Leontius in Hippodrome, has nose slit, and is exiled to Cherson; in exile he has a golden replacement nose made (hence nickname 'Rhinotmetus'). Ministers killed; Stephen and Theodotus burnt alive by mob.

## Caliphate

Hajjaj made governor of Mesopotamia and restores order, especially in Kufa.

## 696 Armenia

?Arab governor, Abdullah ibn-Hatim, raids Armenia and deports nobles and confiscates lands; Armenian Church restores Caliphal/princely peace.

?Foundation of formal Arab province of 'Arminiya', under control of a governor ('Ostikon') based at Dvin.

## Caliphate

Caliph sends Hassan Ibn al-Numan to North Africa to defeat Berbers and take Carthage.

### 697 Byzantium

Hassan and Arab troops seize Carthage in surprise attack **Spring** but a few Byzantine towns hold out. Plague at Constantinople.

Sergius, prince of Lazica, and Sembat VI of Armenia defect to the Arabs.

Leontius sends John ‘the patrician’ with fleet to North Africa; **Autumn** they retake city while Hassan away fighting Berbers inland.

Caliph’s son Walid raids Byzantium from Melitene.

## Caliphate

‘Kharijite’ tribal revolt in Fars (West Persia), put down by general Muhallab who is sent on to Khorasan as governor.

### 698 Byzantium

**Early** Hassan receives reinforcements from Asia and retakes Carthage; ‘patrician’ John retreats with fleet to meet reinforcements on Crete, but mutiny leads to proclamation of ‘drungarius’ Apsimar as Emperor; rebels sail to capital, land at Sycae, and blockade city till **Summer** officers open gates; Apsimar rules as ‘Tiberius III’ and Leonitius sent to monastery with nose slit.

Plague in Constantinople. **Autumn?** Tiberius’ brother Heraclius leads large army to Syria.

Justinian’s Cypriot deportees return home, under agreement made by Leontius.

### c.699 Byzantium

Tiberius creates ‘themes’ of Sicily and Sardinia to defend West Mediterranean possessions after loss of Carthage.

**699 Byzantium**

Heraclius campaigns in Syria, defeating Antiochene troops and raiding to Samosata taking booty and prisoners; after his return **Spring** Caliph's troops raid Armenia to secure Sembat VI and other princes' submission.

**700 Caliphate**

Abd-al-Rahman, governor of East Persia, attacks Kabul; general Ibn al Ash'ath revolts.

**Byzantium**

Brother of Caliph Walid, Abdullah takes Theodosiopolis in Armeniakon.

**Armenia**

Sembat VI returns to Byzantine alliance from Arabs.

**Italy**

Death of Lombard king Cunibert; son Liutpert succeeds as minor and faces revolt of Count Raginpert of Milan; Raginpert dies but son Aricpert captures Liutpert and seizes throne.

**701 Byzantium**

Caliph's brother Mohammed (father of later Caliph Marwan) invades Byzantine Armenia, East of Euphrates; commander Baanes surrenders and inhabitants accept Moslem governor.

**Caliphate**

**January** Ibn al-Ash'ath takes Basra; he is subsequently driven out by Hajjaj and after defeat abandoned by officers and flees.

## Italy

**9 September** Death of Pope Sergius; **30 October** John VI, Greek, elected.

## 702 Bulgaria

Asparuch succeeded as 'Khan' of Bulgars by son Tervel.

## 703 Armenia

Sembar VI, the Bagratid prince, leads revolt against Arab rule; Elias becomes 'Catholikos'.

## Byzantium

Caliph's son Abdullah fortifies Mopsuestia, Cilicia, as new Arab base.

? Justinian flees attempt by Chersonites to extradite him to Constantinople and takes refuge with Khazars at Itil; marries sister of 'Khan' (renamed 'Theodora').

## 704 Byzantium

Khazar 'Khan' bribed by Tiberius to assassinate Justinian; his wife reveals plan and he sails via Crimea to River Danube to appeal to Bulgars.

## Armenia

Abdullah's Arab army invades.

## Byzantium

Tiberius' brother Heraclius leads Eastern armies to defeat Arabs at Sisium.

**Autumn?** Justinian is welcomed by 'Khan' Tervel and Bulgars who agree to help him; among his recruits is a Thracian shepherd called Leo from Germanicea (Arab-occupied) in Taurus, later Emperor Leo III.



## 705 **Italy**

**11 January** Death of Pope John VI; **1 March** John VII elected.

## **Caliphate**

Death of Caliph Abd-al-Malik; succeeded by son Walid.

## **Byzantium**

Justinian and Tervel march on Constantinople **Summer**, and elude Tiberius' brother Heraclius' army in Thrace; capital besieged for 3 days, then Justinian gets in through deserted tunnel of Aqueduct of Valens under the walls; his partisans join him to seize Blachernae, and panic in city and Tiberius flees; Justinian II restored.

Tiberius joins his troops at Sozopolis in Thrace, but surrenders as army starts to desert; Justinian arrests him to join ex-emperor Leontius and other enemies to await his vengeance.

## **Armenia**

Arab general Mohammed Ibn Marwan deports Sambat VI and leading nobles; others rounded up and burnt alive in a church at Nakhichevan, principal Arab base in lower Aras valley.

## 706 **Byzantium**

**15 February** Leontius and Tiberius serve as footstools for Justinian in the Hippodrome during triumphal acclamation by 'demes'; they are then executed and a massacre of their partisans follows, including Tiberius' brother Heraclius; Patriarch Callinicus is deposed, blinded, and exiled to Rome, and Justinian makes Cyrus, an abbot from Amastris in Pontus who looked after him in Cherson, Patriarch.

Khazan 'Khan' returns Justinian's wife and son to him; son is proclaimed co-emperor 'Tiberius IV'.

Bulgar Khan Tervel visits Constantinople and made 'Caesar'.

**Autumn** Caliph's brother Maslamah invades South-East Anatolia and besieges Tyana.

? Khazar 'Khan' visits Constantinople and is honoured and rewarded.

## **Armenia**

? Due to threat of Khazar attack, Armenian nobility are placated to make them loyal to Caliphate and Sembat VI allowed to return as governor.

## **707 Byzantium**

**Spring?** Justinian sends two 'strategoi' to relieve Tyana; Maslamah defeats them and takes and sacks Tyana.

## **Italy**

**18 October** Death of Pope John VII; Sisinnius, Syrian, elected.

## **708 Italy**

**15 January** Consecration of Sisinnius, delayed for months until 'Exarch's' ratification; aged and crippled with gout, he soon dies and **25 March** Constantine, another Syrian, elected.

Archbishop Felix of Ravenna, another new appointment, tries to claim autonomy from Pope's authority.

## **Byzantium**

Justinian fights Bulgar tribes, probably not under Tervel's authority, and is defeated near Anchialus.

Maslamah raids Anatolicon and wins victory near Amorium.

## **709 Byzantium/Italy**

Justinian enters the controversy between Pope and Archbishop Felix, and sends a fleet under 'patrician' Theodore to Ravenna; Theodore lands in

Italy, summons Felix and other notables to a banquet at his camp and arrests and deports them to Constantinople; Felix is blinded and exiled to Black Sea.

## **Byzantium**

Arab army under Maslamah raids Isauria.

## **710 Byzantium**

Justinian's general Leo of Germanicea reconquers pro-Arab Abasgia.

## **Italy**

**October** Pope Constantine accepts Justinian's invitation to Constantinople and sets out, meeting new 'Exarch' John Rizocopus en route at Naples; Rizocopus goes to Rome to execute assorted Papal officials, and later dies at Ravenna.

## **711 Byzantium**

**Early** Pope Constantine and clergy arrive at Constantinople and are met by Prince Tiberius and Patriarch Cyrus; they enter capital in state and go to meet the returning Justinian at Nicomedia, where negotiations follow on doctrinal and customs differences with Constantine's adviser deacon Gregory (later Pope Gregory II) prominent, and Justinian confirms Rome's privileges.

Justinian fears treason in Cherson and sends Stephen Asmicus to arrest traitors and appoint new governor Helias; leading citizens are arrested and others killed, but imperial fleet damaged in storm as returns prisoners to Constantinople.

Helias decides to join in rising discontent in Cherson, revolts with city's support, and allies with Khazars; Justinian sends a second fleet under Elijah, but on arrival at Cherson they join revolt and proclaim Armenian officer Philippicus Bardanes as Emperor.

Justinian sends third fleet to Cherson under Maurus; Philippicus retires inland to join Khazars, who attack Byzantines as they start siege and Elijah

leads desertion to rebels; Justinian murders Elijah's children and makes wife marry black cook.

Armeniakon troops revolt; Justinian leads Opsicon and Thracese armies to Sinope, hears rebel fleet heading for capital, and hurries back; rebel fleet reaches capital first and it surrenders; Justinian hears of surrender near Chalcedon, flees as troops desert, and killed **4 November** aged 42; Philippicus executes chief ministers, and murders Prince Tiberius in church.

## Armenia

Prince Sambat VI the Bagratid defies Philippicus by deserting Byzantine alliance; sacks Phasis, Byzantine-allied port in Iberia.

## 712 Byzantium

**Early** Philippicus forces deposition of Patriarch Cyrus, replaced by John VI, for opposing his religious plans; he issues edict reversing the decisions of 'Sixth General Council' of 680–1 and restores Monotheletism, and there is little public opposition.

## Italy

Accession of Lombard King Liutprand. Philippicus' edict defied at Rome; Pope omits his name from official documents.

## Byzantium

Arab army in Armeniakon sacks Amasea and reaches Gangra.

**Autumn** Arab army in Anatolicon; settles in at Misithia for the winter.

## 713 Byzantium

'Khan' Tervel raids Thrace as far as walls of Constantinople in revenge for Justinian's deposition; Arabs, under Abbas, invade Anatolicon and take Antioch-in-Pisidia, and army under Caliph's brother Yazid in Isauria.

## Italy

Philippicus' religious edicts defied and his officers are expelled from Rome after fighting rebel citizens as Pope Constantine persuades 'Exarch' not to spill further blood.

## Byzantium

Philippicus brings in Opsicon troops under 'Count' George Buraphus to capital en route to fight Bulgars; **3 June** officers at George's instigation enter Palace while Philippicus is resting after dinner, seize him and drag him to 'Green' 'deme's headquarters, and blind him; **4 June** crowd at Hagia Sophia chooses imperial official, 'protoascretis' Artemius, as Emperor and he chooses title of Anastasius II; George and other plotters are blinded, but Philippicus' religious legislation reversed and Anastasius announces his adherence to 'Chalcedonian' doctrines.

Philippicus put in monastery in capital; among new appointments is Leo of Germanicea as 'strategus' of Anatolicon.

## 714 Byzantium

Caliph Walid's brother Maslamah invades Anatolicon and reaches Ancyra; Anastasius sends ambassadors to Walid in Syria to negotiate truce but no success.

Hearing rumours of Arab attack, Anastasius II strengthen capital's walls and starts to stockpile provisions and build new water-cisterns.

## 715 Caliphate

**February** Death of Caliph Walid; succeeded by brother Sulaiman, who starts to plan second siege of Constantinople; Arab ships collect timber in Caria.

## Italy

**9 April** Death of Pope Constantine; **19 May** Gregory II, a Roman, elected.

## Byzantium

**11 August** Germanus succeeds John as Patriarch.

Opsicon troops en route to Rhodes for naval attack on Arab timber-fleet mutiny, sail to Adramyttium, and take unwilling tax-collector Theodosius as emperor, they sail to Chrysopolis, land in Thrace, and c. **August** ? enter Constantinople; Anastasius holds out in Bithynia but Theodosius III recognised in European provinces.

## 715/16 Byzantium

Six months after start of civil war, Anastasius II abdicates at Nicaea in negotiated surrender; becomes monk and goes to Thessalonica.

## 716 Byzantium

Sulaiman's brother Maslamah leads army into Anatolia to prepare for grand attack on Constantinople; **Summer** as Leo 'strategos' of Anatolicon, a partisan of Anastasius II, defies Theodosius' government, Maslamah besieges Amorium in his territory and tries to negotiate alliance; Leo temporizes so Maslamah invades Thraceseion; **winter** Maslamah winters at Sardes, near coast so in touch with Arab fleet.

## 717 Byzantium

Leo advances towards Constantinople with Artavasdus, 'strategus' of Armeniacon; **February**? his forces capture Theodosius III's son and some officials at Nicomedia, and negotiate peaceful surrender of the Emperor; they arrive at Chrysopolis and Theodosius abdicates to become monk.

## Caliphate

**25 March** Leo crowned Emperor in Hagia Sophia by Patriarch Germanus; daughter Anna marries Artavasdus.

Arab forces, allegedly 120,000 men, advance across Anatolia and take Pergamum to aid advance of fleet.

**July** Maslamah crosses Hellespont from Abydos and marches on Constantinople by land; Constantinople besieged and Arabs construct extra siege-wall facing outwards to keep Leo's Bulgar allies from attacking.

**8 September** Death of Caliph Sulaiman; succeeded by cousin, pious Omar II, son of Abd-al-Malik's brother, who attempts to ban alcohol.

**September** Arab fleet arrives at Constantinople, but rearguard destroyed by 'Greek fire' so their blockade is maintained at distance; Byzantines have ample food, Bulgars aid attacks on Arab foragers, and a very harsh winter causes disease and famine in Arab camp.

## 718 **Byzantium**

**Spring** Moslem relief-fleet of 400 ships from Egypt and 260 from North Africa arrives from Caliphate to land reinforcements at Chalcedon, but their native African crews include many Christians who defect to Leo; with their guidance his fleet attacks and severely damages Moslem fleet.

### **Italy**

**Summer** Revolt of Sicilians under 'strategus' Sergius suppressed by fleet sent from Byzantium.

## **Byzantium**

Arabs are disheartened and fail to secure enough supplies, their relief-army from Syria reaches Nicaea but is ambushed in hills near Nicomedia and flees; plague breaks out in camp and **15 August** siege abandoned; Arabs re-embark on fleet and sail for home, but heavy losses in storm in Propontis and more damage done by emptying undersea volcano at Thera; **Autumn?** Leo sends troops to reoccupy lost towns on frontier and invades West Armenia.

**December** Birth of Leo's son Constantine.

## 719 **Byzantium**

Ex-emperor Anastasius rebels at Thessalonica, and the Bulgars send army to assist him as he marches on Constantinople; plotting officials in capital and 'Count' of Opsicon betrayed to Leo and dealt with.

Leo confronts the rebel and his forces at Heraclea on Propontis, and persuades Bulgars to abandon them; the others flee and Anastasius is captured and executed; Leo makes his son-in-law Artavasdus 'Count' of Opsicion.? Leo's fleet raids Laodicea (Syria) to destroy shipping.

? Leo introduces new coin, the 'Miliaresion' (between 'follis' and 'nomisma').

## 720 **Byzantium**

**25 March** Coronation of Prince Constantine as co-emperor.

### **Caliphate**

Death of Caliph Omar II, succeeded by cousin Yazid II, Sulaiman's brother.

## 721 **Byzantium**

Byzantines defeat Arab raid on Isauria.

## c. 721 **Byzantium**

Due to persecution by Leo, Gegnesias leads 'Paulicians' from Byzantine territory to Armenia.

### **Italy**

Pope Gregory leads resistance to heavy new Byzantine taxes.

## 722 **Armenia**

Khazars cross Caucasus to invade Arab-held Armenia at Byzantine instigation.



## **Byzantium**

Leo orders conversion of the Empire's Jews, presumably to avert Divine disfavour as illustrated by Arab success.

## **723 Byzantium**

Arabs sack Iconium and take Camacha; ?Leo starts to consider banning icons as 'idolatry', encouraged by Bishop Constantine of Nacolea and minister Beser.

## **724 Caliphate**

Death of Caliph Yazid II; succeeded by brother Hisham.

## **725 Byzantium**

Arabs raid Cyprus.

## **725/6 Byzantium**

Arab force sacks Caesarea; a raiding-force penetrates to Bithynia and besieges Nicaea where 'Count' of Opsicon Artavasdus in command; according to subsequent propaganda Arabs retreat after a soldier smashes icon of the Virgin on the walls.

## **726 Byzantium**

Eruption of submarine volcano on Thera in Aegean Sea; Leo apparently maintains that it illustrates Divine wrath at worship of icons as idolatry and that it violates Ten Commandments to honour 'graven images'; he orders picture of Christ over the Palace gateway ('Chalke') removed, but soldiers carrying out orders are lynched by mob; work completed, leading rioters mutilated, and Leo issues edict banning worship of saints; Patriarch Germanus does not react.

**Italy**

Pope Gregory rejects imperial order to stop veneration of icons.

**Armenia**

Church Council at Manzikert, attended by Monophysite Syrian bishops under Arab rule, ends recognition of authority of Byzantine Church.

**726/7 Italy**

‘Exarch’ Paul murdered in revolt by soldiers, apparently with Pope Gregory’s support; Eutychius appointed ‘Exarch’, sails to Ravenna, and ends rebellion.

**727 Byzantium**

**Spring** Agalliarus ‘strategus’ of Hellas leads revolt against Leo, joined by ‘Carabisiani’ fleet from South-West Anatolia; they sail across Aegean towards capital proclaiming Cosmas emperor; Leo destroys their fleet with ‘Greek fire’ and survivors behead Cosmas and surrender.

Leo announces that two years taxes are to be paid during fiscal year from September 727–September 728.

? First anti-iconoclast treatise written by theologian John of Damascus (in Arab Syria).

**728 Armenia**

Council of Armenian Church at Manzikert condemns Chalcedonian (Orthodox) creed and signs union of Armenian and ‘Jacobite’ Syrian Monophysite churches.

**729 Italy**

‘Exarch’ Eutychius and Liutprand ally to restore order in Italy in joint campaign; they arrive outside Rome threatening siege but Gregory persuades

Liutprand not to attack and to present royal insignia to St. Peter's; Euty chius enters Rome and Gregory negotiates new agreement with him.

Euty chius aids Liutprand to reassert authority over duchies of Spoleto and Benevento.

## **Byzantium**

? Leo closes some ecclesiastical schools.

? Leo combines 'themes' of 'Carabisiani' and Cibyrhaeots under name of the latter (capital: Attaleia).

## **730 Byzantium**

**January** Leo holds a combined lay and church council of sympathizers to condemn iconoclasm; Patriarch Germanus refuses to attend as a full Church Council needed, and **17 January** persuaded to abdicate; succeeded by his deputy, 'Syncellus' Anastasius.

Depictions of religious persons, including Christ, banned but cross permitted; a few bishops resign, but main effective resistance is from outside the Empire e.g. theologian John of Damascus in Syria.

## **731 Italy**

**11 February** Death of Pope Gregory II; **18 March** Gregory III, Syrian, elected.

**November** Pope Gregory's Synod condemns iconoclasm and excommunicates iconoclasts; breach with Constantinople.

## **732 Byzantium**

Earthquake damages Church of St. Irene in Constantinople.

## **Armenia**

Arab army expels Khazars across Caucasus.

## Caliphate

Hisham makes cousin Marwan, son of Abd-al-Malik's brother Mohammed, governor of the 'Jazirah' (West Mesopotamia).

### 733 Italy

Liutprand the Lombard takes Ravenna by surprise; 'Exarch' Eutychius reconquers it with support of Pope Gregory; Pope sends anti-iconoclast embassy to Leo.

## Byzantium

Byzantine/Khazar alliance; Leo's son Constantine marries Khazar princess who is renamed 'Irene'.

## Byzantium/Italy

Manes, 'strategus' of Cibyrrhaeots, leads fleet to Italy to intimidate Papacy but his ships are wrecked in Adriatic and campaign abandoned.

### c. 733 Byzantium/Italy

Leo confiscates Papal estates in Southern Italy and Sicily to punish Gregory III for not supporting Iconoclasm.

### c.735 Byzantium

Leo transfers Papal authority over Greece and Balkan peninsula, and Byzantine Southern Italy, to Patriarchate of Constantinople to punish Pope.

### 737 Caliphate

John of Damascus' third treatise against iconoclasts.

Imposture of alleged 'Tiberius IV' (Justinian II's son) at Edessa; crucified.

**739 Italy**

Pope Gregory sends appeal to Charles Martel, 'Mayor of the Palace' and real ruler of Frankish state, for aid against Lombards.

**c.740 Byzantium**

Leo issues definitive revision and modernisation of imperial law-code, the *Eclogue*.

**740 Byzantium**

Death of philanthropist Archbishop Andrew of Crete (canonised).

**April** Leo, accompanied by son Constantine, leads army out to confront large Arab invasion of Anatolicon; he destroys Arab army and kills commander al-Battal at battle of Acroinon.

**Autumn** Devastating earthquake around Constantinople; land-walls damaged, but towns in Thrace and Nicomedia virtually destroyed.

**741 Byzantium**

**18 June** Leo III dies of dropsy, aged around 60; Constantine succeeds to throne but brother-in-law Artavasdus starts plotting, probably with iconophile support.

**Late June** Constantine leaves capital for expedition to repel Arab raiders, leaving Theophanes 'Monotres' (One-Ear) the 'Magister' in command; he summons Artavasdus to bring Opsicion troops to join him at Dorylaeum, but Artavasdus attacks imperial camp and general Beser is killed; Constantine escapes but Artavasdus proclaims his death and Theophanes surrenders capital; Patriarch Anastasius crowns Artavasdus emperor and he crowns his son Nicephorus, but Constantine is supported by Anatolicon and Thraciesion troops; Constantine reaches Bosphorus but has to retire to Amorium, and Artavasdus' son Nicetas secures Armeniakon.

## Italy

**29 December** Death of Pope Gregory III; **2 December** Zacharias, Greek, elected Pope.

## 742 Byzantium

**May** Artavasdus sets out from Constantinople, but does not join up with son Nicetas and Armeniacon troops quickly enough and **May** is trapped near Sardes by Constantine and defeated.

Artavasdus returns to Constantinople; Constantine returns to Bithynia **August** to intercept Nicetas and defeat him at Modrene; he advances to Chrysopolis and crosses Bosphorus; **September** 'Strategus' Sisinnius of Thraceseion crosses Hellespont to secure Thrace for Constantine; Constantinople besieged.

## 743 Caliphate

Death of Caliph Hisham; succeeded by libertine nephew Walid II, who mainly resides at Syrian desert palaces.

## Italy

Liutprand besieges Ravenna; with no Byzantine help possible 'Exarch' Euthymus gets Pope Zacharias to **June** visit Pavia and arrange peace.

## Byzantium

Artavasdus besieged in Constantinople and his fleet is defeated at Abydos while collecting supplies; his son Nicetas brings troops to Chrysopolis, but cannot break the siege and retreat to be defeated and captured near Nicomedia; Constantinople is starved into submission and **2 November** surrenders as Constantine launches attack; Artavasdus and 'Patrician' Badansius flee to Bithynia and are arrested.

Artavasdus and sons are blinded and some others imprisoned but no major punishments; Patriarch Anastasius paraded around Hippodrome on donkey as humiliation but allowed to stay in office.

? Constantine blinds Sisinnius as suspicious of his loyalty.

**c. 743/4      Byzantium**

Constantine breaks up the troublesome Opsicon 'theme' to create new military district of 'Optimaton' near Constantinople – Opsicon troops reduced to enable creation of six new imperial regiments ('tagmata') including the two guards-regiments ('Excubitors' and 'Scholae') and the cavalry-regiment of 'Watch'.

**744            Italy**

Death of Lombard king Liutprand, succeeded by brother Hildebrand; he is deposed by Ratchis, duke of Friuli.

**Caliphate**

**April** Caliph Walid II killed in revolt by cousin Yazid (III) who seizes power with Yemeni tribal troops; another cousin, Marwan son of Abd-al-Malik's brother, revolts against Yazid and **October** deposes him; Yazid's brother Ibrahim resists at Damascus but deposed too **November**.

Ibn Muawiya, descendant of Caliph Ali's brother Ja'afar, seizes Kufa but expelled and retreats into Fars.

**745            Byzantium**

? Constantine starts to advance frontier in Thrace at expense of Bulgars/Slavs.

**Caliphate**

Revolt of Abu Hamza seizes Mecca and Medina in Arabia; 'Kharijite' tribal revolt in Mesopotamia led by Dahhak; Yemeni tribal troops revolt in Syria.

**746            Byzantium**

Marwan renews war against the empire and sends fleet from Egypt to occupy Cyprus; it is destroyed at Kyrenia by 'Cibyrrhaeot' fleet.

Constantine invades Syria, takes Germanicea and Sozopetra, and evacuates inhabitants to help repopulate Thrace after Bulgar invasions.

? Great plague spreads from Sicily to Greece and Aegean islands.

## Caliphate

Marwan's forces regain control of Mecca and Medina **September**; he kills Dahhak.

### 747 Byzantium

Plague spreads to Constantinople and devastates population; Constantine moves out to safe distance away in Bithynia.

? Genesis the 'Paulician' leader dies in plague; successor Joseph leads the sect back into plague-depopulated East Anatolia within Byzantine territory.

## Caliphate

Ibrahim, descendant of the Prophet's uncle, raises revolt against 'corrupt' Ommayad regime in Persia, claiming mission to purify Islam; principal general is the brilliant Abu Muslim, who defeats existing rebel leader Ibn Muawiya's regime in Fars; however Ibrahim is soon killed while on pilgrimage, though rebellion continues and Persia lost to Ommayad control.

### 748 Byzantium

Plague abates in Constantinople; perhaps a third of population killed, and Constantine brings in new settlers from Greece to repopulate city.

## Armenia

Ashot III the Bagratid, pro-Arab ruler of Armenia, deposed and blinded by Gregory the Mamikonid with Byzantine backing; alliance between Byzantium and Gregory against the Caliphate.



## 749 Byzantium

**25 January** Birth of Constantine and Irene's son Leo; Irene soon dies.

### Italy

Ratchis deposed as Lombard ruler by Aistulf, and becomes monk at Monte Cassino.

### Caliphate

Revolt of Ibrahim's brother Abdul Abbas against Marwan; **August** his general Qahtaba killed at victory on Euphrates, but son Hassan secures Kufa and Abdul Abbas introduced to mosque as rightful heir to the Prophet and **30 October** receives homage as Caliph; his generals fight retreating Marwan in West Mesopotamia, and Abu Muslim commands in Persia.

## 750 Caliphate

**25 January** Caliph Marwan defeated near Mosul and flees to Egypt; Abbasid forces advance through Syria and take Damascus; foundation of new caliphal dynasty, called 'Abbasid' after Abdul Abbas' great-grandfather Al-Abbas, the Prophet's uncle.

**June** Abbasid commander summons Omayyad relatives resident in Syria and Palestine to a banquet near Jaffa and massacres them to secure the new dynasty; one prince, Abd-al-Rahman, escapes to Spain (and founds dynasty there in 756).

Marwan killed at battle of Busiris near River Nile; Egypt secured.

### Byzantium

**Pentecost** Coronation of Prince Leo.

? Constantine marries second wife Maria; no children.

**Bulgaria**

? Sevar succeeded as 'Khan' by Kormesios.

**c. 750 Armenia**

Gregory the Mamikonid replaced as ruler by brother Musegh.

**751 Byzantium**

Constantine takes the offensive against weakened Arabs, retaking Theodosiopolis and retaking and demolishing Melitene; Christian residents are evacuated to help repopulate Thrace.

**Abbasid Caliphate**

Abbasid forces take Tashkent in Transoxiana and defeat Chinese forces on the River Talas to secure conquests.

**Italy**

**Summer** Aistulf takes Ravenna; end of the 'Exarchate' and Byzantine Northern Italy.

**752 Italy**

**15 March** Death of Pope Zacharias; first choice of successor, Stephen, dies within days; **26 March** Stephen II elected Pope and appeals to Franks against Aistulf.

**Byzantium**

? Death of Empress Maria; Constantine marries third wife Eudocia.

## Italy

Arab fleet raids Sicily.

## 753 Byzantium

Constantine prepares a new Church Council to condemn icons;? birth of Christophorus, his first son by third wife Eudocia.

## Italy

**October** Pope Stephen leaves Rome with Frankish escort; **November** he calls on Aistulf at Pavia to demand return of Exarchate to Byzantium as Constantine requested, but no reply so he goes on to France across Alps.

## 754 Byzantium

**Early** Death of Patriarch Anastasius; Constantine's religious Council opens at Palace of Hierea near Chalcedon, with Archbishop Theodosius of Ephesus (son of Emperor Tiberius III) presiding; 338 bishops allegedly present for **February–August** six months' deliberations; patristic writings unfavourable to icons approved, icons condemned and iconophiles, especially late Patriarch Germanus and John of Damascus, condemned as heretics; Constantine V hailed as '13th Apostle' and Bishop Constantine of Syllaenum made Patriarch.

No immediate action against iconophiles, but Council's verdict denounced by Pope Stephen.

## Abbasid Caliphate

**9 July** Death of Caliph Al-Abbas ('As-Saffah', 'the Bloody'); brother Al-Mansur succeeds, but uncle Abdullah governor of Syria revolts; Abu Muslim leads Al-Mansur's army to victory at Nisibis but is later executed.

## Italy/Franks

Pope Stephen meets Pepin in France and **April** discussions at Quierzy lead to Pepin guaranteeing security of Papal state and of Ravenna and lands of

Exarchate from Lombards; Stephen cites fictitious rights to Italy given in ‘Donation of Constantine’.

Stephen anoints Pepin as King of the Franks **28 July** Pepin invades Lombardy on Stephen’s behalf, besieges Pavia, and **August** makes King agree to hand over his conquered Exarchate territories to the Pope – thereby cutting out Byzantine claim.

## 755 **Byzantium**

Constantine campaigns in North-East Anatolia, and takes and garrisons Camachum; he takes Theodosiopolis but evacuates inhabitants to help repopulate Bulgar-devastated Thrace.

Bulgars raid Thrace to the ‘Long Walls’ West of capital.

## **Abbasid Caliphate**

Revolt in North Africa by ‘Ibadite’ heretics; Qairouan taken.

## 756 **Italy**

**January** Aistulf besieges Rome; at Paul’s appeal Pepin returns to Italy and **June** forces Aistulf to submit at Pavia; Ravenna and ‘Pentapolis’ (Rimini, etc.) given to Papal state, at which Byzantine envoys protest to Pepin.

## **Byzantium**

? Abbasid army retakes Melitene and Theodosiopolis.

## **Armenia**

? Arabs install their client Isaac III (Sahak) as governor.

## **Italy**

**December** Death of Lombard ruler Aistulf; Pope Paul backs Desiderius of Tuscany to seize throne, but persuades Dukes of Spoleto and Benevento to declare independence.

**757 Byzantium**

Constantine invades Sicilia; after some skirmishes, truce arranged.

**Italy**

**26 April** Death of Pope Stephen II; **29 May** his brother elected Pope Paul I.

**758 Italy**

Desiderius the Lombard subjugates Spoleto and Benevento and sends envoys to Empire.

**Abbasid Caliphate**

Caliphal army takes Edessa after alleged disloyalty and levels walls; Al-Mansur's son Al-Mahdi appointed governor of Khorasan.

**759 Byzantium**

Arabs raid East Anatolia and defeat Paul, 'strategus' of Armeniacon, on River Melas but Constantine does not respond in kind and a truce is later arranged.

Byzantine expedition against Bulgars reaches Varna, but Leo 'strategus' of Thrace killed; Constantine suppresses Slavs in West Thrace and receives submission.

**Italy**

Byzantine embassy to Desiderius the Lombard; alliance agreed.

**760 Byzantium**

Constantine sends fleet to land troops in Danube delta while he marches on Bulgars by land; Bulgars meet him at Marcellae and are defeated, but

Constantine agrees to truce as hears ‘strategus’ of Armeniacon killed by Arab raiders.

## Italy

Constantine sends fleet to Sicily to prepare (abortive) attack on Southern Italy’s Frankish adherents.

## 761 Byzantium/Bulgaria

Two executions of recalcitrant iconophile monks; start of Constantine’s persecution in effort to break resistance to Council of Hieria decrees. Civil war in Bulgar Khanate; ‘Khan’ Kormesios deposed in favour of Vinekh and Telet who ask for Byzantine truce to continue.

## Abbasid Caliphate

Revolt at Medina against Abbasids; revolt in North Africa crushed by Ibn Al-Arath, governor of Egypt, and Qairouan reoccupied.

## 762 Byzantium/Bulgaria

Triumph of Telets in Bulgar civil war; he becomes ‘Khan’ and breaks peace with Byzantium; many Slavs flee to Byzantium, and Constantine settles them in Opsicion theme in North-West Anatolia.

## Armenia

Sembat VII, Bagratid prince, made Arab governor.

## 763 Byzantium/Bulgaria

Constantine sends army by sea to mouth of Danube, and marches up coast with second army; **30 June** Telets routed and army destroyed at battle of Anchialus; Bulgars kill Telets and elect Sabin, who faces disaffection and flees to Byzantium.

Khazars, as Byzantine allies, march South through the Darial Pass into Caucasia and raid Arab-occupied Armenia.

Baian new Bulgar 'Khan'.

## Italy

Pope Paul and representatives of Alexandria, Antioch, and Jerusalem support icons.

## 764 Byzantium

Constantine starts systematic devastation of Bulgar territory; Toktu and Baian are killed and many settlements burned but survivors hold out in forests and mountains. Vinekh made Bulgar 'Khan'.

**September** Constantine starts systematic campaign against iconophile resistance and orders all icons to be destroyed and religious paintings whitewashed; he appoints his iconoclast general Michael Lachanodracon as 'strategus' of Thraceseion to carry out orders there, especially in devout Ephesus; resisting monks' monasteries turned into barracks.

? 'Khan' Vinekh deposed for seeking peace with Constantine and flees to Byzantium.

## 765 Byzantium

Constantine raids Bulgars again.

St. Stephen 'the younger', holy hermit on Mount Auxentius near Chalcedon, becomes inspiration for iconophile resistance; Stephen is arrested and lynched in prison by a mob led by 'Scholae' guards-officers, and his adherents are persecuted; serious plotting starts amongst officials against Emperor.

Patriarch Constantine is arrested, deposed and exiled to Prince's islands;  
**16 November** Nicetas, priest of Church of Holy Apostles, consecrated Patriarch.

## Abbasid Caliphate

Caliphal army led by Khalid Ibn Barmak (founder of 'Barmekid' dynasty) conquers independent Persian state of Tabaristan on South shore of Caspian.

## Byzantium/Franks

Constantine sends envoys to Pepin asking Frankish church to back iconoclasm, but its bishops refuse at subsequent Synod.

### 766 Byzantium

Constantine restores Aqueduct of Valens to bring water to capital after drought. **June** Constantine marches up Black Sea coast parallel to fleet but latter is wrecked in storm near Anchialus and campaign abandoned; back in capital he orders mass-marriage of monks and nuns, and forces them to parade at Hippodrome games holding hands; similar treatment meted out by 'strategus' Michael Lachanodracon in Thraceseion.

Conspiracy of Constantine Podopagurus, postal 'logothete' (security minister), his brother Strategius commander of 'Excubitors', 'strategoi' of Thrace and Sicily, and 'Count' of Opsicion; Constantine beheads Podopaguri and blinds others, and ex-patriarch Constantine imprisoned; part of Opsicion becomes Bucellarion 'theme'.

### 767 Byzantium

Ex-patriarch Constantine abused in Hippodrome and **15 August** executed; head put on 'Milion' Arch. Monasteries are closed down and razed and occupants expelled, some killed, in persecution.

## Italy

**28 June** Death of Pope Paul; **5 July** Constantine, brother of Duke Toto of Nepi, installed by aristocratic faction.

### 768 Byzantium

Al-Abbas' Arabs invade Armeniacon and besiege Sergius' army in Camacha.

**Easter** Constantine's eldest sons by third marriage, Christophorus and Nicephorus, made 'Caesars' and brother Nicetas 'Nobilissimus'.

Failure of negotiations to marry Prince Leo to Frankish King Pepin's daughter Gisela; Pepin dies and succeeded by sons Charles and Carloman.



## Italy

**31 July** Desiderius' troops aid Roman revolt, led by 'chief notary' Christopher's son Sergius; 'Pope' Constantine arrested in Lateran, and Lombards try to make priest Philip Pope until Christopher refuses to accept him; **6 August** Constantine deposed, sent to monastery, and blinded; **7 August** Stephen III elected as Christopher's puppet and accepted by rulers.

## c. 768 Georgia

Accession of Leo (I or II) the Anchabadze, first traceable ruler of Abasgia; dynasty rules to 978.

## 769 Byzantium

Arab general Ibn Wakkas retakes Germanicea from Byzantines.

**Easter** Coronation of Constantine's third wife Eudocia as 'Augusta'.

Byzantine expedition reconquers Samosata.

Constantine arranges son Leo's marriage to Irene, of noble Athenian family (and secret iconophile); **1 November** she is escorted across Bosphorus in state; **3 November** betrothal ceremony; **17 December** Constantine crowns Irene just before wedding.

## 770 Byzantium

Arabs sack Laodicea Combustea in Anatolicon 'theme'.

## Italy

Papal/Lombard dispute over archbishopric of Ravenna; encouraged by possibility of 'rapprochement' with Franks, Desiderius arranges murder of his opponent, chief Papal 'notary' Christopher, in Rome.

## 771 Byzantium

**14 January** Birth of Prince Leo and Irene's son Constantine.

Arabs raid Eastern Anatolia; Byzantines raid Arab Armenia.

Arab general Al-Fadl reconquers Mopsuestia, Cicilia, from Byzantines.

## Armenia

Mamikonid family lead Armenian revolt against pro-Arab Sembat VII.

## 772 Italy

**January** Death of Pope Stephen III; **1 February** Hadrian I elected Pope; ends practice of dating documents by Byzantine imperial reigns and wins Charles the Frank's support to attack Lombard kingdom and save Papal territories from Desiderius.

## Byzantium

Arabs advance along Anatolian coast to besiege Sycae in Cibyrhaeot 'theme'; Constantine organizes armies from Anatolicon, Armeniacon, and Bucellarion to bar their retreat but the Arabs defeat them and escape with booty; Constantine unsuccessfully requests truce.

## Bulgaria

Telerich becomes 'Khan'.

## 773 Italy

**Autumn** Charles invades Lombardy and besieges capital Pavia.

## 774 Italy

Charles leaves siege of Pavia to visit Rome for Easter, and **6 April** confirms Papal territories as state accepting 'Donation of Constantine'; **September** Pavia falls, Lombard kingdom incorporated into Frankish dominions, and Desiderius deported; son Adelchis flees.

## **Byzantium**

Constantine leads land and sea force up to Danube; Bulgars sue for peace.

## **Armenia**

Mamikonid princes under Mushegh lead revolt against Caliphal tax-collectors; Arabs defeated at Bagawan.

## **775 Byzantium**

**Spring** Constantine leads expedition against the Bulgars; a storm damages his fleet off Mesembria, so he returns to capital where Telerich sends embassy; Telerich's men discover identity of Byzantine spies in Bulgaria who are then killed.

Constantine marches out again, but falls ill with fever and boils at Arcadiopolis; he is brought back in litter to Selymbria, taken on ship and **14 September** dies aged 57; Leo IV succeeds and relaxes persecutions.

## **Abbasid Caliphate**

Death of Al-Mansur **October**; succeeded by son Al-Hadi.

## **Armenia/Iberia**

Most of princes and a large peasant-army join revolt against Arabs; Theodosiopolis is taken, but is recaptured after rebel defeats at Archesh and Bagravene; leading princes are deported to Baghdad, and Bagratid prince Adarnase, among refugees deprived of Armenian lands, founds new branch of dynasty in Iberia.

## **c.775 Italy**

Giovanni Galbaio 'Doge' of Venice.

## 776 Byzantium

**Spring** Leo encourages demonstration in favour of his son Constantine becoming co-emperor at regimental 'pay-day' parade in capital; **Easter** he crowns Constantine co-emperor; **May?** plot among bodyguards and grooms in favour of Leo's half-brother Nicephorus, but he is stripped of title of 'Caesar' and plotters exiled to Cherson.

**Summer** Leo raids North Syria as far as Samosata, which is sacked; Arabs raid to Ancyra in retaliation.

Refugee Adelchis, son of ex-king Desiderius of Lombards, welcomed in Constantinople as potential ally against Franks.

## 777 Byzantium/Bulgaria

'Khan' Telerich deposed and flees to Byzantium; replaced by Kardam.

## 778 Byzantium

Michael Lachadracon raids into Syria; he besieges Germanicea, sacks Hadath and takes many captives, and defeats an Arab army; Caliph plans retaliation and orders construction of new fortress at Adata, commanding pass into Eastern Cappadocia, as base for future raids.

## 779 Georgia

? Stephen III the Guaramid succeeds Narses as Arab governor.

## Byzantium

Byzantines destroy Adata; Arabs raid to Dorylaeum in retaliation.

## 780 Byzantium

**February** Death of Patriarch Nicetas; succeeded by Paul IV.

**8 September** Death of Leo IV, aged 31, amidst suspicion of poison; he forces Patriarch Paul to swear that he will maintain iconoclasm.

Constantine VI succeeds aged 9, with Irene as regent but effective co-ruler; she insists on her holding imperial orb on coinage and refers to herself as co-ruler.

**16 October** Discovery of plot in favour of Leo's eldest half-brother Nicephorus, led by 'Domestic' of 'Excubitors' (guard-regiment) Constantine, postal 'logothete' Gregory, ex-'strategos' of Armeniacon Bardas, and 'Drungharius' of Aegean islands Theophylact Rhangabe (father of future Emperor Michael I); Irene has them arrested, flogged, tonsured, and exiled, and Nicephorus and brothers are made priests to invalidate claim to throne.

Irene offers co-regency to Nicephorus' sister Anthisa, presumably for show as she is only interested in charitable works and turns her down.

Eunuch Stauracius made postal logothete, and effectively chief minister; Irene starts to encourage people to become monks and nuns again.

**25 December** Irene joins in imperial procession at Hagia Sophia, unprecedented for woman, and ceremonially returns a votive crown that Leo IV allegedly sacrilegiously stole for which sin God caused his death.

## 781 **Italy**

**February** Elpidius 'the Patrician', new governor of Sicily, recalled on suspicion of disloyalty; refuses to return so declared a rebel and family imprisoned.

**Easter** Charles visits Rome, and makes son Pepin 'King of Italy' (ex-Lombard state); Irene sends embassy proposing that Constantine VI marry his daughter Rothrud.

## **Byzantium/Abbasid Caliphate**

**Summer** Caliph sends second son Harun with large army to prepare to invade Anatolia via new Arab base at Adata near Cilician Gates; general Abd-al-Kabir invades and fights drawn battle with Michael Lachanodracon near Caesarea, then withdraws, John the 'Sacellarius' acts as Irene's overall commander in Anatolia but avoids battle.

## **Italy**

**Autumn** Theodore 'the Patrician' leads large expedition to Sicily and defeats outnumbered Elpidius.

## Byzantium/Franks

**Autumn** Constans the ‘Sacellarius’ leads embassy to Aachen to confirm the proposal that Constantine VI marry Charles’s daughter Rothrud; Ellissaeus the ‘notary’ left behind to teach Rothrud Greek.

## 782 Byzantium

**February** Caliph’s younger son Harun leads c.90,000 Arabs into Anatolia; Al-Barmaki raids Thraceseion and defeated by Michael Lachanodracon and Al-Rabi defeated at Nacolea but ‘Count’ of Opsikion Nicetas defeated and Harun raids to Chrysopolis; on return journey Byzantines cut Harun off but ‘strategus’ Tatzates of Bucellarion, an exiled Armenian noble who hates Irene’s ministers, helps Harun to kidnap her representatives Stauraclus and ‘Domestic of Schools’ Anthony at truce-meeting, negotiations end with Irene paying 160,000 ‘Nomismata’ tribute per annum and hostages released **August**; Tatzates flees to Armenia with Arab help.

## Armenia

Tatzates, under original Armenian name of ‘Tachat Andrewatsi’, is installed by the Arabs as presiding prince after 10-year hiatus of Christian authority.

## Italy

Elpidius abandons Sicily and flees to North Africa, where governor gives him imperial insignia; eventually goes to Caliph.

## 783 Byzantium

Irene’s chief adviser Stauracius takes army across Thrace to Thessalonica and then down into Central Greece, defeating Slavs and enforcing submission en route; he proceeds to Athens and **late Summer** into Peloponnesse for first Byzantine military campaign for century, and Slavs submit to nominal suzerainty; many prisoners taken.

Byzantine governor of Cyprus kidnapped by Arab pirates.

## 784 **Byzantium**

**January** Stauracius returns to Constantinople and holds triumph.

**May** Irene tours Thrace with Constantine and army and rebuilds Berroea, as 'Irenopolis', and Philippopolis; Anchialus refortified and re-settlement started in Strymon and Hebrus valleys.

**31 August** Dying Patriarch Paul retires to monastery of Florus and appeals for Council to restore icons and end sinful breach with other Patriarchates; Irene organizes an assembly of senators and citizens and 'spontaneous' call for her ally Tarasius, 'protoascretis' (head of Chancery), to be made Patriarch; 754 Council is denounced as Tarasius 'insists' on need for new Council; **25 December** consecrated Patriarch.

## c.785 **Russia**

Byzantine missionary Bishop John of Gothia leads Crimean Goths to retake their fort at Dorus from Khazars; Khazars retake fort and take John prisoner.

## 785 **Abbasid Caliphate**

**4 August** Caliph Al-Mahdi killed hunting; succeeded by son Al-Hadi. Shi'a revolt in Mecca.

## **Byzantium/Italy**

**29 August** Irene and Tarasius write to Pope Hadrian announcing 'Oecumenical Council' and inviting him to come or to send legates; he chooses the latter. Irene withholds tribute due to Caliphate.

## **Byzantium**

**August** Abbot Michael and his monks at Zobe monastery, Armeniacon, killed in raid from Adata by Arab governor Sulaiman; declared martyrs.

**786 Franks/Italy**

Charles campaigns against Benevento and forces Prince Adelchis to become ally and hand over son Grimoald as hostage.

**Byzantium/Arab Caliphate**

**May** Husain ibn Ali leads revolt in Medina; **June** 'Kharijite' tribal revolt in Arabia suppressed but Alid descendant Idris escapes to Morocco.

**Summer?** 'Strategus' of Armeniacon retakes Adata.

**31 July** As 'Oecumenical Council' delegates assemble, capital's guard-regiments protest outside intended site, Church of Holy Apostles; **1 August** they riot again and bang on doors as Irene and Constantine attend opening session, and Irene orders postponement; new Council ordered for 787, and Irene sends regiments to Malagina to prepare for pretended campaign then cashiers troublemakers.

**September** Death of Caliph Al-Mahdi; succeeded by brother Harun 'Al-Raschid'.

**787 Byzantium/Franks**

**Spring** Irene sends embassy to Charles proposing that his daughter Rothrud marry Constantine.

**Byzantium**

**May** Invitations sent to new Council of Church at Nicaea safe from military resentment, **24 September** it meets at Church of St. Sophia in Nicaea with 'Count' of Opsicon, Petronas, and John the 'Military Logothete' as Irene's observers but no imperial presence, and Tarasius elected president; Irene sends letter announcing freedom of decision, but 10 iconoclast bishops are excluded and others announce repentance; the patristic texts used by Council of Hieria in 754 shown to be out of context, and each decree of that assembly is refuted painstakingly; **23 October** after Council has agreed to restoration of icons and anathematized iconoclasts it reassembles in Magnaura Palace, Constantinople, to present decisions to Irene and Constantine who sign the acts before disciplinary canons against iconoclast



misbehaviour in past are approved; Church unity restored and imperial couple proclaimed 'new Constantine and Helena' to draw links with Nicaea 325.

Iconoclast clergy who have paid for office suspended for 12 months for simony but no other punishments and no open dissent.

## Italy

Adelchis of Benevento dies; succeeded by son Grimoald, currently Frankish hostage, as Charles' puppet.

## 788 Byzantium

**Autumn** Irene holds 'bride-show' for Constantine, and the bride selected is Maria of Amnia, grand-daughter of philanthropic noble (St) Philaretus 'the Almsgiver' (of Armenian descent) from Paphlagonia; **November** Constantine and Maria are married.

**September** Arabs raid Anatolicon 'theme' and defeat Byzantines at Podandus; a killed Byzantine commander, Diogenes, may be original of epic's *Diogenes Akritas*.

**November** Philetus, 'strategus' of Thrace, killed by Bulgars in ambush during campaign up Strymon valley.

## Italy

**November** Irene's army, led by John the 'Military Logothete', invades Benevento to try to force abandonment of Frankish alliance; defeated and John killed.

## 789 Byzantium/Italy

Irene marries Maria of Amnia's sister Euanthia to Prince Grimoald of Benevento in alliance.

? Irene creates new 'theme' of Macedonia in Western Thrace.

## 790 Byzantium

**9 February** Earthquake in Constantinople, and many inhabitants camp outside; Constantine and Irene go to Palace of St. Mamas up Bosphorus, where Constantine plans to have Irene arrested and exile Stauracius with help of Peter 'the Patrician' and Theodore Camulianus; Stauracius discovers plot and Irene orders the plotters arrested, flogged, tonsured, and exiled; Constantine is? flogged or just slapped and confined to apartments.

Irene insists that army swear oath never to depose her and to put her name in front of Constantine's in acclamations; **Summer** Arab fleet raids Cyprus, and defeats the fleet of Cibyrrhaeot 'theme' off Attaleia; 'strategus' Theophilus captured and executed, regarded as martyr.

**September** Armeniacon troops refuse to swear oath to Irene ahead of Constantine; Irene sends senior officer, Alexius Musele, to demand obedience but they seize him and proclaim him their 'strategus'. Troops demand Constantine's release, and other Asiatic 'themes' armies join them at Atroa in Opsicion; Irene agrees to send Constantine to them to avoid attack and they acclaim him as sole emperor; **10 November** he returns to Constantinople with military escort and Irene confined to her Palace of Eleutherius.

## 791 Byzantium

**April** Constantine marches against Bulgars, and fights drawn battle with 'Khan' Kardam; both armies retreat.

**September** Constantine marches across Anatolia via Amorium to invade Cilicia, but abandons campaign ? due to weather.

**Autumn** Constantine replaces Alexius Musele, feared for popularity, with Theodore Camulianus as 'strategus' of Armeniacon.

## 792 Byzantium

**15 January** Constantine confirms Irene as co-ruler; Stauracius recalled from exile and she starts to reassert her position; Armeniacon 'theme' troops refuse to accept her and demand restoration of Alexius Musele, so Constantine has Musele flogged and imprisoned.

**July** Constantine marches into Bulgaria to inaugurate new fort at Marcellae; 'Khan' Kardam arrives with army and on advice of Court astrologer Pancratius

Constantine attacks; he is routed and Constantine V's general Michael Lachanodracon among the killed.

**August** Plot in favour of Constantine V's younger sons; Constantine has eldest, Nicephorus, blinded and tongues of other four cut out; Musele blinded too. Plot collapses but **September** Armeniacon troops depose 'strategus' Camulianus.

### 793 **Byzantium**

Constantine advances against Armeniacon rebel troops and **25 May** defeats them in battle; they are rounded up, two commanders and Bishop of Sinope executed, and the regiment based at Euchaita (1,000 men) brought in chains to Constantinople; **24 June** they are branded and paraded in Hippodrome before exile to Sicily and other islands.

Arabs raid into Armeniacon 'theme' and disgruntled troops surrender Camacha; **Summer** a second raid, into Anatolicon, forces surrender of fort of Thebasa.

### c.794 **Abbasid Caliphate**

Dissident tribal 'Kharijite' revolt in 'Jazireh', North-West Mesopotamia.

### 794 **Byzantium**

Theodore, nephew of abbot Plato, becomes vigorously reforming abbot of Saccudion in Bithynia.

?Constantine falls for Irene's attendant Theodote who becomes his mistress; he cannot divorce Maria for adultery so claims she tried to poison him.

**Autumn** Sulaiman, son of Harun al-Rashid, and 782 rebel Elpidius raid Cappadocia.

### 795 **Byzantium**

**January** Arabs with Elpidius retreat in harsh winter; Constantine persuades Maria to retire to nunnery ? encouraged by Irene who wants to make him unpopular.

**April** Constantine marches against Arab raiders of Anatolicon and pursues them to the frontier; he gives thanks to St. John at Ephesus.

**August** Constantine announces his betrothal to Theodote and crowns her 'Augusta'; no reputable cleric will perform ceremony so **September** he persuades the priest Joseph, abbot of Cathara, to marry them at his suburban Palace of St. Mamas on Bosphorus.

Theodore of Saccudion and his uncle Plato, though related to Theodote, lead condemnation of marriage and denounce Joseph.

## Italy

**25 December** Death of Pope Hadrian I; **26 December** Leo III, from noble family, elected Pope but proves unpopular with some in Rome for strong rule.

## 796 Byzantium

Constantine refuses usual tribute to Bulgar 'Khan' Kardam and when he threatens to devastate Thrace he sends him horse manure and challenges him to meet for battle at Marcellae on frontier; when he approaches Versincia Kardam deploys his waiting army in thick forest so attack hazardous; Constantine waits and after 17 days Kardam retreats.

Arabs raid as far as Amorium region but retreat.

**11 July** Constantine and Irene preside together over relic-translation of St. Euphemia at capital; **September** the court moves to Prusa in Bithynia to take medicinal baths, minus the pregnant Theodote, and Constantine tries to arrange interview with recalcitrant Plato and Theodore.

**7 October** Theodote gives birth to son Leo; Constantine returns to capital, leaving Irene and most of court to follow on, and Irene starts to plot with courtiers and Guards and spreads stories of Constantine's incompetence.

## 797 Byzantium/Abbasid Caliphate

**February** Constantine has Theodore and Plato of Saccudion monastery arrested, brought to Palace for interrogation, flogged and exiled; rest of monks at monastery are driven out.

Harun al-Rashid raids Anatolicon 'theme'; **March** Constantine mounts unsuccessful campaign and gives up early on false information that Arabs have retired, while Irene's agents in the army undermine officers' loyalty.

**1 May** Death of Constantine's son, Leo.

**August** Arabs raid into Bucellarian 'theme' unopposed; **Thursday 17 August** Irene's conspirators plan to intercept Constantine's galley en route to St. Mamas palace up the Bosphorus after races in capital, but he spots them coming, returns to harbour, and sails to Pylae in Bithynia.

Irene rallies supporters at Palace of Eleutherius and sends to her allies in Constantine's entourage threatening to reveal their plots; **Saturday 19 August** they seize Constantine, put him on galley, and return him to Palace as prisoner; he is locked in 'Purple Bedchamber' where he was born and eyes are put out as Irene seizes throne.

Irene claims Constantine was blinded without her knowledge and he is sent to live in obscurity; Theodote sent to nunnery, and Theodore and Plato restored to Saccudion with their monks; Irene's position uncertain as a sole female ruler unprecedented, but calls herself 'Emperor'.

**September?** Abd al-Malik's Arabs raid as far as Ancyra, and Irene sends eunuch minister Aetius with army; **October** conspiracy in favour of sons of Constantine V, who take sanctuary in Hagia Sophia hoping for revolt; they are exiled to Athens.

## 798 **Byzantium**

Irene's eunuch ministers, 'patricians' Stauracius and Aetius, struggle for power. Joseph of Cathara dismissed from priesthood by Tarasius.

**Spring** Embassy sent to Charles to announce Irene's accession and request extension of current alliance; ? Istria ceded to Franks.

**September** Abd al-Malik's Arabs raid Opsicon theme, loot army base at Malagina and defeat 'Count' Paul the 'Patrician'; monastery of Saccudion looted, so Irene brings abbots Theodore and uncle Plato to Constantinople as abbots of prestigious Studius monastery.

Bishop Euthymius of Sardes sent to Harun al-Rashid; tribute of 160,000 'nomismata' a year (782 sum) restored as tribute to Arabs.

## 799 Byzantium

**March** Pope Leo attacked by enemies, maltreated, and sent to monastery; he escapes to Francia and **November** is restored to Rome by Frankish troops.

**March** Conspiracy among officers and Slavs in Peloponnesse to free the sons of Constantine V; Irene sends cousin Theophylact to blind those not yet blinded and arrest conspirators; **1 April** Irene leads lavish procession from Mass at Church of Holy Apostles, accompanied by 'Domestic of Schools' Nicetas Tryphillius, 'strategus' of Thraceseion Bardanes Turcus, and other 'patricians', scattering largesse to the people.

Khazars raid pro-Arab Caucasus.

## 800 Byzantium

Aetius and others accuse Stauracius of conspiracy against Irene, who **February** exonerates but isolates him; he continues to plot despite serious illness, and a revolt by troops in Cappadocia against Aetius ('strategus' of Anatolicon so their superior) precedes **3 June** Stauracius' death; on news of that the rebellion collapses.

Aetius soon unites Opsicon with Anatolicon under his command.

## North Africa

Creation of independent state in Tunisia under 'Emir' Ibrahim ibn Al-Aghlab; foundation of 'Aghlabid' dynasty.

## Italy

**November** Charles arrives in Rome with army; **23 December** Pope Leo swears innocence of enemies' charges to council, and Charles has accusers arrested but spared on Leo's intercession, **25 December** Leo unexpectedly crowns Charles during service in St. Peter's, presumably as 'legitimate' Emperor (of West) as Irene illegal.

## 801 Byzantium

**March** Irene abolishes trading-duties at capital's markets and reduces tolls on ships at Abydus, and further tax-concessions to citizens and 'tagmata' (Guards regiments) to increase her popularity.

Threat of Frankish attack on Sicily rumoured over Irene's delay in reacting to Charles' coronation.

## 802 Byzantium

**Early** Leo the 'spatharius' sent as envoy to Charles at Aachen, and good relations restored; **Summer** Frankish envoys arrive at Constantinople proposing that Charles marry Irene and the two Empires are united.

## Bulgaria

Death of 'Khan' Kardam; succeeded by ambitious son Krum.

## Abbasid Caliphate

Harun al-Raschid has oaths taken to sons al-Amin, as next Caliph, and younger Al-Mamun, as governor of Khorasan; he makes pilgrimage to Mecca.

## Byzantium

Aetius, now both 'strategus' of Anatolicon and 'Count' of Opsicon, tries to induce Irene to reject Charles' proposal and name his brother Leo as her successor; the 'general logothete' Nicephorus leads a conspiracy against Irene and Aetius with Nicetas Triphyllius the 'Domestic of Scholae', Nicetas' brother (ex-strategus' of Thrace) Leo, 'Sacellarius' Leo, and 'Quaestor' Theoctistus; **31 October** they arrive at the Chalke (Palace gate) announcing that Irene, absent at Palace of Eleutherius, has ordered them to proclaim Nicephorus co-emperor to forestall Aetius' proclamation of Leo, and guards admit them; Nicephorus proclaimed and sends troops to arrest Irene. **1 November** Irene is brought to Palace and agrees to abdicate, and Nicephorus is crowned in Hagia Sophia by Patriarch Tarasius.

Nicephorus agrees to let Irene stay at her palace if hands over her treasure, but amidst threat of counter-coup sends her to the convent of Mother of God on Principo, Prince's Islands, her own foundation.

**November/December** Aetius is deposed from his command amidst rumours of contact with Irene, who is deported to Lesbos.

Nicephorus orders stringent financial measures, and cancels the tribute due to Harun at Raschid in 803.

## 803 Byzantium

War with Caliphate; Bardanes Turcus made overall 'strategus' of all Asiatic themes; **April** sudden death of Nicetas Triphyllius 'Domestic of Scholae', amid rumours of poison, replaced by Peter 'the Patrician'.

**Spring** Embassy to Charles in Francia announcing Nicephorus' succession; Byzantine rule of Venetia recognised but Nicephorus delays accepting Charles' imperial title.

**19 July** While Nicephorus incapacitated by broken foot, Bardanes holds rally of troops as Harun's son Qasim invades but accepts their acclamations as Emperor; a hermit tells him he will fail but 2 of 3 lieutenants (Leo the Armenian, Michael the Amorian, Thomas the Slav) will rule. Armeniac troops remain loyal, but Bardanes reaches Nicaea and Nicomedia; at Chrysopolis they hear that **9 August** Irene has died on Lesbos, aged c.51, removing one cause for revolt.

Bardanes' men start to desert and he retreats to Malagina; deserting Leo made 'Count of the Federates' and Michael 'Count of the Tent'. After mediation by priest Joseph of Cathara, **September** Bardanes abandons troops and meets imperial envoys at Cius before taken to island of Prote as monk; Nicephorus confronts Arab raiders until they retreat.

**25 December** Nicephorus' son Stauracius crowned co-emperor.

## Abbasid Caliphate

Harun al-Raschid executes his friend and Vizier Ja'afar the Barmecid for affair with his sister, and imprisons and beggars his immensely rich family.



## 804 Italy

'Doge'/ Duke Giovanni Galbaio of Venice and unpopular family expelled; replaced by Obelearius degli Antonii,

### Byzantium

Bardanes Turcus blinded by Nicephorus' Lycaonian officers, but Emperor denies responsibility.

**August** Harun al-Raschid sends raid through Cilician Gates into Anatolicon; Nicephorus campaigns against them, but turns back on news from Constantinople and is ambushed and nearly captured at Crasus.

? Death of ex-emperor Constantine VI, aged around 34 (uncertain date but believed to be some years after deposition); daughter Euphrosyne survives him, living at convent on island of Principo founded by her mother Maria of Amnia.

## 805 Byzantium/Abbasid Caliphate

Before expedition to Khorasan, Harun al-Raschid organizes truce and prisoner-exchange with Byzantium; 3700 Arabs exchanged for Byzantines at River Lamus on frontier in Western Cilicia.

'Strategus' Sclerus of Hellas leads expedition to reassert imperial control over all Slavs of Peloponnese; they submit and full control restored after c.220 years; Byzantine settlers brought in, including descendants of exiles from Patras to Reggio in Southern Italy under archbishop Athanasius.

Nicephorus raids Cilicia and takes Tarsus; Cyprus revolts and accepts imperial rule.

## 806 Byzantium

**18 February** Death of Patriarch Tarasius; the most eminent candidate is strict and controversial monastic reformer Theodore of Studius monastery, and Nicephorus allows synod free vote but **Lent** deadlock; Nicephorus chooses a layman, former imperial secretary and head of 'poorhouse' Nicephorus who has written rare chronicle of recent centuries; Theodore's uncle Plato threatens schism so he and Theodore arrested while **Easter, 12 April** Nicephorus consecrated; then new Patriarch holds synod at imperial

request to re-admit Joseph of Cathara to priesthood, and Theodore and Plato avoid communion with Nicephorus or any priest who joins Joseph for communion; Joseph becomes steward of Hagia Sophia.

## Italy

**February** ‘Dukes’ Obelearius and Beatus of Venetia submit to Charles, who assigns their dominions to suzerainty of his son Pepin as ‘King of Italy’; Nicephorus sends fleet under Nicetas ‘the Patrician’ to reoccupy Venetian-held Dalmatian ports.

## Byzantium/Abbasid Caliphate

Harun al-Raschid invades, occupies Tyana and builds permanent fort and mosque; he raids Cappadocia and **August?** sacks Heraclea while fleet under Humayd raids Cyprus.

Nicephorus leads army out and defeats some raiders, but avoids Harun’s force as they retire; he sends envoys and agrees to pay 30,006 ‘nomismata’ as ‘head-tax’ (i.e. personal tax of 3 ‘nomismata’ each for himself and Stauracius) and not re-fortify destroyed forts; Harun agrees and evacuates Tyana.

## Georgia

Juansher of Kakhetia (central Georgia, with capital at Kutaisi), former prince of Iberia, captured by Khazars in 799, restored to power.

## Armenia

Arabs install Ashot the Bagratid as ‘Prince’.

## 807 Byzantium

Nicephorus orders new census for taxes ahead of start of ‘indiction’ on **1 September**; tax-exemptions cancelled and arrears stringently pursued, particularly among monasteries in reversal of Irene’s policy, so much discontent.

## Italy

**Winter** Nicetas 'the Patrician' arrives in Venice to blockade Frankish-held coast; truce arranged with Charles' son King Pepin, and Duke/'Doge' Obelearius granted rank of 'Spatharius' but brother Beatus taken to Constantinople as hostage.

## Byzantium

Nicephorus launches Bulgarian campaign to push frontier forward and re-settle Northern Thrace but halted by mutiny of troops at Adrianople; Harun al-Raschid sends raiders under Yazid into Taurus Mountains, but Yazid killed near Cilician Gates; Nicephorus confronts a larger raid **July?** and indecisive battle; admiral Humayd raids Peloponnese, aiding brief Slav revolt, and then Rhodes and Myra on return journey.

**December** Nicephorus holds a 'bride-show' for Stauracius; Theophano from Athens, a relative of Irene, selected and **20 December** married to Stauracius.

**807/8** Byzantines reoccupy Sardica and Philippopolis to protect upper Hebrus valley.

## 808 Byzantium

**Early?** Byzantines retake pass of the Cilician Gates.

Rebellion in Khorasan leads Harun al-Raschid to seek truce with Byzantium before he marches to deal with it; exchange of prisoners at Podandus.

Conspiracy in favour of 'Quaestor' Arsaber the 'Patrician', including Patriarchal officials; Arsaber flogged and exiled, but clerical resistance highlighted and Nicephorus dismisses Theodore of Studius' brother Joseph, archbishop of Thessalonica, for joining in refusal to take communion with Patriarch Nicephorus.

Krum raids Strymon valley; Nicephorus on expedition in Balkans.

Nicephorus surrounds monastery of Studius with soldiers, sends envoys to Theodore to request that he accept Joseph of Cathara as Tarasius did, and on refusal brings him and leading monks to monastery of St. Sergius and Bacchus nearer Palace to be harangued by his agents.

## Italy

Paul ‘the Patrician’, commander of Cephallonia, leads fleet to Venice.

## 809 Byzantium

**January** Synod validates Constantine VI and Theodote’s marriage and declares that Joseph of Cathara correct to officiate as had dispensation from now-canonised Tarasius; Theodore violently objects but synod anathematizes all resisters and he and uncle Plato are exiled to Princes’ Islands and Studius Monastery monks sent all over Empire.

## Italy

**Spring** Paul’s fleet attacks Commachio but repulsed; Obelearius and Beatus unwilling to resist Pepin so Paul retires to Dalmatia.

## Byzantium/Abbasid Caliphate

**24 March** Death of Harun Al-Raschid in Khorasan, aged 44; succession of eldest son Al-Amin, now ruler in Baghdad, disputed by younger son Al-Mamun in Persia.

**Easter** Krum takes Sardica/Sofia by surprise; Nicephorus sets out with army and **8 April** takes Bulgarian capital, Pliska; Sardica reoccupied, but rebuilding delayed as troops mutiny over arrears of pay.

Nicephorus orders massive re-settlement programme in reoccupied Thrace up to Sardica; ‘themes’ of Peloponnese, Thessalonica, and Cephallonia created.

## 810 Italy

Obelearius and Beatus of Venetia invite King Pepin to occupy territories, and he marches into their capital, Malamocco; refugees hold out on the Rialto islands of lagoon, and **7 May** he tries to construct bridge of boats across lagoon but ‘strategus’ Paul of Cephallonia arrives with Byzantine fleet and cuts the bridge.

Pepin retires to mainland and **24 June** dies; Rialto remains independent as centre of 'Venice' thereafter, and Paul reports news to Nicephorus as no Frankish authority to negotiate with; Nicephorus sends 'Spatharius' Arsaphius who deposes Obelearius and Beatus; Venetians choose Agnellus Participazio as new 'Doge'; **Autumn** Arsaphius goes on to Aachen and Charles accepts situation.

## Byzantium

Nicephorus institutes strict new controls of trade to raise money; **1 October** a would-be assassin overpowered after snatching sword in Palace, supposedly acting alone.

## 811 Abbasid Caliphate

Al-Amin's brother Al-Mamun, governor of Persia, revolts; his general Tahir 'the Ambidexterous' defeats loyalists near Rayy.

## Byzantium

**February** Surprise Arab raid sacks the military base of Armeniacon 'theme', Euchaita, as the 'strategos' Leo is caught unaware and forced to flee; he is flogged, sacked and exiled.

Nicephorus orders new taxes to general lamentation and **May** invades Bulgaria with massive army including Romanus commanding Anatolicon troops and all capital's regiments; encamped at Marcellae he refuses Krum's peace-offer; **11 July** he launches lightning raid to burn Krum's capital, wooden Pliska, and loot treasury; he marches into mountains but **24 July** is camped in a valley in Berbits Pass when Bulgarians attack to block both exits; **Saturday, 26 July** Bulgarians attack and Nicephorus and most of senior officers are killed – first imperial casualty of war since Valens (378).

Stauracius severely wounded, so generals consider whether he will be able to recover and rule; Nicephorus' son-in-law Michael Rhangabe leads survivors back to Adrianople. Theoctistus prefers Michael Rhangabe as emperor, but he refuses and on advice of 'Domestic of Scholae' Stephen Stauracius addresses troops from sickbed and **28 July** proclaimed emperor; he is deteriorating through blood-poisoning so his wife Theophano intrigues for throne and rumours are spread that Michael's wife (Stauracius' sister) Procopia is poisoning Stauracius on husband's behalf.

Patriarch Nicephorus, Stephen and other leading courtiers resist Theophano's claims; **10 October** Stauracius summons Stephen and proposes Michael be blinded at once, but he claims his palace is too well-guarded and alerts the others; **2 October** the guards-regiments are assembled and Michael proclaimed emperor, and Stauracius hears acclamations, gives up and agrees to become a monk.

Michael I signs statement of orthodoxy for Nicephorus and is crowned; he allows Theophano to retain her palace to turn into a nunnery under her leadership, and Stauracius retires there; Nicephorus I's victims are recalled, pardoned, and compensated, and Leo 'the Armenian' made 'strategus' of Anatolicon; Theodore of Studios and other clerical dissidents recalled and widows of Nicephorus' campaign compensated. **12 October** Procopia crowned 'Augusta'.

Bishop Michael of Synnada leads embassy to Charles, recognizing imperial title in return for concessions over Venetia and Dalmatia; Pope asked to rule on deposition of Joseph of Cathara by Patriarch Nicephorus. **25 December** Michael's son Theophylact crowned co-emperor.

## Abbasid Caliphate

**Winter** Al-Mamun's generals seize control of Syria and Egypt.

## 812 Byzantium

**12 January** Death of ex-emperor Stauracius of gangrene, aged c.26.

## Abbasid Caliphate

Al-Mamun's generals Tahir and Harthama invade Mesopotamia; Al-Amin is surrounded in Baghdad and suburbs sacked.

## Byzantium

**January** Michael starts persecution of 'Athingians' and 'Paulicians' in Anatolia as heretics at Nicephorus' request; Theodore of Studios leads protests at death-sentences and he agrees just to ban public professions of 'heresy'.

Krum besieges Develtus in Thrace, and Michael marches out of capital, criticized for taking wife Procopia and Studius monks; Develtus surrenders and inhabitants deported **June** and Michael faces mutiny at Tzurolon and has to give donative and call off expedition.

Byzantine settlers in Thrace and Macedonia flee, and amidst unrest in capital there is plot to recall blinded sons of Constantine V; Michael moves them further away, to Aphusia island.

**August** Embassy from Francia returns, confirming Charles' ratification of peace-terms and recognition of Byzantine rights in Venetia and Dalmatia; Pope accepts deposition of Joseph of Cathara so it is carried out.

Leo 'the Armenian' and Anatolic troops defeat raiding Thabit of Tarsus. Michael rejects Krum's embassy, led by Drogomir the Slav; Krum sacks Mesembria.

## 813 **Abbasid Caliphate**

Al-Mamun's general Tahir besieges Al-Amin in Baghdad; **25 September** the city surrenders and Al-Amin is arrested and executed, but the new Caliph remains at Merv, neglecting Mesopotamia.

Tahir rewarded with governorship of Khorasan in next few years, founding 'Tahirid' dynasty.

## **Byzantium**

**February** Bulgarian refugees warn that Krum is planning surprise attack on Adrianople, and Michael leads regiments out to catch him by surprise and force him to retreat; he gathers a large army including 'strategus' Leo from Anatolicon and they set out but **4 May** demoralized by solar eclipse; army marches to Versinicia near Adrianople to confront Krum. **22 June** At battle of Versinicia the Anatolic troops flee while John Aplaces, 'strategus' of Macedonia, is killed leading assault, and Leo suspected of treachery; Michael flees to capital, where plotters have organized a 'miraculous' iconoclast incident at Constantine V's tomb, and in absence his disgruntled troops proclaim Leo emperor; Michael's wife Procopia, 'Domestic of Scholae' Stephen, and 'Magister' Theoctistus urge resistance but **11 July** as Leo arrives at walls he abdicates, aged around 34.

Michael and Procopia and children take monastic vows at Pharos church at Palace; Michael sent to island of Plate, surviving for over 30 years, and Leo

has his sons castrated and eldest, Theophylact, sent to separate monastery (younger son Nicetas later Patriarch Ignatius).

**12 July** Leo crowned Emperor Leo V, aged c.38; son Symbatius co-emperor ('Constantine'); wife Barca, daughter of Bardanes Turcus, divorced and replaced by Theodosia.

Krum reaches Constantinople and ravages suburbs; Leo plans to kill Krum at truce-meeting but he escapes Byzantine ambush; he retires ravaging countryside to besiege Adrianople; on surrender **August** ?inhabitants deported.

## 814 Western Empire (Frankish Dominions)

**28 January** Death of Charles/'Charlemagne' at Aachen; succeeded by third but eldest surviving son, Lewis 'the Pious', with Lewis' late brother Pepin's son as sub-ruler in Northern Italy (to 817).

### Byzantium

**January** Krum raids Northern Thrace, then ravages around besieged Arcadiopolis; among 50,000 Byzantine prisoners, among them the infant future emperor Basil 'the Macedonian' and his parents, are deported to Bulgaria and later settled near mouth of Danube.

**4 April** Death of Plato of Saccudion.

Leo strengthens city walls at weakest point, Blachernae; Krum prepares siege-engines for attack but **13 April** bursts a blood-vessel and dies; succeeded by brother Dukum and later by Ditzveg, and instability cancels planned attack.

**Pentecost** Leo organizes a commission to draw up theological arguments for iconoclasm, and points out that God gave victories to iconoclasts like Constantine V; **July** Bishop Anthony of Syllaeum heads a formal clerical commission in Palace to investigate 787 decrees and use 754 Council's quotations; **December** they make their report to Leo, who unsuccessfully asks Nicephorus to remove low-hanging venerated church icons as soldiers demand; a mob pelts icon of Christ at Palace gate (Chalke); **24–25 December** Nicephorus holds iconodule vigil and pressures Leo to venerate icon at Hagia Sophia service.

Michael, 'syncellus' to Patriarch Thomas of Jerusalem, and other iconodule Palestinian monks who are in Constantinople during mission to Rome stay on to assist resistance to Leo and soon become leading opponents.



**815 Byzantium**

**Epiphany, 6 January** Leo does not adore the image of Christ on cloth at Hagia Sophia, and then orders Nicephorus to accept removal of low-hanging icons; the Patriarch appeals to Empress Theodosia and 'protoasecretis' Euty-chianus to stop iconoclast revival, but escapes deposition only due to illness and Leo calls bishops and abbots to church council; a synod summons Nicephorus to answer iconoclasts' arguments **13 March**, their letter accompanied by shouting mobs, and he deposes them but gives in and agrees to abdicate; exiled to his monastery; elderly Theodotus Melissenus, related by marriage to Constantine V, elected and **Easter, 1 April** enthroned, but Theodore of Studius leads iconodule resistance with public processions holding icons.

Church Council, presided over by Leo's eldest son Symbatius, bans veneration of icons and deposes recalcitrant bishops including those of Thessalonica (Joseph), Amorium, Nicaea, Ephesus, Cyzicus, and Miletus; Nicephorus sent to monastery up Bosphorus, and Theodore dismissed from Studius abbacy and sent to Apollonia; Michael 'the Syncellus' among those arrested.

**Autumn** Omurtag raids Thrace and burns crops.

**816 Byzantium**

Leo temporarily returns exiled abbots and monks to capital to pray for success against Bulgarians and attempt persuasion; John 'the Grammarian', abbot of monastery of St. Sergius and Bacchus, placed in charge and converts some, but Theodore of Studius not allowed back and **Spring** sent to Metopa in Thraceseion 'theme' whence he organizes iconodule resistance by correspondence.

Leo leads army North up Black Sea to Mesembria, and **April** leaves camp with a picked force to hide while 'deserters' persuade Bulgarians that he has fled; while they are relaxing he attacks from behind 'Leo's hill' and routs them storming camp; he returns to capital in triumph for Easter declaring victory shows God favours iconoclasm, and some recalcitrants give in; Theodore is exiled further away to Bonita in Anatolicon.

**Italy**

**12 June** Death of Pope Leo III; **22 June** Stephen IV elected.

## Byzantium

Leo signs 'Thirty Years' Peace' with Omurtag, and the frontier of 780 is restored and marked by ditch across Thrace; his abandonment of recent gains brings criticism but Thrace can recover from wars.

## Abbasid Caliphate

Revolt in Baghdad against new governor, Vizier Al-Fadl's brother.

## Byzantium

**Autumn** Leo sends embassy to Louis over Dalmatian frontier-dispute.

## 817 Italy

**24 January** Death of Stephen IV; Paschal I elected Pope.

## Byzantium

Leo orders trade-boycott of Caliphate in response to profaning Christian sanctuaries in Jerusalem and **March** leads campaign against Syrian frontier, rebuilding fortress of Camachum.

**Spring** Unsuccessful embassy to Louis over Dalmatian frontier – dispute; Patriarch Theodotus sends embassy to Pope Paschal but refused recognition.

## Abbasid Caliphate

Caliph Al-Mamun, in Khorasan, recognizes 'Imam' Ali al-Rida, descendant of Ali, as heir to 'Sunni' fury; relative Ibrahim leads revolt in Baghdad.

## 818 Abbasid Caliphate

Death of 'Imam' Ali al-Rida on visit to Caliph; 'Shi'a' followers believe he was assassinated. Al-Mamun executes powerful vizier Al-Fadl.

## Byzantium

Theophanes deported to Samothrace and dies.

?Byzantine fleet raids Damietta, Egypt.

## 819 Byzantium

Leo temporarily makes Manuel the Armenian overall commander of all Anatolia; Theodore of Studius exiled to Smyrna and attempt to restrict vast correspondence.

## Abbasid Caliphate

Rebellion in Baghdad put down but new governor Mohammed Ibn Ziyad revolts in the Yemen.

**8 September** Al-Mamun enters Baghdad after suppressing Shi'a rebels.

## 820 Byzantium

Leo breaks up Manuel the Armenian's overall command in Anatolia, and puts relative Bardas in charge of Thraceseion and nephew Gregory Psoterus Opsicion; Armeniacon broken up with 'theme' of Paphlagonia in West and 'ducate' of Chaldia in East.

**December** Michael the Amorian, 'Count' of the 'Excubitors' and former colleague of Leo in Bardanes Turcus' rebellion in 803 but also married to ex-Empress Barca's sister, discovered to be plotting by agents of postal 'logothete' John Hexabulius; confesses and Leo sentences him to be thrown into Palace baths' furnace but Empress persuades Leo to delay sentence over Christmas; he is confined to a Palace sweeper's room in chains but **24 December** uneasy Leo visits Michael to check he is secure, finds him on custodian's bed, and shakes fist at latter before leaves; Michael's slave-boy, hiding under bed, tells master who persuades scared guard to let him summon friend Theoctistus to get a priest; Leo's assassination speeded-up and **25 December** conspirators infiltrate Palace church during Christmas service disguised as monks then draw swords and attack Leo; he defends himself with candelabra but is butchered, aged c.47, and body shown in Hippodrome.

Michael released and put on throne in leg-irons as nobody can find the key or a blacksmith; later crowned by Patriarch Anthony. Leo's sons castrated

(Theodosius dies) and family exiled to Prince's Islands but some property retained; Psoterus exiled to Scyros.

## 821 Byzantium

**January?** Death of Patriarch Theodotus; Michael considers restoring Nicephorus as Patriarch, and releases Theodore of Studium and other iconophile prisoners who are permitted to meet near Nicomedia to formulate proposals for reconciliation; however they refuse to meet 'heretic' bishops even when Michael calls them to palace, and Nicephorus refuses to anathematize both Constantine V and Leo V's iconoclast and Irene's iconophile Councils in compromise; Theodore and followers sent to Bithynia, and **March** Bishop Anthony Cassimatas of Syllaem, iconoclast, made Patriarch and ally John 'the Grammarian', abbot of St. Sergius and Bacchus in capital, tutor to Michael's son Theophilus.

Methodius, iconophile Sicilian exile at Rome, is Pope Paschal's legate to Michael demanding abandonment of iconoclasm **Spring**; Michael is insulted at interference and has him flogged and imprisoned as traitor.

**Whitsun, 12 May** Theophilus crowned co-emperor.

Michael's old colleague Thomas the Slav, second-in-command in Anatolicon, proclaimed emperor by Leo V's loyalists, and widespread desertions of troops; Michael's cousin Catacylas, 'strategus' of Opsikion and Olbianus of 'Armeniacon', remain loyal but Thomas defeats Olbianus and takes Chaldia.

**Spring?** Arabs raid South-East Anatolia, and Thomas breaks off civil war to fight them; Al-Mamun offers to recognise Thomas, and Patriarch Job of Antioch crowns him. Olbianus kills Thomas' 'adopted son' Constantius, but fleets desert to Thomas who crosses into Thrace as Michael retires; Gregory Psoterus Thomas' naval commander; **December** Thomas camps outside Blachernae to besiege Constantinople.

## 822 Byzantium

Thomas' troops assault land-walls at Blachernae but defeated; his navy is defeated in Golden Horn as ships tied together as landing-platforms for walls, but is later reinforced as 'theme' of Hellas joins in rebellion; Michael's navy destroys most of new arrivals with 'Greek fire' and others desert, but blockade is kept up by land until Michael sends envoys to 'Khan' Omurtag asking him to attack Thomas.

## Abbasid Caliphate

Tahir's son Abdallah recaptures Camacha from Byzantium; **October** Tahir dies and other son Talha succeeds to rule of Khorasan.

## 823 Byzantium

Omurtag invades Thrace on behalf of Michael; remnant of Thomas' fleet deserts; Thomas abandons siege and retires to inland plain of Diabasis as Michael, Catacylas, and Olbianus lead army in pursuit; rebels are routed at Diabasis and most of rebels desert.

Thomas flees to Arcadipolis and **May–October** is besieged there; Panon, Bizye and Perinthus also besieged.

**October** Starving rebels surrender Arcadiopolis and Thomas is handed over and questioned but Michael's adviser John Hexabulius persuades Emperor not to accept traitor's word as to who among courtiers secretly backed him; Thomas is mutilated and impaled at which Bizye surrenders.

Earthquake in Thrace damages walls of rebel strongholds, and Parion and later Heraclea surrender.

Rebel commander Choereas holds out at Caballa and Gazareus Coloniates at Saniana near Ancyra, but most of Anatolian rebels surrender and John Echinus takes Attaleia to reconquer Cibyrhaeot 'theme'; citizens persuaded to shut Choereas and Coloniates out and they are killed.

## 823? Byzantium

Death of Michael's first wife, Thecla, daughter of Bardanes Turcus.

## 824 Italy

**11 February** Death of Pope Paschal.

## Byzantium

? Michael marries Euphrosyne, daughter of Constantine VI and currently nun at Principo Island, to improve legitimacy.

**April** ‘Strategus’ Theodotus of Sicily, iconophile friend of Theodore of Studius, and iconoclast official Theodore Crithinus lead embassy to ‘Emperor’ Louis in France.

Michael raids Caliphate and sacks Sozopetra.

Peace with Omurtag of Bulgaria renewed.

## Italy

**June?** Eugenius II elected Pope; **November** agreement with Louis’ son Lothar on Frankish power over Rome, but Eugenius insists that veneration of icons correct.

## 825 Byzantium/Frankish Territories

**Spring?** Embassy returns from Western ‘empire’.

**November** Frankish Church Council in Paris condemns both iconoclasts and iconophiles.

## 826 Byzantium/Italy

New ‘Strategus’ Constantine Sudes of Sicily plans to arrest fleet-commander Euphemius at request of wife’s brothers; returning from raid on Africa, Euphemius hears and declares himself emperor, seizing Syracuse; Constantine flees to Catania and killed, but Euphemius’ lieutenant Plato returns to imperial side and attacks Syracuse; Euphemius flees to Africa.

## Byzantium

Death in exile of iconophile leader, ex-abbot Theodore of Studius monastery.

## 827 Byzantium/Egypt

**March** Al-Mamun sends force to Egypt to besiege a force of anti-Ommayad exiles from Spain who have seized Alexandria; their leader Abu Hafs suggests in negotiations that they be allowed to leave if settle in Byzantine territory, and successfully leads reconnoitring-party to undefended Crete for raid; **December** renewed siege causes him to agree to leave.

## Italy

**June** Euphemius leads at Marzana with 70 Arab ships loaned by Aghlabid 'Emir' Ziyadat-Allah of Tunisia; Plato attacks them but is defeated and goes to Calabria for reinforcements but is killed.

**August** Death of Pope Eugenius; succeeded briefly by Valentine, then **October?** Gregory IV.

Plato's cousin Michael, governor of Panormus, leads Sicilian resistance.

## Byzantium

**Summer?** Michael sends Theodore Crithinus with embassy to Louis.

## 828 Byzantium

While Byzantine fleets concentrated on Sicily, Abu Hafs leads Arab reinforcements to Crete; overruns towns and builds new fortress of 'Chandax' on North coast.

## Byzantium/Italy

Asad leads large Arab across Sicily to Syracuse to start siege, and Michael governor of Panormus/Palermo defeated trying to come to aid; Michael II sends huge fleet led by Cibyrrhaeot marines; Arabs decimated by plague, Asad dies, and as Michael's fleet arrives Arabs retreat to take inland towns; Photinus 'Strategus' of Anatolicon lands on Crete but is heavily defeated.

**Autumn** 'Strategus' Craterus of Cibyrrhaeot theme lands on Crete to defeat Arabs in battle, but over-confident Byzantines attacked at night and flee; campaign abandoned, and Craterus pursued, captured at Cos, and killed.

Western 'Emperor' Louis sends ambassador to Byzantium.

## 829 Italy

Giovanni Participazio succeeds brother Giustiniano as 'Doge' of Venice.

Theodotus leads Byzantine fleet to Sicily; Arabs defeat him near Enna but their general Mohammed Ibn Juhayri dies and successor less effective.

## Byzantium

Ooryphas and new naval expedition retake part of Cyclades from Cretan Arabs.

Michael II is ill with kidney disease and **2 October** dies aged around 60; 16-year-old son Theophilus succeeds with stepmother Euphrosyne as co-ruler at Michael's order, and general amnesty for prisoners.

Myron the postal 'logothete' accuses Manuel the Armenian, ex-'Strategus' of all Asia Minor, of treason; Theophilus reassured by 'protovestiarius' Leo Chamodracon but Manuel has fled to Baghdad fearing execution.

Theophilus starts extensive building-work at Palace, first since Justinian II's, and proclaims strict devotion to justice with petitions invited on his weekly pilgrimages to Church of St. Mary at Blachernae.

Theophilus' iconoclast friend John 'the Grammarian' leads embassy to Baghdad **November?**, gets in touch with Manuel, and persuades him that it is safe to return; Manuel agrees to defect when has opportunity.

## 830 Georgia

Death of King Ashot 'the Great' of Iberia; son Bagrat, Byzantine 'Curopalatus', succeeds to Iberia and son Adarnase to junior principality of Tao in the South-West.

## Armenia

Sembat Bagratuni and other princes assist revolt of Emir of Sawada against the Caliphal governor ('Ostikon').

## Byzantium

**May** Euphrosyne holds 'bride-show' for Theophilus, who rejects poetess Casia for her pert reply to his comments and chooses more humble Theodora, niece of 'Patrician' Manuel but a secret iconophile; **5 June** she is married and crowned. Euphrosyne resigns co-rulership to retire to convent.

Theophilus has the candelabra that Leo V used during murder paraded in Hippodrome and demands justice for regicide; Leo's murderers executed. **July** Al-Mamun raids Cappadocia in force, and takes principal fortress, Coron;



meanwhile Manuel joins Caliph's son Abbas to fight Babak in Azerbaijan, and on return via Pass of Adata slips away to defect to Byzantium; pardoned.

## 831 **Byzantium**

**Spring** Arabs raid through Cilician Gates, and Theophilus campaigns in person with new 'Domestic of Scholae', Manuel, to defeat them at Charsianon; he enters Constantinople via Golden Gate for traditional triumph and holds Hippodrome Games.

**July** Al-Mamun arrives at Tarsus for retaliatory raid and marches to Heraclea which surrenders; he, son Abbas and brother Al-Mutasim each lead separate raiding-force round countryside and inhabitants hide in underground caves; Theophilus arrives and fights skirmish with Abbas before Arabs retreat.

## **Italy**

**September** Governor Symeon the 'Spatharius' surrenders Panormus/Palermo to Arabs in return for safe passage for garrison; it becomes capital of Arab province.

## **Byzantium**

? Birth of Theophilus and Theodora's first daughter Thecla.

**December** After a pamphlet circulates predicting Theophilus' death, he has the monks Methodius (ex-Papal legate) and Euthymius taken to Propontis Island of St. Andrew and interrogated; their iconophile visitors named, and include Emperor's mother-in-law Theoctiste. The monks are flogged, and Methodius dies as result.

## 832 **Abbasid Caliphate**

**February–April** Al-Mamun in Egypt to put down Coptic revolt.

## **Byzantium**

Theophilus sends envoy to Al-Mamun at Damascus, but rejected for naming Emperor not Caliph first; Mamun raids Cappadocia **Summer** and spends

three months besieging Byzantine Lulon; after his departure his general Ujayf uses captive commander to negotiate surrender, and Theophilus' envoy to Caliph offering large sum of money and prisoner-exchange is rejected.

## Italy

Consecration of first cathedral of St. Mark in Venice.

### 833 Byzantium/Abbasid Caliphate

**Spring** Plague of locusts; Al-Mamun's son Abbas constructs fortress at occupied town of Tyana, inside Byzantine territory, and awaits father.

Theophilus orders Church Synod to reaffirm 815 ban on icons, and **June** renews persecution of iconodules and 'Paulician' dualists; a number of ex-abbots and the Palestinian brothers Theodore and Theophanes among those imprisoned, and three monks from monastery of Abrahamites in capital flogged to death for protest; Theophilus' iconoclast friend John 'the Grammarian's' brother-in-law Sergius the 'Spatharius' among aristocratic exiles, but Euphrosyne (now in convent) aids prisoners.

Al-Mamun arrives in Cappadocia, rejects offer of reparations, and tours land receiving submissions but falls ill; **7 August** he dies at Podandus, and brother Al-Mutasim succeeds but retreats fearing rebellion; Tyana evacuated.

## Italy

Pope Gregory goes to France to mediate in revolt of 'Emperor' Louis' sons.

### 834 Byzantium

**Early** Loyalist Abbasid forces defeat 'Khurramite' rebels in Zagros Mountains in Persia, but their leader Nasr leads them into Byzantine territory; they are enrolled as 'Persian Company' in Byzantine army and baptised, and Nasr becomes Christian commander as 'Theophobus' ('God-fearing').

? Birth of Theophilus and Theodora's son Constantine; proclaimed heir.

## Italy

Deposition of 'Doge' Giovanni Participazio of Venice; succeeded by Pietro Tradonico.

## 835 Byzantium

Omar of Melitene raids into Anatolia; Theophilus campaigns to drive him off but is defeated during pursuit and his camp is looted.

Theophilus builds the 'Pearl' and 'Camilas' apartments at Palace.

? Theophilus and Theodora's infant son Constantine drowned in pond in Palace gardens.

## Italy

Abu Fihir, governor of Panormus/Palermo, raids Eastern Sicily and defeats 'Strategus'; reinforcement Byzantine fleet arrives and **September** attacks Panormus as new Arab governor arrives but is defeated heavily; Tauromenium in Eastern Sicily raided.

## 836 Abbasid Caliphate

Al-Mutasim moves capital from Baghdad up the River Tigris to Samarra.

## Byzantium

**April?** Theophilus receives letter from Synod held in Jerusalem by Patriarchs Job of Antioch, Christopher of Alexandria, and Basil of Jerusalem praising his wars and encouraging liberation of Syria and Palestine but urging repudiation of iconoclasm (uncertain if the document, *The Letter of the Three Patriarchs*, is a later forgery).

?Theophilus engages his youngest daughter Maria, aged? 1, to young Armenian noble Alexius Musele who becomes his heir if he dies without a son; Musele made 'patrician' and later 'Caesar'.

Byzantine Thracians deported to Bulgaria in 813–14, led by Cordyles, now living North of mouth of Danube, ask for help in returning to homes; Theophilus prepares fleet, though as Bulgarian treaty is nearing expiry

‘Khan’ Malamir fears war and sends raiders towards Thessalonica; the fleet sails up Black Sea to rendezvous and collects the exiles, among them the young future emperor Basil ‘the Macedonian’ and parents; Malamir protests and raids Thrace, and Musele sent to reconquer lost section of ‘Via Egnatia’ link via Nestus valley to Thessalonica; Byzantine-Bulgar treaty renewed.

## 837 Byzantium

Theophilus invades the Upper Euphrates area to assist Babek; Sozopetra and (Ar ?) Samosata are sacked; Moslem Armenian lands are ravaged; Armenian princes Ashot the Bagratid and lord of Syspiritis become Byzantine vassals; Theophilus returns to Melitene to force surrender and tribute en route home, and sets up ‘theme’ of Chaldia in North-East Anatolia (including West Armenian lands).

Theophilus builds Arab-style palace at Bryas on East shore of Bosphorus and celebrates triumph in Constantinople; he races in Hippodrome as charioteer for ‘Blues’.

**September** Al-Mutasim’s forces capture and execute Babek and end revolt; some of troops flee to Byzantium to join Theophilus’ new ‘Persian Company’, headed by Theophobus.

## Italy

After temporary loss of Panormus, Theophilus sends ‘Caesar’ Alexius Musele to Sicily with large expedition.

## 838 Byzantium

**April** Death of Patriarch Anthony; **21 April** Theophilus’ friend John ‘the Grammarian’ consecrated as successor, and intensifies persecution of iconophiles with an inaugural synod **May** that condemns all who venerate icons; Tarasius and other late offenders anathematized and Theophilus orders all religious paintings, mosaics etc to be painted or plastered over.

**April** Al-Mutasim leaves Samarra with 80,000 troops, intent on raiding Amorion dynasty’s place of origin, Amorium, in personal revenge; he marches on Northern route and Afshin in South; **May** Theophilus leaves

Constantinople to assemble army at Dorylaeum, and then to the River Halys; Aetius 'Strategus' of Anatolicon commands Amorium.

Theophilus awaits Al-Mutasim, discovers Afshin's presence belatedly, and tries to deal with him before Arab armies reunite at Ancyra; **22 July** Theophilus attacks Afshin's smaller force near Dazimon but his army is broken up by hail of arrows from Turkish cavalry and routed; Theophilus isolated on a hill with 2000 'Persians' who are overheard discussing handing him over by 'Domestic of Scholae' Manuel who leads Emperor to safety but is mortally wounded; Theophilus flees and unsuccessfully tries to negotiate and Arab armies reunite at Ancyra and besiege Amorium; Theophilus rumoured dead in disaster, and returns to capital on message from Euphrosyne to punish suspects. **15 August** After 2-week siege Arabs hear of weak spot in walls of Amorium and storm city; about half population killed, rest enslaved and city burnt, but Al-Mutasim has to retreat as nephew Abbas revolts.

Theophilus sends envoys after Arabs to try to ransom Aetius and other leading prisoners, offering 20,000lb of gold, but is refused; Aetius executed.

Theophobus proclaimed emperor by his 'Persian' force at Sinope.

Alexius Musele returns home from Sicily; depressed and ill Theophilus consoles himself with building-projects at Palace.

## c. 839 **Byzantium**

Hearing of the learning of Leo 'the Mathematician', Constantinopolitan scholar, from pupil captured at Amorium, Al-Mutasim writes to invite him to Baghdad; Leo shows letter to postal 'logothete' Theoctistus, and his reputation thus comes to Theophilus' ears; Theophilus sets him up in charge of academy ('University') at Palace of Magnaura.

## 839 **Byzantium/Russia**

Theophilus receives embassy from Russians (?Vikings/Slavs in Kiev) asking for aid against Magyars and Khazars blocking River Dnieper route to Black Sea; he sends them on to the 'Emperor' Louis in the West en route home, accompanying his own envoys to Louis for aid against Arabs in Sicily.

?Theophilus discovers from his little daughters that his stepmother Euphrosyne is teaching them to worship icons at her monastery of Gastria, and requires her to move to new monastery.

**18 July** Theophilus tattoos the iconophile Palestinian monks Theodore and Theophanes with verses announcing heresy and exiles them to Opsicon; painter Lazarus also branded.

**Summer** Theophilus marches East on preventive tour against Arab raids, sends embassy to Khazars with engineer to construct requested fort, and temporary imprisons Alexius Musele for misbehaviour in Sicily and has Archbishop Theodore of Syracuse flogged for complaining; Patriarch John persuades him to pardon them.

Theophilus marches into Paphlagonia to induce Theophobus and his 'Persians' to accept amnesty; the latter are split up among forces in frontier 'themes'.

Three new 'cleisurae' (under-themes) created on East frontier-Charsianon, Seleucia and Cappadocia; Theodora's brother Petronas sent to new 'theme' at Cherson; 'archonate' of Dyrrachium raised to 'theme'.

## Italy

Prince Sicard of Benevento assassinated; treasurer Radelchis seizes city and fights Sicard's brother Sicenulf of Salerno.

## 840 Byzantium/Italy

**9 January** Birth of Theophilus and Theodora's son Michael; Alexius Musele displaced as heir and retires to monastery on Bosphorus.

Caliph Al-Mutasim tries to lure Leo 'the Mathematician' to teach at Samarra with 2000 lb of gold; Theophilus refuses to let him go and makes him Archbishop of Thessalonica.

**Spring** Theodosius Babutzicius sent to Venice for aid against Arabs in Sicily, and another embassy to Ommayad 'Emirate' in Spain; Venetian fleet is defeated off Taranto and raids intensify.

Theophobus sent with army to Abasgia in the Western Caucasus to demand acceptance of Byzantine suzerainty, assisted by Theodora's brother Bardas; defeated ? by Arabs en route.

## Italy

**20 June** Death of Emperor Louis 'the Pious'; succeeded by son Lothar but the latter's brother Lewis of Germany and half-brother Charles 'the Bald' of Francia revolt to force division of dominions.

## Byzantium

**Autumn** Abu Said and general Bashir raid Cappadocia, and many of Theophobus' men killed in drawn battle; Theophilus receives Spanish embassy.

**December?** Theophilus crowns Michael as co-emperor.

## 841 Byzantium

Abu Sa'id raids Cappadocia but is pursued back to Cilicia, defeated, and prisoners and loot retaken; **Summer?** he raids Charsianon further North and pursuing Byzantines go on to capture Germanicea; the amount of prisoners puts Theophilus in good position as he negotiates an exchange with Al-Mutasim; exchange of presents and truce.

## Italy

Moslems capture Bari, and sack Ancona on raid up Adriatic to Istria while the Frankish rulers are fighting civil war in Low Countries.

## Byzantium

**Autumn** Cretan Arabs raid Thraceseion theme, and are routed by 'Strategus' Constantine Contomytes while looting monasteries on Mount Latrus.

**Late** Theophilus falls seriously ill with dysentery, loses hair, and orders courtiers to shave heads.

## 842 Abbasid Caliphate

**5 January** Death of Al-Mutasim; succeeded by son Al-Wathiq.

## Byzantium

Theophilus sends Theodosius Babutzicius to Lothar with offer of daughter's hand for his son Louis; his condition deteriorates and he orders Theophobus' arrest and secret execution at Boucoleon Palace due to threat to throne; he addresses courtiers from coach in Magnaura Palace to confirm Theodora as regent and **20 January** dies aged ?29; Michael III Emperor, aged just 2, with Theodora assisted by postal 'logothete' Theoctistus as chief minister and by her uncle Manuel and brother Petronas.

?Theoctistus leads naval expedition to Abasgia but ships wrecked. Theodora plans to restore icons, and claims Theophilus repented on deathbed.

## Italy

Prince Radelchis of Benevento calls in Arab mercenaries to aid him; they terrorize Campania out of his control.

## 843 Byzantium

Theodora and Theoctistus summon religious commission to Theoctistus' apartments in Palace to discuss restoration of icons; Patriarch John refuses to attend and is suspended from office; **March** Church Council meets dismisses John, **4 March** installs Methodius as Patriarch, and restores the decrees of 'Seventh Oecumenal Council' to legalize icons. **10 March** Methodius holds vigil at Blachernae Church.

**Sunday, 11 March** Service in Hagia Sophia celebrates the restoration of icons, attended by Emperor, regents, and jubilant monks: 'Feast of Orthodoxy' ever since on date.

Church images are restored including above imperial throne in 'Chrysotri-clinus' in Palace, and icons are brought out of hiding and venerated; churches are redecorated.

Constantine V is exhumed, bones burnt and thrown in sea, and tomb broken up; Irene's remains are returned to imperial mausoleum at Church of Holy Apostles and Patriarch Nicephorus and other exiles treated with similar honour; Theodora claims that God spares her late husband as his name was miraculously removed from list of heretics to be anathematized left overnight on altar of Hagia Sophia.



Archbishop Leo of Thessalonica deposed; returns to run academy in Constantinople

**c.844 Byzantium**

Theodora and Theotistus launch persecution of 'Paulician' heretics in Anatolia; they flee to fortress of Tephrike (North-East) under leader Carrbeas.

**844 Italy**

**25 January** Death of Pope Gregory IV; populace seizes Lateran to install their choice, John, but nobles enforce election of Sergius II.

**Byzantium**

Omar of Melitene raids as far as Malagina in Bithynia and defeats Theotistis. Theotistis Bryennius leads embassy to Bulgaria.

**845 Italy**

Fall of Motya (Sicily) to Arabs; Sergius of Naples defeats raid on Campania.

**Byzantium**

Byzantine/Arab war concluded with exchange of c. 4000 prisoners from each side on the River Lamus, frontier West of Cilicia.

? Death of ex-emperor Michael I Rhangabe, aged around 67.

**November** Ahmed, 'Emir' of Tarsus raids Taurus Mountains but is driven back by severe weather.

**846 Byzantium**

End of Leo V's 'Thirty Years' Peace' with Bulgaria; the Bulgarian general Krules raids the Strymon valley but retires before Byzantine army, and after Byzantines raid Southern Bulgaria peace stabilizes.

Nasr becomes 'Emir' of Tarsus.

**8 November** Death of (St.) Ioannicius 'the Great', leading iconodule monk on Bithynian Mount Olympus and adviser to Patriarch Methodius, aged c. 92.

## Italy

**August** Arab raiders land at Ostia, where defenders flee, and advance on Rome to loot St Peter's Basilica as the Vatican is outside city walls.

## 847 Abbasid Caliphate

**August** Death of Caliph al-Wathiq; succeeded by unstable younger brother Al-Mutawwakil.

## Italy

**27 January** Death of Pope Sergius II; **10 April** Leo IV elected.

## Byzantium

Death of Patriarch Methodius; Ignatius the son of Michael I, now abbot of Hyatius, Plate, and Terebinthos monasteries on Prince's Islands, is preferred as successor to sons of Leo V and **4 July** is consecrated Patriarch; there is a disturbance during ceremony as Ignatius asks Archbishop Gregory of Syracuse to withdraw as he is awaiting trial. Gregory resists and a list of his supporters are condemned by Synod, including late Patriarch Tarasius' nephew, Imperial secretary and scholar Photius.

## 848 Byzantium

Theoctistus Bryennius appointed 'Strategus' of Peloponnese after Slav tribes in interior start raiding and suppresses them.

Arab fleet sails up Adriatic and sacks Ragusa.

**849 Italy**

Pope Leo IV starts building walls round the Vatican; he organizes fleets of Naples, Amalfi, and Gaeta to defeat Arab pirate fleet off Ostia, aided by storm.

Fall of Leontinoi, Sicily to Arabs.

**850 Italy**

**Easter** Pope Leo IV crowns Lothar's son Louis II as co-emperor.

**Byzantium**

?Basil 'the Macedonian' comes to Constantinople from Thrace to seek his fortune, and is employed by abbot of St Diomedes after a warning dream.

**Armenia**

Revolt of Bagrat, Bagratid prince, and allies including nephew Ashot Artsruni of Vaspurakan; they refuse tribute to the Caliphal governor ('Ostikon')'s representative the Emir of Arzn who launches unsuccessful attack on them..

**851 Armenia/Byzantium**

Byzantines lend assistance to rebels and take Camacha.

**852 Byzantium/Armenia**

**March** Byzantine army defeats and kills Yusuf, 'Emir' in Armenia, in Taron; Caliph sends the Turkish general Bugha to reconquer Armenia..

**Bulgaria**

? Malamir succeeded by son Boris as 'Khan'.

**Italy**

'Leonine Wall' to defend Vatican from Arab raids completed.

**853 Byzantium**

Massive Byzantine fleet of around 5000 men, organized by Theoctistus, raids Egypt to stop assistance to the Cretan pirates and **22 May** sacks Damietta; meanwhile a second expedition, under Photius 'Strategus' of Anatolicon, lands on Crete but fails to take fortresses.

**Abbasid Caliphate**

Caliph Al-Mutawwakil reverses his earlier religious policy after serious criticism from conservative theologians and enforces legislation against Jews and Christians as subject faiths ('dhimmis') again.

**854 Byzantium**

Fleet mounts second raid on Damietta.

**Italy**

Pope Leo IV rebuilds Centumcellae as new fortified city (Civitavecchia).

**c.855 Russia**

Arrival of Viking Rurik, founder of ruling dynasty, to rule Viking/Slav town of Novgorod; within a few years also lord of Kiev on the River Dnieper.

**855 Byzantium**

Theodora holds traditional 'bride-show' for Michael, who already has mistress Eudocia Ingerina (?father Ingvar a Viking mercenary); he selects Eudocia Decapolitissa.

Byzantines raid Cilicia and sack Anazarbus.

## Italy

Death of Emperor Lothar; succeeded by Louis II.

**17 July** Death of Leo IV; Benedict III elected, deposed by Louis in favour of Anastasius 'Bibliothecarius', and **29 September** restored after popular uprising.

## Armenia

Bugha's army finally defeats rebels; Arabs deport Sembat VIII, Prince of Armenia and head of Bagratid dynasty, his son Ashot, Ashot Artsruni of Vaspurakan, and other leading nobles to Samarra and most are induced to convert to Islam under threats.

## 856 Abbasid Caliphate

Al-Mutawwakil sends Ashot the Bagratid home from Samarra as viceroy, 'High Constable', of Armenia; he appoints his own eldest son Al-Muntasir as viceroy of Western dominions and younger son Al-Mutazz viceroy of East.

## Byzantium

**January–March** Bardas, excluded from Palace by suspicious Theoctistus, plots with Damianus the Slav, 'paracoemomenus' (Great Chamberlain); Damianus persuades Michael to summon Bardas so Bardas can work on his resentful sovereign against Theoctistus.

**Late Summer** Bardas' brother Petronas, 'Strategus' of Thraceseion, raids Samosata and Amida and then moves North to attack rebel 'Paulician' heretics under Carrbeas at fortress of Tephrike in North-East Anatolia.

?Basil 'the Macedonian', now in service of imperial relative Theophilitzes, accompanies him to the Peloponnese and in Patras meets rich widow Danielis; Danielis adopts him as son and aids his rise to prosperity.

Bardas organizes a plot against Theoctistus; **25 November** Michael intercepts Theoctistus on his arrival at 'Chrysotriclinus' to see Theodora and orders him to report to him in future; Theoctistus leaves but is ambushed in 'Lausiacus' gallery by Bardas and followers and murdered in Michael's presence; Theodora is restrained in her apartments. Bardas made 'Domestic of Scholae', and son-in-law Symbatius 'Logothete of Course' in place of Theoctistus; Michael officially rules but Bardas chief minister.

**857 Italy**

Surrender of Cephaloedion in Sicily to Arabs.

**858 Byzantium**

**6 January** Ignatius refuses communion to Bardas, who is supposed to be having affair with his daughter-in-law; Bardas draws his sword on him and decides to remove him.

?Basil 'the Macedonian' is summoned by master Theophilizes to a banquet hosted by Bardas' son Antigonos, and in wresting-match floors a huge and boastful Bulgarian; after a subsequent incident taming a restless imperial horse at hunt Michael takes to him and invites him into his employment in stables and soon as boon companion.

**Italy**

**17 April** Death of Pope Benedict III; **24 April** vigorous and assertive Nicholas elected Pope at instigation of visiting 'Emperor' Louis II.

**Byzantium**

Bardas suspects his sister Theodora and her daughters of plot, and **October?** persuades Michael to tonsure them and send them to nunnery of Carianus; Ignatius refuses to carry out tonsuring so others do.

**23 November** At Bardas' instigation, Ignatius arrested and deported to island of Terebinthos for 'plot'; ministers and bishops visit him to induce abdication; he refuses but is ignored.

Bardas arranges a compliant synod to elect Photius as Ignatius' successor; he is a layman so **20–24 December** he is hastily rushed through successive ordinations to make him priest; **25 December** he is consecrated Patriarch by Archbishop Gregory of Syracuse.

**859 Byzantium**

?Birth of Basil 'the Macedonian' and Maria's son Constantine.

Five pro-Ignatius bishops meet in Church of St. Irene, Constantinople, to excommunicate Photius and his supporters; Photius holds synod at Church of Holy Apostles; deposes Ignatius, and absolves Gergory.

**Spring** Ignatius ill-treated in Numera prison in the capital; **August?** deported to Mytilene.

Michael and Bardas unsuccessfully besiege Samosata.

Arrest of conspirators for plot to murder Bardas, apparently with Theodora's support; Bardas 'curopalatus'; son Antigonus 'Domestic of Scholae'; Basil 'the Macedonian' 'Protostrator'.

Byzantine-Arab negotiations for prisoner-exchange **Autumn**, delayed as Arab garrison at Lulon on frontier revolts.

## 860 **Byzantium/Russia**

**February** Ignatius returned to Terebinthos.

**March** Byzantines send an official to Arab rebels at Lulon, but they have returned to Caliphal allegiance and he joins prisoners under consideration for prisoner-exchange; eventually 1,000 Christians and 2,000 Arabs handed over.

**June** After Michael leaves for Eastern campaign, 200 'Rus' (Viking and Slav) ships from the River Dnieper arrive suddenly in Bosphorus and land to loot the capital's suburbs; Michael recalled while Photius leads religious parades around walls to rally terrified citizens.

Russians besiege capital, but flee as Byzantine army returns; the Byzantine navy pursues them and sinks many ships with 'Greek fire'.

Arabs from Crete sail through Hellespont to ravage Proconessus on Propontis, commencing serious pirate threat to North Aegean.

Michael returns to East to await raiding Omar of Melitene; he is defeated at battle of Chonarion.

Ignatius writes to Pope Nicholas for assistance and threatens Michael and Photius with Papal wrath.

Photius sends his librarian Constantine (Cyril) of Thessalonica, a learned monk from a (Bithynian) Mount Olympus monastery who is creating a new 'Slavic' alphabet for missionary-work, to lead a missionary expedition to the Khazar empire as their 'Khan' and nobles are seeking religious contacts with Christians, Jews, and Moslems to decide to which faith to convert.

**c.860 Byzantium**

Euthymius, monk of Mount Olympus (Bithynia) monastery closed by Photius, joins St. Peter 'the Athonite' on Mount Athos? Arab pirates carry off some monks.

**861 Byzantium**

**February?** Papal legates arrive at Rhaedestus but are kept in isolation and bribed and bullied until accept Photius; **May** Ignatius brought before synod at Church of Holy Apostles where legates confirm deposition, but **September** on legates' return to Rome Nicholas refuses to accept Synod's decrees.

**Armenia**

Prince Ashot the Bagratid defeats rebellion by pro-Arab lord Shahap.

**Abbasid Caliphate**

Al-Mutawwakil plans to disinherit eldest son Al-Muntasir in favour of Al-Mutazz, son by Greek concubine; **10 December** he is murdered by plotters led by Turk general Bugha and Al-Muntasir made Caliph.

**862 Byzantium/Moravia**

Prince Rostislav of Moravia sends envoys to Constantinople for missionaries, as Papal missionaries in his realm insist on using unpopular Latin.

**Italy**

**March** Pope Nicholas writes to Eastern Patriarchs upholding Ignatius.

**Byzantium**

**Easter** Bardas created 'Caesar'. Basil 'the Macedonian' replaces Damianus as 'paracoemomenus' (Great Chamberlain).



## **Armenia**

Caliph recognizes ruler Ashot the Bagratid as 'Prince of Princes'.

## **Abbasid Caliphate**

**June** Caliph Al-Muntasir dies or is killed by troops; succeeded by cousin Musta'en under vizierate of Turk Utamish.

## **863 Italy**

Theognostus and other 'Ignatian' exiles reach Rome; **April** Nicholas holds a Synod in Lateran to depose Photius, restore Ignatius, and anathematize all 'Photians'.

## **Byzantium/Bulgaria**

**Summer** Boris campaigns in West to aid Lewis 'the German' against rebels; Byzantine government decides to force him to abandon the alliance.

Omar invades the 'Armeniacon' theme and crosses countryside to sack Amisus; Michael appoints uncle Petronas commander in East, but Omar confidently ignores his approach and continues on planned route into Halys valley; **3 September** Petronas routs his army and kills him at Poson.

Petronas appointed 'Domestic of Scholae' and 'Magister'.

## **864 Byzantium/Bulgaria**

Michael marches army into Bulgaria while fleet sails up Black Sea; Boris open talks but is required to abandon alliance with West and Roman Church and turn conversion-programme over to Orthodox missionaries; in return Michael hands over 'Bulgarian March' near Develtus.

## **Byzantium/Moravia**

Constantine/Cyril, now philosophy/theology lecturer at Patriarchal academy in Constantinople, and his brother Methodius, a Bithynian abbot,

commence Orthodox missionary activities in Moravia; they use the new Byzantine creation of 'Slavic' alphabet rather than Greek to improve access to local language.

## Italy

**September** 'Doge' Pietro Tradonico assassinated in faction-fighting at Venice; succeeded by son Diso.

## 865 Byzantium/Bulgaria

Boris baptised as 'Michael' by Byzantine missionaries, with Emperor as godfather; however Constantinople Church authorities refuse to allow independent Bulgarian archbishopric so Boris writes to Pope about Roman doctrine and customs.

## Abbasid Caliphate

**Early** Caliph Al-Musta'en and government move to Baghdad; army remains at Samarra.

## Byzantium

**September?** Michael marries his mistress Eudocia Ingerina to Basil, who takes Michael's sister Thecia as mistress; ?Michael and Eudocia remain lovers.

## Russia

?Khazars convert to Judaism.

## Italy

**25 September** Pope Nicholas writes intemperately to Michael, defending deposition of Photius and Rome's ecclesiastical and doctrinal supremacy.

## Abbasid Caliphate

Caliph's Turkish army revolts at Samarra; Al-Musta'en sends envoys, but talks fail and the rebels elect cousin Al-Mutazz (son of Al-Mutawwakil) Caliph.

## 866 Italy/Bulgaria

Pope Nicholas sends priests, including future Pope Formosus, to Bulgaria to evangelize with official advice on doctrine and morals, often contradicting Byzantine practice.

## Abbasid Caliphate

**January** Al-Mutazz's forces, led by Turks Bugha and Wasif, advance on Baghdad; Al-Musta'en abdicates on city governor's advice and Al-Mutazz installed as puppet Caliph; Al-Musta'en later murdered in exile at Wasit in defiance of assurances.

## Byzantium

Symbatius, Bardas' ambitious son-in-law, plots with Basil against Bardas' life, and pretends to Michael that his uncle wants to kill him; Bardas hears rumours and insists that Basil and other enemies swear oath of good intentions to him at Annunciation Day ceremonies **25 March** at Chalkoprateia Church; **April** the military expedition sails for Crete with Michael, Bardas, and Basil; during preparations at mouth of River Maeander assassination arranged, and Bardas ignores a warning letter; **21 April** Michael watches as Basil and allies murder Bardas in front of him in his tent.

Michael pretends to Photius that he escaped Bardas' plot; expedition returns to Constantinople, and Basil adopted as Emperor's son and made 'Magister'; **Whitsun, 26 May** Basil crowned co-emperor. Bardas' son Antigonos, made 'strategus' of Thraceseion, revolts; captured and blinded.

**1 December** Birth of Leo (later Emperor), son of Basil (or Michael) and Eudocia Ingerina.

## 867 Byzantium

Photius sends letters to other Patriarchs denouncing Nicholas I and Ignatius, and calls synod at Constantinople which **August–September** declares Nicholas excommunicate and deposed and denounces Papal addition to ‘filioque’ to spoken Creed in West and interference in Bulgarian Church.

Michael III transfers his affections from Basil to handsome sailor Basilicianus, who he invests with imperial robes at drunken party; alarmed Basil starts conspiracy.

**24 September** During a party at Palace of St. Mamas, on West side of Bosphorus North of capital, Basil removes the bolts from Michael’s bed-chamber door, and he returns later with armed plotters to hack Michael to pieces; Michael aged 27.

**25 September** Basil and his supporters row over Golden Horn in early hours to house of ‘Persian’ Eulogius, and then arrive at a Palace gate where Basil’s co-Armenian ‘Heteriarch’ Artavasdus meets them having taken keys off the ‘papias’ (gatekeeper); Praefect Marianus, son of Bardas brother Petronas and Michael’s cousin, proclaims Basil Emperor and he is crowned at Hagia Sophia; Michael buried at Chrysopolis monastery.

Photius dismissed and deported as friend of Bardas; **23 November** Ignatius recalled as Patriarch and a Church Council prepared.

? Birth of Basil and Eudocia’s second (? or first) son Alexander.

## Italy

**13 November** Death of Nicholas I, unaware of Eastern excommunication or fall of Photius; faction-riots until **14 December** election of compromise Hadrian II; Count Guy of Spoleto’s son Lambert pillages Rome.

## Primary sources

‘Sebeos’ of Armenia (attrib.), *Armenian History*, translated by James.

*Book of Pontiffs (Liber Pontificalis)*, transl. R. Davis (Liverpool, 1989).

*Byzantine Defenders of Images: Eight Saints’ Lives in English Translation*, ed. Alice-Mary Talbot (Dumbarton Oaks, 1998):

- SS. Theodosia of Constantinople
- Stephen the Younger
- Anthousa of Mantineon
- (Princess) Anthousa
- Patriarch Nicephorus

David, Symeon, and George of Lesbos  
 Ioannicius 'the Great'  
 (Empress) Theodora.

- The Chronicle of Theophanes Confessor: Byzantine and Near Eastern History AD 284–813*, transl. with commentary Cyril Mango and Michael Scott (Clarendon Press, 1997).
- Chronicon Paschale*, ed. Michael and Mary Whitby (Liverpool, 1989).
- George Hamatoulos ('The Monk'), *Georgii Monachi Chronacon*, ed. C. de Boor (Leipzig, 1904).
- 'Catholikos' John of Armenia, *History of Armenia*, transl. K. Maksoudian (Atlanta, 1987).
- Paul the Deacon, *History of the Lombards*, transl. W.D. Foulke (Philadelphia, 1907).
- History of Simeon the Logothete*: in *Theophanes Continuatus, Ioannes Caminiata, Symeon Magister, Georgios Monachos Continuatus*, ed. I. Bekker (Berlin, 1825).
- John of Nikiu* (Egypt), transl. R.H. Charles (London, 1916).
- The Letter of the Three Patriarchs and related texts*, ed. J. Monitz, J. Chrysostomides, E. Harvali-Crook, and C. Dendrinos (Camberley, 1997).
- The Life of Michael the Synkellos*, ed. M.B. Cunningham (Belfast, 1991).
- The Life of the Patriarch Tarasios by Ignatius the deacon*, transl. and commentary and intro. S. Efthymiadis (Aldershot, 1998).
- Genesios, *On The Reigns of the Emperors*, transl. and commentary by Anthony Kadellis (Canberra, 1998).
- The Seventh Century in West-Syrian Chronicles*, ed. Alan Palmer (Liverpool, 1998).
- Patriarch Nicephorus of Constantinople, *Short History*, in *Corpus Fontium Historiae Byzantinae*, transl. Cyril Mango (Dumbarton Oaks, 1990).
- Howard-Johnston (*Translated Texts for Historians*: Liverpool University Press, 1999).
- Vie de Theodore de Sykeon*, translated by A.J. Festiguere, 2 vols (Brussels, 1970).

## Secondary sources

- P. Alexander, *The Patriarch Nicephorus of Constantinople: Ecclesiastical Policy and Image Worship in the Byzantine Empire* (Oxford, 1958).
- Leslie Brubaker and John Haldon, *Byzantium in the Iconoclast Era (c.680–850): The Sources: An Annotated Survey* (Vermont, 2001).
- Anthony Bryer and Judith Herrin (editors), *Iconoclasm* (Birmingham, 1977).
- J.B. Bury, *The Imperial Administrative System in the Ninth Century* (London, 1911).
- , *A History of the Eastern Roman Empire from the Fall of Irene to the Accession of Basil I, AD 802–867* (London, 1912).
- Catalogue of Byzantine Coins in the Dumbarton Oaks Collection and in the Whitmore Collection*, Vol III, part 1, ed. P. Grierson (Dumbarton Oaks, 1973).
- C. Dendrinos, J. Harris, E. Harvalia-Crook, and J. Herrin (eds), *Porphyrogenita: Essays on the History and Literature of Byzantium and the Latin East in Honour of Julian Chrysostomides* (Aldershot, 2003).
- F. Dvornik, *The Photian Schism: History and Legend* (Cambridge, 1948).
- , *Byzantine Missions Amongst the Slavs: Ss. Constantine and Methodius* (New Brunswick, 1970).
- Stephen Gero, *Byzantine Iconoclasm during the Reign of Leo III, with Particular Attention to the Oriental Sources* (Louvain, 1973).
- , *Byzantine Iconoclasm during the Reign of Constantine V, with Particular Attention to the Oriental Sources* (Louvain, 1977).
- John Haldon, *Byzantium in the Seventh Century* (Cambridge University Press, 1990).
- Constance Head, *Justinian II, Emperor of Byzantium* (University of Wisconsin Press, 1972).
- Judith Herrin, *Women in Purple: Rulers of Medieval Byzantium* (London, 2001).

- Archbishop Iakovos, *Patriarch Photius of Constantinople: His Life, Scholarly Contributions, and Correspondence, Together with a Translation of 52 of His Letters* (Brookline, 1981).
- Romilly Jenkins, *Byzantium: The Imperial Centuries* (London, 1966).
- Edward J. Martin, *A History of the Iconoclast Controversy* (London, 1910).
- Cyril Mango, *The Homilies of Photius* (Cambridge, Mass., 1958).
- Pavlos Niavkas, *The Reign of the Byzantine Emperor Nicephorus I* (Athens, 1987).
- Stephen Runciman, *A History of the First Bulgarian Empire* (London, 1930).
- Warren Treadgold, *The Byzantine Revival 780–842* (Stanford University Press, 1988).
- A.A. Vassiliev *et al.*, *Byzance et les Arabes*, vols 1 & 2 (Brussels, 1935–68).
- Mark Whittow, *The Making of Orthodox Byzantium 600–1025* (Macmillan, 1996).

## Articles

- Byzantion*, vol. 31 (1961): S. Vryonis, 'St. Iannikios 'the Great' (754–846) and the 'Slavs' of Bithynia', pp. 245–8.
- Byzantion*, vol. 40 (1970): C. Head, 'Towards a reinterpretation of the Second Reign of Justinian II (705–11)', pp. 14–32.
- , : W. Kubiari, 'The Byzantine Attack upon Damietta in 853 and the Egyptian Navy in the Ninth Century', pp. 45–66.
- Byzantion*, vol. 41 (1971): C. Head, 'Who was the real "Leo the Isaurian"?', pp. 105–8.
- Byzantion*, vol. 57 (1987): I. Shahid, 'Heraclius and the Theme System: New Light from the Arabic', pp. 391–406.
- Byzantion*, vol. 59 (1989): I. Shahid, 'Heraclius and the Theme System: Further Observations', pp. 208–43.
- Byzantion*, vol. 64 (1994): I. Shahid, 'Heraclius and the Unfinished Theme of Oriens: Some Final Observations', pp. 352–73.
- Byzantion*, vol. 67 (1997): Panayiotis Yannopoulos, 'Le role des Bulgares dans la guerre Arabo-Byzance de 717/718', pp. 483–516.
- Byzantina Forschungen*, 1987: Walter Kaegi, 'Two Studies of Late Roman and Byzantine Military Institutions', pp. 87–113.
- Byzantine and Modern Greek Studies*, vol. 1 (1975): N. Oikonomides, 'A Chronological Note on the First Persian Campaign of Heraclius (622)', pp. 1–9.
- Byzantina Zeitschrift*, vol. 17 (1908): E.W. Brooks, 'The Sicilian Expedition of Constantine IV', pp. 455–9.
- Byzantina Zeitschrift*, vol. 84 (1991): W. Treadgold, 'A Note on Byzantium's Year of the Four Emperors', pp. 431–3.
- Byzantinische Forschungen*, vol. 3 (1968): M. Anastoi, 'Leo III's Edict against the Images in the Year 726–727 and Italo-Byzantine Relations between the Years 726 and 730', pp. 5–41.
- Dumbarton Oaks papers*, vol. 19 (1965): George Ostrogorsky, 'The Byzantine Background of the Moravian Mission', pp. 1–18.
- English Historical Review*, vol. 15 (1900): E. W. Brooks, 'Byzantines and Arabs at the time of the early Abbasids', pp. 728–47.
- English Historical Review*, vol. 16 (1901): E.W. Brooks, 'Byzantines and Arabs at the time of the early Abbasids', pp. 84–92.
- English Historical Review*, vol. 19 (1904): N. Baynes, 'The First Campaign of Heraclius against Persia', pp. 694–702.
- English Historical Review*, vol. 90 (1975): Clive Foss, 'The Persians in Asia Minor and the End of Antiquity', pp. 721–47.
- Greek, Roman and Byzantine Studies*, vol. 16 (1975): George Huxley, 'Michael III and the Battle of Bishop's Meadow (AD 863)', pp. 443–50.

- Jahrbuch der Osterreichischen Byzantinistik*, vol. 24 (1974): W. Treadgold, 'An Indirectly preserved Source for the Reign of Leo IV', pp. 69–76.
- Jahrbuch der Osterreichischen Byzantinistik*, vol. 40 (1990): David Turner, 'The Origins and Accession of Leo V', pp. 171–203.
- Jahrbuch der Osterreichischen Byzantinistik* vol. 42 (1992): W. Treadgold, 'The Missing Year in the Revolt of Artavasdus', pp. 87–93.
- Journal of Hellenic Studies*, vol. 18 (1898): E.W. Brooks, 'The Arabs in Asia Minor (641–750) from Arabic Sources', pp. 182–208.
- Journal of Hellenic Studies*, vol. 19 (1899): E.W. Brooks, 'The Campaign of 716–18, from Arabic Sources', pp. 19–33.
- Rivista di Studi Bizantini I Slavi*, vol. 4 (1984): W. Treadgold, 'The Bulgars' Treaty with the Byzantines in 816', pp. 213–20.
- Zbornik Radova vizantinoloskog Instituta*, vols 14–15 (1973): Cyril Mango, 'Eudocia Ingerina, the Normans, and the Macedonian Dynasty', pp. 17–27.

# Part V

868–1066



*This page intentionally left blank*

## 868 Byzantium

?Chrysocheir's Paulician army crosses Anatolia to sack Ephesus and insult shrine of St. John there. Fleet under Ooryphas relieves Arab siege of Ragusa.

### Italy/Moravia

Constantine/Cyril and Methodius, harassed in Moravia, arrive in Rome to seek aid bringing relics of St. Clement.

### Persia

Death of 'Iman' Ali al-Hadi, descendant of Caliph Ali.

### Egypt

Ahmed Ibn Tulun made Abbasid governor of Egypt: founder of 'Tulunid' dynasty.

## 869 Byzantium/Italy/Moravia

**14 February** Constantine/Cyril, co-'Apostle of the Slavs', dies in Rome.

### Abbasid Caliphate

Ali Ibn Muh leads massive slave revolt in Mesopotamia; widespread destruction. **11 July** Caliph Al-Mutazz murdered by Turkish troops demanding higher pay; replaced by cousin Al-Muhtadi, son of Al-Wathiq.

### Byzantium

Negotiations to marry Prince Constantine to Frankish princess Irmengarde.

Unsuccessful mission of Peter the Sicilian to Tephrike, as the Paulician leader Chrysocheir makes extortionate demands.

## Italy

**June** Pope Hadrian II excommunicates ex-Patriarch Photius in retaliation for his excommunication of Nicholas I.

## Byzantium

**5 October** Church Council in Constantinople, with papal legates present; recognised in West as '8th General Council'. Hadrian's excommunication upheld, but Patriarchates ranked in Eastern Church's accepted order of Rome, Constantinople, Alexandria, Antioch, and Jerusalem. Bulgarian Church accepted as under Roman jurisdiction but after closure of Council Eastern delegates persuade Basil to accept their majority decision to reverse it and a Byzantine archbishop is consecrated and sent there.

**November** Photius anathematized and sent to monastery of Skepes.

## c. 870 Byzantium

John Colobus founds the first proper monastery, named after him, on Mount Athos; its abbot is soon declared 'protector' of all hermits on mountain by Constantinople authorities.

## 870 Byzantium/Moravia

Methodius sent by Pope to convert the Magyar Prince Kocel and followers.

## Byzantium

**6 January** Basil's second son Leo co-emperor.

**28 February** Conclusion of Church Council. Peter returns to Constantinople from Tephrike; Byzantine-Paulician war follows.

Birth of Basil and Eudocia's son Stephen.

## Abbasid Caliphate

**21 June** Caliph Al-Muhtadi killed by troops; succeeded by cousin Al-Mutamid, son of Al-Mutawwakil, under effective government of brother Muwaffaq.

**871 Byzantium**

Basil defeats Paulicians and restricts their ravages to base area around Tephrike. ?Byzantine missionaries expel Roman priests from Bulgaria.

**Byzantium/Moravia**

Methodius is arrested and deported to Swabia by Lewis, King of the Germans.

**Egypt**

Ahmed Ibn Tulun gets Caliph's financial agent recalled; in effect independent.

**Italy**

Louis II invades Southern Italy, driving Arabs out of all cities and towns except Taranto, and recaptures Bari.

**Abbasid Caliphate**

'Zanj' slave rebels in Mesopotamia storm Basra.

**872 Byzantium**

Basil's son-in-law Christopher leads Byzantine expedition against the Paulicians in North-East Anatolia; Chrysocheir is killed and Tephrike taken; the Byzantines deport Paulicians from area to break up concentration of people and re-settle them throughout Empire, ?thus bringing 'dualism' into later heartland in Thrace.

Basil celebrates triumph in Constantinople, and uses Chrysocheir's head for target-practice in ceremony in Hippodrome.

**Italy**

**18 May** Hadrian II crowns Louis II of Italy as 'Emperor'; he dies and **14 December** John VIII elected Pope.

Prince Adelchis of Benevento captures Louis by treachery on visit and makes him accept independence of Lombards in Southern Italy.

**873 Byzantium/Italy**

Methodius is released on orders of Pope John VIII and returns to Moravia. Basil fights the Moslems in South-East Anatolia, capturing Zapetra and Samosata; he is later defeated near Melitene.

**Persia**

Yaqub 'the Brassworker' ('Saffar') deposes Tahirid dynasty in Khorasan, seizing capital, Nishapur; founding of 'Saffarid' dynasty.

**873/4 Abbasid Caliphate**

Mohammed Al-Mahdi, twelfth 'Imam' venerated by Shi'ites and descendant of the Prophet and Caliph Ali, disappears at Samarra in Abbasid custody, believed murdered; Shi'ites claim he is 'in occultation'.

**874 Byzantium**

?Byzantines land on and temporarily annex Cyprus; Alexius the Armenian made governor.

?Peace with Russia; a bishop sent to Kiev to start missionary activity. New treaty between Byzantium and Caliphate ending war.

**875 Byzantium**

?Photius is recalled to Constantinople as tutor to Princes Leo and Alexander.

**Persia**

Founding of first independent Shi'ite state, 'emirate' of Tabaristan.

## Italy

**12 August** Death of Louis II during Southern Italian expedition; as his troops return home citizens of Bari open gates to Byzantine army.

Pope John sends envoys, including legate Formosus, to Louis' uncle Charles 'the Bald' of France for assistance in Italian power-vacuum.

**24 December** Pope John crowns Charles 'Emperor' in Rome.

## 876 Byzantium

'New Church' ('Nea') of Basil I, principal architectural work of reign, commenced in Palace grounds – used by Basil to commemorate the help he claims his patrons the archangels and the prophet Elijah have given him.

## Georgia

Bagrat I succeeded by son David in Iberia; made 'curopalatus'.

## Italy

**April** Pope John excommunicates suspected plotters, including ex-legate Formosus who flees to Lombards at Spoleto.

## Abbasid Caliphate/Persia

Defeat of invasion of Mesopotamia by Yaqub the Saffarid, 'Emir' of Khorasan.

## 877 Byzantium

Basil takes Lulon, crucial Taurus Mountains fortress, from Arabs.

Ashot of Tarawn, Armenian princeling, made 'curopalatus'.

**23 October** Death of Patriarch Ignatius; **26 October** Photius restored as Patriarch, and Basil prepares for Council of Church to end schism.

## Italy

**October** Death of 'Emperor' Charles of France, during retreat over Alps from nephew Carloman of Bavaria's invasion.

## 878 Byzantium

Basil leads expedition against Hadath in Syria; Andreas defeats Arabs at Podandus and raids Cilicia.

## Italy

**21 May** Fall of Syracuse to Arabs; Taormina left as main Byzantine base.

## Croatia

Pro-Byzantine Prince Zdeslav seizes power.

## 879 Byzantium

**3 September** Death of Basil's eldest son Constantine; Basil reluctantly accepts second son Leo as heir, but probably doubts his real paternity.

**November** Church Council at Hagia Sophia to end 'Photian Schism'; Pope John VIII sends legates to it on condition that Photius publicly apologizes and Byzantium renounces supremacy over Bulgarian Church, but his letters are deliberately modified in Greek translation so as not to cause anger and effectively ignored; Council ('8th General Council' to Eastern Church) annuls anti-Photius synods, reaffirms 381 creed with no additions but side-steps 'filioque' as not yet formally in Roman creed, and temporizes on Bulgaria.

## Croatia

Zdeslav murdered, successor Branimir turns to Roman Church for missionaries not Byzantium.

## Persia

Yaqub, Saffarid 'Emir' of Khorasan, dies, succeeded by brother Ahmed.

## Abbasid Caliphate

Muwaffaq counter-attacks rebels in Mesopotamia.

## 880 Byzantium

End of Church Council in Constantinople.

**1 May** Dedication-ceremony of the 'New Church ('Nea') in Palace grounds.

## Italy

Nasar takes 140 Byzantine vessels to Sicily and **October** defeats Arab fleet off the Liparae Islands; Arabs in Southern Italy are cut off and Taranto reconquered.

## 881 Italy

**February** Pope John VIII crowns Charles 'the Fat' of Swabia, son of Lewis 'the German' and senior ruler in Germany, as Western 'Emperor'.

## Georgia

David of Iberia assassinated; Byzantines unsuccessfully back cousin Gurgen of Tao against son Adarnase.

## 882 Byzantium

**September** Prince Leo married to devout lady Theophano Martinaces/Martinakiou, related to mother Eudocia; he prefers his mistress Zoe, daughter of ambitious Stylianus Zautzes.

Theophano complains of Leo's infidelity to Basil, who assaults him at interview.



? Basil campaigns in South-East Anatolia and besieges Melitene.

?Methodius pays visit from Moravia to Constantinople.

## Italy

'Protovestiaris' Procopius defeated and killed in Sicily.

**16 December** Pope John VIII murdered by his entourage; Marinus, bishop of Caere, made Pope in violation of canons prohibiting translations between sees.

## 883 Byzantium/Italy

Large expedition under Stephen Maxentius sent to Sicily. Andreas, most successful of Basil's generals, sent to Cilicia with army for campaign.

Western Emperor Charles III 'the Fat' visits Italy and persuaded by Pope to ally with him against Count Guy of Spoleto.

## Byzantium

**14 September** General Styppiotos defeated by Arabs at Chrysobellum near Tarsus.

? Birth of Prince Leo and Theophano's daughter Eudocia.

(Probable date) Leo discovered to have knife in boot on hunting-expedition with Basil, as enemies warn the Emperor who then asks if he can borrow a knife from entourage and Leo pulls his out; Basil believes that Leo intended to stab him; John Curcuas, 'Domestic of the Hicatanoi', and 65 other courtiers punished and many exiled for alleged plot to replace Basil with Leo who is imprisoned under threat of blinding after accusation from Theodore Santabareus, bishop of Euchaita.

## 884 Italy

**15 May** Death of Pope Marinus; **17 May** Hadrian III Pope.

## Egypt

Death of 'Emir' Ahmed Ibn Tulun; succeeded by son Khumarawah.

**885**    **6 April**    Death of Methodius, 'Apostle of the Slavs', in Moravia.

## Italy

**September**    Death of Pope Hadrian III; succeeded by Stephen V.

**886**    **Byzantium**

**20 July**    Basil is persuaded to pardon, release, and reinstate Leo, supposedly being encouraged to repent by Leo's friends bringing him a parrot which they have taught to lament for the Prince; Santabarenius exiled to his see of Euchaita.

## Byzantium/Italy

Nicephorus Phocas, grandfather of later emperor, is sent to Southern Italy as 'Catepan' and launches successful war against Arab raiders.

## Egypt/Abbasid Caliphate

Peace agreed between Al-Mutamid and Khumarawah of Egypt.

## Armenia

Al-Mutamid makes Ashot 'King'; Armenian-Byzantine alliance confirmed.

## Byzantium

Basil goes hunting in Anatolia and **20 August** suffers serious hunting-accident as he is gored by a stag that entangles its antlers in his belt; he is carried back to Constantinople and **29 August** dies, possibly aged c.74; 19-year-old Leo becomes Emperor Leo VI with his mistress Zoe's father Stylianos Zautzes as chief minister.

Photius arrested, suspended from office, and tried for plotting against Leo in 883; Leo's accuser Santabarenius is flogged, blinded, and sent to Athens.

Michael III is re-buried at Church of Holy Apostles, reviving idea that Leo may be his natural son; Photius is deposed and sent into exile and **25 December** Leo's teenage brother Stephen is made Patriarch; Leo recalls various 'plotters' who Basil exiled.

## 887 **Byzantium**

?After imperial decree exempting hermits on Mount Athos from episcopal and imperial control, death of their leader St. John Colobus.

### **Italy**

**November** Deposition of Charles 'the Fat' as 'Emperor' in co-ordinated revolt; Western dominions break up and Count Guy of Spoleto seizes rule in Northern Italy.

## 888 **Byzantium/Italy**

Fleet defeated by Arabs at Mylae off Northern Sicily.

### **Bulgaria**

'Khan' Boris abdicates to become monk; succeeded by pagan son Vladimir.

## 889 **Byzantium**

?Leo calls his fellow-ex-student of Photius, Nicholas, to Constantinople to become his secretary ('Mystikos') – as Nicholas Mysticus, later Patriarch.

## 890 **Byzantium**

? Death of St. Peter the 'Athonite', pioneer hermit on Mount Athos.

**891 Byzantium/Armenia**

Ex-Patriarch Photius dies in exile at Gordi in Armenia.

King Ashot visits Constantinople and is honoured by Leo; treaty of alliance signed and Armenian troops join expedition in Thrace in border-war against Vladimir of Bulgaria.

**Abbasid Caliphate**

Death of Caliph al-Mutamid's brother and chief minister Muwaffaq.

**Italy**

**21 February** Pope Stephen V crowns Guy of Spoleto as 'Emperor';  
**14 September** Stephen dies; **6 October** Formosus elected Pope.

**Georgia**

Adarnase IV of Iberia granted Byzantine title as 'Curopalatus'.

**892 Armenia**

Ashot dies en route back from Constantinople; succeeded by son Sembat who faces revolt from uncle Abas.

**Byzantium**

Death of Princess Eudocia, Leo's daughter; his dissolute nearest brother Alexander is heir.

**Italy**

**May** Formosus has to crown Guy of Spoleto 'Emperor' and son Lambert co-ruler.

## **Abbasid Caliphate**

Baghdad restored as capital. **16 October** Death of Al-Mutamid; succeeded by nephew Al-Mutadhid (son of Muwaffaq).

## **893 Byzantium**

**17 May** Death of Patriarch Stephen, Leo's brother, aged 22/23; succeeded by Anthony Cauleas.

## **Bulgaria**

Ex-'Khan' Boris leaves monastery to lead revolt against pagan son Vladimir, who is deposed and replaced by Christian brother Simeon.

## **894 Byzantium/Bulgaria**

Two Byzantine merchants, partners of the chief minister Stylianus Zautzes, set up base for trade with Bulgaria at Thessalonica and over-charge Bulgarian merchants for exports; Simeon complains to Leo, but nothing is done and he declares war; Nicephorus Phocas is recalled from Southern Italy and invades Bulgaria but is too poorly equipped with troops to penetrate far; Byzantines negotiate with Magyars for aid in invading Bulgaria in the rear.

## **Armenia**

King Sembat takes Dvin and sends his Arab prisoners to Constantinople.

## **Italy**

Death of Guy of Spoleto, 'Emperor'; succeeded by son Lambert as ruler of Northern Italy.

## **895 Byzantium/Bulgaria**

Arpad's Magyars march down from Hungary to the Danube, and Byzantine fleet under Eustathius ferries them into Bulgaria; another Byzantine army

invades from South-East, and Samuel arrests Leo's ambassador Leo Choerosphactes and calls in Pechenegs from steppe to help him; they reach Wallachia and Magyars, afraid for communications home, retreat.

## Armenia

Caliphal deputy ('Ostikon') Afshin invades from Azerbalijan but is defeated at foot of Mount Aragatz.

## Egypt

Tulunid 'Emir' Khumarawah assassinated in Damascus; succeeded by son Jaysh.

## Italy

Arnulf, ruler of Germany, invades Italy at instigation of Formosus and marches on Rome to oust power of Lambert of Spoleto.

## 896 Egypt

Tulunid 'Emir' Jaysh murdered; succeeded by brother Harun.

## Italy

**22 February** Formosus crowns Arnulf as 'Emperor', but he is struck by paralysis and has to leave Italy and Lambert of Spoleto recovers power; **4 April** Formosus dies, followed by successor Boniface VI after 15 days; **May** Stephen VI elected.

## Byzantium

Simeon defeats Byzantines at 'Bulgarophygon' and general Theodosius killed; Magyars retire to Hungary and Leo pays tribute to Simeon to restore peace.

After repeated Arab raids, Aegina evacuated by inhabitants (including parents of the later hermit St. Luke of Stiris).

## 897 Italy

**January** Pope Stephen VI has Formosus exhumed, tried, and thrown in Tiber and all acts annulled; his misrule and superstitious fear at collapse of Lateran basilica leads to revolt **August** and he is deposed and strangled; **August** Romanus elected Pope; **November** after 74 months he is replaced by Formosus' partisans with Theodore II.

**10 November** Death of Empress Theophano, much revered by Byzantines for holiness and later canonised; Leo marries his mistress Zoe, whose father Stylianus Zautzes becomes 'Magister' and soon 'Basileopator' ('Father of the Emperor').

## 898 Italy/Byzantium

**January** On death of Theodore II, Sergius bishop of Caere elected Pope but ejected by Lambert of Spoleto; John IX Pope, and sends legates John and Nicholas to Constantinople to attend Synod with 'Ignatians' and tells their leader Bishop Stylanos that he regards Photius' Patriarchate as valid (at least from 877); Synod held and 'Photian Schism' ended.

### Italy

**October** Lambert killed hunting; Berengar of Friuli succeeds to rule of Northern Italy.

## 899 Byzantium

Nicephorus Phocas assures military command on Arab frontier.

**June** Death of Stylianus Zautzes, Leo's father-in-law and chief minister.

?Death of Leo's wife Zoe Styliana after 20 months of marriage; he marries 3rd wife Eudocia 'the Paphlagonian', despite Church unease.

### Italy

Magyar horde sacks Pavia, capital of Lombardy; Atenulf of Capua captures pro-Arab Lombard principality of Benevento to restrict Arab raiding.

**900 Italy**

**January** Death of Pope John IX; **May/June** Benedict IV elected.

Lewis of Provence invades Italy to fight Berengar of Friuli.

**Byzantium**

Nicephorus Phocas wins battle of Adana (Cilicia) over Arabs.

**20 April** Death of Empress Eudocia; Leo VI cannot legitimately marry 4th wife and his heir is incompetent brother Alexander, but he soon takes Zoe Carbonopsina ('Black-Eyes') as mistress.

**Persia**

Samanids, noble family of Balkh, led by Ahmed Ibn Ismail, overthrow and replace Saffarid dynasty in Khorasan.

**Armenia**

? Afshin raids Armenia and captures King Sembat's children at Kars.

**Abbasid Caliphate**

Revolt of dissident Arab tribesmen in Mesopotamia, known as 'Qarmatians' after founder Hamdan Qarmat. Long and devastating insurrection follows.

**901 Italy**

**February** Benedict IV crowns Lewis of Provence as 'Emperor' in Rome.

**10 June** Reggio falls to Moslem expedition sent into Byzantine lands from Sicily.

**Byzantium**

**12 February** Death of Patriarch Anthony Cauleas; **1 March** Nicholas Mysticus Patriarch, presumably nominated by his old friend Leo as he is thought accommodating to a fourth marriage.



## **Abbasid Caliphate**

'Qarmatians' ravage Syria and take Damascus and Homs/Emesa.

## **902 Abbasid Caliphate**

**5 April** Death of Caliph Al-Mutadhid; succeeded by son Al-Mukstafi.

## **Byzantium/Italy**

Arab fleet from Sicily raids Aegean and sacks Demetrias, Thessaly; **1 August** fall of Taormina in Sicily to Arabs, and Leo condemns defeated commanders Eustathius Argyrus and Carmalus to death but persuaded by Nicholas to pardon them.

'Emir' Ibrahim killed at Costenza, succeeded by son Abdullah.

## **Italy**

**August** Berengar of Friuli defeats Lewis of Provence and makes him swear to leave Italy and never return.

## **903 Byzantium**

**11 May** Attempt to kill Leo in Church of St. Mocius; his ambitious brother Alexander probably to blame.

Leo's eunuch adviser Samonas is accused of treachery and tries to flee to Baghdad; arrested by general Andronicus Ducas' son Constantine and despite pardon retains grudge against Ducas family.

## **Abbasid Caliphate**

? 'Qarmatians' massacre family of the Ismaili claimant to Alid succession as 'Imam', but driven out of Mesopotamia and settle in Bahrain.

## North Africa

Aghlabid ‘Emir’ Abdullah II murdered by son Ziyadat-Allah III who soon faces Berber revolt led by Abu Abdallah.

## Italy

**August** Death of Pope Benedict IV; Leo V Pope but **September** after 30 days deposed and imprisoned by faction led by priest Christopher who becomes Pope.

## 904 Italy

**29 January** Papal claimant Sergius III installed in Rome by Alberic of Spoleto, and deposes and imprisons Christopher; he later has him and Leo V murdered, and rules in alliance with ‘Senator’ Theophylact’s noble faction; Theophylact’s daughter Marozia supposed to be Sergius’ mistress.

## Byzantium

**July** Renegade-turned-pirate Leo of Tripoli raids Southern Anatolian Coast and sacks Attalia; Leo VI sacks naval commander Eustathius Argyrus; the pirate reaches Hellespont and takes Abydos but retires to Aegean ahead of Himerius’ fleet; **31 July** he takes and sacks Thessalonica, second city of Empire, in major blow to Leo VI’s reputation as Himerius avoids a clash. Leo Choerosphactes keeps Bulgarian peace during crisis with bribe and lands; ?Andronicus Ducas raids Cilicia and besieges Germanicea.

## 905 Abbasid Caliphate

**January** Egypt reconquered by expedition from Baghdad; ‘Emir’ Shayban deposed and deported.

## Byzantium

Choerosphactes negotiates prisoner-exchange with Arabs.

Andronicus Ducas campaigns on Eastern frontier.

Leo's mistress Zoe 'Carbonopsina' becomes pregnant, and Leo approaches Patriarch Nicholas about 4th marriage but is rebuffed; **18 May** Leo's son Constantine born in the Palace (hence nickname 'Porphyro-genitus', after the purple-hung Imperial birth-chamber).

## Italy

Lewis of Provence invades Northern Italy again but is captured, blinded, and expelled by Berengar of Friuli, Hugh of Arles becomes his cousin Lewis' effective replacement in lands and in claim to rule in Italy.

## 906 Byzantium

Nicholas agrees to baptise Constantine in return for Leo abandoning Zoe; **3 January** he baptises him with 'Syncellus' Euthymius as godfather, but Bishop Epiphanius of Laodicea and other clerics object; **?9 January** Leo restores Zoe to the Palace: **April** Leo and Zoe are married by the 'presbyter' Thomas, and Leo then crowns her; Nicholas refuses him admission to Hagia Sophia, offering dispensations for special feast-days which are refused; Leo appeals to Pope Sergius III.

At instigation of Samonas, Andronicus Ducas refuses to join naval expedition fearing arrest and **October** flees to Caballa.

## Abbasid Caliphate

'Qarmatians' pillage Kufa.

## Byzantium

**25 December** Nicholas refuses Leo entry to Hagia Sophia for service.

## 907 Byzantium/Russia

Russian Prince Oleg leads fleet across Black Sea and across Bosphorus; Byzantines block 'Golden Horn' but Oleg allegedly transports ships over land on rollers to get round chain; Byzantines agree to commercial treaty.

## Persia

Death of Ismail, Samanid ruler of Khorasan; succeeded by son Ismail.

## Byzantium

Correspondence between Nicholas and Andronicus Ducas seized; **6 January** Nicholas refuses Leo admission to Hagia Sophia again and refuses dispensation; Leo calls him a traitor at Palace banquet and he makes clergy swear to resist pressure; **2 February** Leo tells clergy that Papal and other Patriarch's legates en route to rule on controversy and asks for admission to Church of St. Mary at Blachernae, but they refuse and are arrested and expelled from capital; Nicholas taken to his monastery at Galacrenae.

**5 February** Those clerics who give in are recalled; **7 February** Leo writes to Nicholas demanding resignation and he claims illness reason why no reply; Samonas arrives to threaten trial for treason and he gives in and abdicates; he is allowed to stay at monastery and Euthymius appointed Patriarch but widely resisted; the Papal legates recognize Leo's 4th marriage.

## Hungary

Death of Arpad, chieftain/King of Magyars, succeeded by son Zsolt.

## Byzantium

**Spring** Andronicus Ducas and son Constantine flee to Baghdad, possibly due to fear of enemy Samonas.

## Bulgaria

**May** Death of ex-'Khan' Boris in monastery.

## 908 Byzantium

Prisoner-exchange with Arabs; **June** disgrace and exile of Samonas, organized by his protegé, eunuch Constantine who becomes 'paracoemomenus' (Great Chamberlain); Himerius 'Great Drungharius' (naval commander). ?pardon

of Andronicus Ducas' son Constantine on return from Baghdad. **15 May** Prince Constantine made co-Emperor.

### **Abbasid Caliphate**

Al-Muqtafi's brother Al-Muqtadir succeeds him as Caliph after **17– 18 December** one-day usurpation of Abdullah ibn Mutazz; Ibn al-Furat chief minister.

### **909 Italy**

Princes Landulf of Capua and Gaimar of Salerno visit Constantinople; made 'patricians'.

### **North Africa**

Abu Abdallah's rebels storm Aghlabid capital, Qairouan, and depose 'Emir' Ziyadat Allah; 'Shi'a' leader and descendant of Ali, Saed, summoned from East and proclaimed Caliph Ubaidullah – 'Fatimid' dynasty founded.

### **910 Byzantium**

Preparation for war against Crete; Himerius and fleet sail through Aegean, arranging truce with 'Emir' of Crete en route, to raid Caliphal navy in Syria and prevent them aiding Crete; Laodicea is sacked and fleet destroyed.

?Constantine Ducas, son of Andronicus, made 'Strategus' of Charsianon in North-East Anatolia.

### **911 Italy**

**14 April** Death of Pope Sergius III; succeeded by Anastasius III.

### **Byzantium**

**May ?** Constantine crowned co-Emperor in Hagia Sophia.

Byzantine treaty with Russia, regulating trade, negotiated and **2 September** signed in Constantinople.

Naval expedition to Crete under ‘Great Drunghaire’ Himerius; **October** expedition lands and Arab capital, Chandax on North coast, besieged.

## 912 **Byzantium**

**January** Leo III with typhoid; **April** as his condition deteriorates he nominates Alexander as his deputy ruler, and amidst intrigues Himerius abandons siege of Chandax to return home; off Chios his fleet is ambushed and destroyed by Leo of Tripoli; he is sacked and Romanus Lecapenus, ‘strategos’ of Samos, made fleet-commander (‘Great Drungharius’).

**11 May** Death of Leo VI, aged 45; Alexander and Constantine co-rulers, but Alexander is an extravagant, lazy and feckless ruler who loathes his nephew and thinks of castrating and deposing him. Nicholas recalled to Patriarchate to end schism over Leo’s 4th marriage; Euthymius resists but is deposed at Synod, attacked and thrown out unconscious, and sent to monastery; Nicholas insists on purifying Hagia Sophia, and bishops of Nicomedia, Heraclea, Ancyra, and Hierapolis replaced; Alexander refuses tribute to Simeon who prepares war.

## **Italy**

Revolt of governor Ahmed of Sicily against Fatimids.

Patriarch Nicholas writes to Pope Anastasius deploring his recognition of Leo VI’s fourth marriage, and strikes his name from Imperial diptychs.

## 913 **Armenia**

Sembar is besieged by Yusuf, surrenders, and is tortured to death; Arabs overrun most of Armenia, but some lords hold out with Sembar’s son Ashot and ‘Catholicos’ John.

## **North Africa/Egypt**

Ubaidullah ‘Al-Mahdi’'s Fatimid troops invade Egypt under son Qaim and take Alexandria; Caliph Al-Muqtadir’s general Munis expels them.

## **Byzantium**

**4 June** Alexander has a (?) stroke on way to Palace ball-game, and struggle for regency for Constantine VII on his death-bed; Nicholas invites Constantine Ducas to capital to assist him; Alexander appoints Nicholas, Stephen the 'Magister', John Eludas, and 3 favourites to regency council and **6 June** dies aged 46.

Constantine VII sole emperor at age of 8.

## **Italy**

**August** Lando succeeds Anastasius III as Pope.

## **Byzantium**

Nicholas refuses Zoe admission to Palace and makes Council swear never to recognise her as Empress; Constantine Ducas enters capital in secret, hides at father-in-law Iberitzes' house, and with courtiers' encouragement raises a mob to march on Palace; Garidas rallies the guards and Constantine Ducas is acclaimed as emperor in Hippodrome but killed trying to storm the Chalke (main gate) with many supporters; son Stephen castrated and exiled to Pamphylian estates with widow.

Nicholas writes to Simeon of Bulgaria asking him to respect orphaned Emperor; he refuses and **August** besieges capital; Nicholas grants him coronation as 'Emperor of Bulgarians' and daughter engaged to Constantine; he is crowned outside walls and retires.

## **914 Byzantium**

**February** Zoe and Eladas seize the Palace and Nicholas driven into Hagla Sophia; he is blockaded for 22 days, but Zoe fails to get Euthymius to reclaim Patriarchate so she opens talks; Nicholas allowed to retain see if promises only to come to Palace on summons.

## **Italy**

**April** On death of Pope Lando, vigorous Archbishop John of Ravenna elected (John X) through influence of 'senator' Theophylact; organizes recruitment of allies to fight Arab raiders.

Nicholas Picingli 'strategus' of Byzantine Southern Italy.

## Byzantium

Ashot of Armenia visits Constantinople to seek aid; Simeon's daughter's betrothal to Constantine VII ended so he attacks and **September** takes Adrianople.

### 915 Byzantium/Armenia

Byzantine army, ? led by general Leo Phocas (son of the first Nicephorus Phocas), marches into Armenia to restore Ashot to his lands but cannot secure the territories near to Moslem frontier in East.

## Italy

Pope John invades Arab pirate bases in Southern Italy with forces including Theophylact of Rome, Alberic of Spoleto, and Atenulf of Capua, and joined by Byzantine fleet; **August** after 3-month siege pirate headquarters at mouth of River Garigliano stormed and the area is cleared.

**December** John crowns Berengar of Friuli as Western 'Emperor' in Rome, and Papal lands confirmed; Berengar's authority in Italy still weak.

### 916 Byzantium

Plans for counter-offensive against Bulgarians; John Rhodinus and Michael Toxoras sent to Baghdad to arrange truce with Caliph Al-Muqtadir; **October** exchange of prisoners on frontier.

General Leo Phocas prepares Balkan army, while envoys sent to Pechenegs for Northern invasion; Nicholas urges caution on Zoe to no avail.

Bulgarians raid Greece as far as Gulf of Corinth.

## Georgia

? Death of Constantine II of Abasgia, succeeded by son George II.

### 917 Byzantium

Leo Phocas invades Bulgaria by land while Romanus Lecapenus takes fleet up to Danube to transport Pechenegs across; the Pechenegs quarrel with



Byzantines and their guide refuses to lead them into Bulgaria; Simeon rallies troops in interior and without Lecapenus or Pechenegs Phocas retires to coast to relieve siege of Mesembria.

**5 August** Death of Euthymius; Nicholas refuses him burial.

**20 August** Simeon, arriving at Black Sea coast, routs Leo Phocas in battle at Anchialus; he flees to Mesembria and thence capital, and Nicholas sends envoys to Simeon blaming Zoe for war and pleading for truce; Simeon refuses and marches on capital, routing Phocas' new army at Catasyrtae; he blockades capital by land, but retires for the winter.

## Italy

Sicily reconquered by Fatimids; 'Emir' Ahmed executed.

## 918 Byzantium

Byzantines instigate Peter of Serbia to attack Bulgaria; he is deposed by Bulgarian generals Marmaem and Sigirtze, but Simeon too busy to invade Empire.

Zoe and Nicholas plot against each other while Leo Phocas, training recruits at Chrysopolis, and Romanus Lecapenus struggle for power; Zoe decides for Leo thanks to his brother-in-law 'paracoemomenus' (Great Chamberlain) Constantine, and Constantine orders Romanus to disband fleet; when he arrives to enforce order Romanus arrests him; Zoe's envoys to fleet are stoned and next morning Council meets at Boucoleon Palace and Constantine VII's tutor Theodore announces that Zoe is replaced as regent by Patriarch Nicholas and Stephen; at Emperor's request Zoe allowed to stay in Palace.

Nicholas replaces Leo Phocas with John Garidas as 'Domestic of the Scholae'; Leo objects so Nicholas makes his brother-in-law Theodore and nephew Simeon 'Heteriarchs' (senior guard-commanders) to placate him, dismissing them after crisis over.

Simeon installs Peter of Serbia's cousin Paul in power as his vassal.

## 919 Byzantium

**24 March** John the Presbyter and Theodore Matzuces bring Romanus' request for admission to Palace to Nicholas who refuses; Constantine's

tutor Theodore lets Romanus' fleet into Boucoleon harbour, adjacent to Palace's lower entrance.

**25 March** Romanus leads fleet into harbour and lands to seize Palace; 'patrician' Nicetas expels Nicholas and Romanus appointed 'Chief Heteriarch' and 'Magister' and releases 'paracoemomenus' Constantine on oath of loyalty; Romanus and Nicholas reach agreement to defeat Leo Phocas.

**April** Constantine VII betrothed to Romanus's daughter Helena, later married; Romanus 'Basileopator' ('Father of Emperor'); Leo Phocas and army resist coup at Chrysopolis, but Romanus' agents hand round letters in Constantine VII's name approving of Romanus and desertions start; Leo retires to Bithynia and is pursued, captured, blinded, and **August** paraded in capital,

Zoe accused of trying to poison Constantine VII and sent to nunnery of St. Euphemia-in-Petriton; Theodore the tutor arrested at banquet by Romanus' ally John Curcuas, Armenian general and 'Drungarius of Watch' (foreign minister) and exiled to Opsicion 'theme'.

**Late Summer** Bulgarians raid Thrace as far as Chersonese peninsula.

**24 September** Romanus made 'Caesar'.

**17 December** Romanus crowned co-Emperor, aged around 49.

## 920 Byzantium

Romanus inspires unsuccessful anti- Bulgarian revolt of Prince Zacharias of Serbia, who Simeon defeats and deposes; he marches into Bulgaria himself without success.

**6 January** Romanus' wife Theodora crowned 'Augusta'; **July** Synod rules that Leo VI's last two marriages were illegal and Constantine VII legitimate on sufferance.

## North Africa

Ubaidullah 'Al-Mahdi' founds new capital in Tunisia, 'Mahdiya'; his armies unsuccessfully invade Egypt.

## Italy

Death of 'Senator' Theophylact, ruler of Rome; succeeded by daughter Marozia.

## 921 **Byzantium**

Stephen the 'Magister' is deported to monastery on island of Antigoni; John Garidas succeeded by Adralestes as 'Domestic of Scholae' (Guard-Commander); unsuccessful plot of Anastasius the 'Sacellarius' (treasurer), Theodoreus the Chamberlain, Demetrius the Notary, and Nicholas Cabatzes against Romanus leads to more dismissals and exiles from capital.

**Whitsun, 20 May** Romanus' eldest son Christopher made co-Emperor. Simeon advances to Catasyrtae, and Romanus sends general Pothus Argyrus to meet him for talks but no success.

Bulgarians ravage around Adrianople and governor Mauroleon's son Michael tries to drive them off but is mortally wounded and city blockaded by Simeon's generals while Simeon, nearer capital, marches to Selymbria on Propontis and refuses Nicholas' offer of meeting.

## 922 **Italy**

North Italian revolt against 'Emperor' Berengar, aided by Rudolf of Burgundy; Berengar retires from Lombardy to own lands in Friuli.

## **Byzantium**

**February** Death of Romanus's wife Theodora; **March** Christopher's wife Sophia crowned 'Augusta'.

Simeon raids to the European shore of Bosphorus; Romanus sends brothers Pothus Argyrus and John the 'Rector' and Admiral Musele to defend his family palace at Pegae West of the capital, but they are ambushed and routed, Musele is drowned fleeing, and the Argyri besieged in nearby fortress; Simeon loots Western suburbs.

Bulgarians camp outside city walls, and Romanus harangues disheartened generals at a dinner; they attack and loot enemy camp, and Simeon retreats.

Byzantines invade territory of Melitene; Arabs under Nasr raid Armenia.

Romanus' first law on 'pre-emption': to protect small farmers and hence citizen- army, they are given 10 years to redeem land pledged to wealthy landowners for financial aid if related to them and otherwise the practice outlawed.

## 923 Byzantium

Simeon invades Thrace along Maritza valley and besieges Adrianople; city is starved into surrender and governor Mauroleon tortured to death. Byzantines induce Paul of Serbia to attack Bulgarians in the rear; Simeon retreats to deal with invasion and Byzantines retake Adrianople; Simeon invades Serbia, deposes Paul, and installs Zacharias as puppet-ruler.

John Rhodanus' fleet defeats and kills Leo of Tripoli off Lemnos. Byzantines take offensive in Eastern Anatolia; Bardas Boilas, governor of Chaldian theme in North-East, revolts but is defeated by 'Domestic' John Curcuas.

Simeon asks Nicholas to send envoy to Bulgaria which he does; peace-negotiations are unsuccessful.

Pope John sends envoys Theophylact and Carus to Preslav to mediate.

## Georgia

Adarnase of Iberia succeeded by sons David II and Ashot II.

## Abbasid Caliphate

'Qarmatians' under Abu Sa'id al-Jannabi sack Basra and raid countryside.

## 924 Byzantium/Bulgaria

Simeon send envoys to Ubaidullah al-Mahdi, Fatimid ruler of Tunisia, and alliance against Byzantium arranged; Byzantine fleet captures the Bulgarian envoys on return journey on Fatimid ship but send their Fatimid escorts home with message of goodwill; Ubaidullah sends ambassadors to Constantinople and treaty agreed.

Romanus signs truce with Caliph Al-Muqtadir, and exchange of prisoners.

**September** Simeon ravages Thrace to the walls of Constantinople and camps outside, demanding to see Patriarch Nicholas; Nicholas, 'patrician' Michael Styppiotēs, and John Mysticus visit him and he demands to see Romanus; **9 September** Simeon meets Romanus on a pier set out into Golden Horn at Cosmidion where Romanus arrives on ship, and Romanus reproves him for shedding Christian blood; a truce is arranged; Romanus pays subsidy and Simeon returns Black Sea fortresses.

**25 December** Coronation of Romanus' second and third sons, Constantine and Stephen.

## Italy

Murder of aged 'Emperor' Berengar of Friuli, ruler of North Italy and grandson of Charlemagne; his daughter Gisela secures control of her late husband Adalbert of Ivrea's lands for their son Berengar II.

## 925 Byzantium/Bulgaria

Simeon invades Serbia; Patriarch Nicholas is ill and replaced by John Mysticus in charge of foreign relations; **19 April** John appointed 'Patrician'.

**15 May** Death of Patriarch Nicholas; Romanus appoints eunuch Stephen of Amasea as Patriarch to serve as 'stop-gap' until his real candidate, youngest son Theophylact, is old enough.

**October** John Mysticus is dismissed for plot with father-in-law, Cosmas the 'Logothete', and as a commission is appointed to investigate, he flees to monastery; Cosmas flogged and dismissed, and Constantine Boilas and others implicated in plot.

'Protovestiarius' Theophanes takes charge of foreign relations.

Simeon puts down revolt by Zacharias of Serbia with massacres; he takes the title of 'Emperor (Czar/Caesar) of the Bulgars and Romans' to defy the Empire.

## Italy

Arabs raid Southern Italy around Oria and hold 'Strategus' (governor) for ransom.

## Abbasid Caliphate

'Qarmatians' sack city of Kufa.

## 926 Bulgaria

Simeon raises Bulgarian archbishopric to 'Patriarchate' to show independence of Byzantium.

## Byzantium

John Curcuas and Armenian general Melias take city but not citadel of Melitene.

## Italy

Count Hugh of Provence becomes 'King of Italy' and ruler of Lombardy at invitation of nobles who expel Rudolf of Burgundy.

? Marozia, real ruler of Rome, marries Count Guy of Spoleto.

## Abbasid Caliphate

Al-Muqtadir invites Yusuf ibn Saj, 'Emir' of Azerbaijan, to Baghdad to drive off raiding 'Qarmatians' but he is killed in battle.

## 927 Byzantium/Bulgaria

Simeon grudgingly makes peace with Croatia as militarily exhausted; **27 May** he dies suddenly of heart-attack and chaos ensues in Bulgaria without his leadership.

A Bulgarian faction installs Simeon's son by second marriage, Peter, as 'Czar' under regency of mother's brother George Sursubul; peace-negotiations with invading Byzantines, Magyars, Croats and Pechenegs.

Byzantine/Bulgarian conference at Mesembria with monk Theodotus and secretary Constantine of Rhodes representing Romanus; terms and frontier agreed and Peter to marry Romanus' grand-daughter, Christopher's daughter Maria.

Sursubul and other Bulgarians visit Constantinople to sign treaty and arrange marriage, and on their return Peter sets out; he is greeted by 'Patrician' Nicetas and **8 October** marries Maria at church of the Virgin at Pegae; Byzantine diplomat Theophanes arranges fixing of frontier and Byzantines accept Peter as 'Czar' and pay subsidy.

## Abbasid Caliphate

General Munis defeats a 'Qarmatian' attack on Baghdad.

## **Armenia**

'Catholicos' Harbarnes, in flight from Arab raids, settles at Agthamar on Lake Van under protection of Kingdom of Vaspurakan; schism with clerics remaining at Ani.

## **Italy**

Moslem pirates sack Byzantine Taranto.

## **928 Byzantium**

Byzantine fleet raids Syrian ports but is scattered by storms; Arabs raid by land from Tarsus.

'Patrician' Nicetas sent to a monastery for allegedly plotting to replace Romanus with Christopher; Curcuas raids Moslem Southern Armenia and takes towns including Khilat on Lake Van.

Byzantine peace-treaty with 'Emir of Sicily'.

? Cleric, Gabriel, sent as ambassador to Hungary.

## **Italy**

**May** Pope John X deposed in revolution instigated by Marozia and later murdered in prison; Leo VII Pope; Marozia rules Rome as 'Senatrix'.

## **Byzantium**

**July** Death of Patriarch Stephen; **December** Tryphon made Patriarch.

**Autumn** Start of very severe winter.

## **Armenia**

Death of Ashot II; succeeded by brother Abas.

**Italy**

**December** Death of Pope Leo VI; Stephen VII Pope as Marozia's nominee.

**928/9 Abbasid Caliphate**

Courtiers in Baghdad depose Caliph Al-Muqtadir in favour of brother Al-Qadir, but restore him when troops mutiny.

**929 Byzantium**

End of very severe winter; many small farmers are ruined in Anatolia and sell their estates to large landowners.

Byzantines raid Arab territories around Melitene and Amida.

**930 Byzantium**

Melias raids Arab territories around Samosata; Curcuas and brother Theophilus besiege Theodosiopolis.

**August** Patriarch Tryphon deposed in order to make way for Romanus I's son Theophylact when he is old enough.

**931 Italy**

**March** Death of Pope Stephen VII; Marozla, ruler of Rome, makes her illegitimate son (? by Pope Sergius III) Pope John XI.

Arabs from Provence raid Byzantine Southern Italy, but are pursued home by Byzantine fleet which raids their base, Fraxinetum/Fréjus.

**Byzantium/Armenia**

Arabs raid Armenia; driven out by Byzantine generals.

**August–October** Arab general Sami, governor of Tarsus, raids West as far as Ancyra and Amorium.



**August** Death of co-Emperor Christopher Lecapenus, Romanus' eldest son, aged c.31; wife Sophia soon retires to nunnery.

**October** Romanus makes younger son Theophylact Lecapenus Patriarch.

## 932 **Byzantium**

A Macedonian leads peasant revolt in Opsicon 'theme', claiming to be Constantine Ducas; he is captured and hand cut off, but later escapes to start a second revolt; captured and burnt alive.

Byzantine mission to Rome for alliance against Fatimids delayed by Italian troubles, but invitation sent for legates to attend Theophylact's consecration.

## **Abbasid Caliphate**

Suspicious Caliph al-Muqtadir recalls his general Munis from Mosul; as Munis' army approaches Baghdad he is persuaded they will revolt and seize city so he attacks them first; **31 October** he is defeated and killed and Munis installs his brother Al-Qahir as Caliph; Qahir soon starts to prove suspicious and tyrannical.

## **Italy**

**Summer** Marozia defies Roman opinion by marrying Count Hugh of Provence, 'King of Italy' and ruler of Northern Italy; **December** her son by earlier marriage, Alberic, organizes revolt and besieges them in Castel St. Angelo; Hugh escapes but Marozia imprisoned for life and Alberic rules Rome as 'patrician' and senator; Pope John XI imprisoned, later released as puppet.

## 933 **Byzantium**

Papal legates arrive at Constantinople; **2 February** Theophylact is installed as Patriarch in their presence.

Stephen Lecapenus marries Anna, the daughter of Gabalas, who becomes 'Augusta'.

## Abbasid Caliphate

Suspicious Caliph Al-Qahir executes Munis in a purge of officers.

### 934 Byzantium

**19 May** John Curcuas takes Melitene – most prestigious victory on Eastern frontier for decades.

Magyars raid the Balkans but are bribed into retreating by the diplomat Theophanes.

Slav tribes around Mount Taygetus in Laconia revolt against the incompetent government of John the ‘protospatharius’, ‘strategus’ of Peloponnese, who is dismissed and replaced by Crinites Argyrus, ex-governor of ‘Hellas’.

**Autumn** Romanus enacts new legislation to stop aristocrats extending estates and impoverishing peasantry or affecting recruitment of citizen-soldiers for army, by invalidating all land-transaction since 927 to cancel the sales made as a result of hard winter of 928–9.

## Abbasid Caliphate

**24 April** Caliph Al-Qahir deposed and blinded as tyrant by his generals; succeeded by nephew Al-Radhi, son of Al-Muqtadir.

## Africa

Qaim succeeds father Ubaidullah as Fatimid Caliph at Tunis.

## Persia

Ali ibn Buya, Dailamite tribal mercenary captain from Zagros Mountains, seizes Shiraz, capital of Fars, to set up new (‘Buwayhid’) Emirate.

### 935 Byzantium

Crinites Argyrus defeats the rebellious Slavs in guerilla campaign and makes them pay tribute.

St. Luke the 'Stylite' ascends pillar at Constantinople, reviving old tradition.

## **Egypt**

Mohammed ibn Tujj, founder of 'Ikshidid' dynasty, becomes Abbasid governor of Egypt.

## **Italy**

Landulf of Benevento invades Byzantine Apulia; Byzantines ally with Hugh.

## **936 Abbasid Caliphate**

Caliph Al-Radhi makes his general Ibn Raik of Wasit 'Emir al-Umara' (Commander of Commanders) to restore his authority in dominions.

## **Italy**

Death of Pope John XI, half-brother and puppet of Alberic; **3 January** Alberic's candidate elected Pope Leo VII.

## **Byzantium**

Serious Magyar raids on Western Balkans, penetrating as far South as Attica.

Byzantine/Arab fighting on frontier; unsuccessful Arab attack on Armenia.

## **Italy**

Epiphanius the 'Spatharius' leads expedition to Southern Italy to threaten Landulf, who evacuates Apulia.

## **937 Georgia**

Death of David II of Iberia; brother Ashot II sole ruler.

## Abbasid Caliphate

Ibn Raik cuts the Nahrawan Canal across Mesopotamia to prevent rebels approaching Baghdad, devastating agriculture.

Nasir ad-Daula's brother Saif ad-Dauba becomes his governor of Byzantine/Armenian frontier lands.

## 938 Byzantium

Byzantine peace-negotiations with Caliphate, and ambassadors in Baghdad; Caliph Al-Radhi and 'Emir al-Umara' Ibn Raik want to concentrate Arab forces against Nasir ad-Daula of Mosul. **October** Byzantine/Arab prisoner-exchange on River Lamus, West of Cilicia.

Birth of Constantine VII and Helena's son Romanus (II).

## Italy

Byzantines assist unsuccessful revolt against Arabs in Sicily.

## 939 Byzantium

**April** Byzantine/Arab prisoner-exchange at Podandos. Byzantine embassy to Mohammed ibn Tujj of Egypt. Saif ad-Daula defeats Curcuas at 'Hisni Zlad'.

## Abbasid Caliphate

Ibn Raik fights Mohammed ibn Tujj over Palestine, which is divided in peace-treaty; he is deposed, replaced by Bajkam in Baghdad.

## Italy

**10 July** After death of Leo VII, Stephen VIII Pope as Alberic's candidate.

## Armenia

**Autumn** Saif ad-Daula invades and takes Manzikert.

## 940 Byzantium/Armenia

King Abas submits to Saif ad-Daula at Khilat; Saif ad-Daula invades Byzantine Pontus as far as Colonea, ignores an embassy from Romanus with angry letter, and retires to Mosul.

John Curcuas raids Arab lands in Southern Armenia to Kharput.

### Abbasid Caliphate

**23 December** Al-Muttaqi succeeds brother Al-Radhi as Caliph; Bajkam remains chief minister.

## 941 Byzantium/Russia

**June** Prince Igor and a Russian fleet cross Black Sea, land in Bithynia, and ravage countryside but cannot take fortified towns; **September** Curcuas arrives with the Eastern army and they retreat to ships; Theophanes and Byzantine fleet attack them and destroy many ships with 'Greek fire', and survivors return home.

Theophanes made 'paracoemomenus' (Great Chamberlain).

### Italy

Byzantine fleet and King Hugh of Italy destroy Arab pirate base at Fréjus on Riviera, but Hugh refrains from killing survivors and signs treaty.

### Abbasid Caliphate

Caliph Al-Muttaqi flees Baghdad as rebels attack city and seeks aid from 'Emir' Nasir ad-Daula of Mosul.

## 942 Byzantium

Curcuas invades Syria and devastates around Aleppo, taking 10,000 prisoners; Suml of Tarsus raids into Anatolia in reply; Curcuas invades across Euphrates, takes Nisibis, and besieges Edessa.

## Abbasid Caliphate

Nasir ad-Daula of Mosul and his brother Sa'íd ad-Daula restore Caliph Al-Muttaqi to Baghdad.

## Italy

Death of Pope Stephen VIII; **30 October** Marinus II elected as Alberic's candidate. Peter Candiano Doge of Venice.

## Egypt

Mohammed ibn Tujj overruns Northern Palestine.

## 943 Byzantium

**April** Magyars raid Byzantium again, but are bought off with truce and subsidy.

Curcuas continues siege of Edessa and **May** raids Mesopotamia, taking Dara; 1,000 prisoners taken at 'Ras Ain'.

## Persia

Death of Nasr, Samanid 'Emir' of Khorasan; succeeded by son Núh.

## 944 Byzantium/Russia

Prince Igor bribes the Pechenegs into peace and sets off for Byzantium on revenge raid; the forewarned Emperor Romanus sends envoys who meet him at mouth of Danube and pay him to return home.

Edessans surrender the 'Mandelion' (image of face of Christ on towel) on instructions of Caliph to spare city; the sacred relic is escorted to Constantinople and **15 August** brought in in state by young Lecapeni and Constantine VII as Romanus is ill; the face of Christ allegedly appears clear to Constantine and blurred to brothers-in-law.

Curcuas takes Bagrae and crosses Euphrates to take Germanicea, which is retaken after departure; the young Lecapeni, jealous, induce Romanus to dismiss him; replaced by Pantherius, Lecapenid relative.

Sa'id ad-Daula takes Aleppo and defeats Pantherius, as the latter invades city territory.

## Abbasid Caliphate

**12 October** Caliph Al-Muttaqi deposed by chief minister Tuzun for suspected alliance with Ibn Tujj of Egypt following meeting at Raqqa; succeeded by cousin al-Mukstafi.

## Byzantium

**September** Hugh of Provence's bastard daughter Bertha arrives at Constantinople to marry Constantine VII and Helena's son Romanus; renamed 'Eudocia'.

**20 December** Constantine and Stephen Lecapenus, aided by Marianus Argyrus, 'protospatharius' Basil Petinus and Manuel Curticius, arrest ailing Romanus I in apartments at Palace and send him to Prote as monk; angry crowds demonstrate in favour of Constantine VII until Helena secures brothers' acceptance of him as senior Emperor.

## 945 Italy

Berengar of Ivrea, Italian exile, returns with popular support to capture King Hugh and rule Lombardy, etc. in his name as chief councillor.

## Byzantium

Pantherius dismissed; Bardas Phocas 'Domestic of Scholae'; Petinus 'Grand Heteriarch' (guards-commander); Curticius 'Drungarius of Watch' (foreign minister).

Constantine and Stephen Lecapenus fail to lure Constantine VII to dinner-party; **27 January** escorted by Helena, the senior Emperor arrests them and sends them into exile, stopping en route at Prote where Romanus Lecapenus sarcastically welcomes them; Stephen is sent first to Proconnessus, later to Rhodes and Mytilene, and Constantine first to Thasos and then to Samothrace.

Christopher's son Michael is made a cleric, and Constantine's son Romanus is castrated but allowed to remain at Court; Romanus I's illegitimate son Basil, a eunuch, also stays at Court and soon rises to great favour and the office of 'Paracoemomenus' (Great Chamberlain); Constantine VII continues to work on his *De Administrando Imperio*, history and guide to diplomatic relations which is probably completed a few years later.

**6 April** Constantine's son Romanus made co-Emperor.

Nicephorus Phocas made 'strategus' of Anatolicon theme and brother Leo equivalent in Cappadocia.

## Russia

Igor dies on Caspian expedition; widow Helga regent for son Svyatoslav.

## Abbasid Caliphate

Buwayhid brothers take Baghdad and make Caliph Al-Mukstafi their puppet; Ahmad, now 'Mu'lzz al-Daula', rules as 'Emir Al-Umara'.

## 946 Italy

Death of Pope Marinus II; **10 May** Alberic organizes election of his choice as successor, Agapitus II.

## Byzantium

Constantine Lecapenus tries to escape, kills the chief of his warders, but is cut down.

Byzantine/Arab exchange of prisoners at traditional site, Anatolian River Lamus near Seleucia West of Cilicia.

Byzantine embassy to Al-Mansur.

**31 May** Envoys from Tarsus at Constantinople to discuss prisoner-exchange.



## **Egypt**

Death of Mohammed ibn Tujj of Egypt; son Abul Qasim succeeds with eunuch Al Misk Kafur as chief minister.

## **Byzantium**

**31 August** Constantine receives envoys from Said ad-Daula of Aleppo and the 'Emir' of Amida.

## **Abbasid Caliphate**

Buwayhids depose and blind Caliph Al-Mukstafi (d. 951); succeeded by cousin Al-Muti as their puppet.

## **947 Byzantium**

Constantine VII re-issues 'pre-emption' legislation on transmission of landed estates.

## **Persia**

Ali and Ahmad, the Buwayhid rulers', brother Rukn al-Daula installed in Rayy.

## **948 Byzantium**

**15 June** Death of ex-Emperor Romanus Lecapenus on Prote, aged ?78.

Byzantines capture and dismantle Northern Syrian fortress of Hadath.

?Visit to Constantinople, and baptism in Emperor's presence of Magyar chief Bolosu; appointed 'patrician' and subsequently aids Byzantine political and missionary embassies to Hungary.

**24 October** (or 948) Constantine receives embassy from Omayyad Emirate of Spain.

**Italy**

Death of King Hugh (of Provence) of Italy, ruler of Lombardy; succeeded by son Lothar II.

**949 Byzantium**

Unsuccessful expedition of Constantine Gongylas against Crete.

Bardas Phocas, Nicephorus' father and commander-in-chief of the Eastern armies, fights Saif ad-Daula in Northern Syrian expedition.

**Persia**

Death of Imad ad-Daula (Ali) Buwayhid ruler of Fars; succeeded by nephew Adud Ad-Daula.

**Byzantium**

Birth of St. Simeon 'the Young', leading theologian of the age.

**950 Italy**

Death of King Lothar II of Italy, ruler of Lombardy; local power passes to Berengar II of Ivrea.

**Byzantium**

Unsuccessful siege of Amida, where Byzantines try to tunnel under walls; Patriarch Theophylact claims spread of 'Bogomil' heresy in Bulgaria, originated by eponymous priest, in letter of complaint to Czar Peter.

**951 Byzantium**

Final expedition of Moslems of Tarsus to raid Byzantine Anatolia.

**Autumn** German King Otto I invades Lombardy to assist Lothar II's widow Adelaide, who he marries; he sends envoys to Pope Agapitus for Imperial Crown but Alberic forces him to refuse it.

## 952 **Armenia**

Death of King Abas; succeeded by son Ashot III.

## **Italy**

Fatimids raid Calabria again.

## 953 **Byzantium**

Saif ad-Daula raids around Melitene; Bardas Phocas, currently fighting in Mesopotamia to South, marches to intercept him and is defeated at Germanicea; son Constantine Phocas prisoner.

Death of St. Luke of Stiris, leading ascetic of religious revival in central Greece.

? A leading Magyar Chieftain, Gyula, is baptised at Constantinople and returns to Hungary with missionary bishop Hierotheus.

## **Byzantium/North Africa**

Al-Mu'izz succeeds father Ismail as Fatimid Caliph; Byzantine peace-mission to him leads to prisoner-exchange but no agreement over claims to Calabria.

## 954 **Byzantium**

Start of monastic career of (St.) Athanasius, 'Founder' of Mount Athos as major monastic centre; a wealthy orphaned Trapezuntine now teaching at theological school in Constantinople, he leaves his students to enter strict monastery run by (St.) Michael Maleinus (relative of Phocae) on Mount Kyrminos, Bithynia.

Byzantine embassy to Saif ad-Daula for exchange of prisoners.

Patriarch Theophylact made invalid by carriage-accident.

## Italy

**31 August** Death of ‘patrician’ Alberic II of Rome, having made nobility and clergy swear to elect his bastard son Octavian as next Pope; Octavian succeeds to temporal power in city.

## Georgia

Ashot II of Iberia succeeded by brother Sembāt.

## 955 Byzantium

Bardas Phocas dismissed as ‘Domestic of the East’; succeeded by his elder son Nicephorus; younger son Leo succeeds to command of ‘Anatolicon’ theme. Marianus Argyrus, married to Empress Helena’s sister Agatha Lecapena, made ‘strategos’ of Italy.

## Italy

Death of Pope Agapitus II; **16 December** debauched young Octavian, bastard son of Alberic II, elected Pope John XII under father’s arrangements.

## 956 Byzantium

**27 February** Death of Patriarch Theophylact Lecapenus, Constantine’s brother-in-law; **3 April** consecration of successor Polyeuctus, monk from Acte, by Archbishop Basil of Caesarea instead of usual Bishop of Heraclea (incumbent, Nicephorus, in disgrace).

Unexpected second marriage of Prince Romanus to Anastasia (renamed Theophano), the beautiful daughter of innkeeper Craterus (supposedly of ‘Spartan’ descent), after being taken to her father’s inn on accident out riding; the impressionable Romanus II soon under his ambitious wife’s control.

Saif ad-Daula of Aleppo raids into South-Eastern Anatolia and defeats Nicephorus Phocas’s deputy and distant relative John Tzimisce.

## Persia

Conversion of Turkish military leader in Turkestan steppes, Seljuk (ancestor of Seljukid dynasty) to Islam.

## 957 Byzantium

Failure of negotiations for alliance between Byzantium and the Ommayad Emirate of Spain against Fatimids.

Nicephorus Phocas leads Eastern expedition **June** to take and sack Harath.

? Fatimid fleet en route to raid Greece damaged in storm and remnants defeated by Byzantine navy.

Princess-Regent Helga of Kiev visits Byzantine for impressive reception arranged by Constantine VII to impress her with their power and splendour; **9 September** reception by Emperor in great hall of Magnaura Palace, then by Empress Helena and daughters and Theophano; banquet at 'Triclinium' of Justinian II; she is baptised **October?** as 'Olga' and leaves.

## 958 Byzantium

Birth of the 'porphyrogenitus' Basil, later Basil II, Romanus and Theophano's elder son.

Byzantine peace-mission to Fatimid Caliph al-Mu'izz in Tunisia.

Basil the 'paracoemomenus' and Armenian general John Tzimisces take Samosata from Arabs.

(St.) Athanasius leaves monastery on Mount Kyrminos and joins the community ('lavra') of Zygos on Mount Athos under an assumed name to avoid his admirers and live as simple monk; his admirer Nicephorus Phocas gets governor of Thessalonica to check on the Athos monks and his identity is revealed so followers soon start joining him to expand 'Holy Mountain'.

## Georgia

Death of King Sembat of Iberia; succeeded nominally by weak-minded son Bagrat II 'the Simple', but cousin Adarnase, Prince of Tao, co-ruler.

**959 Byzantium**

After an unsuccessful first attempt to poison the Emperor, Theophano may be involved when Constantine VII falls ill and **9 November** dies aged 54 leaving his great work 'De Ceremoniis' uncompleted. Romanus II becomes Emperor aged 21, but he is a pleasure-loving drunkard more interested in sport, than ruling and Theophano is real ruler.

Constantine's ministers replaced and his daughters are sent to convent; Romanus I's son, eunuch 'paracoemomenus' Basil, eunuch Joseph Bringas, and general Nicephorus Phocas and his brother Leo achieve prominence.

**Italy**

Peter Candiano becomes Doge of Venice. Marianus Argyrus 'catepan'.

**960 Byzantium**

**22 April** 2-year-old Prince Basil crowned as co-Emperor.

**Georgia**

George II of Abasgia succeeded by son Leo III.

**Egypt**

Death of Abdul Qasim of Egypt; succeeded by brother Ali, but eunuch Al Misk Kafur remains chief minister.

**Byzantium**

**June/July?** Nicephorus Phocas leads a large fleet from Constantinople to Crete to attempt reconquest; he sends to Mount Athos to ask for the inspirational presence of his holy hermit friend (St) Athanasius, who reluctantly accompanies him in order to pray for Christian victory.

**August** Byzantines disembark on Crete, defeat Arab force in open countryside and advance to besiege the capital, Chandax.

## 961 Byzantium

Chandax is besieged and **March** captured; the 'Emirate' of Crete is ended, the Arabs rounded up and killed or enslaved, and Christian slaves freed; Nicephorus installs Byzantine garrisons and returns to Constantinople for a triumphal entry amidst popular enthusiasm.

**March** Ex-Empress Helena's favourite Basil 'the Bird' arrested for plot to assassinate Romanus in the Hippodrome.

### Italy

**Summer** Otto of Germany campaigns in Lombardy and then sets out for Rome.

## Byzantium

? Birth of Romanus and Theophano's second son Constantine.

Dearth of corn in Constantinople; eunuch chief minister Joseph Bringas imports shiploads of corn and sells them at half-price.

**19 September** Death of Ex-Empress Helena.

Nicephorus returns to Anatolia to launch campaign in Cilicia.

### Persia

Death of Abd-al-Malik, Samanid 'Emir' of Khorasan; succeeded by brother Mansur.

## 962 Byzantium

**January** Nicephorus takes Anazarbus; he retires to Caesarea for Lent.

**30 March** Romanus' second son Constantine co-Emperor.

### Italy

**21 January** Otto enters Rome; **2 February** Pope John XII crowns him as (Holy Roman) 'Emperor' in St. Peter's, and the Romans swear allegiance

to him; **13 February** he extends the Papal state in grant of ‘Ottonian Privilege’.

## Byzantium

Nicephorus campaigns in Cilicia and takes Germanicea/Mar’ash.

## Persia

Alptagin the Turk revolts against Samanids of Khorasan; ruler at Ghazni in southern Afghanistan.

## 961/2 Georgia

Death of Adarnese of Tao, co-ruler of Iberia with his cousin Bagrat ‘the Simple’; succeeded by his son David (later Byzantine ‘curopalatus’).

## Armenia

Ashot III of Armenia’s brother Musele becomes Prince of Kars in creation of new appanage.

## Byzantium/Syria

**December** Nicephorus Phocas storms the city of Aleppo, though the citadel holds out and ‘Emir’ Saif ad-Daula escapes.

## 963 Byzantium

**Early March** Birth of Romanus and Theophano’s daughter Anna; the Emperor suffers sudden illness after over-exertion on a ride, though some later claimed poison, and **15 March** dies suddenly aged 25.

Theophano regent for 5-year-old Basil II and 2-year-old Constantine VIII but uneasy relations with the ambitious chief minister Bringas and his ally ‘Domestic of the Scholae’ (guard-commander) Marianus Argyrus; Nicephorus Phocas visits Constantinople and Theophano plans alliance



with him, but Bringas discovers it and tries to arrest him; he seeks sanctuary at Hagia Sophia with Polyeuctus and flees capital to return to Eastern command.

**July** Troops at Caesarea proclaim Nicephorus as Emperor; following his arrangements with Theophano, he advances to Chrysopolis, and Bringas tries to arrest his partisans in the capital but Nicephorus' father Bardas Phocas eludes capture and goes to Hagia Sophia; rebellion breaks out in capital and street-fighting follows with military record of Phocae cited against the civilian Bringas; **14 August** as Nicephorus lands at Hebdoman, Romanus I's eunuch son, the 'paracoemomenus' ('Great Chamberlain). Basil, distinguishes himself on the rebel side and Marianus Argyrus is killed, Bringas' palace is sacked and he flees, and Bardas Phocas occupies the 'Sacred Palace'.

Nicephorus processes into capital through the 'Golden Gate' and **16 August** is crowned Emperor, swearing to protect the rights of the young Emperors; Bringas is exiled; Theophano is temporarily expelled from Palace but soon recalled and **?20 September** marries Nicephorus. Nicephorus' old friend (St.) Athanasius visits capital to protest at the marriage, and Polyeuctus finds out too late that Nicephorus is godfather to one of junior emperors so marriage 'illegal'.

Bardas Phocas appointed 'Caesar'; Nicephorus' brother Leo 'curopalatus'; general John Tzimisces 'Domestic of the Scholae' and prepares new Syrian campaign. **Autumn** Aleppan raiders reach Iconium.

## Italy

**1 November** Otto returns to Rome, and John XII flees with treasure to Tivoli; Otto holds Synod at St. Peter's to try and depose him, makes Romans swear never to elect Pope without his consent, and **4 December** has a hastily-consecrated lay official elected Pope Leo VIII.

## 964 Italy

**3 January** Otto has to put down revolt at Rome in favour of John XII; **February** after Otto's departure with army populace restores John and Leo flees to Otto's court; John restored but **14 May** dies and Romans elect reforming deacon Benedict V, **22 May** after appeal to Otto to allow his election is ignored; Otto besieges Rome, and **23 June** after surrender

Otto and restored Leo VIII hold synod in Lateran and depose and exile Benedict.

Nicephorus' nephew Manuel killed invading Sicily despite taking Syracuse.

## Byzantium

**May** Nicephorus issues 'Chrysobull' granting privileges to Mount Athos.

Nicephorus' Armenian general John Tzimisces wins battle of the 'Field of Blood' near Tarsus; Nicephorus brings out Theophano and reinforcements and Adana is occupied as garrison and citizen flee; Saif ad-Daula abandons Aleppo to try and get aid from Mesopotamia.

Nicetas Chalcutzes retakes Cyprus.

## 965 Byzantium

Nicephorus invades Cilicia.

## Russia

Prince Svyatoslav destroys the Khazar Empire; Pechenegs succeed as major steppes power controlling the lands between Black Sea and Russia.

## Italy

**1 March** Death of Pope Leo VIII; Romans vainly try to get Otto to restore Benedict V.

## Byzantium

Nicephorus takes Mamistra; **July** he takes Mopsuestia; **16 August** Tarsus surrenders on humane terms; Egyptian fleet arrives but is destroyed; meanwhile Saif ad-Daula regains control of Aleppo and opens negotiations with Nicephorus for exchange of prisoners.

**October** Rometta, last Byzantine inland town in Sicily, falls.

Themes of Tarsus and Mopsuestia created in Cilicia.

## Italy

**1 October** John XIII, formerly Bishop of Narnia, elected Pope with agreement of Otto's representatives; resented as high-handed and German nominee and **December** imprisoned in revolt, then flees to Campania.

## 966 Egypt

Death of 'Emir' Ali; eunuch chief minister, Al Misk Kafur, usurps throne from young son Ahmed.

## Byzantium

Nicephorus crosses the Bulgarian frontier, the 'Great Fence', and takes frontier districts; Czar Peter opens negotiations and surrenders, sending his sons Boris and Romanus to Constantinople as hostages, but Nicephorus is not convinced that the peace will be lasting and devises the idea of inducing the Russians to attack Bulgarians in the rear; he sends the governor of Cherson, Calocyras, with 1500lbs of gold to Kiev to induce Prince Svyatoslav to invade Bulgaria.

**Summer** Nicephorus crosses the Eastern frontier to invade Syria again; he takes Dara and Nisibis in the mountainous area East of Euphrates.

? Famine spreads from Syria to Anatolia. **October** Nicephorus acquires another 'Mandelion', in this case image imprinted on a brick, from besieged Hierapolis in Syria.

? Nicephorus annexes Armenian lands of Tarawn at request of rulers.

## Italy

**14 November** Rome surrenders to Pope John XIII; **December** Otto arrives on visit.

## 967 Syria

**February** Saif al-Daula dies defeated at Aleppo; succeeded by son Sa'd ad-Daula.

## Byzantium

**Easter** Sailors and dockers at Constantinople riot and fight the ‘Hetairoi’ guardsmen; **Ascension Day** a mob, discontented with high prices during famine and regarding government as niggardly, stones Nicephorus during procession.

**June** Nicephorus visits the Bulgarian frontier, crosses it to demonstrate military might, and accuses Czar Peter of encouraging Magyar raids; he is probably aware of impending Russian attack.

**August** Svyatoslav, governor Calocyras, and 16,000 Russians cross Danube to invade Bulgaria near the delta; they defeat waiting Bulgarians on the bank and conquer Dristra and Little Preslav; Svyatoslav declares Little Preslav his new capital; Nicephorus now has to face Russians as a greater threat than Bulgarians.

Nicephorus issues ‘Novel’ against landowners purchasing peasants’ estates: intended to preserve traditional ability of landed peasants to furnish soldiers for army.

## Persia

Death of Muizz al-Daula, the Buwayhid ruler of Mesopotamia; succeeded by weak homosexual son Bakhtiyar, whose lands are coveted by his cousin Adud ad-Daula of Fars (son of Rukn al-Daula of Rayy).

## 968 Byzantium/Bulgaria

Nicephorus plans a major campaign aimed at Antioch and quarrels with Patriarch Polyeuctus, who rejects his proposal that Byzantines killed in battle against Moslems be granted status of ‘martyrs’; Czar Peter has a fit and his army are immobilized so Russian advance continues, but Bulgarian representatives bribe Pecheneg nomads to attack Kiev so Svyatoslav has to hasten home to relieve his capital;? Russian forces still retain control of Dristra and the Danube crossing.

Byzantines annex Tarawn/Taron from Armenia.

**Summer** Peter sends envoys to Byzantium for help; meanwhile Otto I sends Bishop Liutprand of Cremona to Constantinople to arrange marriage between his son Otto and Byzantine princess; **June** Liutprand arrives to be kept in isolation at poorly-furnished Marble Palace for weeks as sign of

Nicephorus' disdain for German ruler, and is belatedly received by Nicephorus' brother Leo coolly; according to Liutprand, at imperial audience Nicephorus treats him with contempt and calls Otto a barbarian whose ancestors lived in swamps; the marriage-proposal is refused, and when Liutprand is allowed to leave his goods are searched by Byzantine customs-men and presents confiscated.

Nicephorus fortifies Cherson against Russian attack; 'patrician' Nicholas Eroticus and Philotheus, Bishop of Euchaita, sent to Peter to negotiate alliance; 2 Bulgar princesses are sent to Constantinople to marry 'co-emperors' Basil II and Constantine VIII.

Calocyras inspires Svyatoslav to overrun all of Bulgaria and then attack Byzantium, but illness of Svyatoslav's mother Olga/Helga and Pecheneg campaign delays the attack.

## Byzantium

**October** Nicephorus returns to Asla Minor, invades Upper Mesopotamia, East of Euphrates, and then raids Syria into Lebanon, bypassing fortified cities of Antioch and Aleppo; he reaches Homs/Emesa, where head of St. John the Baptist is surrendered, and returns to Cilicia, ravaging the coast en route.

## Egypt

Death of Al Misk Kafur, ruler of Egypt; 'Ikshid' dynasty restored in the person of 11-year-old Ahmed, son of late ruler Ali.

## 969 Byzantium/Bulgaria

**30 January** Death of Czar Peter of Bulgaria; his son Boris and Romanus are sent home and Boris becomes Czar.

Nicephorus returns to his capital, leaving lieutenants Michael Burtzes and 'stratopedarch' Peter Phocas to maintain pressure on Antioch and Aleppo.

## Russia

**Summer** Death of Svyatoslav's mother, Olga/Helga (canonized).

## Egypt

Fatimid general Jawhar overruns Egypt, deposing ‘Emir’ Ahmed. **August** he founds new capital at ‘Al-Qahira’ (‘The Victorious’), i.e. Cairo; he advances into Palestine, which spurs the Syrian rulers to consider new treat; Qarghyah, chamberlain to ‘Emir’ Sa’d al-Daula of Aleppo, expels his master and negotiates with Byzantines.

## Russia/Bulgaria

**Autumn** Svyatoslav leads army across the Danube and advances on Preslav; the city is taken and Czar Boris and his family are confined to their palace quarter as Russian nominee rulers while city and Eastern Bulgaria are occupied; the Russians cross mountains into Thrace and storm Philippopolis; where 20,000 people (?) are massacred.

## Byzantium

Death of Bardas Phocas, Nicephorus’s father, probably aged c.80.

**28 October** Antioch surrenders to Michael Burtzes and Peter Phocas following the coup in Aleppo; Byzantine rule restored after c. 330 years.

Theophano plots with her new lover, ambitious Armenian general John Tzimisce, against Nicephorus; Nicephorus takes up residence in secure Boucoleon Palace next to the Sacred Palace harbour, but **10 December** Theophano smuggles some of plotters into her apartments; that night, in the snow, a pulley lowers basket from Theophano’s window to the sea and Tzimisce and others arrive in boat to be pulled up; the conspirators enter Emperor’s bedchamber, which Theophano asked him to leave unlocked, and after panic on finding bed empty discover him sleeping like hermit on floor and attack him; he is mortally wounded, dragged before Tzimisce and abused, and finished off, aged ?56; his head is waved out of window to advancing guards; **11 December** Tzimisce acclaimed as Emperor John I, but Patriarch forces him to banish Theophano before he allows entry to Hagia Sophia;; Leo Phocas and elder son Nicephorus sent to Princes’ Islands; **December** Aleppo surrenders and pays tribute to Byzantium.

## 970 Byzantium

Death of Patriarch Poyeuctus, succeeded by Basil ‘Scamandrenus’ (from the Troad).

Petition to Tzimisces by the independent-minded monks and hermits of Mount Athos, led by 'Protos' of the 'Skete', against claims of authority by the 'Great Lavra', leading monastery; Studius Monastery monk Euthymios sent to investigate, holds a council, and backs up the 'Lavra's case which (St.) Athanasius presents.

**Summer** Svyatoslav invades Eastern Bulgaria across Danube, but is defeated by Tzimisces' brother-in-law Bardas Sclerus as he invades Thrace at Arcadiopolis and retires to Danube plain; Tzimisces gathers troops to retake the area.

**Autumn** Revolt of Nicephorus II's nephew Bardas Phocas at Amasea in Pontus, citing Tzimisces' regicide.

**November** Tzimisces marries Romanus II's sister Theodora to legitimize his dynastic position.

## 971 **Byzantium**

John Tzimisces assembles forces at Rhaedestus on the Propontis, and allows Russian envoys to go free when they turn out to be spies; **Holy Week** he crosses the mountains from Hebrus valley into Danube plain, while fleet sails up the Black Sea and into Danube.

Svyatoslav defends headquarters at Dristra on Danube, while Calocyras and Svergel defend Great Preslav; **4 April** Calocyras breaks out of Great Preslav after defeat outside walls, but Byzantine reinforcements arrive and strict siege ensues; **13 April** the walls stormed and the city falls, but Russians and Bulgarian royal family hold out in the royal quarter until a fire breaks out and the Byzantines storm the buildings; Svergel escapes to Dristra but royal family are captured and treated with honour, albeit as 'princes'; John renames the city 'Ioannopolis' and sends royal family and crown jewels to Constantinople, but Svyatoslav refuses to surrender and decapitates hostages.

**23 April** Russians defeated outside Dristra, which is besieged by land and river; Svergel is killed, Russian sortie defeated, and Svyatoslav decides to break out; **24 July** Russians attempt to break out but are lured out with Byzantine 'feigned retreat' and routed, supposedly with help of vision of St. Theodore; Svyatoslav opens negotiations and offers to swear oath never to attack Byzantium in return for safe passage home; Tzimisces agrees, and Svyatoslav meets him to swear oath before departing.

Eastern Bulgaria overrun and garrisoned, but the four sons of Shishman, led by Samuel and Aaron, lead Bulgarian resistance in Macedonian mountains.

Basil the 'paracoemomenus' suppresses plot by Phocae in Constantinople; Leo Phocas blinded.

Fatimid forces besiege Antioch for 5 months; city relieved by 'strategus' of Mesopotamia and 'patrician' Nicholas.

**Autumn?** Tzimisces celebrates triumph in Constantinople; ex-king Boris 'Magister'. Bardas Sclerus defeats Bardas Phocas, who is captured and deported to Chios.

Byzantine/German negotiations for a wife for Otto I's son Otto; Tzimisces chooses his own niece Theophano, not higher-ranking 'Macedonian' princess.

## 972 Byzantium

Tzimisces mounts Eastern campaign; **September–October** he crosses Euphrates near Melitene and besieges Nisibis; **12 October** Nisibis sacked, and garrisoned until 'Emir' Abu Talib/Taghlib the Hamdanid of Mosul agrees to pay tribute; **November** John besieges Mayyafariqin and then returns to Constantinople.

Melias commands army remaining in the East.

## Russia

Svyatoslav killed in Pecheneg ambush at the Dniepr rapids en route back to Kiev; succeeded by sons – Iaropolk in Kiev, Oleg in Drevliana, Vladimir in Novgorod.

## Hungary

Death of King Taksóny, succeeded by son Géza I.

## Italy

**14 April** John Tzimisces' niece Theophano marries Otto 'the Great's' son Otto in Rome; Byzantine–German alliance sealed, but is soon strained as with Otto's support Pope John XIII raises Benevento and Capua to archbishoprics that can claim allegiance of towns in Byzantine dominions; Patriarchate of Constantinople makes Taranto an archbishopric in reply.



## **Egypt**

**July** Caliph Al-Mu'izz enters Cairo in triumph to set up residence there; base of Fatimid power shifted to Egypt and Shi'a festivals introduced.

## **Armenia**

Ashot-Isaac succeeds father Harmazasp in Vaspurakan.

## **973 Byzantium**

Melias marches on Amida, but is opposed by Abu Taghlib of Mosul's brother Hibat Allah; **4 July** he is defeated and captured near Amida and Tzimisce leaves Constantinople to campaign on Eastern frontier; Tzimisce seeks assistance from Armenians but they fear his expansionist intentions.

## **Italy**

**19 January** Benedict VI elected Pope.

**7 July** Death of Otto I; succeeded by 18-year-old son Otto II, married to Tzimisce's niece.

## **Byzantium**

**Autumn** As Tzimisce's army approaches, Armenian princes hold rally in Harq district; Byzantine envoys reassure them and representatives join Tzimisce in Constantinople.

## **974 Byzantium**

**March** Death of the imprisoned Melias of battle-injuries; John Tzimisce goes to North-East Anatolia to gain Armenian assistance and then invades Mesopotamia; Amida and Mayyafariqin pay ransoms to avoid capture and Tzimisce ravages the open countryside across into the Tigris valley; he descends into the Mesopotamian plains, the furthest Byzantine penetration since 630s, and threatens Mosul but hears of Fatimid advance to Beirut.

Death of Patriarch Basil; succeeded by Anthony III.

## Italy

**June** Pope Benedict VI arrested and imprisoned in Castel St. Angelo by Consul Crescentius' faction; he is tried and deposed and deacon Franco made Pope Boniface VII; **July** Otto's envoy Count Sicco of Spoleto arrives to demand Benedict's release, but he is murdered; revolt in city aided by Sicco, and Boniface flees to Byzantine Southern Italy.

## Abbasid Caliphate

**5 August** Caliph Al-Muti deposed by chief minister/general Sabuktigin; succeeded by son Al-Tai.

Abu Talib/Taghlib of Mosul, Hamdanid, outwits Bakhtiyar.

## Byzantium/Syria

Late Summer As Fatimids advance to Tripoli, Tzimisces abandons campaign and returns to Constantinople to plan expedition to Syria as more important than Mesopotamia.

**September** Tzimisces' first law restricting size of landed estates; meanwhile Bakhtiyar the Buwayhid installs general Sabuktigin in Baghdad and tries to conquer Mosul.

## Italy

**October** Pro-German faction in Rome, under Sicco's patronage, elects Bishop of Sutri as Pope Benedict VII.

## 975 Georgia

King Bagrat 'the Simple''s son Gurgen becomes co-ruler of Iberia with him (and effectively with cousin Prince David of Tao).

## Byzantium

Tzimisces returns to Antioch and **April** sets out for Syrian campaign; he enters Homs/Emesa under terms of 969 treaty of alliance and is honoured;

he reaches Baalbek, where Fatimid governor, Turkish general Alptigin of Damascus does homage; he marches into Palestine as first Byzantine since 638, takes Tiberias, enters Nazareth, and receives envoys from Jerusalem, on Mount Tabor; he descends to coast, takes Caesarea, and marches up Lebanese coast, taking Sidon, Beirut, and Byblos, but Tripoli resists siege; he goes inland to take Syrian fortresses including Kulayb.

**September** Tzimisces returns to Antioch and thence to Constantinople.

**September** Tzimisces' second law restricting size of landed estates.

## Syria

Damascus revolts against Fatimid authority, led by Turkish commander Alpatigin with his Turkish mercenaries.

Fatimids escort annual pilgrimage to Mecca, and thus claim its patronage.

## Italy

**October** Benedict VII elected Pope under German Imperial auspices, but ex-Pope Boniface holds out in Southern Italy with Byzantine encouragement.

## Egypt

**December** Al-Aziz succeeds his father Al-Mu'izz as Fatimid Caliph; chief minister is Jewish financier Yakub ibn Kiilis.

## 976 Byzantium

**10 January** Death of John Tzimisces, possibly of poison administered by Basil the 'paracoemomenus', aged ?50; 18-year-old Basil II and 15-year-old Constantine VIII sole rulers, but due to their age and laziness Basil the 'paracoemomenus' retains control of government and amasses a fortune.

Bardas Sclerus removed as 'Domestic of East' and sent to Mesopotamia and lieutenant Burtzes 'duke' of Antioch; Peter Phocas 'Domestic of East'.

Revolt of Samuel and Aaron, the surviving sons of Shishman, against Byzantine rule in West Bulgarian mountains; they are highly successful,

and princes Boris and Romanus flee Constantinople secretly to join them; Boris killed when runs into rebels who think he is spy, but Romanus identifies himself; however Romanus, a eunuch, claimed to be invalidated for throne and Samuel continues to lead rebels.

Bardas Sclerus revolts and defeats loyalists at Lycandrus in the Pyramus valley; **Autumn** with Burtzes' help he invades Cappadocia.

## Italy

**August** Peter Orseolo succeeds Peter Candiano as Doge of Venice.

## Syria

Caliph Al-Aziz sends general Jawhar against Alptigin of Damascus; he is defeated and besieged in Ascalon.

## Russia

Prince Iaropolk of Kiev murders brother Oleg and annexes Drevliana; brother Vladimir of Novgorod flees to Scandinavia, returns with mercenaries and takes Polotsk, killing Prince Rogvolod of Polotsk and marrying daughter; war between Vladimir and Iaropolk.

## 977 Byzantium

**Spring** Leo the 'protospatharius' takes imperial army to Cotyaeum and tries to bribe rebels.

**Autumn** Sclerus defeats and kills Peter Phocas and captures Leo at Rhageas, East of Caesarea; most of Anatolian troops desert to him and he marches West.

## Persia

Death of Mansur, Samanid 'Emir' of Khorasan; succeeded by son Núh.

Death of Rukn-al-Daula of Rayy; his sons Mu'ayyid al-Daula and Fakr al-Daula jointly rule dominions.

## **Byzantium/Syria**

Sa'd al-Daula returns to Aleppo and refuses tribute to Byzantium; Fatimid general Jawhar accepts the unofficial independence of Alptigin of Damascus and his Turkish mercenary garrison.

## **Russia**

Vladimir has Iaropolk murdered during peace-negotiations and becomes sole ruler of Russia, ruling from Kiev.

## **Armenia**

Death of Ashot III; succeeded by son Sembat II, 'the Conqueror', who mounts offensive against Arabs.

## **978 Byzantium**

**Early** Sclerus besieges Manuel Comnenus (ancestor of later imperial dynasty) in Nicaea, forces him to flee and takes city; Basil II recalls Bardas Phocas, who returns from Chios, swears oath of loyalty, and is sent to Eastern Anatolia armies' base at Caesarea in Sclerus' rear. He persuades Eustathius Maleinus and Burtzes to desert Sclerus and makes them his lieutenants, then advances on rebels who withdraw from Bithynia to intercept him; **19 June** Phocas defeated at Pancalia near Amorium; he retreats to the Halys valley, and **Autumn** is defeated again at Basilica Therma; he flees to Iberia, where David, prince of Tao, gives him troops and general Tornicius for new campaign.

?Birth of co-ruler Constantine's first daughter, Eudocia.

## **Egypt**

**August** Fatimid army reconquers Damascus.

## **Syria**

Adud ad-Daula takes Baghdad, deposes and kills his cousin Bakhtiyar, and annexes Mesopotamia.

## Italy

**September** Death of Doge Peter I Orseolo; succeeded by Vitale Candiano.

## 978/9 Georgia

Bagrat, son of co-ruler Gurgen of Iberia, succeeds his mother's brother Theodosius as King of Abasgia; effective union of Abasgia with Iberia (later 'Georgia') secured.

## 979 Byzantium

Phocas enters the empire from Iberia with new forces advances through Pontus to Halys valley and **24 March** at 'Aqua Saravenae' defeats Sclerus who is stunned during battle so troops think him dead and flee; Sclerus flees with a few loyalists to Abu Taghlib, who cannot help him, and thence to Baghdad where Caliph Al-Tai interns him.

Bardas Phocas is made 'Domestic of the East' and supreme military commander of Empire, Nicephorus Uranius sent to Baghdad in unsuccessful attempt to get Sclerus extradited.

?Birth of co-ruler Constantine VIII's second daughter, Zoe, later Empress.

## Persia

Adud ad-Daula takes Mosul and deposes Abu Taghlib.

## Italy

**Summer** Ex-Pope Boniface, supported by Byzantium, briefly drives Benedict VII out of Rome.

**October** Death of Doge Vitale Candiano of Venice, **December** Tribunio Meno Doge.

## 980 Byzantium

Cecaumenus 'strategus' of Hellas refuses to pay tribute to Samuel like his predecessor did, so Samuel invades Thessaly, ravages crops, and besieges capital, Larissa.

?Birth of co-emperor Constantine VIII's third daughter Theodora, later Empress.

Foundation of Iveron monastery, Mount Athos, by general Tomicius for fellow-Georgians.

## 981 **Syria**

Adud al-Daula expels his brother Fakr al-Daula of Rayy, installing more compliant brother Mu'ayyid al-Daula.

### **Byzantium**

**Autumn** Bardas Phocas raids around Aleppo, and forces S'ad al-Daula to pay tribute.

### **Italy**

**Spring** Otto II marches into Italy for prolonged stay; he reasserts German power in Southern Italy, and organizes establishment of Archbishopric of Salerno as independent of Byzantine Bari.

## 982 **Italy**

Emir Al-Qasim of Sicily defeats Otto II's army in battle near Stilo in Calabria; he is trapped on nearby seashore and has to swim to Byzantine ship to escape, and his health deteriorates hastening end of campaign.

## 983 **Persia**

**April** Death of Adud-ad-Daula of Baghdad and Fars; succeeded by sons, Samsam ad-Daula to Baghdad and Sharaf al-Daula to Fars.

### **Byzantium**

Cecaumenus is recalled and succeeded by a more determined 'strategus' of Hellas to resist Samuel.

Bardas Phocas drives Fatimids off Aleppo and sacks Homs for not paying tribute.

## Italy

**10 July** Death of Pope Benedict VII; **December** Peter Canepanova, Bishop of Pavia, elected as Otto II's candidate and takes title of John XIV.

## Armenia

Gurgen-Zagik succeeds father Ashot-Isaac in Vaspurakan.

## Italy

**7 December** Death of Otto II at Rome from malaria; Empress-mother Theophano regent for 2-year-old son Otto III, and takes court back to Germany.

## 984 Byzantium

Samuel invades Thessaly and ravages the crops.

## Italy

**April** Boniface VII, supplied with Byzantine funds, returns to Rome; 'patrician' John Crescentius deposes and imprisons Pope John XIV and restores him; **20 August** Death of John XIV.

## Armenia

Death of Prince Musele of Kars, uncle to King Sembat of Armenia; succeeded by son Abas.

## 985 Italy

**July** 'Pope' Boniface VII dies; **August** John Crescentius organizes election of his candidate as Pope John XV.



**Byzantium**

Comet visible; the poet John Geometrus writes ode *To the Cometopoulos* (i.e. Samuel), calling on Nicephorus II to return to save Byzantium from Bulgarians; Samuel and his brothers may have taken nickname of 'Sons of the Comet' (Cometopouloi) from this comet.

Basil accuses the 'paracoemomenus' Basil of plotting to depose him, exiles him and seizes his enormous wealth; he becomes principal figure in government for first time.

Distrustful Basil removes Bardas Phocas as 'duke' of Antioch, replaced by Leo Melissenus; Fatimids temporarily take Balanae.

**986 Byzantium**

Samuel invades Thessaly and captures capital Larissa; Basil gathers troops and marches up Maritsa valley towards Sofia which has been captured by Aaron and Romanus; **July** he besieges Sofia; after 20 days he has to withdraw, but during the march through passes back towards Maritsa his general Contostephanus warns of treachery by colleague Leo Melissenus, further ahead; Basil speeds up retreat and **Tuesday 17 August** Byzantines are ambushed while strung out in a narrow defile at 'Trojan's Gate'; they are routed, many killed, baggage captured and Basil ignominiously flees.

Basil reaches Philippopolis, but cannot resist Samuel's march Eastwards to recapture Bulgarian capital, Preslav, and overrun the territories in East Bulgaria that John Tzimisces reconquered.

**December** Caliph Al-Tai releases Bardas Sclerus from captivity in Baghdad and sends him with troops to invade Empire.

**987 Persia**

Sharaf al-Daula conquers Baghdad and deposes and blinds Samsam al-Daula.

**Byzantium**

Bardas Sclerus marches into East Anatolia, **February** enters Melitene and heads for Constantinople; **April** Bardas Phocas 'Domestic of East', comes to meet him on pretence of assisting him, then arrests him and wins over his army to back his own rebellion; Sclerus is left in custody of Phocas' wife;

Phocas proclaims himself Emperor **14 September** and marches triumphantly Westwards with most of forces in Anatolia deserting to him through his reputation as Nicephorus II's nephew; the rebels reach Chrysopolis but cannot cross due to imperial fleet. ?Cherson revolts in favour of Phocas. **Autumn?** Basil sends envoys to Prince Vladimir of Kiev, promising the hand of his sister Anna in return for military support and his conversion to Christianity.

## 988 Byzantium

Vladimir sends 6000 mercenaries to Constantinople, the core of later 'Varangian Guard'; Taronites the 'Magister' is sent to rear of rebels in Pontus, but is defeated by Phocas's son Nicephorus and Georgian troops sent after Phocas allied with David, ruler of Tao.

(**Summer or early 989**) Basil crosses the Bosphorus with new army, particularly Russians, and defeats Bardas at battle of Chrysopolis; rebels retire into Bithynia.

?Samuel takes Dyrrachium in campaign in North Epirus.

## 989 Armenia

Death of Sembat II 'the Conqueror'; succeeded by son Gagik.

## Byzantium

**7 April** Display of 'Aurora Borealis' over Constantinople, taken as omen; **13 April** Basil defeats Bardas Phocas in battle at Abydos, as the rebel falls dead from his horse during the battle; Phocas's sons Leo and Nicephorus flee Eastwards, and Phocas' widow liberates Bardas Sclerus who proclaims himself Emperor again and is joined by his ex-rival's sons.

Bulgarians take Berroea (Veria) in Macedonia.

Vladimir of Russia invades the Crimea and takes Cherson; Anna is escorted to Cherson and married to Vladimir, who in return hands back the city and accepts baptism; Vladimir and Anna go to Kiev.

Constantine VIII unusually asserts himself, to insist that Basil negotiate with Sclerus not fight another war; Basil sends his general Manuel Comnenus (ancestor of later ruling dynasty) to Sclerus, who submits on easy terms and

**11 October** publicly abdicates; Sclerus comes to Basil to surrender and is sent to estate at Didymoteichon, Thrace.

## 990 **Syria**

Abu'l-Ali ibn Marwan establishes 'Marwanid' dynasty in Diyarbakr on Byzantium's South-East frontier, ruling Amida and Mayyafariqin.

## **Byzantium/Georgia**

Basil makes peace with David of Tao, who is allowed to keep the lands given him by Bardas Phocas for his lifetime and becomes formally recognized co-ruler of Iberia with his cousin Bagrat II; David 'curopalatus'.

## **Persia**

Death of Buwayid 'Emir' Sharaf al-Daula of Baghdad and Fars; brother Baha al-Daula succeeds to Baghdad and brother Sansam al-Daula to Fars.

## 991 **Byzantium**

Death of Patriarch Nicholas II, Basil keeps office vacant.

## **Armenia**

Schism between rival 'Catholicos' candidates ended with establishment of one see at Ani by Bishop Khatsik (973–92)

Death of Sa'd al-Daula of Aleppo; succeeded by son Sa'id al-Daula.

## **Byzantium**

Basil meets Bardas Sclerus at Didymoteichon, and goes on to invade Bulgaria; **7 March** death of Sclerus. Basil starts annual campaigns to wear down Bulgarians.

## Abbasid Caliphate/Persia

**1 October** Caliph Al-Tai deposed by Buwayhid 'Emir' Baha al-Daula of Baghdad; succeeded by cousin Al-Qadir, son of Al-Muttaqi (dep.944).

## Italy

Death of Empress-Mother and regent Theophano of Germany, niece of John Tzimisce.

Peter Orseolo becomes Doge of Venice; an ambitious ruler, determined to establish dynasty in defiance of oligarchic tradition of city.

## 992 Georgia

'Curopalatus' David of Tao takes Manzikert from Byzantium.

## Byzantium

Basil campaigns in Bulgaria; new Byzantine/Venice treaty gives the latter new privileges. Basil sends troops against Sclerus' Marwanid allies in South Armenia.

## Persia

Qaraqanid Turkish nomads invade Samanid realm and take capital, Bukhara.

## 993 Byzantium

Basil campaigns in Bulgaria, allies with Serbs of Dioclea, and retakes Berroea.

## 994 Byzantium/Syria

Basil campaign in Bulgaria; on his instructions Burtzes, governor of Antioch, marches to relieve Fatimid siege of Aleppo but is too slow at advancing and is caught by surprise by rapid advance of Fatimid general Manjutakin;

**15 September** the Fatimids cross River Orontes to rout Byzantine army, and Burtzes flees back to Antioch; Aleppo is besieged.

## Georgia

Death of Bagrat II of Iberia; his son Gurgen, father of King Bagrat of Abasgia, succeeds to throne as co-ruler with cousin, 'Curopalatus' David of Tao, and takes title of 'King of Kings'.

Emir Sa'id al-Daula appeals to Basil for aid.

## Italy

John Philagethus, Greek Calabrian Bishop of Piacenza and Otto III's former tutor, sent to Constantinople by Otto to propose that Otto marries Basil's brother, Constantine (VIII)'s second daughter Zoe.

## 995 Byzantium

Basil crosses the Empire in forced march of 26 days and **late April** arrives at Antioch with 17,000 men; Manjutakin abandons the siege of Aleppo and retires to Damascus; Basil receives the thanks of Sa'id al-Daula, marches up the Orontes, sacks Emesa/Homs, and raids through Syria as far as Tripoli to overawe the Moslems. Basil garrisons Tortosa, returns to Antioch to install Damianus Dalassenus as governor with orders to annually raid Moslem territory, and on receiving bad news from Bulgaria sets off for Constantinople; en route he is alarmed at the wealth and power of great Anatolian landowners through whose estates he passes, e.g. Eustathius Maleinus, and their threat both to imperial power and to existence of class of small peasant-farmers as backbone of army.

Samuel besieges Thessalonica while Basil is in the East; commander Gregory of Taron's son captured in sortie and Gregory killed attempting rescue.

## Italy

**Spring** Pope John XV flees Rome due to Crescentii family; appeals to Otto.

## Byzantium

Samuel raids from Thessaly through Bocotia and Attica as far as the Isthmus of Corinth, as 'strategus' Apocaucus of Peloponnese fails to respond.

Basil replaces the Patriarch of Antioch.

## 996 Byzantium/Egypt

Damianus, duke of Antioch, defeats Fatimid siege of Antaradus.

## Egypt

Death of Fatimid Caliph Al-Aziz; succeeded by eccentric and increasingly despotic 15-year-old son Al-Hakim, who develops highly unorthodox and egocentric religious views.

## Persia

Bedouin chieftain, Al-Muqallad the Uqaylid, takes Mosul from Buwayhids.

## Byzantium

**January** Basil issues major land-law: all estates collected in past 75 years to be broken up and re-distributed, and similarly for all Crown lands alienated (i.e. to nobility) in past 1000 years – intended to restore class of independent peasant proprietors and aid citizen-army. Maleinus is arrested and all property seized, Philocales the 'protovestiarus' made a peasant and great families like Phocas and Musele humbled.

Basil's physician Sisinnius appointed Patriarch of Constantinople.

**Autumn** Basil sends Nicephorus Uranius to Thessalonica to raise troops for Greece.

## Italy

**March** Death of Pope John XV; Otto arrives at Rome too late to help him but **3 May** makes his cousin Bruno of Corinthia Pope Gregory V; **21 May**

Gregory crowns Otto; **October** in Otto's absence, back in Germany, aristocratic leader Crescentius leads revolt and Gregory driven out; **November** John Philagethus and Byzantine envoy, Bishop Leo of Synnada arrive in Italy en route to Otto concerning marriage.

## 997 **Italy**

**February** While exiled Gregory V holds synod at Pavia, John Philagathos goes to Rome with Basil's support and is elected Pope John XVI aided by Crescentius; Byzantine ambassador Bishop Leo writes confidently to Basil of separating Rome from Germany, but Otto prepares invasion to restore Gregory.

## **Byzantium**

Nicephorus Uranius defeats the retreating Bulgarians at River Spercheius near Thermopylae and secures central Greece.

Death of Stephen Drzislav of Serbia; Samuel claims the Bulgarian throne on death of heir Romanus and proclaims himself 'Czar', abandoning allegiance to old royal house of Bulgaria; he opens campaign in North Epirus (Albania) towards the Adriatic.

Anti-Fatimid rebels in Tyre appeal to Basil for help.

## **Hungary**

Death of King Géza; succeeded by son (St.) Stephen, who converts Hungary to Christianity.

## **Persia**

Death of Núh II, Samanid 'Emir' of Persia; succeeded by son Mansur.

## 998 **Persia**

Death of Samsam al-Daula, Buwayhid ruler of Fars; his troops are persuaded to accept rule of brother Baha al-Daula of Baghdad.

## Byzantium

Samuel of Bulgaria captures Dyrrachium, takes the Serb prince John Vladimir of Dioclea prisoner, and campaigns up Dalmatian coast; Basil sends envoys to Doge Peter Orseolo of Venice for assistance; Peter's son John heads mission to Constantinople and Basil promises him a princess and Venice the protectorate of Dalmatia.

Arabs take Apamea (Syria); duke Damianus of Antioch killed besieging it.

Death of Patriarch Sisinnius.

## Georgia

David of Tao defeats the 'Emir' of Azerbaijan.

## Italy

**February** Otto III and army enter Rome and re-install Pope Gregory V as John XVI flees; John is captured, blinded and mutilated, and **May** formally deposed by synod.

## Byzantium/Syria

**July** Basil starts campaign to take fortresses West of Philippopolis; in Syria Arabs relieve siege of Tripoli; Dalassenus is killed attacking Apamea and fleeing troops massacred.

## 999 Byzantium

**Spring** Basil completes conquest of Sardica and fortresses in North Bulgaria, but is called back to Constantinople due to invasion of Syrian territory by Sa'id al-Daula of Aleppo; he sets out for East.

## Italy

**18 February** Death of Pope Gregory XV; Otto III secures election of his tutor Gerard of Aurillac who takes title of Sylvester II in emulation of Constantine I's Pope.



## **Persia**

**16 May** Rebel Turkish chieftain Mahmud of Ghazni (Afghanistan) defeats Samanid 'Emir' Mansur in battle at Merv; seizes South-East Persia to found new 'Ghaznavid' realm.

## **Byzantium**

**September–December** Basil marches from Antioch down the Syrian coast as far as Tripoli, burning Arab lands, but makes no permanent conquests; he retires to winter at Antioch, where Nicephorus Uranius made governor.

## **Byzantium/Bulgaria**

**Autumn** Samuel overruns Dioclea.

## **Persia**

Qaraqanid Turks from Transoxiana steppes invade the Samanid realm South of the Oxus and expel 'Emir' Mansur; they threaten to overrun all Persia.

## **1000 Byzantium/Armenia and Georgia**

Basil's generals Xiphias and Theodorocanus conquer Preslav and the Dobrubja and re-establish Byzantine authority in lower Danube area.

**Easter Day** David of Tao is assassinated; Basil hastens via Melitene to the frontier where a combined Georgian and Armenian army confronts him but agrees to peace after the Varangians defeat Georgian contingent; Basil annexes David's lands of Tao, and confirms the rest of Bagratid (Iberian) lands to current holders, Bagrat of Iberia and Abasgia and his father Gurgen of Iberia; Bagrat made 'curopalatus' like David.

Basil visits Tao and then returns via Theodosiopolis to Constantinople where the visiting Patriarch of Jerusalem is detained.

?The future emperor Romanus Argyrus judges a case in Phrygia involving Bogomil 'Phundagiagitae' heretics.

‘Doge’ Peter Orseolo of Venice leads fleet down Dalmatian coast to assert authority over former Byzantine ports there, now threatened by Samuel of Bulgaria, by agreement with Basil.

? Samuel’s son Gabriel Radomir married to daughter of King Stephen of Hungary as part of alliance.

## Egypt

Caliph Al-Hakim executes his former regent, Barjawan.

## Italy

Emperor Otto III sets up residence in Rome as self-conscious emulator of Roman Emperors, but not popular with citizens.

## 1001 Italy

**January** Otto III hands over the 8 counties of ‘Pentapolis’ to Pope Sylvester to expand Papal states, while making it clear that he does not accept ‘Donation of Constantine’.

**February** Otto is besieged on the Aventine by rioting Romans, and leaves the city to collect a new army; Sylvester accompanies him. Sylvester sends royal crown to King Stephen I of Hungary.

## Byzantium

**June/July** Death of Patriarch Nicholas of Constantinople; succeeded by Sergius II.

10-year truce between Byzantium and Fatimids; Basil invades Bulgaria **Spring**, and takes Berroea and Servia in Macedonia, then marches South into Thessaly; Samuel attempts to retake Servia but is defeated. Ashot of Taron, Samuel’s governor of Dyrrachium, defects.

**Autumn** Basil returns to Constantinople and negotiates with Otto III’s ambassadors; an agreement is reached for marital alliance between Western and Eastern Empires, and Otto is betrothed to co-emperor Constantine VIII’s daughter Zoe (it is not known if Zoe was yet regarded as ultimate

heir to Byzantine throne as elder sister Eudocia disfigured by smallpox and in nunnery).

## **Persia**

Al-Muqallad the Uqaylid, ruler of Mosul, murdered by troops; succeeded by son Qirwash.

Qaraqanid emirate of Turkestan and 'Sultan' Mahmud of Ghazni (Afghanistan) divide up the former Samanid territories in Eastern Persia.

## **Byzantium**

**Autumn/Winter** Archbishop Arnulf of Milan arrives in Constantinople to escort Zoe to Italy to marry Otto III.

## **1002 Italy**

**23 January** Emperor Otto III, en route to Rome with troops, dies of malaria at Palermo; Zoe arrives in Italy to learn of his death at Bari and returns to Constantinople.

Pope Sylvester returns to Rome; Ardoin of Ivrea rules Northern Italy as 'Kings of Italy'.

Venetian fleet sent by Doge Peter Orseolo saves Bari from Moslem pirate attack from Sicily.

## **Byzantium**

Basil marches up the Danube, takes Bulgarian fortresses on the banks, and **March–April** besieges the crucial fortress of Vidin.

Samuel launches attack down the Maritsa valley and **15 August** takes Adrianople by surprise and sacks it; Basil is not deflected and **September** Vidin falls.

Basil marches South and intercepts the returning Bulgarians on the banks of River Vardar near Scupi/Skopje, defeating them and recapturing loot and prisoners; Prince Romanus of Bulgaria, last of the direct royal line, surrenders and is rewarded with title of 'patrician'.

## Syria

Chamberlain Lu'lu leads coup in Aleppo to oust the Hamdanids; 'Emir' Sa'id al-Daula flees to Cairo and goes on to Constantinople in unsuccessful attempt to get Basil's support.

## Persia

Buwayhids install Ibn Ustad-Hummuḡ as governor of Baghdad to restore order after civic disturbances.

### 1003 Byzantium

Basil falls in siege of Pernik, Bulgarian fortress overlooking the Struma Valley; he sacks Scupi/Skopje. Basil orders that landowners make up the loss when neighbours default on taxes.

## Armenia

King Gurgen-Zagik succeeded by brother Sennacherim-John in Vaspurakan.

## Italy

John Crescentius seizes control of Rome as 'patrician' (to 1012) and nominates Popes, commencing with **16 May** John XVII.

### 1004 Byzantium/Italy

Doge Peter Orseolo of Venice sends embassy to Constantinople led by son John; John is married to Basil's cousin Maria Argyra, descendant of Romanus I Lecapenus, and Basil and brother Constantine act as 'groomsmen' at wedding.

### 1005 Byzantium

Czar Samuel of Bulgaria's father-in-law, commander of Dyrrachium, surrenders the city to Byzantine fleet led by Eustathius Daphnomelus; rewarded at Constantinople with rank of 'Magister'.

**1006      Byzantium**

Basil commences yearly invasions of Bulgaria to wear down resistance.

**1007      Byzantium**

Basil invades Bulgaria.

**Italy**

Death of Doge Orseolo of Venice's son John and his wife Maria Argyra.

**1008      Byzantium**

Basil invades Bulgaria.

**Georgia**

Death of King Gurgen II; his son Bagrat, already ruler of Abasgia and Iberia becomes first ruler of united Kingdom of Georgia.

**1008/9    Egypt/Palestine**

Fatimid Caliph Al-Hakim demolishes Church of the Holy Sepulchre in Jerusalem.

**1009      Byzantium**

Basil invades Bulgaria and fights Samuel at Creta.

**Italy**

Lombard prince Melo of Bari rebels against Byzantium.

Death of Doge Orseolo of Venice, succeeded by son Otto.

**1010 Byzantium**

Basil invades Bulgaria.

**Italy**

Basil Argyrus, brother of future emperor Romanus III, appointed 'Catepan'.

**1011 Byzantium**

Basil invades Bulgaria; death of his sister Anna, wife of 'Grand Prince' Vladimir of Russia and possibly mother of Vladimir's youngest sons Boris and Gleb (murdered 1015 and declared martyrs).

**Georgia**

Bagrat III seizes territory of Cholazene from junior Bagratid princes.

**Italy**

**June** Argyrus defeats Lombard revolt and retakes Bari.

**1012 Byzantium**

Basil invades Bulgaria.

**Persia**

Death of Baha al-Daula, Buwayhid ruler of Baghdad; succeeded by son Sultan al-Daula.

**Italy**

**12 May** Death of Pope Sergius IV; **17 May** ruling family of Tusculum organizes election of their Count's son Theophylact as Pope Benedict VIII

in defiance of Sergius' sponsors the Crescentii, who set up rival Pope Gregory (VI); **Summer** Crescentii defeated and Gregory flees to unsuccessfully seek support of Emperor Henry II in Germany.

### 1013 **Byzantium**

Basil campaigns in Bulgaria.

### 1014 **Byzantium**

Basil invades Bulgaria; Samuel sends 20 (?),000 men to block the Rupel Pass, the route from Strumitsa valley into what is left of independent Bulgaria, and a second force under Nestoritsa attacks Thessalonica but is cut to pieces by the governor Theophylact Botaneiates.

Botaneiates advances up the Strumitsa to join Basil at Cimbalongos near the Rupel Pass, and Basil sends Nicephorus Xiphias, 'strategos' of Philippopolis, through the forest of Balathistes to Bulgarian's rear; Samuel escapes to his capital, Prilep, but his army are surrounded and **29 July** slaughtered at their camp in the Pass; allegedly 15,000 prisoners are taken, and Basil has 99 of each 100 blinded and the others left with one eye to guide them back to Samuel.

Bulgarian fortresses hold out and Botaneiates is killed in ambush en route back to Imperial camp from destroying enemy positions on the Via Egnatia; however Samuel has a fit on the mutilated army's arrival at Prilep **4 October** and dies two days later, leaving throne to son Gabriel Radomir.

Basil advances to the Vcherna valley, sacks Bitolia (Monastir) and then retires to camp for winter while army takes Prilep.

### **Georgia**

Death of Bagrat III of Georgia; his son and successor George overruns Tao while Basil is preoccupied in West, claiming back the 'Curopalatus' David's lands for Bagratid dynasty.

### 1015 **Byzantium**

**9 January** Basil arrives at Thessalonica; Bulgarians take Vodena in Macedonia, but Basil fights his way through hostile territory to the town

and garrison returns; back at Thessalonica, Basil receives Gabriel Radomir's envoy 'Chirotinctus' ('one-hand') who offers Bulgarian submission but Basil does not trust him and war continues.

Constantine Diogenes and Nicephorus Xiphias besiege Moglena.

## Russia

Revolt of Prince Yaroslav, governor/prince of Novgorod, against his father Vladimir who prepares for war but dies; Russia divided as Yaroslav rules Novgorod and Kiev as senior prince and his brother Sviatopolk rules Turov, Mstislav rules Chernigov and Tmutorokan (Crimea), Boris Rostov, Gleb Murom and Iziaslav Polotsk; Sviatopolk murders Boris and Gleb (canonized as martyrs) and seizes Kiev from Yaroslav so civil war ensues.

## 1016 Byzantium

**January** Basil sends expedition from the Crimea against Khazars, assisted by Russians; a Khazar ruler is defeated and captured.

Basil arrives at Moglena and diverts a river in order to attack via river-walls; **August** the walls are breached and the town surrenders; town is razed and inhabitants deported to Armenia.

**August** Gabriel Radomir is murdered on an island in Lake Ostrovo by his cousin John Viadislav, son of Samuel's brother Aaron; John Vladislav sends envoy offering submission, but a defecting councillor tells Basil he is only trying to buy time so Basil ravages the Ostrovo area.

Basil takes Ochrid, seat of Bulgarian archbishopric and main urban centre still holding out; John Vladislav kills his suspected vassal, Vladimir of Dioclea.

## Georgia

King George refuses to return his father's held-for-life lands to Basil and raids frontier.

## Italy

Melo, a Lombard lord, meets Norman pilgrims at shrine on Monte Gargano in Apulia and arranges for them to bring recruits from Normandy to aid planned revolt; start of the Norman involvement in Southern Italy.



Contoleon Tornicius succeeds Basil Argyrus as 'Catepan' of Southern Italy; the general Passianus fights drawn battle against Lombard rebels at Arenula, Tornicius defeated in battle at Vaccaritza.

## **Georgia**

Basil sends a force by sea to occupy Black Sea ports around Sochi on North-East shore bordering Bagrat's Abasgian lands.

## **Russia**

Yaroslav retakes Kiev from Sviatopolk.

## **Egypt**

(or 1017) Megalomaniac Caliph Al-Hakim declares the Fatimid dynasty superior in rank in Moslem theological status to the Prophet.

## **1017 Byzantium**

? David Arianites., duke of Thessalonica, takes Strumnitsa. Constantine Dalassenus made 'Strategos' of Thessalonica.

Basil occupies more Bulgarian fortresses in tough campaigning in Pindus Mountains;? he besieges Castoria and rescues Constantine Diogenes' force from a Bulgarian trap.

John Vladislav fails to get Pechenegs to invade the Balkans to divert Basil.

## **Egypt**

Visit of the senior Ismaili theologians Hanza and Daraza (the latter the founder of 'Druze' sect) to Caliph Al-Hakim.

## **1018 Byzantium**

**January** Basil returns to Constantinople; John Vladislav attacks Dyrrachium but is killed in front of the walls and the Bulgarians are left leaderless in decisive blow to resistance.

Basil marches from Adrianople towards Bulgaria and surviving rebel leaders submit in person at Mosynopolis while John Vladislav's widow Maria sues for peace and Archbishop David of Ochrid surrenders at Strumitsa; Basil goes via Scupi/Skopje to **August** Ochrid where Maria comes to surrender and her sons come down from mountains after threat of new campaign.

Basil sends the Bulgarian royal family as honoured captives to Constantinople and marches into Thessaly while his generals receive submission of most of Bulgarians.

Birth of the Byzantine writer, scholar, and statesman Constantine (Michael) Psellus, at Nicomedia.

## Italy

Basil recalls Tornicius and Passianus and sends Basil Boiannes as 'catepan'; Boiannes defeats Melo's Lombard rebels at Cannae (**September**) and founds fortress of Troia.

## Russia

Sviatopolk and his new ally Boleslav of Poland invade and take Kiev but soon quarrel; Yaroslav is able to retake Kiev (**1018/19**) and Sviatopolk flees into exile in Poland where he dies; Yaroslav undisputed 'Grand Prince'.

## 1019 Byzantium

Basil celebrates his Bulgarian triumph at service in the Church of Our Lady in the Parthenon at Athens; the last Bulgarians submit and he reorganizes Bulgaria into three provinces – 'Bulgaria' proper, Sirmium (Upper Danube), and Paristrion (Lower Danube).

**July** Death of Patriarch Sergius II of Constantinople; succeeded by Eustathius.

## Italy

Nicephorus Comnenus appointed 'catepan'.

Death of Emir Ja'far of Sicily.

## 1020 **Armenia**

Death of King Gagik; succeeded by joint rule of his sons, John-Semhat and Ashot IV.

## **Byzantium**

Aleppo seeks Basil's aid against Fatimids.

?Death of St. Athanasius, superior of the expanding monastic community (allegedly already 58 monasteries) on Mount Athos.

## 1021 **Persia**

Death of Sultan-al-Daula, last significant Buwayhid emir of Baghdad.

## **Egypt**

**13 February** Assassination of Caliph Al-Hakim, with his sister Sitt-al-Mulk suspected of implication but his religious views a widespread embarrassment to ministers; 16-year-old son Al-Zahir succeeds under Sitt-al-Mulk's regency; Moslem sect following Al-Hakim's views and regarding him as semi-divine inspiration, 'Druzes', expelled from court and duly coalesce in isolated mountains of South Lebanon.

## **Italy**

**June** Basil Boiannes' army takes Melo's castle on River Garigliano.

## **Byzantium/Armenia/Georgia**

Basil invades Georgia; he reconquers Tao and coastal region of Phasiane (Imeretia) on the Black Sea from George, who fights drawn battle at Lake Palakatzin and later flees into Abasgia.

**Winter** Turkish nomad warriors from the Persian plateau make first serious incursion into the Caucasus, raiding Vaspurakan South-East of Lake Van; King Sennacherim-John cannot cope with the attack and faces Basil's hostility as an ally of King George so he cedes his territory to Basil.

**1022 Byzantium/Armenia/Georgia**

King George is defeated near River Phasis; submits to Byzantium and cedes the frontier territory of Taik and his son as hostage. Basil creates the new 'theme' of Iberia to defend North-East frontier against Turks and Georgians with its capital at Theodosiopolis. Kars becomes Byzantine protectorate. Ex-King Sennacherim-John and his son David move with 14,000 of the citizens of Vaspurakan to lands in Cappadocia offered by Basil; Basil occupies Vaspurakan.

Failure of rebellion of Xiphias 'strategus' of Anatolicon, and Nicephorus Phocas, great-nephew of eponymous emperor, against Basil in Anatolia (encouraged by King George before his surrender); **15 August** Nicephorus murdered by Xiphias in dispute over rebel leadership; Nicephorus' men desert to Basil and Xiphias captured and exiled, others blinded.

**Italy**

German Emperor Henry II invades Southern Italy; abbot Atenulf of Monte Cassino drowned trying to flee to Constantinople, and Prince Robert surrenders Capua; **April-July** Henry falls in siege of Troia and with army wilting in summer has to retreat.

**Byzantium/Armenia**

**Autumn** Basil tours Vaspurakan to strengthen defences and threatens John-Semhat, who has to make a treaty bequeathing his principality of Ani to Byzantium.

Death of St. Simeon 'the Young', greatest Byzantine mystic theologian and former abbot of St. Mamas, in exile imposed for religious heterodoxy.

**Russia**

Prince Mstislav of Chernigov and Tmutorokan attacks Kiev and Yaroslav retreats to Novgorod to get Swedish assistance.

**1023 Byzantium**

**Early** Basil returns in triumph to Constantinople.

## **Syria**

Salih ibn Mirdas, leader of Arab 'Mirdasid' clan, takes Aleppo from Fatimids and establishes new dynasty.

## **Italy**

**November** Exiled Lombard rebel leader Pandulf of Salerno returns to Southern Italy to besiege Capua.

## **Egypt**

Severe famine (to 1025).

## **1024 Italy**

**19 April** On death of Pope Benedict VIII, his brother elected John XIX.

## **Russia**

Mstislav fights drawn battle with Yaroslav at Listven near Chernigov, and they agree to divide Russian dominions between them – Yaroslav rules North and West from Kiev, Mstislav rules South-east from Chernigov and also the Crimean principality of Tmutorokan.

## **Byzantium/Italy**

Basil and Patriarch Eustathius suggest a compromise over Papal claims to ecclesiastical supremacy in embassy to Pope John XIX; Byzantine Patriarchate to have supremacy in the East and Papacy to have supremacy in West; John rejects it after protests within the Western Church, led by the Cluniacs of Dijon.

## **1025 Byzantium**

Basil II sends the general Basil Boiannes as 'Catepan' to Southern Italy with a large force to prepare for invasion of Sicily and gathers

reinforcements in Constantinople; Boiannes crosses the Straits and takes Messina.

Death of Patriarch Eustathius of Constantinople; succeeded by Alexius 'the Studite'.

Orestes the 'protospatharius' takes more troops to Italy.

## Persia

First appearance of Seljuk Turks, as part of mercenary tribal force assisting the Karakhanid emirate in Transoxiana against 'Sultan' Mahmud of Ghazni (ruler of Afghanistan) – the future Sultan Tughril Beg and his brother Chagri Beg are deputies to their uncle Israel Beg in force.

Jalal-al-Daula, Buwayhid prince, becomes secular ruler of Baghdad controlling Caliphate.

## Byzantium

**15 December** Death of Basil II in Constantinople, shortly before planned departure for Sicily, aged 67; his rule of 49 years' effective rule and 62 titular is longest in Byzantine history. He is succeeded by his brother Constantine VIII, already aged 64 and titular co-ruler throughout his reign; Constantine is lazy and extravagant and prefers horse-racing in Hippodrome and gambling to affairs of State, relying heavily on eunuchs, and Sicilian expedition is abandoned.

## 1026 Italy

Boiannes uses his army to assist Pandulf 'the Wolf of Abruzzi' with regaining Capua, and **May** negotiates the city's surrender in return for garrison leaving unmolested; Pandulf terrorizes the citizens and turns attention to Naples where Boiannes has arranged for Duke Sergius IV to give Count of Teano refuge.

Death of 'Doge' Otto Orseolo of Venice; end of rule of Orseolo dynasty.

## Byzantium

Basil Sclerus, married to future Emperor Romanus Argyrus' sister Pulcheria, is defeated by Bulgarian rebels; arrested, blinded, and exiled.

## 1027 **Italy**

Death of Gaimar III, Prince of Salerno; widow, Pandulf's sister, regent for 16-year-old son.

### **Byzantium**

Constantine VIII makes treaty with Egypt; Shi'ite mosque in Constantinople and Byzantine masons help to rebuild demolished Church of Holy Sepulchre in Jerusalem.

### **Egypt**

Death of regent Sitt-al-Mulk; succeeded as effective ruler of Egypt for weak Fatimid Caliph Al-Zahir (now 22) by 'vizier' Ahmed al-Janjani.

### **Georgia and Armenia**

Death of George I, king of Georgia; 13-year-old son Bagrat succeeds under regency of mother Mary.

Death of John-Sennacherim, former ruler of Byzantine-occupied Vaspurakan.

## 1028 **Italy**

**Early** After siege in winter, Pandulf of Capua seizes Naples by treachery; Duke Sergius flees into hiding, and he and the maritime republic of Amalfi call on Norman mercenary captain Rainulf to raise an army to fight Pandulf.

### **Byzantium**

**13 May** Death of Euthymius 'the Iberian' (i.e. Georgian), co-founder with his father John of the Georgian monastery of 'Iveron' on Mount Athos. Constantine VIII thinks of appointing 'Eparch' (Prefect of Constantinople) Constantine Dalassenus as his heir, and sends the eunuch Ergodotes to him at his command in Armenia; he offers him 'Caesarship' and the hand of daughter Zoe but abandons that plan, perhaps due to opposition

of Simeon, 'Drungarius of the Watch', he chooses instead Romanus Argyrus, a respectable civilian senator of around 60 who is great-grandson in female line of Romanus I Lecapenus and so his own distant cousin; Romanus' wife is induced to enter nunnery as part of agreement, and the rights of Constantine's eldest daughter Eudocia (now a nun) are passed over.

**9 November** With Constantine's health suddenly deteriorating, Zoe is persuaded into quick marriage with Romanus who is crowned; **12 November** Constantine dies aged 67, after a titular rule from 963 but effectively only three years, and Patriarch Alexius' complaints that Romanus and Zoe are related so marriage illegal under Orthodox canon law are overcome so wedding-ceremony can proceed; Romanus III and Zoe marry.

Prisoners are released and Romanus proves a pious and charitable ruler and an improvement on the suspicious and lazy Constantine; he does not stand up to aristocratic pressure to abolish the 'allelengyon' land-tax, whose repeal abandons Basil II's campaign against massive landed estates.

## 1029 Byzantium

After Arab raids on Byzantine Syria not repulsed by Spondyles, ineffective 'duke' of Antioch, he is replaced by Romanus' brother-in-law Constantine Caratenus. Romanus offers to buy Aleppo from rulers. Constantine Dalassenus, now 'duke' of Thessalonica, arrested on suspicion of disloyalty and made a monk in the monastery of Studius, Constantinople.

Patriarch Alexius summons Monophysite Syrian bishops and tries to bully them into Orthodoxy.

? Romanus' ministers persuade him to reduce extravagance at court and put the spendthrift Zoe on a fixed income; his relations with her start to deteriorate.

## Georgia and Armenia

Prince Gagik of Lori, son of King David of Lori and second cousin of Kings John-Semant and Gagik IV of Armenia, becomes first king of 'Kakhetia' (East Georgia).

Death of Prince Abas of Kars (Armenia); succeeded by son Gagik-Abas.



## **Syria**

Death of 'Emir' Salih bin Mirdas, founder of 'Mirdasid' dynasty of Aleppo; succeeded by son Nasr.

## **Italy**

Capuans expelled from Naples and Sergius restored, thanks to military campaign by Norman captain Rainulf in alliance with Amalfi.

### **1030 Italy**

**Early** Sergius of Naples grants Rainulf the fief of Aversa, the first Norman dominion in Italy, and the hand of his sister, the regent of Gaeta.

## **Persia**

Death of Sultan Mahmud of Ghazni, ruler of Afghanistan and terror of Western India; succeeded by son Mas'ud.

## **Byzantium**

Romanus III decides to emulate the great warrior emperors of the past and sets off from Constantinople with a large force for Syria; he rejects peace-envoys from Aleppo at Antioch and marches on the city, but the Arabs evade battle and skirmishers harrass the lumbering Imperial army. Believing Arabs' numbers to be far superior to their real strength, Romanus loses nerve and orders a precipitate retreat to Antioch, and Arabs loot the Imperial camp; Romanus is humiliated and returns to capital to impose stringent financial measures.

George Maniaces, the 'strategus' of Teluch, comes to prominence with brilliant actions in defeating Arabs who raid Anatolian borders after Romanus' retreat; he is rewarded with command of the cities of Mesopotamia, based at Samosata.

### **1031 Byzantium**

Prusianus, son of ex-King of Bulgaria, is blinded for plot against Romanus III; a son of 'Emir' Shibl-al-Daulah of Syria visits Constantinople to conclude

peace with Romanus, bringing an end to his plans for expansion after the salutary experiences of 1030.

Mirdasids of Aleppo resume paying tribute.

Romanus marries his niece, Helena Argyra, to King Bagrat IV of Georgia; sends Bagrat a 'holy nail' from the True Cross as a relic.

Famine in Asia Minor after failure of harvest, followed by plague.

## Abbasid Caliphate

**29 November** Al-Qaim succeeds father Al-Qadir as Caliph at Baghdad.

## 1031/2 Byzantium

Plot against Romanus III by his nephew Constantine Argyrus; Zoe's younger sister Theodora is implicated, as Constantine's probable intended bride when he takes throne, and she is sent to monastery of Petron at Zoe's instigation.

Constantine Dalassenus is arrested in monastery for alleged involvement in the plot, and commits suicide during interrogation.

## 1032 Byzantium

Earthquake in Constantinople, followed by plague of locusts; crops ruined again and discontent grows.

George Maniaces crosses the Euphrates and takes the city of Edessa, at invitation of Salman the deputy of governor Nasr al-Daulah, strengthening Eastern frontier; the final Byzantine conquest in Mesopotamia. Nasr al-Daulah fails to retake city and withdraws.

Romanus is encouraged by success to mount new campaign and sets out for East, but returns to Constantinople after discovery of another plot.

## Italy

Venice adopts constitutional reform: idea of a 'Doge-Consort', successor appointed by existing ruler without election like a Byzantine co-emperor, to be illegal.

**21 October** Dissolute young Benedict IX made Pope by his aristocratic relatives ruling Rome.

### 1033 **Byzantium**

Pechenegs cross the Danube and raid Balkans.

?Ambitious court official in charge of administration of Imperial orphanages, eunuch John the 'Orphanotropus', brings his handsome but epileptic younger brother Michael, a rough Paphlagonian, to court and promotes his career. Michael becomes 'Archon of the Pantheon', but his growing attraction for the disgruntled Zoe is more significant and they duly become lovers; John masterminds a plan to induce Zoe to remove her husband and make Michael his successor as emperor.

### **Georgia**

King Bagrat's disgruntled brother Demetrius is discovered to be plotting and flees to Constantinople; maintained as potential pretender to throne.

### 1034 **Byzantium**

Romanus III becomes seriously ill, allegedly due to poisoning by Zoe; (Holy Thursday or Good Friday) **11 or 12 April** the Emperor is held underwater in his bath at the Mangana Palace on Zoe's orders and on belated removal he collapses dying and Zoe encourages the ministers to accept Michael as his successor as her preference; 'patrician' Constantine Dalassenus leads objectors, but Zoe personally puts a crown on Michael's head and seats him beside her on throne and calls in the courtiers to present him as their new ruler; resistance crumbles and Michael is proclaimed Emperor Michael IV.

(Easter Saturday) **12 or 13 April** at dawn the 'Eparch' and senate swear allegiance to Michael, and Romanus is buried in the grand 'Church of the Virgin' which he founded and lavished imperial funds on; John the 'Orphanotropus' becomes the chief minister, and his and Michael's other brothers and rest of relatives gain power and influence; taxation becomes more onerous and as Michael increasingly neglects Zoe out of growing remorse at regicide John has her watched in case she starts to plot against him.

Unsuccessful revolt at Antioch.

**August** Constantine Dalassenus is arrested and exiled to Prote, one of the Princes' Islands; among other suspects who are subsequently arrested is the future emperor Constantine Ducas, descendant of the rebel of 913.

? Sicilian Arab pirates raid Thracian coast, arousing Byzantine concern about Sicily.

## Italy

Death of the wife of Count Rainulf of Aversa; the Norman leader marries the niece of Pandulf of Capua, deserting his alliance with Duke Sergius of Naples; Sergius soon abdicates and dies as a monk.

## 1035 Byzantium

Michael IV's sister Maria's husband Stephen, a former ship-caulker now 'patrician', is placed in charge of fleet as 'Great Drungharius'.

Leo Lependrus succeeds Maniaces as commander in Mesopotamia; Maniaces is recalled to Constantinople to command the land-forces as 'Grand Domestic', and a new expedition to Sicily with him in command is soon being prepared.

## Egypt

**13 June** Death of Fatimid Caliph Al-Zahir; succeeded by 11-year-old son Al-Mustansir; in an agreement with Byzantium 50,000 Christian prisoners are released.

## Italy

'Emir' Al-Akhal of Sicily faces dangerous rebellion from his brother Abu Hafs, and the Zirids of Tunisia send their Caliph's son Abdullah and 6000 men to assist them; he appeals to Michael IV for assistance.

? William, Drogo, and Humphrey, elder sons of Norman knight Tancred of Hauteville, come out to Aversa to join Rainulf's army; later rulers of Apulia.

## 1036 **Italy**

Galmar V of Salerno, now adult, leads a widespread revolt of vassals against the tyranny of Pandulf of Capua who has now pillaged the monastery of Monte Cassino and given its lands to his mercenaries; Rainulf of Aversa joins the rebels and Pandulf asks Michael IV and German Emperor Conrad II for aid.

## **Byzantium**

Pechenegs raid the Balkans again. Failed attack on Edessa from Mosul.

Thirty-year Byzantium/Fatimid Caliphate peace-treaty signed.

## 1037 **Italy**

Michael IV sends a small force under Constantine Opus to assist Akhal in Sicily against Abu Hafs; Akhal's assassination ends the alliance, but the anarchy in Sicily continues.

Michael's brother-in-law Stephen transports a large Byzantine army under Maniaces to Sicily; among the 'Varangian Guard' of Viking mercenaries is Harald, brother of ex-King (St) Olaf of Norway and later King of Norway (reign 1047–66; killed at Stamford Bridge near York in England by Harold II).

Maniaces' army takes Messina.

## **Byzantium**

Michael IV's brother Constantine leads Eastern armies to relieve Arab siege of Edessa. Zoe fails to poison John the 'Orphanotropus'; John fails to have Patriarch Alexius removed so he can be installed in his place.

## 1038 **Italy**

Emperor Conrad II invades Southern Italy, and besieges and takes Capua as Pandulf flees into hiding; he installs Gaimar of Salerno as ruler and his lieutenant in Southern Italy, and receives Rainulf's fealty for Aversa; Pandulf sails to Constantinople to seek assistance but is arrested there.

## Byzantium

Arab spies are caught smuggling weapons into Edessa to prepare for a new attack; the plot is foiled.

## Italy

**Late Summer** Maniaces' expedition, including Rainulf and other Normans collected from Salerno, invades Northern Sicily, takes town of Rometta between Messina and Palermo, and starts slow advance over the interior towards Syracuse.

## Hungary

Death of King (St.) Stephen, who converted Hungary to Christianity; his nephew Peter, of the Venetian family of Orseolo, succeeds to throne but proves despotic and unpopular.

## Syria

Fatimids take Aleppo; 'Emir' Nasr killed and nephew Al-Muqallad made their governor.

## Persia

Tughril Beg, leader of the Seljuk Turks takes the city of Nishapur; founding of the Seljuk dominion over settled lands in Persia as opposed to mere tribal authority in steppes.

## 1039 Georgia and Armenia

Death of Ashot IV, co-ruler of Armenia; his brother John-Semnat is sole ruler.

## 1040 Italy

**Spring?** Maniaces besieges Syracuse and William de Hauteville kills its 'Emir' in a sortie; he drives off Abdullah the Zirid's relief-force at battle

of Troina, and the garrison surrenders; the city returns to Byzantine rule, but Maniaces is furious that Abdullah has escaped navel blockade to return to Africa for reinforcements, accuses Stephen of incompetence, and assaults him and Stephen reports it to his brother-in-law the Emperor.

Maniaces is recalled, and replaced by incompetent eunuch Basil; meanwhile the Norman mercenaries have had a dispute with Maniaces over insufficient share of loot and leave campaign along with Salernitans; **Autumn?** Basil has to pull the Byzantine army back North.

Maniaces is imprisoned by John the 'Orphanotropus'; a revolt has broken out in Apulia led by Argyros, son of earlier rebel Melos, and with Lombards murdering Greek officials Michael IV sends out Michael Duceianus as new 'Catepan'; Michael brings the rebellion under control.

### **Byzantium/Armenia**

Death of John-Sembat, King of Armenia; Michael IV claims his kingdom with its capital, Ani, under terms of the late ruler's earlier treaty with Basil II.

### **Persia**

Tughril Beg, Seljuk ruler, conquers main plateau of country.

### **Byzantium**

Theophilus Eroticus fails to defeat Serb rebellion but is given governorship of Cyprus.

Peter Delyan, a Constantinopolitan slave of Bulgarian origin and alleged son of Gabriel Radomir, flees to Bulgaria and raises a national rebellion against John the 'Orphanotropus' excessive taxes; he claims to be Samuel's grandson and Byzantines are seriously threatened as rebellion spreads to Thessaly and Epirus. Rebels take Scupi/Skopje; Synadenus, duke of Dyrrachium, attacks but is dismissed by suspicious Michael and his Bulgarian troops revolt, seizing Dyrrachium.

Michael IV's epilepsy becomes worse, and he blames Divine punishment for his sins while John and other relatives consider who should be his heir; John and the others persuade Michael to adopt his nephew, the admiral

Stephen's son, Michael 'Calaphates' ('the Ship-Caulker', from Stephen's original trade) as his son and 'Caesar'.

Synadenus' rebel army deserts new leader Tichomir and joins Peter.

Zoe agrees to adopt Michael Calaphates as her son to bring him into Macedonian dynasty, and ceremony carried out at Blachernae.

Praying for remission of his sins at shrine of St. Demetrius at Thessalonica; Michael IV has to flee as Bulgarian rebels advance and retreats to Constantinople where health deteriorates further; Peter's rebels march South and take Thebes.

## 1041 Italy

**Early** Arduin, the former Salernitan commander in Sicily and now Michael Duceianus' governor of near-impregnable town of Melfi, plots revolt in alliance with Rainulf of Aversa; **March** Rainulf's men arrive at Melfi to join Arduin in revolt, which rapidly spreads; **17 March** Rainulf's Normans rout the Byzantine army on banks of the River Olivento near Venosa, and Duceianus withdraws to Bari.

**May** Duceianus attacks rebels again, but is routed at Monte-Maggiore on the River Ofanto, near site of ancient Roman defeat by Hannibal at Cannae in 216 BC; the Byzantine government withdraws him to take command in Sicily and installs Boiannes' son, Basil Boiannes, as 'Catepan'.

## Byzantium

Michael IV leads army against the Bulgarians despite illness; among various potential plotters who John the 'Orphanotropus' exiles from Constantinople are future emperor Constantine Monomachus, sent to Mytilene on Lesbos where he has an affair with Maria Sclerena (?) great-niece of the 980s rebel Bardas Sclerus, and the future patriarch Michael Cerularius.

## Syria

Aleppo captured by late ruler Nasr's brother Thimal, who rules independently of Fatimids.



## Italy

**3 September** Basil Boiannes defeated and captured by Normans at battle of Monte Siricolo; handed over to Atenulf, brother of Prince of Benevento and titular leader of rebellion. Bari deserts to rebels.

Lombard faction, led by Gaimar of Salerno and Capua, resents the leadership of Atenulf, particularly after he ransoms Boiannes back to Empire and keeps proceeds; the Norman garrison at Troia joins them in transferring loyalty to Argyrus.

## Hungary

King Peter deposed by brother-in-law, noble Samuel Aba.

## Armenia

Prince Gagik seizes the throne in revolt against Byzantine annexation.

## Byzantium

**?September** Bulgarian prince Alousianus, duke of Theodosiopolis and son of John Vladislav or Aaron and nephew of King Samuel, escapes from Byzantine court and arrives in Bulgaria to lead rebellion; he is accepted as leader and Peter Delyan arrested and mutilated; however Michael IV defeats Alousianus and **late Autumn?** he deserts followers and surrenders.

Michael IV celebrates triumph in Constantinople, and Alousianus is marched in parade and blinded'; after a sudden relapse Michael takes the monastic habit under influence of monk Cosmas Tzintzicules and retires to the monastery of Saints Cosmas and Damian, North-West of Constantinople.

**10 December** Michael IV dies in the presence of his brothers and nephew at monastery, and Michael Calaphates is escorted to Constantinople by his relatives and installed in 'Sacred Palace' as Emperor Michael V; Zoe agrees to his accession.

**13 December** John 'the Orphanotropus' arrives at Palace from late ruler's burial at the monastery; Michael is crowned but John soon finds that he is being eclipsed in government by his brother Constantine who is made 'nobilissimus'.

## 1042 Byzantium

Michael V quarrels with John who leaves Constantinople; the Emperor is alarmed that he might start a rebellion, recalls him, and on his arrival arrests him and exiles him to monastery of Monobatae; Maniaces is among John's detainees who is released.

### Italy

**February** Lombard and Norman rebel leaders swear allegiance to Argyrus in the church of St. Apollinare in Bari.

### Byzantium

**18 April** Michael V arrests Zoe for allegedly plotting to poison him; she is shaved and dressed in a nun's habit to disqualify her from throne and deported to monastery on island of Principo; **19 April** 'Eparch' Anastasius reads out an announcement of her treachery and punishment in the Forum of Constantine and Patriarch Alexius is arrested as her collaborator, but the City mob riots and Michael has to face a popular revolution. The homes of Michael's uncles are sacked, but Constantine fights his way through to the Palace to join his nephew.

Zoe is brought back to Constantinople and paraded in Imperial Box at Hippodrome, still dressed as nun, to reassure crowds that she is safe and show her invalidation from throne, but the enemies of Michael V's family led by Constantine Cabasilas and other nobles proceed to the monastery of Petron to take the other remaining imperial princess, Theodora; they escort her to 'sanctuary' in Hagia Sophia as their candidate for throne and fighting resumes.

**20 April** After c. 3000 men have been killed Michael and Constantine flee the Palace by boat, and land further along the Propontis shore of capital to take sanctuary in the Church of St. John of Studius, centre of the eponymous monastery; they are clinging to altar when a crowd of Theodora's partisans arrive and are dragged away, blinded on the spot, and removed to remote monasteries, Michael's at Eteimon.

Zoe and Theodora are proclaimed joint Empresses; Nicholas 'Domestic of the East' and Cabasilas 'Domestic of the West'; Maniaces is appointed 'Catepan' and sent to Southern Italy to fight rebels, but his enemies in the

capital undermine him in absence and his rival Romanus Sclerus raids his estates in Asia Minor.

Constantine 'the Paphlagonian', Michael's blinded uncle, recalled to personally hand over details of his fortune for confiscation and then exiled again; the indolent Zoe plans to marry again and disputes with Theodora, but her first choice of husband, Constantine Dalassenus, refuses the throne.

Zoe's second choice, Romanus III's secretary Constantine Catepanus Artoclin, suddenly dies; she chooses the 'elderly' widower Constantine Monomachus, whose late wife was Romanus III's niece, and recalls him from Mytilene; on his arrival he is greeted with imperial guards and tent outside the capital and escorted to Palace.

Patriarch Alexius absolves Constantine for making a third marriage; **11 June** the priest Stypes marries him to Zoe; **12 June** the Patriarch crowns him Emperor Constantine IX.

Constantine invites his mistress Maria Sclerena to Constantinople and installs her as his mistress in the Palace despite popular disapproval. John the 'Orphanotropus' exiled to Mytilene instead.

Eroticus, governor of Cyprus, rebels but is arrested by imperial general Constantine Chages and deported to Constantinople.

Constantine IX opens up Senate and entry to other senior offices and honours to wider membership than usual, allowing both wider purchase and transfer; Zoe restricts her activities to rejuvenating cosmetics and appears to tolerate Sclerena who is treated as an unofficial co-empress, but Theodora is retired to nunnery again; among Constantine's advisers are a significant group of enthusiasts for a revival of learning, including John Xiphilinus of Trebizond and Constantine Psellus of Constantinople (the future imperial biographer), the former pupils of Archbishop John Mauropus of Euchaita.

## Italy

**Summer** Maniaces restores Byzantine rule in Apulia with campaign of brutality; **September** Argyrus abandons siege of loyalist Trani and surrenders himself and Bari to Byzantium.

**October** At instigation of Romanus Sclerus, his sister Maria Sclerena persuades Constantine IX to recall Maniaces; when he hears he refuses to obey and allows his troops to proclaim him Emperor.

Deserted by Argyrus, the Normans in Apulia elect William de Hauteville as their 'Count'; later he is acclaimed as 'Duke of Apulia and Calabria' at Melfi, accepting the suzerainty of Duke Gaimar of Salerno and Capua and his niece in marriage; Gaimar gives twelve fiefs to other Norman leaders, and William rules Ascoli, his brother Drogo Venosa, and Rainulf of Aversa Siponto.

Pandulf returns to Italy to fight for Byzantium against rebels, principally Gaimar.

## 1043 Byzantium

**February** Maniaces lands at Dyrrachium with rebel army, and recruits flock to his standard; ex-rebel Bulgarians and Serbs join him, and he marches along Via Egnatia into Macedonia to confront Constantine IX's Western army; the imperial troops are defeated at battle of Ostrovo, but Maniaces is struck in side with arrow and falls dead off his horse in hour of victory; his troops surrender and Constantine celebrates a triumph with Maniaces' head carried on a spear in procession.

Russian nobles are killed in a brawl at Constantinople; Constantine offers their 'Grand Prince' of Kiev, Yaroslav 'the Wise', compensation but he refuses and his son Prince Vladimir of Novgorod leads a large fleet across the Black Sea to the Bosphorus, **June** the Russians enter the Bosphorus, but 'Grand Drungharius' Basil Theodorocanus leads Byzantine fleet to attack and Russians are decimated by 'Greek fire', allegedly 15,000 Russians killed, and the survivors retreat.

? Constantine IX makes Maria Sclerena 'Augusta'.

Death of Patriarch Alexius; Michael Cerularius elected as successor, and proves a far greater intervener in political affairs; Michael induces Constantine to have John 'the Orphanotropus' blinded.

? Constantine makes Constantine Psellus his secretary, at instigation of their mutual friend Constantine Lichudes who is sponsoring revival of imperial patronage of culture and learning.

## Italy

Argyrus appointed Byzantine 'Catepan' to fight rebels.

## 1044 **Byzantium**

**9 March** Riot against Constantine's association with Maria Sclerena as insult to Zoe during imperial procession to the Church of the Holy Apostles; Zoe saves Constantine from being lynched and makes her continued support clear.

Constantine allies with the Moslem 'Emir' of Dvin/Tovin against his neighbour King Gagik of Armenia, who is still defying Byzantium.

### **Italy**

**September** Rebellion drives Pope Benedict IX out of Rome.

### **Hungary**

Emperor Henry III restores Peter to the throne; Samuel Aba defeated and killed.

## 1045 **Byzantium/Armenia**

King Gagik of Armenia lured to Byzantium for talks and is there induced to surrender his kingdom and the Bagratid dynastic estates in it to Constantine, in return for extensive lands in Cappadocia; Byzantium occupies Armenia, principally city of Ani, but faces expensive defence of frontier fortresses that local princes used to maintain.

Constantine quarrels with 'Emir' and raids Dvin.

? Death of Maria Sclerena.

Turks raid Vaspurakan.

### **Italy**

**20 January** Pope Benedict IX deposed in Rome; Sylvester II elected.

**10 March** Benedict restored to Rome.

**May** Benedict resigns Papacy in favour of godfather Gregory VI.

**June** Death of Count Rainulf of Aversa, succeeded by his nephew Asclettin; **Autumn** death of Asclettin, succeeded by cousin Rainulf II Trincanocte but Salerno disputes the succession so Rainulf reconciles with Pandulf.

## Egypt

Death of 'vizier' Ahmed al-Janjari; feeble Caliph Al-Mustansir's mother, a Sudanese ex-slave, and her former master Abu Sa'd al-Tustari (Persian Jewish banker) assume government.

## 1046 Byzantium

(or 1047?) Constantine IX reorganizes higher education facilities in Constantinople under Lichudes' guidance, and sets up formal imperial control – a formal 'faculty' of Law to run legal schools, led by 'nomophylax' John Xiphilinus, and a 'faculty' to run teaching of philosophy/theology under first 'hypatus' ('Consul of the Philosophers') Constantine (monastic name 'Michael') Psellus; this is subsequently widely referred to as 'University' though parallel not exact.

c. 20,000 Pechenegs under 'Khagan', fleeing Uzes on steppes, enter Byzantine service.

Constantine makes peace with Yaroslav of Russia, and Russian trading-missions to Constantinople resume.

## Italy

Death of William of Hauteville, Count of Apulia; succeeded by brother Drogo, who is invested by Gaimar of Salerno and marries his daughter; Drogo mediates between Salerno and Rainulf II of Aversa.

**Autumn** German Emperor Henry III arrives in Italy for coronation, and mediates between rival Popes, Benedict IX, Gregory VI, and Sylvester II; **20 December** all three rivals are required to attend Henry's synod at Sutri, but Benedict fails to turn up so Henry deposes the other two and **24 December** a compliant synod at Rome deposes Benedict too; Henry has Suidger of Bamberg (Bavaria) elected Pope Clement II as respectable reformer and **25 December** he crowns Henry.

**1047 Italy**

**February** Henry restores Pandulf to Capua, and confirms Drogo and Rainulf's lands.

**Byzantium**

Constantine's daughter (?Maria) marries one of Yaroslav's younger sons, Vsevolod.

**Early** c. 100,000 Pechenegs under Tyrach cross frozen Danube to raid Balkans; defeated by Constantine Arianites, duke of Adrianople, and settled North-West of Sardica.

Discontent among the main imperial armies, apparently over Constantine's reduction of defences entrusted to local 'theme' armies and reliance on enlarged regiments in the capital in case of a new Maniaces-type revolt; Leo Tornicius, Constantine's second cousin and Armenian Bagratid relative, is furious at deposition from governorship of Iberia and (?) his restraining from affair with Constantine's sister Eutrepia, and persuades the main Western army at base in Adrianople to revolt in his favour, pretending that Constantine is dead and Theodora, as rightful heir, has chosen him as her husband.

Eastern army is in Armenia fighting 'Emir' of Dvin and Constantine has to rely on capital's regiments ('tagmata') as rebels march on capital, and while Constantine incapacitated in Palace with gout Tornicius' story wins adherents until he shows himself in public. Imperial troops rally to attack rebel camp outside capital and are routed and on their retreat accidentally (or not) leave a gate open but Tornicius does not follow it up, Constantine's sister Helena advises flight but he orders gate closed; next day Tornicius parades prisoners in front of gates and they beg for surrender to avoid execution, but no success and Constantine's troops fire catapults on walls to send rebels fleeing.

Constantinople blockaded by land, but the Eastern army arrives and Tornicius retreats into Thrace; he fails to take various fortresses and as troops start to desert he flees to take sanctuary with his colleague John Vatatzes; they are arrested and blinded but most rebels pardoned, and Constantine holds a triumph.

Constantine inaugurates his Monastery of Mangana.

## Hungary

King Peter deposed and killed in battle by by cousin Andrew, assisted by Russians and by Prince Edward 'Atheling', exiled son of King Edmund 'Ironside' (d.1016) of England; Andrew makes his younger brother Bela 'Duke' and governor of Transylvania.

## Egypt

Abu Sa'd al-Tustari, Jewish chief minister, assassinated.

## Italy

**9 October** Death of Pope Clement II at Abbey of St. Tommaso near Pesaro; **8 November** Benedict IX restored as Pope by popular acclaim and bribery.

## 1048 Italy

Byzantine 'Catepan' Palatinus captured by rebels at battle of Taranto and is ransomed; later on he is held prisoner by the rebellious citizens of Bari and only released in exchange for admission of the city's independence.

## Byzantium/Armenia

First serious incursion into Byzantine territory by raiding Turkish tribes, under the loose authority of Tughril Beg the Seljuk who rules Persia; Liparit, a Georgian noble, leads Byzantine army against them but is captured and ransomed; later the governor of Ani, Catacalon Cecaumenus, and Aaron, governor of Vaspurakan, defeat raiders.

Constantine enrolls some Pechenegs as part of mercenary-based army of reinforcements to fight Turks on Eastern frontier, but they desert; they join Pecheneg settlers in Thrace to seize lands around Preslav, and Constantine arrests their 'Khagan'.



## Georgia

Prince Demetrius returns to homeland with Byzantine support for rebellion, and takes lands by force which King Bagrat has to accept.

## Italy

**16 July** Pope Benedict evicted from Rome by reluctant Count Boniface of Tuscany on Henry's orders but holds out at native Tusculum still claiming to be Pope; **17 July** Boniface organizes election of Henry's new choice, Bishop Poppo of Brixen (Bavaria) as Pope Damasus II.

**9 August** Sudden death of Damasus at Palestrina; Roman representatives go to Germany to seek Henry's choice as successor rather than Benedict, and **December** at Worms Henry nominates a zealous reformer, Bishop Bruno of Toul, who sets out for Italy.

Robert, soon known as 'Guiscard' ('the Cunning'), son of Tancred of Hauteville by second wife and half-brother to Count Drogo, abandons his niggardly brother's service in Apulia and fights for Pandulf of Capua.

## 1049 Italy

**12 February** Reaching Rome, Bruno is elected and crowned Pope and takes title of 'Leo IX' as symbol of restoring Papal prestige; initiates reforms, denounces simony, and gathers a court of talented and dynamic lieutenants including Hildebrand (later Gregory VII), Frederick of Lorraine, and Humbert of Moyenmoutier.

**19 February** Death of Pandulf of Capua, ageing 'Wolf of the Abruzzi'; either before or soon after Robert 'Guiscard' returns to Drogo and is granted isolated castle of Scribla near Cosenza, whence, he builds up brigand fiefdom in Calabria.

Pope Leo starts to tour Italian dominions and receives complaints of Norman brutality, especially from former Papal fief of Benevento whose lordship Henry III gave to Normans in 1046.

## Syria

Qirwash the Uqaylid, ruler of Mosul, deposed.

## Byzantium

While Cecaumenus is incapacitated at Ani by lack of troops after Pecheneg desertions, Turks under Ibrahim Inal invade Armenia in force to his south; they sack the city of Theodosiopolis (Erzurum) North of Lake Van.

Byzantine reinforcements arrive; drawn battle of Capetra with Turks. Pechenegs remain in revolt, defeating two armies and killing 'Domestic of West' Constantine Arianites.

## 1050 Byzantium

Death of Empress Zoe, aged probably 70/71.

Byzantine army under Bryennius, including Varangians (Russians reinforcements supplied by Yaroslav and others from Scandinavia), defeats another Pecheneg invasion of Balkans at battle of Chariopolis, deep inside Thrace.

Varangian regiment under Michael wins victories over Pechenegs at Goloe and Toplitzon in Thrace.

? Constantine Lichudes replaced as chief minister by eunuch John.

? Pope Leo writes to Constantine IX about Norman depredations in Southern Italy and insists that action is urgently needed.

? John Xiphilinus is accused of heresy, and Psellus writes a tract in his defence.

## 1051 Byzantium

Michael and 'Syncellus' Basil lead Byzantine army to besiege Pecheneg invaders in Great Preslav, the old Bulgarian capital, but they break out as Byzantines are too under-manned to stop them and defeat Byzantines.

Nicephorus Bryennius leads reinforcements against the Pechenegs who are defeated and sign a 30-year peace-treaty, promising to leave Balkans alone.

Yaroslav of Russia defies Byzantium in making Hilarion Bishop of Kiev, his capital, without seeking permission.

? Birth of Constantine IX's grandson Vladimir, later called 'Monomakh' as 'Grand Prince' of Russia, son of his daughter and Yaroslav's son Vsevolod (or 1052).

? Constantine debases the gold 'nomismata' currency by around a quarter.

## Italy

**July** Pope Leo arrives in Benevento at invitation of citizens, who have expelled pro-Norman rulers; he summons Drogo and Gaimar and reaches agreement with them and confirms their current lordships, but Drogo's promise to halt Norman attacks on Benevento are ignored by his vassals.

**10 August** Drogo murdered in chapel of Monte Ilaro castle by Risus, apparently as part of a synchronised attack on various Norman lords by local conspirators; he is succeeded by his full brother Humphrey.

Argyros returns from conferring with Constantine to prepare a new war against Normans and other Byzantine enemies, and Leo starts to raise army too to protect Benevento and other places; Argyros organizes Byzantine-Papal alliance, but Gaimar refuses to join it.

## 1052 Byzantium/Armenia

Turks raid Armenia and on into Georgia, but meet stiff resistance from local lords.

A favourite courtier of Constantine's, Romanus Boilas, plans his assassination but is discovered, arrested, and pardoned.

## Italy

**2 June** Gaimar, currently facing revolt from pro-Byzantine faction in control of Amalfi, is murdered at Salerno by his brothers-in-law, sons of the Count of Teano, who seize city with the eldest of them as successor; his brother Guy of Sorrento flees to Norman army and **6 June** they besiege Salerno; the conspirators have to surrender to save captive families and Gaimar's son Gisulf installed as ruler but Normans break promise to let murderers go and kill them, Pope Leo goes to Germany to seek Henry's assistance against Normans.

## 1053 Italy

**Spring** Pope Leo returns to Italy with an army of Swabian mercenaries, and summons all loyal vassals to join him against Normans; **June** he arrives at Benevento with Duke of Gaeta, Court of Teano, and a substantial Apulian contingent.

Leo arranges rendezvous with Argyros and Byzantine army at Siponto in Apulia, but Norman-held Troia and Bovino block direct route; he marches circuitously via Monte Gargano, and is confronted by Humphrey de Hauteville, Robert Guiscard, Rainulf of Aversa, and full Norman strength at Civitate on River Fortore.

**17 June** Normans offer allegiance, but Lombards insist they leave Italy.

**18 June** *Battle of Civitate* Normans on right wing under Rainulf rout poorly-armed Lombards and Apulians, but Humphrey in centre is held by Swabians and on the left Robert Guiscard comes to his assistance; Swabians cut down as Rainulf returns and Pope Leo is surrounded in nearby Civitate town as citizens refuse to shut Normans out; the Norman leaders respectfully fall on knees and pledge allegiance, but despite their apologies they require him to accompany their army in march on Benevento.

Benevento surrenders, and Leo installed under Norman guard but allowed to contact Henry and Constantine.

## Byzantium/Italy

**Summer** At Patriarch Michael Cerularius' instigation, a letter from Archbishop Leo of Ochrid is sent to the Italian Bishop John of Trani which condemns specific Western Church practices, e.g. use of unleavened bread in Mass, as sinful and Judaistic; meanwhile the Latin residents' churches at Constantinople are required to adopt the Greek practices instead on points at issue and on refusal are closed.

Bishop John hands the letter to passing Cardinal Humbert, on his way to join the captive Pope, and he takes letter to Leo who is furious; he commissions Humbert to write a letter to Michael Cerularius and Leo defending Western usages and setting out arguments for Papal supremacy, which is insultingly addressed to them as just 'Bishops'.

Constantine sends letter to Pope, probably commiserating for Civitate and offering closer alliance in future; probably at his instigation, Cerularius also writes to Pope in cordial terms assuring goodwill and hoping for closer

unity, albeit addressed to him as 'brother' i.e. equal fellow-patriarch denying supremacy.

Pope Leo agrees to send legates to Constantinople to sort out the disputed matters of rites and usages and drafts two letters for Humbert to take as one of them – (I) to Cerularius, disputing his right to interfere in matters of usages, reprimanding him for his pretensions to ecumenical authority (probably result of misunderstanding of Patriarch's title as 'oecumenical', which to Byzantines means within the *Byzantine* world i.e. Empire not worldwide), and questioning legality of his election; (II) to Constantine, encouraging on more war against Normans but complaining at Patriarch's intolerable presumptions and hoping for his repentance.

## 1054 **Byzantium**

Bagrat of Georgia visits Constantinople and is detained for 5 years but made granted rank of 'nobilissimus'; during his detention the noble Liparit seeks recognition of himself as regent for son George.

Turkish raiders of Byzantine Armenia sack Kars.

Basil Apocapes defeats Turkish raiders into Byzantine Armenia at battle of Manzikert, near Theodosiopolis.

## **Italy**

**Early Spring** Humbert, Frederick of Lorraine, and Peter of Amalfi leave Benevento as legates en route to Constantinople; **12 March** Humphrey de Hauteville escorts Pope Leo as he is allowed to leave Benevento and return to Rome, presumably having recognised Norman control of Southern Italy but allowed to retain lordship of Benevento.

## **Byzantium**

**Early April** Legates arrive at Constantinople; they call on Patriarch but take offence at manner of reception and leave abruptly minus the Pope's letter which infuriates Cerularius; they are received with more politeness by Constantine, and publish the Papal letters to Cerularius and Leo of Ochrida of Summer 1053 in Greek translation with a memorandum on disputed usages to make Rome's position clear.

Cerularius claims that the seals of the second Papal letter, that which was delivered to him at reception, have been tampered with en route to Constantinople and that it has been altered to make it more offensive, supposedly by Argyrus, and is not Pope's words verbatim; he refuses to recognise legates' authority or negotiate.

Hostile orthodox reply to the published 1053 letters is delivered by Nicetas Stethatus, a learned monk of the Studius monastery, respectful in language but denouncing Western use of unleavened bread, fasting on Saturdays, and clerical celibacy.

## Italy

**19 April** Death of Pope Leo in Rome, broken by his defeat and humiliating captivity; this technically ends legates' authority in Constantinople. Hildebrand leads Roman mission to Henry III to seek guidance on successor.

## Byzantium

**May/June** News of Leo's death reaches Constantinople, but the confrontation between legates and Cerularius continues. Constantine allows legates to attend Stethatus' enforced public apology to calm them down after Humbert denounced Stethatus as a pimp and a Moslem and implied he belongs to a theatre or brothel not a monastery.

Humbert raises the 'filioque' with Constantine; however Cerularius refuses to have anything to do with the legates which arouses them further.

**Saturday, 16 July** The legates interrupt service at Hagia Sophia to lay 'bull' of excommunication against Cerularius and his supporters on the High Altar and ceremonially shake dust from feet on way out – it accuses them of simony, encouraging castration, insisting on rebaptising Westerners into their Church, letting priests marry, jettisoning Mosaic law, refusing communion to men who shave beards, and leaving a clause out of Creed. Apart from many inaccuracies, the bull is illegal as legates' authority has lapsed.

**18 July** Legates leave for Rome; the Emperor's envoys catch them up at Selymbria to check that the extraordinary language of the Bull was not a mistake; he originally intends to recall them but changes mind due to popular hostility and Cerularius' threat to call them before his synod.

**24 July** Cerularius' synod excommunicates and anathematizes the legates and burns copy of the Bull; the technical 'Schism' between Eastern and Western churches commences from this double excommunication, though significance not realised at the time. Translators of the Papal Bull into Greek and Argyrus' relatives in Byzantine capital made scapegoats and punished by synod.

**Autumn** Bryennius prepares a new expedition against Turks at Chrysopolis, on East shore of Bosphorus.

## Italy

**November** Henry III's choice of next Pope, to Hildebrand's mission at Mainz, revealed as the Swabian bishop Gebbard of Eichstätt, whose unwillingness to serve delays departure for Italy.

## Byzantium

? **Autumn/Winter** Uncertain of imperial favour or that of next ruler as Constantine's health deteriorates and accused of heterodoxy due to his writings and actions on behalf of scholastic inquiry and sympathies for classical learning, Psellus reluctantly resigns as 'hypatus' and adopts monastic habit; a symbol of Constantine IX's declining authority.

## Russia

Death of 'Grand Prince' Yaroslav, last sole ruler of the principality for centuries; succeeded by sons – eldest, Iziaslav, in Kiev as senior prince, Sviatoslav in Chernigov, Vsevolod in Pereiaslavl, Igor in Volhynia/Galicia, and Viacheslav in Smolensk.

## 1055 Byzantium

Constantine IX catches a chill when swimming that quickly turns to fever, but declines to nominate Theodora as last of Macedonian house as heir and considers Nicephorus, governor of Bulgaria; Theodora is told of his intentions and hastens to Palace where she wins over Guards regiments.

Constantine is forced to accept Theodora as his successor and **7/11 January** dies, aged around 60.

Theodora becomes Empress again, and Cerularius and ‘protosyncellus’ Leo Paraspondylus chief ministers; Nicephorus Bryennius is sacked and exiled; Isaac Comnenus, the commander-in-chief of Eastern forces is dismissed too.

Michael, commander of the Varangians, sent to fight latest Turkish invasion over Armenian frontier, and wins battle of Baibert.

Theodora arrests and exiles the increasingly powerful and arrogant Patriarch Michael Cerularius’ prophetess protégée Dorothea from Constantinople in a trial of wills with him.

## Persia

Tughril Beg, Seljuk Turk ruler of Persia, invades Mesopotamia and conquers Baghdad; Caliph Al-Qaim becomes his puppet and chief minister Basasiri and ‘Vizier’ Al-Malik al-Rahim are removed; he induces Caliph to make him ‘Sultan’, i.e. ‘Slave of the Commander of the Faithful’, to effectively found what is later known as the ‘Seljuk Sultanate’.

## Italy

**13 April** Bishop Gebhard enthroned in Rome as Pope Victor II.

**June** Papal synod at Florence, attended by Emperor Henry who forces Duke Godfrey of Lorraine to flee his wife’s Duchy of Tuscany and takes her and her daughter Matilda hostage.

## 1056 Byzantium

Theodora quarrels with Cerularius over control of Church appointments, and over administration of Church property.

Samul, Turkish chieftain, leads army of raiders into Armenia.

Theodora falls ill, and her ministers persuade her to nominate the elderly civilian court official Michael Stratioticus as her heir rather than any of the generals; **31 August** Theodora dies, aged around 74 – end of the ‘Macedonian’ dynasty’s rule after 189 years, second-longest dynasty in Byzantine history.



Michael Stratioticus succeeds as Emperor Michael VI; the generals are discontented as he is a weak ruler and gives offices to civilian favourites.

## Italy

**Autumn** Pope Victor in Germany, where on death of Henry III on **5 October** he manages succession of son Henry IV (aged 6) under regency of mother Agnes of Poitou.

Robert Guiscard, having taken Lecce and other important Byzantine garrisons for Normans, is despatched back to Calabria by jealous elder brother Count Humphrey.

## 1057 Byzantium

**Easter Day** Byzantine generals Catacalon Cecaumenus, Isaac Comnenus, Michael Burtzes, and brothers Constantine and John Ducas visit the emperor in Constantinople; they complain of lack of support for the military against Turks and general disregard, e.g. in appointments, but are insulted and refused redress; they return to commands in the East contemplating revenge and Isaac persuades them to think it out carefully.

## Italy

**Spring** Death of Humphrey de Hauteville, appointing Robert Guiscard as guardian to young son Abelard; Guiscard seizes Abelard's inheritance of lands and secures his own election as ruler of Norman principality.

Richard of Aversa besieges Salerno and on surrender deposes and evicts young ruler, Pandulf's son Pandulf.

## Byzantium

The generals commanding in Asia Minor choose Isaac Comnenus as their nominee for Emperor in revolt, Nicephorus Bryennius, now commander in Cappadocia, turns against Michael VI for non-fulfilment of promised restoration of lands seized by Theodora, and when the imperial agent Opsaras objects to him 'over-paying' his troops he arrests the latter; Bryennius is quickly betrayed to the Emperor, arrested, blinded, and exiled.

Romanus Sclerus, Nicephorus Botaneites, and the sons of Basil Argyrus join the generals' conspiracy; the 'Frankish' (Western) mercenary commander Hervé Francopulus is insulted by Emperor and refused rank of 'Magister' so he deserts to the Turks and starts plundering countryside.

The generals meet on the plain of Gounaria and **8 June** proclaim Isaac as Emperor Isaac I; they advance to Nicaea. Michael refuses the recalled imperial adviser Psellus' advice to keep the loyalty of Patriarch, and sends out army under Aaron Ducas and the eunuch Theodorus to fight the rebels; a lot of the loyalist soldiers desert.

## Italy

**28 July** Death of Pope Victor II at Arezzo; **2 August** Frederick of Lorraine, abbot of Monte Cassino and brother duke Godfrey, elected Pope and takes title of Stephen IX.

**August** Norman assembly at Melfi endorses Robert Guiscard as new Norman ruler of Apulia and Calabria.

## Byzantium

**20 August** Battle of 'Hades', near Mount Sophon in Bithynia: loyalists attack the rebel generals and Varangian Guard aims at Isaac in person, but they are defeated.

Psellus persuades Michael VI to send him with embassy to Isaac on news of defeat; **24 August** he leads embassy to Nicomedia, where Isaac insists that Michael accept him as co-emperor and pardon all rebels; they return to Michael who accepts the terms, and then go to Isaac again for his coronation as 'Caesar' (second rank to Emperor) at Rhaea.

Isaac advances to Chrysopolis, and sends to Michael ordering his abdication; he refuses but **30 August** is forced to do so by a pro-rebel revolt in the capital in which crucial support is lent by the Patriarch; Michael goes to Hagia Sophia to surrender to Patriarch.

**31 August** Isaac enters Constantinople; **1 September** Cerularius crowns him Emperor at Hagia Sophia.

Isaac institutes reforms, drastically reducing imperial expenditure and reviving the armed forces; his cuts to religious expenditure anger the Patriarch.

**October** While Cecaumenus is in Constantinople with Isaac, his province of Colonea is raided by Turks; a large Turkish force under Dinar enters South-East Anatolia and makes the furthest incursion yet, sacking the city of Melitene, but is defeated later and Dinar is killed.

## Italy

**Autumn** Roger, youngest of the sons of Tancred de Hauteville, joins his full brother Robert Guiscard in Apulla.

## Syria

Thimal the Mirdasid, Fatimid vassal ruler of Aleppo, expelled; he is granted Beirut as Fatimid governor. His cousin Mahmud, son of Nasr, rules Aleppo.

## 1058 Italy

Pope Stephen proposes a new military alliance with Byzantium against Normans, but **29 March** dies in Tuscany while consulting Duke Godfrey about his assistance; most of the Roman clergy keep to their oath not to elect successor until Cardinal Hildebrand has consulted Henry III and returned, but **5 April** a minority elect Bishop John of Velletri, a member of dynasty of Tusculum but respected reformer; the majority flee to seek Henry's assistance and John (Pope Benedict X) not generally recognised.

Robert Guiscard abandons wife Alberada, mother of son Behemund, for Sichelgaita, sister and heiress of Gisulf of Salerno, claiming he and Alberada were illegally married as too close cousins; in return, Guiscard helps Gisulf against his raiding half-brother William of Hauteville.

## Georgia

King Gagik of Kakhetia succeeded by son Agsarten.

## Turkish Sultanate

Fatimids send an army from Syria into Mesopotamia, accompanied by refugee ex-minister Basasiri, and seize Baghdad where Caliph Al-Qaim is captured and his Caliphal regalia deported to Egypt to bolster legitimacy

of rival Fatimid Caliphate's claims as heirs of the Prophet; Tughril Beg does not immediately attempt to retake city.

## Byzantium

Trouble between the strong-willed Isaac and Cerularius, who apparently threatens to depose Isaac and is later found to be in possession of imperial buskins to give to his own candidate for throne (? his niece Eudocia Macrembolitissa's husband, Isaac's trusted friend and President of the Senate Constantine Ducas).

**8 November** Isaac arrests Cerularius and deports him to peninsula of Proconessus on South shore of Propontis before he can rouse the City mob, but he refuses to abdicate; Isaac summons a synod to depose Cerularius, but orders it to meet outside the capital to avoid risk of rioting. Cerularius dies during the synod.

## Italy

**Autumn?** Severe famine in Calabria leads to large native rebellion against Normans; Guiscard promises his alienated brother Roger half of the land he reconquers and all South Calabria in Byzantine hands if he will assist him which he does.

**6 December** Benedict X's enemies among cardinals elect Gerard of Lorraine, Bishop of Florence, as rival Pope (Nicholas II) at Siena with Duke Godfrey's support.

## 1059 Italy

Nicholas anathematizes Benedict and accompanies Godfrey's army to Rome; **24 January** he is installed in Vatican and Benedict flees; **February** Cardinal Hildebrand persuades Richard of Capua to arrest Benedict at Galeria; **April** Vatican synod formalizes restriction of future Papal elections to Cardinals.

## Byzantium

**February** Conclusion of the synod held to depose Cerularius; **10 February** Constantine Lichudes is installed as Patriarch, possibly due to his friend Psellus' recommendations to Isaac.

Magyar threat to raid Balkans from Hungary does not materialize, but the Pechenegs break their peace-treaty and cross the Danube in strength.

**July–September** Pechenegs ravage Balkans and are driven off by Isaac in person, first imperial campaign since Michael IV's against Bulgarian rebels; however bad weather and unseasonal snow harrass the Byzantine army, and **24 September** many men die in storm; on return to Constantinople Isaac builds church of St Thecla in thanks for his escape and spends the autumn hunting, undermining his health further.

## Italy

**Late July** Pope Nicholas consecrates Cathedral of Venosa, burial-place of Hauteville dynasty, during Southern Italian tour in reconciliatory gesture to the Normans; **late August** Nicholas receives the Norman leaders at synod of Melfi and confirms Richard as Prince of Capua, then invests Robert Guiscard as Duke of Apulia and (unconquered) Sicily; in return Norman leaders swear loyalty and promise not to harm Papal possessions including Benevento. End of hopes of Byzantine-Papal alliance to reconquer Southern Italy.

## Georgia

Shortly before King Bagrat's return from prolonged 'hospitality' or detention in Constantinople, the regent Liparit is deposed by nobles.

## Byzantium

**Autumn** Samuh leads a large Turkish incursion into North-East Anatolia, and Sebastea is captured as local Armenian troops abandon it and is subjected to 8-day sacking; the shrine of the 'Forty Martyrs' is main target for pillagers.

**November** Isaac catches chill during hunting and falls seriously ill; during intrigues at his bedside his brother John rejects the throne to annoyance of his ambitious wife Anna Dalassena, and the civilian ministers led by Psellus persuade Isaac to nominate Constantine Ducas; when Isaac recovers slightly Psellus forces issue by investing Constantine with imperial robes and crown and Isaac gives way and after a relapse agrees to abdicate; he retires to Monastery of Studius, aged around 57, and wife Catherine/Helena and daughter retire to nunneries.

**23 November** Accession of Constantine X Ducas, with his young son Michael (VII) as nominal co-emperor; Psellus is chief minister, and becomes Michael's tutor; the pacifically-inclined Constantine neglects the army and does not launch retaliation against Turkish raids, preferring civilian projects.

## 1060 Italy

**Early** Fall of Byzantine-held Taranto and Brindisi; Robert Guiscard and Roger use Byzantine-style artillery catapults to force Reggio, capital of Byzantine Calabria to surrender, but garrison holds out in castle on rock of Scilla (c.f. Homer's 'Odyssey') until **Summer** they flee to Byzantium.

## Syria/Turkish Sultanate

Tughril Beg retakes Baghdad from the Fatimids, and executes their restored minister Basasini who has been running Caliphal government there; Arab nomads, led by the Mirdasids, retake Aleppo from Fatimids.

## Byzantium

? Constantine X makes his brother John 'Caesar'.

Constantine summons Armenian 'Catholicos' and his bishops to Constantinople as suspected heretics over doctrinal differences from Orthodox, and detains them for three years.

## Italy

**Late summer** Robert Guiscard and Roger launch invasion of Sicily, now divided between 'Emirs' Ibn at Timnah of Syracuse, Ibn Haukal of Trapani, and Ibn al-Hawwas of Enna; unsuccessful attack on Messina.

**Autumn** New Byzantine army lands in Apulia in Norman leaders' absence, and retakes Brindisi and other towns; Melfi besieged, and Guiscard returns from Sicily.

## Hungary

Death of King Andrew; his brother Bela drives out Andrew's son Soloman, who obtains German help for invasion.

## 1061 Byzantium

Death of ex-emperor Isaac I Comnenus, aged around 59.

Plot of 'Eparch' and other senior officials to murder Constantine X by staging a riot while he is at Mangana Palace, persuading him to embark on infiltrated imperial barge, and attacking him, but Constantine does not go aboard; they are arrested and ringleaders exiled and others sent to monasteries.

## Italy

**February** Roger has to rejoin Robert Guiscard in Southern Italy against Byzantines, but returns to Sicily on appeal from Ibn al-Timnah who is in dispute with his brother-in-law Ibn al-Hawwas; Roger's army under nephew Serlo invades North coast of Sicily to raid Ibn al-Hawwas' territory but fails to take Messina.

**Spring** Brindisi recaptured by Guiscard, and Byzantines retreat to Bari; **May** Roger captures Messina in second attack, and Guiscard joins him for attack on Enna in company with Ibn al-Tinnah.

Guiscard and Roger defeat Ibn al-Hawwas' vastly superior army outside Enna, but cannot force citadel to surrender.

**19/26 July** Death of Pope Nicholas II.

**30 September** Anselm of Baggio, Bishop of Lucca, elected Pope in Rome by reform-minded cardinals under Hildebrand's direction and takes title of Alexander II; a rival group of Roman nobles goes to German court to denounce him to the regency and succeeds in having (**28 October**) Cadalus of Parma set up as rival, Honorius II.

## 1062 Italy

**April** 'Pope' Honorius installs himself in Rome; **May** Duke Godfrey of Lorraine and Tuscany enters city to order both Popes to withdraw to dioceses and await German-backed Synod's arbitration; they do so but

excommunicate each other; Constantine X sends envoys to the subsequent synod to attempt to influence the result.

Robert Guiscard refuses to hand over promised lands in Calabria to his brother Roger, including intended marriage-gift to Roger's bride Judith of Evreux; Sicilian campaign halted while they fight each other, and Roger is besieged at Mileto; in the absence of Roger, Ibn al-Timnah ambushed and killed.

Guiscard is captured by citizens of Gerace while visiting a friend, and surrendered to Roger who reconciles with him in return for promise of the lands at dispute.

**Autumn** Returning to Sicily, Roger reinforces Troina near Messina but is faced with revolt of Greek citizens who call in Arabs and is besieged.

## 1063 Italy

**January** After four months, Roger breaks siege of Troina and executes rebel citizens.

### Byzantium

Constantine X holds a synod that anathematizes all Armenian deviators from the Orthodox doctrine established at Chalcedon; Orthodox bishops are appointed to Armenian sees, and all 'heretics' are expelled from the city of Melitene.

Hervé Francopulus defeats Yusuf's Turkish raiders into Byzantine territory; later he is responsible for betraying the governor of Edessa to Turks in personal dispute and is arrested, taken to Constantinople, and drowned in Bosphorus. **10 August** Death of Patriarch Constantine Lichudes.

### Turkish Sultanate

Alp Arslan succeeds his uncle Tughril Beg as 'Sultan' of the Seljuk Turks.

### Italy

**May** Honorius briefly seizes the Castel St. Angelo in Rome in attempt to win control of Papacy; driven out a few months later.



**Spring** Roger fights Ayub and Ali, sons of the Zirid 'Emir' Temim of Tunisia, who their father has sent to Palermo and Agrigento with armies; he wins a crushing victory at Cerami West of Troina, and sends camels as a gift to Pope Alexander who sends him consecrated Papal banner.

**August** Pisan fleet joins Roger for unsuccessful attack on Taranto.

## 1064 **Byzantium**

Patriarch of Antioch is arrested for 'heresy' as part of Constantine's purge of non-Orthodox in Eastern provinces, and many clerics deported to Constantinople.

**1 January** John Xiphilinus, now abbot of his monastery, recalled to court and made Patriarch (?) through his friend Psellus' influence.

Horde of Turkish tribesmen, 'Uzes', crosses Danube to ravage Balkans; Basil Apocapes and the futurer emperor Nicephorus Botaneiates are defeated and captured, and Thrace ravaged.

### **Byzantium/Armenia/Georgia**

Turks ravage Armenia and sack Ani.

Gagik-Abas II, ruler of Kars, surrenders his dominions to the Empire and abdicates (d. 1080).

Turks ravage Kakhétia and sack Tiflis/Tbilisi.

### **Turkish Sultanate**

Alp Arslan's cousin Kutlumish, ancestor of the later Seljuk dynasty of 'Rum' ruling Nicaea and Iconium, revolts but is defeated and killed.

### **Italy**

**May** German-sponsored synod of Mantua meets to decide on rightful Pope; Honorius refuses to turn up unless he is invited to preside, but Alexander comes and is chosen to preside and approved as rightful Pope.

Robert Guiscard and Roger fail to take Palermo thanks to plague of tarantula spiders in camp; Guiscard faces revolt from disinherited nephew Abelard.

## 1065 Byzantium

Uzes continue to ravage Balkans; Constantine finally decides to take the field and sets out from Constantinople at head of 150,000 men.

Famine, disease, and Bulgarian harassment cause the Uzes to retreat before Constantine's army reaches them, and they retire over the Danube; Constantine returns to capital.

Bagrat of Georgia sends his daughter Martha to Byzantium to marry Prince/co-emperor Michael; renamed Mary 'of Alania'.

## 1066 Byzantium

Disturbances involving Vlach tribesmen settled in Macedonia, and Thessaly.

## Italy

Mabricias and a new army sent from Byzantium to fight the Normans; Brindisi and Taranto retaken.

## Byzantium

**October** Constantine X becomes seriously ill; his wife Eudocia Macrembolitissa takes charge of government.

## Primary sources

*Chronicle of Yahya of Antioch*, translated by I. Kratchkovsky and A. Vasiliev in *Patrologia Orientalis* (Paris, 1924–32).

Michael Psellus, *Chronographia*, edited by E.R. Sewter (Penguin, 1953).

Constantine Porphyrogenitus, *De Administrando Imperio*, ed. G. Moravcik and translated by Romilly Jenkins, in *Corpus Fontum Historiae Byzantinae* (Washington, 1967).

*Letters of Patriarch Nicholas I*, translated by Romilly Jenkins and L. Westerink, in *Corpus Florum Historiae Byzantinae* (Washington, 1973).

*The Russian Primary Chronicle*, translated by Samuel Cross (Cambridge, Mass, 1930).

*Theophanes Continuatus*, ed. I. Bekker (Paris, 1825) (as above).

## Secondary sources

- Catalogue of the Byzantine Coins in the Dumbarton Oaks Collection and in the Whittemore Collection*, edited P. Grierson, vol. III Part 2 (Dumbarton Oaks, 1973).
- Romilly Jenkins, *Byzantium: The Imperial Centuries*.
- Late Classical and Medieval Studies in Honor of Albert Mathias Friend, Jr* (Princeton, 1955): article by Romilly Jenkins, 'The Date of the Slav Revolt in the Peloponnese under Romanus I', pp. 204–11.
- John Julius Norwich, *The Normans in the South* (London, 1967).
- D. Polemis, *The Doukai. A Contribution to Byzantine prosography*.
- Steven Runciman, *The Emperor Romanus Lecapenus* (Cambridge, 1929).
- , *A History of the First Bulgarian Empire* (London, 1930).
- , *The Medieval Manichee: a Study of the Christian Dualist Heresy* (Cambridge, 1947).
- , *The Eastern Schism: A Study of the Papacy and the Eastern Churches During the XIth and XIIth Centuries* (Oxford, 1955).
- Gustave Schlumberger, *Un empereur byzantin au dixieme siecle: Nicephore Phocas* (Paris, 1923).
- Arnold Toynbee, *Constantine Porphyrogenitus and His World*.
- J.F. Vannier, *Families Byzantines: Les Argyroi* (Paris, 1975).

## Articles

- Byzantine and Modern Greek Studies*, vol. xii (1988): Rosemary Morris, 'The Two Faces of Nicephorus Phocas', pp. 83–115.
- Byzantinoslavica*, vol. 33 (1971): A. Poppe, 'La derneire expedition russe contre Constantinople'.
- Byzantinoslavica*, vol. 38 (1977): J. Shepard, 'Isaac Comnenus' Coronation Day', pp. 22–30.
- Byzantion*, vol. 25/27 (1955/1957): P. Karlin-Hayter, 'Vita St. Euthymii' (translation of 'Life' of Patriarch Euthymius), pp. 1–172.
- Byzantion*, vol. 42 (1972): Paul Walker, 'A Byzantine Victory over the Fatimids at Alexandria (971)', pp. 432–40.
- Byzantion*, vol. 47 (1977): P.E. Walker, 'The "Crusade" of John Tzimisce in the Light of New Arabic Evidence', pp. 301–27.
- Dumbarton Oaks Papers*, vol. 6 (1951): A.A. Vasiliev, 'The Second Russian Attack on Constantinople', pp. 161–225.
- Dumbarton Oaks Papers*, vol. 18 (1964): George Miles, 'Byzantium and the Arabs: Relations in Crete and the Aegean Area', pp. 1–31.
- Dumbarton Oaks Papers*, vol. 19 (1965): Romilly Jenkins, 'The Chronological Inaccuracy of the "Logothete" for the Years AD 867–913', pp. 91–112.
- Ibid.: George Ostrogorsky, 'The Byzantine Background of the Moravian Mission', pp. 1–18.
- Dumbarton Oaks papers*, vol. 30 (1976): A. Poppe, 'The Political Background to the Baptism of Rus: Byzantine-Russian relations between 986–989', pp. 197–244.
- Harvard Ukrainian Studies*, vol. 14 (1990): J. Featherstone, 'Olga's Visit to Constantinople', pp. 293–312.
- Jahrbuch des osterreichischen Byzantinistik*, vol. 23 (1974): P. Karlin-Hayter, 'The Homily on the Peace with Bulgaria of 927 and the "Coronation of 913"', pp. 29–39.
- Jahrbuch des Osterreichischen Byzantinistik*, vol. 26 (1976): A. Kaxhdan, 'Once more about the "alleged" Russo-Byzantine treaty (c.a. 1047) and the Pechenegs crossing the Danube', pp. 65–77.
- Speculum*, vol. 23 (1948): Romilly Jenkins, 'The "Flight" of Samonas', pp. 217–35.
- Speculum*, vol. 44 (1969): P. Karlin-Hayter, 'The Emperor Alexander's Bad Name', pp. 585–96.

# **Part VI**

**1067–1204**

*This page intentionally left blank*

## 1067 Egypt

Severe famine.

### Byzantium

**May** Constantine X falls seriously ill, and on his deathbed makes all his courtiers swear never to recognise anyone but his sons as Emperors and his wife Eudocia Macrembolitissa swear never to marry again; **21/23 May** he dies aged ?62 and is buried at the monastery of St Nicholas Molyboton outside the 'Golden Gate' of the capital; his eldest son succeeds as Michael VII, aged around 19; due to Michael's feeble character Eudocia is effectively regent with the aid of Michael's tutor Psellus, and she looks around for a strong military man to rely on against the rising number of Turkish raids in East Anatolia.

**Summer** Turkish horde ravages Cappadocia unopposed after bypassing frontier garrisons, and its mobile cavalry is not challenged by Byzantine forces; Caesarea is taken by surprise and sacked, the populace are massacred, and the rich shrine of St Basil looted and desecrated.

Patriarch John Xiphilinus tries to dissuade Eudocia from re-marriage, but she is determined to do so and enable a military officer as her husband tackle Turks with full authority as Michael cannot do so; she consults courtiers, and a eunuch proposes Romanus Diogenes but another suggests Xiphilinus' own brother Bardas. Xiphilinus promotes his brother's cause to the Senate, but they are not enthusiastic and the idea is dropped.

Romanus Diogenes is accused of plotting to overthrow the government, probably on behalf of disgruntled officers annoyed at lack of resistance to Turks; he is exiled from Constantinople, but Eudocia recalls him due to his talents and calls him to court where she decides he is what the Empire needs.

**24 December** Eudocia promotes Romanus to rank of 'Magister' and commander of army with approval of Senate, but keeps her intention to marry him secret as yet; soon afterwards she informs Michael of her intention in private interview in his bedchamber and he agrees to accept Romanus as co-Emperor.

## 1068 Byzantium

**1 January** Romanus Diogenes marries Eudocia and is crowned as Emperor Romanus IV, aged c.45; he starts to reassert Imperial control and

improve organization on Eastern military frontier, but cannot leave Constantinople till position secure from disgruntled civilian courtiers.

**Spring** Romanus promotes Manuel Comnenus, eldest nephew of his predecessor Isaac I Comnenus, as 'proedros' and commander of Eastern armies; he thus links Isaac's relatives the Comneni to his cause, but faces dubious loyalty of Michael VII's uncle John Ducas the 'Caesar' who hoped to be Michael's chief support, and insists that when he leaves capital John's eldest son Andronicus accompanies him as informal hostage for John's loyalty. Romanus assembles a large army, including Turkic 'Uzes' tribesmen from the Balkans and other mercenaries including Norman knights from Italy and Bulgarian tribesmen.

## Italy

**June** A traitor at Montepoloso, the final rebel fiefdom resisting Robert Guiscard in Apulia, opens the gates to Guiscard's troops; the rebel commander Geoffrey of Conversano is captured inside and deprived of the town which Guiscard gives to the traitor.

**Summer** In Sicily, the North African Zirid emirate's general Ayyub gains control of the remaining territories of the local dynasty after killing aged Emir Ibn al-Hawwas in battle, and becomes Emir of Palermo; he leads army against Guiscard's brother Roger's Normans, but despite outnumbering Roger he is defeated at battle of Misilmen near Palermo; the Arabs are virtually wiped out, and Roger captures their carrier-pigeons and sends them back to Palermo dipped in owners' blood to terrify the garrison. Ayyub flees in panic back to Africa with survivors, leaving Palermo and other Arab cities to defend themselves.

Guiscard pardons Geoffrey of Conversano and most other rebels as he needs their troops for final campaign against the remnants of Byzantine authority, and invades the remaining Byzantine territories of 'Langobardia'.

**5 August** Guiscard commences siege of Byzantine capital, Bari, with first Norman fleet to cut off sea-link to Epirus. Byzantius, the Byzantine commander, manages to sail to Epirus and goes to Constantinople; he persuades Eudocia to send help.

## Byzantium

**Summer** Romanus IV leads his new army South-East through Cappadocia and on into Lycandrus towards Euphrates, but the highly mobile Turks

have fled; while he is in Lycandrus the Turks descend on and sack Neocaesarea in North-East Anatolia. He does not march in pursuit, but goes on into Syria to besiege and retake Hierapolis.

While Romanus' army is in Syria Turks swiftly cross Anatolia to his rear and sack Amorium, important military base on his lines of communication to Constantinople; disgruntled Armenian mercenaries desert Romanus' army and return home. Romanus returns to Constantinople.

## 1069 Italy

**Spring** Romanus sends a naval squadron to reinforce Bari, led by new 'Catepan' Stephen Pateranus; 12 supply-ships are intercepted by Normans off Monopoli and sunk, but main Byzantine squadron breaks through to Bari; Byzantium returns with the relief force, but **July** is later killed by a Norman-bribed assassin.

### Byzantium

**Spring** Romanus leads his reinforced army back across North-East Anatolia, but is short of money to pay mercenaries; the Western mercenary knights' leader Crispin complains their pay is inadequate and when Romanus ignores him rebels to set his men plundering the peasantry and seizing money from landowners and tax-collectors in 'Armeniacon' theme. Crispin defeats Romanus's brother-in-law Samuel Alousianus, but is eventually defeated, captured and imprisoned.

Romanus marches across the North-East into Celtzene, but the Turks avoid him and their mobile cavalry strikes south into Cappadocia; at Sebastea Romanus hears the Turks are heading for Iconium, and he sets off on forced march but is too late to prevent its sacking.

? Birth of Romanus and Eudocia's elder son, Nicephorus Diogenes.

## 1070 Byzantium

Discontent is growing in Constantinople at Romanus' lack of success, and Romanus has to stay there to deal with threat of plots; 'Caesar' John Ducas is suspected of leading malcontents but Romanus does not move against him.

? Birth of Romanus and Eudocia's second son, Leo Diogenes.



**Spring-Summer** Manuel Comnenus leads Romanus' army to Sebastea, and sends half of it South into Syria to deal with Turks and relieve siege of Hierapolis; his half of army remains in NE, but he is ambushed in his camp and kidnapped by Sultan Alp Arslan's brother-in-law Erisen's general 'Chrysocule' near Colonea.

Manuel is ransomed by Romanus and his mother Anna Dalassena, but while his army is leaderless a Turkish force strikes right across Anatolia into the unravaged Western provinces and sacks the city of Chonae; again the local shrine, of St. Michael, is principal target, and refugees from city hide in underground caves nearby to face catastrophe from flash-flooding.

Manuel's erstwhile captor Erisen deserts to Byzantines.

## Syria

Turks overrun Syrian countryside, and start to pick off isolated cities; Fatimid resistance collapses and most of the cities that hold out, e.g. Tyre under Ibn Abi Aqil, are independent of their authority from now on.

## Italy

Siege of Bari continues.

**Summer** Patarenos decides the only way to save city is to assassinate Guiscard, and a Byzantine spy gets into his camp and hurls poisoned javelin through wall of his tent but narrowly misses him.

**Winter** Hard winter intensifies sufferings in Bari, but Pateranus eludes Norman blockade and sails to Constantinople to beg for urgent assistance.

## 1071 Italy

**Early** Pateranus returns to Bari with news that Romanus is preparing relief-force led by Joscelin of Molfetta, an exiled Apulian rebel against Guiscard who is now Byzantine lord of Corinth; however Guiscard's brother Roger brings Norman force from Sicily to join siege.

The citizens of Bari celebrate approach of relief-force too soon and Guiscard notes that they have put torches on walls and guesses they are to guide Byzantine ships to harbour; his fleet sails out and catches the

approaching Byzantine fleet off-guard routing them and taking Joscelin prisoner; 9 of 20 Byzantine ships sunk and not one gets into Bari.

**Spring** Romanus marches into Anatolia again with a massive army, and takes precaution of exiling John Ducas to Bithynia so he is not in capital to plot in his absence; as Imperial vessel crosses Bosphorus a grey dove alights on it, and Imperial tent collapses in assembly-camp at Helenopolis – both are claimed as bad omens. Then Romanus' chief general Manuel Comnenus dies while army are in Bithynia, and Romanus refuses his younger brother Alexius (the future emperor) permission to join army as too young. Romanus marches on into 'Anatolicon' theme via Dorylaeum, but many horses are killed in fire at camp.

## Syria

**Spring** Sultan Alp Arslan besieges Byzantine Edessa; Basil the Bulgarian 'Duke' of Mesopotamia leads defenders in absence of commander of region 'Catepan' Paul.

## Italy

**16 April** On the day before Palm Sunday, Bari surrenders to Guiscard after his partisans in city seize one of the towers; end of Byzantine rule in Italy after over 530 years.

Guiscard and brother Roger enter Bari in triumph but citizens are spared and keep privileges; then Roger returns to Sicily, and Guiscard assembles fleet at Otranto; fearing descent on Epirus, 'Duke' Perenus of Dyrrachium across the Adriatic strengthens defences.

Domenico Silvio becomes Doge of Venice.

## Byzantium

**Summer** Romanus' huge army of around 100,000 men, many Western and Balkan tribal mercenaries, marches into NE Anatolia, and the muster of troops of 'Anatolicon' theme is below strength as many are already fighting bands of Turkish raiders; Romanus heads for Chliat that the Turks have captured, but faces a rebellion of disorderly and plundering German mercenaries at Cryapege; his army is demoralised as passes the carnage of Manuel Comnenus' ambushed army in 1070 on the Sebastea-Colonea road, but arrives safely at Theodosiopolis.

Alp Arslan hastens North from Syria to assist his local forces; Romanus sends John Tarchaniotes and best troops to retake Chliat while he besieges Turkish-held Manzikert.

## Italy

**Late July–August** Guiscard and largely Greek-manned fleet sails south into Calabria, and on to Sicily to aid Roger against leaderless Arabs; they meet at Messina, and arrange a trick to gain control of Catania whereby Guiscard sails up requesting permission to enter and load supplies for campaign against Malta but once he's allowed inside seizes the town. The Catanians resist, but are overwhelmed after four days and surrender.

The combined Norman force moves on to besiege Palermo, former Arab capital.

## Byzantium

**August** Romanus besieges and takes Manzikert; he hears of arrival of Turkish army nearby who have evaded his incompetent scouts, but does not realise its size or that Alp Arslan is in command; he sends out reconnaissance-party under Nicephorus Bryennius, who are heavily defeated and call for reinforcements; Basilacius leads reinforcements but is captured, and the Byzantines hear of Sultan's arrival and start to panic.

Turks surround the Byzantine camp; the Balkan 'Uzes' Turkic mercenaries flee, and Romanus decided to break out towards Chliat; however Tarchaniotes, in command at Chliat, abandons the town and retreats rather than come to Romanus' assistance; Alp Arslan offers a truce to Romanus and peace-terms based on no territorial concessions, but Romanus is determined to break up the massive, mobile Turkish army now he has it concentrated against him and demands that Turks abandon their camp to him and withdraw before any talks.

*Battle of Manzikert* Romanus in Byzantine centre, Bryennius in command of left, and John Ducas' son Andronicus in command of rearguard; the Byzantines advance out of camp and after day of fighting are pressing Turks back to their camp but as darkness approaches Romanus requires his army to pull back to undefended Byzantine camp for night. Andronicus Ducas turns his standard and leads men in hasty retreat, and panic spreads as other troops think he's been routed – it's later believed he deliberately sought this outcome to undermine Romanus' victory. The Turks see

the panic and return to attack and Byzantine army crumbles; those who have not fled are killed or captured and Romanus is knocked off horse, wounded, and captured.

The first Roman/Byzantine Emperor to fall into enemy hands since Valerian in AD 260, Romanus is taken before Alp Arslan but reassured and invited to dinner; he is required to pay tribute and sign a treaty of alliance, but is released after 8 days and permitted to return home with his few surviving lieutenants.

The Byzantine army's virtual annihilation leaves Anatolia open to influx of raiding and later settling Turks; meanwhile messengers reach Constantinople saying Romanus is dead or captured, and Imperial councillors decide to regard him as lost and try to persuade Michael to assert authority against Eudocia; he refuses, but John Ducas is recalled and leads a Ducas family council; John's son Andronicus returns to assist father, and a letter from Romanus to Eudocia explaining his survival and peace-terms is ignored as the Ducas family win over the capital's Guards regiments.

**24 October** Romanus is deposed in Ducas-led coup, and Eudocia flees her apartments in Sacred Palace to hide in underground chamber; she is deported to a nunnery and Michael VII proclaimed sole ruler; Michael's uncle John Ducas and Michael's tutor Psellus are the real leaders of government; orders are sent to provincial governors not to obey Romanus.

Romanus reaches Amasea to rally his surviving troops, then finds that he has been deposed; John Ducas sends out his second son Constantine as commander of army against Romanus.

Romanus is besieged in Amasea, defeated in attempt to break out, but manages to flee to Tyrpaeum; his general Theodore Alyattes is captured and blinded.

**Winter** Chataturius, 'Duke' of Antioch, comes to Romanus' aid and persuades him to retreat to Cilicia; meanwhile in Constantinople the Ducas regime exiles leading Diogenes sympathizers, and Anna Dalassena and her surviving sons the Comneni brothers are sent to the Princes' Islands.

## Italy

**Winter** Sicilian Arab towns and the Zirids of Tunisia send fleet to relieve Palermo, but it is defeated by Guiscard's navy; the Normans break through the harbour-chain of Palermo and burn ships in harbour, but Guiscard has to consider return to Italy as his ambitious nephews Abelard and Herman revolt and are joined by Counts Richard of Capua and Gisulf of Salerno.

## 1072 Italy

**5 January** Guiscard's forces storm the walls of Palermo, and take most of the city except fortress-quarter of 'Al-Qasr' which surrenders the next day; the citizens are granted quarter and free performance of their religion and possession of rights, property, and Islamic law provided they pay tribute; **10 January** Guiscard, brother Roger, and commanders enter Palermo in triumph, and re-consecrate ancient basilica of Santa Maria after 240 years as mosque.

Guiscard claims the overall fealty of all Sicily as invested as its Count by Pope in 1059, but will only rule Palermo, half Messina, and half the Val Demone directly and the rest goes to Roger, 'Great Count of Sicily', as his vassal; much of Sicilian strongholds still holding out surrender, but (**Summer**) nephew Serlo is killed fighting in the interior; Emirs of Trapani and Taormina and much of south coast still resists.

## Byzantium

### Georgia

Death of King Bagrat; succeeded by son George II.

### Turkish Sultanate (Persia, Syria, etc.)

**Spring** Alp Arslan is called Eastwards into Persia to deal with rebellion; he is successful, but is killed by treachery at parley with a rebel chieftain and his 18-year-old son Malik Shah succeeds as sultan; the chief minister, 'Vizler', is the famous Nizam Al-Mulk, the learned Persian patron of culture who later founds the 'Nizamiyyah' academy at Baghdad.

## Byzantium

**Spring** Andronicus Ducas is sent against Romanus IV, and after six days' assembly of troops at Chrysopolis marches to Cilicia; the Bishops of Chalcedon, Heraclea and Colonus are sent as envoys to Romanus to advise his surrender and avoid civil war, but he refuses.

Romanus is besieged in Adana, and Chataturius of Antioch and Crispin lead an unsuccessful sally; Chataturius is captured and pardoned; Romanus sends urgent envoys East to find Alp Arslan and beg for assistance

but his troops open the gates of Adana to besiegers and he dresses as a monk to show his abdication from power and is arrested.

Andronicus leads army back to Constantinople, and en route orders arrive to blind Romanus whose illness (?poison by Ducas agents) causes them to halt at Cotyaeum; Andronicus unsuccessfully asks his father John Ducas to reconsider sentence.

**29 June** Romanus blinded at Cotyaeum in defiance of original Ducas promises on surrender of no physical harm, and sentence carried out with deliberate brutality so that **4 August** soon after his arrival as prisoner on Island of Prote, Princes' Islands, he dies.

Isaac Comnenus, Manuel's next brother, appointed commander of Eastern armies to fight influx of Turks into Anatolia. Roussell of Bailleul (? relative of Norman family of Balliol) leads new body of French knightly mercenaries.

? Michael VII marries the Georgian Princess Maria 'the Alan', sister of George II, as part of alliance against the Turks; she receives as wedding-gift a precious stone given by Chataturius to Andronicus Ducas on pardon.

## 1073 Italy

Robert Guiscard returns to Italy and advances on the rebels from assembly at Melfi; **2 February** fall of Trani. Most towns in Apulia surrender, but when Cisternino refuses (**March**) Guiscard has its captive lord Peter of Trani tied to wattle screen and carried in front of his attackers to force them to submit.

Guiscard overcomes most of rebels except Richard of Capua but is delayed by serious illness and when he seems to be dying his formidable wife Sichelgaita persuades barons that their son, 13-year-old Roger Borsa, is more acceptable heir to local Lombard lords (her kin) than her stepson the older and stronger Bohemund; when Pope Alexander II dies (**21 April**) Guiscard's death is widely rumoured. Alexander's successor, Cardinal Hildebrand, takes title of Pope Gregory VII (**22 April**); he writes condolences to Sichelgaita and receives reply from Guiscard assuring he is recovered.

Interview between Guiscard and Gregory planned to renew Papal investiture of Norman lordship of Southern Italy, but does not take place as at Benevento (**10 August**.) Guiscard won't enter city for fear of assassins and Gregory won't set foot outside; rupture of relations follows.

Letter from Michael VII reaches Guiscard, suggesting alliance.

## **Byzantium**

Roussell of Bailleul leads his mercenaries against Turks in Central Anatolia, but he is more interested in Byzantine weakness and the potential it offers for his own ambitions.

**Autumn** John Ducas falls from favour with Michael VII, due to the rising influence of eunuch Nicephoritzes, 'Logothete of the Drome' (foreign minister); he retires to estates in Bithynia.

Roussell launches rebellion, and starts to plunder Byzantine provinces in Central Anatolia; an imperial army is prepared to send against him, but Isaac Comnenus cannot assist as his depleted army is defeated by Turks and he is captured.

## **Turkish Sultanate**

Malik Shah's authority is resisted by his uncle, 'Emir' Kaward of Kerman in Eastern Persia; he marches into Kerman and defeats, captures, and executes Kaward, but rebel's heirs retain subordinate emirate.

## **Italy**

**Autumn** Following death of Duke Sergius of Amalfi leaving child heir, his subjects seek Guiscard's protection; Guiscard gains control of city, beating Papal ally Gisulf of Salerno.

## **1074 Byzantium**

Isaac Comnenus is ransomed from Turks, the money being delivered by his younger brother Alexius.

## **Italy**

**Early** Pope Gregory sends appeals to Countess Beatrice of Tuscany, her son-in-law Godfrey of Lorraine, and others to raise an army to march against Guiscard, who he excommunicates, and then go on to Byzantium to reply to appeals for aid; **Lent** assembly announced for June at Viterbo.

Guiscard ‘humbly’ requests to meet Gregory at Benevento again to sort out differences; Gregory doesn’t turn up, but **June** the Papal army breaks up after the Tuscan contingent from Pisa quarrels with Gisulf of Salerno over his navy’s piracy; Papal plans collapse and Guiscard survives unscathed.

## Byzantium

**Spring–Summer** John Ducas and son Andronicus return to Constantinople; Nicephoritzes persuades Michael to send Andronicus against Roussell, and Andronicus made ‘Domestic of the Scholae’ under John as overall commander; the Byzantines advance into Galatia to meet Roussell in the upper Sangarius valley.

Battle of the ‘Zompus Bridge’, where military road to Syria crosses Sangarius: John and Varangian Guard in centre, Andronicus on left, French mercenary commander Papas on right, Nicephorus Botaneites with rear guard; Roussell routs Byzantines and John taken prisoner, and Andronicus seriously wounded and captured trying to rescue prisoner father; Roussell advances unresisted into Bithynia to occupy John’s estates and camps on Mount Sophon.

**Autumn** John’s second son Constantine made commander of new Byzantine army to fight Roussell, but collapses and dies on eve of departure; expedition abandoned while Nicephoritzes reorganizes army and raises huge and unpopular taxes.

Michael VII writes to Guiscard again, suggesting infant son Constantine marries Guiscard’s daughter Helena.

## 1075 Arab Caliphate

**3 April** Death of Al-Qaim after rule of 44 years, succeeded by son Al-Muqtadi.

## Hungary

? King Geza II receives a Byzantine crown from Michael VII as part of alliance; this becomes the later ‘Crown of St. Stephen’ used for coronations until 1916.

## Byzantium

Death of Patriarch John Xiphilinus; Ducas partisan Cosmas ‘elected’ to succeed him.



Roussell releases the injured Andronicus Ducas, in exchange for sons Michael and John as hostages; however the boys' attendants arrange their escape from Roussell's camp in Bithynia to city of Nicomedia, but John is recaptured.

Roussell proclaims John the 'Caesar' as his puppet-emperor, possibly with his victim's connivance to help overthrow the rule of Nicephoritzes in capital; Nicephoritzes sends money to the Turks in return for aid, and their general Artouch advances into Bithynia to force Roussell out; Roussell's camp on Mount Sophon is taken by surprise in lightning attack, army routed, and Roussell and John taken prisoner.

Turks take their prisoners Eastwards, but later Roussell's wife ransoms him and he retreats with surviving troops into the 'Armeniacon' theme to rebuild rebel force as a brigand living off countryside.

Michael VII ransoms John Ducas, but insists that he is made a monk en route back so he cannot claim the throne; at the capital John appears before nephew to thank him and announce 'retirement' to estates, leaving Nicephoritzes unchallenged.

Alexius Comnenus sent against Roussell, and Isaac Comnenus to Antioch as 'Duke'.

## Italy

**24 December** Pope Gregory briefly kidnapped by domestic enemies in Rome, who had earlier unsuccessfully sought Guiscard's assistance.

## Byzantium

**Autumn 1075 or Spring 1076** Alexius Comnenus cannot outfight Roussell as his army is too small, and many desert en route to Amasea; however Alexius bribes local Turkish tribesmen to abandon Roussell, harangues the citizens of Amasea to gain more funds, and establishes alliance with the Emir Tuctush; Roussell is harassed by Turkish cavalry and, his troops deserting him, surrenders to Alexius.

The captive Roussell is taken to Amasea, and as angry citizens demand vengeance on him Alexius arranges a fake 'blinding' to satisfy them; he takes Roussell to Heraclea, but cannot reach Constantinople by land for Turkish marauders so has to sail back.

Theodore Gabras, Byzantine commander, retakes Trebizond from local Turks and establishes Byzantine 'bridge-head' in Pontus, his family duly become semi-autonomous lords of city over next decades.

## 1076 Italy

**Spring** During Papal confrontation with Emperor Henry IV, Henry unsuccessfully seeks Guiscard's help with offer of Imperial investiture with lands; Guiscard reconciles with Robert of Capua and **early summer** they besiege Count Gisulf, Sichelgaita's brother, in Salerno; however the rapacious Gisulf is not popular with his subjects particularly after he takes most of citizens' stores for his troops and famine breaks out.

### Byzantium

?Michael VII's alliance with Guiscard confirmed on basis of Prince Constantine's betrothal to Guiscard's daughter Helena, and the latter is sent to Constantinople to be educated ahead of marriage; Helena re-baptised into Orthodox Church.

?Psellus, Michael VII's ex-tutor, completes the second part of his '*Chronographia*', account of Byzantine political history 1025–1070s, dedicated to Imperial family.

### Italy

**13 December** Surrender of Salerno due to internal treachery; Gisulf holds out in the citadel.

## 1077 Hungary

Death of Geza II of Hungary; succeeded by younger brother (St) Ladislas.

### Syria

'Emir' Tuctush, younger brother of Malik Shah, becomes his viceroy of Syria and Palestine.

## Italy

**May** Surrender of citadel of Salerno; Guiscard takes the city to join his dominions, and Gisulf and his subordinates are allowed to leave unhindered; Gisulf falls to interest Richard of Capua in resistance and goes to join Pope, who is occupied with crisis with Emperor Henry IV and has gone North to Tuscany to await potential German rebellion.

## Byzantium

After the death of Alexius Comnenus' first wife, John Ducas arranges his marriage to c.11-year-old grand-daughter Irene, daughter of Andronicus Ducas; Andronicus objects but falls ill and **14 October** dies, taking monastic habit on deathbed.

Michael VII requires Psellus to retire from court, probably at Nicephoritzes' instigation.

Rebel Armenian forces seize control of isolated Edessa from Byzantine garrison, and their leader Philaretus arrests 'Duke' Leo and installs Basil Apocapes as his governor.

**October** Angry at Nicephoritzes' control of government, aristocrat general Nicephorus Botaneiates revolts in Phrygia; the authorities in Constantinople are blamed for lack of action against Turks, and Nicephoritzes seemingly either can't afford new army or fears its generals seizing power; the generals Cabasilas, Synadenus, Goudeles, Straboromanus, Nicephorus Paleologus, and Nicephorus Melissenus elsewhere in Anatolia join revolt and hail Botaneites as emperor.

Nicephorus Bryennius, now governor of Dyrrachium, hears that fearful Nicephoritzes is planning to poison him; popular from defeating Serbs, he proclaims himself emperor too and his brother John and general Basilacius join him; the Bryennioi lead armies of Balkan provinces along the Via Egnatia towards Constantinople.

## Italy

**19 December** Already blockading Naples, Guiscard lays siege to Papal-owned Benevento.

## Byzantium

**November–December** Botaneites and the rebel army face the Seljuk Turks' local commander, Malik Shah's cousin the 'Emir' Sulaiman, who is occupying lands in Bithynia across their route from Cotyaeum in Phrygia to Nicaea; they evade them in night-march but Sulaiman hurries in pursuit and Botaneites has to prevent attack before he can reach safety in Nicaea by sending his own Turkish commander 'Chrysocule' to arrange truce.

In order to purchase safety from Turkish attack while he pursues the throne, Botaneites has to agree to let Sulaiman's troops garrison cities of Bithynia as far as the Bosphorus; he marches on to Chrysopolis to confront Michael VII's loyalists in capital.

Bryennius occupies Adrianople and reaches the walls of Constantinople from the West; Alexius Comnenus and Michael VII's brother Constantine defeat first rebel attack on walls.

## 1078 Byzantium

**7 January** Rioting in Constantinople, and the populace hails Botaneites as emperor; Nicephoritzes is lynched.

Bryennius' troops fail to achieve surrender of the capital, and he retires to Adrianople to await events.

Revolt against Byzantine authority in Northern Balkans by 'Paulician' heretics, led by Lecus of Philippopolis and Dobromir of Mesembria.

## Italy

**3 March** Pope Gregory excommunicates Norman leaders again; a few weeks later Richard of Capua dies, and his son Jordan abandons siege of Naples to seek reconciliation with Pope.

## Byzantium

**March** Michael VII, still facing two rival enemy armies and giving up hope, accepts his uncle John Ducas' advice to abdicate and chooses brother Constantius as successor in written document; Constantius refuses

throne and proposes to accept Botaneites; **31 March** Michael abdicates, aged around 29, and retires to monastery of Studius and Alexius Comnenus and Constantius Ducas take control.

**2 April** Alexius and Constantius deliver abdication-document to Praenetus in Bithynia, Botaneites' headquarters; Botaneites ascends throne as Emperor Nicephorus III, aged c. 70, and **3 April** enters Constantinople.

Nicephorus marries Empress Maria after her previous marriage has been annulled, and recognizes her son Constantine Ducas as his heir; Constantine's betrothal to Helena annulled and she is sent to nunnery; Alexius Comnenus 'Grand Domestic of the Scholae' and sent with army against Bryennius.

Sulaiman sends 2000 Turks to assist Nicephorus III, ? he takes the title of 'Sultan of Rûm', i.e. the 'Roman' lands in Anatolia, and selects Nicaea as his capital.

Bryennius refuses negotiations, but is defeated by Alexius at battle of Halongus in Epirus, taken prisoner, and sent to Constantinople to be blinded; however Basilacius now rebels too, and when Alexius arrives back at Constantinople Nicephorus III refuses him expected entry (? afraid of Comneni plot to replace him) and insists he returns immediately to tackle Basilacius who has seized Thessalonica.

Alexius encamps near Basilacius, evacuates his camp at night as bait for attack, and when as he expected the rebels attack they find the camp empty and as they hesitate Alexius launches ambush; he wins a second battle outside Thessalonica, and Basilacius flees into the city as citizens open the gates; Basilacius is captured but Imperial envoys collect him from Alexius en route to capital and Basilacius is blinded.

Alexius made 'Sebastus', but his influence is resisted by Imperial advisers Borilus and (?) Germain.

Alexius defeats the Paulician rebels and arrests leaders, and later tackles Pecheneg raiders in Balkans.

Michael VII made titular Archbishop of Ephesus and banished to Lesbos.

## Italy

**Autumn** Jordan of Capua, Guiscard's nephew Abelard, Geoffrey of Conversano, and others lead Papal-inspired revolt in Apulia; Robert Guiscard takes 8 months to put down rebellion, and while he is besieging Taranto his wife Sichelgaita besieges Trani.

**1079 Italy**

**Spring–Summer** Guiscard defeats rebellion.

**Byzantium**

Nicephorus III sends army into Bithynia against the Turks; Constantius, Michael VII's brother, is sent to Chrysopolis with command but proclaims himself emperor instead and his partisans win control of army after a brief fight; however Nicephorus bribes the rebels to desert and sends another army over the Bosphorus, and Constantius's army crumbles; he surrenders and is sent to an island monastery.

Last prince of the Armenian royal house, living in Cilician area where many Armenians moved after end of kingdom in greater safety from Turks, is executed by Byzantine officers after he killed the Archbishop of Caesarea.

? Isaac Comnenus returns to Constantinople at end of governorship of now-isolated Antioch.

**Syria**

Pro-Turkish 'Uqailid' dynasty takes over Aleppo.

**1080 Byzantium**

Nicephorus III adopts his nephew Synadenus as his son and heir, thus breaking his agreement with Empress Maria that her son Constantine succeeds him; this sparks renewed Ducas conspiracy, led by 'Caesar' John from nominal retirement and aiming in favour of his grand-daughter's husband Alexius Comnenus.

John is required to remove to his estates in Thrace; the new governor of Dyrrachium, Monomachatus who Borilus and Germain want out of the capital, contacts Alexius before he leaves and warns him against them.

Sultan Sulaiman's Turks seize Cyzicus; when Alexius and Isaac Comnenus are suddenly approached by Imperial attendants at the palace, they fear it is arrest but it is only request to tell Emperor. Empress Maria adopts Alexius as her 'son', in alliance with Anna Dalassena who dislikes Irene

Ducaena and wants Alexius to divorce her once he's emperor, marry Maria instead, and halt Ducas influence.

?Rupen the Armenian sets up separatist principality to resist both Byzantines and Turks in Taurus mountains of Northern Cilicia, centred at Bardziberd castle.

? 'Paulician' leaders of 1078 revolt released and honoured by Nicephorus III.

## **Italy**

**29 June** Pope Gregory reaches agreement with Guiscard at Ceprano and invests him with all the lands he received from predecessors – no mention of Amalfi and Salerno.

Guiscard plans invasion of Byzantium on excuse of breaking of Helena's engagement, and announces support for a monk who arrives at Salerno claiming to be escaped Michael VII.

**December** Guiscard sends Count Radulf/Raoul to Constantinople to demand satisfaction for Helena and spy out the land and seduce Western knights in Imperial service.

## **Byzantium**

**Winter** Nicephorus Melissenus, general in command in Phrygia, proclaims himself emperor and marches on Constantinople; however his use of local garrisons in army means that he has to let local Turkish bands replace them in command of his towns.

## **1081 Byzantium**

**14 February** Informed that Nicephorus intends to arrest and blind them, Alexius and Isaac Comnenus flee Constantinople with friends Constantine Pacurianus and Humbertopulus, taking Imperial horses at Blachernae Palace stables; they send successful request for money to John Ducas at his estate at Tzurolon, and ride to nearby headquarters of the Western armies where Alexius, though the younger of brothers (?aged 25/26), is proclaimed Emperor.

Anna Dalassena and Comneni womenfolk take refuge in Cathedral of Hagia Sophia, until Nicephorus allows them to go to convent of Petriion unmolested.

Alexius marches on the capital; Melissenus, his brother-in-law, arrives at Damalis on opposite shore of Bosphorus and offers division of empire, but this is rejected and he is told he can be ‘Caesar’ i.e. second in rank to Emperor.

**28/29 March** Alexius’ troops let in through the Charisius Gate in land-walls by the German mercenary commander Gilpractus, and advance through the capital, looting en route; Borilus rallies Imperial troops at Forum of Constantine, and Nicephorus thinks of sending for Melissenus.

**Easter Sunday, 1 April** Fleet under George Palaeologus, married to Irene Ducaena’s sister, deserts Nicephorus for Alexius; Alexius refuses offer from Nicephorus to adopt him as son on advice of arriving John Ducas, and advances to Sacred Palace as Emperor flees to Hagia Sophia to seek sanctuary.

Patriarch Cosmas persuades Nicephorus to abdicate, and Alexius becomes Emperor Alexius I and Nicephorus a monk.

Melissenus accepts title of ‘Caesar’ and swears allegiance, and Comneni take over government but it is noted that Empress does not leave Palace and Irene, nominally Empress now, is only sent to ‘lower palace’ (Boucoleon Palace) – Alexius marrying Maria at Anna Dalassena’s instigation remains a threat for some weeks until Maria is finally persuaded to move to Mangana convent.

Constantine, Maria’s son, becomes Alexius’ heir and Anna keeps Irene from political power; Cosmas crowns Alexius, who has to pay restitution for unpopular plundering in city during attack, but **8 May** Cosmas is replaced as Patriarch at Anna’s instigation by Eustratius Garidas.

Alexius creates new titles to outrank ‘Caesar’, so brother Isaac made ‘Sebastocrator’ (new second rank to Emperor), younger brother Adrian ‘Protosebastos’, younger brother Nicephorus ‘Sebastos’ and ‘Great Drungarius’ (Admiral of Navy).

Alexius sends envoys and money to Henry IV for alliance against Guiscard and replaces Monomachatus at Dyrrachium with George Palaeologus; the ex-governor flees to Servia; he has to evacuate troops from most of remaining cities in Anatolia to form army to fight Guiscard, and Turks soon take over; the ‘Emir’ Tzachas seizes Smyrna and soon sets up naval dominion including Samos; Alexius forms alliance with Sultan Sulaiman, establishing River Dracon in Bithynia as frontier and abandoning Nicaea, etc.

**17 June** Guiscard and the false Michael VII land in Epirus despite stormy crossing of Adriatic; the Norman army marches on and besieges Dyrrachium.



Alexius forms alliance with Venice, whose fleet comes to his aid and defeats Norman squadron under Bohemund at Pallio (**July**); Palaeologus mounts sally outside Dyrrachium.

**August** Alexius leaves Isaac and Anna in charge of capital, and marches West with army including English refugees from 1066 in Varangian Guard, Taticius and Turkish force, Armenians from Cilicia and Normans led by Humbertopulus; they assemble forces at Salonica and then cross the Pindus Mountains along Via Egnatia.

**10 October** Alexius and army arrive at the Charzane river-crossing outside Dyrrachium, and confront besiegers; **18 October** at the ensuing battle the Byzantines attack and defenders sally, but are heavily defeated. Sichelgaita rides in battle rallying Normans, and the English Varangian regiment are surrounded and overwhelmed; Michael VII's brother Constantius among those killed, and Palaeologus is cut off from the city and has to retreat with Alexius.

Byzantines retire over mountains, and in pursuit Alexius is once cut off from main army by a band of knights and nearly captured; Alexius retires to Ochrid, and sends appeal to Constantinople to raise money while Venetian navy leads resistance at Dyrrachium.

Synod at Hagia Sophia; Patriarch Eustratius leads clerical agreement to surrender gold Church treasures to be melted down for coin on excuse of urgent necessity against illegality under canon law; Bishop Leo of Chalcedon leads resistance.

Alexius leaves 'Grand Domestic' Pacurianus in charge of army at Salonica and returns to capital, a 'Paulician' contingent from Thrace deserts the Imperial army.

## 1082 **Byzantium**

John Italus, head of philosophy ('Consul of the Philosophers') and successor to Psellus at the Constantinople 'University', is put on trial on charges of Neoplatonist heresy, possibly exaggerated by Comnenus as reassurance to the Church after the controversy over seizure of episcopal treasures; he is taken first before Isaac Comnenus, in Alexius' absence, and then the Synod with violent demonstrations against him, is anathematized and deposed, and signs admission of guilt; some followers acquitted.

Alexius signs treaty with Venetian representatives, allowing them very favourable tax-free concessions to trade in major Byzantine ports, in return for renewed naval alliance against Guiscard; however **21 February** a Venetian in Dyrrachium opens the gates of the city to Guiscard.

Alexius' agents stir up rebellion in Apulia, and Guiscard's nephew Abelard and Hermann lead it again; at Alexius' instigation Henry IV invades Italy to attack the Pope and besieges Rome.

Guiscard marches East, and **April** his son Bohemund takes Castoria which 300 Varangians surrender; Serb secessionists such as Bodin of Zeta join invaders, but **April** Guiscard reaches Castoria to hear of the crisis in Italy and decides he must return home, swearing oath to remain unshaved until he returns.

**May** Alexius leaves Constantinople; Bohemund besieges Joannina, capital of Epirus, and Alexius attempts to relieve it but is defeated and retires to Ochrid, then on to Vardar valley to raise new troops; Alexius returns to Constantinople and Pacurianus abandons Ochrid to advancing Bohemund, leaving Ariebas the Armenian to hold citadel which is besieged.

Bohemund advances to Veria, where he is repulsed, Servia, Bodena, and Moglena; Alexius tries to buy off Bohemund's subordinate commanders and Raoul of Pontoise takes Skopia but then defects to Alexius; Bohemund captures some other rebelling lords and blinds some and sends others to his father in Italy.

**Autumn** Bohemund advances into Thessaly over the Pindus, takes Trikkala, and besieges capital, Larissa; Leo Cephalas defends the town. Alexius receives 7000 mercenaries from Sultan Sulaiman; Pacurianus retakes Moglena.

Patriarch Euthymius of Jerusalem arrives in Constantinople with details of Turkish conquest of Palestine; Alexius sends him as unsuccessful envoy to Bohemund.

## Italy

**Autumn** Henry IV withdraws from Rome to ravage Tuscany; Guiscard returns to Apulia to suppress rebels.

## 1083 Byzantium

**Spring** Alexius leaves Constantinople with a new army, having dreamt of an icon of St. Demetrius (warrior-saint, patron of Thessalonica) promising victory; he marches into Thessaly and confronts Bohemund at Trikkala.

## Italy

**Spring** Henry IV returns to besiege Rome; 2 June he takes the Leonine City, but Pope Gregory holds out in Castel St. Angelo and Henry and his 'anti-Pope' Clement face stalemate; **June** Robert Guiscard takes Canosa from nephew Herman to end rebellion but Count Roger is called away to Sicily and Norman army too small to go to Pope's assistance yet.

## Byzantium

**Battle of Trikkala** Alexius gives Imperial standard to Melissenus and Bohemund chases him from battlefield but the rest of Byzantine force rallies and archers shoot down the Norman horses; the Norman camp is stormed and sacked, and Bohemund holds out on a nearby hill till he can slip away in darkness; he returns to Epirus, installing garrison in Castoria under Count of Brienne en route.

Bohemund at Valona on Epirot coast, while **October** Alexius besieges Castoria; Brienne surrenders after gates are stormed, in return for free passage providing he swears never to attack Empire again, and his second-in-command Peter Aliphas and a lot of his troops enter Byzantine service.

Alexius arrests 'Paulician' heretic leaders en route back to Constantinople and forces them to become Orthodox in return for release; **1 December** he arrives at capital; **2 December** his and Irene's first child, Anna Comnena (the historian), is born and is soon engaged to ex-Empress Maria's son Constantine to reaffirm his heirship and Comnenus/Ducas alliance.

## Italy

Roger of Sicily defeats and pardons his rebel bastard son Jordan.

## Turkish Sultanate

Sultan Sulaiman campaigns in South-East Anatolia and conquers Tarsus, Adana, and Anazarbus.

Death of Basil Apocapes, ruler of Edessa; Philaretus the Armenian takes control.

## 1084 Byzantium

**Winter** To satisfy resentment in the Church led by Leo of Chalcedon, Alexius calls the Senate, generals, and bishops to main residence at Blachernae Palace and insists that he only took a little of Church's treasure and that in extreme necessity; he will pay back annual sums to Churches of Chalkopratela and Antiphonete in Constantinople for their losses (golden doors of the former were melted down)

Alexius exiles army and aristocratic plotters.

## Italy

**March** Henry IV is marching on Apulia when the besieged citizens of Rome finally agree to surrender; he returns for **21 March** ceremonial entry and Gregory is deposed by compliant Synod and replaced with Clement who **31 March** crowns Henry in St. Peter's.

Gregory's envoys succeed in persuading Guiscard to help and he leads a large army on Rome; Henry withdraws to Lombardy and **27 May** Guiscard storms the Flaminian Gate to sack the city and rescue Gregory from Castel St. Angelo.

Guiscard turns his Saracen mercenaries on the Romans, and has to be rescued by son Roger Borsa from rioters; the city is burnt and Gregory is so unpopular that when Guiscard leaves **July** he accompanies him.

Venetian fleet in Adriatic defeats the Normans.

Vitale Falier succeeds as Doge of Venice.

## Byzantium

Byzantine Thracian 'Paulician' leader Traulus flees Constantinople to set up rebel base at Beliatoba near Philippopolis and ally with Pecheneg raiders.

'Emir' Abul Qasim, Turkish commander at Nicaea for Sultan, sends naval expedition into the Propontis but is defeated by generals Taticius and Butumites at battle of Cyparission; he visits Constantinople to sign peace-treaty.

Resignation of Patriarch Eustratius Garidas; succeeded by Nicholas III Kyrdiniates Grammaticus.

**September** Guiscard and his sons Roger Borsa and Guy return from Otranto to Dyrrachium with reinforcements; **October–November** they march South and besiege Butrinto, and Roger and Guy set up base at Avlona; **November** Butrinto falls to Guiscard.

Guiscard defeats Byzantine and Venetian fleets in third attempt as the heavily-laden Venetian ships capsize and 13,000 allegedly drowned and 2500 prisoners; he lands on Corfu and takes the eponymous capital, where he winters.

## Georgia

Death of Agsarten, prince of the central Georgian kingdom of Kakhetia; succeeded by son Kvirike IV.

## Turkish Sultanate

**Autumn** Completing conquest of Cilicia, Sultan Sulaiman advances towards Antioch.

## 1085 Turkish Sultanate

**January/February** Antioch surrenders to Sulaiman; he quarrels with 'Emir' Muslim ibn Quraysh of Aleppo and later in the year advances to besiege the city; Muslim appeals to Sultan Malik Shah in Persia, but Sulaiman ignores the order to withdraw from his technical suzerain.

## Italy

**25 May** Death of Pope Gregory in exile at Salerno.

**Spring** Roger of Sicily and son Jordan advance on and besiege Syracuse; **20 May** start of siege; **late May** Emir Bernavert killed in naval battle in the harbour as Norman archers riddle the Arab ships with arrows.

Guiscard heads for the Ionian Islands despite epidemic among troops on Corfu; Roger Borsa lands on Cephallonia but Guiscard falls sick as his ship approaches the Northernmost headland and is carried ashore at Phiscardo Bay, where he dies **17 July**.

Guiscard's body is returned to Italy for burial at Venosa though temporarily lost overboard in storm; Roger Borsa succeeds as Duke of Apulia, and **September** his vassals swear allegiance to him, including Count Roger of Sicily; Bohemund however refuses, raises rebellion in Apulia and from his castle at Taranto seizes Brindisi and other towns which he forces Roger to accept as his new principality.

**October** Bernavert's widow flees Syracuse, and inhabitants surrender to Count Roger.

## Byzantium

**Autumn** Normans abandon Epirus and Alexius sends brother-in-law John Ducas to Dyrrachium as new Governor, as the citizens overpower or kill the remaining Norman partisans and open gates.

Turkish tribesmen under Elkhan occupy Cyzicus peninsula but are expelled by Alexius' troops.

?Major Pecheneg nomad raid on the Balkans; 'Paulicians' assist them against Byzantium.

## 1086 Turkish Sultanate

Malik Shah's brother Tuctush, ruler of Syria, leads expedition against Sulaiman, who is killed in battle outside Aleppo; Malik Shah lays claim to all his dominions in Anatolia and Syria, but it is impossible to enforce submission of many local Turkish rulers including Abdul Qasim at Nicaea and Tzachas of Smyrna, 'Tangipernes' of Ephesus, Elkhan of West Bithynia, and 'Malik' (King) Danishmend of Amasea and other areas in Pontus.

**Spring** Expedition of 'Grand Domestic' Pacurianus against the continuing Pecheneg raids in Balkans; he is defeated and killed and Pechenegs raid Maritsa valley.

**Spring?** Alexius' general Butumites destroys Abdul Qasim's fleet.

## Italy

**Easter** Abbot Desiderius of Benevento finally elected Pope in Rome after long stalemate, and takes title of Victor III, but the ex-imperial (German) 'vicar' of city who Guiscard captured in 1084 has been released by Roger Borsa and

returns to prevent his ordination; he flees to Terracina and declares he prefers to abdicate and return to abbey and Gregory's own preferences, Hugh of Lyons and Odo of Ostia, seek Roger's support for own elections.

**April** Count Roger of Sicily besieges Agrigento; **25 July** fall of Agrigento, leaving Enna in interior the only major Arab town resisting but its ruler Ibn Hamud's family captives.

## Byzantium

**January?** Religious council held at Blachernae Palace to consider the question of the legality of seizing Church treasure once and for all; Adrian Comnenus presides and even abbots and Theodore of Smyrna, new 'consul of philosophers', invited; Leo of Chalcedon holds to his position but ex-Patriarch Eustratius Garidas cleared of accusations of embezzling confiscated treasure and Leo's letters on the issue are seized and read out to reveal his disloyalty to the dynasty; he is soon deposed and exiled to Sozopolis.

**Summer** Tuctush's army advances on Nicaea, and Alexius agrees alliance with Abul Qasim; Alexius sends Taticius with army against Tuctush's general Bursuq, who withdraws leaving Nicaea unmolested, and Alexius invites Abul Qasim to Constantinople to seal alliance with festivities but builds new fortress on frontier before Abul Qasim aware of it.

With the Pechenegs ravaging unchecked in Balkans, Alexius sends out Taticius to fight them; Taticius and Humbertopulus rally forces at Adrianople and then unsuccessfully try to clear the Maritsa valley; eventually one of two Pecheneg hordes is defeated, and the second retreats too quickly for Byzantines to catch it.

Alexius raises a new army.

## 1087 Italy

**March** Pope Victor announces at Capua that he is resuming Papacy, and Norman troops escort him back to Rome where the Imperial Vicar has been maintaining anti-pope Clement; they flee and **9 May** Victor is installed in St. Peter's but the city remains hostile and he soon leaves again.

**Spring** Count Roger advances on Enna, and Emir Ibn Hamud invited to parley where he offers to discuss terms; he delays surrender so Roger pretends to withdraw and captures him when he ventures out in ambush.

## Byzantium

**Spring** Deposed King Soloman of Hungary (r. 1060–74) joins Pecheneg invasion of Balkans; they raid into Thrace and reach Chariopolis, a day from Rhaedestus on Propontis; Nicholas Mavrocatalon and Bebetziotes defeat them in battle at Koule on the Via Egnatia, and Soloman and Pecheneg chieftain Tzelgu killed.

Alexius sends brother Adrian to command at Dyrrachium.

## Turkish Sultanate

**March** Edessa surrenders to the Turkish general Buzan.

## Italy

**May–July** Victor III invited back to Rome by Countess Matilda of Tuscany who evicts anti-Pope Clement for him, but he falls ill and after 2 months withdraws to Monte Cassino where he dies **16 September**; Clement's partisans regain Rome.

## Byzantium

**Summer** Alexius leads a massive army to pursue the Pechenegs onto Danube plain; **1 August** he joins his advance-forces under Bryennius and Mavrocatalon at Goloea and rejects Pecheneg offer of truce as the Pecheneg ambassadors are terrified into it by eclipse; he sends them as hostages to capital, but they kill guards en route and escape.

Bryennius captured but ransomed; Alexius reaches and besieges Pecheneg camp at Dristra on Danube, but communications are harassed and supplies low and generals unsuccessfully advise retreat; he eventually orders retreat to Great Preslav, but Pechenegs harass his army and many are killed; the Pechenegs pick off stragglers until Byzantines get to safety of mountains, but then a Cuman horde arrives in Wallachia across Danube to threaten Pechenegs' rear and they pull back.

Robert, Count of Flanders, calls in on Alexius as his army rests at Eski Zagora on pilgrimage to Jerusalem; he promises 500 men on his return home – the nucleus of Alexius' idea for Western aid that leads to Crusade.



## Italy

Bohemund renews rebellion against half-brother Roger Borsa.

## Byzantium

**2 December** Birth of Alexius and Irene's first son John Comnenus, later Emperor; however Constantine Ducas (and Anna) are not immediately disinherited to avoid clash with ex-Empress Maria or her two sons by Romanus Diogenes, now in Alexius' army.

## 1088 Italy

**12 March** Cardinal Bishop Odo of Ostia elected Pope at Terracina as Clement still controls Rome; takes title of Urban II.

Fall of Butera, last Arab town in Southern Sicily, to Count Roger.

## Byzantium

Alexius based at Adrianople to fight renewed Pecheneg raids; the Cumans cross the Danube behind the Pechenegs to harass them and they agree a truce, Synesius being Alexius' negotiator.

Robert of Flanders' promised mercenaries arrive.

'Emir' Tzachas of Smyrna expands his dominions to seize Phocaea and Clazomenae; his fleet takes Chios.

?Serious illness of Constantine Ducas, Michael VII's son, leads to Alexius disinheriting him in favour of his own son John.

## Italy

Pope Urban visits Sicily to ask Roger for aid; **November** Roger's troops enter Rome, but Urban can only secure control of the Tiber Island as residence not enter Vatican where Clement's partisans hold out.

**1089 Byzantium**

Cumans retreat to Wallachia; Pechenegs end truce with Alexius. Another Pecheneg invasion; Alexius defeated, flees Philippopolis and besieged in Tzurolon, but lures Pechenegs up to walls to launch a surprise bombardment that sends them fleeing.

(1089 or 1090) Alexius is defeated in battle by Pechenegs, but later scores a decisive victory thanks to information from the deserter Tatranus.

Despite victories, Alexius is unable to drive Pechenegs out of the Balkans and has to accept their presence within his frontiers in next truce.

Constantine Dalassenus takes fleet to Chios and besieges Tzachas' men in the eponymous town; Tzachas arrives with ships to confront Byzantine vessels commanded by Opus, and skirmishes follow; during a truce Tzachas breaks terms to leave and get reinforcements, but in absence Dalassenus takes the town so he withdraws.

Pope Urban, now withdrawing from Rome again to live under Norman protection, sends legates to Constantinople; Alexius calls a synod, which approves closer links to Rome but condemns the Papal bureaucracy's omission of imperial name-list and non-use of Emperor's name in documents. Alexius assures the synod that there will be no more seizures of Church treasures.

**Georgia**

Death of George II of Georgia, ex-Empress Maria's brother; succeeded by son David III 'the Builder'.

**Syria**

Fatimid forces retake most of coastal cities of Palestine from the Turks.

**1090 Italy**

Death of Count Jordan of Capua; young son Richard expelled by populace who rule themselves.

Bohemund rebels against half-brother Roger Borsa again, and seizes Bari to join principality.

## Byzantium

**6 January** Official 'apologia' for truce with Pechenegs delivered to Alexius and court by orator Theophylact.

**February?** Pechenegs break truce and advance through Thrace to Taurocomos, ravaging countryside; Alexius continues to raise new army in capital, including regiment of 'Archontopuli' (sons of noblemen); meanwhile Tzachas has sent envoys to Pechenegs to co-ordinate attacks on Alexius.

**Spring** Pechenegs seize Chariopolis; Alexius advances to Bulgarophygon to fight skirmishes, and in one ambush takes a Pecheneg force unawares with disguised Byzantine soldiers who later repeat the trick to rescue Paleologus from ambush.

Tzachas launches his fleet and enters Propontis; Alexius returns to capital, and the Turkish raiders menace shipping around city.

? Patriarch Nicholas sends Basil, ex-bishop of Reggio, as envoy to Pope but he objects to Latin Church's use of unleavened bread and complains at Papal recognition of Norman rule of Byzantine territories of Southern Italy.

Theophylact, Archbishop of Ochrid, makes officially-vetted statement that Orthodox Church regards doctrinal differences as less important than reunion; Alexius requests Pope Urban for help in acquiring more Western troops to follow Flemish contingent.

?Death of Philaretus, pre-eminent independent lord of Armenian lands in the Taurus; dominions split by his lieutenants.

## Italy

Surrender of Nota, last Arab possession in Sicily.

## Byzantium

**Winter** Pechenegs, based at Bulgarophygon, raid to suburbs of Constantinople while Tzachas' fleet blockades city by sea.

## 1091 Byzantium

**Early** Tzachas takes Gallipoli while Alexius returns from army headquarters in Thrace leaving Mavrocatalon in charge;

**17–18 February** Alexius sallies from Constantinople to relieve Pecheneg siege of Chirovachia.

Tzachas is unable to defeat Byzantine fleet and retires to Aegean; Alexius can both send army to aid Abul Qasim in Nicaea against Malik Shah's latest invasion and lead large army out into Thrace; the Pechenegs retire before him.

Cumans invade Thrace again, and advance to camp near the Pechenegs; Alexius, based at Aenus, negotiates alliance with Cumans.

Alexius' brother Adrian and brother-in-law Michael Ducas take the crucial bridge over River Hebros, and Alexius advances on the Pechenegs; **29 April** *Battle of Mount Levunion* – Alexius, Paleologus (right wing), Dalassenus (left wing), Monastras, and Humbertopulus lead Byzantine to crushing victory and Pechenegs nearly wiped out. Fearing revolt by captured Pechenegs at night, Alexius' general Synesius has them massacred and the Cumans take fright and leave Byzantine camp but Alexius sends promised gifts after them; **May** Alexius' triumphal entry to capital.

Humbertopulus exiled for alleged plot.

John Ducas, governor of Dyrrachium, fights independent Serb princeling Bodin of Zeta.

Tzachas takes Lesbos.

Constantine, son of Rupen (Armenian), becomes Lord of Vakha in the Taurus.

## Italy

Roger of Sicily conquers Malta from Arabs.

## 1092 Byzantium

**Spring** Alexius based at Philippopolis for war against Serbs; John Ducas recalled to capital and given new title of 'Mega dux' to command fleet.

John Comnenus, son of Alexius' elder brother Isaac, new Governor of Dyrrachium; recalled after complaints from Archbishop of Ochrid; 'Grand Hetaeriarch' (military title, commanding palace guards) Argyrus Caralzus replaces him but Isaac is furious and, blaming younger brother Adrian, publicly confronts his brothers in imperial tent at Philippopolis.

Malik Shah sends offer of alliance to Alexius, one of his sons to marry one of Alexius' daughters; Alexius agrees and angles for return of most of Asia Minor.

Malik Shah's army advances on Nicaea; Abul Qasim surrenders and is deported to Persia and executed.

**June ?** John Ducas with new fleet sails to assist Constantine Dalassenus who has landed on Lesbos to besiege Mytilene; Tzachas besieged in town and walls battered by Byzantine siege-engines until he agrees to surrender; he is allowed to leave unmolested with ships but tries to smuggle captive Christians out too; Ducas finds out, goes in pursuit, and rescues prisoners.

Ducas takes Samos and other islands conquered by Tzachas. Byzantine forces retake Cius, Cibotus on the Gulf of Nicomedia, Cyzicus, and Apollonia to secure the Propontis coast.

Rebellions of Carykes in Crete and Rapsomates in Cyprus; Ducas sails to Karpathos en route to Crete, and Carykes is killed before he needs to fight; he goes on to Cyprus where Rapsomates does not try to oppose him landing; he takes Kyrenia, and later Rapsomates is defeated and captured by Butumites; Constantine Euphorbenus governor of Cyprus.

**September** Coronation of Alexius' son John as nominal co-Emperor.

**November?** On death of Sultan Malik Shah in Persia, Abul Qasim's brother Buldaji seizes Nicaea; he is overthrown and killed by Kilij Arslan, son of the late Sultan Sulaiman, who re-establishes independent sultanate at Nicaea.

Alexius creates new gold coin, the 'Hyperpyron'.

## **Syria and Turkish Sultanate**

**November** Death of Malik Shah, aged c.39, succeeded by eldest son Barkiyaruq; Barkiyaruq's stepmother Kāthun and her son Mahmud seize control of Baghdad, and he has to flee to Syria.

**1093** Barkiyaruq regains Baghdad with army from Syria led by local 'Emir' Toghtekin; Mahmud is permitted principality of Isfahan.

## **Byzantium**

Serb ruler Bolkan of Zeta raids Thrace as far as Lipenium; Alexius invades Serbia and forces Bolkan to surrender and give hostages for future good behaviour.

? Gregory Gabras, son of Theodore Gabras of Trebizond and hostage for his father's loyalty, follows up an earlier attempt to flee Constantinople with a second attempt, aided by other nobles including Camytzes, George Decanus, and imperial cupbearer Michael; the plotters are betrayed and exiled to remote prisons.

## 1094 Byzantium

**February** Bolkan of Zeta breaks truce with raid, and defeats Alexius' nephew John, governor of Dyrrachium; Alexius sets out on new campaign, and ex-Empress Maria's and Romanus IV's son Nicephorus Diogenes plots to murder him. He enters imperial tent en route to kill Alexius and Irene in bed but is disturbed by servant; later while Alexius is visiting Nicephorus' nephew Constantine Ducas, his former heir, at Pentegostis near Serres Taticius finds Nicephorus lurking in bath-house with a sword.

**June** Nicephorus is arrested and at start of torture confesses to a substantial conspiracy, and more arrests follow; Nicephorus blinded and exiled but Alexius pardons many.

## Italy

**Spring** Pope Urban II finally gains control of Rome.

## Egypt

Death of 70-year old Caliph Al-Mustansir the Fatimid after 59-year-reign; succeeded by son Al-Mustaali.

Death of 'Vizier' Badr al-Jamali, chief minister of Fatimid dynasty; succeeded by son Al-Afdal.

## Turkish Sultanate

**4 February** Death of Caliph Al-Muqtadi; succeeded by son Al-Mustansir.

Tuctush, Turkish viceroy of Syria, revolts against his nephew Barkiyaruq; Aqsongor, governor of Aleppo, revolts in Tuctush's rear as he sets off for Baghdad but **May** Tuctush returns and kills him.

## **Byzantium**

**Summer/Autumn** A pretender emerges at Constantinople, claiming to be Romanus IV's adult son Leo Diogenes who was killed in Syria c. 1076 (i.e. Nicephorus' elder half-brother); the real Leo's widow Theodora, Alexius' sister, denounces him as impostor and he is arrested and exiled to Cherson in Crimea; he escapes and makes his way to the Cumans to offer himself as pretender to Alexius' throne.

Bolkan of Zeta rebels again, hoping for Cuman assistance, but Alexius advances on him before Cumans arrive and forces his submission.

Alexius awaits Cumans at Anchialus; ? sudden death of Constantine Ducas, long regretted by his fiancée Anna Comnena and later eulogized in her '**Alexiad**'.

Alexius at Anchialus and Bryennius at Adrianople each defeat attack by a Cuman army, and the pretender 'Leo Diogenes' is captured by Alexius' agents, taken to Constantinople, and blinded; the Cumans withdraw to steppes.

## **1095 Byzantium**

Constantine I becomes 'Prince' of the new Principality of 'Armenia' in the Taurus, based on his Lordship of Vakha.

## **Hungary**

Death of (St) Ladislas; succeeded by nephew Coloman, son of elder brother and predecessor Géza.

## **Turkish Sultanate**

**28 February** Battle of Rayy (nr Teheran): Tuctush defeated and killed by nephew Barkiyaruq. His young sons succeed to lands in Syria, Ridwan to Aleppo and Duqaq to Damascus, with the title of 'Malik' (King), under guidance of senior generals as 'atabegs' (guardians) – Toghtekin at Damascus.

## **Italy**

**March** Alexius' envoys join Pope Urban's Council of Latin Church leaders at Piacenza and deliver appeal for military assistance; Urban calls for Western knights to go to aid of Eastern Christians.

## France

**18–25 November** Urban presides at the Council of Clermont, with many Western secular lords present as well as clerics, and **27 November**. call for Christian military expedition to deliver the Holy Sepulchre from the Turks; launch of the ‘First Crusade’ follows, under Bishop Ademar of Le Puy as Papal Legate. Alexius is as yet unaware of the extent of enthusiastic Western response from peasants to kings.

## Italy

**22 December** Birth of Count Roger of Sicily’s second son Roger, later first King of Sicily.

## 1096 Italy

Vitale Michiel succeeds Vitale Falier as Doge of Venice.

## Hungary

**May** Peter ‘the Hermit’ and his expedition of crusading irregulars, many unarmed peasants, reach Hungary on their way down Danube to Byzantine territory in the Balkans, plundering locals for supplies with resulting conflict; Zemlin is looted after altercation in bazaar. Alexius hears what his daughter Anna Comnena later describes as news that all the nations of the West are on the move, and hastily arranges reception and food-depots en route to Anatolia.

## Byzantium

Nicetas, Governor of Naissus, in charge of awaiting the ‘pilgrims’ coming down the Danube, and John Comnenus at Dyrrachium and admiral Nicholas Mavrocatalon in Adriatic to await the army assembling in Southern Italy; unfortunately, Bohemund is among the leaders of latter with his nephew Tancred.

**July** Peter ‘the Hermit’ and ‘army’ are escorted by Nicetas across Bulgaria, but angry Hungarians pursue Peter’s group over River Save into Byzantium seeking revenge for looting of Belgrade and have to be rescued.

**4 July** Advance-force under Walter ‘the Penniless’ burns down a mill outside Naissus and are attacked by Byzantines with some killed or arrested;



**12 July** Walter's main force reaches Sofia to meet Byzantine military escort; the two forces of Walter and Peter reunite at Philippopolis to be welcomed and receive an Imperial message.

**1 August** Crusaders reach Constantinople; Peter and other leaders are received by Alexius, but most are required to stay in camp outside the walls and some skirmishes with locals.

Alexius advises Peter to stay in Europe until heavier-armed knights arrive from Italy and to avoid provoking Turks, but he insists on going on and cannot control his men so as fighting worsens Alexius ships them over Bosphorus; **6 August** the Crusaders land in Anatolia, and take the road to Nicomedia; they camp at Cibotus on the Byzantine frontier at River Dracon, between Nicomedia and Nicaea, and plunder local (Christian) population.

A breakaway force of Germans under Rainald marches on ignoring Peter, and is surrounded by Kilij Arslan's army at Xerigordon **29 September**; **7 October** they are starved into surrender and killed or enslaved.

Turks advance on Cibotus; while Peter is consulting Alexius the foolhardy Geoffrey Burel leads the crusaders out of camp; **21 October** they are ambushed and massacred in wooded valley 3 miles up road, and Cibotus camp is stormed; most are massacred or enslaved, but survivors hold out in nearby fort until Byzantine fleet arrives to evacuate them.

**October** King Philip of France's brother Hugh of Vermandois, Robert of Flanders, Count Stephen of Blois, and Duke Robert of Normandy assemble in Southern Italy with Bohemund's forces; Hugh sets out to Epirus on own ahead of others but is shipwrecked, taken to John Comnenus at Dyrrachium, and escorted to Constantinople by Butumites.

Godfrey of Bouillon, brother of Count of Boulogne, and cousin Baldwin of Le Bourg lead force from Rhineland and Low Countries across Hungary to meet Nicetas and be escorted across Balkans.

**November** Godfrey and Baldwin's army reaches Naissus and Philippopolis and **12 December** Selymbria on Propontis; troops ravage neighbourhood and Godfrey replies to complaints that it is retaliation for Hugh being 'confined'; meanwhile Bohemund and the two Roberts cross Adriatic to Dyrrachium and march along Via Egnatia, Bohemund ahead of others.

**23 December** Godfrey arrives outside Constantinople; Hugh is sent to invite him into Constantinople, but he refuses; Alexius cuts off food-supplies so he loots countryside.

Bohemund winters at Castoria.

## 1097 Byzantium

**January** Stalemate between Alexius and Godfrey eventually resolved, and Godfrey encamps at Pera.

**February** Count Raymond of Toulouse and Bishop Ademar of Le Puy make way with another army down Dalmatian coast towards Dyrrachium and then continue along Via Egnatia; they are shadowed by Alexius' Pecheneg mercenaries, and Ademar is wounded in a skirmish.

Bohemund reaches Thessalonica, and Tancred distinguishes himself in skirmish with Pechenegs after they attack Norman rearguard during crossing of River Vardar.

**March** Alexius cuts off supplies to Godfrey again after altercations about number of Crusaders arriving, and more skirmishes; Bohemund crosses Thrace and Raymond leaves Ademar to recuperate at Thessalonica and follows.

**2 April** Godfrey's army moves over Golden Horn to Philopation to threaten Alexius' nearby Blachernae Palace, but withdraw from near the city walls after they see Byzantine strength;

**3 April** Alexius sends Hugh to negotiate with Godfrey, who calls him a lackey and refuses to take men across Bosphorus; after defeat in skirmish he agrees to cross.

**5 April Easter Sunday** Godfrey and Baldwin swear to return all imperial territory they occupy to the Emperor, and are entertained at banquet; their army is shipped to Chalcedon.

Robert of Normandy embarks at Brindisi.

**9 April** Robert arrives at Dyrrachium; Bohemund arrives outside Constantinople.

**10 April** Alexius receives Bohemund, who swears the oath to hand over all imperial territories but fails to get 'Domesticship of East'; Alexius rewards him with roomful of treasure.

Raymond's army crosses Thrace, pillaging en route; **21 April** they reach Constantinople, but Raymond refuses to swear the oath or obey Bohemund's authority; his men resume pillaging and are defeated by imperial troops.

**26 April** Raymond swears modified oath; Bohemund crosses Bosphorus and Tancred does so without swearing.

**28 April** Ademar reaches Toulousan camp to calm soldiers, and Raymond leads them across Bosphorus.

**6 May** Godfrey's army arrives outside Nicaea; **16 May** Raymond joins them, followed by Bohemund and the Flemish contingent; Robert of Normandy reaches Constantinople.

**21? May** Kilij Arslan tries to break the siege of Nicaea, but as he attacks the main Crusader force he is ambushed round hills by Raymond and defeated.

**3 June** Robert of Normandy reaches Nicaea; Crusaders besiege city while Butumites brings Byzantine fleet into the Ascanian Lake to cut off exit by water. Afraid of pillage by Crusaders, the Turks open negotiations with Alexius.

**19 June** As the Crusaders prepare assault, Turks let Byzantine Pechenegs into city from lakeside; imperial standard is hoisted and the disappointed Crusaders are informed and rewarded but forbidden to loot. Turks, including Kilij Arslan's wife (daughter of Tzachas), escorted to Constantinople by Byzantines.

Bohemund leads the Crusader vanguard on while Butumites garrisons Nicaea; Alexius camps at Pelecanon and on Crusader lords' visit insists that Tancred swears the oath to return his lands.

**30 June** Bohemund camps at Dorylaeum; Kilij Arslan brings up troops.

**1 July** *Battle of Dorylaeum*: Sultan's army surrounds Bohemund, but Godfrey, Hugh, and Raymond bring up the rearguard that he was not expecting and Bishop Ademar attacks Turkish rear. Turks heavily defeated and retreat into mountains, abandoning Phrygia; Byzantines follow the pursuing Crusaders and occupy Dorylaeum.

Crusaders proceed to Polybotus and Philomelium, and **August** occupy Iconium which the Turks abandon; 'Emir' Danishmend tries to bar their way but is defeated at Heraclea.

Alexius sends John Ducas and Caspax with fleet to besiege Smyrna and evict Tzachas; the ruler's captive wife is used as an incentive to surrender, and eventually Tzachas gives in and is allowed to leave unmolested.

Byzantines occupy Smyrna, but arriving governor Caspax is killed by an Arab prisoner and his troops slaughter the other prisoners; Hyaleas 'Duke' of Smyrna and Petzeas 'Duke' of Ephesus.

John Ducas marches on up Meander valley and retakes Pergamum, Sardes, and rest of the old 'Thraciesion' theme that is re-constituted; he enters the upland plateau beyond and wins battle of Polybotus; Amorium and other key towns taken.

## Syria

**Spring–Summer** Oblivious to Crusaders' approach, Duqaq of Damascus and his allies, Turkish governors Soqman Ibn Ortoq of Jerusalem and Yaghi-Siyan of Antioch, attack Ridwan of Aleppo; invasion abandoned, but Ridwan's 'atabeg' Janah-al-Daula revolts against him at Homs.

Yaghi-Siyan joins Ridwan, and they march on Damascus; they hear of Crusaders' advance at Shaizar en route and abandon campaign.

**October** Baldwin and Tancred overrun Cilicia but quarrel after Baldwin massacres surrendered Turkish garrison at Adana; Baldwin stays on to create a new principality for himself, granting out fiefs, while Tancred goes on to Syria.

Main crusading force at Germanicea/Mar'ash; **21 October** they reach Antioch and besiege Yaghi-Siyan there.

Bohemund and Tancred raid ahead up the Orontes valley, and defeat Duqaq and Toghtekin at Shaizar.

**Late** Baldwin invited to take over Edessa by local Christians to defend them from Emir Balduk of Samosata; he takes towns on Euphrates.

## Byzantium

Anna Comnena, Alexius' 14-year-old eldest daughter, marries the rising young nobleman Nicephorus Bryennius, ? grandson of the rebel of 1077–8, who distinguished himself in skirmish with Crusaders outside Blachernae earlier that year.

## 1098 Syria

Baldwin campaigns in Euphrates valley among welcoming Christians; **February** 'Curopalatus' Thoros/ Theodore, Armenian ruler of Edessa, adopts Baldwin as his son and heir, and **7 March** Baldwin inspires a riot in the city and forces Thoros, besieged in palace tower, to surrender to him; Thoros is lynched by a mob as he leaves palace and **10 March** Baldwin becomes Prince of Edessa, forming first independent Crusader principality in a Byzantine city.

**February** Byzantine representative Taticius leaves the main Crusader army as Ridwan of Aleppo approaches their base outside Antioch, and is accused of desertion; **9 February** the Crusaders ambush and defeat Ridwan's army after forming bridge of boats over the River Orontes.

**4 March** The Crusader fleet from Italy, having called in at Constantinople en route, arrives at St. Simeon at mouth of Orontes; its commanders include Edgar 'Atheling', rightful Saxon King of England and great-nephew of Edward 'the Confessor'.

Antioch besieged tightly and sallies defeated; meanwhile the Turkish garrison of Jerusalem is denuded by troops sent to aid Malik Shah's relief-force for Antioch which Emir Kerbogha of Mosul gathers; Egyptian Vizier Al-Afdal invades Palestine and takes Jerusalem as governors Sulaiman and Ilghazi ibn Ortoq flee North.

Al-Afdal sends ambassadors to Crusaders to propose to divide Turkish dominions; no reply.

## **Italy**

**May** Count Roger starts siege of Capua on behalf of its evicted ruler Prince Richard; Pope Urban journeys to meet him to resolve dispute over Norman refusal to accept Papal appointment of bishop Robert of Messina as 'Legate' for Sicilian Church.

## **Syria**

**May** Kerbogha, en route to Antioch, unsuccessfully besieges Baldwin in Edessa.

## **Byzantium**

**June** Alexius sets out from Constantinople with army to assist Crusaders, and advances into Central Anatolian plateau as far as Philomelium; other forces retake Laodicea and Attalia to reach Southern coast, but Turkish tribes still hold the inland route from Maeander valley South-East to Pamphylia.

## **Syria**

**3 June** Antioch falls to the Crusaders, apart from the mountain citadel; governor Yaghi-Siyan is killed in flight, and his son Shams-at-Daula holds citadel until a few days later Kerbogha arrives to reinforce it and besiege city.

William and Aubrey of Grantmesnil and Lambert of Clermont evade besieges and sail from St. Simeon to Attaleia where they meet up with fleeing Count Stephen of Blois; they go to Philomelium to report Crusaders' desperate position to Alexius.

## Byzantium

**July/August?** Alexius, facing Kilij Arslan who has regrouped his forces at Iconium barring the road to Cilicia, does not continue campaign. He maintains existing garrisons as far as Philomelium, but returns to Constantinople giving up on relief-plans – which the Crusader leaders hold against him when they find out.

## Italy

**5 July** At Capua, Urban grants Count Roger full legatine authority over the Sicilian Church. It is a personal grant, but later Kings of Sicily use it as evidence to stop Papal interference in their Church too.

Urban goes on to Bari, and holds Synod with Byzantine and local Greek representatives; advised by Archbishop Anselm of Canterbury, leading theologian from Bec in Normandy, he persuades local Greek prelates to accept the controversial 'filioque' (double procession of Holy Spirit from Father and Son), but no progress with Alexius' envoys.

## Syria

Crusaders allegedly find the 'Holy Lance' (used to pierce Christ's side at Crucifixion) under floor of Cathedral of Antioch after a dream and, inspired, launch assault against besiegers; Kerbogha is routed.

Antioch citadel surrenders, to Bohemund not the expectant Count Raymond to latter's fury; Hugh of Vermandois is sent to inform Alexius, and Bohemund becomes Prince of Antioch with no mention of Byzantine rights.

**November** Most Crusaders march on Southwards up Orontes, but Bohemund stays in Antioch.

Sultan Barkiyaruq faces rebellion by younger brother Mohammed and cannot send new army from Persia; after civil war the Turkish lands are divided between them, Mohammed gaining land in Iraq – their younger brother Sanjar confirmed as ruler of Khorasan.

## **Byzantium**

? (or 1099) Alexius restores dismissed governor Theodore Gabras of Trebizond as has best local knowledge to fight off attack by governor of 'Emir' Danishmend who now rules most of Pontus.

## **1099 Syria**

**February** Local Moslem lords let main Crusader force under Raymond pass through territory of Shaizar and Hama and travel South-West back to coast near Tripoli; Tripoli resists but Tortosa taken.

**April** Crusaders receive message from Alexius promising to join them in June; they decide not to wait, but are held up at siege of Arqa.

## **Byzantium**

**April** Pisan fleet bringing Italian reinforcements to Syria raids Corfu, Cephallonia and Zacynthos en route; the Byzantine fleet under Taticius and Landulph sails South to Samos, and clashes with the Pisans off Rhodes; a storm breaks up battle.

Pisans sail on to Cyprus, land to loot, and are driven off by governor Eumathius Philocales; Taticius pursues them as far as Syria.

## **Syria**

**May/June** Butumites lands from Byzantine fleet at Laodicea to meet Bohemund, who is suspicious of intentions and temporarily detains him; on way home fleet damaged by storm off Cilicia.

**19 May** Crusaders cross the Fatimid frontier near Beirut, which pays tribute; on into Palestine by-passing coastal cities.

## **Palestine**

**26–30 May** Crusaders camp at Caesarea; they march inland towards Jerusalem; **Tuesday 7 June** they arrive at Jerusalem and open siege, with Fatimid commander Iftihar-al-Daula in command inside.

**15 July** Crusaders storm Jerusalem and indiscriminately massacre inhabitants, including local Christians and Jews. A Western Patriarch (Amulf) and canons are installed in Church of Holy Sepulchre to follow rites of Western Church, and Orthodox clerics evicted.

Vizler Al-Afdal arrives at Ascalon with army from Egypt and demands Crusaders' surrender; **12 August** Al-Afdal routed in battle of Ascalon.

## Italy

**29 July** Death of Pope Urban II, unaware of fall of Jerusalem.

**13 August** Paschal II elected Pope.

## Syria

**Late August** Count Raymond and others leave Jerusalem, and return to Tortosa where Raymond intends to set up coastal principality.

Eumathius Philocales and Byzantine fleet retake Corycus, Cilicia, from Bohemund's men; Strategius Strabo installed at Seleucia to bar Bohemund's further advance.

Eumathius sails to Laodicea, which Bohemund is besieging on his own behalf; however Raymond, Duke Robert of Normandy and Count Robert of Flanders arrive to Bohemund's annoyance and when town falls Raymond hoists his and Alexius' standards.

Eumathius transports the two Roberts to Constantinople on his return there.

**Late Autumn** Bohemund leaves Syria to visit Jerusalem with Baldwin of Edessa and Archbishop Daimbert of Pisa who is enthroned as Patriarch (Western rite); Bohemund's nephew Tancred creates principality of Galilee; Godfrey of Bouillon 'Defender of Holy Sepulchre' but not King of Jerusalem.

## 1100 Palestine

**March** Godfrey blockades Arsuf on coast into surrender; Bohemund returns to Antioch, and Baldwin to Edessa.

**18 July** Death of Godfrey; Patriarch Daimbert prefers Bohemund of Antioch as next ruler to the stronger local support for Baldwin; the Patriarch's



envoys are seized en route by Raymond's men at Laodicea and not allowed to proceed, Raymond himself having gone to Constantinople to meet Alexius.

## Syria

Bohemund, unaware of the crisis, is campaigning North into Anatolia against 'Emir' Danishmend; he is ambushed near Melitene and taken prisoner to Danishmend's capital, Sebastea (Sivas).

Baldwin, relieving Danishmend siege of Melitene, hears that he is needed in Jerusalem and hastens South.

## Palestine

**9 November** Baldwin enters Jerusalem; **Sunday 11 November** Daimbert crowns him King of Jerusalem.

## Syria

Baldwin's cousin Baldwin of Le Bourg succeeds to Edessa.

**Autumn** With Bohemund a prisoner awaiting ransom, Alexius sends army under Monastras into Cilicia; they retake most of Bohemund's acquisitions, while 'Great Drungharius' Eumathius' fleet retakes the coast. Tancred returns to govern Antioch.

## Byzantium

**Autumn** Archbishop Anselm of Milan and Guibert of Parma lead a Lombard 'Crusade' across the Balkans to enter Byzantium from Hungary; they pillage local villages en route through Philippopolis, Adrianople, and Rhaedestus; meanwhile Alexius receives Count Raymond.

## 1101 Byzantium

**March** The Lombards arrive outside Constantinople, but they refuse Alexius' order to proceed quickly across Bosphorus on news that disgraced Count Stephen of Blois, allegedly sent back on Crusade by his wife Adela

(daughter of William ‘the Conqueror’), and Stephen of Burgundy will arrive soon by sea with more Crusaders.

Alexius cuts off supplies to Lombards; skirmishes follow, and once a group of Lombards breaks into palace courtyard at Blachernae and kill one of Emperor’s pet lions; Archbishop Anselm and Count of Biandrate mediate peace and Raymond takes command of Lombards to march them into Bithynia.

**May** The two Stephens arrive in Constantinople, and join Raymond and the Lombards to take road to Nicomedia; the leadership agrees to rescue Bohemund en route to Syria, so they head East into Paphlagonia to head for Danishmend Emirate; they besiege Gangra and Castamona and are harassed by local Turks; the Stephens reject Raymond’s suggestion of the safer coastal route, and they are ambushed and routed at Mersivan; survivors straggle back to Constantinople, led by Raymond.

**June?** William, Count of Nevers, and another Crusade arrive in Constantinople via Via Egnatia from Dyrrachium; survivors join them, and they struggle across Anatolia via Ancyra to reach Iconium; Kilij Arslan and Danishmend ambush and rout them at Heraclea, and only William and a few knights reach Byzantine Germanicopolis and later Antioch.

## Italy

**22 June** Death of Count Roger of Sicily at Mileto, S. Italy, aged c.80; succeeded by 8-year-old elder son Simon under regency of mother Adelaide, Roger’s third wife.

## Byzantium

**Summer** William, Duke of Aquitaine, and Welf, Duke of Bavaria, arrive in Thrace with latest army of Crusaders; they fight the intercepting Byzantine troops outside Adrianople sent to block their progress, but eventually peace restored and William and Welf are coldly received by Alexius.

Aquitaine-Bavarian Crusade follows the Nivernais road East, but the latter have taken supplies; they pillage abandoned Philomelium, enter Iconium which Kilij Arslan has evacuated, and **early September** Heraclea; while troops are drinking at nearby river the Turks attack, and although William and Welf escape Hugh of Vermandois is mortally wounded and dies at Tarsus and most of army are killed.

**Summer** Tancred retakes Mamistra, Adana, and Tarsus from Byzantines; he surrounds Laodicea, held by Raymond's men and Byzantines.

**Late Autumn?** Alexius gives Raymond and the two Stephens ships to sail to Syria; Raymond is blown off-course to the port of Tarsus and arrested by Tancred's governor.

## Egypt

**8 December** Death of al-Mustaali, Fatimid Caliph; succeeded by 5-year-old son Al-Amir.

## 1102 Syria

**Early** Tancred's fellow-commanders and bishops persuade him to release Raymond, once he has promised to keep out of Northern Syrian affairs and evacuate Laodicea which he does en route to Tortosa.

Bishop Manasses takes letter from King Baldwin to Alexius, asking for full assistance to future Crusades and complaining of his lack of help to those crossing his territory in 1101; Alexius tells his side of story to Manasses, who is unconvinced and on arrival in Italy tells Pope Paschal that Alexius betrayed Crusaders to Turks.

Tancred besieges Laodicea.

Baldwin Le Bourg, ruler of Edessa, allegedly extorts 30,000 'bezants' to pay men from his new father-in-law Gabriel, Armenian ruler of Melitene, by pretending he has sworn to shave his beard off (humiliating to Eastern, Orthodox Christians) if cannot pay them; he drives Soqman ibn Ortoq, now lord of nearby Mardin, out of his recent (Crusader) acquisition, Saruj.

Alexius offers 260,000 'bezants' to 'Emir' Danishmend if he will hand over Bohemund to him; Kilij Arslan persuades Danishmend against it.

**Autumn?** Danishmend besieges Melitene; Gabriel is captured and then executed after his orders fail to make citadel surrender.

Death of Kerbogha, Turkish governor of Mosul; successor Jekermis fights Soqman ibn Ortoq of Mardin, who wanted own candidate installed.

## Byzantium

Eric 'the Evergood', King of Denmark, arrives at Constantinople with a Crusader fleet, having sailed via Baltic and journeyed across Russia to

Black Sea; Alexius fears that his countrymen among Varangian Guard could plot with Danes to seize city and insists that only a few supervised Danes at a time are allowed into city; he entertains Eric and gives him relics and other gifts; Eric leaves for Palestine.

### 1103 **Byzantium**

**Spring?** Eric of Denmark dies on Cyprus; buried at Paphos Cathedral.

### **Syria**

**Spring** Tancred captures most of garrison of Laodicea in ambushed sortie outside walls; the town surrenders.

**Spring** Bohemund handed over to his envoys at Melitene in return for 100,000 'bezants'; he returns to Antioch, and refuses Alexius' envoys' demands to return Cilicia.

**Summer** Bohemund and Baldwin's assistant Joscelin of Courtenay raid Aleppo; Alexius sends Butumites to Cilicia with army to retake cities.

**Autumn** Bohemund returns to Cilicia to confront Butumites, who relieves his siege of Germanicea (Marash) in Taurus Mountains to North. Butumites returns to Constantinople, leaving Monastras in charge in Cilicia.

### **Byzantium**

? Revolt of Gregory Taronites, the new 'Duke' of Trebizond, who arrests imperial loyalists; Alexius plans campaign.

### 1104 **Syria**

**Spring** Bohemund and Joscelin take Germanicea from Alexius' governor, Thatoul the Armenian, then raid Aleppo.

Kilij Arslan fights 'Emir' Danishmend and takes Melitene.

Count Raymond besieges Tripoli.

### 1104 **June** Death of Duqaq of Damascus; young son Tuctush II succeeds under regency of 'atabeg' Toghtekin.

**22 December** Death of Seljuk Sultan Barklyaruq; brother Mohammed succeeds to all lands, disinheriting son Malik Shah, while Sanjar remains governor of Khorasan.

## Byzantium

? Alexius sends Gregory Taronites' cousin with army to Trebizond, and Gregory captured at Colonea and deported to Constantinople.

Serious conspiracy against Alexius, led by Michael Anemas assisted by Castamonites, Sclerus, Xerus (ex-prefect of Constantinople) Courticius Basilacius, and Soloman (one of principal senators), they plan to get into Sacred Palace via the Pharos (lighthouse) on Bosphorus shore and nearby church, but are apprehended and arrested; Soloman breaks down and confesses after interview by Alexius in presence of fierce-looking Varangians; leaders are sentenced to death, but Alexius announces reprieve during procession to execution, at instigation of Irene according to daughter Anna's account; they are blinded instead, and Anemas imprisoned in tower of Blachernae Palace that later bears his name.

Hungarian Princess Pirosaka, cousin of King Coloman and daughter of late King (St) Ladislav, comes to Constantinople under Byzantine-Hungarian alliance treaty and married to Prince/co-Emperor John.

Genoese fleet in Byzantine waters, en route to Syria; Alexius sends out fleet under Landulph, and they clash at sea; Landulph defeated but keeps the 18 seaworthy vessels afloat, and follows the Genoese to Syria where they land at Laodicea.

Cantacuzene's land-force shadows Genoese along Anatolian coast, then joins Monastras in Cilicia to retake cities.

## Syria

**May** As Soqman of Mardin and Jekermish of Mosul lead army on Edessa, Baldwin of Le Bourg tries to pre-empt them and takes city of Harran (Carrhae) from new governor Jawalli; however their full strength of c. 3000 is caught outside the city by Soqman and Jekermish and routed; most of Edessan knights killed and Baldwin and Joscelin captured, so Bohemund and Tancred have to leave Byzantines alone and go to rescue.

Tancred regent of Edessa; Soqman deserts Jekermish after the latter's men abduct Baldwin for their sole ransom, and Jekermish fails in siege of Edessa, which Bohemund relieves.

**June–July** Bohemund fights Ridwan of Aleppo; the Byzantine fleet under Cantacuzene reoccupies Laodicea, as Monastras brings troops overland to join them.

**Autumn** Bohemund decides to return to Italy and raise more troops; he sails, leaving Tancred as Regent of Antioch and cousin Richard 'of the Principate' (Salerno) at Edessa.

Byzantine masons assist Count Raymond with building his new castle outside Tripoli, 'Mount Pilgrim' ('Qalat Sanjil', i.e. 'St. Gilles').

## 1105 **Syria**

**28 February** Death of Raymond of Toulouse after injuries received during siege of Tripoli; succeeded by infant son Alfonso Jordan, under regency of Count William-Jordan of Cerdagne who does feudal homage for Principality of Tripoli to Eumathius Philocales of Cyprus as Alexius' representative.

(or  
1106) Byzantines send supplies from Cyprus to assist siege; governor Fakhr-al-Mulk of Tripoli appeals to Soqman for aid, but he dies en route and campaign abandoned.

**April** Tancred besieges Artah and defeats Ridwan of Aleppo.

## **Byzantium**

Alexius recalls Cantacuzene from Laodicea and Monastras from Cilicia as preparations begin to resist a major attack from Bohemund, which Alexius believes will come in Epirus; Oshin, Armenian lord of Lampron, in charge of Cilicia.

## **Georgia**

King David annexes Kakhétia to reunite Georgia.

## Turkish Sultanate

(or 1104) Death of 'Malik' (King) Danishmend, founder of the eponymous dynasty ruling North-East Anatolia; succeeded by his son, 'Ghazi' ('Holy Warrior') Gumushtekin.

## Italy

**September** Bohemund goes to Rome to meet Pope Paschal and launch a propaganda campaign against Alexius for betraying Crusaders as he gathers recruits for invasion of the Empire.

**28 September** Death of Simon, young Count of Sicily; succeeded by 9-year-old brother Roger II, mother Adelaide remaining Regent.

## Byzantium

Alexius ransoms 300 Frankish prisoners taken in Palestine by Al-Afdal from captivity in Egypt, and receives them with honour in Constantinople; this is used as a counter to Bohemund's accusations of his treachery to West.

**September** Alexius moves to Thessalonica to await Bohemund; his nephew John Comnenus of Dyrrachium fights rebel Bolkan of Zeta, is defeated but regains upper hand and receives hostages.

Death of Alexius' younger brother Adrian Comnenus.

(?c.1105) Death of Alexius' mother Anna Dalassena, who has lived away from Court in recent years – according to some claims later, suspected of unorthodox beliefs.

**1106 April** Bohemund visits Paris to solicit aid from King Philip I, and then visits King Henry I of England in Normandy; he later marries Philip's daughter Constance and secures betrothal of her half-sister Cecilia to Tancred.

## Byzantium

Alexius amasses troops in Epirus and ships in Adriatic, and replaces John Comnenus at Dyrrachium with brother Alexius.

Prince John and Pirosaka ('Irene' on Orthodox conversion)'s twins, Alexius and Maria, born at Balabistra while Imperial Family are in Macedonia during war-preparations.

## Syria

**14 September** Tancred takes Apamea and installs Frankish governor.

## Turkish Sultanate

Ghazi the Danishmend's brother Sangur is driven out of his principedom of Melitene by Kilij Arslan.

Kilij Arslan invades the territory of his cousin, Sultan Mohammed, in Northern Mesopotamia after appeals to him by rebellious vassals; (1106 or early 1107) he sends a contingent of troops to aid Alexius against Bohemund according to previous arrangement.

**Late** Kilij Arslan takes Mosul, where inhabitants resent Mohammed replacing Jekermish with Jawali.

## 1107 Italy

Bohemund gathers army in Apulia, and joined by ex-Patriarch Daimbert of Jerusalem as Papal representative; **15 June** – Daimbert dies.

## Turkish Sultanate

**June** Sultan Mohammed's forces defeat and kill Kilij Arslan in battle on the River Khabur East of Mosul; Kilij Arslan's son and heir Malik Shah is taken prisoner, but Malik Shah's half-brother Toghril Arslan and latter's mother hold out against Mohammed's forces in Melitene.

Distant Seljuk cousin, Hassan, becomes Regent of Iconium and the leaderless sultanate of 'Rûm'.

## Syria

Joscelin of Courtenay is ransomed, and goes to Mosul to ransom Baldwin of Le Bourg from 'Emir' Jawali; Jawali expelled from Mosul by Sultan's agent Mawdud, but in exile ransoms Baldwin to Joscelin; they return to Edessa, but Richard of the Principate refuses them admission. Baldwin and Joscelin ask Jawali for assistance against Richard; they eventually get assistance from Kogh Vasil, Armenian lord of Kaisun, and 300 Pechenegs



from Alexius' governor of Cilicia, Oshin, and Tancred agrees to make Richard leave Edessa.

## Byzantium

'Megadux' Isaac Contostephanus, in command of fleet in Adriatic, crosses to besiege Otranto but is tricked by (?) Tancred's mother into a truce until Norman relief-force arrives; Contostephanus leaves fleet to deputy Landulf due to 'illness'.

**9 October** Bohemund and 34,000 men land at Avlona in Epirus; **13 October** they open siege of Dyrrachium; **November** Alexius leaves capital and heads for Thessalonica, leaving Eustathius Ciminianus ('Great Drunghaire') and Nicephorus Decanus as Regents.

En route to Epirus, Alexius escapes assassination-plot by the Aaron brothers thanks to eunuch hearing Aarons' servant referring to recent threatening letters sent to the Emperor and search of brothers' tent finding others; the brothers confess and are exiled.

Alexius winters at Thessalonica.

## 1108 Byzantium

**Spring** Alexius arrives outside Dyrrachium and begins blockade of Bohemund's army by land and sea – Cecaumenus at Avlona, Cabasilas at Petroula, Nicerites at Devra, and Camtyzes commanding the passes into Pindus Mountains. Camtyzes is defeated in skirmish, but Cantacuzene retrieves situation and takes crucial position at Mylos; in psychological offensive, Alexius has forged letters from Bohemund's lieutenant Guy of Conversano to him 'betrayed' to Bohemund to sow suspicion, and sends money to Bohemund's lieutenants to induce them to consider negotiation as conflict turns to stalemate but the Normans are slowly starved out.

## Syria

**Spring** Fakhr-al-Mulk of Tripoli secretly leaves Tripoli to go to Toghtekin in Damascus for aid; Toghtekin's son Buri escorts him to Caliph in Baghdad,

and both Caliph and Sultan Mohammed deny immediate assistance; **Summer** Tripolitans admit a relief-force sent by Al-Afdal and accept his nominee as governor.

## Byzantium

**September** After Contostephanus burns the Norman fleet and Byzantine commanders Marianus and Mavrocatalon drive off relief-fleet, Bohemund accepts his lieutenants' advice to negotiate his surrender; he is escorted to the Imperial camp at Devol and **5 October** signs the terms offered after abrupt reminder of his position from Alexius' son-in-law, 'Caesar' Nicephorus Bryennius.

*Treaty of Devol:* Bohemund to become Alexius' vassal and hold Antioch, St. Simeon and Syrian lands from him but to return Laodicea and all Cilicia; Latin Patriarch of Antioch to be replaced with Greek, and Bohemund to force Tancred and others' compliance.

Bohemund is given gifts, and evacuates surviving troops to Italy; he does not return to Antioch, where Tancred takes no notice of treaty.

**Autumn** Raymond of Toulouse's illegitimate son Bertrand, en route to Tripoli with 3000 men to claim lordship, is driven into Gulf of Volos (Thessaly) by adverse weather and treats inhabitants properly; he is treated honourably by Alexius on visit to Constantinople, and swears to hold Tripoli as his vassal.

Birth of Andronicus, second son of John and Irene/ Pirosaka.

## 1109 Syria

**Early** Bertrand arrives at Antioch and requests return of Count Raymond's former part of principality; Tancred will only give it to him in return for assistance against Byzantium in Cilicia and he refuses so Tancred orders him to leave and refuses supplies; Bertrand goes on to Tortosa to claim principality of Tripoli and confront the Regent William-Jordan.

? Jawali transferred from Mosul to Persia by Sultan Mohammed; replaced by Mawdud.

**June** King Baldwin reconciles the Crusading leaders as they all assemble to besiege Tripoli, and Bertrand acquires rights to the city as his vassal with no mention of fealty to Alexius; William-Jordan gets Arqa and young Alfonso-Jordan excluded but has Raymond's lands in France.

**12 July** Surrender of Tripoli; Crusaders promised no sack and the garrison leaves unmolested, but Genoese start pillaging and the famous library of the 'Banu Ammar' dynasty burnt; William-Jordan mysteriously murdered and Bertrand takes lands.

## **Turkish Sultanate**

Sultan Mohammed allows Kilij Arslan's son Malik Shah to return to Iconium, probably as his vassal, after request from Hanafi 'qadis' for him to lead their war against infidels; he executes his cousin Hassan and takes control of Sultanate.

Turkish raids resume on South-West Anatolia; uncertain if under Seljuk orders or independently.

## **Byzantium**

Eumathius Philocales transferred from Cyprus to take charge of forces in Western Asia Minor, based at Attalela; he restores fortifications of Adramyttium in the Troad, and defeats Turkish raiders at battle of Lampe; before Malik Shah's return to Iconium he faces attack from the Regent Hassan, is besieged in Philadelphia and breaks out to pursue and rout Hassan's looting raiders.

**1110** Alexius sends Ambassador to Sultan Mohammed to encourage war against Crusaders.

## **Syria**

**April** Mawdud of Mosul, Soqman at Qutbi of Mayyafariqin, and Ilghazi ibn Ortoq lead a Moslem force under Mohammed's orders to besiege Edessa; Baldwin of Le Bourg appeals to his cousin King Baldwin of Jerusalem for aid and accuses Tancred of encouraging attackers.

? Tancred takes Tarsus from Byzantines thanks to Oshin's incompetence.

**13 May** Fall of Sidon to King Baldwin, as governor flees to Byzantine Cyprus; Baldwin comes to aid of Edessa leaving Beirut under siege, and **June** joins the Armenian lord Kogh Vasil to relieve city; Baldwin leads coalition against Mawdud, who retires to Harran, and forces Tancred to join them; they cannot bring Moslems to battle, and on King Baldwin's advice the Armenian and Syrian Christian peasantry East of Euphrates

are permanently evacuated to safer lands West of the river; Mawdud carries off many as slaves in surprise attack en route, and principality of Edessa is permanently weakened.

**4 December** Fall of Beirut to Crusaders.

Alexius sends envoys to Caliph Al-Mustazhir at Baghdad to encourage joint action against Tancred.

## Byzantium

After fall of Beirut, crusading King Sigurd of Norway winters on Cyprus.

## 1111 Byzantium

**Early** Sigurd of Norway visits Constantinople en route home, and is magnificently entertained and given chests of gold; in return he presents Alexius with a longship with gold figurehead.

## Italy

**February** Death of Roger Borsa, Norman ruler of S. Italy, at Salerno; succeeded by young son William, whose mother Alaine of Flanders is regent.

**12 February** German Emperor Henry V's coronation-service in St. Peter's, Rome, abandoned after protests at his acceptance of Pope Paschal's terms for solution of 'Investiture Controversy'; he arrests Paschal, and threatens to install his anti-Pope Silvester II; **12 April** Paschal accepts Henry's revised terms; **13 April** the coronation proceeds, but Paschal's submission leads to unpopularity in Rome.

Death of Bohemund (probable; some sources claim as early as 1108); his lands in Italy pass to his nephew William, and Tancred inherits Antioch; no mention of Tancred accepting terms of Treaty of Devol with Alexius.

## Byzantium

Alexius plans campaign in Anatolia and on to Antioch, and sends Butumites with fleet to Cyprus; Butumites goes on to Tripoli to hold talks with Bertrand and offer him money and supplies.

Death of Patriarch Nicholas III Kyrdiniates Grammaticus; succeeded by John IX Agapetus.

Alexius fortifies Chersonese against threat from Italian fleets during dispute with Pisa over latter's trading-privileges; Pisan fleet raids the Aegean, though four of five ships sent to spy on Byzantine fleet at Abydos are captured.

**October** Alexius' ambassadors sign new commercial agreement with Pisa giving the latter very favourable trading-privileges; Pisan fleet retires.

Alexius sends ambassadors to Pope Paschal.

## Syria

**November** Butumites and 12 Byzantine warships join Crusader siege of Tyre, but give no significant assistance as Tyre is allied to Byzantine ally, Fatimid Caliphate, and King Baldwin is not assisting Alexius against Tancred.

## 1112 Byzantium

**Early** Alexius, hearing of Malik Shah's preparations for war, goes to Chersonese and army sent ahead to Adramyttium; Constantine Gabras is sent to Philadelphia and Monastras to Pergamum.

Malik Shah invades Western Anatolia, but is defeated by Gabras at battle of Celbianum; he sues for peace and receives Alexius' ambassadors with honour.

## Syria

**April** Toghtekin, 'atabeg' of Damascus, arrives to relieve Tyre and besieges Crusader camp; King Baldwin abandons siege.

Butumites and Byzantine fleet escorts Baldwin's army to Acre; at Acre the King quarrels with Butumites over lack of Byzantine support and is offered money but shows no willingness to reciprocate.

**Spring** Death of Bertrand of Tripoli, succeeded by son Pons; Butumites calls on Pons on return voyage to request return of unused subsidy given to Bertrand to fight Tancred, and on eventual agreement gives him gifts.

Deaths of Richard of the Principate and **12 October** Kogh Vasil of Kaisun.

## Byzantium

Birth of John Comnenus' and Irene/Pirosaka's third son Isaac.

? Revolt of Michael, governor of Akrounos, against Alexius; he is besieged and arrested by George Decanus, taken to capital, and later pardoned.

## Italy

**Autumn** Roger II of Sicily is knighted at Palermo and assumes authority over the territories; his mother Adelaide is offered marriage by King Baldwin of Jerusalem after he divorces his third, Armenian wife.

## Syria

**12 December** Unexpected death of Tancred at Antioch; he names Roger, son of Richard of the Principate, as his successor providing he abdicates if Bohemund's young son, Bohemund II, should come to claim principality; Tancred's widow, Cecilia of France, marries Pons of Tripoli.

## 1113 Byzantium

Archbishop Peter of Milan comes to Constantinople as Papal representative to investigate theological settlement with Eastern church; he holds talks with Alexius' theologians and reaches agreement on some issues with Bishop Eustathius of Nicaea.

Alexius prepares for a new Seljuk invasion but falls ill at Damalis on East side of Bosphorus and cannot lead army so Eustathius Camytzes, governor of Nicaea, does so; Malik Shah invades 'Thraceion' theme and takes Pergamum, while 'Emir' Mohammed takes Poemamenun and a large Turkish force invades Bithynia; Camytzes besieged in Nicaea while raiders ravage Bithynia and besiege Lopadion, and 'Emir' Manalough/Monolyk loots custom-houses at Abydos.

Camytzes breaks out of Nicaea, defeats Mohammed's army, and pursues Turks up onto the Anatolian plateau but is captured in ambush; the recovered Alexius leads army into Bithynia, rounds Mount Olympus near Prusa to outflank Turks, and drives Turks back into Phrygia where he routs them at Cotyaeum.

Alexius, Gabras and Monastras pursue the Turks back across Anatolia and Mohammed attacks rearguard but is driven off; much loot is recovered and Camytzes escapes captors.

Alexius installs George Lebunas in charge of Bithynia and returns to Constantinople.

## **Syria**

**August** Adelaide of Sicily arrives at Acre in great state to marry King Baldwin.

**Late September** Mawdud of Mosul, assisting Toghtekin in Damascus, is murdered in mosque by an Ismaili 'Assassin', allegedly at instigation of his host.

**13 December** Death of Ridwan of Aleppo; weak and vicious son Alp Arslan succeeds under guardianship of eunuch minister Lulu, and Sultan Mohammed forces them to root out local castles of the heretic Ismailis who resist.

## **Russia**

Death of 'Grand Prince' Sviatopolk of Kiev; succeeded by his cousin Vladimir 'Monomakh' (Monomachus), son of Vsevolod and of Constantine IX's daughter.

## **1114 Syria**

Vasil Dgha, son and successor of Kogh Vasil of Kaisun, allies with Moslems against Baldwin of Edessa, encouraged by Armenians among the population of Edessa who Baldwin expelled from city on suspicion of disloyalty.

**May** Aqsongor il-Bursuqi, Sultan Mohammed's new governor of Mosul, launches unsuccessful two-month siege of Edessa.

**September** Alp Arslan of Aleppo is killed by Lulu, who fears for his life; his infant brother Sultanshah appointed nominal ruler.

**November** Serious earthquake in Syria damages walls of Antioch, Edessa, and other fortifications.

## Byzantium

**November** Cuman horde crosses the Danube to plunder Balkans; Alexius goes to Philippopolis to organize defences and close the Balkans Mountains passes; at Philippopolis Alexius and his son-in-law Nicephorus Bryennius organize theological negotiations with local Paulician leaders with a view to converting the latter; Bishop Eustathius of Nicaea puts the Orthodox case; three recalcitrant Paulician leaders are arrested and deported to Constantinople, and some executions of ‘heretics’ follow.

(Around 1114, date uncertain) Arrest and trial of Basil, the leader of Bogomil ‘dualist’ sect in Constantinople, who is tricked into expounding his views to Alexius at ‘private’ interview while Church and Senate leaders sit behind a curtain listening; he refuses to recant and is burnt alive in the Hippodrome as an example.

At around the same date, Synod draws up 13 ‘Anathemas’ against Bogomil and Messalian ‘heretics’.

## 1115 Byzantium

**Early?** Alexius leads his army to the Danube, where a Russian pretender claiming to be Leo Diogenes is assisting the Cuman siege of Silistria but is assassinated by Alexius’ agents; the Cumans retreat to avoid battle, but Alexius is afraid that the killing of the Russian Prince will cause an invasion by Vladimir ‘Monomakh’, Grand Prince of Kiev and grandson of Emperor Constantine IX Monomachus; he sends the Bishop of Ephesus to Vladimir with gifts including a crown and a piece of the ‘True Cross’.

(This crown the ‘Cap of Monomakh’, later becomes heirloom and coronation crown of Czars of Russia to seventeenth century.)

**Spring–Summer?** Alexius patrols the hills of Bithynia awaiting new invasion by Malik Shah, and as Turkish tribes raid lowlands he advances to Lopadium and they flee; despite attacks of gout he remains on offensive, and spends three months based at Lopadium following victory at Cellia. Empress Irene joins Alexius from Princes’ Islands, but has to retreat to her imperial galley in face of new raids; later Alexius goes to Nicaea, and **Autumn** rejoins Irene at Nicomedia.



## Syria

Sultan Mohammed sends son Mas'ud to Mosul, and governor Bursuq into Syria with army; Toghtekin of Damascus allies with Roger of Antioch against Bursuq, and Lulu regent of Aleppo also defies the Sultan.

Lulu submits to Bursuq, but **14 September** Roger routs Bursuq at Tel-Danith near River Orontes; end of the Sultanate's attempts to assert authority in Syria.

## 1116 Byzantium

Alexius sets out for campaign as Malik Shah invades Western Anatolia, but falls seriously ill at Damalis; the Turks ravage Bithynia and besiege Nicaea, led by Manalough/Monolykes, and Poemamenun besieged too.

Byzantine army at Lopadium advances, and defeats Turks; they retire onto the plateau, and recovered Alexius leads the pursuit in person; Alexius advances to Dorylaeum, while other bands of raiding Turks are driven back.

Alexius divides army, sending Camytzes' section to Polybotus and Kedrea and Stypiotes' section direct to Poimamenon; Burtzes sent to Amorium and en route defeats Turks on far side of the River Sangarius near Zompus Bridge.

Alexius' army relieves Poucheas' force at Philomelium, but the Turks have melted into the hills and he cannot protect the local Christian populace so he orders their evacuation to safer lands in Western Anatolia; on their return march Malik Shah returns to offensive and pursues Alexius.

Alexius defeats Malik Shah in battle near Ampoun, though his second son Andronicus is killed; Malik Shah requests a truce and comes to personal interview, where he agrees to become Alexius' ally and 'vassal' and recognize his suzerainty over all lands taken from Byzantines since 1071 – according to Anna Comnena, Malik Shah agrees to evacuate territories too.

Alexius warns Malik Shah against treachery by his brother Mas'ud; on his return to Sultanate Malik Shah duly faces rebellion. His troops desert, and he flees towards Byzantine territory seeking aid; he reaches Byzantine fortress at Tyragion, but Mas'ud's troops surround the place and governor Poucheas surrenders him; Malik Shah blinded and deposed and Mas'ud becomes Sultan.

## Syria

Vasil of Kaisun, facing attack from Baldwin of Edessa, goes to ally, Thoros the 'Rupenid' dynast, for assistance; Thoros arrests him and hands him over to Baldwin, who takes his lands and lets him leave for Constantinople.

Baldwin of Edessa also seizes Moslem principality of Birejek, and Armenian principality of Khoros.

## Hungary

King Coloman succeeded by his son Stephen II, who blinds his father's brother Almos, lord of Croatia; Almos and his son Béla flee to Constantinople.

## 1117 Turkish Sultanate

Sultan Mas'ud of Iconium has imprisoned brother Malik Shah strangled.

## Palestine

**Spring** Patriarch Arnulf of Jerusalem persuades the ill King Baldwin to divorce and expel Queen Adelaide to save himself from damnation as his marriage is illegal; he sends her back to Sicily, though his Armenian ex-wife refuses to return from Constantinople, and Roger II is so furious at his mother's treatment that it affects Sicilian relations with Jerusalem for decades.

## 1118 Italy

**21 January** Death of Pope Paschal; **24 January** Gelasius II (John of Gaeta) elected Pope.

## Palestine

**March** King Baldwin invades Egypt, and reaches Pelusium at mouth of the Nile; he returns to Palestine ill, but **2 April** dies en route; the Council sends to his brother, Count Eustace of Boulogne, as heir but his cousin

Baldwin of Le Bourg arrives from Edessa to claim throne as nearer to hand; elected.

**14 April** Coronation of King Baldwin II.

**16 April** Death of Queen Adelaide in Sicily.

**21 April** Death of Patriarch Arnulf.

Baldwin II grants Edessa to his ally Joscelin of Courtenay.

## **Byzantium**

Alexius' condition deteriorates, and **Summer** he is taken to Monastery of Mangana on the Bosphorus; Irene and their daughter Anna Comnena spend time while nursing him trying to persuade him to disinherit John in favour of Nicephorus Bryennius.

**15 August** Alexius, dying, smuggles his signet-ring to John while Irene and Anna are not looking and he hurries out to announce the Imperial wishes to the Guards regiments but needs proclamation accepted by Patriarch to win them over; as their shouts of acclamation are heard in bedchamber Irene tells Alexius that he cannot give up deceiving even on deathbed.

Alexius dies, aged probably 62 or 63; John II succeeds and Alexius buried at Church of Pantocrator Monastery.

Bryennius chooses not to dispute succession but Irene and Anna plot to murder John in Philopation Park; Bryennius finds out and informs John; conspirators arrested and lose property, and arrests Anna and confiscates her property too – he gives it to his new 'Grand Domestic' Axuch, ex-Turk prisoner-of-war and boyhood companion, who restores it to her.

## **Turkish Sultanate**

**6 August** Death of Caliph al-Mustanzir at Baghdad; succeeded by son Al-Mustarshid.

## **Syria**

**5 August** Death of Sultan Mohammed; his son Mahmud succeeds to rule of Iraq but Mohammed's brother Sanjar of Khorasan becomes 'de facto' independent in Persia.

Mahmud's brothers succeed, Mas' ud to Fars (Isfahan, etc.) and Tughril to Qazvin, under Mahmud's overlordship.

## Byzantium

**Autumn?** Probable date of the birth of John and Irene/Pirosaka's fourth son Manuel, later Emperor Manuel I.

## 1119 Italy

**29 January** Death of Pope Gelasius at Cluny, France; **9 February** Guido of Burgundy elected Pope Callistus II.

## Byzantium

John and his 'Grand Domestic' Axuch lead Byzantine army from Constantinople to the plateau East of Maeander valley where they retake Sozopolis, Sublaeum and Apamea; at Laodicea John is recalled by news of a conspiracy in Constantinople, and returns to punish conspirators; his sister Anna Comnena is discovered to be involved and has to retire to a nunnery where she later starts to write her father's biography, the *Alexiad*.

John returns to his army, going via Sozopolis and advancing into Pamphylia; the land-routes from Maeander valley and Constantinople to Attalia are reopened, but some nomad Turks still remain in Caria.

## Syria

**Spring** Joscelin and the brothers Godfrey and William of Bures are defeated attacking an Arab tribe near the River Yarmuk; Ilghazi of Mardin raises a large army to attack Antioch, and invades Edessan territory before camping at Qinnasrin near Aleppo to await Toghtekin's army from Damascus; **Saturday, 28 June** Roger attempts to break out but is defeated and killed and army virtually wiped out ('Field of Blood').

Ilghazi fails to follow up victory, and at Antioch Patriarch Bernard takes charge and disarms native citizens; Baldwin reaches Antioch

and assumes government till 10-year-old Prince Bohemund can come out East.

### **Persia/Turkish Sultanate**

**August** War between Sultans Mahmud of Mesopotamia and Sanjar of Khorasan ends with Mahmud having to accept Sanjar's suzerainty.

## **1121 Byzantium**

John campaigns against the Pechenegs' invasion of the Balkans and winters at Stara Zagora.

### **Syria**

Ilghazi's son Sulaiman, his governor of Aleppo, rebels against him and hands over territory to Baldwin in return for peace.

Ilghazi marches North at invitation of Toghrol, ruler of Arran in East Armenia, to campaign against Georgia.

### **Georgia**

**August** King David III of Georgia wipes out Ilghazi and Toghrol's army; he takes the city of Tiflis/Tbilisi which resumes ancient rôle as Georgian capital.

### **Egypt**

**December** 'Vizier' al-Afdal assassinated.

## **1122 Byzantium**

John wins crushing victory over the Pechenegs at Eski Zagra in Thrace, using the Varangian Guard with their axes to force way into fortified enemy camp through barricade of waggons; end of Pecheneg threat to Balkans.

Russian 'Grand Prince' Vladimir Monomakh's grand-daughter Zoe sent to Byzantium to marry John's eldest son Alexius.

## Syria

Ilghazi invades Edessa again, breaking treaty at instigation of his nephew Balak, lord of Khanzit; Baldwin marches North and campaign peters out, but **13 September** after his departure Count Joscelin is ambushed and captured by Balak; he is offered freedom if he tells Edessa to surrender but refuses.

**November** Death of Ilghazi; sons Sulaiman inherit Mardin and Timurtash, Mayyafariqin; nephew Sulaiman inherits Aleppo and Balak Harran.

## 1123 Byzantium

John campaigns in Phrygian plateau to subdue various independent Turkish tribes and forces them to accept his suzerainty and become Christians.

**19 February** Death of widowed Empress Irene Ducaena, aged around 57, in forced retirement at her own nunnery at Philopation (outside the City walls near Blachernae).

**Early** Venetian fleet en route to Palestine raids Corfu.

## Georgia

? David crosses the Southern Caucasus range into the Araxes/Aras valley, and retakes Ani from Moslems.

## Syria

Baldwin installs Geoffrey 'the Monk', Western lord of Germanicea/Mara'ash, as regent of Edessa; **23 April** he is ambushed and captured by Balak near the Euphrates, and sent to Kharpurt to join Joscelin; Patriarch Bernard rules Antioch.

**June** Balak conquers Aleppo; in his absence Joscelin smuggles a message to Armenian allies, who come to rescue and infiltrate Kharpurt to rescue him and Baldwin and seize town; Joscelin hurries to Jerusalem to fetch army while Baldwin defends the town from Balak but the Ortoqids break walls down and Baldwin is recaptured and taken to Harran.

## Italy

**July** Roger of Sicily sends his fleet under Admiral Christodulus to attack Mahdiya on the African coast in reprisal for raids; his lieutenant George of Antioch, a Greek formerly in Arab service, successfully captures the castle of ad-Dimas outside walls but the 14-year-old 'Emir' Hassan proclaims holy war and his enthusiastic troops drive the Sicilians back to ships; garrison of ad-Dimas starved out and killed in sortie.

## 1124 Syria

Balak defeats a Western force and kills Geoffrey 'the Monk', but **6 May** is killed by an arrow; Timurtash, his cousin, succeeds to Aleppo; **June** Baldwin is ransomed for 80,000 dinars and frontier fortresses, but later goes back on surrender of fortresses claiming he cannot hand over Bohemund's territory.

## Turkish Sultanate

Toghril Arslan, Seljuk prince ruling Melitene, besieged by the Danishmend ruler, 'Emir' Ghazi Gumushtekin.

## Byzantium

**June** John sends Pope Callistus letter on reopening negotiations for Church union.

**Autumn** After assisting Crusader conquest of Tyre, Venetian fleet returns to Byzantium in pursuit of commercial dispute, raids Rhodes, and winters on Chios.

Danishmend forces invade Pontus.

## Turkish Sultanate

**December** After Toghril Arslan's departure from Melitene to seek King Baldwin's aid, citizens open gates to Danishmend army; Toghril Arslan and cousin Sultanshah join Baldwin at siege of Aleppo.

## Italy

**14 December** Death of Pope Callistus; **16? December** Cardinal priest Teobaldo elected Pope Celestine II, but **21 December** his inauguration is stopped by armed Roman faction who make cardinals elect Cardinal Lambert of Ostia as Pope Honorius II.

## Russia

Death of 'Grand Prince' Vladimir 'Monomakh' of Kiev, grandson of Constantine IX Monomachus; succeeded by eldest son Mstislav, but the influence of Kiev over lesser principalities wanes with Mstislav's brother Yuri 'Dolguruki' ('Strong-Arm') of Suzdal in the North-East effectively equally powerful.

## Byzantium

Venetians attack Lesbos, and Andros and **April?** sail back via Dalmatia to Venice.

## Turkish Sultanate

Sultan Mas'ud of Iconium/Konya faces rebellion by his brother Arab, and flees siege of his capital by Arab's army to Constantinople to get Byzantine assistance.

## Syria

**March?** Aqsongor II-Bursuqi, governor of Mosul, brings Moslem reinforcements to Aleppo and Baldwin abandons siege; Aqsonqor besieges Zerdana, and **May** is defeated at Azaz by combined armies of Jerusalem, Antioch, and Edessa.

## Georgia

Death of King David III 'the Builder', one of greatest rulers of Georgia; buried at his foundation, Gelati monastery, and succeeded by son Demetrius I.



## 1126 **Byzantium**

Venetian fleet returns to Byzantine waters and raids Cephallonia; **August** Byzantine–Venetian peace-treaty restores earlier Venetian commercial privileges based on the 1082 treaty.

Byzantine army accompanies Sultan Mas'ud back to Iconium, and Arab flees to take refuge with Prince Thoros of 'Little Armenia' in the Taurus.

Revolt of Constantine Gabras, hereditary Governor of Trebizond.

## **Syria**

**October** Bohemund II arrives in Antioch from Italy to take up rule of principality; Baldwin hands over control and marries him to his daughter Alice.

**26 November** Returning to Mosul from installing his son Mas'ud, Aqsonqor il-Bursuqi is killed by an 'Assassin'; his overlord Sultan Mas'ud of Mesopotamia appoints Imad ad-Din Zengi, son of Aqsonqor the former governor of Antioch who is now warden of Baghdad, as successor.

## 1127 **Turkish Sultanate**

Refugee Seljuk prince Arab invades the Danishmend territories and takes Gumushtekin's son Mohammed prisoner; Gumushtekin defeats Arab at Comana and rescues Mohammed.

Arab flees to Constantinople; Gumushtekin invades Pontus and Paphlagonia and the governor of the latter, Alexius Kasianos, deserts to him; Gumushtekin takes Castamona, original estate of the Comnenus family in C11th.

## **Italy**

**25 July** Death of childless Count William of Apulia; Roger II of Sicily lays claim to his dominions and **August** sails to capital, Salerno, and blockades it until Archbishop Romuald opens the gates; Roger unites the Norman lands in Italy and Sicily for the first time.

Pope Honorius, alarmed at Roger's power, travels to Benevento and orders him to abandon Apulia; Roger arrives in person to meet him and politely refuses, then **September** progresses to Troia, Melfi, and Reggio; **November** after his departure Honorius arrives at Troia to join a meeting of disgruntled barons led by Roger's brother-in-law Count Rainulf of Alife, and rebellion follows.

**December** New Count Robert II of Capua joins rebels in person, and Honorius attends his inauguration.

## 1128 Byzantium

(or  
1127)

**Spring** King Stephen II of Hungary invades Byzantium over the Danube, in dispute with (his cousin) Emperor John over latter's protection of refugee rival claimant to throne Prince Almos; Branicevo besieged and captured and walls dismantled; Stephen takes Naissus and Sofia and invades Maritsa valley as John gathers army at Philippopolis.

John defeats the Hungarians outside Philippopolis and pursues them back to Danube; Stephen falls ill and John wins battle of Haramvár, invading Hungary to take Sirmium and Barancs.

## Syria

**12 February** Death of Toghtekin of Damascus, succeeded by son Buri.

## Italy

**May** Roger returns to Calabria from Sicily and marches North; Brindisi, Taranto, and other rebel towns surrender; Pope Honorius leads an army into Apulia after relieving Benevento, but meets Roger on unfavourable terrain near Bari and decides to negotiate; he agrees in secret to invest Roger as Duke of Apulia and abandon allies, and Roger follows him to Benevento for **23 August** investiture (outside walls as Roger insists on it being in his territory).

## Syria

**28 June** Fed up with feuding rival claimants, the citizens of Aleppo welcome the arrival of Zengi with army; he makes 2-year truce with Joscelin.

## 1129 Byzantium

Death of Thoros the Armenian, ruler of principality in Taurus; succeeded by son Leo.

Gumushtekin abandons campaign in Pontus to invade Armenian territories in Cilicia.

Hungarians retake Sirmium and Barenca; death of Prince Almos, whose claim to Hungarian throne is inherited by son Béla; peace between John and King Stephen secured by a personal meeting.

## Italy

Death of Doge Domenico Michiel of Venice; succeeded by Peter Polani.

**May** Roger II brings new forces from Sicily to Apulia; Brindisi holds out but **August** rebel governor Grimoald of Bari surrenders his city to naval blockade by George of Antioch, now Roger's 'Emir Al-Bahr' ('Commander of the Sea', soon known as *Admiral* in first use of the term in Europe).

Rainulf answers appeal of Troia to take control of defence, but soon surrenders and is allowed to retain it as vassal.

## Syria/Palestine

**August** Count Fulk of Anjou, father of Geoffrey 'Plantagenet' to whom he has handed his domains, arrives at Jerusalem to marry King Baldwin's daughter Melissende and become his heir to kingdom.

## Italy

**September** Roger II holds a grand assembly of all his secular and clerical vassals at Melfi and makes them swear allegiance to him, as Duke of Apulia, and to his sons Roger and Tancred; the legal right of feud is abolished by personal oath to the Duke.

## 1130 Syria

**February** Bohemund II of Antioch, hoping to take advantage of Armenian weakness under new ruler Leo, invades Cilicia to besiege Anazarbus but Leo appeals for help to Gumushtekin and Bohemund is ambushed and killed by them, unrecognized in rout; his head is sent to Caliph.

Bohemund's widow Alice does not want to seek her father Baldwin's assistance and appeals to Zengi at Aleppo instead, but her messenger is

captured by Baldwin who is hastening towards Antioch; she shuts the gates of Antioch in her father's face but after Joscelin's arrival with troops the citizens surrender and Alice is banished to Laodicea; Baldwin regent for her daughter Constance.

## Italy

**13/14 February** Dying Pope Honorius is carried off to the Frangipani family's quarter on Caelian Hill in Rome, so on death their partisan, chancellor Almeric, can organize secret election by supporting cardinals; Gregorio Papareschi elected Pope Innocent II. On hearing the news, the excluded majority of cardinals elect Peter Pierleoni as rival Pope Anacletus II, and wealth of converted Jewish Pierleoni family helps Anacletus to secure control of Rome.

## Byzantium

John invades Danismend dominions while their army is in Cilicia, and builds new fortress on the river Rhyndacus; his younger brother Isaac Comnenus, with son John, flee to Turkish territories and go on to Sultan Mas'ud in Mesopotamia, and Isaac later corresponds with rebel 'duke' Constantine Gabras of Trebizond and John's father-in-law Prince Leo of 'Armenia'.

John invades Paphlagonia and retakes Castamona; he celebrates triumph at Constantinople.

## Egypt

**7 October** Al-Hafiz succeeds cousin Al-Amir as Fatimid Caliph.

## Italy

**September** With Innocent securing support in Germany, Anacletus travels to Avellino to meet Roger II and win support; **27 September** he issues bull at Benevento granting Roger the crown of Apulia, Calabria, and Sicily as new kingdom and overlordship of Naples, Capua, and in wartime Benevento.

**25 December** Coronation of Roger II at Palermo by its Archbishop.

## 1131 **Italy**

**February** Roger is refused the keys of Amalfi as token of submission and crosses to Italy; Amalfi is besieged by 'Emir' John by land and George of Antioch by sea and surrenders; Sergius VII surrenders Naples and accepts Roger as overlord; **Summer** he returns to Sicily.

## **Hungary**

Death of the childless Stephen II of Hungary; Prince Béla, son of Almos, returns from Constantinople as new king by permission of his cousin the Emperor, who retains a refugee Hungarian 'prince' (or pretender) called Boris as potential rival in case he is needed and marries him to niece .

## **Syria**

Leo of 'Armenia' takes Mopsuestia, Taurus, and Adana from weakened Antiochene regency government.

Joscelin of Edessa falls down a collapsed mine in siege North-East of Aleppo and is carried dying to Kaisun, where Gumushtekin the Danishmend is besieging town but withdraws when he hears that he is coming; Joscelin dies and succeeded by son Joscelin.

## **Byzantium**

Danishmend army retakes Castamona.

## **Turkish Sultanate/Persia**

Death of Sultan Mahmud of Mesopotamia; succeeded briefly by his son Da'ud who is overthrown by his uncle, Mahmud's brother Tughril.

## **Syria/Palestine**

**Friday, 21 August** Death of Baldwin II of Jerusalem; daughter Melissende and son-in-law Fulk joint sovereigns.

## Italy

**Autumn** Tancred of Conversano and Grimoald of Bari revolt against Roger.

## 1132 Syria

Buri of Damascus succeeded by debauched son Abu'l Fath Ismail.

## Byzantium

John invades Paphlagonia and besieges Castamona; while he is busy in Anatolia, Seljuks take Sozopolis and Isaac's partisans start a plot in Constantinople.

John takes Castamona and marches East into the Halys valley, lost to Byzantium since mid-1070s; he forces submission of 'Emirs' Tughril of Amasea and Alp Arslan of Gangra, but cannot evict settled Turks and restore Greeks.

## Italy

Roger quarrels with Count Rainulf of Alife, as Rainulf's wife Matilda leaves him for her brother Roger's court and Rainulf refuses to return her dower lands; Rainulf and Count Robert of Capua rebel and take Benevento, and **July** Roger is defeated at Nocera in attempt to suppress revolt; Bari and other towns join in.

**August** German 'Holy Roman Emperor' Lothair and army arrive at Placenza on promised expedition to Italy to aid Innocent, who joins them; Roger sends troops to Rome to aid Anacletus.

## Russia

Death of Mstislav, 'Grand Prince' of Kiev, descendant of Constantine IX Monomachus; succeeded by brother Iaropolk.

## 1133 Byzantium

With Emperor John back in Constantinople (c. **January**), Gumushtekin the Danishmend invades Paphlagonia again, storms Castamona, and massacres garrison; John prepares large expedition.

## Italy

**Spring** Roger returns to Apulia and lets 'Saracen' (Arab) troops from Sicily loose on the rebel towns, relying on terror to induce surrenders; Tancred of Conversano besieged in Montepoloso and surrenders but town still sacked, and Trani and Melfi razed to ground.

Anacletus proposes to allow a panel of arbitrators to decide on Papacy, but Lothair and Innocent refuse; however Anacletus' partisans withstand German siege in the Leonine City (Vatican), and **June** Innocent has to perform Lothair's promised coronation in the Lateran Basilica; Lothair grants him the lands of the late Countess Matilda of Tuscany for Papal state.

## Syria

Zengi of Mosul and Aleppo defeats the armies of Seljuk Sultan Tughril of Iraq and the Caliph; Sawar, his governor of Aleppo, attacks Antioch and Fulk comes from Jerusalem to the rescue and storms Sawar's camp at Qinnasrin to send him fleeing; after Fulk's departure raids resume.

## Italy

**August** As Lothair returns to Germany, Innocent flees Rome for Pisa.

**Autumn** Roger returns to Sicily leaving Apulia quiet but Robert of Capua resisting him with a Pisan fleet.

## 1134 Italy

**Spring** Roger returns to Italy and Campanian towns surrender and are spared; Robert of Capua flees to Pisa and Rainulf of Alife surrenders in return for pardon; Sergius of Naples to Roger's camp to submit.

## Byzantium

Death of Patriarch John IX Agapetus; succeeded by Leo Stypes.

John sets out with expedition to Paphlagonia, but **13 August** Empress Irene dies in Bithynia; John returns to Constantinople for funeral, but his army continues campaign and besieges Gangra.

**September** Death of Gumushtekin; succeeded by son Nasr al-Din Mohammed, whose younger brothers Yaghi-Basan and Ain al-Daula rebel; John hears of these events en route to resume campaign, and resumes siege of Gangra which holds out; his army winters in River Rhyndacus valley.

### **Persia/Turkish Sultanate**

Death of Sultan Tughril II of Iraq; succeeded by elder brother Mas'ud.

## **1135 Byzantium**

**Early** Fall of Gangra to Byzantines, followed later by Castamona.

### **Syria**

**February** Zengi attacks Damascus but is repulsed; Ismail, ruler of Damascus, assassinated by plotters and replaced by brother Shihab al-Din Mahmud; Zengi takes Antiochene frontier fortresses while Sawar attacks Turbessel, family home of Joscelin of Edessa.

### **Italy**

**April** Robert of Capua arrives at Naples with Pisan fleet to renew rebellion;  
**June** Roger arrives at Salerno to besiege Naples and creates his eldest son Roger as Duke of Apulia to provide closer Sicilian control of the turbulent barons, son Tancred Prince of Bari, and son Alfonso Prince of (confiscated) Capua.

Roger besieges Naples.

### **Byzantium**

John sends envoys to Germany to encourage Lothair to attack Roger; Lothair is interested and sends Bishop of Havelburg to Constantinople.

### **Syria**

**Summer** New Patriarch Radulph of Antioch secures Alice's return to resume regency government of Antioch; she sends envoys to Constantinople to



suggest her daughter Constance's betrothal to John's younger son Manuel in order to solve Byzantine threat to reconquer city by making it Manuel and Constance's fief.

Barons who are suspicious of Byzantine alliance send hastily to France to warn a rival suitor for Constance's hand, Raymond of Poitiers, and he sets off for Syria but has to elude Roger's agents as Roger sees the betrothal of Constance as chance to claim Antioch for his family.

### **Persia/Turkish Sultanate**

Abbasid Caliph Al-Mustarshid revolts against Seljuk rule of Mesopotamia but is defeated in battle by Sultan Mas'ud, captured, and **26 August** later murdered in his tent; succeeded by son Al-Rashid.

## **1136 Byzantium**

John prepares a grand expedition to Cilicia to expel the Armenians from towns and hopefully go on to Antioch.

### **Syria**

**April** Raymond of Poitou arrives in Antioch and is married to Constance by Patriarch Radulph, hoodwinking Alice who was told he was only on a visit; Alice is sent back to Laodicea, and Raymond effective ruler. Raymond and Baldwin of Germanicea/Mar'ash march against Leo the Armenian in Cilicia, but Leo's relative Joscelin of Edessa does not join in; Leo defeats Antiochenes, but Baldwin lures Leo to a truce-meeting and kidnaps him.

Danishmend tribesmen take various Cilician towns as Leo's sons quarrel, but Leo promises Crusaders to surrender fortresses in return for release and after achieves freedom does not do so.

### **Italy**

Naples holds out against Roger, and Robert ex-ruler of Capua goes to get help from Lothair.

## Byzantium

**Autumn** John's army advances from Attaleia along coast into Western Cilicia, and Danishmendids abandon conquests there to them.

**October** John founds the 'Pantocrator' Monastery in Constantinople as memorial to Irene.

## Persia/Turkish Sultanate

Encouraged by Zengi, Caliph Al-Rashid breaks Seljuk alliance and attacks Sultan Mas'ud; he is besieged in Baghdad, forced to surrender, **18 August** deposed, and exiled to Isfahan; replaced by uncle Al-Muktafi.

## 1137 Byzantium

John sends envoys to meet Lothair as he marches into Italy to aid rebels against Roger; he and his four sons go to Attaleia and thence accompany army along coast into Cilicia, escorted by fleet; Leo abandons siege of Seleucia and John enters the Cilician plain unopposed; Tarsus, Adana, and Mopsuestia surrender and Anazarbus bombarded into submission after 37 days; Leo flees into Taurus and John annexes Cilicia.

## Italy

**February** Lothair and Duke Henry of Bavaria reach Tuscany and head into Southern Italy, **April** Monte Cassino monastery besieged but surrenders in return for autonomy; Sicilians retreat and Robert is restored to Capua; **23 May** Benevento surrenders; Lothair invades Apulia along Eastern route while Henry marches to South inland, and meet at Bari where **30 May** Innocent addresses them in cathedral.

Roger sends envoys to offer Lothair that his son Roger will hold Apulia as German fief, but Lothair proclaims rebel Rainulf of Alife as Duke instead.

Lothair's army becomes restive in difficult summer conditions, and he marches back to Salerno where Robert of Capua is besieging Sicilian governor, the Englishman Robert of Selby; en route he storms Melfi and massacres garrison; **8 August** blockaded by Pisan fleet, Salerno surrenders but citadel holds out; the Pisan fleet leaves and Lothair invests Robert as Duke of Apulia but is annoyed at uninvited Innocent joining in ceremony to assert Papal suzerainty.

## Syria

**Summer** Pons, Count of Tripoli, killed in ambush in mountains by raiding Damascenes, and King Fulk has to go to aid of son Raymond II, delaying assistance to Antioch as the Byzantine army approaches; Raymond of Antioch also has to go South with Joscelin to relieve Zengi's siege of the castle of Montferrand after Fulk defeated and Raymond of Tripoli captured.

## Byzantium/Syria

**29 August** John arrives on North bank of Orontes just as Raymond returns; Raymond offers to become John's governor of Antioch, but John demands unconditional surrender; Fulk tells Raymond he cannot help, and John demands that Raymond come to camp and hand over Antioch in return for Homs and Aleppo when taken from Moslems.

Raymond comes to John's camp and does homage, and Imperial Standard is raised over the citadel of Antioch.

With Leo the Armenian's sons still holding out, John leaves Antioch **Autumn** to campaign in the Taurus against them; they are hunted down, and Leo, Rupen and Thoros captured and sent to Constantinople (Rupen executed) but Mieh, Stephen, and Constantine flee to cousin Joscelin of Edessa.

## Italy

**October?** Lothair takes leave of the Apulian barons at Aquino and sets off back to Germany; after his departure Roger lands at Salerno and advances to sack Capua. **30 October** Rainulf of Alife defeats Roger and his son Roger at Rignano; **November/December** Innocent's and Anacletus' partisans debate their masters' claims to Papacy at Salerno in front of Roger, and Innocent gets the better of argument thanks to eloquence of Abbot Bernard of Clairvaux.

**December** Death of Emperor Lothair in Tyrol.

## Byzantium

John winters in Cilicia; his brother-in-law 'Caesar' Nicephorus Bryennius returns ill to Constantinople and dies.

## 1138 Italy

**25 January** Death of Anacletus, still holding Rome; most of supporters desert to Innocent, but **March** his partisans in Rome elect Gregorio Conti as Pope Victor IV with Roger's support.

### Byzantium/Syria

**Late March** John and his army return to Antioch to join Raymond, and combined army marches up Orontes into Moslem territory to take Homs as Raymond's replacement fief; **3–8 April** siege of Biza'a; while Zengi is besieging independent Moslem city of Hama, John marches on Aleppo but **20 April** fails to storm the city; he marches South to **28 April** attack Shaizar.

Zengi advances to relief and sends successful emissaries to Danishmend ruler Mohammed and Seljuk Sultan Mas'ud at Iconium/Konya; Raymond and Joscelin prove distinctly dilatory at fighting, and **mid-May** exasperated John accepts rich gifts (including loot taken from Romanus IV at Manzikert 1071) and offer of vassalage from Emir of Shaizar.

**21 May** John starts march back to Antioch; he enters the city on horseback accompanied by Raymond and Joscelin on foot, and attends Mass at the Cathedral before taking up residence in Palace; he demands surrender of citadel to be Byzantine garrison, but the princes prevaricate and Joscelin slips out of the Palace to start a riot; fearing for safety, John has to leave the city and then hears that Seljuks have invaded Cilicia at Zengi's investigation.

John retires into Cilicia and thence returns to Constantinople while his nephew, Nicephorus Bryennius and Anna Comnena's son Alexius Bryennius Comnenus, leads a force to punish the Seljuks; Alexius goes on to drive Turkish raiders out of Sangarius valley in North Phrygia.

### Italy

**29 May** 'Pope' Victor IV abdicates at Bernard of Clairvaux's instigation; end of the long schism, and Innocent returns to Rome.

Roger starts prolonged reconquest of rebel Apulia.

## 1139 **Byzantium**

Mohammed, the Danishmend ruler, invades Cilicia and takes Vakha; Seljuk Turkish tribesmen invade the Sangarius valley again and are defeated, but Gabras the 'duke' of Trebizond, a partisan of treacherous Prince Isaac, rises in rebellion against John.

### **Italy**

**8 April** Innocent renews Roger of Sicily's excommunication.

**30 April** Death of Apulian rebel leader, Rainulf of Alife, at Troia; Pope Innocent comes to the aid of rebels and marches into Southern Italy.

**May** Mount Vesuvius erupts to add to turmoil in Southern Italy.

### **Syria**

**22 June** Mahmud, ruler of Damascus, murdered in bed; Unur, ex-'Atabeg' of Homs, seizes control of city.

## **Byzantium**

**Summer** John expels the Danishmends from Paphlagonia again, and sets out for Trebizond; his brother Isaac comes to surrender to him, and is pardoned but required to live out of the capital at Heraclea.

### **Italy**

**22 July** Pope Innocent's army is defeated at battle of the River Garigliano by Roger's son Roger of Apulia; he has to surrender to Normans and **25 July** at Mignano confirms the investiture of Roger's sons with their fiefs of Apulia, Capua, etc. and abandons the rebels.

**August** Troia surrenders to Roger (II).

**Autumn** Trani surrenders and is reprieved, but its prince, Jacquintus, is executed and other surrendered rebels blinded or imprisoned on pretexts.

## Byzantium

**Autumn** John reaches Trebizond, and Gabras surrenders; he turns inland to besiege Neocaesarea/Niksar, but his communications are strained and siege falters; his nephew John, Isaac's elder son, flees into Turkish territory and never returns to Byzantium.

## Syria

**21 October** Syrian fortress of Baalbek in the Buqala Valley falls to Zengi; the Kurdish general Ayyub, father of Saladin (b. 1137 ?), new governor.

## 1140 Italy

Princes Roger and Alfonso restore Sicilian authority in the Abruzzi; Robert of Selby appointed governor of Apulia and Calabria; **August** Roger II issues legal constitution for his vassals, 'Assize of Ariano'.

## Byzantium

**Autumn** John abandons the siege of Neocaesarea and returns to Constantinople.

Persecution of suspected 'dualist' heretics, especially Bogomils, in Constantinople; the monks of St Nicholas' monastery and others punished by Synod for allowing the circulation of works by the heretic Constantine Chrysomalus.

## 1141 Byzantium

Leo, the ex-ruler of Armenian principality, dies as a prisoner in Constantinople; Thoros, eldest son, titular claimant to throne.

?Conrad of Germany sends his chaplain Albert and Count Alexander of Gravina to Constantinople over proposed marriage-alliance with John; Bertha of Sulzbach, Conrad's sister-in-law, proposed as wife for John's fourth son Manuel and accepted, possibly linked to John's concept of Manuel inheriting principality in Cilicia and Antioch so close Western link advisable.

?Date of conciliatory letter from John to Pope Innocent, referring to separate spheres of influence of Emperor in secular affairs and Pope in religious.

John retakes Sozopolis and the Lake Karalis area from Turks to secure the safety of Constantinople-Attaleia-Cilicia road.

(or  
1142) **Turkish Sultanate**

Death of Mohammed the Danishmend; son and successor Dhu'l-Nun fights his uncles Yaghi-Basan Yaqub Arslan of Sebastea and Ayn al-Daula of Melitene; Seljuk Sultan Mas'ud of Iconium supports Dhu'l-Nun.

**Hungary**

Death of Béla II of Hungary; regency for son and successor Géza II.

**Persia**

Khitay Tartar nomads defeat Seljuk Sultan Sanjar in Khorasan and end Seljuk power over River Oxus area; probable source of rumours in Europe that Christian Asian ruler 'Prester John' has attacked Moslems in the rear.

1142 **Byzantium/Persia**

Bertha of Sulzbach arrives in Constantinople to marry Manuel; **Spring** John and his four sons set out for Cilicia, driving out Turkish tribesmen from Phrygia and going on to Attaleia; at the latter Prince Alexius dies suddenly leaving only a daughter, and brother Andronicus becomes John's heir; John sends Andronicus and younger brother Isaac back to Constantinople with Alexius' body, but Andronicus dies too en route – uncertain if his young sons, John and Alexius, or Isaac are now heirs.

John invades Cilicia, announcing he intends to campaign against the Danishmends to North-East; he enters Taurus mountains, then suddenly swings South into Edessan territory and **September** arrives outside Turbessel; Joscelin does homage and hands over daughter as hostage.

**25 September** John arrives at Baghras near Antioch, and repeats 1137 demand that Raymond hand over Antioch in return for a new principality

carved out of Moslem Syria; Raymond consults vassals who allege he cannot surrender territory as (i) he is only regent for Constance; (ii) feudal law requires their consent and they refuse it.

Raymond informs John who pillages around Antioch and retires to Cilicia for winter.

## 1143 Byzantium/Syria

Death of Patriarch Leo Stypes.

John prepares to return to Antioch, but **March** is wounded by an allegedly poisoned arrow while out hunting in Cilician mountains; uncertain if it is accident or a conspiracy. The wound turns septic and he falls seriously ill, but he refuses advice of 'Grand Domestic' Axuch and others to nominate Isaac as successor and chooses younger Manuel who he announces to a Council of generals and personally crowns.

**8 April** Death of John II, aged 55; Manuel succeeds, aged probably 24, and sends Axuch to Constantinople post-haste to get there ahead of news and arrest Isaac to pre-empt coup; Isaac arrested unsuspecting and sent to Pantocrator monastery, John's brother Isaac and son-in-law 'Caesar' John Roger (a Norman) are arrested too, and imperial treasure distributed to courtiers to win them over.

Manuel marches back to Constantinople, abandoning Syrian campaign; en route his cousin Andronicus, Isaac's younger son, is kidnapped by Turkish bandits while out hunting and as Manuel does not bother to rescue or ransom him his resentment of his cousin grows.

Synod held at Constantinople; Michael Curcuas, monk from island monastery of Oxeia, elected Patriarch, **July?**; the Synod dismisses Bishops Clement of Sosandra and Leontius of Balbissa, Cappadocia, on charges of Bogomil heresy from their superior **20 August**; **?September** Patriarch Michael crowns Manuel as Emperor, **1 October** the monk Niphon charged before Synod with Bogomilism. Notably, Manuel does not take lead in Synod's investigations unlike zealous Alexius I did.

Basil Xerus sent to Roger II on unsuccessful mission; it appears to be Manuel rather than Roger who backs out of agreement.

Thoros II of 'Armenia' returns to lands after escaping from Manuel's custody, either in Constantinople or with army, and starts to rebuild principality and take Byzantine fortresses.



## Italy

Pope Innocent expelled from Rome by rioting citizens objecting to his leniency towards Tivoli in civic dispute; **24 September** he dies; **26 September** Guido of Costello elected Pope Celestine II.

## Palestine

**10 November** Death of King Fulk of Jerusalem at Acre after riding-accident; Queen Melissende and teenage eldest son Baldwin III co-rulers, assisted by Melissende's cousin 'Constable' Manasses of Hierges.

## Syria/Byzantium

**Autumn** Raymond of Antioch defeated invading Cilicia by Contostephanus brothers and Turkish general Bursuq on land and Demetrius Branas with fleet.

## 1144 Byzantium

Irene, widow of Manuel's late brother Andronicus, arrested in Palace for plotting (? with 'Caesar' John Roger's supporters) and exiled to Princes' Islands, soon allowed to return.

**22 February** Niphon excommunicated and imprisoned.

? Thoros defeats Manuel's cousin Andronicus, now governor of Cilicia, and retakes Anazarbus, Adana, Tarsus, and Mopsuestia.

## Italy

Celestine II refuses to ratify Treaty of Mignano; Sicilian army besieges Benevento and Pope sends Censu Frangipani and Cardinal Octavian to Palermo to negotiate; **8 March** Celestine dies and **12 March** Gerardo Caccianemaici elected Pope (Lucius II).

**June** Roger and Lucius meet at Ceprano but no agreement; Roger' son Prince Alfonso killed during raid in Abruzzi, **October** seven-year truce agreed.

## Syria

**Autumn** Zengi attacks Joscelin of Edessa's ally, Kara Arslan of Diyarbeka and when Joscelin comes to his aid Zengi evades him and besieges Edessa; Joscelin waits at Turbessel for assistance but **24 December** a wall at Edessa collapses and the city is stormed, population massacred or enslaved; **26 December** citadel surrenders, end of Frankish rule East of Euphrates.

## 1145 Italy

Rebels at Rome proclaim a 'Commune', led by late 'anti-Pope' Anacletus' brother in defiance of Lucius; Lucius leads his forces in assault on rebels on Capitol but **15 February** is mortally wounded; Bernado Pignatelli elected (Eugenius III) and as rebels seize Rome is consecrated at Farfa and resides at Viterbo.

## Syria

Seljuk prince Alp Arslan revolts against Zengi's tutelage at Mosul, and Zengi returns to Mosul to capture and execute him.

## Byzantium

Turks raid into Phrygia and reach Melangia to demolish fortifications; Manuel leads army to Melangia to restore walls but falls ill and abandons campaign on death of sister Maria; Joscelin of Edessa arrives to beg for aid and Manuel insists that he kneel at John II's tomb in contrition for his trickery at Antioch.

Manuel sends envoys to Emperor Conrad, demanding better terms before he marries Bertha of Sulzbach; ?Conrad proposes to give Manuel back part of ex-Byzantine Apulia when he evicts Roger of Sicily.

## Italy

**August?** Bishop Hugh of Jabala arrives at Viterbo to appeal to Pope for aid, probably bringing distorted rumours of a Christian sovereign's victory over Moslems in Transoxiana that add to 'Prester John' legend.

## 1146 **Byzantium**

**January** Manuel finally marries Bertha of Sulzbach.

Seljuks raid again and Manuel gathers troops at Lopadium and heads for Seljuk heartland; he retakes and sacks Turkish-held Philomelium as garrison flees, defeats Turkish army near Hadrianopolis, and reaches Mas'ud's capital, Iconium, to start siege; he respects Moslem tombs outside walls. Iconium holds out; his communications too stretched, Manuel retires into Byzantine territory via Lake Caralis with Turks harassing his army en route; negotiations opened for peace.

### **France**

**31 March** Assembly of Louis VII, King of France, and his vassals at Vézelay harangued by (St) Bernard of Clairvaux into mounting a new Crusade; 'Second Crusade' agreed and Manuel is informed of Crusaders' plans to cross his territory by French envoys during the Iconium campaign.

### **Italy**

**Summer** Roger of Sicily's fleet takes Tripoli on North African coast as new base to prevent piracy and help dominate central Mediterranean.

### **Syria**

**14 September** Zengi assassinated by a slave, succeeded by quarrelling sons Nur-ed-Din of Aleppo and Saif-ed-Din of Mosul; Unur of Damascus and the Ortoqids of Mardin and Mayyafariqin revolt and **October–November** Joscelin enters Edessa but cannot storm citadel and has to retreat; Nur-ed-Din expels the Christian population of Edessa and neighbouring area, ending c.800 years of Edessa as Christian bastion.

### **Germany**

**December** Conrad receives Manuel's ambassadors at Speyer and announces imminent departure on Crusade.

## 1147 Byzantium

**26 February** Patriarch Cosmas abdicates over friendship with Niphon the Bogomil; succeeded by Nicholas Muzalon, former Bishop of Cyprus (c.1110).

## Hungary/Germany

**May** Conrad, Vladislav of Bohemia, Boleslav of Poland, Frederick Duke of Swabia, and others arrive in Hungary and receive supplies from King Géza; Manuel's envoy Demetrius Macrembolites meets Conrad who agrees to take oath never to do anything against Manuel's interests in return for aid.

**29 June** Louis VII's army arrives at Ratisbon, and Louis meets Macrembolites and swears to restore all taken imperial territory and protect Manuel's interests.

## Byzantium

**Late July** Conrad's army crosses Danube at Branicevo; they receive supplies from Michael Branas at Naissus, and receive official welcome from governor Michael Palaeologus at Serdica/Sofia; looting of countryside in Maritsa valley, and at Philippopolis Cumans in Conrad's army loot suburbs but are punished; near Adrianople peasants kill a sick baron, Frederick of Swabia burns monastery in reprisal, and Byzantines kill stragglers; Byzantine envoy Prosuch restores peace but Conrad refuses request to march to Hellespont and avoid Constantinople.

**Late August** Louis VII's French army at Branicevo; they march on to Adrianople, and Louis also refuses to go to Anatolia via Hellespont and follows Conrad; **10 September** Conrad reaches Constantinople and is put up in Philopation palace outside walls, later transferred to Picidium over Golden Horn after vandalism; Byzantines and Germans skirmish in suburbs, but Bertha negotiates between Manuel and Conrad and the latter transfers army to Chalcedon; **4 October** Louis arrives at capital; put up at Philopation and entertained by Manuel at Blachernae; meanwhile Roger of Sicily, intent on attacking Byzantium, unsuccessfully tries to win him over through envoys; Louis goes on to Chalcedon where a dispute over a Frank being 'cheated' causes Manuel to cut off supplies; peace restored after Louis agrees to restore all taken imperial territory.

Roger of Sicily's fleet attacks Corfu and takes the eponymous capital; admiral George of Antioch sails into the Gulf of Corinth and sends men overland to Thebes to carry off silk-weavers and deport them to Roger's capital; he raids round Peloponnese to Corinth, which is sacked, and Athens, and after Crusaders' departure from capital they sail into Propontis; a Sicilian ship lands raiders to scale Manuel's palace walls and loot fruit from his gardens.

**15 October** Conrad sets out from Nicaea onto the Anatolian plateau; his army is ambushed by Turks on the river Bathys near Dorylaeum and flees, and Conrad retires to Nicaea; **early November** Louis arrives at Nicaea, and Conrad joins his army but much of his force returns to capital; Louis and Conrad march South, avoiding Turks, to Adramyttium and Pergamum; at Ephesus Conrad falls ill and returns to Constantinople, where Manuel acts as his doctor and persuades Conrad's brother Henry, Duke of Austria, to marry his niece Theodora.

Louis ignores warnings of Turks waiting inland and marches up Maeander valley to spend Christmas at Decervium.

## Russia

Bishop Michael of Kiev leaves for Byzantium after confrontation with independent-minded local bishops, and forbids any services without him; the six Russian bishops in principedom, boycotted by four Greek bishops, elect Hilarion to replace Michael at Kiev; not recognised by Empire.

## 1148 Byzantium

**1 January** Louis, taking the inland road to Attaleia, reaches Pisidian Antioch; Turks attack Franks on bridge and then retreat to Byzantine fortress; **4 January** Louis enters evacuated Laodicea; Franks are harassed by storms, snow, and Turks on the road and Louis blames Manuel as it is within imperial territory; **February** he reaches Attaleia to be received by governor, Landulph the Italian, but not much supplies and not enough ships for all army; Louis leaves for Syria by sea, and Counts of Bourbon and Flanders camp with the rest of army outside city until driven in by Turks' raids; leaders sail when ships are ready but many troops have to straggle along coast to safety of Cilicia.

**March** Byzantine ships take Conrad to Palestine; **19 March** Louis arrives at St. Symeon, port of Antioch.

**March** Manuel sends fleet against the Sicilians on Corfu, and calls on Venetians for help; Stephen Contostephanus commands fleet and ‘Grand Domestic’ John Axuch (son of Axuch) leads army along Via Egnatia; Manuel hears of Cuman crossing of Danube at Philippopolis and delays his joining attack to go to Danube and repel raid.

## Italy

**Early Summer** ‘Doge’ Peter Polani of Venice dies en route to Corfu with fleet; succeeded by Dominico Morosini.

**2 May** Death of Roger II’s eldest son, duke Roger of Apulia; heirship and title to brother William.

## Syria

**June–July** Failure of Crusading leaders’ hesitant attempt to invade Damascus, ironically an ally of Kingdom of Jerusalem.

**September** Conrad leaves Acre for Thessalonica, to rendezvous with Manuel after his Cuman campaign.

## Byzantium

Contostephanus killed during Byzantine-Venetian siege of Corfu by a rock hurled down from the hilltop citadel; Manuel winters at Thessalonica with Conrad, and Henry and Theodora married there.

## 1149 Byzantium

**February** Conrad leaves for Germany; Manuel goes on to join the siege of Corfu.

Sicilian garrison of Corfu runs out of supplies and negotiate their safe passage home; Manuel reoccupies Corfu and plans to invade Apulia to punish Roger II, sending ‘Grand Domestic’ John Axuch with army to Avlona ready to cross to Ancona.

**June?** Louis and Queen Eleanor are transported back to West by Silician squadron, which encounters a Byzantine fleet off the Peloponnese; the ship carrying Eleanor and baggage is temporarily detained, though Louis’

ship hoists French flag and is not molested in the skirmish; Louis blames Manuel again.

## Syria

**29 June** Raymond of Antioch and his Syrian 'Assassin' ally Ali are killed in battle at Inab by Nur-ed-Din in sandstorm; Nur-ed-Din attacks Antioch but is repulsed as King Baldwin arrives with army from Jerusalem; Joscelin retakes Germanicea/Mar'ash but is forced to retreat by advancing Sultan Mas'ud.

**August** Death of Unur of Damascus, succeeded by Toghtekin's grandson Mujir-ed-Din.

## Byzantium

Manuel abandons Italian plans after Serbs under the 'Grand Zupan' of Rascia revolt, encouraged by Roger; he defeats Serbs, who retreat into inaccessible forests, and celebrates Triumph in capital.

## Italy

**August** Louis meets Pope Eugenius at Tusculum and complains about Manuel.

## 1150 Syria

**April** Joscelin captured by Turkish brigands en route to Antioch and handed over to Nur-ed-Din, taken to Aleppo, blinded, and imprisoned; his followers successfully defend Turbessel and wife Beatrice escapes to Antioch where Manuel's envoys offer to buy all that remains of principality (West of Euphrates); Thomas governor of Cilicia buys the six remaining Crusader castles there for Byzantium.

Baldwin accompanies Byzantine troops as they take over the fortresses; Joscelin's son Joscelin and daughter Agnes stay at Antioch, where Constance refuses to marry Baldwin's choices.

## Byzantium

Conrad sends envoys to propose that his son and heir Henry marries a Comnene princess, but the prince's death prevents this.

**Autumn** Manuel campaigns in Upper Maritsa valley against Serbs; Géza sends Hungarian army to aid Serbs but they are defeated at Setcenitsa; Serbs isolated and defeated, and their 'Grand Zupan' surrenders; Manuel plans to punish Géza who allies with Prince Iziaslav of Kiev.

## 1151 Byzantium

Patriarch Nicholas IV Muzalon is accused over his earlier resignation from see of Cyprus invalidating him from subsequent posts; he resists at investigatory Synod but abdicates after heated personal debate with Manuel; succeeded by Theodotus II.

## Italy

**Easter** Roger II crowns son William as successor at Palermo.

Pope Eugenius sends envoys to Conrad in Germany to assist Germans. Byzantine alliance against Roger II.

## Byzantium

Manuel invades southern Hungary; his brother-in-law Theodore Vatatzes takes Zemlin as Manuel arrives; a Byzantine fleet sails up Danube to transport his army across river, and Manuel faces Hungarian army under Géza's uncle Béla while pretender Boris raids Tèmesvar.

Byzantine/Hungarian truce agreed, and peace negotiated.

## Syria

Mas'ud and Nur-ed-Din divide the ex-Edessan fortresses East of Euphrates; **July** Byzantine commander surrenders Turbessel as the Moslems invade Western part of principality and most of garrisons flee; end of Christian presence in Edessan lands.

## Byzantium

Thoros of Armenia invades Cilicia; governor Thomas killed outside Mopsuestia, and Manuel sends cousin Prince Andronicus with army but he is routed besieging Mopsuestia and returns home.



Manuel sends John Roger to Antioch to marry Constance; she refuses to have him.

## 1152 **Byzantium**

**March** Birth of Manuel and Bertha/Irene's first (and only) child, Mary.

Hungarians prepare to invade Balkans but abandon plans when Manuel leads an army to the Danube.

Plans for Byzantine/German/Papal coalition against Sicily postponed on **15 March** death of Conrad who is succeeded by nephew Frederick 'Barbarossa' of Swabia.

### **Turkish Sultanate**

Death of Ain-al-Daula of Melitene; Mas'ud makes successor Dhu'l Qarnayn pay homage to Seljuks.

### **Persia**

Death of Sultan Mas'ud of Mesopotamia, succeeded by nephew Tughril.

### **Palestine**

**2 April** Coronation of Baldwin as King of Jerusalem, thwarting plans of his mother Queen Melissende for double coronation; Melissende excluded from power.

## **Byzantium**

? 'Grand Zupan' Uros of Serbia deposed by brother Dusan, Hungarian ally.

## 1153 **Byzantium**

Manuel leads army towards Hungarian border, but at Sofia Hungarian ambassadors arrive and agree to his terms for peace; he leads army West against Serbs instead; en route he holds a Western-style

tournament in valley of Pelagonia where his late brother Andronicus' son John is wounded and Manuel's subsequent solicitude causes jealousy from his own cousin Andronicus (son of John II's brother Isaac) who at around this time is appointed governor of Belgrade and Branicevo.

? Andronicus starts plotting rebellion, and opens contact with Hungary.

## Italy

**8 July** Death of Pope Eugenius at Tivoli; having concluded treaty with Frederick Barbarossa guaranteeing each other's territory and promising no territorial concessions to Byzantium; elderly Anastasius IV (Corrado) elected the same day and permitted to reside in Rome by 'commune'.

Alexander, Count of Gravina, and Anselm of Harelby act as Manuel's negotiators in new approach to Papacy against Sicily.

## Syria

**July** Constance of Antioch marries a rough French baron on pilgrimage, the adventurer Reginald of Chatillon.

## Persia

'Ghuzz' nomads of Turkestan defeat and capture Sultan Sanjar of Khorasan and hold him hostage; Seljuk state powerless and leading power in North-East becomes Atziz, the 'Khwarezm Shah' of Khwarezm/Khiva in Turkestan.

## Byzantium

Neophytus I becomes rival Patriarch to Theodotus in dispute within the synod at Constantinople.

## 1154 Italy/Byzantium

**26 February** Death of Roger II of Sicily; succeeded by youngest but only surviving son, William I (later nicknamed 'The Bad') whose stepmother

Queen Beatrice unsuccessfully offers Manuel the return of loot and prisoners from Thebes as a peace-offering; new 'Grand Admiral' Maio of Bari chief minister and English minister William Brown dismissed.

Birth of Roger's posthumous daughter by Beatrice, Constance.

Byzantine admiral Constantine Angelus, commanding fleet at Monemvasia as ships assemble for Manuel's Sicilian campaign, exceeds orders in attacking a Norman convoy returning from Egypt and is captured.

## **Byzantium**

Alexander and Anselm arrive from Rome with Papal reply to Byzantine offers of alliance against Sicily.

Manuel marches army into Pindus Mountains, encamps at Pelagonia, and summons rival Serb princes Uros and Dusan to his camp for his decision on rightful ruler; he endorses Uros. Prince Andronicus, in touch with Hungary and Frederick Barbarossa, is caught inside Manuel's tent with a dagger one night by Prince John; then Andronicus plans to kill Manuel with ambush on hunt, but Prince Alexius the 'protostrator' (John's brother) finds out and warns Empress who sends Varangian Guard commander Isaac to warn Manuel; ?Andronicus arrested but released later, and loses his local frontier governorship.

Constantine IV Chliareus becomes Patriarch.

## **Russia**

Death of Iziaslav of Kiev; succeeded by his younger brother Rostislav of Smolensk.

## **Egypt**

'Vizier' Ibn Abbas murders Caliph Al-Zafir, massacres adult relations, and installs 4-year-old son Al-Faiz as puppet.

## **Italy**

**3 December** Death of Anastasius IV; **4 December** Nicholas Breakspear from Abbot's Langley elected the only English Pope (Hadrian IV).

**1155 Italy**

**January** Hadrian renews Anastasius' treaty with Frederick; he places Rome under interdict until it expels leader of the 'Commune', Arnold of Brescia; border-clashes with Sicilian troops.

**Turkish Sultanate**

Death of Sultan Mas'ud of Iconium; succeeded by son Kilij Arslan.

**Italy**

Vitale II Michiel succeeds Domenico Morosini as 'Doge' of Venice.

**Egypt**

Ibn Abbas and associates lynched by Cairo populace; Ibn Ruzzik 'Vizier'.

**Georgia**

Demetrius of Georgia abdicates and retires to monastery under pressure from his son David IV; David soon deposed by nobles and father restored.

**Byzantium**

Manuel relieves Hungarian attack on Branicevo and pursues Hungarians to Belgrade; his advance-guard commander Basil Tzintziloucas is ambushed and defeated and Manuel sends John Cantacuzene to take Belgrade and round up Hungarian partisans; later he advances to the Danube in person and Geza sends ambassadors for talks; eager to concentrate on Sicily, Manuel accepts peace on basis of restoration of existing frontier and of all prisoners.

**Italy/Byzantium**

**April** Frederick crowned at Pavia; William of Sicily at Salerno, and refuses to receive suspected plotter, cousin Robert of Loritello, who

flees to start revolt; **May** Frederick advances on Rome for coronation as Emperor and meets Pope at Sutri but refuses usual gesture of humility in leading his mule; the Romans refuse to let him into city so he seizes Vatican by surprise; **18 June** Pope Hadrian crowns him but he still cannot capture main city and on his retreat Pope moves to Tivoli.

Michael Palaeologus and John Ducas, Manuel's envoys to Frederick for Sicilian war, catch him up at Ancona on return journey to Germany and achieve nothing, so they take Ancona to use as base and send envoys and money to Apulian barons as Robert leads revolt; Byzantine troops land and seize Fano; ex-prince Robert of Capua reclaims his title, and his supporters join Byzantines to capture Trani.

**29 September** Hadrian marches from Tusculum in Apulia to encourage rebels and **9 October** invests Robert of Capua with Capua; Palaeologus and rebels besiege Bari, where citizens revolt and admit Byzantine troops and Robert of Loritello takes over citadel.

Count Richard of Andria, loyalist leader in Apulia besieged at Barietta, breaks out, and is killed in battle by Ducas and Robert of Loritello.

## 1156 **Italy/Byzantium**

**Early** Revolt breaks out in Sicily, led by Bartholomew of Gassiliato; the rebels reassure William they are opposed to Maio's government not to him personally, and when William releases Maio's enemies as demanded and marches on Butera rebels submit.

William gathers his forces at Messina, and Palaeologus falls ill and dies at Bari so Ducas recalled from campaign to take over; **April** Ducas advances to besiege Brindisi, but William arrives with army and Norman fleet cuts off communications by sea; Byzantine camp is surrounded and **28 April** as Normans attack most Byzantine troops surrender and Ducas and fellow-commander Alexius Bryennius Comnenus (son of Anna Comnena) are captured; Manuel sends urgent envoys to Frederick who refuses to receive them.

Bari surrenders to William who evicts citizens and razes it to the ground; Apulian barons mostly submit or flee, abandoning the Pope and his army, and Robert of Capua captured and blinded.

## Germany

**May/June** Manuel's envoys arrive at Frederick's court to discuss a marriage to Manuel's niece Maria; their reception delayed as Frederick is angry at Byzantine claims to Apulia and is marrying Beatrice of Burgundy.

## Byzantium/Syria

**Spring** Reginald of Chatillon, having tied Patriarch Aimery of Antioch on top of tower covered in honey to attract flies, raids Cyprus in force to loot and burn East coast cities; Thoros of Armenia joins him and governor Michael Branas and Manuel's nephew Prince John captured; leading citizens carried off for ransom and many others killed in an orgy of violence.

## Georgia

Death of Demetrius, his second son George succeeds him as eldest son David imprisoned.

## Persia

Sultan Sanjar rescued from Ghuzz captivity by friends and restored to his crumbling realm; Atsiz's son Il Arslan succeeds to Shahdom of Khwarezm (based on the Khiva steppe).

## Italy

Surrounded in Benevento by William's army, Pope opens negotiations and **18 June** signs humiliating treaty granting King of Sicily full control of his own church; **July** with Apulia subdued by ruthless campaign, William returns to Sicily and rounds up suspects including his late elder brother Roger's illegitimate son Tancred of Lecce.

## Byzantium

Church Synod in Constantinople to sort out dispute among Hagia Sophia clergy as to whether the Mass is offered to the Father or to all three persons

of Trinity – deacons and Patriarchal Academy teachers Michael of Thessalonica and Nicephorus Basilaces, Bishop Eustathius of Dyrrachium, and Patriarch-elect Soterichus Panteugenēs of Antioch named as the errant clerics proposing the former opinion as Synod declares offering is to the Trinity; Soterichus however puts the opposition case in a written dialogue.

## 1157 **Byzantium**

**12 May** Manuel presides at Synod's enquiry into Soterichus' writings and his demands to be allowed to prove orthodoxy to Emperor or civic and ecclesiastical leaders; at a session in Blachernae Palace with Senate present, each cleric at Hagia Sophia called upon to make orthodox profession of faith and Basilaces recants; then the bishops are called one by one, and Soterichus defends his views but Manuel counters his arguments and quotes St. Paul's demand for an end to schisms; Soterichus finally agrees that none of Trinity would want to exclude the others from any honours so Mass must be for all of them, and writes out a statement of errors; Manuel tells Synod to decide on Soterichus' punishment, and Patriarchs of Constantinople and Jerusalem and Archbishops of Bulgaria and Cyprus demand removal from office; some bishops ask for delay, and Soterichus refuses to turn up next day saying he is ill but is told Manuel has to leave for expedition so delay impossible; all bishops sign declaration of his deposition, but Patriarch Constantine's death delays implementation until successor, Luke Chrysoberges, appointed and signs.

## **Persia**

Death of Sultan Sanjar at Merv; end of Seljuk rule in East Persia as Il Arslan the 'Khwarezm Shah' takes over.

## **Italy/Byzantium**

Abortive Byzantine mission to Sicily; Wibald of Stablo sent from Frederick to Constantinople; meanwhile **August** Manuel sends 'protostrator' Alexius Axuch to his sole gain of the war, Ancona, with large funds to stir up Southern Italian barons against both William and Frederick; Andrew of Rupecanino leads new revolt, and Axuch has tense meeting with Frederick's suspicious generals sent to aid the rebels, Rainald of Dassel and Otto of Wittelsbach .

Maio of Bari's Silician fleet raids into the Aegean and ravages Euboea.

## Byzantium/Palestine

Baldwin sends Archbishop Achard of Nazareth and Count Humphrey of Toron to Constantinople for an imperial bride to cement alliance; Manuel chooses his niece Theodora, daughter of elder brother Isaac.

? Baldwin's brother Amalric marries Agnes of Courtenay, sister of exiled Joscelin of Turbessel the claimant to Edessa.

## Russia

Death of Yuri 'Dolguroky', Prince of Suzdal (called 'Vladimir-Suzdal' now from new capital) and since 1155 of Kiev, most powerful ruler in Russia; succeeded in Suzdal by son Andrei 'Bogubliovsky'.

## 1158 Italy/Byzantium

**6 January** Andrew of Rupecanino defeats Sicilian army at San Germano; Frederick's generals Otto of Wittelsbach and Reynald of Dassel lead German army to Ancona; **April** Alexius Axuch agrees to evacuate city and return home.

Pope Hadrian mediates between Byzantium and Sicily, aided by William's prisoners Ducas and Bryennius Comnenus; 30-year peace signed, all prisoners released, and William's envoy Henry Aristippus visits Constantinople and is given a copy of Ptolemy's '**Almagest**' as present for William.

## Byzantium/Syria

Princess Theodora leaves Constantinople to sail to Palestine, where **September** she marries Baldwin.

**Autumn** Manuel leads a large army overland to Cilicia en route for Antioch to deal with Reginald, with Jerusalem's neutrality assured; his advance-guard rides furiously for Tarsus but Thoros of Armenia hears in time and flees into the mountains; Theodore Vatatzes takes Tarsus; Manuel reoccupies all the Cilician plain.



**1159 Byzantium/Syria**

Reginald sends the keys of Antioch to Manuel, and comes to his camp outside Mopsuestia; Patriarch Aimery demands his deposition but Manuel is content for Reginald to kneel before the imperial throne and accept imperial garrison and Orthodox Patriarch in Antioch; Reginald returns to Antioch to meet Baldwin who intercedes successfully with Manuel on Aimery's behalf.

While Manuel is in Syria, he sends orders for arrest and blinding of head of civil administration, *epi ton Kanikleiou* Theodore Styppoiotes, for alleged plot after Empress sends him warning; Styppoiotes supposedly hired assassins and/or publicly declared that Manuel had died on campaign, though one version of the story, cited later by historian Nicetas Choniates, has it that Styppoiotes was falsely accused by rival John Camaterus the 'Logothete of Drome' (foreign minister); prisoner Michael Glykys is blinded, allegedly over consulting a seditious oracle .

**12 April, Easter Sunday** Manuel enters Antioch on horseback, with Reginald walking holding his bridle and Baldwin riding behind uncrowned; service at cathedral, and then Manuel resides in Palace and holds feasts and tournament; **20 April** Manuel marches up River Orontes into Moslem territory but agrees to a truce with Nur-ed-Din whereby 600 Christian prisoners are released; he leaves Syria and **June–July** returns across Anatolia, being harassed en route by Turkish tribes under Seljuk suzerainty.

**August?** Back at Constantinople, Manuel organizes coalition of Yaqub Arslan the Danishmend, Nur-ed-Din, and other neighbours against Seljuks; Kilij Arslan's fugitive brother Shahinshah joins in and Reginald and Thoros (allowed to keep mountainous part of Armenia) send contingents to Manuel's army.

**Autumn** Manuel leads army up the Maeander valley onto Anatolian plateau; general John Contostephanus secures his first victory.

**Italy**

**Summer–Autumn** Frederick campaigns against rebel towns in Lombardy. **1 September** Death of Hadrian IV at Tivoli; **7 September** Majority of cardinals elect Roland Bandinelli as Pope Alexander III but a minority elect Frederick's preferred candidate Cardinal Octavian as Victor IV; Alexander consecrated at Ninfa, Victor at Farfa, and schism.

Alexander sends cardinals of Tivoli and St. Theodore to obtain Manuel's assistance.

**1160 Byzantium/Italy/Syria**

**February** Manuel sends envoys to Frederick at Pavia concerning his gaining Ancona and part of Apulia.

(or 1159) ?Manuel imprisons his cousin Andronicus over suspected plot.

Manuel returns to Abydos and thence marches up into Phrygia to Dorylaeum while Contostephanus collects Armenian troops in Maeander valley and then advances into Seljuk territory to Sarapata; death of Empress Bertha/Irene in Constantinople, whereupon Manuel returns for funeral and abandons his campaign for the year.

**Syria**

**November** Reginald captured by Nur-ed-Din.

**Byzantium**

Manuel decides on marrying into the Antiochene dynasty to secure alliance and sends John Contostephanus and Theophylact to Antioch; the ambassadors prefer Raymond of Tripoli's daughter Melissende to Constance's daughter Maria and go on to Tripoli but hear rumours about Melissende's paternity; Constance is deposed as King Baldwin suddenly arrives at Antioch and proclaims Patriarch Aimery regent for her son Bohemund III, and she appeals to Manuel for aid to no effect.

**Germany/Byzantium**

Frederick sends embassy to Constantinople at Manuel's request to discuss status of Ancona and alliance against Sicily.

**Egypt**

Death of Caliph Al-Faiz; succeeded by 9-year-old cousin al-Adid.

**Italy**

**10 November** William of Sicily's chief minister Maio assassinated.

## Abbasid Caliphate

Al-Mustadi becomes Caliph.

## 1161 Byzantium

Turks attack Westwards and take Phileta and Laodicea; Manuel sends ambassadors to Kilij Arslan and peace arranged whereby Seljuks return all prisoners and territory taken and accept a fixed frontier across Anatolia; Seljuks become Byzantine allies and (probably) accept Manuel as their suzerain for all former Byzantine territory; Seljuk troops to serve in Manuel's army when requested.

## Hungary

**31 May** Death of King Géza II, succeeded by son Stephen III; Stephen's uncle Stephen, a refugee in Constantinople married to Manuel's niece Maria, proclaims himself King with Manuel's support, and Manuel announces intention to adjudicate; Alexius Contostephanus is sent to Hungary with army to install the pretender, 'Stephen IV', at Haram.

Manuel decides to reject Stephen IV, less popular in Hungary than expected, in favour of his younger brother Ladislas.

## Italy

Revolt in Palermo as Maio's assassin Mathew Bonellus, amnestied but fearing vengeance, organizes conspiracy **9 March** to seize the prison and release Tancred of Lecce and other prisoners, then seize Palace; Arabs in palace and harem women are mistreated and the city mob starts to massacre Moslems, while William I's son William proclaimed the new King; however some conspirators prefer William I's bastard brother Simon, and while they dispute the loyalist bishops rally mob to attack Palace and try to rescue William I; **11 March**; William's eldest son Roger killed as conspirators beg the King to pacify mob, and eventually they are allowed to leave city and government restored; rebels rally in countryside and advance on Palermo, but retreat as loyal fleet arrives and many surrender in return for pardons; Tancred and others exiled and **late April** William sacks Butera after new revolt; Andrew of Rupecanino in Campania and Robert of Loritello in Apulia revolt again.

## Byzantium/Syria

**Summer** Manuel patrols the Danube against Cuman raids, and agrees to Serbs' request to depose unpopular 'Grand Zupan' Uros and install brother Desa (Stephen Nemanja).

Manuel is alarmed at rumours that Frederick intends to attack Byzantium en route on new Crusade to Syria and sends warning letters to Kilij Arslan and other Moslem rulers.

In retaliation to confirmation that Manuel has rejected Melissende, her father Raymond raids Cyprus.

Alexius Bryennius Comnenus and John Ducas arrive at Antioch to confirm that Maria is Alexius' choice; **September** they sail for capital with Maria; Manuel returns to Constantinople and **25 December** Patriarch Luke of Constantinople, Patriarch Sophronius of Alexandria, and titular Patriarch Athanasius of Antioch marry Manuel and Maria in Hagia Sophia.

## 1162 Byzantium

**14 January** Death of Ladislav, Byzantine candidate for throne of Hungary; Manuel turns support to Stephen IV who is crowned **11 February** and fights civil war with nephew Stephen III.

Manuel campaigns against Stephen Nemanja of Serbia, who is probably allying with Stephen III of Hungary.

## Italy

**February** Pope Alexander flees from Frederick and Victor IV to France.

**February–April** William ruthlessly restores order in Southern Italy; Salerno narrowly avoids demolition.

## Palestine

**10 February** Death of Baldwin III at Beirut, widowing Manuels' niece Theodora who receives Beirut as jointure to settle in; Baldwin's brother Amalric succeeds to Jerusalem.

## Byzantium

Christopher, Kilij Arslan's Greek chancellor, visits Constantinople to ratify Byzantine/Seljuk treaty; a State visit by the Sultan is planned, and he arrives with entourage to a ceremonial welcome and an 80-day stay including presentation of gifts and games; Kilij Arslan promises to help restore Danishmend-held Sebastea to Manuel.

**April** Genoese treaty of alliance with Frederick, infuriating Manuel; with Byzantine assistance Venetians and Pisans in Constantinople pillage the Genoese quarter in Constantinople, and with Manuel refusing redress the angry Genoese leave city to return home.

Manuel marches to Philippopolis to intervene in Hungarian civil war, and Stephen IV asks for aid; troops are sent, but Stephen III has rallied most of the country to his cause and **19 June** Stephen IV soundly defeated near Belgrade; Stephen IV flees to join the advancing Manuel at Sofia and Manuel sends Alexius Contostephanus to invade Hungary. Manuel, at Belgrade, sends George Palaeologus to negotiate with Stephen III and does nothing to aid his rival's army; peace-agreement reached and Manuel agrees to recognise Stephen III and abandon Stephen IV; frontier delineated and Stephen III becomes Manuel's ally and sends his brother Béla to Constantinople as hostage for good behaviour.

Manuel releases cousin Andronicus and sends him to Cilicia as governor; Prince Thoros' brother Stephen murdered en route to banquet with Andronicus, who Thoros blames; Thoros invades Cilicia and takes Mopsuestia and massacres garrison at Anazarbus; Andronicus recalled and imprisoned again and replaced by Coloman; Thoros makes peace.

## Syria

Constance unsuccessfully appeals to Coloman to restore her as regent of Antioch, and is accused of instigating riot and expelled; her son Baldwin goes to Manuel to seek aid.

## 1163 Byzantium

**Early** Manuel betrothes Béla to his daughter Maria and renames him 'Alexius' and makes him 'Sebastus'; probably intended as consort to Maria as next ruler if Manuel has no other child; supposedly Manuel chooses the name 'Alexius' as he is impressed by prophecy that the Comnene throne will descend by the initials 'A (lexius I) – I (John II) – M (Manuel) – A'.

Manuel requests Sirmium and Belgrade as appanage for Béla within Hungary; Stephen III refuses and Manuel abandons planned campaign to Antioch and marches to Danube, sending Contostephanus to assist Stephen IV who is now intriguing with Frederick; Stephen III refuses to hand over Béla's lands and appeals to Frederick too.

**July** Byzantine envoys at St. Gilles, France, to meet Louis VII for alliance against Frederick.

? Prince Andronicus discovers secret chamber under his tower prison-room at Blachernae, hides inside, and when his wife is arrested for assisting his 'escape' and put in his room emerges to join her; he escapes to try to find a ship and leave capital but is recaptured.

## Egypt

'Vizier' Shawar deposed by chamberlain Dhirmam, who rules by terror; **September** King Amalric unsuccessfully invades and besieges Pelusium; Shawar flees to Nur-ed-Din at Damascus.

## 1164 Byzantium

Frederick sends Duke Henry of Austria to Hungary to assist Stephen III, and Yaroslav of Galicia and Vladislav of Bohemia join the coalition; Manuel musters army in Balkans and is encouraged by spies' reports that Bohemians are unwilling to fight; he retakes Sirmium area but opens negotiations and Stephen III abandons his allies and signs treaty in return for abandonment of Stephen IV.

## Egypt

Amalric leads Frankish expedition to Egypt to assist Shawar, who has been restored to power **May** by Nur-ed-Din's general Shirkuh (and his nephew Saladin) but cannot get rid of his so-called protectors afterwards; eventually a truce whereby both Amalric and Shirkuh leave Egypt.

## Turkish Sultanate

Death of Yaqub Arslan the Danishmend of Sebastea; succeeded by son Ismail.

## **Syria/Byzantium**

Nur-ed-Din attacks Frankish castles in South of Antiochene territory to distract local barons from aiding Amalric in Egypt; Byzantine governor Coloman of Cilicia joins coalition to relieve siege of Harenc, led by Constance's son Bohemund III, but **10 August** they are captured with many other lords and army routed near Artah; Nur-ed-Din dares not attack Antioch lest it bring Manuel into Syria again and lets Coloman be ransomed.

**September/October** Amalric arrives to rally Antioch, and an imperial envoy comes to query his presence without Manuel's permission; Amalric explains that no insult intended and sends envoys to Byzantium requesting marriage-alliance and Byzantine naval assistance against Egypt.

? Prince Andronicus has a key smuggled into his prison in wine-cask, escapes, and rides to the Danube; in Wallachia he is arrested by pursuing pro-Byzantine tribesmen but escapes to take refuge with Yaroslav of Galicia, Manuel's enemy.

## **1165 Byzantium**

Frederick sends envoys to Manuel, unsuccessfully proposing alliance against Hungary.

Peace-treaty with Hungary signed; Stephen III recognised, Stephen IV abandoned, Béla gets his appanage, and the late ruler Ladislas' daughter marries one of Manuel's relatives.

Yaroslav of Galicia is joined by Rostislav of Kiev in anti-Byzantine coalition after dispute over Constantinople's jurisdiction over Bishopric of Kiev; Manuel sends envoys to restore good relations and successfully persuades Andronicus to return with pardon.

Bohemund III of Antioch is ransomed from Nur-ed-Din by Manuel and goes to Constantinople to pay the money back; he is persuaded to accept Athanasius II as Patriarch of Antioch and install him and Eastern Orthodox clerics in place of Latins in Cathedral, which he carries out on return.

Alexius Axuch, governor of Cilicia, discusses Orthodox/Armenian church reunion with Narses, brother of 'Catholicos' Gregory.

Stephen III sends army to treacherously attack Stephen IV in his new appanage of Sirmium; Stephen IV is poisoned **13 April** at Zemlin and the

fortress falls to Stephen III's troops; Manuel marches to the Danube claiming Zemplin for Byzantium and besieges it, Prince Andronicus distinguishing himself as the fortress is stormed.

John Ducas sent with army to occupy Dalmatia and install Nicephorus Chalouphas as governor; Stephen III sues for peace and has to accept loss of Dalmatia; 'Grand Zupan' Stephen Nemanja of Serbia has not sent his contingent to Manuel's army so Manuel, fearing revolt, marches on Serbia and forces him to surrender.

## Italy

**23 November** Pope Alexander returns to Rome after invited back by the 'senate'.

## 1166 Byzantium

**Early** Theological dispute over the meaning of the statement that 'The Father is greater than I' made by Christ, with Manuel supporting the minority viewpoint of his adviser on Papal affairs, Hugh Eteriano, against Demetrius of Lampe and discussions centred on Court as well as the Church authorities; determined to enforce his viewpoint, Manuel confronts a large section of episcopate who support Demetrius and include Bishops Euthymius of Neopatras, Christopher of Myra, John of Larissa, Leo of Rhodes, Leo of Adrianople, John of Thebes, Nicetas of Maroneia, and Constantine of Corfu.

Patriarch Luke wavers as Manuel's supporters accused of implied heresy, but Manuel holds meetings of high civic dignitaries and synod **2 and 6 March** in new throne-room of palace to reach a formula that all can accept; he has to pressurize meetings into agreement, and is guiding hand in the subsequent formula which is taken in ceremonial procession to Hagia Sophia to be laid upon the altar – wording is later painted on the cathedral's walls, and formula is added to the official 'Synodikon' of Orthodoxy.

## Armenia

Death of 'Catholicos' Gregory of Armenia; succeeded by pro-union brother Narses.



## Italy

**7 May** Death of William of Sicily, succeeded by 12-year-old son William II under regency of mother Margaret; Manuel sends envoys to Pope to conclude alliance against Sicily, and briefly considers invasion in favour of William I's brother.

## Byzantium

Stephen III sends army to Serbia to assist revolt against Byzantium; Byzantine general Michael Gabras defeated; Leo Vatatzes leads an army over Danube to raid Hungary in reprisal, followed by Andronicus Lapardas, but revolt follows in Dalmatia and governor Chalouphas is captured.

Manuel goes to Sofia to prepare Hungarian expedition, and receives Henry of Austria and Otto of Saxony and Bavaria who Frederick sends to mediate between him and Hungary.

Alexius Axuch dismissed from governorship of Cilicia; replaced by Prince Andronicus.

## 1167 Palestine/Egypt

**Spring** Amalric leads expedition to assist Shawar as Shirkuh and Saladin return with Syrian army to remove 'heretic' Fatimid government.

## Byzantium

**Easter** Manuel's departure for Hungarian campaign delayed as he falls off horse at Selymbria; he later arrives at Philippopolis to meet Hungarian ambassadors, and negotiations concluded at Sofia but delay while Manuel's nephew Alexius the 'protostrator' is investigated on charge of treason and sent to a monastery.

Stephen III breaks off talks and attacks Sirmium; Andronicus Contostephanus invades Hungary in reprisal and wins victory on River Save; talks resume and victorious Manuel celebrates triumph in Constantinople with Contostephanus.

Peace concluded; Hungary abandons all rights to Dalmatia.

Successful negotiations to marry Manuel's great-niece Maria, daughter of the 'protostrator's' brother John, to Amalric of Jerusalem.

## Palestine/Syria

**August** Amalric and Shirkuh reach stalemate and both evacuate Egypt again, but this time Egypt remains allied and tributary to Amalric with a nominal garrison; **29 August** the returned Amalric marries Maria Comnena at Tyre, and Manuel's envoys George Paleologus and Manuel Comnenus accompany Amalric to Jerusalem to arrange closer alliance.

## Byzantium

Bohemund III complains to Manuel that Andronicus is neglecting his duties in Cilicia and dallying with his sister Philippa in Antioch instead; Manuel replaces Andronicus with Coloman, and Andronicus refuses to return home and stays in Antioch; he flees with Philippa to Jerusalem where Amalric agrees to give him Beirut as fief.

## 1168 Armenia

Death of Thoros II; succeeded by son Rupen.

## Byzantium

**24 January** Amidst continuing theological tension between Manuel and sections of the Constantinopolitan church, deacon Basil Peditides dismissed for 'impious' verses against official dogma.

Manuel receives his returned ambassadors with Amalric's proposals against Egypt, and in return sends Alexander, Count of Conversano, the Count of Gravina, and Michael of Otranto to Amalric proposing that in return for joint expedition to Egypt Amalric accepts Byzantine direct rule of Antioch; Bishop William of Tyre (the chronicler) sent by Amalric to Manuel.

Stephen Nemanja of Serbia annexes neighbouring principality of Zeta and expels rival brothers Rodoslav, Vladimir, and Ivan who rule it; they flee to Ragusa and appeal to Manuel; Manuel sends Theodore Padiates to Stephen to demand his withdrawal and after refusal invades Serbia; Stephen surrenders and makes peace.

Manuel receives William of Tyre at Pelagonia and returns to capital.

## Palestine/Egypt

? Andronicus Comnenus deserts Philippa at Beirut, seduces his cousin Theodora the widow of Baldwin III, and flees with her to Damascus to seek Nur-ed-Din's protection.

**October** Amalric invades Egypt again with Crusader reinforcements from Nevers, intending to evict Shawar and install Christian rule; massacres alienate Copts and Shawar offers Nur-ed-Din a third of Egypt and tribute in return for aid.

## 1169 Egypt/Byzantium

**January** Amalric has to retreat as Shirkuh and Saladin arrive in Cairo with Syrian army; Shawar arrested and executed, and Shirkuh seizes Egypt but **23 March** dies of over-eating, succeeded by Saladin as governor.

Amalric plans to invade Egypt to retrieve the situation and sends appeal to Manuel; **10 July** 'Megadux' Andronicus Contostephanus leads Byzantine fleet from Sestos on the Hellespont towards Egypt; they reach Cyprus and send envoys to Amalric to find his army not yet ready.

**August** Saladin takes over the Fatimid Sultan Al-Adil's citadel palace, purges his supporters, and massacres his Nubian guardsmen to secure full control of Cairo.

**10 September** Birth of Manuel and Maria's son Alexius; he is proclaimed heir to throne and Princess Maria's engagement to Béla-Alexius of Hungary ended; Béla-Alexius demoted to 'Caesar' and forced to marry Empress' sister Anne of Antioch.

**16 October** Main Crusader force belatedly leaves by land from Palestine for Egypt while Contostephanus' fleet sails parallel off coast; **25 October** Christians reach Farama near Pelusium, and Byzantines embark Crusaders to sail direct to Damietta, land, and commence siege avoiding Saladin's waiting army; Saladin arrives and manages to send in supplies by sea and Amalric delays an assault despite Contostephanus' warnings that after delay in Palestine his supplies are running out. Moslem fireships damage fleet and rains swamp camp; the besiegers quarrel and after Saladin offers a large sum of money they decide to re-embark; **13 December** retreat begins; **24 December** at Ascalon Contostephanus leaves the Crusaders to sail to Constantinople and report to Manuel.

## Italy

**October** Treaty of alliance between Byzantium and Genoa.

## Byzantium

Atmanos, abbot of Armenian monastery at Philippopolis, and theologian Theorianos sent to Armenia to discuss church reunion.

## Russia

Sack of Kiev by the forces of rival Vladimir-Suzdal, as the latter's ruler Andrei 'Bogubliovsky' evicts its prince, Mstislav son of Iziaslav, and installs his own brother Gleb; the incident confirms that Vladimir-Suzdal is now leading power in Russia.

## 1170 Byzantium

**30 January** Synod considers charges against Bishop Constantine of Corfu, one of Manuel's opponents in 1166 controversy; he is deposed.

**18 February** Synod considers charges against another opponent, John Eirenikos the abbot of Batalas monastery (Bithynia), writings by whom against the 1166 decision have been discovered; he is deposed as heretic and later some theologians who had seen his works but not condemned them are disgraced ?including later (1208) Patriarch Michael Autoreianus.

**10 April** City 'Praefect' Basil Camaterus fixes limits of new Genoese quarter in Constantinople; the Venetians object to Genoese commercial gains in their new treaty with Empire; Manuel seizes Venetian money in capital to put pressure on Venice, and the latter orders all Venetians to boycott Byzantium; finally Doge receives envoys from Manuel and sends Sebastian Ziani and Ono Mastropietro to negotiate.

**May** Atmanus and Theodorianus meet 'Catholicos' Narses and Syrian Jacobite envoys; no success.

## **Syria**

**29 June** Earthquake in Antioch destroys cathedral with Patriarch Athanasius and congregation inside; Bohemund III restores Aimery as Patriarch; effective Christian/Moslem truce as damaged fortresses restored.

## **Armenia**

Rupen of Armenia's uncle Mleh overthrows him with troops sent by Nur-ed-Din, then takes Mopsuestia, Adana, and Tarsus from Byzantium; Amalric defeats his siege of Templar fortress, Baghras, and restores the Cilician plain to Byzantium; Coloman governor.

## **Byzantium**

Death of Patriarch Luke Chrysoberges, succeeded by Michael of Anchialus. **July** Pisan envoys to Constantinople to sign treaty; they return to Italy with Byzantine envoys sent to rally neighbours against Venice.

Manuel's niece Eudocia marries Roman noble, Odo Frangipani; Pope Alexander attends the wedding at Veroli, and writes to Louis VII of France urging him to marry his daughter Agnes to Manuel's son not Frederick's son as better ally.

## **1171 Byzantium**

Manuel sends envoys to Frederick to discuss his daughter Maria marrying Frederick's son Henry.

**March** Manuel's offer of Princess Maria to William II of Sicily accepted, after earlier Sicilian negotiations with England for marriage.

**4 March** Prince Alexius crowned.

**12 March** Manuel orders simultaneous arrest of all Venetians in Empire and seizure of property, some Venetians, particularly colony at Halmyros in Thessaly, escape and pillage islands en route home to plan revenge.

**April?** King Amalric, the Bishop of Acre, and 'Marshal' Gerard lead delegation to Constantinople by sea for State visit; they are greeted at Gallipoli by

Queen Maria's father John Comnenus (Manuel's nephew) and proceed overland to Heraclea and thence by sea to Boucoleon Harbour for ceremonial welcome, banquets, games, dancing-displays, and trip up Bosphorus followed by entertainments at Manuel's favourite, largely rebuilt Blachernae Palace; Amalric signs treaty recognizing Manuel as his overlord and giving assistance against Armenia in return for assistance against Egypt – Manuel can claim to have restored 'authority' in Syria and Palestine for first time since 630s, but link tenuous. **15 June** Amalric's delegation leaves.

## Egypt

**August** Fatimid Caliph Al-Adid dies, and Saladin abolishes Caliphate and restores Egypt's alliance to Abbasid Caliph in Baghdad.

## Turkish Sultanate

Qasim the Danishmend of Melitene deposed by brother Afridun.

## Byzantium

**September** Venetian fleet conquers Ragusa and sails into Aegean to pillage Euboea; renewed negotiations collapse and Venetians ravage and winter on Chios.

Henry 'the Lion', Duke of Saxony and Bavaria, arrives via Iconium at Constantinople en route home from Palestine after refusing hand of Amalric's daughter Sibylla (likely heiress as Amalric's son Baldwin a leper).

Byzantine/Seljuk alliance against Danishmend, as famine hits Pontus.

Manuel sends envoys to France to persuade Louis VII to marry daughter Agnes to Prince Alexius.

## 1171/2 Turkish Sultanate

Ismail of Sebastea killed by mob; cousin Afridun of Melitene takes over despite resistance, and Kilij Arslan sends an army to conquer city but is forced to withdraw after attack by Nur-ed-Din.

## 1172 **Byzantium**

Frederick's envoy Conrad; Bishop of Worms, joins Manuel and Henry for talks.

**April** Plague hits Venetian camp on Chios; as Byzantine fleet under Aaron approaches Venetians retire to Scyros and thence Venice; new talks.

**Spring** Manuel calls off the Sicilian marriage-alliance at last minute; William II, at Taranto awaiting his bride, swears revenge.

Stephen Nemanja leads Serb rebellion; Manuel leads army into Serbia and Stephen arrives to surrender but has to prostrate himself barefoot before Manuel's throne with halter around neck; Manuel deports him to Constantinople and parades him in his triumph.

### **Italy**

'Doge' Michiel of Venice lynched in riot; succeeded by Sebastiano Ziani, ex-envoy to Manuel.

## 1173 **Byzantium**

Serbia threatens rebellion and Manuel marches to Sofia; **March** Stephen III of Hungary dies and civil war follows; Hungarian envoys ask Manuel to send them Prince Béla-Alexius and he agrees; the Prince installed as King Béla III by Byzantine army led by Emperor's nephew John.

Byzantine-German negotiations stall; **1 April** Christian de Mayence and army besiege Byzantine-held Ancona while 'Doge' Ziani leads fleet in Venetian naval blockade; Manuel's Italian marital allies the Frangipani lead army to relieve Ancona.

Amalric enters Cilicia to fight Mleh on Manuel's behalf.

Kilij Arslan sends envoys to Nur-ed-Din offering alliance against Byzantium and promising to leave Sebastea to Danishmend; Manuel marches an army to Philadelphia **Autumn?** demanding an explanation and Seljuks send envoys to renew alliance.

### **Egypt**

Quarrel between Saladin and Nur-ed-Din leads to the latter threatening to invade; Saladin sends brother Turan Shah to attack Sudan as a

possible refuge and Copts slaughtered en route; Saladin's forces then turn on Yemen and establish 'Ayyubid' (dynastic title as Saladin son of Ayyub/Jacob) rule.

## 1174 Syria

**15 May** Sudden death of Nur-ed-Din while preparing Egyptian campaign at Damascus, succeeded by 11-year-old son As-Salih Ismail; Saladin and governor Gumushtekin of Aleppo claim regency and Nur-ed-Din's nephew Saif-ed-Din of Mosul seizes 'Jazirah' cities.

### Turkish Sultanate

Nur-ed-Din's general Abdul Massib leaves Sebastea on master's death and Danishmend rule is defenceless; Kilij Arslan's troops march in and take Caesarea-in-Cappadocia from Afridun of Melitene; later Kilij Arslan deposes his cousin Shahinshah of Ankara to secure full rule of Anatolian Turks to Byzantine frontier and alarm Manuel.

### Syria/Palestine

**11 July** Death of Amalric of Jerusalem; invalid son Baldwin succeeds under regency of Count Raymond of Tripoli.

**Autumn** As-Salih of Damascus flees threat of Saladin to take refuge with Gumushtekin at Aleppo; **27 November** Saladin enters Damascus; he marches North and Gumushtekin appeals for Crusader help to save Aleppo.

### Georgia

King George III faces revolt from his nephew Demetrius and feudal lords led by the Orbeliani family.

### Armenia

? Mleh deposed by his nephew Rupen III, son of Prince Andronicus' murder-victim Stephen.



## **Russia**

Prince Andrei of Vladimir-Suzdal, leading prince, is assassinated; succeeded by brother Vsevolod.

## **1175 Byzantium**

? Death of Manuel's elder brother Isaac.

? With his protector Nur-ed-Din dead, Prince Andronicus and his mistress Theodora Comnena move to Pontus and are given a fortress not far from Trebizond by local Turks.

Manuel marches troops into Phrygia and builds a new fortress at Sub-laeum to protect area from raids, rebuilds fortress at Dorylaeum, and unsuccessfully sends forces to Neocaesarea and Amasea to reclaim them from Seljuks who refuse to leave; he considers evicting Seljuks from Anatolia and writes to the Pope about new 'crusade' on his own behalf.

## **Syria**

**February** Raymond's feint towards Homs causes Saladin to abandon siege of Aleppo; in gratification Gumushtekin releases prisoners including Reginald of Châtillon who returns to Palestine to marry heiress of Oultrejourdan and leads aggressive 'war party' of barons.

## **Italy**

Treaty between Venice and Sicily aimed against Byzantium.

## **Persia**

Death of Seljuk Sultan Arslan II of Iraq, succeeded by son Tughril.

## **1176 Italy**

**Spring** William of Sicily's marriage to Princess Joan of England arranged.

## Syria

**June** Saladin besieges As-Salih in Aleppo again; truce.

## Byzantium

Manuel's cousin Andronicus Vatatzes leads army to Pontus to restore Danishmend rule under Prince Dhu'l Nun to Sebastea; Manuel leads large army into Thraceseion and up the Maeander valley onto Anatolian plateau to head for Iconium and drive out Seljuks and apparently considers but calls off a naval expedition to Egypt which Reginald of Chatillon has requested.

**September** Andronicus Vatatzes defeated and killed by Seljuk army outside Neocaesarea/Niksar, and head sent to Sultan; Manuel leaves Sublaeum to cross the hills towards Iconium but suffers serious harassment to baggage-train from Turkish cavalry.

Manuel finds the Seljuk army waiting at Myriocephalum fortress at end of the Tzibritze Pass; **17 September** his vanguard enters the pass and the rest of army follows with inadequate scouting, but once Byzantines are strung out along the pass Turkish cavalry charges down from the hills to attack the length of column; Byzantine counter-charge is defeated and Manuel's brother-in-law Baldwin of Antioch is killed; Manuel panics and flees, and the Turks cut army to pieces at their leisure as retreating Byzantines blunder into baggage-train; Manuel's nephew John among the killed.

At dusk the Turks call off attack, and Kilij Arslan sends envoys offering peace in return for demolition of Sublaeum and Dorylaeum; Manuel agrees and leads remnants of army to safety, humiliatingly escorted by Kilij Arslan's Turcomans; however once he is safe Manuel insists that he needs Dorylaeum to defend Bithynia and only demolishes Sublaeum; **November?** Kilij Arslan sends horde into the Maeander valley; Tralles and Antiocheia sacked and Turks reach the sea as Byzantine forces too severely damaged to stop them.

## Palestine

**October** William, son of Count of Montferrat, arrives at Sidon to marry Baldwin IV's sister and heiress Sibylla.

? Amalric's widow Maria Comnena marries Palestinian baron, Balian of Ibelin.

## 1177 **Byzantium**

**Early** Manuel leads a new army into Maeander valley and Turks retreat; Andronicus Angelus, son of his aunt Theodora Comnena, and Manuel Cantacuzene are sent to Charax to pursue Turks but when they separate Andronicus panics and flees a small band of Turks thinking they are the main army; Cantacuzene retakes Chonae, main defence of the valley, and Manuel threatens to parade Andronicus through capital dressed as a woman.

Manuel promises Jerusalem another fleet to aid Egyptian campaign.

## **Palestine/Egypt**

**June** Death of William of Montferrat, leaving Sibylla pregnant; son Baldwin (V) later born.

**September** 'Great Heteriarch' John Ducas, Andronicus Angelus, George Sianiates, and Count Alexander of Gravina lead Byzantine fleet to Acre to join Crusader fleet from West under Count Philip of Flanders; Baldwin IV is ill and the local barons quarrel with Philip over plan of campaign; the expedition is abandoned and Byzantines sail home.

## 1178 **Italy**

**April** Death of 'Doge' Ziani, succeeded by Orio Malipiero.

Manuel's widowed niece Eudocia marries Guelfodi Paganello of Pisa.

## **Byzantium**

Death of Patriarch Michael; succeeded by Chariton Eugeniotēs.

? Manuel's niece Theodora, daughter of John Comnenus and sister of Queen-Mother Maria of Jerusalem, marries Bohemund III of Antioch.

## 1179 **Armenia**

Church Synod meets at Hromgla to consider reunification with Orthodox.

## Byzantium

Manuel's late brother Isaac's daughter Eudocia is sent West to marry brother of Alfonso II of Aragon, and on hearing of his marriage to a rival (possibly thanks to Frederick Barbarossa) is betrothed to William of Montpellier; the Byzantine ambassadors en route to Montpellier call in at Montferrat to negotiate alliance with Count William, father of late William who married Sibylla of Jerusalem; Manuel's daughter Maria betrothed to William's younger son Renier; marriage-negotiations with France concluded successfully.

Death of Patriarch Chariton; succeeded by Theodosius, abbot of monastery on Mount Boradion (Bithynia), possibly an Antiochene.

**August** Renier arrives in Constantinople and assists Manuel in expedition against the Turks; Manuel defeats a Turkish army in person and may have approached Iconium unhindered before return; Kilij Arslan sends embassy to Frederick suggesting a daughter of his marries one of Frederick's sons ? and alliance against Byzantium.

Frederick sends mocking reply to Manuel's latest embassy, assuring that he will defeat Byzantine efforts to bribe Italians into revolt; Manuel claims in this exchange to have reduced Kilij Arslan's power in new treaty.

**September** Archbishop William of Tyre arrives in Constantinople en route home from Pope's Council and discussions with Manuel are followed by imperial envoys accompanying him to Antioch and Jerusalem.

**Autumn** 23 ships from Montpellier escort Louis VII's daughter Agnes to Constantinople; she is engaged to Prince Alexius and renamed 'Anna'.

## 1180 Byzantium

**January** Manuel and Renier arrive in capital; **February** Renier marries Princess Maria and renamed 'John' and becomes 'Caesar'; given rights over Thessalonica, probably tax-revenues from land as 'pronoia'; Renier's elder brother Conrad visits him; **Sunday 2 March** Princess Agnes/Anna married to Prince Alexius in Trullan Hall of Palace, followed by festivities and Hippodrome Games.

**March?** Turks attack Claudiopolis in Paphlagonia and Manuel relieves it in person, his speedy arrival putting them to flight.

Manuel quarrels with the Church over their refusal to drop requirement that Moslem converts foreswear belief in Allah as well as Mohammed, apparently after case involving adopted son of Kilij Arslan's Trapezuntine 'Vizier' Garbas; Patriarch Theodosius and Eustathius of Thessalonica lead opposition **May** at Church Council, but Manuel has his way.

## Syria

**29 June** Death of Saif-ed-Din of Mosul, succeeded by brother Izz-ed-Din; Saladin on Euphrates to mediate between Kilij Arslan and Nur-ed-Din the Ortoqid of Mardin.

## Byzantium

**Late Summer** Manuel ill at Damalis on the Bosphorus; Nicephorus Paleologus, commander in Pontus, kidnaps Andronicus' mistress Theodora and uses her to force Andronicus to give himself up; Andronicus comes to Constantinople and theatrically prostrates himself before Manuel wearing chains and announcing penitence; Manuel forgives him and sends him to Oenoe in Pontus as governor.

**September** Manuel's condition deteriorates, though he prefers to believe a prophecy that he will reign for another 14 years at first; he reluctantly names Empress Maria, Patriarch, Maria, Renier-John, his bastard son Alexius the 'protostrator', and his nephew Alexius the 'protosebastos' (son of Andronicus, brother of John, uncle of Queen Maria) as regents; **24 September** he takes monastic vows and dies, aged probably 61/62.

Manuel buried at Pantocrator monastery with stone, allegedly from Christ's tomb that recently arrived in capital as relic.

## Syria

**Autumn** Bohemund III deserts his wife, Theodora Comnena; excommunicated.

## Serbia

**Autumn** Stephen Nemanja proclaims independence of Byzantium.

## 1181 Byzantium

As Alexius the 'protosebastos' concentrates power in his hands with Dowager Empress Maria's encouragement, Princess Maria and Renier-John start a

conspiracy with Alexius the ‘protostrator’ and Prince Andronicus’ sons Manuel and John; ordinary citizens are incensed at tax-concessions to rich and favouring of Westerners and condemn the ‘Frankish’ Dowager Empress as a foreign agent and Alexius’ mistress.

Plotters plan to murder ‘protosebastos’ during annual pilgrimage to shrine of St.Theodore, but they are betrayed and as Princes Manuel and John are confined to Palace and others flee Princess Maria and Renier-John flee to Hagia Sophia and are given sanctuary by Patriarch; they refuse to surrender unless everyone pardoned and bring in Georgian and Italian soldiers.

**Good Friday, 10 April** Theodosius refuses Dowager Empress the kiss of peace, and Hagia Sophia attacked by mob incited by the ‘protostrator’; citizens rise to aid Patriarch and besiege the Palace until driven off.

**9 May** Sabbatius the Armenian leads imperial troops to evict Princess’ men from Church of St. John near Cathedral, and her position at Milion Arch overrun; Cathedral is surrounded and Patriarch negotiates truce whereby rebels surrender but are not punished.

**May–June** Prisoner-exchange arranged with Saladin in Egypt; **Autumn** truce follows. **June** As leading rioters are put on trial, Andronicus’ daughter Maria is accused and flees to father at Oenoe; he starts to gather army, encouraged by letters from capital as ‘protostrator’ restores monasteries’ cancelled tax-immunities and infuriates bureaucrats.

## Italy

**30 August** Death of Pope Alexander III; **1 September** Ubaldo Allucingoli elected (Lucius III).

## Syria

**4 December** Death of As-Salih of Aleppo, allegedly poisoned; at his request cousin Izz-ed-Din of Mosul takes over to resist Saladin.

## 1182 Byzantium

Andronicus Angelus and family lead exodus of ‘protostrator’'s enemies to join Andronicus as he marches on capital; he advances via Nicaea to

Chalcedon where John Angelus Ducas, governor of 'Thrace' and John Comnenus Vatatzes hold out; 'Megadux' Andronicus Contostephanus' fleet defends Bosphorus crossing as Andronicus' fleet arrives; Andronicus tells 'protostrator's' envoy, future Patriarch George Xiphilinus, that the regent must resign and Dowager Empress retire to monastery; after stalemate Contostephanus leads fleet to join Andronicus and **April** Andronicus' partisans join mob to open the prisons and seize capital; 'protostrator' Alexius is arrested, blinded, and sent to monastery and the mob ransacks the Latin quarter, killing around 4000 people including women, children and Papal legate; surviving Latins escape to ships, sack the Princes's Islands in retaliation, and sail to Italy.

Patriarch Theodosius goes to Chalcedon to recognise Andronicus as regent and hand over Alexius II; Andronicus crosses Bosphorus to savour his triumph with parties at Philopation Palace outside the City walls near Blachernae, visit Manuel's tomb to privately gloat, and send Alexius II and his mother to Mangana Palace in custody of his guards.

## Syria

**May** Izz-ed-Din hands over Aleppo to brother Imad-ed-Din of Sanjar.

## Byzantium

**16 May, Pentecost** Alexius II crowned, and Andronicus swears to protect him as regent and carries him back to Palace on shoulders; his general Andronicus Lampardas is sent against Vatatzes who is holding out in Philadelphia and is defeated by sick Vatatzes' sons outside walls, but citizens surrender as Vatatzes dies and sons flee to Kilij Arslan.

## Syria

**November** Saladin besieges Izz-ed-Din in Mosul but has to retire as Caliph Al-Nasir and Seljuk Sultan Tughril approach; he takes Sanjar.

## Byzantium

**Autumn** Vatatzes brothers head for Sicily, but ship blown ashore on Crete and they are arrested and blinded; Andronicus arraigns Dowager Empress before a commission led by his agents, and members who try to

acquit her are sworn at by him and attacked by spectators; Maria found guilty and sent to monastery of St Diomedes.

? Kilij Arslan invades and takes Sozopolis.

## 1183 Byzantium

**Early** Contostephanus and his four sons and ‘Logothete of Drome’ (foreign minister) Basil Ducas Camaterus plot with the Angeli against Andronicus, but are arrested and blinded; Andronicus Angelus and his sons flee to Syria on ship in empty wine-jars.

Béla III of Hungary attacks and takes Belgrade; Andronicus’ cronies tell the increasingly paranoid Regent that Dowager Empress Maria invited Béla in, so Andronicus tells his sons and son-in-law George to murder her, they refuse so ‘Heteriarch’ Constantine Tripsychus and eunuch Pterigionites drown her in Bosphorus; her statues showing her beauty are defaced on Regent’s orders.

## Syria

**17 June** Saladin enters Aleppo and evicts Imad-ed-Din; Bohemund III arranges 4-year truce.

## Byzantium

**Summer** Béla III takes Naissus and Sofia, opposed vainly by generals Lampardas and Alexius Branas; Andronicus starts murdering or blinding aristocratic opponents; Patriarch Theodosius refuses to marry Andronicus’ illegitimate daughter Irene to Manuel’s bastard Alexius so Andronicus bribes Synod to accept it and Archbishop of Ochrid performs ceremony; Theodosius retires to monastery and Basil Camaterus made Patriarch.

Andronicus Angelus dies in exile; **Autumn?** his sons Isaac and Theodore return to join Theodore Cantacuzene in revolt at Nicaea and Brusa.

**September** Andronicus uses threats to retire to induce ministers to accept him as joint-emperor; crowds escort him to Blachernae Palace and next day he is crowned senior Emperor and illegally rides through Church of Christ in Chalke to enter Palace.

Tripsychus, Theodore Dadibrenus, and Stephen Hagiochristophorites, Andronicus’s most ruthless advisers, strangle Alexius II on their master’s orders and throw body in Bosphorus; Andronicus has Patriarch absolve



him of oath of allegiance, poisons Princess Maria and Renier-John in custody in Palace, and goes on tour hunting and feasting in Thrace; his propaganda portrays him as heroic missionary persecuted by enemies and forced to wander like King David.

**Christmas** Andronicus holds tournaments at capital, Tripsychos, Constantine Macrodocas, the Emperor's sons and son-in-law Romanus, Manuel I's illegitimate son Alexius and secretaries Michael Hagiotheodorites and Theodore Mavrozomes, Andronicus' secretary Theodosius Matzukes, general Alexius Branas, Isaac Aaron, and the sinister Hagiochristophorites lead government.

## 1184 Italy

**Early** Frederick sends envoys to Sicily; alliance arranged, sealed by marriage of his eldest son Henry to William II's aunt, Roger II's posthumous daughter Constance who with William and Joan childless is legitimate heir to Sicily.

### Byzantium

**Spring** Branas recaptures rebel Lopadium, Bithynia; Andronicus joins him for siege of Nicaea, and Andronicus allegedly ties rebel commander Isaac Angelus' mother Euphrosyne to a battering-ram during attack until rebels rescue her; Isaac's brother Theodore killed and archbishop leads a procession of citizens to plead successfully for mercy; Isaac flees and captured nobles executed; Brusa captured and rebel leaders killed and Bishop of Lopadium blinded when town revolts again.

Andronicus pardons Isaac and surviving brothers, but starts massacring other aristocratic suspects; Manuel I's great-nephew Alexius the 'cupbearer', brother of Queen Maria of Jerusalem, and others flee to Sicily and encourage William II to invade.

Alexius Angelus, Isaac's elder brother, does not trust Andronicus and flees to Syria where he is captured by Saladin's men.

### Italy/Byzantium

William II, advised by Alexius the 'cupbearer', installs a 'lookalike' Illyrian peasant as 'Alexius II' and pretends that he escaped the tyrant and wants William to restore him.

Venetian envoys Enrico Dandolo, Pietro Ziani, and Domenico Sanudo to Constantinople; Andronicus restores Venetian quarter but no treaty immediately.

## Georgia

Death of George III of Georgia, succeeded by daughter Thamar/Tamara (co-regent since 1179).

## 1185 Byzantium/Italy

Isaac Ducas Comnenus, son of Irene daughter of Manuel I's elder brother Isaac, ransomed from Armenian captivity by Emperor but fearing his paranoia if returns to capital, sails to Cyprus and presents forged imperial letters making him governor; Andronicus sends Macrodocas in failed attempt to get surrender.

Around 350 Sicilian ships, commanded by William II's cousin Tancred of Lecce, sail from Sicily as Andronicus hears rumours and sends David Comnenus to command Thessalonica and son-in-law Romanus and John Branas to Dyrrachium; troops start to desert.

## Palestine

**March** Death of Baldwin IV the leper; his sister Sibylla's son Baldwin V succeeds under regency of Raymond of Tripoli not Sibylla or her second husband Guy of Lusignan; 4-year truce with Saladin who attacks Mosul.

## Byzantium

**Ascension Day, 30 May** Macrodocas and colleague Andronicus Ducas are impaled for returning without Isaac Ducas Comnenus; Alexius the 'protostrator' blinded for plotting and consulting books of prophecy, but the city mob turns unpleasant as Alexius' servant Mamalus is burnt alive in Hippodrome.

? Fall of Ionian Islands to Sicilian adventurer, Margaritone, who becomes first 'Count of Cephallonia'.

Sicilian fleet lands in Epirus; **24 June** Dyrrachium surrenders; land-army advances along Via Egnatia to Thessalonica unopposed, as fleet sails through

Aegean and incompetent David Comnenus does nothing; **6 August** land-army arrives at Thessalonica; **15 August** fleet arrives.

John Comnenus leads reinforcements from Constantinople, but dallies en route as troops desert and 'Great Domestic' Alexius Gidus sent with second army; Gidus reaches Thessalonica but fails to break siege though John Mavrozomes arrives with another force from Peloponnese to be ignored by David Comnenus.

Rumours of plot to betray Thessalonica by German colony; **23–4 August** mines under walls fired by Normans and walls breached.

**24 August** Fall and sack of Thessalonica; David Comnenus flees to citadel, surrenders and is held hostage with Bishop Eustathius; the population is massacred and shrine of St Demetrius looted.

Normans advance into Thrace as Gidus retreats, Tancred's fleet sails to Hellespont.

Andronicus withdraw to Meludion Palace on East side of Bosphorus and orders all his prisoners to be massacred, but his son Manuel refuses to implement his orders; **11 September** Hagiochristophorites tries to arrest Isaac Angelus after a prophecy names Andronicus' successor as 'I.S.', but Isaac kills him and rides through city to Hagia Sophia to seek sanctuary; crowds gather and so do Isaac's relatives.

**12 September** Andronicus arrives at Palace, but the citizens storm prisons to release prisoners; Isaac's uncle John Angelus Ducas offers himself for coronation in Hagia Sophia, but the crowds insist that Patriarch crowns Isaac; Andronicus offers to abdicate in favour of Manuel but the mob breaks into Palace to install Isaac and he flees across Bosphorus; Andronicus reaches a ship at Chele on Black Sea and sails for Russia but is blown back to shore, arrested, returned to Constantinople, and tortured to death by jubilant mob in the Hippodrome, aged around 66.

Andronicus' elder son Manuel blinded and soon dies, younger son John arrested by troops in his command at Philippopolis and blinded; Isaac II takes over capital and unsuccessfully asks Normans, now at Serres and Mosynopolis, to withdraw; Alexius Branas sent out with army.

Branas surprises over-confident Normans raiding around Mosynopolis and drives them into the town; many killed and the survivors start retreat but **7 November** are caught at the River Strymon, trapped on bank, and slaughtered; Alexius the 'cupbearer' captured and blinded and Norman commanders Baldwin and Richard hostages.

Normans at Thessalonica retreat along the Via Egnatia to Dyrrachium, being harassed en route; Tancred's fleet reaches Principo, one of Princes'

Islands, and is defeated by Byzantine fleet but manages to raid Gulf of Nicomedia before second defeat; he retires to Sicily.

Normans hold Dyrrachium.

## Italy

**25 November** Death of Pope Lucius III; Umberto Crivelli elected Pope (Urban III); William II's aunt Constance sent to Germany to marry Frederick's son Henry; the reluctant Sicilian barons have to swear oath to her as heir to throne.

## 1186 Armenia

Rupen III abdicates and retires to monastery; succeeded by brother Leo II.

## Italy

**27 January** Henry marries Constance at Milan, and assumes government of Frederick's lands in Italy.

## Byzantium

**February** Patriarch Basil Camaterus dismissed for allowing women made nuns by Andronicus to leave convents; he is tried for illegal marriage of Manuel I and Andronicus I's children and assaulted and ejected for refusing to plead; 'Sacellarius' of Hagia Sophia, Nicetas Muntanes, made Patriarch.

John Angelus Ducas made 'Sebastocrator' and a leading adviser to his nephew; his daughter marries Alexius Branas, the military hero of Norman defeat; Alexius the 'protostrator' released and made 'Caesar' despite blindness, as is Isaac's new brother-in-law John Cantacuzene; Isaac's uncle Theodore Castamonitzes Minister of Finance and blind Alexius Comnenus Vatatzes unsuccessfully commands fleet against rebel Cyprus.

Béla III sends embassy to Constantinople to restore peace and asks for hand of Princess Theodora Comnena, grand-daughter of Manuel I's sister Theodora and Manuel Anemas; Isaac says she cannot leave convent where Andronicus I sent her and successfully offers himself (widower with son, Alexius, aged about 7) to marry Béla's daughter Margaret.

**Spring?** Branas, contemptuous of unmilitary Isaac, tries to 'stage-manage' his own proclamation as emperor at Hagia Sophia; he is arrested as no support materializes and dismissed but pardoned.

## **Syria/Palestine**

**March** Izz-ed-Din of Mosul becomes Saladin's vassal.

**August** Death of the young Baldwin V at Acre; in regent Count Raymond's absence his enemies proclaim Sibylla as Queen, and after a tense 'stand-off' Sibylla is crowned at Jerusalem and Raymond's candidate, her half-sister Isabella (daughter of Queen Maria Comnena), abandoned; Raymond loses power as Guy of Lusignan and his ally Reginald of Châtillon seize control and Reginald's raids on Moslem caravans in Oultrejourdan stir up Saladin.

## **Byzantium**

Béla sends Margaret to Constantinople to marry Isaac, who orders new taxes to pay for wedding; as Isaac leads army towards Dyrrachium the Bulgarians and Vlachs in North Balkans send envoys to him to protest at taxes, including brothers Peter and Asen who are insulted and assaulted. Isaac retakes Dyrrachium.

Peter and Asen set up a 'prophet' at chapel of St. Demetrius near Trnovo to claim that Saint has fled Thessalonica to lead Bulgarian revolt; revolt breaks out and Isaac's seizure of Bulgarian sheep-flocks for his wedding-feast is resisted; Peter assumes purple diadem as King, Trnovo is captured, and Bulgarians raid from Haemus (Sredna Gora) Mountains into Hebrus valley; **Autumn?** John Angelus Ducas sent out with army and obtains minor success, but he is recalled over fears that he might use army to revolt and his successor, blind John Cantacuzene, is attacked at night in camp and routed.

**Late** Isaac sends envoys to Montferrat to offer his sister Theodora as bride for the murdered Renier-John's brother Boniface; he is married so brother Conrad selected instead.

## **1187 Byzantium**

**February** After failure of attempts to hire a Genoese fleet to retake Ionian Islands, Isaac meets Venetian representatives and agreement for military alliance and commercial rights based on 1148 terms.

**Spring** Alexius Comnenus Vatatzes and John Contostephanus land on Cyprus; but Sicilian admiral Margharitone comes to Isaac Ducas Comnenus' aid and defeats Byzantine fleet; the land-forces are cut off and surrender, and Ducas Comnenus hands their commanders over to Sicilians as hostages for 1185 prisoners.

## Armenia

Leo II defeats ravaging Turcoman horde from the Caucasus under Rustem, and marries niece of Bohemund III's wife Sibylla.

## Byzantium

Alexius Branas sent against the Bulgarians but returns to Adrianople and revolts; Conrad of Montferrat arrives in Constantinople to marry Theodora and is made 'Caesar' and put in charge of defences as Isaac fears treachery of relatives; Branas, joined by provincial magnates, camps outside capital and defeats loyalist sally, and Bosphorus fishermen join rebellion and attack imperial fleet but have 'Greek fire' turned on them; Isaac melts down Church gold plate to pay troops, and Conrad leads 250 knights, 500 Western foot-soldiers, and volunteer citizens including Turk and Georgian traders; Isaac leads his army out to battle with him on right wing, cousin Manuel Camytzes on left, and Conrad and Westerners in centre, and after several hours' fighting Branas is unhorsed and killed and rebels flee; rebellion collapses, but Conrad's army drunkenly mistreats citizens on return to capital and despite Isaac reining them in the City mob attacks Latin quarter again to be repulsed; Isaac issues amnesty as Thracian rebel magnates threaten to desert to Peter and Asen's Bulgarians.

Isaac sets out for Bulgarian campaign; Conrad, left behind and in trouble for murder, deserts Theodora and sails for Palestine; Isaac evades Bulgarian blockade of passes in fog and overruns Danube plain, but Peter and Asen flee across river to Cumans and persuade them to invade.

## Palestine

**Saturday, 4 July** Saladin destroys the combined armies of Jerusalem and Tripoli at the 'Horns of Hattin'; Raymond escapes but Guy of Lusignan and Reginald of Châtillon are captured (Reginald executed by Saladin) and the military strength of Crusading states is irretrievably lost.

**10 July** Surrender of Acre; **14 July** Conrad of Montferrat arrives from Constantinople, realises something is wrong and refuses to land, and sails to Tyre to lead the defence.

**29 July** Surrender of Sidon; **6 August** Surrender of Beirut.

Queen Maria Comnena and her children by Balian of Ibelin are allowed to leave Nablus and go to Tyre while Balian defends Jerusalem; Queen Sibylla allowed to leave Jerusalem; **20 September** siege of Jerusalem.

## **Byzantium**

**September** Isaac back at Adrianople; Cumans raid across mountains into Thrace and approach Adrianople and Anchialus as new campaign prepared.

## **Palestine**

**2 October** Surrender of Jerusalem to Saladin; all who can pay are ransomed and allowed to leave, and Saladin grants more prisoners' freedom to the leading courtiers and Patriarch Heraclius; city is reoccupied by Moslems and no pillaging or massacres.

**November** Conrad leads successful defence of Tyre.

## **Italy**

**19/20 October** Death of Pope Urban at Ferrara; **21 October** Alberto de Morra elected (Gregory VIII) and proclaims a new Crusade.

**17 December** Death of new Pope Gregory in Pisa, en route to Rome; **19 December** cardinals elect Paolo Scolari as Pope (Clement III).

## **Byzantium/Palestine**

Isaac gets custody of the 'Holy Places' in Jerusalem restored to Orthodox clerics in agreement with Saladin.

**1187/8 Georgia**

Queen Tamar/Tamara divorces her husband, Prince George (Yuri) of Vladimir in Russia; subsequently marries Georgian noble David Soslan.

**Turkish Sultanate**

Kilij Arslan decides to semi-retire and divide most of dominions among his sons – Sebastea to eldest son Malik Shah; Tokat to (Rukn-al-Din) Sulaiman Shah, Neocaesarea/Niksar to Nasr-ed-Din, Albistan to Toghril Shah, Caesarea to Sultanshah, Nigde to Arslan Shah, Ankara to Mas-ud Shah, Sozopolis to Khusrau; other lands to brother Sanjar Shah and Amaseia to nephew Arslan Shah; civil war.

**1188 Byzantium**

Peace with William II of Sicily; 1185 captive barons released by Isaac.

Theodore Mangaphas revolts at Philadelphia; Isaac Comnenus, nephew of Andronicus I, escapes from prison and proclaims himself emperor at Hagia Sophia, but has to surrender after associate Constantine Taticius betrayed and arrested coming to help him with 500 men; Isaac killed, Taticius blinded.

Isaac II crosses Balkan mountains to besiege Lobitzes on the Danube for three months; Peter and Asen make truce after Asen's wife captured and send brother Ioannitsa to Isaac as hostage, but other Bulgarian chieftains fight on.

**Syria**

**Summer** Saladin takes fortresses on Antiochene coast and others owned by Tripoli, and Bohemund III's dominions reduced in subsequent truce; Conrad of Montferrat, defending Tyre, refuses admission to released Guy of Lusignan and stakes his claim for throne of Jerusalem.

**Byzantium**

Isaac replaces foreign minister ('Logothete of Drome') Demetrius Tornicius with Constantine Tornicius; he attempts to replace Patriarch Nicetas



with Theodore Balsamon, greatest canon lawyer of the day and titular Patriarch of Antioch, but when Synod meets changes his backing to personal friend Dositheus, Studius monastery monk and titular Patriarch of Jerusalem; Dositheus resisted in Synod and 9 days after his defiant enthronement Isaac gives in and replaces him with Leontius, monk of 'Theotokos' monastery.

**November** As 'Third Crusade' prepares, John Ducas Camaterus and Andronicus Contostephanus sent to Germany to agree to Frederick crossing Byzantium on march to Palestine.

## 1189 **Turkish Sultanate**

Kilij Arslan, retaining his capital Iconium as titular Sultan but less powerful than his sons, is besieged by son Malik Shah who is defeated but in revenge engineers father's dismissal of his Trapezuntine 'Vizier' Hasan Ibn Gabras.

## **Byzantium**

**May** Isaac uses troops to depose Patriarch Leontius and install Dositheus. Isaac marches to Thraciesion, besieges Mangaphas in Philadelphia, but allows him to stay as governor in hasty agreement as German Crusaders approach; **19/20 June** Frederick's envoys, Chamberlain Markward, Henry of Dietz, Rupert of Nassau, Count Walrab, and Bishop of Munster, reach Constantinople in Isaac's absence; **2 July** Frederick's army at Branicevo on Hungarian frontier; **11 July** they march into forests en route to Naissus, and Isaac panics at size of army and its rowdy behaviour and detains ambassadors; Camaterus excuses lack of waiting supplies en route to annoyed Frederick on lack of sufficient warning; **24? July** Frederick enters Naissus and refuses Stephen Nemanja's and Peter's offers of alliance against Isaac; Isaac's cousin Alexius sent to apologise for attitude of governor of Branicevo and assure supplies are waiting, but 'Domestic of West' Alexius Gidus blocks 'Trajan's Gate' pass into Hebrus valley; **August** Germans reach the pass and garrison flees.

Frederick arrives outside Philippopolis, where historian Nicetas Choniates is governor; Isaac sends letter calling himself 'Emperor of Rome' and accusing Frederick of plotting with Nemanja to put his own son on Byzantine throne, and **26 August** Frederick occupies Philippopolis as Byzantines flee.

Local Armenian settlers, Bulgarians, and landowners encourage Frederick against Isaac, and his latest envoys are arrested; Germans reach Didymoteichon South of Adrianople, and Frederick follows to **22 November** enter Adrianople and send to son Henry in Italy for reinforcements; Isaac mans capital's walls.

## Palestine

**August** Guy of Lusignan starts siege of Acre, reinforced by new Crusaders.

## Italy

**18 November** Death of William II of Sicily at Palermo; Tancred of Lecce disputes right of Constance (and Henry) to the throne and Sicilian fleet sails home from Palestine.

## 1190 Italy

**January–February** Tancred accepted by magnates as King of Sicily and crowned.

## Byzantium

**21 January** Isaac's envoys Eumathius and Jacob sent to Adrianople to negotiate peace with Frederick; safe passage and supplies in return for German prisoners (and Kilij Arslan's detained envoy to Frederick) arranged and **8/9 February** Frederick's envoys and Isaac and ministers sign agreement with 500 leading Byzantines swearing to it on oath; Frederick and his magnates swear oath at Adrianople and the Germans cross the Hellespont, release most of Isaac's hostages (including Isaac's cousin Michael Angelus Ducas, later 'Despot' of Epirus), and **28 March–27 April** march across Anatolia with some harassment from both Byzantines and Turks.

**17 May** Frederick enters abandoned Iconium; he skirmishes with Malik Shah, crosses the Taurus Mountains, and **10 June** is drowned at the River Calycadnus in Cilicia; his younger son Frederick of Swabia takes charge and leads army to **21 August** Antioch apart from some leaders who sail from Cilicia.

## Italy

**Spring** Count Roger of Andria leads revolt in Apulia against Tancred; Moslems from Palermo, escaping a pogrom by citizens, start revolt in hills and a German army crosses into Apulia supporting Constance's claim.

## Byzantium

Isaac invades Bulgaria from Anchialus while fleet sails parallel, but rebel fortresses hold out; on return march his army is ambushed in the Sredna Gora Mountains and routed; Bulgarians and Cuman allies sack Varna and Anchialus as Isaac retreats humiliated, but **21 September** he defeats raiders near Philippopolis.

Nemanja attacks Isaac's forces and sacks Scupi/Skopje, but Isaac retaliates and forces him to a truce.

## Palestine

**24 November** Conrad of Montferrat is married to Princess Isabella, daughter of King Amalric by Maria Comnena and now titular Queen of Jerusalem after death of half-sister Sibylla; Guy still disputes his claim to crown.

## Georgia

Tamara's ex-husband George of Vladimir returns to aid rebellion by nobles but is expelled.

## Italy

**14 September** Philip Augustus, King of France, arrives at Messina; Richard I of England, ex-Queen Joan's brother, follows **23 September** and disputes Joan's dower rights with Tancred; **October** Richard sacks Messina but comes to agreement with Tancred.

## 1191 Italy

**30 March** Philip sails for Palestine; Richard's mother Eleanor of Aquitaine arrives with his fiancée Berengaria of Navarre; **3 April** Berengaria sails for Palestine as Eleanor returns home; **10 April** Richard sails.

## Cyprus

**22 April–1 May** Richard delayed at Crete and Rhodes by bad weather, but two English ships wrecked off Cyprus and Isaac Ducas Comnenus seizes occupants; Berengaria and Joan arrive off Limassol but refused permission to land; **2 May** Richard arrives at Limassol and lands demanding revenge and Isaac flees into Troodos Mountains; **11 May** Isaac visits Richard's camp at Colossi under truce, but thinks his army is reassuringly small and breaks off talks; Guy of Lusignan and other Palestinian barons arrive to encourage Richard against Conrad and join him; **12 May** Richard marries Berengaria in chapel of St. George at Limassol, and Berengaria crowned; rest of Richard's ships arrives and he enters Famagusta; Isaac sends family North to Kyrenia and attacks but is defeated at Treminthos and flees to Kantara; Richard occupies Nicosia, and while he is ill Guy takes Kyrenia and besieges St. Hilarion and Buffavento castles; Isaac surrenders and is put in chains, and Richard organizes new government under his advisers Richard of Camville and Richard of Turnham; **5 June** Richard sails for Syria with Isaac Ducas Comnenus and family as prisoners.

## Italy

**Late March** Death of Pope Clement III; Henry of Hohenstaufen, now German Emperor, and Constance arrive in Rome; **14 April** 85-year-old Giacinto Bobo consecrated Pope Celestine III; **15 April** he crowns Henry and Constance; **Late April** Henry invades Apulia; **June?** Naples besieged and Constance installed in Salerno, but Henry's' troops wilt in the heat in Apulia and **late August** he starts to retreat; Constance captured in revolt in Salerno and sent to Tancred.

## Byzantium

**Spring** Isaac meets Béla III at Belgrade for unsuccessful talks, then defeats Cuman raid.

## **Palestine**

Richard leads Crusader attack on Acre which **12 July** surrenders; he massacres Moslem prisoners in dispute over ransoms with Saladin and **7 September** wins battle of Arsuf; he refortifies Jaffa and starts march towards Jerusalem.

## **Byzantium**

**3 September** After continuing church and aristocratic resistance, Isaac agrees to depose Dositheus and removes him from Patriarchal residence to his quarters as exiled Patriarch of Jerusalem; **10 September** Dositheus abdicates and senior Church official 'Grand Skeuophylax' George Xiphilinus, Patriarch

?Death of Isaac's uncle and finance minister, Theodore Castamonitzes.

## **Turkish Sultanate**

? Kiliç Arslan recovers Iconium, which Malik Shah has seized.

## **1192 Palestine**

**3 January** Richard reaches Beit-Nuba, 12 miles from Jerusalem, before retiring; he restores Ascalon and negotiates with Saladin's brother Al-Adil, but hears of trouble in England.

## **Byzantium**

**February** Treaty between Isaac and Pisa; Grasso's Pisan/Genoese pirate fleet raids Rhodes and Pamphylia and angry crowds gather in Constantinople demanding vengeance; Isaac persuades Genoese residents to pay 20,000 'hyperpera' damages to appease them.

## **Palestine**

**27 April** Conrad, seemingly accepted at last as King of Jerusalem, is killed in Tyre by two 'Assassins'; **5 May** Isabella marries Richard's nephew Henry of Champagne who secures the throne.

Richard's second march on Jerusalem, to **12 June** Beit-Nuba; he sights the city but has to retire again.

## Italy

**28 June** Enrico Dandolo, former ambassador to Byzantium elected 'Doge' of Venice.

## Palestine

**31 July** Richard retakes Jaffa after a surprise attack by Saladin; **28 August** peace-agreement reached with Saladin; **3 September** treaty signed and 'Latins' obtain restoration of guardianship of the 'Holy Places' in Jerusalem despite Isaac Angelus' offers to Saladin; **10 October** Richard sails for the West.

## Turkish Sultanate

**August** Death of Kilij Arslan; succeeded at Iconium by youngest son Khusraw, renamed 'Ghlyath al-Din Kaikhusraw', who soon raids Bithynia.

## Byzantium/Italy

Probable date of marriage of Isaac's daughter Irene to Roger of Apulia, Tancred's eldest son, following Tancred's defeat of Henry.

Pope Celestine secures guardianship of Constance, but en route to Rome Henry's men rescue her.

**November** Genoese refuse to pay any more compensation for Grasso's piracy. c. **November** Isaac defeats Seljuk raid into Bithynia and founds new fortresses including 'Angelokastron'.

? Son of Andronicus Bryennius Comnenus, Anna Comnena's recently blinded (for alleged plot) grandson, proclaims himself emperor at Hagia Sophia but is captured and blinded too.

## 1193 Byzantium

Theodore Mankaphas of Philadelphia revolts again, Isaac's elder brother Alexius Angelus is kept in Constantinople under suspicion of disloyalty,

and is found plotting but pardoned; new 'Domestic of the East' Basil Vatatzes marches on Philadelphia and Mankaphas, deserted by troops, flees to Iconium.

## **Palestine**

**3 March** Death of Saladin in Damascus; succeeded by feuding sons, (eldest and titular Sultan) Al-Afdal of Damascus, Al-Aziz of Egypt, and Az-Zahir of Aleppo, Izz-ed-Din of Mosul plots revolt but dies.

## **Byzantium**

**Summer?** Mankaphas raids the upper Maeander valley and Caria with Seljuk troops but receives little support, retreats, and at Iconium is arrested and handed over to Isaac's envoys; 'Chartulary' Theodore Chumnus kills a pretender claiming to be Alexius II in Paphlagonia; Vatatzes moved to Adrianople as 'Domestic of West' to fight Bulgars and replaced in East by Alexius Gidus; Constantine Ducas Angelus sent to Philippopolis to discipline army and defeats Vlach raiders but plots rebellion; he fails to get Vatatzes' support and as Vatatzes reports him to Isaac he revolts; his army deserts in unsuccessful march to Adrianople and he is captured, handed over, and blinded.

## **Italy**

**Autumn** Henry's Germans and rebel barons gain upper hand over sick Tancred in Apulia.

## **Syria/Armenia**

**October** Leo II of Armenia kidnaps visiting Bohemund III of Antioch at Baghras in agreement with Bohemund's wife Sibylla to get her son William as heir not her stepson Raymond; Leo occupies Antioch but is driven out by citizens on Raymond's behalf and deports Bohemund to Armenia.

## **Byzantium/Italy**

**October** Peace between Isaac and Genoese envoys, and confiscated Genoese property in capital restored; Pisan ships raid Abydos.

Death of Isaac's son-in-law, Roger of Apulia.

### **Turkish Sultanate**

**Late** Kaikhusraw's elder brother Malik Shah takes Caesarea and executes ruler, their brother Sultan Shah.

## **1194 Italy**

**20 February** Death of Tancred at Palermo; younger son William succeeds under regency of Queen Sibylla.

**Spring** Henry's general Berthold of Kunsberg victorious in Campania.

### **Byzantium**

Alexius Gidus sent to Thrace with reinforcements to join Basil Vatatzes; they meet a Bulgarian attack at Arcadiopolis but are defeated and Vatatzes is killed; Isaac appeals to Béla III who agrees to send an army into Balkans in 1195.

### **Palestine/Egypt**

**May** Al-Aziz of Egypt secures Palestine in new agreement among the 'Ayyubid' princes mediated by Al-Adil, after successful campaign against incompetent Al-Afdal.

### **Cyprus/Palestine/Syria/Armenia**

**May** Death of Guy of Lusignan, who Richard I has granted Cyprus; succeeded by his brother Amalric.

Queen Maria Comnena's son by second marriage to Ballan of Ibelin, John, becomes 'Constable' of the Crusader Kingdom.

Henry of Champagne invades Armenia from Antioch and forces Leo to hand over Bohemund III; Leo receives Baghras in peace-treaty and his niece Alice marries Bohemund's son Raymond (now ruler of Tripoli).



## Italy

**23 August** Naples surrenders to Henry's fleet; he sacks Salerno and most of Southern Italy surrenders; **October** Henry lands at Messina and overruns the island as King William III and family flee to Caltabelotta fortress and surrender in return for promise of Taranto and Lecce as fief; **25 December** Henry crowned King of Sicily at Palermo.

**26 December** Constance, hurrying to join Henry, gives birth to son Frederick at Jesi near Ancona; Henry deports Sicilian leadership to Germany, and Isaac II's daughter Irene is taken too and is married to his brother Philip of Swabia; William III sent to monastery.

## 1195 Byzantium/Italy

**Early** Henry, as heir to Sicilian kingdom's claims, insolently sends envoys to Isaac demanding Epirus and Macedonia; Isaac's envoys offer him a financial equivalent to buy him off and help his planned Crusade and terms are negotiated.

Isaac's brother Alexius renews his plotting; **Easter Sunday, 2 April** en route for Bulgarian campaign to link up with Béla, Isaac visits 'prophetic' hermit Basilacius at Rhaedestus; Basilacius tries to poke out eyes of imperial image and knocks Isaac's cap off.

**8? April** Encamped at Kypsela, Isaac goes out hunting and returns to find that Alexius has proclaimed himself Emperor in the imperial tent and the soldiers are joining in supporter's acclamations; Isaac's attendants flee and he heads along the Via Egnatia but is captured and taken to Vera monastery to be blinded; at Constantinople Alexius' wife Euphrosyne occupies the Palace, but Alexius Contostephanus tries to proclaim himself Emperor at Hagia Sophia and guards have to disperse his followers.

Isaac installed in palace on the Bosphorus under guard; Alexius blames the coup on the will of disgruntled army and gives lavish gifts to the nobility to win them over; during his coronation-procession his horse rears and his crown is knocked off.

Troubled by gout, Alexius (aged c. 52) is no firmer a ruler than his brother and very extravagant; he relies on Euphrosyne, her brother Basil Camaterus Ducas, brother-in-law 'Megadux' (admiral) Michael Stryphnus, sons-in-law Andronicus Contostephanus and Isaac Comnenus, cousin Manuel Camytzes, foreign minister Demetrius Tornicius, 'Great Logothete' Nicholas Tripsychus, and 'paracoemomenus' (Chamberlain) eunuch George Oinoiates.

**Summer** Another pretended 'Alexius II' joins Mas'ud Shah the Seljuk at Ankara, and Alexius III's envoy loanopolites fails to have him extradited; Alexius III marches on Ankara and Mas'ud Shah demands rich gifts to abandon the pretender and is rejected.

Bulgarians raid Serres and capture governor Alexius Aspietes; Emperor's son-in-law Isaac Comnenus sent against them but is captured; **October** Alexius returns to capital, where he allows Stryphnus to levy fine on Genoese merchant Cafforio who in revenge turns pirate and sacks Adramyttium.

Alexius impounds goods of all merchants from Iconium after Kaikhusraw 'borrowed' two horses, en route from Al-Aziz of Egypt as gift, and injured one out riding.

## 1196 **Byzantium**

**Early** Alexius uses Calabrian pirate Giovanni Stirione to defeat Cafforio sooner than send his own fleet to sea, probably knowing Stryphnos is loyal but incompetent; Cafforio captures Stirione but Alexius ransoms him and puts him in charge of new ships in Golden Horn; alliance with Genoa's enemy Pisa, but Cafforio killed before fleet sails.

Isaac Comnenus dies in prison at Bulgarian capital, Trnovo; Asen tries to kill the 'boyar' (noble) Ivanko for affair with his wife's sister, but Ivanko kills him instead, seizes Trnovo, and is besieged by Peter; Ivanko sends to Alexius saying that Isaac Comnenus promised him daughter's hand, and Manuel Camytzes is sent to help him but is ambushed in Sredna Gora Mountains and retires; Ivanko flees to Byzantium; Alexius marries Ivanko to Isaac's daughter and puts him in charge at Philippopolis.

Alexius' son-in-law Contostephanus and brother-in-law Ducas Camaterus persuade him to have Vatatzes, new commander against the false 'Alexius II', murdered for allegedly aiming at throne in alliance with Empress Euphrosyne; Alexius marches into Balkans to unsuccessfully besiege fortress of Strumnitsa, seized by rebel Vlach lord Dobromir Chrysus.

## **Palestine/Egypt**

**July** Al-Aziz and his uncle Al-Adil attack Damascus and force Al-Afdal to abdicate; Al-Aziz becomes Sultan.

## Hungary

Death of Béla III; succeeded by son Emeric.

## Byzantium

Alexius returns from Thrace to dismiss Euphrosyne's appeals that she is innocent of plotting, and sends her to Neomaterrea convent up the Bosphorus.

The false 'Alexius II' is murdered besieging Gangra, but Mas'ud Shah continues the war, takes Dadibra and forces Alexius to buy him off; **Autumn** Alexius buys off Turks raiding Bithynia.

Kaikhusrav raids the upper Maeander and Caria and deports 5000 captives to be settled at Philomelium.

Henry VI sends envoys, Chancellor Conrad of Hildesheim and Marshal Henry von Kalden, to Constantinople to demand huge financial assistance for his Crusade; **25 December** Alexius tries to overawe them at a splendid reception but the unimpressed Germans jeer that swords are more important than jewels and demand 5000lbs of gold; Alexius sends 'Eparch' Eumathius Philocales to Henry to reduce demands.

## 1197 Syria

**Early** Death of Bohemund III's son Raymond of Tripoli, leaving infant son Raymond-Rupen by Alice of Armenia.

## Byzantium/Italy

**Early Spring** Alexius III recalls and reinstates Empress Euphrosyne; Vlachs and Cumans raid around Tzurolon.

Henry accepts Alexius' reduced offer of 1600lb of gold, and Alexius raises a special 'Alemanikon' (German) tax to pay it and as he has made nobles, clergy, and guilds in capital immune from taxation he has to strip imperial tombs of valuables; 7000lb of silver and less gold raised. Alexius sends Leo of Armenia a crown.

Alexius' minister Constantine Mesopotamites, formerly finance-minister in Isaac II's latter years and retained in office until Euphrosyne's disgrace

in 1196, made Archbishop of Thessalonica; after Court intrigues the new Archbishop is accused of disloyalty and deprived.

Alexius' haphazard siege-operations at Prosakon rock fortress, seized by Dobromir Chrysus, end in defeat as Vlachs assist defence; Alexius promises Chrysus an imperial bride.

**28 September** Death of Henry VI; succeeded by 3-year-old son Frederick (II) under regency of Constance, and end of threat to Byzantium.

## Palestine

**10 September** Henry of Champagne killed falling out of window, and King Amalric of Cyprus succeeds him as Isabella's husband and titular King of Jerusalem.

## 1198 Italy

**8 January** Death of Pope Celestine III; cardinal-deacon Lothar elected Pope Innocent III, and Alexius III sends John Gregorius and Ibelard to him asking for negotiations.

## Armenia

**January** Coronation of Leo II as 'King' by 'Catholicos' Gregory, with Byzantine crown and German sceptre, in presence of Papal legates.

## Byzantium

Peace with Dobromir Chrysus, whose local rule around Strumnitsa is recognised. **7 July** Death of Patriarch George; succeeded **5 August** by John Camaterus, 'Chartophylax' in Patriarchal bureaucracy and relative of Empress Euphrosyne. Pisans send embassy to Constantinople disassociating themselves from pirate-activities of Guercio.

**15 August** Innocent proclaims Crusade for March 1199; he writes to Alexius advising end of schism and briefs legates Albertus and Albertinus for mission.

Bishop Michael Choniates of Athens, brother of Court official and historian Nicetas, writes to Alexius' ministers (*Hypomnestikon*), condemning greedy and unpunished imperial tax-collectors.

## Italy

**November** Death of Regent Constance of Sicily, leaving Pope as guardian to Frederick II, while her brother-in-law Philip of Swabia (married to Isaac II's daughter Irene) and Otto of Brunswick fight over Germany.

## Egypt

**29 November** Death of Al-Aziz of Egypt after hunting-accident; ministers invite Al-Afdal to assume regency for son Al-Mansur.

## Syria

**December?** Bohemund III's younger son Bohemund seizes Antioch and deposes father to safeguard his rights against nephew Raymond-Rupen, whose cause is taken up by relative Leo of Armenia.

## Serbia

Stephen II of Serbia divorces his wife Eudocia, daughter of Alexius III, who returns to Constantinople; his father Stephen Nemanja retires to Mount Athos to join son (St.) Sava at Vatopedi monastery.

## 1199 Serbia/Byzantium

Having founded Chilandari monastery on Mount Athos, Stephen Nemanja dies **13 February** and Sava retires to Karyes hermitage.

## Egypt/Syria

**Spring** Al-Mansur dies and uncle Al-Afdal seizes Egypt; Az-Zahir of Aleppo fights uncle Al-Adil, Saladin's brother and former lieutenant.

## Byzantium

**Spring** Alexius Palaeologus marries Alexius III's daughter Irene, widow of Contostephanus, and Theodore Lascaris (future Emperor of Nicaea, aged

c.24) marries her sister Anna, widow of Isaac Comnenus; Ivanko revolts at Philippopolis, rejects Alexius' offers, and proclaims himself Emperor; Camytzes, Palaeologus, and Lascaris lead campaign, but Ivanko outwits and captures Camytzes and sends him to Ioannitsa of Bulgaria; Alexius refuses to ransom Camytzes as a popular potential rival and seizes his possessions.

Ivanko raids down River Strymon to Mosynopolis and terrorizes Byzantine peasants.

**June?** New Byzantine/Pisa commercial treaty.

## Syria

**June?–December?** Al-Afdal and Az-Zahir besiege uncle Al-Adil in Damascus. Supported by Pope, Bohemund III obtains his son's agreement to him returning to power in Antioch and Patriarch Peter falls in negotiations with obstinate Leo of Armenia.

## France

**28 November** Count Theobald of Champagne holds tournament at Ecry-sur-Aisne as legate Peter Capuano preaches Crusade across France, and urges guests to join him on Crusade; 'Fourth Crusade' organized.

## 1199/ 1200 Byzantium

Alexius' greedy courtiers 'frame' the rich banker Calomodius to seize his wealth, but an angry mob demonstrates in Hagia Sophia till Patriarch forces Alexius to reprieve their victim.

Guild-members besiege Praetorium prison after brutal governor John Lagus arrests a colleague for complaining at his extortion from prisoners; Lagus flees, and mob tries to elect a new Emperor at Hagia Sophia but Alexius surrounds cathedral with troops to keep them out.

## 1200 Syria/Egypt

**January** Al-Adil's son Al-Kamil arrives from 'Jazireh' in Iraq to relieve Damascus, and Al-Adil pursues Al-Afdal into Egypt and **February** forces him to abdicate in his favour.

## France

**Spring** Baldwin, Count of Flanders, and other Crusaders hold a 'parlement' at Soissons and send Geoffrey of Villehardouin and Conan of Béthune to Venice to loan ships.

## Byzantium

**Late Spring** Alexius marches against Ivanko, and takes Steinmachus, South of Philippopolis; Ivanko demands his promised bride Theodora and secession of his seized territories as dominion, and Alexius arranges for his envoy Alexius Palaeologus to murder Ivanko at truce-meeting, rebellion collapses as Ivanko's brother Mitrus killed.

Michael Ducas, probably the later Despot of Epirus (and illegitimate son of Alexius III's uncle John Angelus Ducas), governor of Caria (Mylasa and Melanudion) revolts, flees to Rukn-al-Din Sulaiman Shah at Iconium, and gets Turkish mercenaries for invasion; they raid Maeander but receive little support, while Rukn al-Din deposes his brother Mas'ud Shah of Ankara and protests vainly to Alexius at piracy and extortion of imperial agent Constantine Philangopoulos at Cerasun on Black Sea coast; Alexius tries to assassinate Rukn-al-Din.

**Autumn** Touring Bithynia for medicinal baths at Pythia, Alexius sends message to Rukn-al-Din assuring he is ready to fight; new treaty follows; Alexius escapes shipwreck in storm on return journey to capital.

? Death of Alexius' uncle, John Angelus Ducas.

## 1201 Byzantium

Ioannitsa of Bulgaria prepares war; **3 February** Alexius and courtiers narrowly escape collapse of floor in imperial bedchamber as they assemble for ceremonial procession on departure to Blachernae Palace.

## France/Italy

**Lent** Crusading envoys in Venice and request transportation for 4500 knights and horses, 9000 squires, and 20,000 infantry; terms agreed with payment of 94,000 'marks', reduced to 84,000 on appeal, to be paid in four instalments before embarkation June 1202; **May** Pope Innocent supports

Crusade, and envoys obtain promises from Marquis Boniface of Montferrat (brother to Renier and Conrad) but not Genoa or Pisa; **24 May** death of putative leader Theobald of Champagne, succeeded by Boniface.

## Byzantium

**Good Friday, 23 March** Ioannitza captures Varna thanks to siege-tower, massacres citizens, demolishes walls, and retreats.

**May** Cuman horde raids Balkans to near Constantinople.

**Summer** Chrysus ransoms Camytzes from Ioannitza and they plot revenge on Alexius and join governor John Spyridonakes of Smolena to seize Prilep, Czar Samuel's 11th capital in Macedonia; Camytzes overruns Thessaly; revolt against Alexius in Peloponnesse, as Leo Sgurus, governor of Nauplia, seizes Argos and Corinth and Leo Chamaretus seizes Laconia.

**31 July** John Comnenus 'the Fat'; grandson of Axuch and great-grandson of John II, and conspirators (including later emperor Alexius Ducas 'Murtzuphlus', 'Bushy Eyebrows', the lover of Princess Eudocia) seize Hagia Sophia and swear oath to restore Empire's frontiers; John is crowned and mob joins in to loot Palace while Alexius III at Blachernae; John sits on imperial throne which collapses under his weight; that night Alexius Palaeologus and imperial guards land in Palace grounds to retake Palace, disperse rebels, and hunt down and kill John.

Isaac II's son Alexius (aged c.23), released from house-arrest, flees to Italy disguised as a sailor on Pisan ship and is not recognised when imperial sailors search the ship; he goes to sister Irene's husband Philip in Germany and Alexius III cancels talks with Pisan envoy Benenato.

**September?** Chrysus, promised Ivanko's widow Theodora in return for betraying Camytzes, agrees and surrenders Prilep and Prosakon on marriage; Alexius marches against Camytzes, open talks and then attacks him by surprise, and reconquers Thessaly.

**Winter** Alexius sends admiral Michael Stryphnus to Athens to negotiate with Sgurus; no success, and Sgurus throws the Bishop of Corinth off the citadel rock and links up with pirates of Aegina and Salamis.

## Syria

Death of Bohemund III; succeeded by younger son Bohemund IV.



## Italy

**Winter** Boniface meets Prince Alexius at Irene and Philip's court and discusses helping him; start of idea of diverting Crusade via Byzantium.

## Turkish Sultanate

Rukn-al-Din expels brother Muizz-al-Din of Melitene/Malitiya.

## 1202 Byzantium

Ioannitsa, abandoned by Cuman allies, makes peace with Alexius and returns central Thrace.

? Michael Choniates, Bishop of Athens, visits Constantinople to seek aid against Sguros; Camytzes flees into Serbia.

## Italy/Byzantium

**June** Crusaders start to assemble at Venice though some sail direct to Palestine from Apulia; they cannot raise enough money, and Prince Alexius writes offering Byzantine money and troops if he is restored to rights; the crusading leaders accept 'Doge' Enrico Dandolo's proposal to take Zara for Venice in lieu of payment and **8? September** Dandolo takes Cross in St. Mark's; Alexius hears of the threat and appeals to Innocent who **16 November** promises to stop Crusade assisting his nephew.

**24 November** Crusaders storm and sack Zara, and hand it over to Venice.

**December** Prince Alexius' envoy arrives at Zara, offering himself with 10,000 men and 200,000 'marks' for Crusade and reunion of churches in return for support.

## Cyprus

**Autumn?** Isaac Ducas Comnenus' daughter's husband, knight Baldwin, turns up to unsuccessfully demand that King Amalric abdicate in his favour.

## 1203 Italy/Byzantium

Most Crusaders agree to attack Constantinople, but Pope sends letter admonishing them for attack on Zara and excommunicating Venetians and their supporters and demanding return of loot and no further attacks on Christians; **20 April** main fleet leaves Zara for Corfu, and Dandolo and Boniface wait till **25 April** Prince Alexius arrives late.

**Late May** Fleet, rejoined by Boniface's group, lands at Corfu and dispute with Bishop over Church reunion at dinner leads to citizens attacking ships and retaliation; leaders have to assure angry Crusaders that they will spend a month in Constantinople at most while Alexius reassures on troops to aid Crusade, supplies, and Church reunion; Alexius and leaders agree in treaty to Isaac II's restoration, which Alexius assures will be easy, in return for aid.

Fleet lands at Euboea, and citizens swear allegiance to Alexius; **June?** Abydos; **24 June** they arrive at Constantinople to sail past its Southern walls and are daunted by its size according to Villehardouin, then land at Chalcedon over the Bosphorus; **26 June** they occupy Chrysopolis and await the promised revolt.

**1? July** Alexius III's admiral Michael Stryphnus and c. 500 cavalry defeated in camp near Chrysopolis; **2 July** Alexius III sends Lombard, Nicholas Rosso, to demand why Crusaders are attacking Christians and require their departure, and Conan of Béthune replies they are restoring rightful ruler and demands abdication.

**3 July** Prince Alexius sails beneath the walls to show himself to citizens but is jeered at; Crusaders baffled and decide to move to European shore.

**5 July** Venetian ships transport the Crusaders to West side of Bosphorus, and Byzantine army on shore bombarded until knights can land horses and lead charge; Alexius III abandons camp and Crusaders occupy it.

**6 July** Crusaders attack and take the tower defending Galata suburb North of Golden Horn, and Venetians ram the chain blocking the Horn; harbour occupied and Venetians propose to concentrate on sea-walls.

**10 July** Fleet protects crossing of Golden Horn to main land-walls as the destroyed bridge has to be repaired; **11 July** Crusaders camp at monastery of Ss Cosmas and Damian, 'Bohemund's castle', opposite Blachernae.

Skirmishes as Venetians attack sea-walls, and superstitious city mob smashes up columns of Arcadius and Theodosius.

**17 July** Baldwin of Flanders leads assault on Blachernae, but Varangian guard drives the Crusaders off the walls; Venetians take towers along the sea-walls in Petrion district, are driven out of streets by citizens, and start fire that devastates quarters facing the Horn between Blachernae and Petrion; Alexius III drives Crusaders back to camp in person and Venetians abandon towers.

**Night, 17–18 July** Alexius III flees with 1000 lb of gold, pearls, jewels, and daughter Irene to flee by sea to Develtus in Thrace.

**18 July** Ministers meet and reluctantly fetch Isaac II to restore him to Blachernae Palace; envoys are sent to Crusader camp, and Prince Alexius, Boniface, Geoffrey of Villehardouin, and two Venetians go to Palace; Isaac is reminded of his son's agreement and has to sign it despite protests before Alexius IV is proclaimed co-emperor and escorted to Palace; Crusaders allowed in to tour city; **1 August** Alexius crowned.

Western troops sent to Blachernae Palace and holes knocked in land-walls to discourage treachery; Alexius proposes that Crusaders stay in capital at his expense until March and he then accompanies fleet to Palestine and pays for it until September; Crusaders agree but Alexius III arrives in Adrianople to lead provincial resistance and **August** Boniface and Baldwin's brother Henry accompany Alexius IV into Thrace to reoccupy Adrianople.

**19 August** City mob attacks Latin quarter and many flee to Crusaders; in retaliation the Italians lead assault on 'infidel' Moslem quarter and another devastating fire breaks out; **19–20 August** fire burns across city to harbours of Julian and Eleutherius on South shore; **November** Alexius IV returns to find citizens sullen and Isaac unable to pay enough of promised aid; Alexius becomes closer to anti-Latin faction to rally support and restores some of uncle's ministers such as Nicetas Choniates, but is losing power to more 'nationalist' leaders such as Alexius Ducas Murtzuphlus who he makes 'protovestiarius' in attempted alliance.

**Late November** Crusader leaders warn Emperors at Blachernae reception of consequences if agreement not met; **1 December** Latin quarter attacked again but riotous citizens captured crossing Horn to assault Venetians.

## 1204 **Byzantium**

**1 January** Byzantine fire-ships driven off Venetian fleet; skirmishes break out on land and Latins suffer from lack of food until more ships arrive.

**25 January** Crowds gather at Hagia Sophia and ignore Choniates' and others' warnings of Crusaders' wrath if Alexius IV deposed; Radinus

elected but hides disguised as monk, and statue of Athena from Parthenon smashed up as facing West and ‘beckoning Latins’.

**28 January** Crowds elect young noble Nicholas Canabus, while Alexius IV sends to Boniface asking him to move into Blachernae Palace to protect him but recovers nerve after nobles’ taunts and changes his mind; that night Murtzuphlus burst into Alexius’ bedchamber to tell him the mob is coming and Alexius, agreeing to follow him to escape, is seized and thrown in a dungeon; Murtzuphlus seizes Palace.

**29 January** Murtzuphlus announces his accession to assembly of nobles and clergy and promises to rid the City of Latins, and the mob supports him and abandons Canabus who refuses to leave Hagia Sophia and **3 February** after followers have been bribed to disperse is arrested; the gates are shut and reassuring messages sent to leaders summoning them to meet ‘Alexius IV’ but Dandolo suspects trap and they do not reply.

News of the coup reaches camp; Alexius V meets Dandolo who requires payment of Alexius IV’s debts under treaty and his restoration, and afterwards knights try to capture the new Emperor.

Siege of Constantinople; **5 February** coronation of Alexius V ‘Ducas’ in Hagia Sophia; **8 February** Alexius V strangles his predecessor after failed attempt at poisoning and pretends he died naturally, and shortly afterwards Isaac II dies (presumably murdered) aged probably c.55; buried at Pantanassa monastery.

**March** Crusading leaders draw up agreement – at fall of city, all loot collected and three-quarters of it to Venice until Alexius IV’s debts paid off, then equal distribution; six Crusaders and six Venetians elect a ‘Latin Emperor’ who gets a quarter of Empire, the rest equally divided; if a Crusader is elected Venetians get Patriarchate and Hagia Sophia, and vice-versa; all swear oaths and siege engines prepared.

**9 April** Failed assault on sea-walls across Golden Horn, and Dandolo rallies the disheartened Crusaders as clergy assure that their sins did not cause failure.

**Monday, 12 April** 40 ships cross Golden Horn carrying ‘flying bridges’ to assault the sea-wall at correct height, and attack walls between Blachernae and Alexius V’s position at monastery of Christ Evergetes; at around mid-day the first tower is seized, and after Crusaders are halted in possession of several towers some more smash open a postern-gate and Alexius V’s counter-charge downhill from city is defeated; more Crusaders follow to storm uphill into city and Alexius retires to Boucoleon as main Byzantine force regroups at Blachernae; Baldwin takes Alexius’ monastic headquarters.

At night Crusaders start another fire to stop counter-attack, and over a third of city burnt in giant swathe to the Propontis in South; Alexius V tours city to no avail and as people are fleeing he collects his mistress Eudocia, ex-Empress Euphrosyne, and others at Palace and flees into Thrace; at Hagia Sophia a hasty election-meeting chooses Alexius III's son-in-law Theodore Lascaris, but as he tries to rally citizens at the Milion Arch and Varangian Guard demands donative he decides position is hopeless and flees over Bosphorus.

**13–15 April** Sack of Constantinople, with the usual atrocities; Crusaders hold a mock 'service' in Hagia Sophia and install prostitute on Patriarch's throne; Boniface occupies Boucoleon Palace but is expelled by Dandolo, and marries Isaac II's widow Margaret of Hungary.

Patriarch John, Choniates, and many exiles struggle to Selymbria; Theodore Lascaris leaves family at Nicaea and rallies exiles at Brusa.

Pro-Byzantine Tuscan, Aldobrandini, seizes Antalya/Attaleia; Mavrozomes declares independence in Maeander valley, Sabbas at Priene, and Monothedorus at Philadelphia.

**April?** Queen Tamara of Georgia's troops assist Alexius and David Comnenus, sons of Manuel son of Andronicus I, to take Trebizond – foundation of '**Empire of Trebizond**'. Alexius rules at Trebizond, David at Sinope.

## Turkish Sultanate

Death of Rukn-al-Din, Sultan of Iconium, en route to fight Tamara; succeeded by son Kilij Arslan III, a minor, whose uncle Kaikhusraw has fled to Mavrozomes but plans to return.

## Latin Empire

**9 May** Baldwin of Flanders elected Emperor despite Boniface's attempts, and **16 May** crowned in Hagia Sophia with Byzantine ceremonial; Venetian sub-deacon Thomas Morosini Patriarch; Baldwin's brother Henry marches West, and Alexius V abandons Tzurolon and flees; he seeks alliance with his refugee predecessor Alexius III at Mosynopolis, but the latter pretends to welcome him and then seizes him in bath, blinds him, and turns him out as beggar.

**Spring** Leo Sguros overruns Attica, and Bishop Michael flees to Euboea; Alexius III advances to meet him at Larissa and marries him to daughter Eudocia.

**Late Summer** Villehardouin's nephew Geoffrey, arriving from Palestine to join in Crusader 'land-grab', lands at Modon in Peloponnesse and allies to local Greek lords.

**August** Crusader host advances across Thrace to take Thessalonica, which Boniface successfully demands on account of Manuel I's grant to his brother Renier; Boniface installed in Thessalonica, annoyed at Baldwin insisting on being his suzerain, and **12 August** sells his rights in Crete to Venice; Genoese pirate Enrico Pescatore seizes island.

**October** Formal treaty of division of Empire – a quarter to Baldwin; three-eighths each to Venice and other Crusader lords; Baldwin rules East Thrace; Venice obtains Adrianople, Peloponnesse, Aegean and Ionian islands, Gulf of Corinth, and tip of Euboea; Baldwin gets Asia Minor and gives Adramyttium to brother Henry; Count of Blois gets Nicaea, Count of Perche Philadelphia, and Peter of Braçieux lands to Iconium.

Alexius III and Alexius V captured as Crusaders advance to Thermopylae, which Sgurus abandons; Athens occupied and given to Burgundian lord, Otto de la Roche; castles built at Boudounitza near Thermopylae (Guy Pallavicini) and Salona near Amphissa (Thomas d'Autremencourt); James of Avesnes overruns Euboea while Sgurus besieged in 'Acrocorinth', Corinth's mountainous citadel, and Boniface overruns Peloponnesse.

Michael Angelus Ducas, disappointed of Crusader fief, deserts their army to join his relative Sennacherim, lord of Arta, and on his death takes over lands – foundation of *Despotate of Epirus*.

Alexius V tried for betraying his lord Alexius IV, sent to Constantinople, and **12 October** thrown off Column of Theodosius as traitor.

Crusader force under Henry of Flanders takes Adramyttium; Peter of Braçieux and Payn of Orleans take Nicaea, **6 December** defeat Theodore Lascaris, but are driven off his headquarters at Brusa.

## Bulgaria

**November** Ioannitsa crowned as King by Papal legate, Cardinal Leo.

## Latin Empire

Doge's nephew Marco Sanudo takes Naxos for Venice.

**December** Innocent's legate Peter of Capuano addresses Greek clergy in Hagia Sophia and tells them to adopt Latin practices.

## Primary sources

- Anna Comnena, *Alexiad*, transl. and ed. E.R. Sewter (London, 1969).  
 Geoffrey de Villehardouin, *The Conquest of Constantinople* (ed. Faral), 2 vols (Paris, 1938–9).  
 John Cinnamus, *The Deeds of John II and Manuel I Comnenus*, transl. Charles Brand (Columbia University Press, 1976).  
 Nicetas Choniates, *History*, translated by Harry Magoulias (Detroit, 1984).

## Secondary sources

- Charles Brand, *Byzantium Confronts the West, 1180–1204* (Cambridge, Mas., 1968).  
 Ferdinand Chalandon, *Les Comnènes: Etudes sur l'empire byzantin au XI et au XII siècles*, 2 vols (Paris, 1900/1912).  
 J. Chrysostomides (ed.), *Essays Presented to Joan Hussey for her Eightieth Birthday*: Bernard Hamilton, 'Manuel I Comnenus and Baldwin IV of Jerusalem', pp. 353–76.  
 G.W. Day, *Genoa's response to Byzantium, 1155–1204* (Urbana, 1978).  
 S. Fassoulakis, *The Byzantine family of Raoul-Ral(l) es* (Athens, 1973).  
 J.V.A. Fine, *The Early Mediaeval Balkans: a Critical Survey from the Sixth to the Twelfth Century* (Ann Arbor, 1983).  
 A. Kazhdan and A. Wharton Epstein, *Change in Byzantine Culture in the Eleventh and Twelfth Centuries* (University of California Press, 1985).  
 R. J. Lilie, *Byzantium and the Crusader States, 1096–1204* (Oxford, 1993).  
 Paul Magdalino, *The Empire of Manuel I Komnenos, 1143–1180* (Cambridge University Press, 1993).  
 Donald Nicol, *Byzantium and Venice* (Cambridge, 1988).  
 John Julius Norwich, *The Normans in the South* (London, 1967).  
 —, *The Kingdom in the Sun* (London, 1970).  
 D. Polemis, *The Doukai: A Contribution to Byzantine Prosography* (London, 1968).  
 Steven Runciman, *History of the Crusades: vol. 2, The Kingdom of Jerusalem* (London, 1952).  
 —, *The Eastern Schism* (Oxford, 1955).  
 Spyros Vryonis, *Byzantine Studies: Essays on the Slavic World and the Eleventh Century* (New Rochelle, New York, 1992).  
 R.B. Yewdale, *Bohemund I, Prince of Antioch* (Princeton, 1924).

## Articles

- Byzantina*, vol. 1 (1969): E. Tsolakis, 'Michel Attaliates comme critique des Enterprises militaires', p. 187.  
*Byzantina*, vol. 8 (1976): E. Vranoussi, 'A propos des operations des Normands dans la mer Agee et a Chypre après la prise de Thessalonique (1185)', pp. 203–11.  
*Byzantina Zeitschrift*, vol. 58 (1965): D. Polemis, 'Notes on Eleventh Century Chronology (1959–81)', pp. 60–76.  
*Byzantion*, vol. 7 (1932): J. Lamonte, 'To what extent was Byzantium the suzerain to the Crusading states?', pp. 253–64.

- Byzantion*, vol. 9 (1934): Claude Cahen, 'La campagne de Mantzikert d'après les sources musulmanes', pp. 625–37.
- Byzantion*, vol. 18 (1948): Claude Cahen, 'La première pénétration Turque en Asie Mineure (seconde moitié du XI<sup>e</sup> siècle)', pp. 5–67.
- Byzantion*, vol. 20 (1950): P. Charanis, 'Byzantium, the West, and the Origins of the First Crusade', pp. 17–36.
- Byzantion*, vol. 26 (1956): G. Koliass, 'Le motif et les raisons de l'invasion de Robert Guiscard en terre byzantine', pp. 424–30.
- Byzantion*, vol. 31 (1961): Robert Browning, 'The death of John II Comnenus', pp. 229–35.
- Byzantion*, vol. 48 (1978): G. Day, 'Byzantino-Genoese Diplomacy and the Collapse of Emperor Manuel I's Western policy, 1168–71', pp. 393–405.
- Byzantion*, vol. 50 (1980): J.C. Cheynet, 'Mantzikert: un désastre militaire?', pp. 410–38.
- Byzantion*, vol. 56 (1986): W.B. McQueen, 'Relations between the Normans and Byzantium, 1071–1112', pp. 427–76.
- Byzantion*, vol. 64 (1994): Michael and Elizabeth Jefferies, 'Who was Irene the Sebastokratisa?', pp. 40–68.
- Papers of the British School at Rome*, vol. 52 (1984): D. Abulafia, 'Ancona, Byzantium and the Adriatic, 1155–73', pp. 195–216.
- Revue des Etudes Byzantines*, vol. 35 (1977): P. Gautier, 'Défection et soumission de La Crète sous Alexis I<sup>er</sup>', pp. 215–27.
- Speculum*, vol. 58 (1993): Paul Magdalino, 'Aspects of Twelfth-Century Byzantine *Kaiserkritik*', pp. 326–46.
- University of Birmingham Historical Journal*, vol. 12 pt 2 (1970): A.A. Bryer, 'A Byzantine Family: the Gabrades, c.979–1653', pp. 164–87.

## Crusades and crusader kingdoms: primary sources

- The Chronicle of Fulcher of Chartres and Other Source Materials*, ed. E. Peters, 2nd edition (University of Pennsylvania Press, 1998).
- Gesta Francorum*, ed. and trans. Rosalind Hill (London, 1962).
- Fulcher of Chartres, *Historia Hierosolymitana* (1095–1127), edited G. Hagenmayer (Heidelberg, 1913).
- Chronique de Michel le Syrien, 1166–1199*, translated and edited by J. Chabot (Paris, 1902).
- Walter the Chancellor's *The Antiochene Wars*, transl. and commentary T. Ashbridge and S. Edington (Ashgate Publishing, 1999).
- William of Tyre, *History*, ed. R.C.B. Huygens, 2 vols, in *Corpus Christianorum* (1986).



*This page intentionally left blank*

**Part VII**  
**1205–1261**

*This page intentionally left blank*

## 1205 Latin Empire

**21 January** Innocent reluctantly confirms Thomas Morosini's election as Patriarch despite illegality, and **March** he is rushed through requisite clerical orders and leaves Venice for Constantinople.

Geoffrey of Villehardouin's host, 'Archon' of Modon, dies and his son rejects alliance; Villehardouin joins Boniface at siege of Nauplia but decides to conquer Peloponnese and **Spring** persuades William of Champlitte to join him; with 100 knights and 400 men-at-arms they leave Boniface's army to take Patras, Andravida, 'Mouse Castle' (Pondico Castro), and other strong points to create principality; Cyparissia besieged.

? Michael Angelus Ducas ransoms Alexius III, who stays temporarily at Arta and then moves on to Iconium to seek Seljuk aid, leaving Euphrosyne behind.

**19 March** Henry defeats Theodore Lascaris' brother Constantine in the Troad. Ioannitsa aids Byzantine revolt in Thrace; Adrianople and Didymoteichon captured, and Baldwin hastens to Adrianople to start siege; **April** Ioannitsa arrives with Cuman reinforcements and routs and captures Baldwin in battle; Dandolo evacuates survivors to Constantinople, whence many Crusaders flee; Henry of Flanders arrives from Bithynia at Rhaedestus to rally the army and is named Regent.

## Palestine/Cyprus

**1 April** Death of Amalric of Jerusalem and Cyprus; succeeded by 6-year-old son Hugh I in Cyprus, while widow Isabella rules 'Jerusalem' (i.e. Acre and coastal ports) as sovereign.

## Latin Empire

**29 May** Death of Enrico Dandolo; Henry marches against Ioannitsa, who retires as Cumans abandon campaign, and goes to besiege Thessalonica.

**June** Venetians in Empire elect Marino Zeno as first 'Podesta'.

**June** Jacopo Morosini, Venetian commander, takes Dyrrachium.

Revolt in South-west Peloponnese against Villehardouin and Champlitte, and Michael Angelus Ducas crosses Gulf of Corinth to assist them but is defeated at Coundoura; Cyparissia, Coron and Kalamata fall to the Latins but Monemvasia holds out.

## Italy

Pietro Ziani elected 'Doge' in Venice and makes 'Podesta' Zeno hand over Dyrrachium and Corfu to direct Venetian control.

## Latin Empire

Paulicians in Philippopolis try to hand over city to Ioannitsa, so local Latin commander Renier burns their quarter with Greek support; Ioannitsa is ordered by Pope to release Baldwin and ?murders him; Theodore Branas, Thracian magnate married to Andronicus I's widow Agnes/Anna of France, is accepted as feudal Lord of Didymoteichon.

## Turkish Sultanate

Kaikhusrav revolts against his nephew Kilij Arslan with a coalition including three Danishmend princes, takes Iconium, and becomes Sultan.

## 1206 Latin Empire

**Spring** Henry marches into Thrace and relieves Ioannitsa's siege of Didymoteichon; Venetians expel their rebel commander Vetrano from Dyrrachium.

## Syria

Bohemund IV deposes Patriarch Peter of Antioch for intrigues with Armenia and installs Greek Patriarch Simeon II.

## Latin Empire

Henry relieves Bulgarian siege of Renier in Stenimachus; **July** Patriarch Thomas surrenders to Papal demand that he accepts some non-Venetian canons at Hagia Sophia.

**20 August** Henry crowned Emperor at Hagia Sophia; he relieves Ioannitsa's siege of Adrianople, and later unsuccessfully besieges Nicomedia.

## Nicaea

Theodore Lascaris proclaims himself Emperor; though Patriarch John Camaterus refuses to come from Thrace to crown him; **May/June** John dies.

## Trebizond

? Alexius Comnenus defeated and captured by Seljuk Sultan Kaikhusraw and agrees to become his vassal.

? Theodore Lascaris defeats David Comnenus' army in Paphlagonia and captures general Synadenus; David agrees to become Latin Empire's vassal in alliance against Theodore.

## Nicaea

Theodore defeats Mavrozomes, who keeps Maeander lands as his vassal.

## Turkish Sultanate

Kaikhusraw occupies Attaleia/Antalya.

## 1207 Latin Empire/Nicaea

**Early** Latins retake Pegae, Cyzicus, and Nicomedia; Theodore appeals to Ioannitsa who invades Thrace; Henry returns to Thrace, marrying **February** Boniface's daughter Agnes of Montferrat to restore relations with Thessalonica; Theodore besieges Cibotus which Henry evacuates, and then hires 17 pirate galleys under John Stirione to blockade Cyzicus; Henry relieves Cyzicus, then relieves siege of Nicomedia but is called to Thrace as Adrianople attacked again.

Theodore offers 2-year truce with Latins keeping Cyzicus and Nicomedia but demolishing walls; Henry agrees, returns to Thrace, and is heavily defeated.

**June** Earliest surviving Nicaean administrative document. Nicetas Choniates the historian, arriving destitute in Nicaea from Thrace, gains favour and becomes 'Chief Rhetor' and head of Imperial Chamber.

Mario Orsini of Cephallonia accepts Venetian overlordship.

Boniface recognizes Marco Sanudo as Venetian 'Duke of Naxos and the Archipelago'; Boniface does homage to Henry for Thessalonica, but is soon killed in ambush; Ioannitsa besieges Thessalonica but dies suddenly in miracle ascribed to St. Demetrius and Boniface's infant son by Empress Margaret, Demetrius, succeeds to Thessalonica under regency of Oberto of Biandrate.

John Asen, Ioannitsa's son, flees to Russia as his cousin Boril seizes Trnovo and becomes King of Bulgaria.

## 1208 Latin Empire

William of Champlitte returns home to claim lands, leaving Geoffrey de Villehardouin (the younger) as sole 'Prince of Achaia' in Peloponnesse.

Leo Sgurus, despairing of end to siege of Acrocorinth, throw himself off the rock; Michael Angelus Ducas' brother Theodore leads defence.

## Nicaea

**March** Theodore Lascaris holds Synod at Nicaea; **20 March** Michael Autoreianos elected Patriarch to restore a legitimate Orthodox Church hierarchy and reorganizes episcopate of Byzantine-held lands in West Anatolia, raising Philadelphia to archbishopric; **Easter Sunday** Michael crowns Theodore.

## Latin Empire

**1 August** Henry defeats Boril's vastly superior Bulgarian army at Philippopolis in Thrace; Boril agrees to become his vassal and marries his illegitimate daughter, and peace restored to Thrace; as truce expires in Anatolia Henry campaigns against Theodore Lascaris in Bithynia in alliance with David Comnenus.

## Syria

Renewed war between Bohemund IV and Leo of Armenia leads to Bohemund expelling Greek Patriarch Simeon in order to secure Papal support; Leo receives Simeon and allies with Nicaea, and Bohemund allies with Kaikhusraw.

## Latin Empire

**Late** Henry marches to Thessalonica to counter a plot against him by Biandrate the regent, but is harassed by bad weather and Vlachs; the regent insists that Henry grant Thessalonica all lands from Dyrrachium to the River Vardar and a 'corridor' to the Black Sea and Henry, unable to press siege, agrees subject to Empress Margaret's agreement but persuades her to reject it and undermines Biandrate's power in city; Biandrate fails to persuade Boniface's elder son William, ruling Montferrat, to come out to Greece and assist him.

## 1209 Latin Empire

**6 January** Henry crowns Demetrius as King of Thessalonica; Biandrate maintained as regent but is watched and is soon arrested and imprisoned for treason; Henry takes Serres from Biandrate's supporters, but **Spring** has to leave Thrace to suppress revolt in Thessaly and takes Larissa.

**May** Geoffrey of Villehardouin, having succeeded in deflecting attempt to secure William of Champlitte's part of the 'Morea' (Peloponnesse) by William's cousin and heir Robert, attends Henry's 'Parlement' at Ravennika and is recognised as Lord of the Morea.

**June** Treaty between Geoffrey and Venice; Venice gains ports of Modon and Coron and exemption from customs-dues; Henry marches on to Thebes to besiege resisting Lombard barons in castle until they surrender, and then on to Athens; Biandrate escapes trial to take refuge with Ravano delle Carceri, principal Lombard Lord of Euboea, but Henry invades and forces them both to surrender.

Michael Angelus Ducas does homage to Henry as vassal and is allowed to rule South Epirus as 'Despot', basing himself at Arta.

## Nicaea

? Theodore defeats Monotheodorus of Philadelphia and Sabbas of Priene, who retain governorship of those cities as 'Sebastocrators'; he goes on to force a similar arrangement on Mankaphas, ruler of Smyrna, and thus unites the Byzantine lands of western Anatolia.



**1210 Latin Empire**

Geoffrey of Villehardouin acclaimed by vassals as 'Prince of Achaia' and forces Acrocorinth to surrender; Theodore Angelus Ducas flees to his brother Michael at Arta; Geoffrey holds baronial 'Parlement' at Andravida to divide principality into twelve fiefs.

Michael Angelus Ducas revolts against Henry, attacks Thessalonican territory and captures and crucifies 'Constable' Amadeo; **20 June** he signs treaty with Venice, becoming their vassal and paying 40lb 'hyperpera' per annum and granting trading-concessions; Venice sends him mercenaries and he takes territory until **Autumn** Henry returns to Thessalonica and he submits and does homage again.

**Palestine**

**14 September** The late Queen Isabella and Conrad of Montferrat's daughter Maria of Montferrat, now Queen of 'Jerusalem', marries the Papal candidate, middle-aged baron John of Brienne, who becomes King and **30 October** is crowned at Tyre; Queen Maria Comnena's son and Maria of Montferrat's great-uncle John of Ibelin, Lord of Beirut, remains chief minister.

**1211 Latin Empire**

**Early** Henry defeats and pursues Boril across Thrace, and brother Eustace with assistance from Michael Angelus Ducas defeats Vlach lord Strez at Pelagonia; Michael assists rebels on the island of Galaxidi to defect and kill their overlord, Thomas d'Autremencourt of Salona in Phocis, and takes Salona but his eastward expansion is halted by Nicholas of St. Omer, Lord of Gravia (Mount Parnassus) and Pallavicini of Boudounitsa.

**Nicaea/Turkish Sultanate**

Kaikhusrav invades Theodore's territories on behalf of Alexius III and his nephew (Isaac II's son) Manuel who accompany him; he besieges Antioch-on-Maeander and Theodore, about half his army Latin mercenaries, marches to its relief; in the battle Seljuks gain upper hand but Kaikhusrav is unhorsed and killed in pursuit of Greeks, possibly by Theodore in person, and Seljuks flee; Theodore captures Alexius III, who is sent to

Hyacinthus Monastery, and Manuel; Seljuks have to accept existing territorial frontier but keep Attaleia/Antalya.

A council of emirs at Iconium decides on Kaikhusraw's eldest son, Izz-ed-Din Kaykavus of Malatya, as next sultan rather than half-brothers Ala-ed-Din Kaiqobad of Tokat or Kayferidun Ibrahim of Antalya; Leo of Armenia, senior military commander ('Parvane') Prince Zahir-al-Din Ili the Danishmend, and Seljuk prince Mughith-al-Din of Erzerum (Theodosiopolis) install Kaiqobad at Iconium instead and Kaykavus manages to win them over and retrieve his throne; Kaiqobad flees to Ankara to ally with Turcomans of Kastamoni (Castamona), and Kaykavus becomes Theodore's ally enabling him to concentrate on Latins and issue letters to Greeks promising deliverance.

### **Latin Empire/Nicaea**

**June/July** Death of Patriarch Thomas at Thessalonica; non-Venetian clerics at Hagia Sophia produce Papal letter supporting free election of successor but after they leave meeting the Venetian clerics elect their dean Philip as Patriarch; the objectors send their 'short-list' to Pope for him to select choice but **25 August** he writes ordering new election.

Theodore invades Latin Bithynia and kills Peter of Bracieux but **25 October** is routed by Henry's 250 knights in decisive battle on River Rhyndacus and Theodore's brother and his son-in-law Paleologus captured; Henry takes Poimamenum and Adramyttium and enrols Greek captives to defend his frontier; at Nymphaeum Theodore signs treaty ceding Nicomedia, all the Propontis coast, the Troad, Cyzicus, and Adramyttium and Achytacus to Henry and keeping the rest of dominions.

? Deaths of historian Nicetas Choniates, his brother Michael ex-Bishop of Athens, and (in Epirus) Empress Euphrosyne.

**24 December** Venetians elect Ludovico and non-Venetians Gervasius as rival Patriarchs; both appeal to Pope.

## **1212 Latin Empire**

Henry's brother Eustace defeats Boril as **January** Henry writes to Pope from Poemamenum that all his enemies are vanquished; Boril sues for peace as his cousin John Asen returns to Bulgaria with mercenaries from Russia to start civil war.

## **Nicaea**

Death of Patriarch Michael Autorelanus; death of Theodore's son-in-law Constantine Paleologus.

## **Epirus**

**Spring** Michael Angelus Ducas overruns Thessaly, takes Larissa, and expels Latin clerics; Calospites becomes Greek Bishop of Larissa, Arsenius restored to Demetrias.

## **Georgia**

Death of Queen Tamara, one of greatest rulers; succeeded by son George IV 'the Resplendent'.

## **Nicaea**

After death of his Empress Anne Angelina, Theodore marries Leo of Armenia's niece Philippa.

## **Palestine**

Death of Queen Maria of 'Jerusalem' giving birth to daughter Isabella; husband John of Brienne becomes regent.

## **Latin Empire**

Henry marries Boril's daughter, and they campaign together against Stephen II of Serbia but are defeated near Nis/Naissus.

## **1213 Syria**

Bohemund IV's son and heir Raymond murdered by 'Assassins'.

## Nicaea

Marco Sanudo of Naxos captures Smyrna, but is defeated and captured by Theodore.

? Death of Alexius III in monastery, aged around 70.

## 1214 Latin Empire

Innocent's legate Cardinal Pelagius arrives to enforce orders requiring all remaining Greek clerics in Constantinople to accept Latin rite and Patriarch and Union of Churches; they refuse so he closes their churches and starts imprisoning them, and a delegation tells Henry that they will resist as their souls will not be ruled as well as their bodies, he reopens Greek churches, gaining gratitude, and Pelagius leaves resentfully.

## Nicaea

**26 August** Death of Patriarch Michael.

**28 September** Theodore II Eirenicus becomes Patriarch.

## Trebizond

Seljuk forces defeat and ?kill David Comnenus, who if not killed soon dies ?**December**, and annex his lands around Sinope.

## Epirus

? Michael Angelus Ducas conquers Corfu; Basil Pesarites governor.

## Nicaea

**December** Pelagius' representatives go to Synod at Heraclea for discussions on Greek/Latin union with Nicene clerics; talks fail but Henry's accompanying envoys sign treaty with Theodore confirming frontier.

**1214? Epirus/Nicaea**

Michael Angelus Ducas murdered by a servant; young son Michael is set aside and brother Theodore Angelus Ducas succeeds as 'Despot'.

**1215 Epirus/Nicaea**

Nicaean bishops recognize the Angeli dynasty's lands' synod as legitimate and send legate to accept the bishops appointed in Epirus, but insist that their Patriarchate adjudicate clerical law cases in future.

Death of Demetrius, 'Prince of the Albanians', independent Albanian Lord of Kroia in North Epirus; succeeded by his widow, daughter of Stephen II of Serbia.

? Theodore Lascaris' widowed niece Irene marries John Vatatzes, aged 25, rising young noble in exile from Didymoteichon (?son of Basil Vatatzes, the general killed in 1194).

**1216 Epirus**

Theodore Angelus Ducas takes Ochrid and Prilep to extend dominions to Pelagonia; his brother Constantine controversially loots Church plate from Ochrid cathedral; Stephen of Serbia allies to Theodore.

**Latin Empire**

Gervasius returns to Constantinople as Papally-accepted, non-Venetian Patriarch.

Death of Ravano della Carceri of Euboea; six Lombard families divide island.

**Nicaea**

**31 January** Death of Patriarch Theodore II, while Theodore Lascaris is on campaign in Anatolia; Theodore obtains synod's permission to nominate a successor while he is not in capital with them and **June** chooses Maximus.

## Italy

**16 July** Death of Pope Innocent III at Perugia; **18 July** Cardinal Cencio Savelli elected (Honorius III) and plans 'Fifth Crusade'.

## Syria

Leo of Armenia smuggles men into Antioch and instals Bohemund's nephew, Raymond-Rupen, as Prince; Sultan Kaykavus launches Seljuk attack on Armenia.

## Latin Empire

Henry arrives at Thessalonica to support King Demetrius' regents against Theodore Angelus Ducas' advance; he dies **11 June** and Conan of Béthune proclaimed Regent and 'Sebastocrator' until new emperor elected; barons choose Henry's sister Yolande's husband Peter de Courtenay, cousin of Philip II Augustus of France, and send emissaries to him.

## Nicaea

**December** Manuel Santanarenus succeeds Maximus as Patriarch.

## 1217 Latin Empire

Berthold, regent of Thessalonica, and other nobles leave for the 'Fifth Crusade'.

## Epirus/Serbia

Church forbids Stephen II to marry Michael Angelus Ducas' daughter due to consanguinity so he marries 'Doge's' grand-daughter and obtains a Papal crown; the alliance causes his brother (St) Sava to leave for Mount Athos, where he settles at Serb-sponsored monastery of Chilandari.

Theodore Angelus Ducas appoints Demetrius Chomatianus as Archbishop of Ochrid.

## Latin Empire

? Patriarch Gervasius excommunicates De la Roche and Villehardouin for refusing to accept his authority over Athens and Morea.

**9 April** Pope Honorius crowns Peter of Courtenay at Church of St Lawrence in Rome; he agrees to Venetian proposal to besiege Dyrrachium for them and sails there with 6000 troops while pregnant Yolande sails direct to Constantinople; Peter has to abandon siege and marches over Pindus towards Thessalonica to be met by Theodore Angelus Ducas who pretends to pay submission and escorts his army but then attacks them, captures Peter and the leadership, and turns the soldiers loose after robbing them; Pope writes to surrounding rulers for help and to King Andrew of Hungary to divert Crusade against Theodore but no effect.

## Armenia

Sultan Kaikhusraw captures 'Constable' Constantine of Lampron, Leo's powerful cousin, as he tries to relieve Seljuk siege of Gaban in Taurus Mountains; Leo relieves siege and ransoms Constantine.

## Latin Empire

**Early Autumn?** Birth of Peter and Yolande's son Baldwin in Constantinople; Peter is probably murdered by Theodore Angelus Ducas and is certainly never heard of again.

## 1218 Bulgaria

End of civil war as John Asen takes Trnovo; Boril deposed and blinded, and John Asen 'King of Vlachs and Bulgarians'; he marries Andrew of Hungary's daughter Maria.

## Epirus

Theodore agrees to Papal request to release captive Cardinal Colonna and some other leaders of Peter's army and offers submission to Pope, who sends Bishop of Cotrone to him; **March** Honorius writes to Venice urging them to stop encouraging assembling Crusaders to attack Epirus.

**1219 Nicaea**

Theodore Lascaris divorces Philippa of Armenia; **early** he signs treaty with Yolande, who now becomes Empress as Peter presumed dead, and marries her daughter Mary.

**Armenia**

**May?** Death of Leo of Armenia after 33-year reign, nominating his daughter Isabella as heir; his disappointed great-nephew Raymond-Rupen of Antioch contests it.

**Nicaea**

**August** Venetian 'Podesta' Jacopo Tiepolo negotiates commercial treaty with Theodore; Venetians freed from customs-dues.

**Autumn** Theodore fails to convene meeting of Eastern Patriarchs to consider approach to Rome.

**Latin Empire**

**Autumn?** Death of Yolande; Conan of Béthune and legate Colonna regents until eldest son Robert of Courtenay arrives from France.

**12 November** Death of Patriarch Gervasius.

**Serbia/Nicaea**

Patriarch Manuel of Nicaea ordains Sava as Archbishop of Serbia at Nicaea in presence of Theodore Lascaris; he returns to Serbia to lead the Church away from Latin influence.

**Epirus**

**October** Synod at Arta; George Bardanes, ex-'Chartophylax' to Bishop Michael Choniates at Athens, elected Bishop of Corfu.



## 1220 **Nicaea**

Patriarch Manuel sends letters to Eastern Orthodox Patriarchs for a Council to send message on reunion to Pope; no success.

## **Epirus**

Constantine Angelus Ducas, Theodore's younger brother and 'Despot' of Naupactus, exiles his enemy Bishop Apocaucus and seizes his property; Apocaucus' campaign for reinstatement leads to Archbishop Chomatianus calling a synod and obtaining his return.

Theodore Angelus Ducas excommunicated as Pope Honorius takes Thessalonica under his protection and tells Archbishop of Brindisi to impose trade-ban.

## **Syria/Armenia**

Bohemund IV recaptures Antioch from Raymond-Rupen while his invasion of Armenia is underway; Queen Isabella of Armenia's regent Adam of Baghras murdered by Assassins and Constantine of Lampron takes over leadership to besiege Raymond-Rupen's acquisition, Tarsus.

## **Turkish Sultanate**

**Late** Death of Sultan Kaykavus, succeeded by brother Ala-ed-Din Kaiqobad.

## **Latin Empire**

**Late** Robert of Courtenay arrives in Constantinople via Hungary and Bulgaria to take up crown.

## 1221 **Armenia/Syria**

**Early** Constantine takes Tarsus and imprisons Raymond-Rupen, whose family flee to Cyprus.

## Latin Empire

Matthew elected Patriarch of Constantinople and **25 March** crowns Robert; treaty with Nicaea renewed and Theodore Lascaris proposes his daughter Eudocia as Robert's bride.

## Epirus/Thessalonica

Demetrius of Thessalonica leaves for West to seek aid, leaving Empress Margaret as regent; **late** Theodore Angelus Ducas takes Serres to surround Thessalonica by land, Alexius Slav, independent Lord of Rhodope Mountains, allies to Theodore and marries his wife Maria Petralipha's niece.

## Turkish Sultanate

Kaiqobad takes independent Greek city of Kalonoros on the South coast of Anatolia, whose ruler becomes his governor of Philomelium (Akshehir); Kalonoros renamed 'Ala'iyya' after Sultan.

1222

## Armenia

Alarmed at Kaiqobad's power, regent Constantine arranges Isabella's marriage to Bohemund IV's younger son Philip of Antioch; Bohemund defies Papal legate Pelagius and agrees, and Philip becomes co-ruler of Armenia but is soon unpopular for absenteeism.

## Trebizond

**February** Death of Alexius I, aged around 40; son-in-law Andronicus Gidus succeeds as sons John and Manuel are too young to rule.

(or late  
1221)

## Nicaea

**January?** Death of Theodore Lascaris, aged around 47; his c. 8-year-old son by Philippa of Armenia, Constantine, is disinherited and daughter Irene's husband John Vatatzes takes throne, but Theodore's discontented younger brothers Isaac and Alexius defect to Constantinople, taking Theodore's daughter Eudocia to marry her to Robert.

**September** Death of Patriarch Manuel.

## **Georgia**

Subotai's Mongol horde passes through East Georgia and over 'Caspian Gates' into the Kipchak steppes en route to raid Russia.

## **1223 Thessalonica/Epirus**

**Early** Margaret leaves Thessalonica for Hungary, leaving Guy Pallavicino as regent; Theodore Angelus Ducas starts siege as Pope tries to raise money and volunteers to rescue the city as 'Crusade'.

## **Nicaea**

**4 January** Germanus enthroned as Patriarch.

## **Latin Empire**

Princess Eudocia of Nicaea marries not Robert but his leading baron, Anseau of Cahieu.

## **Georgia**

Death of George IV, succeeded by sister Roussadan, who marries a son of Seljuk Prince Mughith-al-Din of Erzerum.

## **Russia**

**31 May** Mongol expedition routs army of the main Russian princes at the river Kalka near the Sea of Azov.

## **1224 Latin Empire/Nicaea/Epirus**

**March** Papal legate assembles 'Crusade' to relieve Thessalonica at Brindisi. **April** Robert sends Thierry of Walincourt and Nicholas of Mainvault into Thrace to aid Thessalonica; a second army assists Isaac and Alexius Lascaris to invade Bithynia, but John III routs them and captures his uncles-in-law at Poemamenum; John retakes the entire Troad as far as the Hellespont and

? crosses into Europe to secure Gallipoli; collapse of Latin dominions East of Propontis.

Thierry and Nicholas retreat on hearing of the disaster, and Epirots pursue them across Thrace and break up their army.

'Crusade' halted at Brindisi, with Demetrius' half-brother William of Montferrat, leader, ill.

**December** Biandrate and Guy Pallavicini surrender Thessalonica to Theodore Angelus Ducas, Byzantine rule restored to second city of Empire and exiled Archbishop Constantine Mesopotamites, Alexius III's nominee, returns.

## Armenia

**Late** Constantine of Lampron arrests Philip of Antioch and seizes full power, reassured by Seljuk preoccupation that he does not need alliance with Antioch.

## 1225 Armenia

**Early** Constantine poisons Philip; Queen Isabella flees to Hospitaller castle.

## Epirus

**Early** Archbishop Constantine, friendly with Nicaea, refuses to crown Theodore Angelus Ducas as 'Emperor'; Apocaucus of Naupactus also refuses but is pressurized to hold a synod which authorises Archbishop Chomatianus of Ochrid to perform coronation as Theodore strongest champion of Orthodoxy and Ochrid the heir to local see of 'Nea Justiniana', Justinian's Metropolitanate of Balkans; Chomatianus crowns Theodore at Thessalonica while Apocaucus absents himself alleging illness; Theodore sets up imperial court in new capital.

**March** 'Crusade' crosses from Brindisi to Greece, and sails round to Halmyros in Thessaly where William of Montferrat and many others die in epidemic so campaign abandoned.

## Armenia

Constantine besieges Isabella at Hospitaller castle, at port of Seleucia, and forces her surrender; Bohemund IV appeals to Sultan Kaiqobad to force

Philip's release and he invades Cilicia, but Constantine pretends Philip is still alive to have campaign halted; he persuades Bohemund to come to Cilicia to receive Philip, and at his behest Toghril, regent of Aleppo, attacks Antioch to force Bohemund to return home; Constantine marries Isabella to his son Hethoum and makes the latter King as his puppet.

## **Georgia**

Jelal-al-Din, the Shah of Khwarezm (NW Turkestan), in flight from Mongols and based at Tabriz carving out a new realm, invades Georgia and defeats Roussadan at Garni; he sacks Tbilisi/Tiflis and annexes the Kur Valley, driving Georgians West; Kutaisi new capital.

Death of Mughith-al-Din Tughril Shah of Erzerum, Roussadan's Seljuk father-in-law.

## **Epirus/Nicaea**

Theodore Angelus Ducas takes Kavalla, Xanthi, and Mosynopolis to overrun East Thrace, but Adrianople citizens turn to John Vatatzes who installs a garrison under Camytzes; Theodore camps outside city and sends messages that he is a stronger protector, and Nicaeans are allowed to leave unharmed.

Robert signs treaty with John Vatatzes recognizing loss of all Asia except Chalcedon; encamped at Lampsacus, John calls off Thracian campaign on revolt of cousin Andronicus Nestongus which he suppresses.

Theodore's brother Manuel marries John Asen's daughter Maria in Epirot/Bulgarian treaty recognizing his conquests; he advances to Bizye and approaches the walls of Constantinople where Anseau of Cahieu injured in skirmish.

## **Athens**

Otto de la Roche returns to Burgundy; succeeded by nephew Guy.

## **1226 Latin Empire**

Death of Patriarch Matthew; ?Robert of Courtenay abducts a girl from her fiancé, Burgundian knight, and the latter and some friends attack the Palace

to mutilate her; baronial opinion supports them so Robert leaves for the West in disgust.

## Trebizond

?Andronicus Gidus annexes Samsun from the Seljuks with Jelal-al-Din's support.

## 1227 Italy

**18 March** Death of Pope Honorius III; **19 March** Innocent III's nephew Igelino of Segni elected (Gregory IX).

## Latin Empire

Death of Venetian ruler of Naxos and the Cyclades, Marco Sanudo; succeeded by son Angelo.

## 1228 Latin Empire

**Early** Robert of Courtenay, told to return to Empire by Pope, sets out but dies in the Peloponnese; brother Baldwin succeeds aged 10/11, and John Asen of Bulgaria suggests that he receive regency and his daughter Helen marries Baldwin but 'bailli' Nogent of Toucy's Council in Constantinople insist a Frank must be Regent.

## Turkish Sultanate/Trebizond

Kaiqobad deposes Seljuk prince Da'ud Shah of Erzinjan and the Manjutakid ruler of Colonea (Kughuniya) to annex North-East Anatolia; he invades Trebizond, retaking Samsun, and his second army from Erzinjan besieges Trebizond but has to retreat after heavy rain causes flooding in camp; a Seljuk prince is captured during retreat, but Andronicus has to accept vassalage and pay tribute to secure peace.

## Latin Empire

**11 December** Narjot of Toucy signs one-year truce with Theodore.

## **Serbia**

Death of Stephen II, 'the First-Crowned'; succeeded by son Stephen Radoslav.

## **1229 Italy/Epirus**

**Early** Jacopo Tiepolo, ex- 'Podesta' at Constantinople, elected 'Doge' of Venice.

**Spring** At Perugia, Pope Gregory announces that John of Brienne, former King of 'Jerusalem' and regent there until daughter Isabella married Emperor Frederick II, is his choice of regent for Baldwin at Constantinople with his daughter Mary marrying Baldwin.

**Autumn** Theodore Angelus Ducas sends force to Italy to assist Frederick's Sicilian armies in campaign against John of Brienne in Campania.

## **Latin Empire**

Simon of Perugia becomes Patriarch. Revolt of Greek inhabitants in Crete.

## **1230 Epirus/Bulgaria**

Theodore decides to attack Bulgaria before Constantinople and **March?** invades Maritsa valley; John Asen hires Cumans and **April** defeats and captures him at Klokotnitsa on the road to Philippopolis; Theodore's brother Manuel escapes to Thessalonica and takes the throne, but Epirot power in Thrace collapses and John Asen overruns it, proceeding as far South-West as Prilep and Ochrid; Manuel, as John Asen's son-in law, allowed to keep Thessalonica as ally but Theodore is blinded and John Asen overruns North Epirus and Albania as far as Dyrrachium.

Epirots retain Corfu; Constantine Angelus Ducas retains South Epirus, based at Arta.

John Asen founds 'Church of Forty Martyrs' in Trnovo to celebrate victory.

## **Nicaea**

Vatatzes sends aid to rebels in Crete.

?Vatatzes campaigns in Maeander valley to drive raiding Turks out and restores fortress of Tripolis.

## 1231 Epirus

(probable date) Manuel Angelus Ducas sends to Morea to recall Michael's son Michael Ducas, in exile since 1215 and now adult; Michael goes to Arta, where Constantine surrenders Despotate, and marries his own cousin Theodora Petralipha (of Norman/Byzantine landed family in Greece descended from Bohemund's lieutenant Peter d'Aulps).

## Latin Empire

**May** John of Brienne arrives in Constantinople and is crowned co-emperor; Baldwin marries his daughter Mary.

## Turkish Sultanate

**29 July–1 August** Defeat of Jelal-al-Din of Khwarezm, in flight from Chormaqan's Mongol invaders of Azerbaijan, by Sultan Kaiqobad and a coalition of vassals (including Trebizond troops) in battle West of Erzinjan; his empire collapses, he is murdered **15 August** in flight, and Kaiqobad retakes Manzikert and Erzerum to secure power in old Armenian lands; he takes Georgian frontier fortresses to pressurize Roussadan into alliance, and her daughter marries his son Kaikhusraw.

## 1232 Latin Empire

**Early** Death of Patriarch Simon of Constantinople; succeeded by Papally Nicholas della Porta, Bishop of Spoleto.

## Epirus/Nicaea

**6 March** Nicaean synod sends Christopher, Bishop of Ancyra, as legate and 'Exarch' to Epirus to negotiate reunion at request of Bishop Bardanes of Corfu and Manuel Angelus Ducas; at Thessalonica Bardanes leads synod to accept Nicaean authority, but Archbishop Chomatianus of Ochrid refuses.



Patriarch Germanus sends letter with 5 returning pilgrim friars to Pope about reunion criticizing Catholic cruelty.

## 1233 **Syria**

**March** Death of Bohemund IV of Antioch, succeeded by son Bohemund V.

### **Turkish Sultanate**

Sultan Kaiqobad defeats attack by Ayyubid Sultan Al-Kamil of Egypt, Al-Adil's son and successor.

### **Nicaea**

Revolt of governor, 'Caesar' John Gabalas, of Rhodes against Vatatzes; surrenders after siege by Nicaean commander Andronicus Paleologus.

John of Brienne invades the Troad while Vatatzes is preoccupied with Rhodes, but is blockaded for 4 months at Cenchrae by Vatatzes and retires to Constantinople.

### **Serbia**

John Asen assists in deposition of King Stephen Radoslav by his brother Vladislav; the brothers' uncle Archbishop (St) Sava retires to go on pilgrimage to Palestine and Mount Sinai.

## 1234 **Syria**

Pope offers Greek Patriarch Simeon of Antioch autonomous Church if he submits to Rome, but he refuses and goes to Nicaea for Church Council.

### **Nicaea**

Pope sends two Franciscan and two Dominican friars via Constantinople to discuss Church reunion before John Vatatzes' imminent 'General

Council' of Eastern Churches; unleavened bread, 'filioque' clause in creed, etc. are discussed and John asks if Pope would restore Nicaea's 'rights' as Patriarch of Constantinople if he reconciles Church to Papal authority and is told Pope would be 'very well disposed'; the friars return to Constantinople but as city is depopulated and impoverished and government fearful of Nicaea they agree to take John of Brienne's appeal for 1-year truce back to Nicaea to attend Church Council.

'Council of Nymphaeum', at Vatatzes' favourite palace near Smyrna; Greek clerics go on about 1204 and ignore friars' reminder that Crusaders were excommunicated at the time, and friars do not reply to Vatatzes' appeal to drop 'filioque' in return for use of unleavened bread; the friars leave Council early.

Calothenus leads Nicaean army to Crete in failed attempt to evict Venetians.

Venice allies with rebel governor Gabalas of Rhodes against Nicaea.

## **Georgia**

Roussadan makes son David (V) co-ruler.

## **1235 Serbia**

**14 January** Death of St. Sava (at Trnovo, Bulgaria).

## **Hungary**

Death of Andrew II; succeeded by son Béla IV, who is married to Theodore Lascaris' daughter Mary (many of the royal houses of Europe can claim Angelid and Comnene descent from this union).

## **Nicaea/Latin Empire**

John Vatatzes and John Asen ally; Vatatzes storms Venetian base at Gallipoli and advances through Thrace to take Philippopolis from Latins.

Synod held at Gallipoli with Vatatzes and John Asen present; Archbishop Patrenus of Thessalonica deposed in favour of Nicaean nominee Manuel Disypatus and Vatatzes accepts autonomy of Bulgarian Church from

Patriarchate of Nicaea – Bishop Joachim of Trnovo appointed first Patriarch of Bulgaria.

Vatatzes' 13-year-old son Theodore to marry John Asen's 10-year-old daughter Helen, and the latter is escorted to Lampsacus for the wedding which Patriarch Germanus performs.

Nicaean and Bulgarian forces attack Constantinople by land and Nicaean fleet by sea, but John of Brienne and 160 knights hold the land-walls effectively and Italian ships defeat Nicaean blockade to land men and supplies; siege abandoned but Vatatzes keeps East Thrace.

### **Trebizond**

Death of Andronicus I Gidus (buried at his foundation, Church of the Virgin 'Chrysocephalus', 'Golden-Haired'); succeeded by Alexius I's elder son John Comnenus, who is now around 25.

## **1236 Georgia**

Chormaqan's Mongol army overruns the Kur valley, and Roussadan flees Tbilisi/Tiflis to Kutaisi again.

### **Latin Empire/Nicaea**

Vatatzes and John Asen blockade Constantinople again, but lack adequate siege-engines; Geoffrey II Villehardouin from the Morea leads Morean/Venetian reinforcements on Venetian ships to break blockade.

Considering an alliance with Papacy, John Asen orders Helen to return home from Nicaea in case he needs her to marry someone else.

Baldwin II goes to Rome to seek aid, leaving John of Brienne in charge; Pope Gregory tries to interest Béla IV of Hungary in attacking Bulgaria and reinforcing Constantinople.

### **Nicaea/Russia**

Nicaean Patriarchate takes on Constantinople's old role of selecting new Metropolitan of Kiev (Joseph).

## 1237 Latin Empire

**23 March** Death of John of Brienne, aged well over 80; Anseau of Cahieu Regent; Baldwin II does not bother to return and goes on to France to offer the ‘Crown of Thorns’ from Hagia Sophia, mortgaged to Venice for huge loan, to the pious King Louis IX and try to win his effective support.

### Thessalonica

During John Asen’s Papal negotiations, he releases Theodore Angelus Ducas to regain Thessalonica and prove an irritant to John Vatatzes; Theodore slips into city, contacts his friends, and organizes a coup to arrest Manuel and deport him to Attaleia; as Theodore is blind he installs his young and unworldly elder son John as ‘King’ with himself as chief minister, allied to Bulgaria.

### Seljuk Sultanate

**31 May** Death of Sultan Ala-ed-Din Kaiqobad; youngest son Izz-ed-Din succeeds according to his wishes, under chief minister Kopek; Izz-ed-Din’s older brother, Ghiyath-al-Din Kaikhusraw, persuades ministers to depose the new ruler and accept him instead; Kaikhusraw murders both his younger brothers and assorted generals to encourage obedience.

## Latin Empire

Cuman refugees from Mongols stream over Danube into Bulgaria, and as a horde approaches Constantinople Anseau of Cahieu hires them to make war on Nicaea; governor Tarchaneiotes is besieged in Tzurolon, and John Asen joins in but retires on death of his wife Anne of Hungary and marries Theodore Angelus Ducas’ daughter Irene.

### Nicaea

Manuel persuades Seljuks to let him leave Attaleia for Nicaea, and joins Vatatzes against his brother and nephew.

## **Serbia**

National shrine built at Milečeva for relics of St Sava; Béla of Hungary annexes Bosnia.

## **Russia**

Large Mongol army under Batu invades and devastates the North-Eastern principalities; **December** sack of Ryazan.

## **1238 Russia**

Mongol devastation continues; **7 February** Vladimir, capital of principality of Suzdal, sacked, followed by Moscow; **4 March** 'Grand Prince' Yuri killed in battle; the Mongols depart to set up encampments on the 'Kipchak' steppe in the Ukraine, evicting the Cumans and halting regular Byzantine-Russian contact; their 'Khanate of the Golden Horde' has remaining Russians as their vassals.

## **Latin Empire**

Baldwin II arrives from Flanders in England to seek aid from Henry III.

## **Nicaea/Bulgaria**

John Asen returns Helen to her father-in-law John Vatatzes' court and re-opens negotiations.

## **Trebizond**

John killed playing polo, aged around 28; his infant son Joannicus is set aside and put in monastery and John's brother Manuel succeeds.

## **1239 Thessalonica/Nicaea**

Manuel Angelus Ducas lands at Demetrias in Thessaly with Nicaean expedition; he is joined by local lord Constantine Melissenus and they gain

Pharsala and Larissa to overrun Thessaly; Theodore prepares campaign, but he and Manuel come to an agreement and join Melisenus for division of Thessaly; Manuel abandons oath to Vatatzes and Theodore sets himself up as lord of Vodena.

## **Latin Empire**

Baldwin's mercenary commander John of Béthune dies at Venice en route to Constantinople, but his forces are transported to the city in Venetian ships.

Baldwin mortgages County of Namur, his brother's legacy in Flanders, to Louis IX for 50,000 'livres' to fund his mercenaries and marches home across Hungary and Bulgaria with new army.

## **Nicaea**

Death of John Vatatzes' wife Irene Lascaris.

## **1240 Latin Empire/Nicaea**

Baldwin, his Western mercenaries, and Cumans retake Tzurolon and sell garrison as slaves; 34 Italian galleys in Baldwin's service defeat Vatatzes' fleet.

Death of Leo Gabalas, ruler of Rhodes; succeeded by brother John.

## **Turkish Sultanate/Georgia**

Kaikhusraw murders his chief minister Kopek and marries Roussadan's daughter; Roussadan arranges for her nephew David, potential rival to her son David V, to accompany bridal party to Iconium and for Kaikhusraw to detain him.

## **Nicaea**

**January** Death of Patriarch Germanus of Nicaea; he asks Vatatzes to accept the learned scholar, Nicephorus Blemmydes, Prince Theodore's ex-tutor now retired to monastery, as successor but Vatatzes appoints Methodius, Abbot of Hyacinthus Monastery; Methodius dies three months later.

## Russia

**6 December** Batu storms and sacks Kiev, which never recovers and ceases to be leading southern Russian principality.

## 1241 Nicaea

John Vatatzes settles 10,000 Cuman refugees in Anatolia.

## Thessaly

Death of Manuel Angelus Ducas; his lands go to his nephew, Michael II of Epirus. Theodore Angelus Ducas visits Nicaea and is detained.

## Bulgaria/Nicaea

Death of John Asen, greatest ruler of second Bulgarian empire; succeeded by 7-year-old son Kaliman, and Vatatzes makes truce with Baldwin II and prepares expedition to Thessalonica.

## Hungary

The country is invaded and ravaged by Batu's Mongols.

## Italy

**21 August** Death of Pope Gregory IX, during war with Emperor Frederick II; **25 October** Godfrey de Castiglione elected (Celestine II); **10 November** he dies and Frederick's hostility delays new election.

## Turkish Sultanate

Revolt of Turcoman tribesmen in East Anatolia against Seljuks, led by self-appointed 'prophet', 'Baba' Ishaq.

## Mongol Dominions

**11 December** Death of ‘Great Khan’ Ogodei and succeeding succession-dispute ends the Mongol threat to Europe as Batu returns from Hungary for the election.

### 1242 Nicaea/Thessalonica

**Spring** John Vatatzes’ large army crosses Hellespont under ‘Grand Domestic’ Andronicus Palaeologus and marches along Thracian coast with fleet parallel at sea; Cuman mercenaries join them, and Theodore Angelus Ducas accompanies the army as honourable hostage; Vatatzes leads advance on Thessalonica, but as siege starts Vatatzes hears that Mongol horde under Baichu are in Armenia heading for Seljuk lands and decides he has to return home quickly; siege continues until Theodore persuades John to surrender on terms; **November** John is required to abdicate as ‘King’ but allowed to stay as ‘Despot’ under Nicaean suzerainty; Theodore allowed to stay as John’s chief minister as Vatatzes returns home.

Vatatzes rejects Nicaean synod’s choice of Patriarch Nicephorus, bishop of Epirus, as too zealous.

### Turkish Sultanate

Besieging Ayyubid prince Al-Ghazi in Mayyafariqin, Kaikhusraw hears of Mongol advance West and sends to Nicaea, Trebizond, Armenia and other allies for aid.

### 1243 Turkish Sultanate

**Early** Baichu besieges Erzerum and takes it by treachery; Trebizond, Antioch, and ?Nicaea send troops but Hethoum of Armenia delays thinking that Mongols likely to win; Kaikhusraw advances to the plain of Erzinçan to await Mongols and **26 June** at battle of ‘Köse Dagh’ Baichu lures Seljuks by feigned retreat, surrounds them in pass, and counter-attacks to destroy army; Kaikhusraw flees, collects treasure at Tokat, and retires to Ancyra as Mongols storm Sebastea/Sivas and Caesarea/Kayseri; ‘Vizier’ Muhadhab-ad-Din goes to Mongol camp to negotiate surrender and save Iconium and is sent to Persia to submit to senior commander Chormaqan; Seljuks to pay



tribute as Mongol vassals, and Muḥabhab-ad-Din issued with formal charter ('Yarliq') which Kaikhusraw has to confirm, and Mongols leave Sultanate after plundering but maintain supervisory presence in Azerbaijan.

## **Georgia**

Roussadan submits to Mongols; her son David V recognized as heir.

## **Italy**

**26 June** Sinibaldo Fieschi elected Pope (Innocent IV).

## **Nicaea**

**August** Vatatzes nominates Manuel (II) as Patriarch.

**Autumn** Kaikhusraw meets Vatatzes on the river Maeander to confirm alliance and fixed frontier.

## **1244 Latin Empire**

Baldwin II visits Italy to seek more aid, tries to mediate between Frederick and Innocent, and persuades Frederick to write to Vatatzes on his behalf backing a 1-year truce.

## **Nicaea**

Treaty between John Vatatzes and Frederick follows the latter's approach on Baldwin's behalf; Frederick sends illegitimate daughter Constance to marry Vatatzes, but she is probably only in teens and after the wedding (at Prusa) Vatatzes soon takes her lady-in-waiting, 'Marchioness' Della Fricca, as his mistress despite scandal.

## **Thessalonica**

Death of John Angelus Ducas, probably in late 20s; his father Theodore installs John's debauchee brother Demetrius as successor.

## 1245 Latin Empire

**June** Baldwin II arrives at Church Council of Lyons to attempt to gain aid; enthroned at Pope Innocent's right hand, and Latin Patriarch Nicholas preaches about Greek aggression; Innocent tells Council that schism and Greek attacks are among his great sorrows and orders a tenth of his income and a tenth of income from vacant sees to support Baldwin.

### Georgia

Death of Roussadan; succeeded by son David V 'Narin' ('The Clever').

## 1246 Turkish Sultanate

**Early?** (or late 1245) Death of Sultan Kaikhusraw, nominating his 7-year-old youngest son Ala-ed-Din Kaiqobad as heir; ministers resist this and associate the Sultan's older sons, 11-year-old Izz-ed-Din (son of Greek priest's daughter) and 9-year-old Rukn-al-Din Kilij Arslan, with him as nominal rulers; Izz-ed-Din subsequently accepted as senior ruler.

### Epirus

**Spring** Michael II of Epirus retakes Gulf of Pagasae ports, Thessaly, from Venice; **early summer?** he invades central Greece but is held up at fortress of Lamia by Marquis Pallavicini; Guy de la Roche and Morean troops come to rescue and defeat Michael.

### Morea

Death of Geoffrey II of Villehardouin, succeeded by his younger brother William who with Venetian help besieges independent Greek fortress of Monemvasia.

### Nicaea/Thessalonica/Bulgaria

**Summer** Vatatzes tours his 1242 acquisitions in Macedonia; **September** Kaliman of Bulgaria dies, succeeded by half-brother Michael Asen under regency of latter's mother, Theodore Angelus Ducas' daughter, Irene.

Vatatzes launches campaign with Andronicus Palaeologus and takes Bulgarian-held Serres; they overrun all Eastern Macedonia, from Melnik to Velbuzd on the Strymon and up the Maritza to Stenimachus, and Vatatzes then goes West to take Prilep and Pelagonia; **November?** Michael Asen recognises Nicaean conquests; at Melnik Vatatzes hears of a Thessalonican conspiracy against 'Despot' Demetrius, and conspirator Campanus arrives to negotiate a 'Chrysobull' confirming all Thessalonica's rights and privileges in return for surrender.

Campanus returns to Thessalonica to be arrested but Demetrius is reassured as secret co-conspirator Spartenus 'interrogates' him with pretended beating and assures he is innocent; **late November** Vatatzes besieges Thessalonica; Demetrius rejects ultimatum but sea-gate is opened from inside during skirmish and Nicaeans enter; Irene, Demetrius' sister and Queen-Mother of Bulgaria, kneels in road in front of Vatatzes' chariot to plead for brother; Vatatzes persuades Demetrius to surrender citadel and deports him to Bithynia.

Andronicus Palaeologus governs Thessalonica; Michael Palaeologus, his 22-year-old son by Alexius III's grand-daughter, governs Serres.

## 1247 **Nicaea**

Deaths of Andronicus Palaeologus and Vatatzes' 'Great Logothete' (treasurer) Demetrius Tornicius.

## 1248 **Nicaea**

? Nicephorus Blemmydes in disgrace with Vatatzes for refusing to allow his mistress the 'Marchioness' into his church at Nymphaeum, and leaves court.

## **Turkish Sultanate**

? Rukn-al-Din Kilij Arslan visits overlord, Mongol 'Khan of Golden Horde' Batu, in person to do homage and secures charter making him sole sultan.

## **Morea**

Monemvasia submits to William of Villehardouin and allowed autonomy.

## Latin Empire

**Autumn** Baldwin II returns to Constantinople, but sends wife Maria of Brienne West to mortgage his lands there; he has to send his young son Philip to Venice as surety that he will pay his debts there.

## 1249 Turkish Sultanate

Rukn-al-Din arrives home with his Mongol charter and rallies opposition to his brothers, aided by Mongol troops; Izz-ed-Din's minister Karatay murders the obstinate 'Vizier' Shams-al-Din Isfahani to negotiate surrender and halt Mongol ravaging and negotiations follow over division of sultanate among the brothers.

## Nicaea

**May** Pope sends John of Parma, minister-general of Franciscans, to negotiate with Vatatzes on report from his sister-in-law Mary of Hungary that he could accept Church reunion.

## Morea

**May** William of Villehardouin joins Louis IX's 'Crusade' to Egypt.

## Latin Empire

**June** Baldwin II visits Louis IX at Damietta in Egypt.

## Nicaea/Epirus

Vatatzes campaigns in Thrace; his late wife's sister Eudocia Lascaris surrenders Tzurolon; fall of Bizye; with Constantinople surrounded again Vatatzes meets John Gabalas of Rhodes about Rhodian naval aid for siege but in Gabalas' absence Genoese and Achaian adventurers seize Rhodes city; Vatatzes sends John Cantacuzene to besiege Rhodes, and on eventual surrender he annexes the island.

**Summer** Vatatzes proposes that his son Theodore's eldest daughter Maria marry Michael II's son Nicephorus; Michael hesitant, but wife Theodora insists and takes Nicephorus to Pegae, Bithynia, for betrothal.

Vatatzes receives John of Parma, who has authorized to agree to a 'General Council' in the East if Nicaeans accept 'filioque'; envoys sent to Pope in return.

## **Turkish Sultanate**

Izz-ed-Din and Rukn-al-Din meet at Aksaray to negotiate, but emirs start a skirmish and Rukn-al-Din flees; he is deposed and ex-Greek freedman 'Atabeg' Karatay secures Izz-ed-Din's sole rule.

## **1250 Georgia**

David (VI) son of late King George IV, secures Mongol agreement to divide Georgia – he obtains East Georgia, based at Kutaisi, and cousin David V restricted to West Georgia (Imeretia).

## **Epirus**

At instigation of his uncle Theodore Angelus Ducas, Michael II breaks off Nicephorus' engagement to Maria Vatatzes Lascaris and plans war.

## **Italy**

**13 December** Death of Emperor Frederick II; succeeded by son Conrad in Southern Italy and Sicily.

## **Nicaea**

**25 December** Birth of John Vatatzes' grandson John (IV).

## **1251 Epirus**

Michael II attacks Thessalonica by surprise but is driven off.

**1252 Nicaea/Epirus**

Michael II advances to Prilep and the river Vardar as John Vatatzes arrives at Serres en route to Thessalonica; Vatatzes reaches Thessalonica, Michael retreats and Theodore joins his nephew to retire into Epirus; Vatatzes reaches Lake Ochrid as only Castoria and Prespa hold out; Vatatzes reduces Theodore's headquarters, Vodena, while Michael Palaeologus persuades rebel Melnik to surrender; **November** governor Theodore Petraliphas surrenders Castoria after some Nicaean anxiety over extended supply-route in bad weather and John advances up the River Devol.

**1253 Nicaea/Epirus**

Michael II's ally Golem, the Albanian Lord of Kroia, and other Albanian lords surrender to Vatatzes; **March?** Constantine Melissenus of Thessaly and Bishop John Xerus of Naupachus arrive from Michael to negotiate truce, and Prilep and Veles surrender.

Vatatzes' envoy George Acropolites delivers treaty to Michael II to sign confirming new frontier, and Theodore Angelus Ducas is handed over and deported to Anatolia where he soon dies (probably aged over 80).

**Latin Empire**

**February** Pope appoints his chaplain Pantaleone Giustiniani, son of Philip Giustiniani the Venetian Lord of Ceos and Seriphos, Patriarch.

**Trebizond**

Manuel sends envoys to Louis IX at Sidon for marriage-alliance; Louis replies that he should support Baldwin against Nicaea.

**Nicaea**

Vatatzes, returning to Anatolia, hears at Philippi of an accusation of treason against Michael Palaeologus by a citizen of Melnik alleging he wanted to ally with Michael II; it is proposed that Paleologus undergo ordeal by red-hot iron but he tells Bishop Phocas of Philadelphia that it is a 'barbarian' practice and he is acquitted; Palaeologus accompanies court to Nicaea

and secures the hand of Vatatzes' great-niece Theodora and the new appointment of 'Megas Constabulus' ('Great Constable'), commander of Latin mercenaries.

## 1254 **Italy**

**May** Death of Conrad; Papacy reclaims rule of Southern Italy and Sicily.

### **Nicaea**

Nicaean embassy to Rome – Vatatzes offers to accept Papal rulings on theology and convene Eastern Church Council on 'filioque' if Pope recognises Patriarchate of Nicaea not that of Constantinople and returns capital to rightful owners.

Innocent replies that he cannot summon Baldwin to judgement but if Greek Church submits he will use his 'good offices' on theological dispute and accept Patriarchate of Nicaea to rule both Greek and Latin churches in Constantinople if recaptured.

### **Trebizond**

**June** Manuel Comnenus reconquers Sinope from the Turks.

### **Nicaea**

**September?** Death of Patriarch Manuel; John Vatatzes has a serious epileptic fit and journeys from Nicaea to Nymphaeum as son Theodore is at Philadelphia negotiating with Seljuks; **3 November** John dies at Nymphaeum, aged probably 62/63.

Theodore II succeeds, aged 32, and uses surname 'Lascaris' not Vatatzes as he stresses his descent through mother from Imperial line in Constantinople; a serious epileptic and talented but unstable.

Theodore holds Council at Nicaea to elect Patriarch, and as his old tutor Blemmydes refuses the monk Arsenius Autoreianus is elected; **25 December** Theodore crowned at Nicaea, and his chief minister is low-born boyhood friend George Muzalon, new 'Grand Domestic', amidst jealousy of nobles; Theodore's uncles Manuel and Michael Lascaris restored to favour.

## Italy

**7 December** Death of Innocent IV; **12 December** Rinaldo Conti elected (Alexander IV). Kingdom of Southern Italy and Sicily seized in revolt by Frederick II's illegitimate son Manfred.

## 1255 Bulgaria/Nicaea

**January** Michael Asen, having secured Serbian alliance, crosses River Vardar and invades Macedonia as Byzantine commander (? of Serres), Dragotas, revolts against rule of Theodore's general Alexius Strategopulus and financial/military controller of Thrace, 'Primicerius' Constantine Tornces; Theodore accepts Muzalon's advice to go to Thrace and leaves him and new 'Grand Domestic' Michael Palaeologus in command at Nicaea; he advances quickly, **February** crosses Rhodope Mountains, defeats and kills Dragotas, and dismisses Tomices for 'cowardice' in not leaving Serres to join him due to fear of Bulgarian besiegers.

Theodore nearly returns to Anatolia on false report of Mongol attack on Seljuks, but marches on to Vodena and takes Prilep and Veles from resurgent Michael II; **Autumn** snow forces abandonment of campaign to retake Tzapaena in mountains from Bulgaria and Theodore returns to Lampsacus for Christmas.

Theodore dismisses his 'protovestiarus' Alexius Raoul and imprisons his sons John, Manuel, and Isaac; Manuel Lascaris becomes governor of Didymoteichon.

## Morea

War between William of Villehardouin and the 'trierarchs', lords of Euboea, over his claim to lands owing to late wife Caterina della Carceri; Guy de la Roche and the Lords of Salona and Boudounitsa join his enemies.

## 1256 Nicaea/Epirus

Papal envoy Constantine, Bishop of Orvieto, sent to Nicaea.

**Early** Theodore II changes offices and titles of his ministers at Nymphaeum, making great-uncle Manuel Lascaris 'Protosebastus' and George Muzalon



'Protosebastus' and 'Provestiarius'; George's brother Andronicus made 'Grand Domestic' (commander-in-chief).

Michael II of Epirus' wife Theodora secretly leaves Arta with their son Nicephorus to renew Nicaean alliance in defiance of him; **September** they arrive at Theodore's camp in Thrace on River Maritsa, and the party goes to Thessalonica for Nicephorus' marriage to Theodore's daughter Maria.

Theodore demands key Epirot fortresses of Servia and Dyrrachium, and Theodora has to agree; **October** Patriarch Arsenius carries out wedding and Michael II has to endorse the agreement and surrender fortresses. In Theodore's absence in Greece, Michael Palaeologus, fearing arrest, flees over the River Sangarius to Seljuk territory and joins Sultan Izz-ed-Din who is facing Mongol attack; Theodore is reassured at Michael's intercepted letters sent to friends saying he defected for personal reasons not out of plot.

**Late** Michael Palaeologus participates in Izz-ed-Din's defeat by Mongol invaders under Baiju at Akseray, then flees to join Turcomans at Kastamonu; Izz-ed-Din's brother Rukn-al-Din arrives at Mongol 'Ilkhan' Hulagu's camp in Persia to submit and is recognised as Sultan and sent to join the invaders in his brother's lands; as Izz-ed-Din hides with Turcomans at Ladiq/Laodicea Baiju installs his brother in Konya/Iconium with viceroy ('pervane') Muin-al-Din Sulaiman.

## 1257 **Nicaea/Epirus**

George Akropolites, Theodore's governor of Macedonia and Albania lands, takes possession of Dyrrachium **January** but faces revolt by Albanians, inspired by Michael II, and capture of governor Constantine Chabaron of Elbasan by rebels.

Akropolites recaptures Elbasan.

**Spring?** Izz-ed-Din surrenders Ladiq to Theodore II, in return for aid, and they meet at Sardes to agree alliance; Izz-ed-Din secures Michael Palaeologus' pardon.

Baiju returns to Persia, and **May** while Rukn-al-Din and Sulaiman are campaigning in North-east Izz-ed-Din is restored to Konya by Nicaean troops; Turcomans and Kurds also revolt against Mongol rule.

Michael II advances to Castoria and Berroelia against Theodore's great-uncle Michael Lascaris, commander at Thessalonica; **Summer** Theodore sends Palaeologus to aid Lascaris, and they hold line of river Vardar while Stephen of Servia attacks Prilep.

Palaeologus and Lascaris relieve Prilep, and Palaeologus defeats Epirots and kills Michael II's son Theodore at Vodena; **October** after Nicaeans' departure Epirots return to retake Prilep and deport Akropolites to Arta.

Manfred of Naples sends fleet to conquer North Epirot coast, and Nicaeans surrender Dyrrachium and Avlona.

Theodore sends Bishop of Orvieto home with no advance in talks.

## **Bulgaria**

Michael Asen murdered in Trnovo by conspirators, led by cousin Kaliman (II) who seizes throne and marries widow; the latter's father, Serb prince Rostislav, invades to take Trnovo, kill Kaliman, and install Michael's distant cousin Constantine Tichomir as King.

## **Turkish Sultanate**

Uneasy division of Sultanate between Izz-ed-Din, at Konya, and Mongol-supported Rukn-al-Din, at Malatya; continuing disturbances in East.

## **1258 Turkish Sultanate**

**Early** Seljuk representatives at Mongol court at Karakorum achieve 'Great Khan' Mongke's agreement to division of Sultanate between Izz-ed-Din at Konya and Rukn-al-Din at Kayseri.

## **Epirus**

Manfred sends Admiral Philip Chinardo to command at Dyrrachium.

## **Nicaea/Bulgaria**

**Spring** Theodore recalls Palaeologus from Thessalonica, and alleged omen received by Archbishop of Thessalonica claims the general will soon be emperor; Theodore agrees to Constantine Tichomir's envoys' proposal of marriage-alliance, and treaty signed before his daughter Irene is sent to Bulgaria as Constantine's wife.

Palaeologus temporarily arrested on arrival in Nicaea; Patriarch Arsenius puts interdict on Epirus.

## Morea/Epirus

Defeated in Euboea, Villehardouin marches on Thebes and **May/June** defeats its lords and allies Guy de la Roche, Pallavicini, and d'Autremencourt at battle of Karydi; he besieges them in Cadmeia citadel until they agree to his terms on Euboean lands; Michael II sends envoys to arrange alliance, daughter Anna Angelina marrying Villehardouin with dowry of 60,000 'hyperpera' and some Thessalian castles.

## Italy

**10 August** Manfred crowned King of Sicily at Palermo, cutting out rights of late King Conrad's son Conradin who is rumoured dead in Germany.

## Nicaea

Theodore II's epilepsy becomes critical and **late August** he dies aged 36 at Nymphaeum, leaving George Muzalon as regent for 7-year-old son John IV assisted by brother Andronicus; Theodore buried at Sosandra monastery and Muzalon, aware of unpopularity, offers his resignation to an assembly of civil and ecclesiastical leaders but is assured by Palaeologus that he is acceptable; **early September** at memorial service at Sosandra 9 days after Theodore's death Latin mercenaries demonstrate outside church demanding to see John IV and on doing so charge into the church and kill Muzalon's secretary Theophylact who is sent out to investigate; Muzalon, Andronicus, and a brother are dragged out of hiding-places and butchered while Palaeologus, organizer of murder, physically restrains Muzalon's wife, his sister Eulogia's daughter Irene.

Nobles quarrel over regency, but Palaeologus as 'Grand Constable' organizes demonstrations by his mercenaries and persuades Arsenius that a strong ruler is needed; he is appointed 'Grand Duke' (admiral) and John's guardian, and controls treasury at Magnesia so he can distribute bribes to win over doubters to his side.

## Epirus/Morea

**September** Treaty between Michael II and Villehardouin signed, and latter marries Anna at Patras; honeymoon at Mistra, mountain-top castle on ridge above Sparta; later Michael arrives to sign military alliance against Nicaea.

## Nicaea

**September** Michael Palaeologus' brother John 'Grand Domestic', and sent to Thessalonica as Michael II's bastard son John, new ruler of Thessaly, and Vlachs open hostilities.

**October/November** Michael Palaeologus raised on shield as Michael VIII at Magnesia, and promises Arsenius to resign once John IV of age; **25 December** he and wife Theodora are crowned by Arsenius and John IV receives only a chaplet of pearls.

## 1259 Nicaea/Epirus/Italy

Michael II offers daughter Helena to widowed Manfred in return for troops. Stephen of Serbia sends 600 archers, Béla IV of Hungary 1500 cavalry, and Bulgaria and Turcomans send troops to Nicaea, and Duke of Carinthia brings 300 knights to Nicaea; **March** 2000 Cumans join Nicaean military rendezvous at Adrianople while Michael II waits at Castoria but is defeated in surprise attack by John Palaeologus, now 'Sebastocrator', and flees to Avlona on coast to await Sicilians.

Arsenius resigns Patriarchate due to opposition to Palaeologus; John Palaeologus takes Ochrid and Berat; **May** Manfred's envoys arrive at Avlona to collect Helena who is **2 June** married to Manfred at Trani.

Villehardouin and the Moreans cross Gulf of Corinth to Naupactus, and join Athenian and Theban lords at Lamia; they advance to Thessaly as 400 Sicilian cavalry join Michael II to besiege Berat.

**Late June** John Palaeologus and the main Nicaean army from Adrianople wait at Pelagonia as Michael II links up with his son John of Thessaly and the Frankish lords; John Palaeologus gets peasants to burn scrub and raise dust to present image of larger Nicaean force, and as William of Villehardouin and Michael II lose nerve John of Thessaly quarrels with Frankish lords, is called a low-born bastard by William, and leaves the army with his men; he allies secretly with John Palaeologus.

Michael II and his son Nicephorus withdraw too at night; next day William is persuaded he can still win and battle of Pelagonia commences with Frankish charge; Carinthian knights rout opposition though their Duke is killed, and Cumans shower arrows onto Franks who are heavily defeated with leaders captured; William found hiding in haystack near Castoria in disguise and recognised by teeth.

Prisoners are sent to Michael VIII at Lampsacus, and new 'Grand Domestic' Alexius Strategopulus reaches Naupactus; Nicaeans enter Arta as Michael II flees his capital to Orsini relatives on Cephallonia.

**Autumn** After John Palaeologus' departure for Levia in Central Greece, John of Thessaly goes to see his refugee father and persuades him to return as Nicaean occupiers are unpopular; Michael reoccupies Arta and sends Nicephorus to relieve siege of Ioannina and then obtain more aid from Manfred.

**Late** Michael VIII makes Strategopulus 'Caesar'.

## Trebizond

Manuel reconquers Sinope from Turks.

## 1260 Nicaea/Epirus

**March?** Nicephorus II becomes Patriarch.

**May** After Anseau of Cahieu, captured at Pelagonia, has offered to arrange opening of a gate at Constantinople, Michael VIII returns to Thrace to take Selymbria and then blockade the city; a would-be traitor turns up to tell him that Baldwin is suspicious and has taken his keys to gate so Michael resorts to unsuccessful siege; **September** he agrees one-year truce with Baldwin and retires.

Strategopulus attacks West into Epirus but is captured by Nicephorus and his Italians near Loidoriki and agrees to a truce in return for freedom.

## Turkish Sultanate/Georgia

Sultans Izz-ed-Din and Rukn-al-Din with armies, and a Georgian contingent, join the Mongol general Kitbugha's invasion of Palestine and **3 September** are present at his defeat by Egyptian 'Mameluke' Sultan Qutuz, at 'Ain Jalut' ('Pools of Goliath') near Nazareth.

## Nicaea

**Late** Genoese ‘Captain of People’ sends envoys William Visconti and Guarnerio Giudice to Michael VIII to conclude alliance; Michael sends envoys to Constantine Tichomir.

## 1261 Nicaea/Byzantium

**February (or December 1260)** Death of Patriarch Nicephorus; **May** Arsenius restored.

**13 March** Michael VIII and Visconti and Giudice sign Treaty of Nymphaeum – permanent alliance of Nicaea and Genoa against Venice; 50 Genoese ships hired; Genoese quarters at principal Nicaean ports, including Constantinople at reconquest, under own jurisdiction; Genoese assist Nicaean cities’ defence and Nicaeans exclude Genoese enemies from their waters.

## Italy

**25 May** Death of Pope Alexander.

## Byzantium

Michael sends envoys to Genoa; **10 July** Genoa ratifies treaty.

Constantinopolitan Greek residents visit Strategopulus, with army at Rhegium near city, after the Venetian fleet under ‘Podesta’ Marco Gradenigo sails off to attack Daphnusia island near Heraclea in Black Sea; they offer secret way into city while it is virtually undefended, and **24–25 July** at night Strategopulus’ troops enter city, either along disused aqueduct or through Gate of Fountain; they spread out around city and Baldwin II abandons Blachernae Palace to flee to Boucoleon leaving behind his crown and sword; Italian houses near Golden Horn fired to discourage Venetians who return, accept the city is lost, and collect Baldwin and other refugees before sailing for Euboea; Strategopulus takes over city and forbids assemblies during day and imposes curfew but remaining Latins allowed to stay.

Michael is awoken at camp at Meteoron by sister Eulogia tickling toes with feather and told the capital is his but refuses to believe it until he receives Baldwin’s crown and sword; **15 August** he leads triumphal procession into city behind icon of Virgin Hodegetria to celebrate service of

rededication at Hagia Sophia; **late August** Michael, wife Theodora, and 2-year-old son Andronicus crowned but John IV left at Nymphaeum.

Michael reoccupies 'Great Palace' and brings in settlers to repopulate the semi-deserted city, and he provides treasure and new roofs for many damaged buildings and carries out extensive rebuilding and works of charity; two of Baldwin's secretaries retained and soon sent to reassure Pope of goodwill to no effect.

William of Villehardouin, still prisoner, declines to return Argos or Nauplia to Byzantium as under Athenian suzerainty, and insists he cannot surrender any territory without consent of feudal barons under Achaian constitution; Michael proposes handover of Mistra, Monemvasia, and Maina, 3 principal castles of South-East Peloponnese, and William agrees subject to barons' approval; his nephew Geoffrey of Bruyères, lord of Karytaina, sent to inform Princess Anna.

## Italy

**29 August** James Pantaleon elected Pope Urban IV.

## Turkish Sultanate

**13 August** Rukn-al-Din enters Konya with Mongol army after removal of their charter granting Izz-ed-Din status as co-ruler; Izz-ed-Din flees to Constantinople and Muin-al-Din Sulaiman the 'Pervane' rules as effective Mongol viceroy, imposing harsh taxes but resisted by Turcoman tribes.

## Byzantium/Morea

**Early September?** 'Parliament of Ladies' (captive lord's wives) at Nikli agrees to accept surrender of the 3 castles to Michael, though Guy de la Roche, just returned from France where Louis IX granted him status of 'Duke' of Athens, attempts to propose ransom instead to be told they cannot afford it.

**October** William swears to the terms in Constantinople and does homage to Michael before returning to Achaia to prepare handover.

**Late** Michael has John IV blinded and removed to Dadibryze castle on Black Sea; Patriarch Arsenius is furious and withdraws to Paschasius monastery outside Nicaea as popular demonstrations at deposition of Lascarids

show their popularity in Anatolia – the new Emperor's reputation in old Nicaean lands never recovers.

Arsenius offers to resign and Bishop Andronicus of Sardes does so.

**December** Constance of Hohenstaufen returns to Italy.

## Primary sources

*Chronicle of the Morea*, transl. A. Goodenough.

H. Lurier (ed. and transl.), *Crusaders as Conquerors: The Chronicle of the Morea* (New York, 1964).

Nicetas Choniates, *History*, ed. Harry Magoulias as 'O! City of Byzantium'. *Annals of Nicetas Choniates* (Detroit, 1984).

Geoffrey de Villehardouin, *History of the Conquest of Constantinople*, ed. Faral, 2 vols (Paris, 1938–9).

Georges Pachymeres, *Relations Historiques*, Books I to VI, transl. Albert Failler, in *Corpus Fontum Historiae Byzantinae* (Paris 1984).

## Secondary sources

Michael Angold, *A Byzantine Government in Exile: Government and Society under the Lascarids of Nicaea (1204–1261)* (Oxford, 1975).

Mark Bartusis, *The Late Byzantine Army and society, 1204–1453* (Philadelphia, 1992).

*Cambridge Mediaeval History*, Vol IV: Chapter IX, K.M. Setton, 'The Latins in Greece from the Fourth Crusade to the End of the Middle Ages'.

*Catalogue of the Byzantine Coins in the Dumbarton Oaks Collection and the Whittmore Collection*: vol IV, ed. Michael Hendy.

N. Cheetham, *Mediaeval Greece* (New Haven, Connecticut, 1981).

Alice Gardner, *The Lascarids of Nicaea: The Story of an Empire in Exile* (London, 1912).

E. Janssen, *Trebizond en Colchide* (Brussels, 1969).

Jean Longnon, *l'empire latin de Constantinople et la principaute de Moree* (Paris, 1949).

W. Miller, *The Latins in the Levant: A History of Frankish Greece, 1204–1566* (London, 1908).

W. Miller, *Trebizond. The Last Greek Empire* (London, 1926).

Donald Nicol, *The Despotate of Epirus 1204–1261* (Cambridge, 1957).

—, *Byzantium and Venice* (Cambridge, 1988).

—, *The Last Centuries of Byzantium, 1261–1453* (Cambridge, 1993).

J. Polemis, *The Doukai. A Contribution to Byzantine Prosography* (London, 1968).

R. Rodd, *The Princes of the Morea and the Chronicles of the Morea* (London, 1907).

Stephen Runciman, *A History of the Crusades: vol III: The Kingdom of Acre* (Cambridge, 1954).

C. Roth, *The Dukes of Naxos* (Philadelphia, 1946).

## Articles

*Byzantina*, vol. 14 (1988): Benjamin Hendricks, 'Regestes des empereurs latins de Constantinople', pp. 7–221.

*Byzantion*, vol. 22 (1952): Donald Nicol, 'Ecclesiastical Relations between the Despotate of Epirus and the Kingdom of Nicaea in the Years 1215 to 1230', pp. 207–28.



- Byzantion*, vol. 43 (1975): R.-J. Loenertz, 'Aux origins du despotat d'Epire et de la principaute d'Achaie', pp. 377-489.
- Dumbarton Oaks Papers*, vol. 5 (1954): Robert Lee Wolff, 'Politics in the Latin Patriarchate of Constantinople, 1204-1261', pp. 225-304.
- Revue Etudes Byzantines*, vol. 17 (1959): L. Stiernon, 'Les origins du despotat d'Epire', pp. 91-126.
- Revue Etudes Byzantines*, vol. 27 (1969): V. Laurent, 'La Chronologie des patriarches de Constantinople au XIII siecle (1208-1309)', pp. 129-33.
- Revue Etudes Byzantines*, vol. 38 (1950): A. Failler, 'Chronologie et composition dans l'histoire de Georges Pachymere', pp. 5-103.
- Revue Etudes Byzantines*, vol. 46 (1988): Michel Kursanskis, 'l'empire de Trebizonde et les Turcs au 13eme siecle', pp. 109-24.
- Speculum*, vol. 11 (1936): A.A. Vasiliev, 'The Foundation of the Empire of Trebizond (1204-1222)', pp. 3-37.

# **Part VIII**

**1262–1502**

*This page intentionally left blank*

## 1262 Byzantium

Arsenius excommunicates Michael, and will only lift it if he restores John IV; stalemate as Michael dares not to depose him.

Rebellion in Bithynia of a pretender claiming to be John IV, amidst riots in Nicaea; Michael defeats pretender and placates his irregular frontier-troops supporters with formal rank in army and appropriate pay, but the Eastern frontier remains weakened.

Michael's brother Constantine brings Byzantine forces into Laconia to occupy Mistra, Monemvasia, and Maina, and Slavs of Mount Taygetus and the peninsulas transfer allegiance to Empire as Latin Lords of Laconia mostly leave; the town of Lacedaimon/Sparta remains briefly in Frankish hands.

Michael marries off John IV's unmarried sisters to Italian Lords.

Constantine Tichomir, persuaded by his wife to avenge her brother John IV, declares war and invades Thrace.

## Italy

Ex-emperor Baldwin arrives from Manfred's court in Sicily at Pope Urban's residence, Viterbo, and receives verbal support as legitimate ruler; he also intercedes for Manfred, who is summoned to Viterbo for 1 August but obtains delay until November.

Baldwin goes on to France to encourage Louis IX to announce new Crusade for him; **June** Michael VIII writes to Pope offering to receive new legates and assuring that now ownership of Constantinople is sorted out reunion of churches should follow; Pope offers to recognise Manfred's rule of Naples and Sicily in return for tribute and re-admission of all exiles which he refuses.

**July** Pope Urban absolves William from oath of loyalty to Michael VIII as latter is a schismatic and usurper.

Venice and Epirus ally with Pope and Baldwin, and Michael II attacks Byzantine outposts in Macedonia again; Villehardouin agrees to Papal proposals to join coalition.

## 1263 Byzantium

**Summer** Constantine Palaeologus lands army at Monemvasia from Byzantine and Genoese ships, and 1500 Turkish mercenaries included; the

Byzantines besiege Lacedaimon and invade Arcadia, where Villehardouin retires to Corinth to summon Frankish lords from all over Greece; Byzantines cross the pass at Karytaina into Elis unopposed in absence of Lord Geoffrey de Briel, and Skorta hillmen join them; they reach Olympia and Turks burn Latin monastery of Isova, but elderly Lord Jean de Catavas and his knights defeat them in heroic charge; Constantine retires into hills and to Laconia as Villehardouin advances.

Michael VIII defeats Constantine Tichomir and forces him to surrender Mesembria and other Black Sea ports.

Michael II defeated by Imperial troops and has to sign treaty and hand over Ioannina; Michael VIII accuses Arsenius of hiding Patriarchal officials charged with illegal persecution of palace chaplain.

Genoese fleet defeated by Venetians at battle of Spetsai; annoyed at their failure, Michael decides he has backed wrong Italian power, across Golden Horn from Constantinople, and negotiates with Venice.

## **Italy**

Pope Urban negotiates with Louis IX's younger brother Charles, Count of Anjou and Provence, to evict Manfred and take over Southern Italy and Sicily as his vassal.

**July** Pope sends friendly if non-committal letter to Michael VIII on Church reunion, proposing to send four Franciscan friars to negotiate.

## **Athens**

Death of Duke Guy de la Roche; succeeded by elder son John.

## **Trebizond**

Death of Emperor Manuel, aged around 49; succeeded by eldest son, Andronicus II.

## **Italy**

**July** Charles of Anjou signs treaty with Pope, promising to hold Southern Italy and Sicily as vassal, not take any other lands in Italy, and supply troops on demand.

## 1264 **Byzantium**

**Early** Michael receives Greek Catholic Southern Italian bishop, Nicholas of Cotrone, and sends him to Pope with favourable report on likelihood of Church reunion.

**Spring** Byzantines attack Elis and confront William de Villehardouin near his capital, Andravida; they retreat after senior officer Michael Cantacuzene killed in skirmish; Constantine Palaeologus returns to capital and in his absence the main army, minus unpaid Turkish mercenaries who defect to Franks, is ambushed and defeated at Macri Plagi; generals Philes and Macrynos captured.

**May** Michael holds church synod and deposes Arsenius for omitting his name from services and giving communion to Moslem Emir, but many of clergy and laity remain sympathetic to the latter and no bishop will assume Patriarchate and lift Michael's excommunication.

John Palaeologus takes main army to Lower Maeander valley to clear out Turkish raiders; Michael II invades Macedonia against weakened forces and Michael VIII marches West.

Michael II sues for peace before he can be attacked, and in new treaty agrees to marry Emperor's widowed niece Anna Cantacuzene.

Urban's Franciscan friars return home with positive reports about Church reunion. Michael VIII is attacked in Thrace en route home by Mongols from South Russian steppes, summoned by ex-Sultan Izz-ed-Din who he hands over.

## **Italy**

**2 October** Death of Pope Urban; prolonged conclave as Charles and Manfred try to influence result.

## 1265 **Italy**

**5 February** Guy of Foulques, Archbishop of Narbonne and close to French royal family, elected Pope (Clement IV) and confirms agreement with Charles; **28 June** Clement's envoys invest him with Manfred's kingdom, and as 'Senator of Rome' by popular acclaim he drives off Manfred's attack.

**Spring?** Michael II of Epirus marries Anna.

## Byzantium

**Spring** Germanus III, Archbishop of Adrianople, made Patriarch by Michael, but after consecration **28 May** decides not to lift his excommunication due to popular pressure.

Michael enrolls ex-Sultan Izz-ed-Din's remaining retinue in Byzantium, many of them converted to Christianity, as a regiment of c. 1000 'Turcopuli' in army. **Spring** Byzantine/Venice truce at Michael's request.

Serious conspiracy in Constantinople to kill Michael and restore John IV; questioned ringleader implicates Arsenius, and Genoese more certainly involved. Marauding Mongols in Bithynia threaten Nicaea.

## Italy

**October** Charles marches South from Lyons, France to Rome with large French army of feudal Lordships and volunteers to attack Manfred.

## 1266 Italy

**January** Charles in Rome; he marches quickly into Campania and through the hills to Benevento, outflanking Manfred's positions; **Friday 26 February** Manfred defeated and killed at battle of Benevento; **7 March** Charles enters Naples, and Manfred's widow Helena Ducaena tries to flee to Epirus but is caught at Trani by Papal agents and returned for life imprisonment with Manfred's children (her daughter and three illegitimate sons); Charles imposes strict French government on the kingdom, but clemency to nobles at first.

Charles lays claim to Corfu and other 'dower' lands handed over by Michael II with Helena; Manfred's admiral Chinardo holds out there.

## Byzantium

**14 September** Michael deposes Patriarch Germanus.

## Turkish Sultanate

(or 1265) 'Pervane' Sulaiman murders Sultan Rukn-al-Din; infant son Kaikhusrau his puppet.

## Epirus

Michael II reaches agreement with Chinardo, offers him hand of his sister-in-law, and then sends agents under cover of alliance to arrange revolt; Chinardo assassinated but **Late** Charles' troops arrive to prevent Epirot takeover.

## Byzantium

**28 December** Respected monk Joseph enthroned as Patriarch.

## Trebizond

Andronicus II succeeded by younger brother George.

c. 1266

## Byzantium

Michael VIII sends his illegitimate daughter Maria ('Despina Khatun') to Persia to marry Mongol 'Ilkhan' Abagha.

1267

## Byzantium

**2 February** Joseph lifts Michael VIII's excommunication in return for doing penance for his treatment of John IV; Arsenius and his supporters remain in schism and do not recognise Joseph's authority.

? Embassy to Hungary concerning bride for Michael's son Andronicus.

## Italy/Morea

**February** Charles of Anjou and William of Villehardouin exchange embassies; William recognises Charles as his new feudal Lord in place of 'Emperor' Baldwin as Charles better able to defend his dominions, and Charles is to arrange it with Pope and Baldwin; William's aid to Charles' planned attack on Constantinople promised, and presumably the question of William's daughter and heiress marrying Charles' son Philip is first broached.



**May** Baldwin joins Pope Clement and Charles at Viterbo, and treaty of alliance arranged – Baldwin cedes right to Queen Helena's dower-lands and suzerainty over Achaia and all of Aegean except Venice's territory and Lesbos, Chios, Samos, and Amorgos; Charles to receive 1/3 of Latin Empire (not Constantinople) when recaptured; Baldwin's son Philip to marry Charles' daughter Beatrice; Charles to provide 2000 knights for a year to attack Constantinople.

**17 May** Clement sends uncompromising letter to Michael VIII on Church reunion – Greek Church must submit to his terms for it and no negotiations.

**July** Castilian Prince Henry, former ally of Manfred, replaces Charles as 'Senator' in Rome and turns against Pope and Charles.

**Autumn** Revolt in Sicily, led by Manfred's ex-governor Conrad Capece, as Conrad of Hohenstaufen's son Conradin invades Northern Italy from Bavaria to reclaim the kingdom of Sicily.

## 1268 **Italy**

**April** Conradin at Pisa; **June** he reaches Siena and by-passes Pope Clement at Viterbo; **24 July** he enters Rome to public rejoicing.

Charles besieging Manfred's former Saracen regiment at Lucera, intercepts Conradin on march from Avezzano into Apulia and **23 August** destroys his army near Tagliacozzo; this time Charles is merciless to Hohenstaufen partisans and **29 October** Conradin and his friend Frederick of Baden are executed at Naples.

## **Byzantium**

Michael VIII and Genoese representatives sign peace, and Genoese restored to Galata; **Spring** Byzantine/Venetian treaty, allowing Venetians to rent property.

## **Morea**

William de Villehardouin takes small force to Italy to assist Charles and is present at Tagliacozzo; Charles presses him to accept the proposed marriage-alliance but with technically illegal stipulation that if William's daughter Isabella dies childless her husband and his father, Charles, are her heirs not her sister Margaret.

## Italy

**29 November** Death of Pope Clement; long vacancy in Papacy means no more proposals on Church reunion possible, but Charles continues plans to attack Byzantium.

## 1269 Byzantium

Michael VIII sends two embassies to Louis IX reassuring him on his support for Church reunion and insisting that a voluntary reunion is more Christian and more likely to last than one imposed by Charles by reconquest.

Walls of Constantinople strengthened in case of attack.

## c. 1269 Byzantium/Epirus

Death of Michael II of Epirus, succeeded by son Nicephorus; his illegitimate half-brother John retains Thessaly and signs alliance with Michael VIII who makes him 'Sebastocrator'.

## Georgia

Death of King David VI; succeeded by son Demetrius II.

## Byzantium/Bulgaria

Alliance between Michael VIII and Constantine Tichomir, the latter now paralysed after riding-accident; Constantine marries Michael's niece Maria Cantacuzene, and if they have children Michael is to hand over Anchialus and Mesembria.

## 1270 Italy/Morea

**Spring** Charles prepares for expedition to Constantinople in Apulian ports, but his brother Louis I is about to lead Crusade to North Africa and Charles has to postpone campaign to assist him.

**17 June** Marriage-treaty between Charles' son Philip and William's daughter Isabella concluded, confirming that Philip and Charles are heirs to Achaia if Isabella is childless.

**1 July** Louis IX sails from Aigues – Mortes for Tunis; **8 July** Charles sails from Naples for Sicily.

**25 August** Louis IX dies at Tunis, and Charles arrives with Sicilian fleet that evening; Charles remains in Tunis to help nephew Philip III of France negotiate treaty with Emir Al-Mustansir, and **November** as the combined fleet returns to Italy it is severely damaged by storms.

## **Byzantium/Morea**

Michael VIII sends new expedition to Morea, and desultory war against William of Villehardouin commences.

## **Armenia**

Death of Hethoum after 44-year reign; succeeded by son Leo III.

## **1271 Italy/Byzantium/Morea**

**February** Charles' troops occupy Dyrrachium after walls levelled in earthquake, and start to spread out into Albanian mountains as local Lords submit.

Alfonso X of Castile opens negotiations to marry daughter to Andronicus.

**May** Wedding of Philip, son of Charles, to Isabella of Achaia secures Angevin influence in Achaia.

Dispute between Byzantium and Bulgaria after Queen Maria unexpectedly has a child and Constantine Tichomir unsuccessfully demands handover of Mesembria and Anchialus; he receives envoys from Charles.

**1 September** Tebaldo Visconti, archdeacon of Liège who is a keen Crusader and currently in the Holy Land, elected Pope; takes title of Gregory X, and believed to be more sympathetic than predecessors to voluntary reunion of Churches so Michael VIII prepares initiative.

? John of Thessaly joins Epirus and Achaia as ally of Charles.

## 1272 Byzantium/Italy

Pope Gregory writes to Michael VIII informing him of longing for reunion of Christendom, **January** returns to Italy to take up residence at Viterbo, and **27 March** is consecrated at Rome.

**31 March** Gregory issues Bull summoning General Church Council for 1 May 1274 to discuss reunion of Churches, Crusade to Palestine, and Church reform.

Michael sends money to Charles' enemies in Italy, especially the anti-papal 'Ghibelline' (ex-Hohenstaufen) factions in cities including the 'Society of St. Simeon and St. Jude' in Genoa under Oberto Spinola and Oberto Doria.

**August** Michael revives 'Patriarchate' of Ochrid to have jurisdiction over Serbia.

Gregory tells Italian states to make only temporary treaties with Michael to put pressure on him for union but requires Charles to postpone expedition and give safe-conducts to Byzantine emissaries through territory.

**October** Papal legates sent to Constantinople to discuss Council and reunion, but on understanding that reunion to be on Latin terms.

King Stephen II of Hungary concludes marriage alliance with Michael; his youngest daughter Anna (elder sister Mary married to Charles' eldest son) to marry Prince Andronicus.

Patriarch Joseph and 'Chartophylax' John Beccus visit Serbia in unsuccessful negotiations to marry Michael's daughter Anne to King Stephen Uros' younger son.

## 1273 Byzantium/Italy

Legates return to Italy with Michael's assurances about reunion, and Pope Gregory sends Michael invitation to send delegates to Church Council; he insists Greek Church must accept primacy of Rome and Western doctrine on 'filioque', etc.

Michael negotiates with Gregory ahead of Council, warning reunion on those terms extremely unpopular but assuring his personal agreement to them and commitment to imposing them on his Church; he starts propaganda campaign to convince Byzantine Church leadership of necessity of union, assisted by respected Greek-born Franciscan friar John Parastron, and assures that it is only paying lip-service to Latin customs and theology

that will not be enforced in Constantinople as Pope unlikely to come and enforce terms.

'Chartophylax' of Hagia Sophia, John Beccus, leads opposition as the practical advantages of end of Crusade threat outweighed by theological differences, and Patriarch Joseph supports his stance that Latin faith suspect; lay opposition led by Michael's elder sister Eulogia, who is exiled from capital but flees to her daughter Maria in Bulgaria to rally Bulgarian state and church; Epirot and Thessalian church denounce union too and encourage rulers Nicephorus and John to oppose Michael; **June** Patriarch Joseph issues 'encyclical' calling for faithful to resist persuasion and tells Michael he must have Eastern council first to consult other Patriarchs.

Michael arrests Beccus, and 'feeds' him details of more acceptable Western theology in prison until he is persuaded that the differences are not that great; on release he leads a strengthening party of moderate opinion in favour of necessity of union.

Michael sends delayed acceptance of papal invitation to council, and Gregory instructs Charles to postpone invasion for a year to see if Michael submits to reunion.

Arsenius dies in exile.

Bulgarians unsuccessfully attack Empire.

**15 October** Charles' daughter Beatrice marries Baldwin II's son Philip.

**December** Baldwin II dies, aged 56, and Philip succeeds to claim as 'Emperor of Constantinople' and is recognised nominally by Pope; Philip effectively Charles' puppet.

## 1274 **Byzantium/Italy/France**

**January** Patriarch Joseph sent to monastery pending outcome of Council; Synod meets and under Imperial pressure accepts primacy of Papacy; right of appeal to Rome, and papal name in liturgy; signed document sent to Pope with professions of faith from Michael and Andronicus.

**March** 'Grand Logothete' George Akropolites, former Patriarch Germanus, and Bishop Theophanes of Nicaea lead delegation to Italy for Council, though shipload of treasures and icons for Pope sunk in storm off Cape Malea.

**7 May** Council opens at cathedral in Lyons, out of reach of Charles' influence, with Pope presiding; **24 June** Byzantine delegation arrives and greeted with kiss of peace by Pope and Cardinals; **6 July** reunion of

Churches confirmed as Michael's and synod's submissions are read out in translation and Akropolites swears adherence to papal primacy and Latin creed (including 'filioque') in Michael's name; Pope preaches sermon on gratitude that Greeks have freely seen in error of their ways.

**Spring** Michael's army invades Charles' Albanian dominions from Berat, captures Butrinto, and unsuccessfully besieges Dyrrachium and Aviona.

Nicephorus and John reject Michael's embassies' calls to accept reunion of churches; Michael's brother John Palaeologus invades Thessaly and besieges John in Neopatras while Cuman mercenaries rampage, but John escapes from town and goes to Thebes to secure aid of Duke John of Athens; 300 Athenian knights relieve siege and Palaeologus retreats, protected from pursuit by Byzantine fleet under Philanthropenos in Gulf of Volos; John Palaeologus dies **Autumn?** on return to capital.

Philanthropenos' fleet attacks Latins on Euboea; Venetian ships aid Lombard Lords and attack Byzantines at sea off Demetrias, and Byzantine ships are driven ashore but Palaeologus' men in port reinforce their crews and they rejoin battle and win; Latin fleet heavily defeated but Philanthropenos wounded and Athenian reinforcements save Euboea as Byzantines land.

**28 July** Gregory writes to Charles, Philip of Courtenay, and Michael requesting a one-year truce between them and Abbot Bernard of Monte Cassino visits Naples and Constantinople; one-year truce from 1 May 1275 agreed but in effect none in Albania or Achala.

Michael promises to support Gregory's Crusade if Charles refrains from attacking him.

? Michael hires landless knight from Vicenza, Licario, a brilliant naval captain, to raise fleet and retake Aegean islands.

## 1275 Byzantium

Licario launches brilliant campaign in Aegean against Duke Marco Sanudo of Naxos; retakes Sporades, Ceos, Siphnos, Los, Amorgos, Santorini/Thera, and Cythera.

Licario lands in Euboea and retakes all towns and castles except capital of Chalcis/Negroponte; he defeats William of Villehardouin and Charles' 'Marshal' Dreux de Beaumont when they come to the Lombards' aid and (1275/6) captures Duke John of Athens and 'triarch' Ghiberto de Verona who are sent to Michael as prisoners; Michael grants Euboea to Licario as fief.

Michael grants Phocaea as fief to Genoese brothers, Benedict and Manuel Zaccaria. Geoffrey de Briel Lord of Karytaina, and Angevin reinforcements save Achaia from Byzantine invasion that reaches Skorta, but all of Laconia is now permanently lost.

**9 January** Patriarch Joseph dismissed and replaced **26 May** by John Beccus, dismissals and imprisonment for most of clerical and lay leadership to accept Union but it is much resented and Michael even has to imprison some of relatives, turning increasingly to brutal measures e.g. blinding the Raoul brothers.

**Autumn** Michael sends envoys to Gregory encouraging immediate Crusade and excommunication of anti-Union rulers.

## 1276 **Italy**

**10 January** Death of Gregory X at Arezzo; **21 January** Dominican friar Pierre of Tarantaise elected Pope Innocent V.

Weakening under Charles' anti-Byzantine pressure, Innocent promotes Crusade including Byzantine participation but also warns Michael that Charles has justice on his side as Latins were violently ejected from Constantinople; he insists that Byzantine lay and clerical leadership take individual oaths to Union to reassure him of their sincerity but **22 June** dies as his legates set out.

**11 July** Charles partisan Ottobuono Freschi elected Pope Hadrian V but **18 August** dies suddenly at Viterbo.

**8 September** Portuguese theologian, Archbishop Pedro of Braga, elected Pope John XXI; Innocent's terms for continued reunion and restraintment of Charles endorsed.

Michael sends John a copy of his personal oath to Union, and Andronicus writes endorsing his adherence; Patriarch John and his synod send endorsement of Papal primacy and 'filioque' clause.

Bulgarians attack in Thrace again.

Licario continues successes in Aegean, and Venetians reopen talks with Michael; John of Thessaly defeats a second Byzantine attack; Michael releases Duke John of Athens on payment of large ransom.

**Winter** Patriarch John holds synod in Constantinople to reaffirm loyalty to Union; in Neopatras John of Thessaly holds an anti-Union synod of bishops from Epirus and Thessaly and they anathematize Michael, Patriarch, and Pope.

Nicephorus of Epirus sends embassy to Charles.

## Serbia

Stephen Uros succeeded by son Stephen Dragutin.

## Turkish Sultanate

While 'pervane' Sulaiman is escorting Sultan Kaikhusrau's sister to Azerbaijan to marry 'Ilkhan' Abagha, a coalition of the great 'emirs' ruling semi-autonomous districts revolts against Mongol tutelage in secret alliance with Sultan Baybars of Egypt; Baybars fails to come to their aid and Sulaiman returns with Mongol troops to defeat them.

### 1277 Turkish Sultanate

Baybars invades Anatolia and **16 April** defeats Seljuk/ Mongol army with support of rebel 'emirs' and Turcomans; he occupies Kayseri and claims rule of the Sultanate, but is short of supplies and with Abagha's Mongols advancing he retires to Syria.

**May** 'Karamanid' dynasty, now autonomous rulers of Isauria, and the 'Menteshe' dynasty of Caria sack Konya/Iconium and install a pretended son of Izz-ed-Din, Cimir, as their puppet ruler; other disturbances in Western Anatolia as Abagha marches into Kayseri to restore Mongol rule and execute dissenters.

## Italy

**20 May** Pope John XXI dies of injuries after roof of study collapses.

## Byzantium/Italy

**Spring** Byzantine/Venetian treaty renewed, and Venetians ask for protection against Licario.

## Trebizond/Georgia

Emperor George fails in attempt to retake Sinope, lost to Turks again in 1260s, in expedition during turmoil in the Seljuk Sultanate.

George's half-sister marries Demetrius II of Georgia.



## **Bulgaria**

Constantine Tichomir's wife Maria secures succession of her son but Constantine killed and he is deposed in revolt led by peasant Lachanas/Ivailo who Maria marries.

Byzantine expedition against Thessaly halted as two generals in charge declare their consciences opposed to fighting John who is right to resist Union.

**April** Michael and Andronicus swear to uphold primacy of Rome and Creed in service at Hagia Sophia, and signed documents sent to Pope.

**July** Patriarch John Beccus and synod excommunicates Nicephorus, John of Thessaly, and all at the Neopatras synod.

Death of Charles' son Philip of Anjou, married to Isabella of Achaia; Charles insists that terms of marriage-alliance stand and he is Isabella's heir to Achaia not her sister.

## **Turkish Sultanate**

**2 August** Abagha executes 'Pervane' Sulaiman and institutes closer Mongol rule of Sultanate; Konya and other cities retaken from Turcomans and Fakhr-al-Din Ali of Kutayha/Cotyaeum and the 'Germiyan' dynasty of Phrygia are among pro-Mongol lords who assist weakened central government; Mehmed Beg's Karamanid dynasty increasingly independent in South-East.

## **Italy**

**25 November** Cardinal Giovanni Gaetano Orsini elected Pope (Nicholas III).

## **1278 Italy/Byzantium**

Nicholas forbids Charles to attack Byzantium but instructs legates in Constantinople to secure personal, verbal commitment to Union from Michael, Andronicus, and every member of clergy; a papal legate to reside permanently at Constantinople and Byzantine Church to beg for absolution for schism.

Michael agrees to legates' demands, but complains of antipathy of majority of his own people including senior generals and bishops that makes it

difficult to enforce Union and claims to find it hard to recruit trustable officials to carry out orders, Trebizond, Epirus, and Thessaly named as leaders of Eastern opposition.

Patriarch John Beccus, disheartened, retires to monastery.

Michael's brother's son Andronicus and Eulogia's son John Cantacuzene among arrested aristocratic opponents of Union.

Michael sends army to drive Lachanas and Maria out of Bulgaria and install Constantine Tichomir's cousin Ivan Mytzes, a refugee in Constantinople.

Mytzes, 'John Asen III', is defeated by Lachanas and flees to Wallachia, where he enlists support of Mongol Khan Nogaj who is married to Michael's daughter Euphrosyne; Mongols aid Mytzes to invade and besiege Lachanas in Trnovo.

## Morea

Death of William of Villehardouin; under terms of treaty with Charles, Isabella succeeds under Angevin tutelage, and Charles sends out 'bailli' Galeran of Ivry who installs harsh French officials.

## Byzantium

**October** Pope Nicholas' legates sent to Constantinople with instructions to tour Empire enforcing adherence to Union, require personal adherence of leadership to faith, excommunicate opponents, and require Papal confirmation of all church appointments.

## 1279 Bulgaria

**Early** Lachanas captured by John Asen III, who ascends throne, and later Queen Maria and her son Michael surrender; John Asen becomes Byzantine ally and marries Michael VIII's daughter Irene; Bulgarian noble resistance led by George Terter, who Michael persuades John Asen to offer his sister's hand.

## Byzantium

**Spring** Bishop Bartholomew of Grosseto's legates in Constantinople, and inform perturbed Michael of Pope's terms; he shows them chained

Imperial relatives in prison to show how far he will go to enforce Union, and exiles ex-Patriarch Joseph to Black Sea island.

**March** Beccus temporarily withdraws to Panachiantus monastery.

Michael meets church clergy before they meet legates, and insists they need not add riota to creed but compromise is necessary in crisis and in a storm captain must throw parts of cargo overboard-and accepts that Nicholas has broken Gregory's promises. **Spring** Nicephorus of Epirus becomes Charles' ally and vassal.

**August** Legates address synod, and they discuss the creed and sign a complicated statement that is impossible to translate precisely into Latin with Michael adding forged signatures of those bishops not present as Patriarch resumes duties.

**1 September** Michael and Andronicus sign another statement of faith; legates take documents back to Italy.

**August** Charles of Anjou appoints giant Burgundian knight, Hugues de Sully, as commander-in chief in Albania, based at Dyrrachium, to prepare invasion of Empire.

Ignatius and Meletius, two leading anti-Unionist bishops sent to Rome by Michael for punishment, but Pope exonerates them and returns them claiming they are simple men who have been falsely accused.

? John of Procida, leader of pro-Hohenstaufen refugees from Sicily in Aragon, in Constantinople to secure aid from Michael for revolt.

## 1280 **Bulgaria**

George Terter secures an army from Nogaj's Mongols and invades Bulgaria and besieges Trnovo; John Asen flees to Constantinople and is upbraided by Michael for cowardice, while Ivailo fails in second revolt and flees to Nogaj.

John Asen goes to Nogaj for assistance and vies with Ivailo for attention; Nogaj plans to be rid of both but John Asen warned of murder-plot by sister-in-law Euphrosyne and returns to Constantinople in time; Ivailo executed.

George Terter allies with Charles and makes overtures to Pope.

## **Byzantium/Italy**

Michael sends second son Constantine to defeat invasion down Vardar valley by Stephen Dragutin of Serbia, Charles' ally; Serbs flee from Serres area.

Michael campaigns in Eastern Bithynia, where weakened defences thanks to concentrated forces in West and continuing resentment of John IV's deposition has not helped while disturbances in Sultanate causes Turcomans to move West; Michael drives raiders back from around Nicaea and rebuilds fortresses in Sangarius valley.

Michael's elder son Andronicus, with 'Grand Domestic' Michael Tarchaneotes, campaigns in Maeander valley to drive back Turks, and rebuilds crucial fortress at Tralles as 'Andronikopolis'; 36,000 inhabitants imported, but the new city is isolated and after Andronicus' departure Turks are soon back in area as Nyssa, further up valley, is taken.

## **Trebizond**

George is captured and deposed on visit to Mongol court at Tabriz due to intrigues; replaced by brother John II.

## **Italy**

**22 August** Sudden death of Nicholas III at summer residence, Soriano; prolonged election as Charles tries to secure favourable candidate.

## **Turkish Sultanate**

After death of Izz-ed-Din in exile in Crimea, **Summer** his son Ghiyath-al-Din Mas' ud returns to Anatolia with local Turcoman support, rescues his brother Siyavush who has been captured at Sinope trying to raise revolt, and goes to Persia to secure a Mongol 'yarliq' as co-ruler of Sultanate, based in Karamanid areas in South-east; Kaikhusrau remains main ruler under tutelage of Mongol general Qongqurtay, and Mas' ud's nephew Ala-ed-Din Kaiqobad fails to secure Taurus area in revolt and flees.

## **Byzantium**

**Autumn** Hugues de Sully leads Charles' army into Macedonia and besieges Berat; Michael prepares relief-force.

## **Athens**

Duke John de la Roche dies; succeeded by brother William.

## 1281 **Italy**

**22 February** Simon of Brie, French ex-chancellor to Louis IX and Angevin partisan, elected Pope; takes title of Martin IV and sanctions Charles' attack on Byzantium.

### **Byzantium**

**Early** Turkish 'emirs' in district join forces to besiege Tralles, and Andronicus is unable to relieve it or Michael to send reinforcements due to Berat campaign; Andronicus is hard put to it to save rest of Maeander valley.

'Grand Domestic' Tarchaneoites and 'Grand Stratopedarch' John Synadenus lead expedition to relieve Berat, accompanied by Nicephorus of Epirus' refugee brother Demetrius/Michael Ducas who has defected to Byzantium and married Michael VIII's daughter Anna; **Spring** Tarchaneoites floats supplies down-river on rafts past besiegers to Berat, and then de Sully is captured by Turkish mercenaries while reconnoitring Byzantine lines; his troops panic and Tarchaneoites attacks, and siege is broken as Angevins flee with many officers being captured.

Prisoners are paraded in Constantinople, led by giant de Sully; Michael holds thanksgiving-service and portrays victory on walls of Blachernae Palace.

### **Italy**

**3 July** Charles, Philip of Courtenay, and Venice sign alliance under Papal auspices at Orvieto; Venice supplies 80 ships and the others at least 8000 men for expedition to restore Philip by April 1283.

**July** Pope Martin excommunicates Michael and **18 November** reaffirms it, declaring Union invalid due to Greek evasion.

### **Serbia**

Stephen 'Dragutin', sick, abdicates in favour of half-brother Stephen Miliutin, whose mother is Baldwin II's daughter Helena; **Autumn** he joins Charles' alliance and invades Macedonia again, taking Skopje.

## Epirus

**September** Nicephorus signs alliance with Charles and Venice.

## Byzantium/Aragon/Italy

**Autumn** Benedict Zaccaria, co-Lord of Phocaea, arrives in Aragon as Michael VIII's envoy after a call on Genoa, bringing King Peter II promises of Byzantine money in return for securing his wife Constance (Manfred's daughter)'s claim to Naples and Sicily and deposing Charles.

? Michael's agents join John of Procida's conspirators in Sicily to stir up revolt as Charles' armada assembles at Messina; Michael supposed to have promised 60,000 'hyperpera' per annum.

Death of Anne of Hungary, wife of Michael's son Andronicus.

## Trebizond

John II is temporarily seized by rebels led by Papadopoulos, but escapes or is rescued.

(or 1282) John II visits Constantinople to restore alliance with Michael, and marries his daughter Eudocia.

## 1282 Italy

**Easter Monday, 30 March** At Church of the Holy Spirit, Palermo, a French sergeant called Druet insults a young married woman, her husband kills him, and French party are massacred, then the Vespers bells sound as locals spread the news and join in – hundreds of French killed in 'Sicilian Vespers' massacre.

'Commune' declared in Palermo and revolt spreads across Sicily, though Charles' garrison holds Messina for another month; Genoese merchant Cassano deputed to go to Constantinople where Michael VIII gives thanks and declares he was God's instrument in delivering the Sicilians.

Charles' fleet at Messina captured and burnt, and Pope Martin supports Charles' rights to Sicily in vain; **June** Charles' army lands at Messina for ineffective siege, while Peter of Aragon sails to North Africa on planned Crusade but keeps in touch with events; Sicilian emissaries come to him

declaring wife Constance their legitimate sovereign and **30 August** he lands at Trapani; **4 September** Peter proclaimed King by 'Commune' at Palermo; Angevins abandon siege of Messina and **2 October** Peter enters; he blockades Reggio on mainland.

## Morea

Needing all his troops to fight Sicilians and Achaian goodwill, Charles appoints local Achaian lord Guy de Dramelay of Chalandritza as 'bailli' of Achaia.

## Byzantium

Death of Michael's chief minister, 'Grand Logothete' George Akropolites.

**Late summer** Michael tours the Sangarius frontier again, and plans war against John Ducas of Thessaly for attack on frontier; **September** he returns to Constantinople and **October** joins army, and 4000 'Tartars' sent by son-in-law Nogaj, in Thrace to prepare campaign.

Michael is unwell and assures Empress Theodora he will not go further than Thrace; **Late November** he sails from Selymbria to Rhaedestus through storm, but illness worsens as he reaches camp; he has to review Nogaj's troops from sickbed and **Friday 11 December** dies at village of Pachomius, aged 58, proclaiming Andronicus his heir.

Andronicus II succeeds aged 23, and proclaims 5-year-old son Michael co-Emperor; Michael VIII is buried in mound near camp without church service as excommunicate in West and thus technically in East too, but later buried at Selymbria.

Andronicus sends Tartars under Michael Glabas Tarchaneiotes, new 'Grand Constable', to fight Serbs, returns to Constantinople, and renounces the Union of Churches; Theodore Metochites, anti-Unionist prisoner made 'Grand Logothete' as chief minister and all Michael's lay and clerical prisoners released.

**26 December** Patriarch John Beccus exiled to monastery in capital; **31 December** sick and elderly ex-Patriarch Joseph restored to Patriarchate on stretcher amidst popular rejoicing; monks mutilated and blinded for anti-Unionism paraded as martyrs, Hagia Sophia purified, and those who favoured Union or took communion with Latins required to do penance.

## 1283 **Byzantium**

Anti-Unionist campaign continues amid calls for trials of pro-Unionist leaders like Beccus as traitors; **January** Patriarch of Alexandria deputizes at synod for Joseph, Beccus found guilty of heresy and exiled to Brusa, and Metochites proposes all documents relating to Union burnt; Michael VIII refused Christian burial or customary Church commemoration.

Andronicus attempts agreement with Joseph's 'Arsenite' enemies and appoints prominent Bishop Andronicus of Sardes as confessor; 'Arsenites' granted own church in capital.

**23 March** Joseph dies; Andronicus II chooses eminent lay scholar George of Cyprus as non-controversial successor and **Palm Sunday**, **28 March** he is installed as Patriarch Gregory; new synod at Blachernae, and Empress Theodora and Patriarchs of Antioch and Alexandria have to recant of Unionism.

**Early April, Holy Week** All Unionist bishops dismissed.

Andronicus drastically reduces size of standing army and dispenses with fleet to save money, relying on mercenaries and Genoese shipping; coinage is debased again.

Final action of Byzantine fleet, as 80 ships aid naval expedition into Thessaly which retakes Demetrias from John; Nicephorus of Epirus, his Angevin allies useless, returns to Byzantine alliance through mediation of wife Anna (daughter of Michael VIII's restored-to-favour sister Eulogia); Anna arranges kidnap of John of Thessaly's heir Michael who is sent to Constantinople.

? Fall of Tralles to Turks; inhabitants deported and Maeander open to more raids.

## **Byzantium/Bulgaria**

Andronicus recognises George Terter; John Asen gives lands within Empire.

## **Turkish Sultanate**

Qongqurtay, Mongol Viceroy in Sultanate, marches into Persia to dispute succession of Abagha's brother Teguder (Ahmad), taking with him Sultan



Kaikhusray, but dies en route; Teguder decides to recognise Ghiyath al-Din Mas'ud as sole Sultan in retaliation.

## Italy

**Early** Charles and Peter plan to sort out claims to the Kingdom of Southern Italy and Sicily in a tournament 'duel' of 100 knights per side in June at Bordeaux under presidency of Edward I of England; Pope bans duel and while Charles is consulting his relatives in France his son, Charles of Salerno, leads campaign in Southern Italy; **February** Peter takes Reggio; he sorts out succession to Aragon and Sicily among sons and **May** returns to Aragon; **1 June** Charles and Peter parade at tournament-ground in Bordeaux proclaiming each other a coward but avoid actual fighting, Pope meanwhile offers throne of Aragon to Peter's enemies and proclaims war against him a Crusade.

## 1284 Byzantium

**Early** Synod at Adramyttium in Troad, in former Nicaean territory with 'Arsenite' sympathies; Andronicus provides transport for church and 'Arsenite' leaders and attends himself with aunt Theodora and cousins Anna of Epirus and Theodora (Muzalon's widow).

'Arsenite' 'martyrs' ill-treated by Michael are paraded, and documents stating rival cases are subject to trial by fire and are both burnt so 'Arsenites' temporarily accept Patriarch Gregory as legitimate; he anathematizes all who resist and Andronicus of Sardes dismissed for 'conspiracy' and wanting Patriarchate.

Andronicus allows the late Arsenius a ceremonial funeral and shrine in Constantinople.

Andronicus signs alliance with William, Count of Montferrat, the Northern Italian claimant to Thessalonica under Latin 'empire' grants, and marries his daughter Yolande (renamed 'Irene') to whom William transfers his claim; Andronicus to pay for 500 knights in Montferrat army.

Patriarch Gregory forbids proposed marriage of Nicephorus and Anna's daughter Thamar to Andronicus' son Michael due to consanguinity.

## Turkish Sultanate

**March** Ghiyath-al-Din Mas'ud installed in Konya as sole ruler; Mongols execute cousin Kaikhusray; Fakhr-al-Din Ali Vizler.

## Italy

**May** As Charles of Anjou leaves Provence with new fleet, Sicilian admiral Roger of Loria blockades Naples and raids coastal ports; **5 June** he captures Charles of Salerno in battle in Bay of Naples and destroys his fleet; the younger Charles is taken to Sicily and in prisoner-exchange Sicilians force Angevins to free Manfred and Helena Ducaena's daughter Beatrice after 18 years in prison.

Charles of Anjou returns to Naples to face more revolts against French in Italy, **August** unsuccessfully besieges Reggio, and retires to Brindisi abandoning Calabria.

## Trebizono

? Ex-Emperor George returns from Persia to reclaim throne but arrested by nobles.

## 1285 Italy

**7 January** Charles of Anjou dies at Foggia; with heir Charles of Salerno in captivity, French officials under Count Robert of Artois run regency but war continues on papal insistence.

## Morea

Regency government of Angevin lands installs Duke William of Athens as 'bailli' of Achaia.

## Turkish Sultanate

**January** The late Sultan Kaikhusrau's widow persuades new Mongol ruler Arghun to grant their small sons half the Sultanate; Arghun's brother Geikhatu with army installs them at Konya.

## Italy

**29 March** Death of Pope Martin IV at Perugia; **2 April** Giacomo Savelli, aristocratic Roman, elected (Honorius IV) and continues Martin's plan to back Philip III of France in invading Aragon.

## Byzantium

**15 June** Treaty between Andronicus II and Venice, allotting commercial quarter in Constantinople to Venice and restoring earlier privileges with guarantee of recognition to Venetian possessions in Aegean; 10-year peace (including Euboea, largely recovered in past few years since death of Licario).

## Trebizond

Brief usurpation of John II's half-sister Theodora, Manuel's daughter by Georgian princess.

## Turkish Sultanate

**June** Kaikhusrau's widow secures arrival of Güneri Beg, Karamanid leader, and other Turcoman chiefs at Konya to protect her unpopular regime; while she and Mas'ud are both en route to Arghun to request support one of her sons is kidnapped from Konya by Mas'ud's supporters; **October** Arghun's government recognizes Mas'ud as sole Sultan, deposes and executes Kaikhusrau's other son, and sends Gaikhatu with army to enforce Mas'ud's rule in Konya.

## Byzantium

**7 February–August** Synod at Blachernae tries Beccus and his archdeacons Constantine Meliteniotes and George Metochites for Unionist heresy; Beccus produces patristic arguments to back his theology but they are condemned for heresy and sent to prison in Gulf of Astakos; synod produces a 'Tome' against Beccus' heresies for Emperor and bishops to sign, but Bishop Theoleptus of Philadelphia starts controversy by accusing Gregory of heresy on 'procession of the Holy Spirit' in the 'Tome'.

## 1286 Turkish Sultanate

Unsuccessful campaign of Sultan Mas'ud, 'vizier' Fakhr-al-Din Ali, and Mongol army against the 'Germiyan' principality in Phrygia.

**1287 Byzantium**

**Easter** ‘Ilkhan’ Arghun’s ambassador to Western princes for attack on Moslems, Chinese Nestorian monk Rabbans Sauma, visits Constantinople on way to Italy.

**Italy**

**3 April** Death of Pope Honorius IV; long vacancy in office due to factional struggles.

**May–June** Unsuccessful papal-financed naval expedition to Sicily to besiege Augusta, near Syracuse; it retires after **23 June**.

Roger of Loria’s fleet destroys second expedition under Count of Flanders in Bay of Naples, watched by Rabban Sauma.

**Byzantium**

Expedition recovers Dyrrachium and Avlona from preoccupied Angevin Kingdom’s garrisons.

**Morea/Athens**

Death of Duke William of Athens; succeeded in Athens by 14-year-old son Guy II and in Achaia as ‘bailli’ by Nicholas of St. Omer, co-feudatory of Thebes; Guy’s mother Helena Ducaena, daughter of John of Thessaly, regent in Athens.

**1288 Thessaly**

(or  
1289)

Death of John ‘the Bastard’, ruler of principality since c. 1258; succeeded by sons Constantine and Theodore, under regency of their mother who accepts Andronicus’ suzerainty.

**Italy**

**15 and 22 February** Election of Franciscan friar Girolamo Maschi as Pope Nicholas IV.

Prolonged negotiations over terms of Charles of Salerno's release between his captor, Peter of Aragon's eldest son and successor Alfonso, his brother James of Sicily, and other interested parties especially France and the Papacy; **October** treaty at Canfranc confirms earlier agreement at Oléron; Charles freed and escorted from Aragon to France.

## Byzantium/Italy

**Summer** Andronicus sends embassy to Charles of Salerno's younger son Robert, regent in Naples, to ask for the hand of Philip of Courtenay and Beatrice of Anjou's daughter and heiress Catherine, heiress to Latin 'empire' claim, for his eldest son Michael; Pope Nicholas lends approval to proposition but tells Robert to proceed carefully, and Byzantine envoys go on to Philip IV in France.

## Georgia

Mongols execute Demetrius II of Georgia; his cousin Vakhtang of Iberia, son of David V, appointed as successor.

## 1289 Italy

Charles of Salerno returns to Italy to be greeted as Papal champion and **Whit Sunday** Nicholas crowns him King of Naples and Sicily but insists he pursue the war against Alfonso and James despite his promises on release to accept loss of Sicily; Charles however secures truce with Alfonso when the latter unsuccessfully attacks Gaeta, while remaining at war with James.

## Byzantium

**June** Synod held at Blachernae Palace at Theoleptus of Philadelphia's insistence to examine charges against Patriarch Gregory; Gregory acquitted of all except one charge but resigns anyway.

Birth of John Palaeologus, first son of Andronicus' second marriage (d.1305).

## Italy/Morea

Charles of Salerno appoints Guy de Charpigny, ‘bailli’ of Vostitza, as ‘bailli’ of Achaia, and at urging of Achaian knights in his service allows Isabella de Villehardouin to leave Italy and return home for proper rule after 10 years being held at Angevin castles; he selects Flemish nobleman, Florent d’Avesnes from Count’s family, as her husband to ensure a genuine Villehardouin heir as Achaians demand; on their wedding-day Charles resigns as Prince of Achaia in their favour to repair his father’s mistakes.

## Byzantium

**14 October** Andronicus II selects Athanasius, holy hermit from Mount Athos, now resident at his request in Constantinople, as new Patriarch; non-partisan, charitable, and popular but resented as uneducated and denounces clerical wealth, absenteeism, and other worldly sins.

## 1290 Byzantium/Morea

Florent of Hainault sends request for negotiations to Andronicus, who sends Philanthropenus to Achaia; seven-year-truce agreed.

Andronicus’ envoys return from France and Naples; Nicholas III sends friendly letter to Emperor, apologising for not writing on his accession and requesting ecclesiastical talks and approving of Michael/Catherine marriage.

Andronicus sets out for Anatolia to tour crumbling defences and try to shore up frontier after loss of Maeander valley and increasing Turcoman raids into North-West Anatolia, the only relatively safe part of the former Nicaean lands left; he calls in at blinded John IV Lascaris at Dadibryze and asks for forgiveness for father’s sins and recognition of his rule.

## 1291 Byzantium/Italy/Epirus

Andronicus campaigns in the Sangarius valley and then down to Nymphaeum, the former Lascarid Imperial residence that is now under Turkish threat.

Birth of Andronicus and Yolande’s second son Theodore, later ruler of her family’s marquisate of Monteferrat.

**Summer** Byzantine ambassadors sent to Charles II and Robert in Naples with full powers for settlement of Angevin/Byzantine conflict and marital alliance.

Charles II appoints Florent to resume diplomatic relations with Nicephorus, and marriage of Charles' younger son Philip to Nicephorus' daughter Thamar proposed.

## Italy

Collapse of Angevin/Aragon and Sicily peace-efforts after **18 June** death of Alfonso of Aragon, as his brother James of Sicily succeeds but refuses to give up Sicily; Papacy and Naples insist on no Union of Aragon and Sicily.

## 1292 Italy

**4 April** Death of Pope Nicholas; long vacancy.

## Byzantium

Andronicus campaigns in Western Anatolia, presumably from Nymphaeum into the Maeander valley. **Spring ?** Roger of Loria's fleet raids Aegean and sacks Lesbos, Chios, Naxos, and Monemvasia.

Byzantine army sent into Epirus under Michael Giabas Tarchaneiotes, and 50 or 60 Genoese ships sail round Greece to attack Arta in co-ordinated assault; Tarchaneiotes recovers Ioannina.

(or  
1293) Florent of Hainault brings Achaïans to Arta to drive off Genoese, and Count Richard Orsini of Cephallonia also brings troops; the allied army advances to Ioannina where Byzantine Cuman/Turk mercenaries flee before armed knights and abandon town; they then return to Arta to drive off the Genoese as they disembark.

## Bulgaria

Death of George Terter; Mongol invaders install Smilec as their puppet Czar.

## Georgia

Death of Vakhtang II.

### 1293 Byzantium/Morea

After Byzantine army retires from Epirus, Nicephorus rewards the Latin Lords for their assistance and marries daughter Maria to Count Richard Orsini's son; Nicephorus' son Thomas sent to Achaia as a guarantee to Florent that the Despot will pay large debts to him for the campaign.

**March** Andronicus' brother Constantine arrested at Nymphaeum for plot.

Charles II persuades Nicephorus that when Tamar marries his son Philip they, rather than Thomas, should be heirs to Epirus; Lepanto/Naupactus and three other castles garrisoned by Angevins as guarantee that it will be carried out.

**June** Andronicus returns to Constantinople leaving nephew Alexius Philanthropenus in charge of army; he is greeted by complaints against injustice and tyranny of Patriarch Athanasius, whose confiscation of Episcopal and monastic excess wealth to feed the poor is much resented.

Athanasius is investigated and **16 October** forced to resign, but hides a document anathematizing his enemies in secret hole at top of pillar in Hagia Sophia, presumably for future use.

Andronicus' brother Constantine and other plotters returned from Nymphaeum for imprisonment in capital.

**December** Andronicus selects monk Cosmas of Sozopolis as next Patriarch; takes title of John (XII).

## Georgia

Demetrius II's son David appointed to rule Georgia by Mongols.

### 1294 Byzantium/Morea/Italy

**1 January** Consecration of Patriarch John XII.

Death of 'Grand Logothete' Theodore Metochites, founder of Monastery of the Saviour 'In Chora' ('in the fields') in Western quarter of Constantinople; succeeded by accomplished diplomat Nicephorus Chumnus.



Pretender claiming to be Lachanas/Ivalio declares himself in Constantinople, and as a prophecy claims he will defeat Turks Andronicus sends him out of the way to River Sangarius to lead campaign of alarmingly enthusiastic peasants; Turks defeat him and he is recalled and arrested.

Church synod refuses Andronicus II's request to excommunicate anyone who revolts against Emperor, but accepts banning of candidates for bishoprics from giving gifts to electors.

Slavs from Giannitza on Mt. Taygetus seize the Achaian castle at Kalamata, led by two 'archons', and then 600 fellow-tribesmen seize town claiming to act on Imperial orders (in breach of truce); Florent sends 'Constable' Jean Chauderon and Geoffrey d' Aulnay to Andronicus to protest, and he agrees to order return of Kalamata **June?** on advice of Charles II's ambassadors and his brother Theodore; he secretly orders his representative sent to carry out orders, Sgouromallis 'Michael' of Taygetus, not to do so but Sgouromallis honourably warns them and advises them to acquire a written order; he then hands over castle in person ignoring secret instructions.

Alexius Philanthropenus, commanding in South-West Anatolia, retakes Miletus.

**21 May** Coronation of Andronicus' son Michael IX; Charles II's envoys attend during mission to negotiate marriage of Catherine of Courtenay to Michael; then Andronicus sends monk Sophronius to Naples (and on to Rome after Papal election) with proposals that Catherine's dowry include the right to Latin 'Empire' and on marriage Charles and Pope accept lapse of her claim.

**Summer** Andronicus sends Theodore Metochites and John Glykys to Cyprus and Armeria to investigate possibility of marriage between Michael and one of Hethoum's sisters.

**June** Grand 'coming-of-age' tournament for Guy II of Athens.

**5 July** Election of elderly prophetic hermit Peter of Morrone as Pope Celestine V.

**September** Charles II marries younger son Philip of Taranto to Nicephorus' daughter Tamar and cedes the suzerainty of Achaia and Athens to him.

Andronicus sends influential Patriarch Athanasius of Alexandria to King Amalric of Cyprus and his new brother-in-law Hethoum of Armenia to establish closer links, but mission halted when his ship attacked at Phocaea by pirates.

John Glykys becomes 'Logothete of Drome' (foreign minister).

**13 December** Abdication of Celestine V at Naples; **24 December** forceful Cardinal Benedict Gaetani elected Pope Boniface VIII.

## 1295 Italy

Boniface refuses to give assent to marriage of Catherine and Michael and surrender of Latin Empire title, as Charles informs Andronicus.

### Morea

? Castle of St. George near Skorta taken by treachery by Byzantines thanks to grudge of silk-merchant Corcondylas against its Lord, and garrisoned by company of Turkish mercenaries; not returned to Florent builds Beaufort castle to offset its loss.

### Byzantium

Andronicus turns to Armenian alliance and double-marriage arranged of Hethoum's sisters, Rita (renamed 'Maria') to Michael and Theodora (renamed 'Theophano') to son of John II of Thessaly; the princesses travel to Constantinople but Theophano dies en route.

**Autumn** Alexius Philanthropenus revolts in Anatolia, and local enthusiasm led by monasteries; he arrests Andronicus' brother Theodore at Ephesus but some troops remain loyal including Theodore's father-in-law Libadarius at Neokastra who persuades Cretan soldiers in Alexius' army to overthrow him; **December** Alexius is arrested and blinded and rebellion collapses.

## 1296 Byzantium

**16 January** Marriage of Michael IX and Rita/Maria of Armenia; ?Hethoum in Constantinople for wedding and negotiates with Andronicus.

**March** Return of Sophronius from Italy, with a message from Frederick III of Sicily, James' brother who has taken over Sicily on his abdication to rule solely Aragon and placate Papacy; he offers Andronicus his daughter Yolande, unaware of Michael's marriage, and an alliance against Charles II but no reply.

## **Epirus**

Death of Nicephorus; widow Anna regent for son Thomas; Philip of Taranto suzerain.

## **Byzantium**

**June–July** Earthquakes cause damage in and around Constantinople, and in the capital the column of Archangel Michael, erected by Michael VIII to celebrate reconquest, falls; **22 July** 75 Venetian ships arrive in pursuit of Italian war with Venice to attack Genoese quarter at Galata, and Andronicus arrests Venetian residents and let Genoese non-combatants hide in city; Venetians set fire to houses on Golden Horn outside sea-walls before withdrawing.

Andronicus complains at violation of 1285 treaty and demands that Venetian residents pay 80,000 'hyperpera' damages.

**December** Genoese in Constantinople massacre Venetians, and Andronicus is unable to prevent it but sends ambassadors to Venice to apologise.

## **1297 Morea**

Death of Florent of Hainault; Isabella appoints Count Richard of Cephalonia to run principality from Andravida as 'bailli' and resides at castle of Nesi on Gulf of Coron.

## **Trebizond**

Death of John II, Andronicus' brother-in-law; succeeded by ? 14-year-old son Alexius II under regency of widow Eudocia.

## **Byzantium**

Andronicus sends 'Grand Constable' Michael Glabas Tarchaneiotes against Stephen Miliutin of Serbia in campaign up Strymon valley; he finds it hard to bring Serbs to battle in the mountains and advises Andronicus to try diplomatic solution; Andronicus sends embassy to Serbs but slow progress.

Embassy to 'Golden Horde' at Sarai about marital alliance.

**25 March** Birth of Michael IX and Maria's elder son Andronicus (III).

**Summer** Venetian fleet arrives at Constantinople demanding compensation and accusing Andronicus of inciting Genoese attacks; Andronicus refuses their large demand so they set fire to houses along Golden Horn again, blowing smoke through windows of Blachernae Palace, then sail off to plunder around Sea of Marmora; they return with prisoners who they string up from their masts until their relatives pay ransoms, thus acquiring compensation.

## 1298 Turkish Sultanate

Sultan Mas'ud deposed by Mongols for backing rebel against 'Ilkhan'; succeeded by nephew Ala-ed-Din Kaqobad.

### Byzantium

Andronicus appoints his cousin John Tarchaneiotes as commander in Anatolia; he rebuilds army and distributes new grants of land as 'pronoia' but his strictness and honesty makes him unpopular.

Andronicus continues negotiations with Serbia, and proposes that his widowed sister Eudocia marry Stephen Miliutin as Stephen's previous two marriages are canonically invalid; Eudocia, visiting Constantinople, refuses to go and live in Serbia.

Andronicus proposes that his 5-year-old daughter by second marriage, Simonis, marries Stephen; Patriarch John is scandalized and tries to ban marriage but Andronicus overcomes his objections.

## 1299 Byzantium

**Spring** Andronicus goes to Thessalonica to conclude negotiations with Stephen, and the King arrives in person; **Easter** wedding celebrated by Archbishop Macarius of Ochrid and Simonis to be brought up with Serb royal family until of age to consummate marriage; Byzantine-Serb alliance and Stephen returns recent conquests in Northern Epirus including Dyrrachium, but Stephen's conquests in Macedonia accepted as Simonis' dowry.

Andronicus receives Venetian envoys at Thessalonica but refuses proposals; he is left isolated by Venetian-Genoese peace.

Tarchaneotes' local aristocratic enemies trump up a charge of heresy against him to put to Bishop Theoleptus of Philadelphia, supported by Patriarch John on account of Tarchaneotes' 'Arsenite' past; he is accused of treason and flees to Andronicus at Thessalonica.

Back in Constantinople, Andronicus receives Patriarch's resignation but assures him that he found marriage distasteful and only carried it out for good of Empire; however Andronicus' wife Yolande/Irene is also annoyed and has rift with husband.

## **Italy**

**October** Angevins invade Sicily, but Frederick captures Philip of Taranto.

## **Bulgaria**

Theodore Svetoslav, George Terter's son, expels Smilec and regains Kingdom.

## **1300 Trebizond**

Alexius II turns down Andronicus' proposal that he marry daughter of leading minister, Nicephorus Chumnus.

## **Byzantium**

**2 February** Patriarch John resumes duties for 'Feast of Purification'.

## **Morea**

Isabella goes to Rome for 'Jubilee' celebrations, leaving Nicholas of St. Omer as 'bailli'; she marries Count Philip of Savoy as second husband, with Pope Boniface's blessing but opposition of Charles II who prefers to retain Angevin influence without rival Piedmontese influence; Philip brings unpopular Piedmontese adventurers to Achaia and extortion and resentment follow.

## **Italy**

Charles II's son Robert unsuccessfully besieges Messina.

## 1301 Byzantium

Around 16,000 Alan refugees from trans-Danube steppes arrive in Thrace and ask for asylum; Andronicus enrolls them in armies and raises new taxes to pay for them.

### Trebizond

Death of Emperor Alexius II's mother Eudocia Palaeologina; Alexius defeats a raiding army of Turcomans from the interior at Cerasus and captures their commander, 'Koustouganēs'.

### Italy

Philip IV of France's younger brother, Charles of Valois, marries Catherine of Courtenay under Papal auspices; he thus appears as new champion for Latin claims in the East.

**July** Truce in Sicily between Robert, whose armies hold Catania, and Frederick.

## 1302 Byzantium

Andronicus sends one Alan contingent to Nicomedia under general Muzalon; Michael IX takes command of second contingent as part of his first military command, and marches South through Turk-afflicted Aegean provinces to Magnesia where he is surrounded.

Michael's local levies desert to protect their property from devastation, and Alans request release but Michael persuades Andronicus to raise new taxes to pay them to stay on for another three months; **Late summer?** at end of that period they start to desert and Michael is stranded.

### Italy

**May** Charles of Valois lands in Sicily on new Papally-backed expedition against Frederick; his army struggles across island to South coast but wilts in heat and Philip IV recalls him; **31 August** he and Robert of Anjou sign peace-treaty with Frederick at Caltabellotta-Angevin troops withdraw, Charles retains title of King of Sicily, and Frederick 'King of the Island of Sicily' for lifetime and marries Charles' daughter.

## **Byzantium**

**July** Patriarch John offers resignation again; successor is considered though he does not withdraw definitively, and Andronicus considers recalling Athanasius.

Turkish invasion in Magnesia area and Bithynia cause refugees to flood into Constantinople and surrounding area; the Venetians return demanding compensation (13 Venetian ships, 7 pirate-ships) and sail into Golden Horn to burn houses again; Andronicus orders construction of boom across Horn to trap them but pirates break out, raid Princes' Islands, and round up refugees there who they threaten to kill; Andronicus has to pay the 8000 'hyperpera' demanded.

Muzalon and his Alans are driven back by Turks under 'Emir' Osman 'Ghazi', founder of the Ottoman dynasty and chieftain ruling principality in Sangarius Valley; **27 July** Muzalon defeated by Osman at Bapheus, and retreats to Nicomedia; Osman ravages unprotected Bithynia West to Cyzicus and around Troad to Adramyttium but fortified cities hold out.

**September** Andronicus accepts Venetian terms for compensation in peace-treaty, paying 79,000 'hyperpera'.

Discovery of ex-Patriarch Athanasius' letter excommunicating his enemies by boys looking for birds nests in Hagia Sophia adds to ecclesiastical crisis.

Michael IX holds out with remnants of army at Pergamum.

## **1303 Byzantium**

**15 January** Athanasius sends message to Andronicus predicting imminent Wrath of God on Constantinople, and earth tremors follow; **17 January** there is a second, severe earthquake, and Andronicus announces that a holy monk forewarned him; he organizes a procession to the monk's residence, and leads it to Athanasius' monastery where the crowds demand that he resume Patriarchate; John XII and some bishops still resist due to Athanasius' past reputation.

Andronicus starts confiscating land, including, Church property, to grant to soldiers in attempt to win recruits.

Andronicus offers daughter to 'Ilkhan' in Persia in return for troops, and persuades a Mongol chieftain called Kuzin Pasha to take command of Nicomedia and win over Turks by marrying Emir's daughter but it fails. **April** Empress Irene leaves for Thessalonica, where she resides permanently.

## Thessaly/Epirus

Death of Constantine of Neopatra, ruler of Thessaly, succeeded by son John II; he leaves Guy II of Athens as regent, and Guy appoints Frankish 'bailli' Antoine de Flamenc and grants other titles and castles to countrymen; regent Anna of Epirus objects and seizes border castle, so Guy raises army to invade-allegedly 900 Frankish knights and 6000 Thessalian light cavalry.

Anna backs down; Guy attacks Thessalonica instead in unprovoked act but Empress Yolande/Irene, residing there after recent quarrel with Andronicus, persuades him to be honourable and withdraw.

## Italy/Epirus

Charles II demands that Anna hand over Epirus to Tamar as Nicephorus promised, or at least accept strict Angevin control; she refuses so on his orders Philip of Savoy (Achaia) and Richard Orsini's son John (heir to Cephallonia) unsuccessfully attack Arta.

## Byzantium

**June** Patriarch John finally abdicates; Athanasius restored.

**Summer** Michael IX retires to Pegae and falls ill; Aegean provinces abandoned to Turks.

'Emirate' of **Menteshe** establishes itself in Caria, South of Maeander; **Aydin** and his sons in central Thracesion, closing in on Smyrna; **Sarukhan** In Lydia around Pergamum; **Karasi** in Mysia and Troad.

**September** Andronicus invites Roger de Flor, ex-Templar Catalan knight in command of large mercenary company that has been fighting for Frederick in Sicily, to Constantinople to fight in Asia Minor; c. 6500 members of 'Catalan Company' arrive in capital, with Roger promised double normal mercenary rates for his men and Andronicus' niece Maria and title of 'Grand Duke' for himself.

Roger marries Maria, but Catalans prove unruly in capital and after brawls are moved to Cyzicus for the winter, they drive Turks out of district but pillage themselves.



## Italy

**11 October** Death of Pope Boniface VIII; **22 October** Benedict XI elected.

## 1304 Byzantium

**Early** Roger de Flor and Catalans leave Cyzicus, paying compensation for damage, and march South with c.500 remaining Alans, most of whom desert; they reach Pegae, but Michael refuses entry due to reputation; **April** they relieve besieged Philadelphia.

Roger marches to Magnesia on the River Hermus and down to Ephesus to make contact with ships; he makes Magnesia his headquarters and stores booty there, but most of it is pillaged from local population not recovered from Turks; he ignores strategic reconquest of Maeander cities and marches along South coast of Anatolia to Pisidia while his fleet takes Chios and Lesbos.

## Italy

**7 July** Death of Pope Benedict XI.

Theodore Svetoslav of Bulgaria invades Thrace, and Andronicus recalls Roger to deal with him; he marches back to Magnesia whose inhabitants refuse him entry, and **Autumn** on to Gallipoli, where **October** 1300 more Catalans have landed under Berenguer d' Enteca to join campaign and require payment.

Andronicus introduces harsh wheat and barley tax, 'Sitokithron', requiring farmers to pay according to acreage of land; the coinage raised to be paid to Catalans. European 'pronoliers' to pay 1/3 of revenues to State.

Athanasius shows his worth in organizing relief-efforts for the flood of refugees from Turks. **October** Fall of Ephesus to Aydin's Turks.

Andronicus debases the coinage again.

Roger de Flor winters at Gallipoli, and gives Berenguer his new title of 'Grand Duke' (granted to Roger by Andronicus **25 December**) as he is official representative of their sovereign, James of Aragon.

## Cephalonia

Death of Count Richard Orsini; succeeded by son John.

## 1305 Byzantium/Italy

**January** Death of Marquis John of Montferrat, brother of Empress Yolande, leaving her and her children as his heirs; emissaries visit her at Thessalonica to ask for her nominee as ruler, and her eldest son John is passed over after Patriarch Athanasius warns that he may be needed as Byzantine heir if half-brother Michael IX and his son Andronicus were to die; Yolande chooses younger son Theodore.

### Byzantium

**Early** Roger de Flor demands 300,000 ‘hyperpera’ compensation for loot lost at Magnesia, while Berenguer decides Byzantine cannot pay him and returns home in disgust, trying to persuade Genoese to join him against Andronicus.

**February** Andronicus grants Roger rank of ‘Caesar’, more money, and right to all of Anatolia he can reconquer but not to Byzantine-held Brusa and Nicaea; Roger agrees to new campaign but goes to Adrianople first to meet Michael IX, and **30 April** while visiting his camp near city is murdered by an Alan in blood-feud from 1304; Alans kill Roger’s bodyguards and the remaining Catalans refuse Byzantine apologies and seize Gallipoli to start ravaging Thrace.

Berenguer de Rocafort elected Catalan commander at Gallipoli, and it is proclaimed Aragonese territory; **28 May** Berenguer takes town of Heraclea on the Propontis and slaughters populace; **30 May** Rhégium pillaged; however Genoese fleet sinks Berenguer d’Enteca’s ships and captures him.

### Italy

**5 June** Pope Clement V elected.

### Byzantium

**June** Michael IX attacks Gallipoli peninsula but is defeated in two battles; in a third, at Apros near Rhaedestus, he is wounded and his Turkish mercenaries desert, and while he retires to Didymoteichon Catalans massacre population of Rhaedestus and use it as base.

**July** Genoese admiral Andrea Murisco temporarily secures control of Hellespont, but he is later killed and Catalans bring Turkish mercenaries over to join army.

Death of eminent scholar and teacher Manuel ('Maximus') Planudes.

Theodore Svetoslav invades again and takes Mesembria and Anchialus.

**Autumn/Winter** John Drimys leads unsuccessful pro-Lascarid plot in Constantinople; implicated 'Arsenite' monks evicted from monasteries.

## **Epirus**

Anna of Epirus rejects Angevin suzerainty and retakes Angevin castles on the coast around Gulf of Ambracia.

## **1306 Byzantium**

Catalans and Turkish allies devastate Thrace, and Andronicus evacuates countryside between Selymbria and capital.

Andronicus negotiates with Genoa for naval aid against Catalans, and **spring** a naval expedition reaches Constantinople; **?summer** Andronicus arranges his son Theodore's engagement to Argentina Spinola, daughter of Genoese joint 'Captain of People', to assist alliance; **?Theodore** leaves for his inheritance, Montferrat.

Andronicus refuses Genoese terms of 300,000 'hyperpera' for hire of fleet against Catalans.

Andronicus offers Catalans 100,000 'hyperpera' for truce but refused.

Death of John IV Lascaris in prison in Bithynia (or 1304/5).

## **Epirus/Italy**

Philip of Taranto campaigns against Anna, and forces her to hand back disputed castles but cannot take Arta due to disease in army.

## **Byzantium/Italy**

Theodore, Andronicus' second son by Irene, arrives in Montferrat.

Philip of Taranto retakes Dyrrachium.

## 1307 **Byzantium**

**Spring** Death of John Palaeologus, Andronicus' eldest son by Irene and governor of Thessalonica; Empress Yolande gains control and reputedly threatens secession.

Andronicus makes peace with Theodore Svetoslav, ceding Anchialus and Mesembria and granting him the hand of Michael IX's daughter Theodora; Bulgaria supplies grain to famine-hit Constantinople to make up for impossibility of harvest in Thrace.

**May/June** Catalans are joined at Gallipoli by the 'Infante' Ferdinand of Majorca, Frederick II's nominee as their commander; Berenguer refuses to accept his leadership but they eventually accept Ferdinand's proposal to move on in search of new plunder and set out for Macedonia.

Catalan leadership quarrels again, and Berenguer d' Enteca is murdered by Berenguer de Rocafort; other commander Fernan Ximenes de Arena deserts to Byzantium on the march, and Ferdinand leaves the company.

Andronicus half-sister Maria ('Despina Khatun') goes to marry Mongol prince Charbandan.

## **Italy**

Pope Clement V excommunicates Andronicus and forbids any Western ruler to have dealings with him, at behest of his patron Philip IV of France; he appoints Philip's brother Charles of Valois, as Catherine of Courtenay's husband, to lead new Crusade.

## **Morea**

Philip of Taranto, as suzerain of Achaia, dismisses Isabella and Philip of Savoy as his governors and they return to Italy obediently, abandoning Isabella's patrimony and the rights of her daughter (by Florent) Mahaut; Nicholas of St. Omer appointed 'bailli'.

## **Byzantium**

**August/September?** Catalans arrive in the Chalcidice peninsula near Thessalonica, and set up their new base at Cassandreia to pillage the area; Charles of Valois establishes contact, and John Monomachus, governor of Thessalonica, approaches Charles about alliance.

## 1308 **Byzantium**

**Spring** Catalans, led by Berenguer de Rocafort, fail to take Thessalonica but pillage Macedonia and the Chalcidice.

Ferdinand of Sicily, having turned pirate with Aragonese shipping in the Aegean en route home and pillaged Halmyrus, is visiting Venetian Euboea when he is attacked and captured and ships dispersed by Thibaut de Cepoy, Charles of Valois' local commander, as a potential rival; Thibaut hands him over to Guy II of Athens for captivity (Guy sends him home) and goes on to Cassandreia to negotiate with Berenguer who wants himself to rule restored 'Kingdom of Thessalonica'.

### **Byzantium/Russia**

**June** Athanasius rejects nomination of Gerontius as next Metropolitan of Kiev by senior Russian ruler, Michael of Tver, and installs a Galician, Petercd. 1326), current candidate to be Bishop of Galicia, uniting the sees.

## **Byzantium**

Chandrenus leads Byzantine army into Macedonia to fight Catalans; Berenguer, losing confidence of men, is deposed and deported to Naples by Cepoy, but he cannot win over Catalans to Charles' plans and abandons them too.

### **Athens**

Death of childless Duke Guy II; succeeded by Walter of Brienne.

## 1309 **Byzantium**

**Spring** Leaving two main parties of Turks behind, the Catalans invade Thessaly via Vale of Tempe and start pillaging countryside; John II appeals to Chandrenus for aid.

Chandrenus leads Byzantine army into Thessaly; the Catalans are hemmed in against the sea, but Duke Walter of Athens refuses to join coalition against them and proposes to hire them to restore his authority over Thessaly.

**September** Patriarch Athanasius, resented in capital for seizing property of Eastern Patriarchates there and excluding Patriarchs from Liturgy, is finally persuaded to abdicate and retire to monastery, after evidence of his unpopularity within Constantinopolitan Church as his officials produce a drawing on footstool of him leading the Emperor by bridle like a donkey.

## 1310 Byzantium

Andronicus II persuades leader of one of main Turkish bands still in Macedonia and Thrace, Halil, to enrol his men in Byzantine service and return to Asia with transport provided by Venetians across Hellespont; an attempt to relieve Turks of booty en route leads to Halil revolting again and plundering Thrace.

### Thessaly

**Spring** Byzantine and Thessalian armies reach agreement with the Catalan Company who are to move on into their new employer Duke Walter's lands, and they start to march South.

Walter is unwilling to receive Catalans in his territory, but they seize Lamia and negotiations are unsuccessful.

### Byzantium

**9 May** Niphon, Bishop of Cyzicus, consecrated Patriarch; he reaches agreement with the 'Arsenites' whereby they accept reunion with official Church and in return Patriarch Joseph (d. 1283) is omitted from Liturgical commemoration and Athanasius and John XII are never re-instated.

**September** 'Encyclical' celebrates reunion of Byzantine Church.

## 1311 Athens

**March** Duke Walter and most of his feudal levy are killed by Catalans in battle of Cephissus, near site of Orchomenus in Boeotia, as their heavy cavalry sinks in marsh and is assailed with arrows; de Stromoncourt, Pallavicini, and most of senior lords killed.

Catalans take over the fiefs of Athens and Thebes, under titular government of Roger Deslaur as Bonifazio of Verona (of Euboea) refused honour; Walter's widow and son escape to West to appeal for aid.

## **Byzantium**

Halil defeats Michael IX in Thrace; Andronicus turns to Serbia.

### **1312 Byzantium**

2000 Serbian cavalry and Genoese fleet assist Andronicus' army in surrounding Halil and his men in peninsula of Gallipoli; **Late?** the Turks are massacred as Gallipoli is stormed.

## **Athens**

Catalans turn to their ancestral ruler James II's brother Frederick of Sicily and nominate him as their overlord; he agrees and sends out Berenguer de Estanol to serve as regent for his second son Manfred who will take over 'Duchy' once he comes of age.

### **1313 Morea/Italy**

Philip IV of France arranges that his niece Catherine, daughter of Charles of Valois and 'Latin Empress' Catherine of Courtenay, heiress to 'empire' claim, marries Philip of Taranto; meanwhile Isabella of Villehardouin's daughter Mahaut, heiress of Villehardouin claim to Achaia, should have her Achaian claim returned to her by Philip of Taranto and marry Philip's nominee, Louis of Burgundy.

Margaret of Akova, Isabella's passed-over younger sister and widow of Richard Orsini of Cephallonia, proposes to Frederick II that her daughter Isabella of Sabran marry Ferdinand of Majorca (ex-leader of Catalans) and they take over Achaia instead.

### **1314 Georgia**

Accession of George VI, younger brother of David VII and Vakhtang.

## Byzantium

**April** Patriarch Niphon forced to resign after accusation of simony.

## Morea

Margaret of Akova escorts daughter Isabella to Aragon to marry Ferdinand of Majorca, but is arrested and imprisoned by Angevins on her return to Achaia.

## 1315 Byzantium

**12 May** John (XIII) Glykys, Andronicus' foreign minister, becomes Patriarch.

## Morea

Margaret of Akova dies in captivity and her daughter Isabella after child-birth, but **June** Ferdinand of Majorca arrives at Clarenza with Aragonese troops to claim rule of Achaia; Angevins hold out at Patras and **Autumn** Mahaut and Louis of Burgundy arrive in Messina as Angevin nominees.

## 1316 Byzantium

**February** Andronicus II crowns grandson Andronicus III co-emperor.

## Athens

Death of titular Duke Manfred, succeeded by brother William under regency of bastard brother Alfonso.

## Morea

Civil war between Aragonese and Angevins over Achaia ends with battles in Elis, as 2000 Byzantines from Mistra and Count John of Cephallonia assist Mahaut and Louis; Ferdinand defeated at Manolada, captured and executed and Mahaut and Louis rule Achaia, but Louis soon dies and Robert of Naples, as suzerain of lands, appoints his own governors rather than letting a woman rule.



**1317    Morea**

Mahaut of Achaia refuses to marry Robert's nominee, his and Philip of Taranto's younger brother John of Gravina; Robert deposes and deports her to Naples and asserts direct Angevin rule.

**Byzantium**

Death of Empress Yolande/Irene at Thessalonica; Andronicus II recovers control of the city in defiance of her plans to pass it on to her children of whom the eldest, Theodore, remains in Italy ruling Montferrat.

**October** Andronicus' grandson Andronicus III marries Adelaide (renamed Irene) daughter of Henry, Duke of Brunswick.

**Athens**

Regent Alfonso seizes most of Euboea from Italian Lords.

**1318    Thessaly**

Death of John II Ducas; principality lapses into chaos as rival lords claim independence, Byzantium retakes North, and regent Alfonso of Athens claims Neopatras.

**Epirus**

'Despot' Thomas murdered by his sister's son, Nicholas Orsini the new Count of Cephallonia, who marries his widow Theodora, Andronicus II's grand-daughter.

**1319    Byzantium**

**11 May** Resignation of Patriarch John XIII Glykys due to ill-health,

**1320    Byzantium**

**March** Gerasimus, elderly and deaf Abbot of Mangana, Patriarch.

While the younger Andronicus is visiting a wealthy mistress in Constantinople one night, his bodyguards attack a suspected rival who turns up at the house and murder him; the victim turns out to be his younger brother Manuel and the resultant scandal causes ailing Michael IX to have relapse; **12 October** Michael dies aged 43.

Andronicus II refuses to recognize his grandson as heir, and considers disinheriting him in favour of his own second son Constantine or Constantine's bastard son Michael Catharus; he unwisely puts his grandson's treacherous cousin and friend Syrgiannes Palaeologus in command in Thrace.

## Morea

Byzantine governor Andronicus Asen takes Akova and Karytaina and wins battle at St. George

## 1321 Byzantium

Andronicus III forms plot to seize control of Thrace in revolt; his friend John Cantacuzene, the future emperor, refuses offer of governorship of Morea on grounds that his father died there as governor (1294) but accepts command in Thessaly as can help his associates.

Cantacuzene, fellow-plotters Theodore Synadenus and Alexius Apocaucus, and others make their way to Syrgiannes' command at Adrianople and **19/20 April** Andronicus III follows on pretence of hunting, Andronicus III proclaimed emperor, and receives support from Theodore Svetoslav of Bulgaria; he promises tax-remissions to local acclaim.

Andronicus II outlaws his grandson and rebels, insists on officials taking oath of loyalty, and arranges Church excommunication, but advisers on both sides arrange negotiations via Bishop Theoleptus of Philadelphia.

**June** Treaty arranged at Rhegium, whereby Andronicus III to rule Thrace but his grandfather to control foreign policy of all Empire.

**November (or April?)** Death of Patriarch Gerasimus.

**November** Syrgiannes defects to Andronicus II, who is emboldened to cancel treaty and resume civil war.

## Serbia

Death of King Stephen Milutin, succeeded by elder son Stephen Deskani.

## 1322 **Byzantium**

After indecisive engagements, resumption of negotiations; **July** treaty at Epitabai, with 'Protos' of monasteries on Mount Athos chairing talks – reunion of Empire and Andronicus III paid allowance and accepted as grandfather's heir.

Andronicus III visits Constantinople to do homage to his grandfather, then returns to Didymoteichon; Syrgiannes is denounced by the younger ruler's partisans for plan to murder Andronicus II and imprisoned.

Andronicus III attacks Bulgaria and retakes Mesembria.

## 1323 **Byzantium/Bulgaria**

Michael Sisman overthrows Theodore Svetoslav and becomes ruler of Bulgaria; he attacks Thrace but is driven off by Andronicus III, and John Cantacuzene distinguishes himself in action against Mongol cavalry in Maritsa valley; Andronicus reconquers Philippopolis.

**November** Esaias, monk, becomes Patriarch of Constantinople.

## **Epirus**

Nicholas Orsini murdered by brother John (II) who marries widow and seizes power.

## 1324 **Byzantium**

Mongols raid Thrace again.

Andronicus II sends blind and elderly Alexius Philanthropenus, the disgraced commander in Anatolia in 1290s, to relieve Turkish siege of isolated Philadelphia, last inland stronghold in Haemus valley; his reputation causes Turks to flee and he relieves city.

Andronicus III's sister Theodora, widow of Theodore Svetoslav, married to his successor Michael Sisman in new alliance.

Andronicus sends Genoese Bishop of Caffa to Italy and France to encourage league against Turks.

**1325 Byzantium**

**2 February** Andronicus III re-crowned as co-emperor in Hagia Sophia; Andronicus II is thrown off his horse in coronation-procession.

John Cantacuzene appointed 'Grand Domestic'.

Cantacuzene campaigns successfully against Turks in Bithynia, but no lasting success.

Venice announces desire for multi-national alliance, including Empire, against Turks.

**1326 Byzantium/Ottoman Emirate**

**Spring** Fall of Brusa to 'Ottomans'/'Osmanlis', who take the city as their new capital; Osman's son Orhan succeeds him as their 'Emir'.

Andronicus II sends envoys to Papal 'curia' at Avignon and France about alliance.

**October** Andronicus III marries his grandfather's choice to be his second wife, Anna of Savoy.

Revolt of Andronicus II's nephew John Palaeologus, governor of Thessalonica, with support of King Stephen Deskani of Serbia.

Pope sends Dominican friar to Constantinople to see if Andronicus is serious about Church reunion; Andronicus and Metochites write to him politely.

**1327 Byzantium**

Death of John Palaeologus of Thessalonica ends rebellion.

**May** Andronicus III visits Michael Sisman of Bulgaria on frontier to arrange treaty, whereby Michael receives aid against Serbia in return for aiding Andronicus against his grandfather.

Venetian representatives in Constantinople approach Andronicus II concerning naval league against Turks.

**October** Andronicus III arrives at Selymbria in defiance of Andronicus II's orders, and refuses instructions to return to Didymoteichon; Andronicus II sends a delegation of bishops, priests, and senators to present his complaints to his grandson; Patriarch Esaias ordered to excommunicate the

younger ruler, refuses, is suspended from functions, and retires to monastery.

Hoping for secret admission to Constantinople, Andronicus III and 1300 men hasten to Constantinople but are not admitted; at the gates Imperial messengers refuse to surrender so they return to Didymoteichon.

Andronicus II sends to Stephen Deskani for aid.

## 1328 **Byzantium**

**January** Andronicus III marches to Thessalonica, storms the gates to general acclaim, and forces surrender of citadel.

Michael Sisman sends 3000 cavalry to Constantinople, but Andronicus III returns to blockade city and persuades commander to withdraw.

Venetians blockade Constantinople and Galata by sea in pursuit of trade-dispute with Genoa; **23 May** at night Andronicus III, Cantacuzene, and c. 800 men arrive at the walls and guard-commander near Gate of St. Romanus let down ropes to enable men to climb walls and open gates.

**24 May** Tumult as Andronicus III's men advance through city finally alerts Andronicus II at palace; the old Emperor takes refuge with icon of Virgin but on grandson's arrival he is assured that no harm intended and is deposed but allowed to live in palace with insignia.

Andronicus III secures capital, and new government includes Catacuzene as 'Grand Domestic'; Patriarch Esaias restored in triumph to Patriarchate; 'Grand Logothete' Theodore Metochites, his mansion sacked by mob, is dismissed, fortune confiscated, and is exiled to Didymoteichon.

Synadenus made Praefect of City, and Alexius Apocaucus treasurer; Syrgiannes is released and exiled to Thessalonica to assist the Emperor's mother Maria there.

**June** Michael Sisman invades Thrace again, reaches Adrianople, but is driven off; Andronicus III confronts him as he returns and forces him to sign a new treaty.

## **Byzantium/Russia**

Theognostus, Byzantine, installed as new Metropolitan of Kiev (d. 1353).

## 1329 **Byzantium**

Andronicus III and Cantacuzene collect army of c. 2000 army veterans from Constantinople and more from Thrace to relieve Ottoman pressure on Nicaea; **1 June** they cross Bosphorus to Chrysopolis, and march along shore of Gulf of Nicomedia; **3 June** at Pelekanon they sight Orchan and c. 8000 men camped in hills; **10 June** they challenge Turks to fight, and c. 300 mounted archers descend to attack Byzantines in plain; two assaults driven back, but as Orchan's main army will not engage Cantacuzene advises retreat to camp and during withdrawal Turks attack again and Andronicus wounded in knee; that night rumour spreads that Andronicus is dead and panicking soldiers abandon camp and flee to coast; **11 June** Andronicus is carried on stretcher to Philokrene on coast for a ship, and Cantacuzene vainly tries to restore discipline as two high-ranking officers killed in Turkish attack on army outside the town; survivors flee to ships at Chrysopolis.

Andronicus convalesces at Didymoteichon and fails to persuade Cantacuzene to become co-emperor.

**Autumn** Leo Calothesis leads Greek uprising on Chios against its Genoese Lord, Martino Zaccaria, whose brother Benedetto betrays him to Byzantines; Andronicus brings ships to the island and Martino is captured and deported to Constantinople; **Late** Andronicus sails to New Phocaea on mainland and receives submission of absent ruler Andreolo Cattareo's deputy, he invites 'Emirs' of Saruchan and Aydin to come to town for conference with him, and the former comes and the latter sends present.

## 1330 **Bulgaria/Serbia**

Michael Sisman attacks Serbia, but **28 May** is defeated and deposed at Velbuzd by Stephen Deskani; Andronicus III regains Mesembria and Anchialus.

Stephen installs Michael's son John Stephen as his client in Bulgaria.

## **Trebizond**

**3 May** Death of Alexius II, aged ?47; succeeded by elder son Andronicus III.

## **Byzantium**

Andronicus III falls seriously ill again at Didymoteichon, and instructs his officials to take an oath to recognize Cantacuzene as their leader and protector on behalf of Anne's children (he has no son yet, but Anne pregnant) if he dies; according to Cantacuzene's own account, he wants to be ordained as monk and thus give up throne but Cantacuzene talks him out of it.

## **Athens**

Nicholas Lancia succeeds Alfonso as Sicilian governor ('Vicar-General').

## **1331 Byzantium**

**2 March** Surrender of Nicaea to Ottomans; Orhan allows those citizens who want to leave to do so with holy relics.

## **Morea**

Death of Philip of Taranto; his widow Catherine sole overlord of Achaia.

## **Serbia**

**11 November** Stephen Deskani overthrown and murdered by a coalition of nobles led by his son Stephen Dusan greatest ruler of the kingdom.

## **Bulgaria**

John Stephen, Serbia client, overthrown by his cousin John Alexander, Stephen Dusan marries John Alexander's sister and preserves the new alliance with Serbia as senior partner.

## **Epirus**

Walter of Brienne's son Walter restores Angevin suzerainty over John II Orsini by naval attack on Arta.

**1332 Trebizond**

Death of Andronicus of Trebizond; his brother Basil deposes 8-year-old son Manuel.

**Byzantine/Italy/France**

**13 February** Death of Andronicus II, now the monk Antonius, aged 73.

**May** Death of Patriarch Esaias.

Umur of Aydin launches first maritime raids from Smyrna across Aegean to Euboea.

**June** Birth of Andronicus III and Anna's eldest son John (V).

**September** Pope John organizes formation of Maritime League of anti-Turkish powers on the basis of Venice's plan of 1325, on proposals of Venetian Crusading enthusiast Marino Sanudo Torcello; Andronicus invited to join Venice and the Knights Hospitaller of Rhodes in supplying 10 ships for campaign, but Pope is not enthusiastic admitting schismatics.

**Athens**

Walter of Brienne's Angevin invasion of Thebes falls and he returns to Italy.

**1333 Byzantine/Thessaly**

Death of Empress Maria, Andronicus' mother, at Thessalonica; she leaves her fortune to her new protégé Syrgiannes Palaeologus; Andronicus is in Thessaly driving out John Orsini of Epirus who is trying to annex the principality following death of leading lord Stephen Gabrielopoulos, and once he has secured Thessaly he marches to Thessalonica.

Andronicus takes over Maria's fortune, arrests Syrgiannes, and sends him to Constantinople for trial for treason; he escapes to Galata and thence to Euboea and Serbia.

Andronicus has successful meeting with Stephen Dusan at Thessalonica and confirms alliance, then returns to capital.



**August** Andronicus brings supplies to Turk-blockaded Nicomedia in person, stays for a week, and meets Orchan in person; he secretly pays 12,000 'hyperpera' tribute to secure what is left of Bithynia.

## **Morea**

John of Gravina cedes Achaia to his nephew, Philip of Taranto and Catherine's son Robert.

## **1334 Byzantium**

**February** John Calecas becomes Patriarch.

## **Italy/Aegean**

**Early** Papal-led league against Turks confirmed and contributions arranged-but as Papacy, France, Venice, and Cyprus without Byzantine participation, due to Papacy.

**Summer** Fleet of c. 80 vessels proceeds to Aegean and campaign against Turkish pirates, defeating Emir of Karasi off Adramyttion; however they fail in objective of attacking Smyrna.

## **Byzantium/Serbia**

Two Papal envoys, Dominican friars, in Constantinople for theological arguments about differences between Churches; Orthodox representatives at debate include Greek theologian Barlaam of Calabria, head of philosophy at Patriarchal academy.

Syrgiannes enters Macedonia with Serb assistance and seizes Castoria; Stephen Dusan breaks treaty and takes fortresses on frontier, and Andronicus and Cantacuzene march on Thessalonica; officer Syrgiannes trusts called Sphrantzes Palaeologus offers to approach the rebel, win confidence, then capture him and with Andronicus' permission goes ahead to do so; he murders Syrgiannes.

Stephen Dusan opens negotiations and **August** meets Andronicus at river near Thessalonica; he agrees to restore captured places on frontier and become ally in return for subsidy, obtaining aid against Hungary.

## Italy/France

**4 December** Death of Pope John XXII; Crusading fleet in Aegean postpones further activities.

**20 December** Benedict XII (Jacques Fournier) elected.

## 1335 Epirus/Byzantium

? Anna poisons her husband John II Orsini and rules as regent for their son, Nicephorus II; agrees to accept Byzantine suzerainty, but Andronicus insists on submission and abdication and prepares for war.

Benedetto Zaccaria tries to reconquer Chios with ships from Galata but fails; later Dominico Cattaneo, Lord of Phocaea, revokes allegiance to Andronicus and invades Lesbos with ships from Genoa and Rhodes; Mytilene captured, and Andronicus prepares expedition and levels walls of Galata.

**Autumn** Andronicus blockades Lesbos and besieges New Phocaea, assisted by troops sent by 'Emir' of Saruchan and by Umur of Aydin; Umur comes to meet Andronicus and Cantacuzene in person at Cape Erythrae/Kara Burun, and treaty of alliance signed whereby Umur lends ships for siege of Mytilene; Cantacuzene and Umur become friends.

## Trebizond

Basil marries Andronicus III's illegitimate daughter Irene.

## 1336 Byzantium

**Early** Surrender of Mytilene to Cantacuzene, after Andronicus' return to capital.

## 1337 Byzantium/Epirus

Following trouble from Albanian banditry around Berat and Kroia, Andronicus decides on campaign en route to Epirus and hires 2000 Turkish mercenaries from Umur; skilled Turkish infantry chase Albanians into mountains and recover their loot, and thousands taken prisoner.

Anna of Epirus arranges to surrender principality to Andronicus in return for promise that Nicephorus can succeed to Despotate on majority; he insists on unconditional surrender and with Turks' reputation to consider Anna agrees despite some Lords preferring resistance with Angevin aid.

Andronicus sends Turks home via Thessalonica, and goes from Berat to Epirus to receive Anna's surrender; he tours the Despotate receiving submissions, and Theodore Synadenus appointed as governor.

Anna and daughters accompany Andronicus back to Thessalonica, but Nicephorus has disappeared and is discovered to have been taken to Catherine of Courtenay's court at Taranto by some rebel nobles.

Fall of Nicomedia to Turks. Stephen Dandolo sent as ambassador to Pope at Avignon.

### 1338 **Morea**

**Autumn** Catherine of Courtenay and her son Robert arrive at Patras to govern Achaia in person, accompanied by Nicephorus of Epirus whose supporters in Epirus plan revolt.

### 1339 **Byzantine/France**

Barlaam of Calabria leads Byzantine Church embassy to Pope Benedict at Avignon for discussions on differences between East and West; he argues that Greeks cannot accept that Western theologians can know that Holy Spirit proceeds from father and son and attacks Thomas Aquinas' doctrines for particular arrogance, but his own theology comes under suspicion for Western-influenced scholasticism; he urges immediate military aid to encourage Byzantines. Anti-scholastic reaction to Barlaam increases at around this time (1336–9), led by the mystical enthusiast Gregory Palamas, monk who has lived mostly at Mount Athos and was briefly Abbot of Esphigmenou Monastery 1335/6; Palamas denounces Barlaam's writings and sends shocked letter to him and his disciple Acyndynus (Palamas' informant), and in return Barlaam accuses him of 'Messalianism' in that his physical/spiritual concentration exercises for meditation have caused practitioners to claim that they can physically see the 'Divine Light'.

Palamas' 'Hesychast' mystical enthusiasts, nicknamed the 'Omphaloscopoi' ('Navel-Gazers'), come under attack and in reply he writes *Triads for the Defence of the Holy Hesychasts* which is signed by Mount Athos abbots and forwarded to Constantinople.

## Byzantium/Epirus

Achaian knights accompany Nicephorus Ducas Orsini to Epirus as rebellion breaks out, and Catherine's galleys establish him at coastal fortress of Thomokastron; Theodore Synadenus imprisoned in revolt in Arta, and other outbreaks in Ioannina and other towns.

Andronicus III prepares army in capital, and orders Michael Monomachus, governor of Thessaly, and John Angelus to lead troops on Arta.

Fall of Chrysopolis to Turks.

## 1340 Byzantium/Epirus

Andronicus and Cantacuzene proceed to Thessalonica and **Spring** invade Epirus, Andronicus heads for Arta and another two armies to castles of Rogoi and Thomokastron; Cantacuzene persuades old acquaintance Alexius Cabasilas, commander of Rogoi, to come to parleys and talks him into surrendering.

After six-months siege, Arta's commander Nicephorus Basilitzes agrees to parley with Cantacuzene, and his men subsequently decide to surrender too with Cantacuzene interceding; Nicephorus and Italian/Achaian garrison hold out at Thomokastron and as Andronicus falls ill Cantacuzene goes to the siege and despite arrival of 13 Italian ships offshore claims he persuaded rebels to surrender.

Nicephorus promised Cantacuzene's daughter and various honours, and rebellion ends; **October?** Nicephorus joins Andronicus at Arta; **November** Imperial party returns home leaving John Angelus to govern Arta; Synadenus transferred to Thessalonica.

Cantacuzene's eldest son Matthew marries Andronicus' cousin Irene.

**Late** Palamas and Athonite representatives arrive in capital to pursue Barlaam for heresy.

## Trebizond

**Late** Death of Emperor Basil; his widow Irene, Andronicus' illegitimate daughter, seizes power as no legitimate son.

**1341 Byzantium**

**Early** Andronicus and court return to capital; **11 June** religious council investigates and condemns Barlaam and upholds Palamas' views as orthodoxy.

Andronicus falls seriously ill and **14/15 June** dies after transfer to monastery of Virgin Hodegetria, aged 44; eldest son John V succeeds aged 9 and while Empress Anne is at the monastery mourning Cantacuzene returns to palace to write letters to provincial governors; **18 June** she takes up rôle as regent and prefers to turn to Patriarch John Calecas for support rather mistrusted Cantacuzene; new 'Grand Duke' (admiral) Alexius Apocaucus, enriched by judicious dealings as treasurer and resented as low-born by aristocrats, encourages Anne against Cantacuzene too.

**July** Crisis over John Alexander of Bulgaria demanding refugee Michael Sisman's extradition and a Serb incursion; Cantacuzene persuades remorseful rich tax-collector Patrikiotes to give money to the army not a monastery, and leads army to Didymoteichon as John Alexander withdraws; he persuades Umur to lend ships to sail up Black Sea and threaten Bulgaria, and goes to Western Thrace to sign new treaty with Stephen Dusan.

**August** After Barlaam leaves for Italy, his friend Akyndynus proposes a theological compromise to exonerate him by de-emphasizing difference between Divine 'essence' and 'energy'; synod condemns it but Palamas sees that no personal mention of Acyndynus, Acyndynus returns to criticising 'Hesychasts' with help of historian Nicephorus Gregoras and others.

Envoys from Morea meet Cantacuzene at Didymoteichon offering to arrange for disgruntled Achaian baronial allies to revolt against Angevins and transfer allegiance to Byzantium.

Apocaucus, accused of plot to kidnap John V, retreats to his castle at Epitabai on Bosphorus; **September** Cantacuzene returns to capital and sends troops to guard Apocaucus' residence but decides to pardon him; he proposes that John marry his daughter Helena and be crowned but Anne resists.

**23 September** Cantacuzene leaves for Didymoteichon, calling in on Apocaucus en route to pardon him; back in capital, Apocaucus encourages Anne's fear of his rival and tells Patriarch that Cantacuzene wants to replace him with Palamas; Patriarch turns on Cantacuzene and Anne declares him dismissed from command and orders his arrest, and his supporters are intimidated by Apocaucus' guards and mob and flee to join him; Cantacuzene's mother Theodora thrown in prison and ill-treated and her house demolished; Apocaucus Prefect of City and Patriarch regent.

**20 October** Cantacuzene proclaimed Emperor by supporters at Didymoteichon; he still has John V and Anne's names placed first in documentation, but they do not reciprocate his hesitation and Apocaucus stirs up popular resentment of wealthy Cantacuzene family and allies.

**27 October** Cantacuzene's proclamation in Adrianople followed by riots by poor and sacking his wealthy supporters' homes; they flee and popular government declared which Apocaucus and Patriarch recognize; similar occurrences in other cities and towns.

Patriarch excommunicates Cantacuzene and **19 November** crowns John V.

### **Trebizond**

Theodora deposed by Basil's sister Anna; noble faction allied to Cantacuzene deposes Anna and installs Basil's uncle, Alexius II's brother Michael.

## **1342 Byzantium**

6 January Death of Theodora. Cantacuzene in prison.

Theodore Synadenus offers to surrender Thessalonica if Cantacuzene will come and take it; **5 March** Cantacuzene leaves wife Irene in charge at Didymoteichon and sets out for city but before his arrival it is seized by popular revolt led by 'Zealot' party; Synadenus flees and rich driven out and homes sacked; Apocaucus brings 70 ships to aid rebels and installs his son John as governor, other son Manuel taking over Adrianople.

### **Trebizond**

**Spring?** Anna restored.

### **Byzantium**

Cantacuzene leaves Didymoteichon as Imperial army approaches and leads around 2000 men to Serb frontier to appeal to Stephen Dusan; his Serb friend John Oliver arranges for Stephen to accept him and **July** they meet at Pristina; Cantacuzene refuses to surrender most of Macedonia but is allowed to recruit mercenaries.

**August?** Cantacuzene invades Thrace again, but is halted at Serres by Imperial troops and as Apocaucus advances most of his men desert; he returns to Serbia but is successfully invited to take over Thessaly; his wife Irene and her brother Manuel Asen hold Didymoteichon.

**Late** Stephen Dusan accompanies Cantacuzene to Serres, but it still resists; Irene receives aid, firstly from John Alexander of Bulgaria and then by sea from Umur of Aydin who lands large fleet at mouth of Marista and marches to the town, his Turks ravaging countryside en route; Umur marches into Thrace to try to link up with Cantacuzene but retires due to bad weather.

## **Trebizond**

**4 September** Anna deposed and replaced by Michael's son John III as puppet of a faction of nobles.

## **1343 Italy**

Pope Clement VI organizes Papal, Hospitaller, Venetian, and Cypriot naval alliance to fund a new expedition in Aegean, aimed at Umur's port of Smyrna as main source of raiding.

## **Byzantium**

**Early** Patriarch John confines Palamas to monastery in Constantinople.

**Spring** Berroea leads towns in South-West Macedonia to declare for Cantacuzene; he appoints second son Manuel as governor of Berroea and attacks Thessalonica, but Stephen Dusan is alarmed at his success and withdraws his troops from army.

Apocaucus brings fleet to save Thessalonica; Cantacuzene blockaded in Macedonia, but Umur of Aydin brings 60 ships and 6000 men to aid Cantacuzene and Apocaucus retires to capital; Turks aid unsuccessful siege of Thessalonica and then join in gradual conquest of parts of Thrace as Serbs take over most of Western Thrace.

Cantacuzene fights way back to Didymoteichon as his headquarters for indecisive war in Eastern Thrace.

**August** Empress Anne pawns the crown jewels to Venice.

## 1344 Byzantium

Destructive civil war fought over Thrace, but Cantacuzene gains ground and John Vatatzes, a commander related to Apocaucus and Patriarch, is among those who change sides.

**November** Patriarch holds religious council to condemn Palamas and ‘Hesychnasts’ and uphold Barlaam; Akyndynos made Archbishop of Thessalonica but does not go there due to ‘Zealot’ misrule.

Papal fleet, of c. 30 ships, arrives in Aegean and **May** defeats a Turkish fleet off Pallene; **28 October** they storm the city of Smyrna, Umur’s capital, but he holds onto citadel.

## Trebizond

John III overthrown by cabal of nobles and sent to monastery; his father Michael signs document promising to accept their advice and is restored, and soon purges the factions of nobles who have dominated politics since 1340.

## 1345 Byzantium

**Early** Orhan sends Ottoman Turkish troops to Thrace to aid Cantacuzene despite an offer from Empress Anne; Cantacuzene advances close to the capital and is interviewed in his camp by the Franciscan ‘General of Order’ who comes over from Galata to ask for his side of conflict; he sends Franciscan with message to Anne that he will abdicate and retire to Mount Athos if all supporters are released and pardoned, and withdraws to Didymoteichon as good will gesture; regency government’s reply makes no promises, but Manuel Apocaucus now surrenders Adrianople.

**Spring** Umur and Sulaiman, son of ‘Emir’ of Saruchan, brings troops to Cantacuzene and help him to put down independent Slav brigand Momcilo who is frequently changing sides; Cantacuzene relieves Serbian siege of Serres.

**11 June** Apocaucus visits the prison where he keeps large number of political prisoners to supervise building of more secure unit, and is caught in courtyard by prisoners with building-materials and killed; they lead prison revolt and stick Apocaucus’ head on walls, but Empress sends in his sailors who retake building and slaughter all prisoners.



**June** John Apocaucus plans to hand over Thessalonica as 'Zealots' refuse to give up and sends message to Manuel Cantacuzene at Berroea, but 'Zealots' kill him and supporters before help can arrive.

John Vatatzes returns to allegiance to regency, but is killed by Turkish troops; Cantacuzene marches to walls of capital, but there is no rising and he retires; **September** Serbs take Serres.

## 1346 **Byzantium/Serbia**

Based at Selymbria Cantacuzene arranges his daughter Theodora's marriage to Orhan. Stephen Dusan raises Archbishopric of Péc to Patriarchate.

**16 April, Easter Sunday** Stephen Dusan crowns himself 'Emperor of the Serbs and Greeks' at Skopje – a challenge to existence of the Empire as independent state. **19 May** Eastern half-dome of Hagia Sophia collapses.

**21 May** Patriarch Lazarus of Jerusalem crowns Cantacuzene and his wife Irene at Adrianople; John VI refuses to name his son Matthew rather than John V as co-ruler; a synod excommunicates and deposes Patriarch John.

Barlaam arrives in Constantinople as Papal ambassador, as new naval expedition under 'Dauphin' Humbert of Vienne sails into Aegean, fails to take Chios for Venice, and reinforces 'Crusader' garrison at Smyrna.

**Early summer** Orhan arrives at Selymbria for grand but non-religious wedding-ceremony to marry him to Theodora, who is to be allowed to remain Christian and not join harem; they return to Bithynia.

Famine spreads in blockaded Constantinople; Anne and Patriarch fail to have John VI murdered; many wealthy citizens flee to Galata.

## **Georgia**

Death of George VI; succeeded by son David VIII.

## 1347 **Byzantium**

**Late January** John VI leads troops to capital as conspirators ask him to be at Golden Gate on a certain night.

**2 February** Empress Anne holds a synod to try and depose Patriarch John in presumed conciliatory move; that night conspirators hack open walled-up gate and John VI leads about 1000 men in; **3 February** amidst popular acclaim the Cantacuzenists surround Palace which resists, and John VI gives thanks at Church of Virgin Hodegetria; Anne's Genoese allies try to cross Golden Horn but are forced back and John VI addresses assembly of clergy then opens negotiations; **8 February** as angry troops storm the Palace John V persuades Anne to surrender, using Palamas and John VI's wife's father Andronicus Asen as emissaries.

Agreement that John VI will be senior Emperor for 10 years and then rule as equals, and amnesty ordered for all prisoners;

**Late February** Patriarch John refuses to attend synod, but deposition confirmed in absence; Palamas' doctrine declared orthodox, and decisions confirmed **March** by synod of Patriarch of Jerusalem and others who were at 1346 Adrianople council; Acyndynus flees city, and John Calecas exiled to Didymoteichon.

**May** Isidore Bucharis, Palamite monk, made Patriarch; he makes Palamas Archbishop of Thessalonica.

**21 May** John VI crowned by Isidore, in Church of Virgin at Blachernae as Hagia Sophia not repaired yet; observers note the replacement crown jewels are of glass and plates at banquet made of pewter and clay.

**28 May** Marriage of John V and Helena Cantacuzene; Manuel Cantacuzene and brother-in-law Nicephorus Ducas Orsini 'Despots', but John VI's eldest son Matthew declared to be between Imperial and Despot ranking with no specific honour and he and partisans feel passed over; he is granted appanage of Didymoteichon.

Orhan and Theodora come to Chrysopolis to meet and congratulate new Emperor.

**August** New Church Council upholds Palamas and his doctrines; John VI organizes building of a new fleet in capital as part of challenge to predominance of Genoese trade at Galata and lowers harbour-dues.

Plague – 'Black Death' – strikes Constantinople and the Empire, and huge losses of population; John VI's third son Andronicus dies, and after death of John Angelus, governor of Thessaly, Stephen Dusan occupies the province to surround Thessalonica with his dominions; 'Zealots' still refuse to surrender.

**Autumn** John VI sends envoys to Avignon to excuse his use of Turks in civil war.

## 1348 **Byzantium**

**March** John VI calls on Umur to aid campaign against Serbians and Thessalonica; Orhan supplies a large army under his elder son Sulaiman.  
**May** Umur killed fighting 'Crusaders' at Smyrna.

**17 April** Birth of John V and Helena's eldest son Andronicus (IV).

John marches into Thrace, leaving son Manuel to command in capital against Genoese attack; Matthew Cantacuzene commands another army, but the Turkish mercenaries abandon march at Christopolis and loot countryside before marching home; campaign abandoned and John VI narrowly escapes Turkish ambush on march back.

Stephen Dusan finishes conquest of Thessaly and overruns Epirus to the Gulf of Corinth.

**August** While John VI is ill at Didymoteichon, Genoese sail across the Golden Horn to burn Byzantine ships and warehouses but are fought off by the city's populace in a series of intensive skirmishes.

**1 October** John VI returns; he orders new ships built and special taxes and voluntary contributions raised under commissioner Constantine Tarchaneiotes.

## **Athens**

Catalans hold Neopatras against Stephen Dusan's Serbs.

## 1349 **Byzantium**

**March** Venetian ambassadors arrive in Constantinople for new negotiations.

Byzantine fleet of around 9 large and 100 smaller ships completed in harbour on South side of capital; **5 March** a Genoese ship captured sailing to reinforce Galata; **6 March** the new navy leaves harbour to attack Galata while army marches by land, but the untrained sailors are hit by strong winds and in view of expectant populace many of them panic and jump overboard; the Genoese sail out to collect abandoned ships and the army retreats into capital in panic; **7 March** Genoese sail up Golden Horn under Blachernae Palace windows dragging Byzantine standards in the water.

Genoese envoys arrive from home-city and impose a settlement that however acknowledges that Galatans were wrong to fortify area beyond

original wall and pays 100,000 ‘hyperpera’ damages to Empire; Genoese swear never to attack Constantinople again.

John VI negotiates with Genoese over return of Chios, occupied 1346, and sends envoys to Genoa; Chios to be rented by Genoa for 10 years at 12,000 ‘hyperpera’ per annum, then returned; a Byzantine official to rule Greeks.

Citizens of capital demand enquiry into Tarchaneiotēs’ ‘embezzlement’ for naval funds, but no falsification found; John VI imposes new taxes on wealthy (e.g. wine-trade) and cautiously rebuilds ships.

Simone Vignosi, Genoese commander in Chios, rejects treaty so Genoese aid Byzantines to land troops and enforce it; Vignosi killed, Leo Calothesus installed as Byzantine official, and New Phocaea handed to Empire.

**9 September** Treaty with Venice renewed for 5 years.

**October** Patriarch Lazarus of Jerusalem in Egypt as John VI’s envoy to Sultan Malik Nazir Hasan; Sultan writes to John.

## Morea

John VI sends second son Manuel to rule the Byzantine principality as ‘Despot’.

## Trebizond

**December** Michael abdicates; Basil’s 20-year-old illegitimate son Alexius III ascends throne

## 1350 Byzantium

**February/March** Death of Patriarch Isidore.

**June** Callistus, another ‘Hesychast’ Athonite monk, Patriarch.

John VI writes conciliatory letter to Pope Clement assuring that he is in favour of Church union but only if agreed voluntarily at an Oecumenical Council which he and Pope could hold at a place within reach of both their domains.

**27 June** Birth of John’s second son Manuel, later Emperor.

Andrew Palaeologus, 'Zealot' commander at Thessalonica, deposed in new factional struggle between rival groups; Theodore Metochites' son Alexius takes over government, and appeals to John VI to come to city and resume control before it falls to Serbs; John summons aid from Orhan who sends Sulaiman with 20,000 cavalry.

**September** Matthew Cantacuzene leads army in Thrace while John VI and John V sail along coast, but Orhan recalls the Turks and Matthew is left with too few men to tackle Serb blockade; John VI sails on unawares, and meets up with 22 Turk pirate ships at mouth of River Strymon who join his force; when the two Emperors arrive at Thessalonica the citizens open gates and surrender.

Leaders of 'Zealots' are arrested or driven out of city, and John VI addresses assembly of citizens denouncing the revolutionaries as wreckers not patriots, Palamas enabled to take possession of see after 3-years.

John VI reduces Serb garrisons around city and retakes Berroea; later Stephen Dusan arrives from Hungarian frontier and **late Autumn** the two rulers have indecisive meeting outside city, accusing each other of bad faith.

? John VI appoints his son-in-law Nicephorus (of Epirus) as governor of Aenus in Thrace.

## 1351 **Byzantium**

**January** John VI returns to Constantinople by sea, leaving John V in technical command at Thessalonica with his own father-in-law Andronicus Asen as governor. **March** Venetian fleet attacks Galata.

Stephen Dusan resumes war in Macedonia and retakes Edessa.

John VI and Callistus agree on a new Church Council to define theological orthodoxy on Palama's doctrines; **28 May** it meets under John's presidency at Blachernae Palace, and after intensive discussions **6 June** the 'Tome' of pro-Palamas Council in 1341 is upheld.

## **Trebizond**

Ex-Emperor Michael deported to Constantinople, accompanying ambassadors seek a bride for Alexius III.

## Byzantium

**May** John VI signs alliance with Venice after angry Genoese response to his lack of assistance during earlier Venetian attack on Galata; Byzantium to provide men and money to aid Venice's war, and inhabitants of Galata given 8 days to leave; they refuse to go and are blockaded.

**July** Second Council upholds Palamas' orthodoxy; **15 August** John VI presents the Council's decree at the Hagia Sophia sanctuary to make it part of official Orthodoxy teaching.

Genoese under Paganino Doria sack Heraclea on the Black Sea.

**Summer** John V, persuaded by advisers at Thessalonica to assert himself, dismisses Andronicus Asen who goes to Constantinople to warn John VI of a plot with Stephen Dusan; John V believed to be planning to divorce wife Helena and marry Serb princess.

John VI sends Empress Anne to Thessalonica; she talks her son out of Serb alliance and then visits Stephen Dusan, encamped near city, to persuade him to give up plan; however John V asks his father-in-law for another appanage closer to Constantinople and is offered Matthew Cantacuzene's Didymoteichon.

## Trebizond

**September** John VI's cousin Nicephorus' daughter Theodora marries Alexius III.

## Byzantium

Empress Anne takes over in Thessalonica; John V returns to capital en route to Didymoteichon; Matthew reluctantly accepts rule of Adrianople.

**October** Genoese fleet arrives in Propontis, sacks Heraclea, and reinforces Galata while John VI withdraw his ships into harbours.

**November** Genoese sack Sozopolis on Black Sea.

## 1352 Byzantium

**February** Venetians fleet under Niccolo Pisani, with Aragonese reinforcements, arrives at Constantinople and Byzantine fleet under Constantine

Tarchaneiotes joins them; **13 February** heavy fighting in Golden Horn and Bosphorus but battle is indecisive and Genoese hold out in Galata, Aragonese ships worst affected.

Venetian fleet sails back to Aegean.

John V signs decrees of pro-Palamas Council **February/March** and leaves for Didymoteichon.

**6 May** John VI reaches agreement with Genoese in Galata as no more help from Venice likely.

## **Byzantium/Lithuania/Serbia**

John VI and Callistus reject Olgerd of Lithuania's candidate, Theodoret to be next Metropolitan of Russia after sick Theognostus. Callistus excommunicates Serbian Church; pro-Serbian Bulgarian Church consecrates Theodoret.

## **Byzantium**

Dispute between John V and Matthew, and Empress Irene goes to mediate with clerics; **early Summer** after her return John V attacks Adrianople, citizens open gates and Matthew besieged in citadel; John VI marches to the rescue with mercenaries sent by Orhan and Aragonese survivors of Genoese/Venetian battle, who pillage countryside.

John VI leaves his son-in law John V at Didymoteichon, as Stephen Dusan and John Alexander send support to the latter; **October** at Aenus on the Thracian coast, John V leases Tenedos for Venice in return for 20,000 ducats; Patriarch Callistus calls in on John VI at Adrianople and sent to talk unavailingly to John V; Orhan sends fleet to land reinforcements at mouth of River Maritsa, and en route to Adrianople they defeat John V's Bulgar and Serb mercenaries.

**Late** Turkish devastation of Thrace induces John V to come to terms with his father-in-law, and he meets him for interview to be chided for rebellion but allowed to keep appanage on promise that he will bring supporters back to loyalty to the senior emperor' however John VI decides he cannot be trusted in Thrace any longer.

## 1353 Byzantium

**Early** John V required to hand over Didymoteichon and move to Tenedos; **March** he sails secretly to Constantinople in one warship to surprise city while John VI is in Adrianople, but Empress Irene organizes defence and he has to give up and return to Tenedos; on John VI's return his supporters ask if they are to continue to accept John V as senior to their own Emperor's son Matthew; John VI decides to proclaim Matthew co-Emperor, but Patriarch Callistus refuses to co-operate and retires to monastery.

**April** Matthew proclaimed co-Emperor at Palace; John V no longer recognised, but his son Andronicus (IV) and Empress Anne are still named in documents; Callistus refuses to crown Matthew so pressurized to resign; **15 August** he reluctantly resigns as visited by representatives of Synod but anathematizes John VI.

**September** Philotheus 'the Red-Haired' ('Coccinus'), Bishop of Heraclea, nominated by John VI as Patriarch from a list of three bishops submitted by Synod; **November** he is consecrated as Callistus flees to Galata, thence to Tenedos to join John V.

## Russia/Lithuania

Death of Metropolitan Theognostus; Olgerd's candidate Theodoret installed in Kiev despite Byzantine objections.

## 1354 Byzantium

**February** Matthew Cantacuzene and his wife Irene crowned at Blachernae Church.

**2 March** Devastating earthquake hits Constantinople and Thrace, most severely Gallipoli; Turkish soldiers move into the undefended ruins to pillage and take control, and Palamas is among the people captured and sent to Bithynia as hostage as his ship put ashore there; Orhan's son Sulaiman takes over the town for Ottomans, securing them control of entry to Europe; the town is refortified and garrisoned, and Orhan tells John VI he cannot return what providence put in his hands.

Public opinion, superstitious about earthquake, turns against John VI, who tries to arrange meeting with Orhan but the latter excuses himself



due to illness; **Summer** John VI takes Matthew to Tenedos to meet John V who refuses to see them.

**30 June** Philotheus and Synod reluctantly confirm Moscow's choice, Alexis, as new Metropolitan of Kiev and Russia, Lithuanian candidate Theodoret excluded.

**22 November** On stormy night John V and a few followers sail up Propontis and enter Harbour of Heptoscalion on South side of city; no fighting at once, but despite sending outside city for reinforcements John VI wavers and **23 November** crowds attack his supporters' houses and loot the arsenal; John V advances to Blachernae, and crowds joining in storm and set fire to fortified outworks of Palace as Catalan mercenaries fight back; Philotheus hides in Hagia Sophia.

**24 November** John V sends negotiator into Palace, and John VI agrees to treaty – he remains senior Emperor, but accepts John V as colleague and hands over Catalan-commanded fortress at Golden Gate; Matthew to have Adrianople and imperial title for life, and is ordered not to attack.

John VI joins John V at Council at latter's residence, house of Theodore Metochites, to debate with ministers, senators etc. on what to do about evicting Turks from Gallipoli, and urges negotiation not force lest reinforcements arrive; he is criticized for pro-Turks policies.

**?25 November** John VI goes to hand over Golden Gate fortress as promised, and the Catalans unsuccessfully try to persuade him to fight on, after more demonstrations in favour of John V as sole ruler – John VI privately announces his intention to abdicate to his colleague.

**?25 November/3 December** John VI abdicates in Palace ceremony after a reign of 7 years, 9 months, and 22 days and becomes the monk Joasaph; his wife Irene becomes nun and retires to convent of Kyra Martha, and John subsequently moves to Mangana monastery.

Patriarch Philotheus is deposed; Empress Anne retains control of Thessalonica; John's chief minister, 'Mesazon' Demetrius Cydones, a leading Latinophile scholar, becomes monk at Mangana monastery for several years until John V recalls him and uses his leisure to produce the first Greek translation of Thomas Aquinas' philosophical works.

## 1355 **Byzantium**

John Cantacuzene abandons plans to retire to Mount Athos when John V asks him to stay in capital, and moves to monastery of Nea Peribleptos (called alternatively 'Charsianites' after founder).

**Spring** Skirmishes between John V and Matthew in Thrace end in an agreement whereby Matthew leaves Thrace for the Morea to replace brother Manuel who removes to Lemnos; not implemented as Manuel refuses to leave.

Callistus restored as Patriarch, he creates separate Metropolitanate for Lithuania as existing holder at Kiev, Alexis, has moved to Moscow.

John V's uncle Thomas Palaeologus Praefect of City; Alexius Metochites 'Grand Domestic'.

Chios relinquished to a company of Genoese merchants, the 'Maona', dominated by Giustiniani family, in return for rent of 500 'hyperpera' per annum.

**Summer** John marries sister Maria to Genoese adventurer Francesco Gattilusio, who becomes lord of Mytilene on Lesbos; island in effect ceded to his family.

**Late** Fighting resumes with Matthew after plot by John V to murder him discovered.

**13 December** John writes to Pope Innocent VI, requesting 20 ships, 500 knights and 1000 infantry to serve against Turks and domestic enemies for six months in return for residence of Papal legate to help oversee new Church appointments favourable to reunion; John's second son Manuel to reside at Avignon as hostage for father's good intentions and can be educated and married by Pope if John fails in obligations for reunion; three colleges to be set up to train Byzantine youth in Latin language and literature, and John's eldest son Andronicus to be educated in those subjects; if all goes well Pope to send a larger force under captain-general to fight Turks, and if Byzantine people refuse union John to submit personally.

Paul, Latin Archbishop of Smyrna, and Byzantine envoy Nicholas Sigerus take letter to Avignon.

## Serbia

**December** Death of Stephen Dusan, aged around 47, supposedly while planning advance on Constantinople; succeeded by weak son Stephen V under whom the threat to Byzantium ends..

## 1356 Serbia

Break-up of Serbian 'Empire' as various Lords revolt against Stephen V- his uncle Symeon Uros seizes his own provinces of Epirus and Thessaly

(capital at Trikkala), 'Despot' Vukasin takes Prilep and Ochrid, Vukasin's brother John Ugijesa takes Serres, and brothers Dragas and Constantine Dejanović take Strumitsa and Velbuzd.

## **Byzantium/France**

**Early** Supported by Serb lords in Thrace and with troops sent by Orhan, Matthew Cantacuzene marches on Constantinople; Serbs and Turks fight each other and disorganized army breaks up, then Matthew has to retreat and is captured by Vojihna, Serb lord of Drama; John V ransoms him and sends him as prisoner to Tenedos.

**July** Innocent replies to John – only mentions his personal conversion not military aid, Church union, or Manuel's transfer.

## **Epirus**

**Spring** Nicephorus II Ducas Orsini returns to Arta with local support and restores his rule there; he rules over most of Southern Epirus, and abandons his wife Maria Cantacuzene to marry a Serbian heiress.

## **Morea**

Catherine of Courtenay orders reforms of government to strengthen resistance to Turkish threat.

## **Athens**

Frederick III, new (1355) King of Sicily and titular Duke of Athens, sends ex-regent Alfonso's son James Fadrique out as his governor.

## **Ionian Islands**

Angevins restore 'County of Cephallonia' for Orsini relative, Leonardo Tocco.

**1357 Byzantium**

Matthew Cantacuzene and his family transferred to custody on Lesbos; unsuccessful plot among partisans in Constantinople to seize John V's family and hold them hostage for his release.

**April** Peter Thomas, Carmelite Bishop and ex-ambassador to Serbia and William Conti, Latin Bishop of Sozopolis, arrive in Constantinople to convert John V and as many others as possible and prepare way for union; John V's hope of offer of military aid dashed but talks take place and according to Peter Thomas' later biographer John is converted to Catholicism; Callistus insists that outstanding doctrinal differences and Papal claims over his Patriarchate are too important in his own current letter to Archbishop of Bulgaria.

**Spring** Orhan's son Halil kidnapped by Greek pirates from Phocaea, and John negotiates his ransom with governor Leo Calothesus who insists that 100,000 'hyperpera' paid.

**October** Byzantine alliance with Venice extended for another five years; John V's debts to Venice stand at 100,000 'hyperpera'.

**December** After John Cantacuzene intervenes, Matthew Cantacuzene agrees to renounce claim to throne and meets John V at Epiatbai to do so; he is placed next to John V and Andronicus in imperial hierarchy and sons made 'Sebastocrator' and 'Caesar'.

**1358 Byzantium**

**Early** John V and Orhan meet on island to settle differences, but Turk ravages in Thrace continue and Orhan's son Suleiman remains in command of Gallipoli.

**Morea**

Catherine of Courtenay appoints her wealthy Florentine chamberlain Niccolo Acciajuoli, founder of dynasty and banker to the late John of Gravina (d. 1335), as governor of Corinth; foundation of family estates in Greece.

**Trebizond**

**August** Emperor Alexius III marries sister Theodora to raiding Turcoman emir of Chalybia.

**1359**      **Byzantium**

New archbishopric recognised in Wallachia.

Turks first reported as reaching the walls of Constantinople. Temporary loss of Didymoteichon to Turks.

Death of Suleiman, commander at Gallipoli; Orhan's younger son Murad is now his heir.

Peter Thomas, now Papal Legate with the 'Crusading' garrison at Smyrna, accompanies a new Italian naval expedition that arrives at the port to fight Turkish pirates and raids Lampsacus.

**14 November** Death of Gregory Palamas, Archbishop of Thessalonica.

**Athens**

Matthew Moncada, Seneschal of Sicily, succeeds James Fadrique as governor (vicar-general) of Athens.

**(or late  
1358)**      **Epirus**

Nicephorus II killed fighting Albanians near Acheloos; anarchy in the disintegrating principality.

**1360**      **Byzantium**

Death of the historian Nicephorus Gregoras.

?Demetrius Cydones returns to office as 'Mesazon' to John V (to 1386) at Emperor's request.

**Morea**

Niccolo Acciajuoli's young cousin Giovanni becomes Archbishop of Patras.

**Georgia**

Death of David VIII; succeeded by son Bagrat.

**1361 Byzantium**

**November** Fall of Didymoteichon to Ottomans.

**1362 Ottoman Emirate/Sultanate**

Death of Orhan; succeeded by his younger son Murad, who has to fight rebellious brothers.

**Athens**

‘Vicar-General’ Pedro de Pau killed in uprising at Thebes by rebellious Catalan barons, led by ‘Marshal’ Roger de Lluria (Loria) who becomes real ruler for titular governor, restored James Fadrique.

**Morea**

Niccolo Acciajuoli adopts his cousin, Giovanni’s brother Nerio, who becomes his heir to extending estates in Achaia and his deputy at Corinth.

**Byzantium**

**September** Plague in Constantinople; Matthew Cantacuzene and family, including John Cantacuzene, join brother Manuel at Mistra.

**1363 Byzantium**

John Cantacuzene returns to Constantinople from Mistra.

Patriarch Callistus sent on embassy to Stephen Dusan’s widow at Serres to co-ordinate resistance against Turks, but **August** dies amidst rumours of poison.

Fall of Pegae (on Asian shore of Propontis) to Turks. Fall of Philippopolis, chief town of Upper Hebrus valley, to Turks opens their way to raid right up to Sofia and threaten Bulgarian heartland.

## 1364 **Byzantium**

John V attacks Bulgaria by land and sea and retakes Anchialus.

**8 October** Philotheus restored as Patriarch.

### **Morea**

Death of Robert of Taranto, ruler of Achaia and claimant to the 'Latin empire' title; brother Philip succeeds.

## 1365 **Italy**

**June** New 'Crusade' under King Peter of Cyprus leaves Venice, but despite Byzantine plight ignores the Turks and after calling at Rhodes **August** proceeds to Egypt to **October** sack Alexandria.

### **Morea**

Death of Niccolo Acciajuoli; lands, including Corinth, to cousin Nerio.

## **Byzantium**

**Late** After King Louis 'the Great' of Hungary attacks Bulgaria and takes John Alexander's son Stracimir prisoner, John V believes that his army could be used against Turks and decides on a personal appeal.

John leaves Constantinople and sails via Black Sea and Danube, with entourage including younger sons Manuel and Matthew; eldest son Andronicus left in capital.

## 1366 **Byzantium**

John conducts inconclusive talks with Louis about aid, and is obliged to leave Manuel as a hostage at Buda as he sets off home.

Arriving at Vidin, John is refused permission to cross Bulgaria by suspicious John Alexander and is stranded; his son Andronicus, the Bulgarian ruler's

son-in-law, is in no hurry to intervene as it prolongs his regency at Constantinople.

**June** John's cousin, Amadeo VI of Savoy, leaves Venice with 15 ships and c. 1800–3000 men on own crusade; **August** he arrives at Euboea en route to Byzantium to discover that there is no hope of Louis of Hungary joining him, and attacks and takes Gallipoli from the Turks, assisted by Francesco Gattiluso.

Some mistrust in Constantinople at admitting armed Italians to city, but John V's 'Grand Logothete' Demetrius Cydones overcomes it.

## Morea

Hugh of Lusignan, nephew of King Peter of Cyprus and son by first marriage of the late Robert of Achaia and Taranto's widow Marie de Bourbon, invades Achaia against the current ruler, Robert's brother Philip.

Bishop Angelo Acciajuoli of Patras, successor to cousin Giovanni, and 'Bailli' Centurione Zaccaria (lord of Chalandritza), lead resistance to Hugh's invaders who are driven off Patras back to Messenia; Manuel Cantacuzene and Guy d'Enghien, lord of Argos, join Hugh; **Summer?** en route to Constantinople, Amadeo of Savoy mediates and truce follows.

**2 September** Amadeo arrives in Constantinople, accompanied by Papal envoy Paul of Smyrna. Hearing of John V's plight, Amadeo sails into Black Sea to attack Bulgaria **October** and takes Mesembria and Sozopolis; he besieges Varna and sends envoys to John Alexander at Trnovo demanding John V's release.

**December** John crosses Bulgaria to join Amadeo at Mesembria for Christmas; Paul, as Papal 'Patriarch of Constantinople', starts talks with John on reunion.

## 1367 Byzantium

After wintering at Sozopolis, **April** John and Amadeo return to Constantinople; Paul of Smyrna starts talks with Church leaders but Patriarch Philotheus refuses to meet him.

John assures Paul of his personal enthusiasm for conversion, but lacks a senior spokesman for Orthodox theology in discussions so **June** he prevails upon John Cantacuzene to take the lead at debate in hall of Palace; John Cantacuzene repeats his 1350 belief that an Oecumenical Council with



both sides meeting on equal terms is necessary with all Eastern Patriarchs and heads of Church in Serbia, Bulgaria and Georgia present; he warns that Michael VIII provides example of what happens to enforced union.

Paul apparently agrees to a council in Constantinople within two years, and Patriarch Philotheus accepts and sends out invitations; Patriarchs of Alexandria and Jerusalem approve.

Episcopal and monastic representatives to accompany Amadeo on return to Italy and go to Pope; Amadeo persuades John to go to Italy and submit in person, and John hands over jewels and money for Amadeo to take to Italy as pledge for his arrival.

**June** Amadeo and the ecclesiastical delegation leave Constantinople; **October** the delegation join Pope Urban ahead of **16 October** his official entry to Rome on first Papal visit from Avignon for five decades.

**6 November** Pope sends letters to Emperor and relatives, Patriarchs, leading ministers, and others on the benefits of submission to Rome and looks forward to John's visit, but says nothing about an Oecumenical Council; 'Patriarch' Paul delivers messages to Constantinople.

John fails to persuade Patriarch to release Church property between capital and Selymbria to settle soldiers and their families.

## 1368 Epirus

Death of John (the younger) of Gravina, ruler of Dyrrachium/Durazzo, cousin to Queen Joanna of Naples and to Philip II of Taranto, Prince of Achaia; his daughter Joanna's husband Louis of Evreux hires a mercenary army of Navarrese to invade independent Albanian lands inland from the town.

## Byzantium

John pays Venice outstanding 4500 'hyperpera', but cannot pay full debts of c. 25,000 'hyperpera'.

**April** Patriarch Philotheus and Synod investigate the writings of Demetrius Cydones' brother, expelled monk Prochorius from the 'Great Lavra' on Mount Athos, for heretical criticisms of Palamas and hesychasm; Demetrius complains that Philotheus broke promise not to prosecute and writes *First Invective Against Philotheus* to defend brother.

**1369 Byzantium/Italy**

Fall of Adrianople, third city of the Empire, to the Turks.

John V sets out for Italy with entourage including brother-in-law Francesco Gattilusio and chief minister Demetrius Cydones; Andronicus left to govern Constantinople and Manuel to govern Thessalonica.

**August** John reaches Naples; he goes on to Rome and when Pope arrives  
**18 October** John presents his declaration of Catholic faith to three cardinals; they draw up definitive document in Greek and Latin which he seals;  
**Sunday 21 October** John prostrates himself before the Pope on steps of St. Peter's and exchanges ritual kisses of peace before they celebrate with Mass in cathedral.

**November** Pope announces that John is a full Catholic and hopes that other schismatics will submit too.

**1370 Byzantium/Italy**

**January** John issues a document confirming that he is now a Catholic; Pope permits him a mobile altar provided that only Latin priests use it.

**February** Pope exhorts Greek clergy to follow their Emperor and declares that no Council necessary as Rome's authority has reached definitive conclusions on faith; urges them to save themselves from Turks by submission.

**1 February** John's treaty with Venice renewed for five years, extending time for repayment but keeping his pawned crown jewels as security.

**March** John leaves Rome to sail via Naples to the Adriatic and visits Venice; he arrives in the city for first Imperial visit to the former Byzantine territory to find that he has insufficient money to pay for fare home.

John proposes to sell Tenedos to Venice, in return for the crown jewels that his mother pawned to the city and a loan of 50,000 'hyperpera' (25,000 'ducats').

Andronicus, as regent in capital, refuses to surrender Tenedos, probably encouraged by Genoese; John asks him to sell Church treasures to pay for his return journey, but he refuses so John is stranded.

? Manuel retakes some Macedonian territory from Serbs.

**Late** Manuel takes the necessary funds to Venice from Thessalonica to obtain John's release.

## Morea

Hugh of Cyprus paid to leave Achaia.

## Athens

Matteo de Peralta, another Sicilian, 'Vicar-General' of Athens.

## 1371 Byzantium/Italy

John and Manuel pay over the money owing to Venice; **March** John's remaining debts are cancelled and 30,000 'ducat'-loan arranged; he receives provisions and ships and sails back to Constantinople, leaving Manuel as security for return of loaned money once John reaches home.

Demetrius Cydones reaches Constantinople before John does, and as Murad sends Ottoman mission demanding the return of Gallipoli he delivers oration against surrender (*On Not Surrendering Callipolis*) on grounds that it would alienate West after Amadeo's efforts.

## Bulgaria

John Alexander dies; succeeded by son John Sisman.

## Serbia/Byzantium

John Ugijesa of Serres and his brother Vukasin of Prilep lead army into the Maritsa valley to try to retake Adrianople as the raiding Turks encroach on their lands; **26 September** they are heavily defeated and killed at battle of Crnomen and Thrace is permanently lost.

Marko Kraljević, Vukasin's son, succeeds to Prilep but as Turks start raiding Macedonia he has to pay tribute as their vassal.

**October** John V returns to Constantinople and orders arrest of assorted Cantacuzene partisans, probably over encouraging Andronicus to let him stay stranded in Venice.

**November** Manuel retakes leaderless Serres to extend his territories around Thessalonica.

Death of Simeon Uros, Dusan's brother, lord of Thessaly; succeeded by young son John Uros.

**2/4 December** Death of Stephen V of Serbia; succeeded by Lazar.

## 1372 **Byzantium**

**Spring** Turks unsuccessfully besiege Serres and **April** do likewise at Thessalonica.

Manuel secures reluctant Church consent to confiscation of half monastic land to settle soldiers and requires all monasteries to pay taxes and abandon immunities.

### **Athens/Italy**

**Spring** Pope Urban's call for all affected Christian states to send envoys to an anti-Turkish conference at Thebes is abandoned as not enough interest.

## 1372/3 **Byzantium**

Conclusion of treaty between John V and Murad; John becomes the Turkish 'Sultan's' vassal; Byzantium to pay tribute.

## 1373 **Byzantium**

**Spring** John attends Murad's camp for expedition against rival Turkish rulers in Anatolia; **6 May** during his absence Andronicus abandons regency to join Murad's son Sawdji/Saudzi in rebellion with mixed Greek/Turkish army.

Murad demands John's help and punishment of both the rebels similarly; Murad crosses to Europe and **25 May** he and John defeat rebels at Picridion, outside Constantinople; **late May** Andronicus abandons rebellion and submits.

**Late September** Murad finally captures Sawdji, blinds him, and sends message to John demanding that he punish Andronicus similarly and Andronicus' son John likewise.

John blinds Andronicus and his son, although imperfectly, and disinherits them; **25 September** Manuel is crowned co-emperor and thus the new heir; Andronicus confined in monastery of Cauleus.

## **Morea**

Death of Philip of Taranto, titular ruler of Achaia; his sister's son Jacques de Baux, Provençal lord, claims rule but the Achaian barons prefer indirect rule of Philip's cousin and overlord Queen Joanna of Naples; Centurione Zaccaria of Chalandritza and Leonardo Tocco of Cephallonia lead delegation to her at Naples, and she assumes rule and sends out Neapolitan 'bailli' Francesco di San Severino.

## **Thessaly**

John Uros abdicates to become a monk at the new monastic settlement among the rocks of Meteora; 'Caesar' Alexius Philanthropenus seizes power.

## **1374 Italy/Byzantium**

**Spring** Pope Gregory XI sends legates to Constantinople to discuss reunion and present project for Crusade to be joined by Genoa, Venice, Sicily, Hungary, and Knights Hospitallers; **October** they arrive in the capital.

**December** Byzantine envoys visit Pope to point out that Turkish power is such that Emperor had to blind son and grandson and people are not impressed with demands to change their faith when no sign of definite help.

## **Morea/Athens**

Niccolo Acciajuoli of Corinth seizes Megara from the Catalans.

? Francesco di San Severino leads Achaian troops in unprovoked attack on Byzantine frontier town of Garidi; Manuel Cantacuzene's relief-force defeated but town holds out.

**1375 Byzantium/Russia**

Cyprian, Lithuanian, appointed as Metropolitan of Kiev ‘and Russia’ by Philotheus in defiance of Alexis, Metropolitan in Moscow, thus implying Lithuanian overlordship of independent Russian Church; he rules Lithuanian-occupied orthodox lands but Alexis retains supremacy in Moscow’s lands and Russians support him not Cyprian.

**1376 Morea**

Joanna of Naples leases control of Achaia to the Knights Hospitaller for 5 years in return for 4000 ducats ‘per annum’; ‘Grand Master’ Juan de Heredia reorganizes defence, and reconquers Naupactus/ Lepanto from Serb lord Boua Spata.

**Byzantium**

**March** 10 Venetian ships arrive in Constantinople to conclude arrangements to secure Tenedos in return for paying 30,000 ducats and the pawned crown jewels – Byzantium to retain flag and Patriarchal jurisdiction.

Genoese decide to pre-empt loss of their hopes of the island and **July** organize Andronicus IV’s escape to Galata; he makes contact with Murad who loans military aid, and besieges Constantinople.

**12 August** Andronicus enters Constantinople by force and captures Blachernae Palace; John V and younger sons Manuel and Theodore arrested and imprisoned, probably in Tower of Anemas.

Andronicus cedes Tenedos to Genoese, and Murad demands Gallipoli as price of his aid; Patriarch Philotheus dies and replaced by Macarius.

**October** Tenedos garrison refuses to admit Genoese, and surrenders to Venice.

? Andronicus goes to Murad’s court to reaffirm vassalage.

**Epirus**

‘Navarrese Company’ of mercenaries, led by Pedro de la Saga, Mahiot de Coquerel, and Juan de Urtubia, occupy Dyrrachium/Durazzo in name of Louis of Evreux, son-in-law of late ruler John of Gravina.

## 1377 **Byzantium**

Murad reoccupies Gallipoli to secure easy access to the Turkish forces who are overrunning Macedonia and other remnants of Dusan's Empire.

Andronicus IV sends army and troops to aid Venetian blockade of Tenedos; 16 July Venetian fleet attacks Constantinople in reply.

**18 October** Patriarch Macarius crowns Andronicus and his ? 9-year-old son John VII.

**November** Andronicus assists Venetian campaign in Aegean.

### **Morea**

? Hospitaller 'Grand Master' de Heredia captured by Serbs, sold to Turks, and expensively ransomed.

## 1378 **Byzantium/Italy**

Venice takes Phocaea from Genoese and raids Chios.

### **Morea**

'Navarrese Company' leaves Dyrrachium/Durazzo on Joanna's re-marriage to enter Hospitaller service in Achaia.

### **Russia**

**February** Death of Alexis; Cyprian of Kiev claims Metropolitanate in Moscow, but local candidate Michael of Kolomma's attempt to secure see and keep Russian episcopal independence supported by Patriarch Macarius.

## 1379 **Byzantium**

**June?** John V, Manuel, and Theodore escape to Chrysopolis/Scutari and make their way to Murad's court; John successfully offers more tribute, troops on demand, and surrender of Philadelphia (last Byzantine possession in Anatolia, isolated inland) in return for restoration.

Murad lends an army and Venice lends ships; **1 July** John V and his forces fight their way into city via Charisius Gate and defeat Andronicus' Genoese troops but Andronicus escapes to Galata taking his mother, Empress Helena, her father John Cantacuzene, and her sisters as hostages; Galata blockaded.

Patriarch Macarius deposed.

## Trebizond

**October** Alexius III marries daughter to Taceddin, Emir of Limnia, his vassal.

## Athens

Hospitallers and Acciajuoli permit Navarrese to attack and take Thebes.

## 1380 Byzantium/Russia

Nilus becomes Patriarch; when Michael of Kolomna and his party arrive in Constantinople he doesn't confirm appointment; Michael dies.

Galata starved out by Venetian/Turkish blockade but resists.

**June** Nilus holds Synod on Russian problem and nominates Pimen as Metropolitan of Moscow and next Metropolitan of Kiev.

## Morea

**10 April** Death of Manuel Cantacuzene, aged probably 51; succeeded as 'Despot' by elder brother Matthew.

## 1381 Byzantium/Italy

**April** Genoese in Galata open discussions with Venice, and Andronicus negotiates with his father; **May** under peace-agreement Andronicus is restored as heir to empire and granted principality based at Selymbria; Andronicus' son John VII to succeed him, not Manuel.

John Cantacuzene, released with other hostages, returns to Morea to settle at Mistra.



Genoese/Venetian peace of Chioggia (**23 August**) demilitarizes and neutralizes Tenedos.

## **Morea**

End of Hospitallers' governorship of Achaia; Joanna resumes indirect control.

## **Athens**

'Navarrese Company' invade Attica and besiege Athens; Catalans under castellan Romeo de Bellarbe, assisted by Greek minister Demetrius Rendis, drive them off and then appeal to King Peter IV of Aragon for aid; Peter sends new 'Vicar-General' Philip Dalmau, Viscount de Roberti, with reinforcements and encourages other Latin rulers to attack Navarrese; Count of Salona (near Delphi) advances on Thebes and Navarrese negotiate their withdrawal.

## **Morea**

Navarrese return to Achaia, and negotiate their alliance with Jacques de Baux; they overrun Achaia and recognize him as their suzerain, with de Coquerel as 'bailli'.

## **1382 Byzantium**

**Summer/Autumn?** Manuel returns to Thessalonica, apparently without John V's agreement, to resume control there as practically independent ruler; he negotiates alliances with local Serb/Macedonian lords who are granted Byzantine titles as his vassals.

**2 November** New Genoese treaty with John V, guaranteeing Andronicus safe possession of his appanage at Selymbria and John Genoese support against all enemies except Murad.

? John V sends third son Theodore to Morea to secure succession there.

## **Athens**

Ramon de Villanova appointed Aragonese 'Vicar-General'.

**1383 Byzantium/Morea**

**15 June** Death of John Cantacuzene at Mistra, aged probably 88, having advised John V that his second son Prince Theodore not Matthew's sons should succeed Matthew in the Morea.

Death of Matthew Cantacuzene, aged probably 60.

Matthew's elder son Demetrius refuses to accept Theodore as ruler, and calls in Navarrese mercenaries; civil war between Demetrius and Theodore.

**19 September** Fall of Serres to Ottoman 'Vizier' Hayr-ed-Din Pasha, who advances on Thessalonica and demands surrender; Manuel refuses despite threats of massacre, and rallies the populace in square with a grand oration which he subsequently publishes; **26 October** Archbishop Isidore Glabas backs policy of resistance in cathedral sermon on festival of patron saint, St Demetrius.

Death of Jacques de Baux; Navarrese recognise Joanna's successor Charles III of Naples (descendant of John of Gravina) as overlord.

**1384 Byzantium**

**March** Archbishop Isidore deserts Thessalonica during Turkish siege and is deposed.

? Andronicus IV quarrels with his father again and renounces allegiance; he seizes fortress near Melitias.

**1385 Byzantium**

**Spring?** John V defeats Andronicus in skirmish; he retires to Selymbria.

**25/28 June** Death of Andronicus, aged 37; his son John VII succeeds to rule of Selymbria. Manuel sends envoys to Rome about reunion.

**Turkish Sultanate**

Turks take Naissus/Nîs, leading town of central Serbia.

## **Morea**

Demetrius Cantacuzene abandons Morea to Theodore Paleologus.

## **Athens/Morea**

Nerio Acciajuoli invades Attica with mercenary army and occupies all except Acropolis where Catalan commander Pedro de Pau holds out; Boeotia overrun but Salona resists – foundation of Florentine principality of Athens.

## **Russia**

Metropolitan Pimen, deposed for fraud, successfully obtains restoration from Constantinople.

## **1386 Turkish Sultanate**

Murad returns to Anatolia to fight war against the Karamanids in South-East of peninsula.

## **Byzantium**

Mount Athos submits to Turkish overlordship and secure autonomy.

Papal Legate visits Constantinople and Thessalonica in response to Manuel's envoys.

## **1387 Byzantium**

**6 April** Manuel leaves Thessalonica, probably due to lack of will to resist further by citizens and demands that they surrender to avoid massacre.

**9 April** Surrender of Thessalonica; second city of Empire lost but no massacre.

Manuel joins brother-in-law Francesco Gattilusio on Lesbos and writes angry account of position to friend Cabasilas; he later proceeds to Murad's court at Brusa; his father John V refuses him residence in Constantinople and **Autumn?** insists he retires to Lemnos.

**1388 Byzantium**

**1 February** Death of Patriarch Nilus.

**Athens/Morea**

**2 May** Surrender of Acropolis to Nerio Acciajuoli; end of Catalan presence in duchy. Nerio's daughter Bartolomea marries Theodore Palaeologus of Mistra.

**Turkish Sultanate**

Turks defeated invading Bosnia.

**1389 Byzantium**

**January** Anthony III appointed Patriarch.

? John VII visits Genoa to obtain aid.

**Turkish Sultanate**

Turkish forces invade Bulgaria and take Trnovo and Nicopolis, to ravage to the Danube; Czar John Sisman allowed to retain part of Kingdom as vassal.

Murad brings reinforcements to Europe and advances on Serbia; some Serb princes, such as Constantine Dragas, who are already vassals are required to join his army.

**15 June** Battle of Kosovo; Murad killed, probably stabbed in his tent by a pretended deserter from Serb army, but son Bajezid secures victory and King Lazar among thousands of casualties; the late Sultan's 'New Army' of Islamicized Christian recruits, the *Yeni Cheri* ('Janissaries'), back Bayezid's succession in place of his elder brother Yakub who was left in Anatolia, though some landed nobility at court are restive.

Bajezid allows Lazar's son Stephen Lazarević to succeed as vassal, but imposes tribute of the 'haradj' ('head-tax' on non-Moslems) on all his Balkan tributaries; he has Yaqub executed as threat to throne, inaugurating Ottoman tradition of royal fratricide.

## Russia

Patriarch Anthony deposes Pimen of Moscow and gives see to Cyprian of Kiev; Pimen dies in Galata while seeking reversal.

## Byzantium/Morea

Theodore Palaeologus seizes Argos from the decaying Achaian principality before Venice can secure it; Venice breaks off relations with Nerio Acciajuoli for encouraging him.

## 1390 Trebizond

**20 March** Death of Alexius III, aged 61; succeeded by son Manuel III, aged 26.

## Byzantium/Turkish Sultanate

On his return from visit to Genoa to secure aid against his grandfather, John VII is summoned to Bajezid and offered help to take Constantinople; John V recalls Manuel; **13 April** John VII attacks the city via Charisius Gate and is admitted, but John V retreats to fortress at the Golden Gate and holds out, sending to Manuel in Lemnos for aid.

**3 June** Venetian treaty with John VII.

Patriarch Anthony deposed; Macarius restored. Manuel secures 2 Hospitaller ships and other troops, and **September?** at third attempt reaches Constantinople to link up with John V; **17 September** John VII is driven out in surprise attack and returns to Brusa, whence Bajezid restores him to Selymbria as vassal.

**Autumn** Bajezid summons Manuel and John VII to his court to accompany him on campaign to take Philadelphia which is refusing John V's orders to surrender; they have to participate in assault on city.

Bajezid forces John V to demolish fortifications of Golden Gate 'castle' by threatening to blind Manuel; he goes on to campaign in South-East Anatolia and conquer the territory of the Karamanid 'emir' Ala-ud-Din.

## Morea/Athens

Nerio Acciajuoli, visiting Achaia to negotiate with Navarrese commander Pierre de St. Superan, is kidnapped by him in violation of safe-conduct; Nerio's relatives offer to pledge Athens, Thebes, and Corinth to Venice and afterwards cede Argos to them in return for aid in releasing him but have to pay ransom and cede Megara to Venice; silver panels installed by Basil II in Parthenon are among the ransom.

## 1391 Byzantium

**16 February** Death of John V, aged 58; Manuel returns from Brusa without Sultan's permission to secure the city before John VII can do so as Turkish client.

**March** Patriarch Anthony, restored, crowns Manuel.

Bajezid eventually accepts Manuel as emperor, but increases tribute further and requires acceptance of a Turkish quarter in Constantinople with a Moslem 'Qadi' to adjudicate legal disputes there; he resumes conquest of fellow-rulers in Western Anatolia.

**8 June** Manuel required to leave Constantinople and join Sultan's army for campaign into Paphlagonia and on to Sinope; his mother Helena is regent in absence.

**Winter** Manuel attends the Sultan's winter quarters in Ankara after campaign and holds religious discussions with Moslem theologian 'Mouterizes'; he writes up the discussions as a series of 26 'dialogues' to be presented to his brother Theodore.

## 1392 Byzantium

**January** Manuel returns to Constantinople.

**6/7 February** Manuel's bride Helena, daughter of Serb Prince Constantine Dragas of East Macedonian territories, arrives. **10 February** Manuel marries Helena. **11 February** Manuel crowned by Patriarch Anthony and crowns Helena, followed by ceremonial procession to Palace and acclamations and banquet there; witnessed by Russian Archbishop Ignatius of Smolensk.

? Turkish naval war against Sinope; uncertain if Manuel takes part.

## 1393 **Byzantium**

After Grand Duke Vassily of Moscow ceases commemorating Emperor in liturgy as he is no longer regarded as worthy to head Orthodox world, Patriarch Anthony writes defending the Imperial rôle as God's vicegerent; there is still only one Emperor of Romans, the universal ruler, and all others are violators of the legal order of world, and it does not matter that enemies surround the Emperor's capital.

## **Bulgaria**

John Sisman revolts against Bajezid at instigation of Hungary, but Turks invade; **17 July** fall of Trnovo; John Sisman captured at Nicopolis and Bulgaria annexed as Turkish province (to last for 483 years); pro-Turkish Prince Stracimir, Sisman's half-brother, temporarily retained at Vidin in North-West of country.

## **Turkish Sultanate**

Bajezid's forces overrun Paphlagonia and evict the Jandarid dynasty, rulers of Kastamoni (Castamona).

## 1394 **Byzantium/Turkish Sultanate/Morea**

**Winter** Manuel, his brother Theodore, his father-in-law Constantine Dragas, John VII, and Stephen Lazarevic summoned to Bajezid's camp at Serres; they fear he has rounded them up to kill them and according to Manuel Bajezid gave the order to kill them to eunuch general one night but was not obeyed and changed his mind; Bajezid arbitrates between rulers over complaints but executes or blinds a number of Byzantine officers before the rulers are dismissed; Theodore ordered to hand over Argos and accompany Turkish invasion of Thessaly but escapes. Bayezid sends 'Grand Vizier' Ali Pasha to Manuel in unsuccessful summons to his court; ? Manuel warned not to go by Turkish friends.

## **Athens**

**September** Death of Nerio Acciajuoli; bastard son Antonio succeeds to Thebes and daughter Francesca and her husband Carlo Tocco of Cephallonia

to Corinth, but Athens left to the Church in reparation for looting to pay Nerio's earlier ransom and Nerio's other daughter Bartolomea only has her husband Theodore's debt from Nerio repaid; castellan of Acropolis, Matteo de Montona, invokes request in will that Venice help its execution to appeal to Venice as Archbishop Macarius appeals to Turks to evict Latins; a force from Bajezid's Thessalian campaign reaches Attica but driven out by Venetians who occupy Athens.

## Byzantium

**Autumn** Following Manuel's refusal to return to Bajezid's court, the Sultan sends army to burn the suburbs and blockade Constantinople into surrender; Venice sends a ship loaded with grain.

## Italy

Pope Boniface, the Pope in charge of Rome, preaches for a new Crusade and **June** and **October** calls for assembly of army in Hungary in spring 1395 under King Sigismund (postponed to 1396); Venice to join attack with ships and Balkan principalities under Turkish overlordship called on to revolt; initially England to supply force under John, duke of Lancaster (John of Gaunt).

## 1395 Morea

**Early** Evrenos Beg leads Turkish army past Corinth to attack the Peloponnese, and singles out Theodore Palaeologus' territory in revenge for his flight from Sultan; Akova and Leontari near Achaian frontier are sacked and countryside plundered.

Evrenos withdraws, and Theodore retakes territory defeating Navarrese and capturing commander St. Superan and 'Grand Constable' Zaccaria.

## Athens

Albano Contarini installed as Venetian 'bailli', but Venice reduces Latin ecclesiastical presence to conciliate Greeks.



## **Turkish Sultanate**

Fall of Trikkala completes conquest of Thessaly.

Hearing that Crusade is being prepared in Hungary, Bajezid marches to the Danube, crosses the river into Wallachia, and **17 May** at Rovine defeats Prince Mircea to occupy fortresses on both shores; Manuel II's father-in-law Constantine Dragas and his fellow-vassal Marko Kraljevic, Serbian princes, are killed in the battle fighting for Sultan.

## **Hungary/France/Byzantium**

**May** Hungarian ambassadors belatedly meet French Dukes Philip of Burgundy and Louis of Orleans at Lyons to arrange progress of Crusade into Balkans in 1396; Philip's son John 'the Fearless', Duke of Nevers, nominated as commander. **Autumn** Manuel Philanthropenus concludes Byzantine/Hungary alliance in Buda.

## **Trebizond**

Theodora Cantacuzene, related to John VI, arrives **4 September** to marry Manuel III's son Alexius.

## **1396 France**

**April** John of Nevers and 10,000 French troops set out for Hungary, joined by c. 6000 Germans.

**July** Crusade assembles under John's command at Buda; Sigismund brings around 60,000 Hungarians and Mircea about 10,000 Wallachians. Sigismund prefers defensive posture to force Bajezid to advance into Christian territory, but French insist on attack; **August** army marches to Danube, and crosses in four days due to size; they proceed to Vidin which John Stracimir surrenders, and then storm Rahova and kill inhabitants.

Nicopolis is besieged, but holds out until Bajezid arrives to relieve it; **25 September** French cavalry charge up hill from siege-lines to attack smaller Turkish cavalry force, but other Turks and Stephen Lazarević's Serbs are in hiding behind hill and emerge to ambush them; the Crusaders are driven back and slaughtered as the Wallachians and Transylvanians

desert, and John of Nevers and the renowned knight ‘Marshal’ John Boucicaut are among those captured; nobles are among those prisoners killed afterwards as Bajezid only spares richer leaders for ransom; Sigismund’s Hungarians are less badly routed but have to retire, and Bajezid annexes Vidin due to Stracimir’s treachery.

Sigismund sails down the Danube and on to Constantinople to hold talks with Manuel, then returns to West via Hellespont where Bajezid stations prisoners on the shores as he passes to mock him.

**Autumn** Bajezid resumes blockade of Constantinople after his troops return from Nicopolis; Venice pays for new fleet to reinforce the city, and Genoa (now fief of Charles VI of France) lends assistance too.

## 1397 Byzantium

**January** Patriarch Anthony requests King Wladyslaw Jagiellon of Poland, who has sent query about Church union, to join Sigismund on new Crusade but Sigismund is not interested. Bishop Michael of Bethlehem sent to Galicia and Moldavia about military aid. Embassy sent to Pope Boniface and Nicholas Notaras to Charles VI of France.

**May** Death of Patriarch Anthony; succeeded by Callistus II who dies, then by Matthew.

## Morea

**Summer** Evrenos Beg and Yakub Pasha invade again; Evrenos marches via Leontari across the peninsula to approach Venetian-held Modon in South-West, while Yakub sacks Venetian-held Argos and slaughters inhabitants. Theodore Palaeologus, with Manuel’s approval, subsequently approaches Hospitallers about their taking over defence of Corinth.

## Turkish Sultanate

Bajezid builds fortress of ‘Anadolu Hisar’ on East side of Bosphorus to threaten ships in the channel.

John of Nevers and other hostages ransomed for 200,000 ‘ducats’.

Bajezid defeats Karamanids in South-East Anatolia and takes capital, Konya.

## 1398 **Byzantium**

?**Early** Death of scholar, philosopher, and ex-minister Demetrius Cydones, aged c.74.

**Spring** Embassies to Richard II of England and Martin I of Aragon for aid; Theodore Palaeologus Cantacuzene sent on new mission to Charles VI.

## **Turkish Sultanate**

Bajezid completes conquest of Karamanid realm, captures Malatya (Melitene), and reaches Euphrates valley.

## **Italy**

**August** Venice authorizes shipment of 7000 ducats from France to Manuel.

## 1399 **France**

**Early** Marshal Boucicaut, ransomed, is authorized by Charles VI to bring 1200 soldiers to defence of Constantinople; **26 June** leaves Aigues-Mortes.

## **Italy**

Hilario Doria, husband of Manuel's illegitimate daughter Zampia, negotiates with Pope Boniface IX who **March** authorizes collection of funds.

## **Byzantium**

**Summer** Boucicaut breaks Turkish blockade of Hellespont and reaches Constantinople; welcomed and given rank of 'Grand Constable', and joins Manuel in sorties in Thrace and Asian coast.

Boucicaut advises Manuel to go to West and appeal for aid in person, and Manuel uses him as intermediary to approach John VII at Selymbria about governing the capital in his absence; John agrees and **4 December** moves to Constantinople with his family and Boucicaut's lieutenant John de Châteaumorand to remain with 100 men-at-arms.

**10 December** Manuel sails from Constantinople to Modon with his wife and sons, and leaves his family at Modon as safer than in Constantinople with his rival; Theodore meets him at Modon about surrender of Corinth. Constantine Rhales Palaeologus and Theodore Palaeologus Cantacuzene sent to Moscow to raise money for troops.

## 1400 Byzantium/Morea/France/England

**January** Manuel sails on to Italy, while Theodore goes to Rhodes to meet the Hospitaller leadership; the latter insist on governing all of his Principality if they are to take it on, with garrisons at Kalavryta and Mistra; Theodore, despairing of hope of victory for Greeks, agrees and abdicates in their favour, and they occupy Kalavryta but are refused admittance to Mistra by Bishop and angry citizens; Theodore retires to Monemvasia but finds the deal collapsing.

**April** Manuel in Venice; then to Padua; Boucicaut goes ahead to Paris while he travels slowly across Northern Italy to grand reception by Duke Gian Galeazzo Visconti at Milan; ?Manuel also meets émigré Greek scholar Manuel Chrysoloras, professor at Florence.

**May** Pope Boniface renews call for Crusade.

**3 June** Manuel reaches Paris to another hospitable reception, from Charles VI who promises Boucicaut will lead new expedition; 1200 men to be sent.

Manuel writes to Kings Henry III of Castile and Martin of Aragon, and prepares visit to England as Richard II's successor Henry IV is a former Crusader (against Lithuanian pagans) and has visited Jerusalem; **11 July** Henry Holt, prior of Hospitallers in England, promises assistance in letter.

## Turkish Sultanate/Georgia

Timur 'The Lame' (aka 'Tamerlane'), ferocious ruler of Persia and Transoxiana, persecutes Christians in Georgia and sacks leading cities in pursuit of 'jihad', then enters Ottoman territories and **August** sacks Sivas/Sebastea; he turns South against Mameluke Syria but Bajezid has to prepare for his likely return.

## Byzantium/England

Manuel meets Holt at Calais as Charles VI insane; **December** Manuel lands at Dover after Henry IV's return from campaign in Scotland, and

**13 December** proceeds to Canterbury; **21 December** Henry meets him at Blackheath and escorts him into London; he spends Christmas as Henry's guest at Eltham Palace, and writes an impressed letter on his reception and Henry's goodwill to Chrysoloras.

## 1401 Byzantium/England/France

**February** Manuel returns to France with 3000 'marks' and expressions of goodwill but no definite promises of aid from the preoccupied Henry despite his hopes; he joins Charles VI at Paris, amidst rumours that Bajezid has been defeated or killed by Timur, and attends Mass at St. Denis. Manuel negotiates with Henry IV, Spanish rulers, and Pope Benedict at Avignon and writes home he expects to be accompanied or followed by a Crusade, but cannot secure the army he needs.

**June** Possible negotiations between John VII and Bajezid, but no agreement even if it is more than rumour. Manuel's envoy Alexius Branas visits Martin of Aragon, who promises six galleys in 1402. Charles however sends Boucicaut to govern Genoa.

## 1402 Byzantium

**Spring** Manuel asks Venice and Genoa to help secure delayed English and French aid.

**1 June** John VII writes to Henry IV for aid.

## Ottoman Sultanate

**Spring** Timur invades Anatolia and ravages Cappadocia, sacking Kayseri/Caesarea; Bajezid marches East. ?John VII promises to surrender after campaign.

**28 July** Bajezid defeated and captured in catastrophic Turkish defeat at battle of Ankara; he is honourably treated unlike legends claim, but is deposed as his eldest son Sulaiman flees the battle with survivors and **August** reaches Thrace to negotiate his recognition by Byzantine authorities from Gallipoli to secure their non-belligerence in case of civil war; he occupies Adrianople as Sultan.

Timur holds out hope of recognition and support to both Sulaiman and his rival brothers in Anatolia, Isa, Musa, and Mehmed, and in the

meantime receives refugee ex-rulers of Turkish Emirates that Bajezid conquered in 1390s.

**August** ‘Emir’ of Saruchan, Khidr Shah Beg (deposed 1390), returns to Magnesia to reconstitute principality as Timur’s vassal; ‘Emirs’ Musa of Aydin, Isfandiyar of Kastamonu (Paphlagonia), and Muzaffar-ud-Din of Monteshe do likewise but the most important gainer is Karamanid ruler, Mehmed II.

## Athens

**Summer** Antonio Acciajuoli of Thebes evicts Venetians from Athens.

## Byzantium

**September?** Manuel hears of Bajezid’s defeat and captivity at Paris, and prepares to return home; **9 October** the Venetian Senate send congratulations on his deliverance; Châteaumorand arrives from Constantinople to confirm situation.

**Late November** Manuel sets off from Paris to Italy, escorted by Châteaumorand and 200 soldiers.

**December** Timur sacks Crusader-held Smyrna and massacres inhabitants; end of Latin presence in Anatolia from 1343.

## Morea

Death of Superan, ruler of Achaia; Centurione Zaccaria seizes control.

## 1403 Byzantium/Turkish Sultanate

**January** Boucicaut, new French governor of Genoa, receives Manuel.

**February** Treaty between John VII and Suleiman’s representatives, Venice, Genoa, and Hospitallers at Constantinople – Byzantium relieved of vassalage and tribute and regains Thessalonica, Mount Athos, and the Thracian coast up to Anchialus or Varna, with Skiathos, Skopelos, and Skyros in Aegean.

Sulaiman agreed to become Manuel’s vassal, as ‘son’ to ‘father’.

Manuel goes on to Venice **March** and **5 April** sails for Morea with three Venetian ships; he collects his family from Theodore, now securely in control of Morea again, at Modon.

**9 June** Manuel and family return to Constantinople; he and John VII sign renewal of agreement with Suleiman, who marries Manuel's brother Theodore's illegitimate daughter.

**Summer** John VII sent to Lemnos pending the delayed restoration of Thessalonica which Manuel promised him as his appanage; he proceeds to Lesbos to join his father-in-law Francesco II Gatilluso, and according to Spanish visitor Ruy Gonzalez de Clavijo they plot to seize Thessalonica by force after quarrel with Manuel; **October** de Clavijo meets Manuel in Constantinople.

**Autumn?** Thessalonica restored to Byzantium, and John rules it as governor, retaining imperial title to which his son Andronicus 'V' is now or later raised; Manuel's minister Demetrius Lascaris Leontaris assists John.

Bajezid's son Isa, given refuge in Constantinople after losing struggle over remaining Asian dominions in Bithynia, returns to offensive but is killed by brother Mehmed; Mehmed rules in Bithynia.

Constantine Rhales Paleologus sent as envoy to Aragon to raise funds and troops; Branas, in Aragon, returns to France.

## 1404 Byzantium/Morea

Manuel sends embassy to France.

**5 May** Theodore buys Corinth back from the Hospitallers in treaty of Vasilopotamo.

## Turkish Sultanate

Suleiman faces civil war in European domains from his vassal brother Musa.

## 1405 Byzantium

**8 February** Birth of Manuel's fourth son Constantine (XI).

## Spain

Rhales Palaeologus goes on to Navarre.

### 1406 Byzantium

22 May Treaty with Venice renewed; Paolo Zeno is Venetian negotiator.

### 1407 Byzantium/Morea

Death of Theodore Palaeologus of the Morea, aged around 54; Manuel delivers elaborate eulogy to his achievements and nominates his own second son Theodore, now around 13, as next ruler once he becomes adult – uncertain who is regent. Manuel sends Chrysoloras back to Italy on mission for military aid.

? Death of John VII's son Andronicus 'V'.

Venice acquires Naupactus/Lepanto, to control Gulf of Corinth; they lease Patras for 5 years from Archbishop Zaccaria's brother.

## Turkish Sultanate

Sulaiman quarrels with Mohammed, invades Bithynia, and seizes Brusa.

### 1408 Byzantium/Morea

Manuel visits the Morea to install regency government for Theodore (II) at Mistra and recites his 'Funeral Oration' for previous ruler at the town; **September** during his visit John VII dies at Thessalonica, aged 40, and the city reverts to Manuel's rule; Manuel unsuccessfully opens talks with Venice to try to regain outposts like Nauplia around Peloponnese.

Manuel installs his third son, Andronicus aged c. 13, as nominal ruler of Thessalonica during his voyage home and examines the state of Mount Athos – the monasteries want their estates in Byzantine land returned by Sulaiman restored, but Manuel can only afford a return of 2/3 and insists they pay tax to him at 1/2 rate they paid to Sultan. Chrysoloras proceeds from Genoa to France.



**1409 Turkish Sultanate**

Musa starts new campaign against Sulaiman in Thrace.

**Byzantium**

Chrysoloras visits England.

**1410 Byzantium**

Death of Patriarch Matthew, succeeded by Euthymius.

**January** Manuel proposes anti-Turkish league to Venice.

**Turkish Sultanate/Byzantium**

**13 February** Musa defeats Sulaiman's general Sinan at Lamboi.

**15 June** Sulaiman defeats Musa at Cosmidion.

**Autumn?** Musa besieges Sulaiman in Adrianople; Manuel sends aid to the besieged, and unsuccessfully attacks Gallipoli.

**Italy**

Chrysoloras returns from Spanish mission; sent to Papal court at Bologna.

**1411 Turkish Sultanate/Byzantium**

**February** Sulaiman's troops open the gates of Adrianople to Musa, who captures and **17 February** executes his fleeing brother and assumes control of European lands; Musa denounces the treaty with Byzantium and marches on Constantinople to besiege it by land and sea; Manuel has stored provisions ready and the defenders are able to fight back strongly, and imperial ships breach Turkish naval blockade; Manuel's candidate for Turkish throne, Orhan son of Sulaiman, captured and killed.

Manuel sends to Mehmed, ruler in Anatolian dominions, and offers alliance and shipping to transport him to Europe if he will attack Musa.

## Epirus

**February** Death of Esau Buondelmonti, Italian lord of Ioannina; widow Eudocia deposed by Carlo Tocco, lord of the Ionian islands.

## Italy

Chrysoloras accompanies new Pope John XXIII to Rome.

### 1412 Turkish Sultanate

**Early** Mehmed meets Manuel successfully at Scutari/Chrysopolis, then comes to Constantinople for 3-day visit; he sallies from city with his army to attack Musa's land-forces but **July** defeated.

Manuel persuades Mehmed to collect a new, larger army; a second attack via Constantinople is defeated but on third attempt Mehmed drives Musa back into Thrace; he takes Adrianople.

### 1413 Turkish Sultanate/Byzantium

Mehmed pursues Musa West and **5 July** destroys his army at Camurlu in Serbia; Musa captured and executed; Mehmed renews Sulaiman's treaty and promises to regard Manuel as his 'father' and to do his bidding (according to historian Doukas); he feasts ambassadors of Byzantium, Serbia, Wallachia, Greek states, and Bulgarian lords and promises peace to all. Manuel offers to mediate between Venice and Emperor Sigismund.

## Italy

Chrysoloras returns to Florence after Pope expelled from Rome.

### 1414 Byzantium

Manuel's eldest son John marries Anna, daughter of 'Grand Duke' Vassily of Moscow.

**January** Venetian Senate declines Manuel's appeal for money.

**25 July** Manuel leaves Constantinople in John's charge and journeys towards the Morea to install Theodore II at Mistra; he visits Thasos to drive off attack by son of Francesco II Gattilusio, then **September** arrives at Thessalonica to winter with Andronicus; **28 November** he writes to Ferdinand I of Aragon.

## **Italy**

Chrysoloras attends Council of Constance on Church reunion.

## **1415 Byzantium/Morea**

Manuel sails to Euboea to meet Venetian Governor, then on to Cenchræ on the Saronic Gulf **29 March** whence he goes to nearby Corinth to examine the Isthmus for planned wall to defend it from attack from North; the 6-mile 'Hexamilion' is put under construction from Saronic Gulf to Gulf of Corinth; the fortification is supposedly built to defensible height in 25 days in haste to complete it before Turks find out; Venetians decline to pay anything though their possessions in Morea are defended too, so Manuel levies new taxes on the Byzantine principality and as a result faces revolt.

**15 July** Manuel defends rebels near Kalamata.

Manuel sends envoys under Eudomoiannes to Western Church Council at Constance, offering to work for East/West reunion; however Chrysoloras dies during its meeting.

## **Turkish Sultanate**

Mehmed reconquers Smyrna and the Emirate of Aydin and deports ruler Junayd to Europe.

## **1416 Turkish Sultanate/Byzantium**

**March** Manuel returns to Constantinople.

Venetians arrange the transport to Europe of a claimant alleging he is Mehmed's younger brother Mustafa who has not been seen since 1402 battle of Ankara; he raises revolt against Mehmed, and Manuel lends him

some discreet assistance and aids him in approaches to Stephen Lazarević of Serbia and the Karamanids; Junayd assists Mustafa.

**March** Death of Patriarch Euthymius; succeeded **21 May** by Joseph II, of Bulgarian origin and possibly illegitimate son of ‘Czar’ John Alexander (d. 1371).

Manuel insists on new orders confirming imperial rights over Church.

**May** Venetian Admiral Pietro Loredan comes to rescue of Negropont/Chalcis, capital of Euboea, after Turkish fleet attacks, pursues Turks back to Gallipoli, and destroys their navy in battle off the town; Venetians demonstrate outside Turkish base but do not attack.

Mustafa driven into Thessaly by Mehmed’s army and flees to Thessalonica, where Andronicus’ governor Leontaris gives him asylum in breach of Manuel’s treaty; Manuel refuses to hand Mustafa over and Mehmed pays 20,000 ‘hyperpera’ per annum for him to be kept hostage. Byzantines consider using him in next succession-crisis to Sultanate, and move him to Lemnos; Junayd detained in Constantinople.

## 1417 Turkish Sultanate

Venetian/Turkish treaty restores peace.

## Trebizond

Death of Manuel III, aged 53; succeeded by son Alexius IV, aged around 32.

## Byzantium

Death of Manuel’s eldest son John’s wife Anna of Moscow; John joins brother Theodore in Morea.

## 1418 Byzantium

Negotiations to marry John to an Italian bride as part of new Byzantine initiative in West, and negotiations succeed in obtaining Pope Martin V’s approval for Catholic brides to marry John and Theodore; John Bladynterus sent as envoy to Pope.

## 1420 **Byzantium**

**January** Manuel Philanthropenus sent as envoy to Venice and Sigismund.

**Autumn** Arrival in Constantinople of Sophia of Montferrat to marry John; Cleope Malatesta, daughter of Count of Rimini, marries Theodore in the Morea. Philanthropenus goes on to Poland.

### **Italy**

Piero Fancesco chosen as Papal Legate for reunion talks.

## 1421 **Byzantium/Turkish Sultanate**

**19 January** John marries Sophia at Hagia Sophia; John is then crowned co-Emperor, and takes over more responsibilities from his father.

Byzantine fear of Turks leads to encouragement for plot to murder Sultan Mehmed when he arranges to meet Manuel en route to Scutari for visit to Bithynia, but Manuel refuses to go along with it; he sails in company with Sultan's galley across the Bosphorus and dines with him at Scutari; Manuel sends Leontaris to Adrianople ? where he is involved in Sultan's will.

**21 May** Mehmed dies suddenly on return to Adrianople, in uncertain circumstances, his will entrusts two younger sons to Manuel for safety, but ministers refuse to hand them over to infidels; eldest son Murad II succeeds aged 17, but John VIII and 'war party' insist that Empire backs the more reliable Mustafa and dubious but ailing Manuel gives way.

**Autumn** Mustafa brought from Lemnos to make agreement with Byzantine government, and sent to Thrace to raise revolt; he seizes Gallipoli and Adrianople.

Mustafa, invading Bithynia in Genoese ships, is routed by Murad near Brusa.

## 1422 **Byzantium/Turkish Sultanate**

**January** Murad crosses into Thrace, and defeats and executes Mustafa; he spurns the Byzantine ambassadors sent to pacify him and prepares for war; panic-stricken Byzantine government mutilates their interpreter Theologus Korax.

**10 June** Constantinople and Thessalonica both besieged; the Sultan builds massive rampart of earth along the length of land-walls and catapults bombard the city from there, but **24 August** grand assault on walls on allegedly auspicious date is driven back after fierce fighting and **6 September** the Turks retreat as Murad's young half-brother Mustafa is proclaimed rival Sultan at Brusa at Manuel's instigation; **Summer** Pope sends Franciscan 'Provincial' Antonio da Massa to Constantinople to open talks on reunion; **16 September** Manuel receives da Massa.

## Morea

Venetians consider purchasing West coast of Peloponnese from local rulers – Carlo Tocco of Epirus, now lord of Clarentza, Centurione Zaccaria of the remnants of Achaia, and Theodore II Palaeologus – to coordinate defence; none are enthusiastic to sell, but Venetians acquire protectorate over Patras.

## Byzantium

**1 October** Manuel suffers stroke and paralysis; son John has to negotiate with da Massa.

## 1423 Byzantium/Italy

**April** Da Massa returns to Italy with Byzantine insistence on a General Council.

Andronicus, sick and despairing as siege of Thessalonica continues, offers it to Venice as long as they promise Greeks to respect property and Church; his envoys go to Negroponte on Euboea, whence the Senate in Venice is informed.

## Morea

**May** Turkish general Turuhan Beg breaches 'Hexamilion' and raids Morea.

## **Byzantium/Italy**

**Early July** Senate decides on acceptance of Andronicus' proposal and informs Turks with assurances that it is to protect city from rival Christian powers; Manuel, ill after stroke, approves of Andronicus' actions.

**September 2** Venetian representatives arrive in Thessalonica, with 6 ships full of provisions, and raise the banner of St. Mark; Andronicus to be paid rent for his property in city and leaves with infant son John for the Morea to join Theodore.

**15 November** John VIII journeys to Venice to discuss military aid to Constantinople, and then goes on to Milan.

John's younger brother, Manuel's fourth son Constantine (XI), aged 18, appointed ruler of Mesembria on the Black Sea coast.

## **1424 Byzantium/Turkish Sultanate**

**Early** Manuel and Constantine negotiate peace with Murad via Manuel Melachrinus, surrendering remaining fortresses around Thessalonica and Anchialus on Black Sea coast and paying 20,000 'hyperpera' per annum tribute; Murad refuses to lift siege of Thessalonica and imprisons Venetian ambassadors; **22 February** treaty signed.

**Summer** John negotiates with Sigismund in Hungary.

**1 November** John VIII returns to Constantinople to take over government.

## **1425 Byzantium**

**21 July** Death of Emperor Manuel II, aged 75, as the monk Matthew; the scholar Bessarion of Trebizond, later Cardinal, reads eulogy at the funeral at church of Pantocrator. John VIII sole Emperor; Theodore announces intention to abdicate from rule of Morea, later changing his mind.

## **1426 Byzantium/Morea**

**Autumn** Constantine moves to the Morea to become co-'Despot' with Theodore II; John joins him to launch campaign against Carlo Tocco's lordship of Clarentza; John's wife Sophia of Montferrat, neglected and according to Doukas despised by husband for ugliness, flees back to

Italy; Manuel II's fifth son Thomas, aged around 19, in the Morea and sixth son Demetrius, aged around 18, takes over Constantine's appanage at Mesembria.

## **Trebizond**

Alexius IV's elder son John flees to Caffa in the Crimea to seek Genoese aid to overthrow him; he returns with Genoese fleet, and they besiege the city; during negotiations Alexius is murdered by John in confrontation in his tent outside walls, and John is accepted as new Emperor as Genoese vassal; John exiles his younger brother Alexander.

## **1427 Byzantium/Morea**

Byzantine army under Constantine's friend George Sphrantzes, the later historian, captures Clarentza; Byzantine fleet defeats Carlo Tocco's navy at entrance to Gulf of Patras; Tocco's Peloponnesian domain annexed to Empire, leaving him with Epirus (including Joannina) and the Ionian Islands.

**September** John VIII marries his third wife, John IV of Trebizond's sister Maria; ? Maria's exiled brother Alexander takes refuge in Constantinople.

## **Serbia**

Stephen Lazarević succeeded by nephew George Branković.

## **1428 Byzantium**

Carlo Tocco's niece Magdalena (renamed Theodora) married to Constantine in peace-treaty; Constantine's 'Despotate' based at Clarentza while Theodore retains Mistra.

## **Turkish Sultanate**

Having lifted siege of Thessalonica temporarily in return for tribute from Venice, Murad arbitrarily doubles the tribute.



## 1429 **Byzantium/Morea**

**4 March** Death of Andronicus, ex-ruler of Thessalonica, aged 27/28.

Constantine and Theodore besiege Patras, where the current Archbishop is Theodore's wife Cleope's brother Pandolfo Malatesta from Rimini; he has to surrender the city, and 5 June it is restored to the Empire after 224 years with Greek Archbishop restored to cathedral.

Thomas defeats Centurione Zaccaria, and forces him to surrender; he hands over his daughter Catherine to be Thomas' wife and Arcadia as her dowry, but is allowed to retain his estates where he dies two years later; end of Frankish rule in Achaia.

Death of Carlo Tocco in Epirus; succeeded by his nephew Carlo II, Constantine's brother-in law, but Greek citizens of Joannina open secret talks with Sultan about surrender to escape Latin rule.

Death of Archbishop Simeon of Thessalonica, leader of Greek citizens' resistance in Thessalonica, amid growing despair over siege and complaints at lack of Venetian efforts.

## 1430 **Byzantium/Turkish Sultanate**

**26 March** As Murad leads a large army up to walls of Thessalonica, the Venetian governors refuse his order to surrender to avoid sack; Christians in Sultan's camp approach guards on walls at night to warn of intended bloodbath to no avail, and one account claims local monks advised Sultan to cut water-pipes.

**29 March** Murad and Sinan Pasha, governor-general ('beglerbeg') of 'Rumelia' i.e. European dominions, lead storming of Thessalonica; inhabitants massacred and enslaved as Venetians flee to Euboea, but Murad later restores Greek quarter and ransoms some citizens.

Sinan Pasha marches into Epirus and **9 October** Bishop of Joannina leads the city's surrender; inhabitants protected and church granted privileges in special decree, as a deliberate contrast to what befell those who resisted at Thessalonica.

John VIII sends envoys to Pope Martin proposing a General Council to be held at Constantinople to reunite Churches; Pope tentatively agrees.

## **Serbia**

George Branković builds new fortress-capital at Smederevo on the Danube.

**1431 Byzantium/Italy**

**20 February** Death of Pope Martin V; **3 March** Gabriel Condulmaro, Venetian, elected (Eugenius III) and receives Byzantine ambassadors, but the Empire also faces a problem over the alternative claims to primacy in the Western Church now raised by the Council that is meeting at Basle, in **July**.

**December** Eugenius dissolves the Council, but it refuses to disperse.

**1432 Byzantium/Italy**

Conflict between Eugenius and the Council at Basle; the latter invites John to send delegates to them on the grounds that they represent the Church and have support of Sigismund and other rulers; John decides to send an embassy to Basle.

**1434 Byzantium/Italy/Switzerland**

**July** Byzantine embassy arrives at the Council of Basle.

Council agrees to negotiate about reunion and sends delegation to Constantinople; Pope Eugenius sends rival delegation, from Florence where he has been driven by riots in Rome.

**1435 Athens**

Death of Duke Antonio Acciajuoli; succeeded by his cousin Franco of Sykaminon's elder son Nerio II, but Antonio's Greek widow Maria Melissena plots against him.

Maria and the 'archon' Chalcocondylas (father of historian Laonicus Chalcocondylas) seize the Acropolis, site of Ducal palace, in revolt; Chalcocondylas hurries to Sultan Murad to bribe him to accept their rule of Athens for Greeks but is arrested; Maria sends to Constantine in the Morea instead, negotiating to exchange Athens for Melissenus family lands in his principality, and Sphrantzes leads army on Athens.

Murad's general Turahan Beg invades Boeotia and takes Thebes, and Acciajuoli partisans regain Acropolis before Sphrantzes arrives so he has to retire; Nerio confirms vassalage to Sultan so Turahan withdraws, then marries Duchess Maria.

## **Byzantium**

Plague in Constantinople.

### **1436 Byzantium/Italy**

Isidore, abbot of monastery of St. Demetrius at Constantinople and a delegate to Council of Basle, becomes Archbishop of Kiev (in Lithuanian-controlled West Russia) – normally resident now in Moscow as head of Orthodox Church throughout Russia.

**December** Italian antiquary Cyriacus of Ancona (Ciriaco del Pizzicolti) arrives in Ionian Islands on tour described in his writings; thence he travels through Epirus to Carlo Tocco's court at Arta.

### **1437 Byzantium/Italy**

Cyriacus travels along Gulf of Corinth via Delphi to **April** Athens, and then passes the ruined 'Hexamilion' en route to Patras; at Kalavryta he stays with the Byzantine governor, George Cantacuzene, and enjoys his library.

**July** Byzantine delegation accompanies those members of Council of Basle who accept Pope's ability to dissolve it, and inform John VIII that he should send delegation for reunion to the new Council that Pope will organize.

**18 September** Eugenius announces that the relocated Council is to meet at Ferrara in January 1438.

**27 November** John personally leads the Byzantine delegation of over 650 clerics to Italy for the Council; accompanied by his youngest brother Demetrius, aged Patriarch Joseph, Bessarion (titular Archbishop of Nicaea), and most of the Church hierarchy; lay delegates include the radical philosopher George Gemisthus Plethon from Mistra and the future Patriarch and academic lawyer George Scholarius, Aristotelian philosopher George of Trebizond, and Platonist philosopher George Amiroutzes.

Patriarchs of Antioch, Alexandria and Jerusalem send representatives; Isidore travels overland from Russia; Wallachia, Moldavia, and Georgia send representatives with Byzantine delegation.

**Autumn** Castilian visitor Pedro Tafur in Constantinople; comments on decay of city.

## 1438 Byzantium/Italy

**8 January** Cardinal Albergati opens Council at Ferrara.

**8 February** John VIII and Byzantine delegation anchor off Venice;  
**9 February** they receive State ceremonial welcome from Doge Francesco Foscari, who sails out in his barge to escort them up the Rialto; John resides in Palace of Dukes of Ferrara.

**4 March** John arrives at Ferrara; Patriarch Joseph follows but refuses to meet Pope until latter gives way on insistence that Patriarch kiss his foot.

**9 April** Council begins deliberations; Cardinal Julio Cesarini leads Western debaters over contentious issues, particularly ‘filioque’ clause, and Byzantines divided between more accommodating Bessarion and Isidore and the rigid stance of theologians such as Mark Eugenicus, Archbishop of Ephesus; John presses for agreement and instructs his delegates to avoid contentious issues like Divine ‘Energies’ that cannot be precisely translated and mutually understood.

Procession of Holy Ghost (i.e. ‘filioque’ question), bread’s place in Sacrament, Purgatory, and Papal position are debated; Byzantines agree to include Latin ‘Fathers’ of Church among the theologians whose writings are to be used as reference but do not understand them adequately.

Byzantines agree to allow use of leavened or unleavened bread in Sacrament, but ‘filioque’ dispute rages on as many texts are contradictory or not properly translatable.

**Late** Due to plague, Council transferred to Florence.

## 1439 Byzantium/Italy

**January** Council reopens in Florence; Bessarion and Isidore are won over to Latin view on ‘filioque’ as are all lay delegates except Plethon who takes time off to give lectures on Plato to Florentines.

**March** Compromise reached on the contentious clause – that the Holy Spirit proceeds ‘from the Father through the Son’, i.e. not defined if it proceeds ‘from’ the Son too.

Joseph accepts that ‘through’ and ‘from’ can mean the same thing, but **10 June** dies before signing of Council agreement; George Scholarius gives way despite reservations (and later recantation), and Mark of Ephesus resists and refuses to sign; John is supposed to have kept delegates short of food and other requirements to pressurize them into signing. Document

of reunion drawn up, John raises queries, and Pope adds extra words to give thanks for reunion.

**Sunday, 5 July** Byzantine clerical delegates sign the Union, except for Mark; John signs on behalf of lay delegates but Plethon disassociates himself.

**Monday, 6 July** Union of Churches proclaimed and celebrated with public holiday, and Pope says Mass in Cathedral before Cesarini reads the Latin text and Bessarion the Greek text.

**Late July** Main part of Byzantine delegation leaves Florence, Demetrius and Plethon having left earlier; **August** John follows but is held up by bad weather en route.

**October** Pope announces his plans for Crusade to aid the Empire.

## **Athens**

Duke Nerio II overthrown by his brother, Antonio (II).

## **Turkish Sultanate/Serbia**

Murad takes Smederevo after three-month siege.

## **Byzantium**

**Late** Death of Empress Maria, John VIII's wife, before her husband's return.

## **1440 Byzantium**

**February** John VIII returns to Constantinople to find substantial resistance to reunion, led by his brother Demetrius at Mesembria and by Mark of Ephesus; he has difficulty in finding anyone to take up Patriarchal throne under Union.

**May** Metrophanes, Bishop of Cyzicus, accepts the Patriarchate and celebrates Mass in Hagia Sophia with the name of Pope included in liturgy; Mark leaves Constantinople for Ephesus.

Patriarchs of Antioch, Alexandria, and Jerusalem denounce their representatives' acceptance of Union; **Autumn** due to resistance in Constantinople,

Bessarion decides to return to Italy; Mark is arrested in Constantinople on his way to Mount Athos.

### **Turkish Sultanate/Serbia**

Turks fail in siege of Belgrade.

### **1441 Athens**

Nerio II deposes his brother Antonio II to regain Duchy.

### **Turkish Sultanate**

Murad defeated by Hungarian general John Hunyadi.

### **Lithuania/Russia**

Isidore returns to Kiev as Cardinal and Papal legate; he tours the lands under his dominion to enforce Union with Rome but **March** on arrival in Moscow is arrested after he proclaims Pope's name in the liturgy; he escapes before trial and deposition and flees to Italy, and the Russian Church denounces Union but leaves the see of Kiev vacant rather than break with Empire by appointing own candidate.

### **Morea**

**24 July** Constantine marries (2) Catherine Gattilusio of Lesbos.

### **1442 Italy**

**February** Pope Eugenius appoints Cesarini as legate to organize Crusading force in Central Europe, led by King Wladyslaw/Ladislav of Hungary and Poland, which is to march across Hungary into Balkans; Venice is supposed to provide galleys to block Hellespont so Turks cannot bring reinforcements from Anatolia, but does not agree and delays fitting-out the Papal fleet which was supposed to be in action in summer 1443.

## **Byzantium**

**Summer** Demetrius marches on Constantinople with anti-Unionist backing in the city and attempts to break into capital and depose John; he is defeated and captured.

**August** Mark Eugenicus released in order to avoid making him a martyr for anti-Unionist cause, but he resumes his campaign denouncing Union.

## **Morea**

Death of Catherine Gattilusio, Constantine's second wife.

## **1443 Byzantium/Morea**

**August** Death of Patriarch Metrophanes.

John comes to an arrangement with his next brothers whereby Theodore moves from Mistra to Selymbria and hands over his lands in the Morea to Constantine; Theodore is probably influenced by John's declining health, as his arthritis was evident even during the Italian visit in 1438–9, and wants to be nearer capital in case of John's death to pre-empt Demetrius. Gregory (III) Mammas becomes pro-Unionist Patriarch.

## **Hungary/Serbia**

John Hunyadi's Hungarian army, reinforced by Papally-sponsored contingent under Cesarini, heavily defeats Ottoman invasion of Transylvania and **July** pursues Turks over the Danube back into Serbia; refugee George Branković of Serbia returns with him to liberate his territories, and **November** Nis and Serdica/Sofia are captured.

## **Turkish Sultanate**

Murad faces war against the Karamanids in South-East Anatolia under Ibrahim Beg, and revolt in Albania which is soon joined by the refugee lord George Castriota ('Scanderbeg', 'Lord Alexander'), a skilled general and a former Turkish soldier, in alliance with the advancing Westerners.

**12 December** Crusading army receives first check from Turkish general Kasim Beg at Zlatitsa in Sredra Gore Mountains; Crusaders retreat but **24 December** defeat pursuers near Serdica/Sofia.

## 1444 Turkish Sultanate/Byzantium/Hungary

**2 January** Turks defeated by Crusaders at Mount Kunavica.

Murad sends Greek monk as his envoy to Hungary as bad weather forces the Crusaders to retire to Belgrade **January**; the envoy reaches Ladislav, Branković and other leaders who are planning next campaign at Buda and offers Branković return of all his lands and of two blinded sons, Stephen and Lazar, who are currently Ottoman hostages.

John VIII sends envoys to congratulate Crusaders, but **April** Branković puts Murad's truce-proposals to Hungarian Diet; **25 April** Ladislav authorizes despatch of envoys to Adrianople, led by his representative Stojko Gizdavic and by Hunyadi's representative Vitislaus and Branković's Bishop Athanasius of Smederevo.

**February–June** Cyriacus of Ancona, on second tour of Greece, in Adrianople and **12 June** witnesses Murad's reception of Crusader ambassadors; 10-year truce, return of Serb lands, and freeing Wallachia from tribute proposed by Sultan, and on that basis Sulaiman Pasha goes to Buda.

Cyriacus goes on to Constantinople, and possibly later to Athens; Murad leaves 12-year-old son Mehmed in control in Adrianople with 'Grand Vizier' Halil Candarli and marches into Anatolia to fight Ibrahim Beg the Karamanid.

Castriota seizes ancestral fortress at Kroia and evicts Turks from most of Albania.

Constantine marches from Corinth into Attica, and forces Nerio II to transfer allegiance and tribute to him; he secures control of lands up to Thermopylae.

**25 July** Ladislav leaves Buda for Szeged to meet Turkish envoys, after apparently promising Cesarini not to agree with the infidel; he meets Sulaiman and Vranas the Greek at Szeged and is assumed to have approved of agreement but definite signature debatable (Turkish version of events claimed he swore to it then broke oath).

**4 August** Ladislav, Hunyadi, and nobles swear to cross Danube by 1 September and try to drive Turks out of Balkans that year.



**15 August** George Branković signs peace with Turks: Smederevo, Novo, Esrdo, and Golubac fortresses returned with principality.

**22 August** Branković enters Smederevo.

### **Turkish Sultanate/Byzantium/Hungary**

Alvise Loredan and legate Cardinal Francesco Condulmer, Papal relative, lead Venetian/Crusader fleet to Hellespont too late to stop Murad crossing to Anatolia. Branković and Serbs boycott campaign.

**October** Crusaders fight way through Bulgaria; having concluded peace with Ibrahim Beg, Murad crosses back to Europe over Bosphorus near Anadolu Hisar to avoid Western fleet near Gallipoli.

Crusaders arrive at Black Sea coast near Varna but **10 November** are destroyed in battle by a Turkish army under Murad of around 80,000 men, probably four times their size; Ladislav is killed leading cavalry charge against Sultan's 'Janissaries', and many Turks are killed and generals flee before victory is assured.

Leaderless Crusaders take flight to Danube abandoning camp, and Cesarini is never seen again; Hunyadi reaches Wallachia to be captured by Prince Vlad 'Dracul' and after initial hesitation that the enemy has retired in orderly fashion Murad organizes pursuit and killings.

Ladislav's head sent to Brusa; **December?** Murad decides to abdicate and retire to Magnesia/Manisa, retaining lands of Aydin, Saruhan, and Mentеше, while 'Grand Vizier' Halil Pasha governs in name of young Mehmed at Adrianople. Omar Beg, commander in Thessaly, raids Boeotia.

Crusader fleet raids up Black Sea ports.

## **1445 Hungary**

Uncertainty over survival or not of Ladislav; Hunyadi acts as Regent.

### **Byzantium**

**23 June?** Death of Mark Eugenikos.

## Turkish Sultanate/Athens/Italy

**April/May** Venice opens negotiations to restore peace, while Loredan's fleet remains in Bosphorus.

Nerio Acciajuoli sends envoys to Sultan to resume paying tribute.

## 1446 Turkish Sultanate/Byzantium/Morea

**23 February** Albobrandino di Zusti signs Venetian/Turkish treaty with Mohammed at Adrianople.

**March** Cyriacus at Lesbos as guest of 'Duke' Dorino Gattilusio; **17 April** Cyriacus and his friend Francesco Draperio from Phocaea meet Murad at Magnesia and **5 May** accompany him as he leads 4000 troops towards Adrianople in response to plea from Halil to reassume power after disturbances in the capital; **August** Murad at Brusa; **September** he returns to Adrianople and Halil carries out coup with support of 'Janissary' corps.

Mehmed sent to Magnesia, apparently vowing revenge on Halil; Murad orders campaign against Morea, confirms Venetian treaty, and refuses Constantine's request to recognise his rule as far as Thermopylae.

Marriage of George Branković's eldest son and heir Lazar to Helena, daughter of 'Despot' Thomas Palaeologus.

Murad leads large army from Serres to abandoned Thermopylae; Nerio joins him at Thebes; **November** he reaches the 'Hexamilion' across Isthmus, and fierce fighting with Constantine and Thomas until Turkish cannons breach walls; **10 December** the Turks storm the walls and the Byzantine army retreats ahead of them.

Murad devastates countryside and burns Corinth, Sicyon and Aigion en route to Patras, where citadel holds out but most inhabitants flee before he arrives and sacks city; Omar Beg invades Laconia as Constantine and Thomas avoid battle.

## 1447 Byzantium/Turkish Sultanate/Morea

**Early** Murad retires from devastated Peloponnese with allegedly 60,000 prisoners to be enslaved; 'Hexamilion' demolished.

At Thebes, Constantine's and Thomas' ambassadors meet Murad and promise to pay tribute and the 'haradj' as vassals; they are allowed to retain lands to Corinth but 'Hexamilion' not to be restored.

John sends embassy to Alfonso of Aragon, ruler of Naples and Sicily, for aid.

## Italy

**23 February** Death of Pope Eugenius; **6 March** Tommaso Paruntucelli elected (Nicholas V).

## Morea

Cyriacus returns to Greece, and visits Mistra; meets Constantine, Plethon, and future historian Laonicus Chalcocondylas.

## 1448 Byzantium/Turkish Sultanate/Epirus

Hunyadi plans to resume Turkish war despite refusal of Branković to participate and lukewarm Papal response.

**April** John renews treaty with Venice.

**June** Death of Theodore Palaeologus at Selymbria, aged around 54.

**July** Murad campaigns in Albania against Castriota, and captures Svetigrad; he assembles army at Sofia to meet Hungarian attack.

**September** Hunyadi marches into Serbia with an army of Hungarians, Germans, and Bohemians and around 8,000 Wallachians under new ruler, Dan; they ravage countryside as enemy territory and move South-West towards Albania; **17 October** they reach Kossovo, where Murad has preceded them with a much larger army.

**18 October** Murad attacks but driven back; artillery duel follows, and Wallachians agree to desert Hunyadi; **19 October** Hunyadi decides he cannot win and organizes retreat, but cannot save heavy cannons which German and Bohemian troops defend; **20 October** cannons and defenders are overwhelmed by Turks, but Hunyadi retires safely; around 17,000 Christians killed, but Turkish losses are too severe to enable pursuit; Murad massacres the Wallachians.

**31 October** Death of John VIII at Constantinople, aged 55; he nominates Constantine as successor, so when Demetrius arrives from Selymbria to claim throne he is refused entry to city and Empress Helena Dragases mediates.

Demetrius sends envoys to Sultan to obtain recognition; Constantine sends rival embassy from Mistra, headed by Sphrantzes; **December** Murad decides in Constantine's favour and imperial officials are sent from capital to recognise Constantine.

## Epirus

Death of Carlo II Tocco; Murad occupies Arta and mainland, letting son Leonardo keep Zante and Cephallonia.

## 1449 Byzantium/Morea

**6 January** Constantine XI is crowned at Mistra by imperial officials – the final Byzantine coronation and only one not in capital.

**12 March** Constantine arrives at Constantinople on Catalan ship; he is not re-crowned, probably due to concern over anti-Unionist opposition to current Patriarch Gregory, and as he moves towards supporting Union John VIII's adviser John Eugenicus (Mark's brother), and others withdraw from serving him; the scholar George Scholarius, now anti-Unionist leader, also despairs of success.

Constantine reaches agreement with Demetrius and Thomas – Demetrius to have Constantine's old dominions, based at Mistra, and Thomas to have Achaia, Patras, Clarentza, and Messenia; they swear oaths to Helena, Constantine, and each other to keep peace.

Murad renews peace-treaty with Constantine.

**Summer** Thomas and Demetrius leave for Morea.

**October** Constantine sends envoys including Sphrantzes to Georgia to negotiate marital alliance, but George VIII demands large sums of money.

## 1450 Byzantium/Trebizond

Scholarius retires to a monastic cell in Constantinople, which becomes centre of anti-Unionist campaign.

Constantine pursues marriage-alliance with John IV of Trebizond.

### **Turkish Sultanate**

**May** Murad and his son Mehmed unsuccessfully besiege Castriota's capital, fortress of Kroia in Albania.

## **1451 Turkish Sultanate/Byzantium/Trebizond**

**Wednesday, 3 February** Murad dies of apoplexy at Adrianople, aged 47; Halil Pasha thwarts plot to prevent Mehmed's succession and sends to him in Magnesia; he hastens to Gallipoli and **18 February** enters capital.

Halil Pasha retained as 'Grand Vizier'; Mehmed sends Ishaq Pasha to bury Murad at Bursa, murder Murad's other son Ahmed Celebi, and become governor of Anatolia.

Negotiating with John IV at Trebizond over John's daughter's engagement to Constantine, Sphrantzes hears of Murad's death and warns John that Mehmed is equally warlike and *his* death would be welcome.

### **Athens**

Death of Nerio II; widow Chiara Zorzi Regent for son Francesco.

### **Turkish Sultanate/Byzantium**

Mehmed returns Murad's widow Mara, George Branković's daughter, to her father in Serbia; Sphrantzes hears at Trebizond and considers her as a better wife for Constantine as would secure her stepson's goodwill.

Byzantine ambassadors sent to Serbia, but Mara refuses to marry again.

Mehmed swears confirmation of peace to Byzantine envoys.

Ibrahim Beg sends heirs to Aydin, Mentеше, and Germiyan West from Karaman to raise revolt against Ottomans.

Mehmed confirms grant of revenues from lands on River Strymon to Byzantium in return for their securing person of Orhan, alleged grandson of Sulaiman (d. 1411), in Constantinople; **Summer?** he marches via Brusa into Central Anatolia as Ishaq secures the Western principalities from

pretenders; Ibrahim Beg abandons seized frontier-towns and flees into mountains, sending envoys for peace, and Ilyas Beg of Mentеше loses last lands.

En route back to Brusa, Mehmed receives envoys from Constantine threatening to use Orhan as pretender if his revenues are not paid over quicker; Halil Pasha tells them they are stupid to make threats to a violent and impulsive youth like Mehmed.

**August** Patriarch Gregory III leaves for Italy due to strength of opposition to Union; Constantinopolitan Church left leaderless.

Crossing Bosphorus from Anadolu Hisar **Autumn**, Mehmed conceives idea of fortress on European shore too.

## 1452 Byzantium/Turkish Sultanate

**Early** Mehmed conscripts masons and materials to build fortress on European shore of Bosphorus; panic in Constantinople and Constantine sends envoys to protest that at least Bajezid informed Manuel II of his work first.

**26 March** Mehmed arrives at the Bosphorus by sea from Gallipoli and announces the site for fortress at narrowest point of channel; **15 April–31 August** 'Rumeli Hisar' is constructed and local Byzantine buildings looted for materials; Constantine sends food and drink to workmen but closes gates of capital after some fights between locals and Turks; **June** two envoys sent to Mehmed are beheaded.

Mehmed leaves garrison and cannons in Rumeli Hisar with orders to sink any ships that do not pay toll; **28–31 August** he camps near Constantinople and inspects walls and moats ready for siege; **1 September** he returns to Adrianople and his fleet to Gallipoli.

Mehmed commission Transylvanian cannoneer, Urban, deserter from ? Byzantines, to build largest cannon ever to breach walls of Constantinople.

**October** Cardinal Isidore, still titular Patriarch of Kiev/Russia in Unionist cause though Russians have appointed anti-Unionist successor Jonah, arrives in Constantinople from Rome with Archbishop Leonard of Chios and 200 Neapolitan archers; he promotes the Union but Scholarius pins defiant message calling it evil outside his cell. **October/November** Hungarian delegation arrives, requesting possession of Mesembria.

**15 November** Isidore addresses the Constantinopolitan clergy in Palace, but anti-Unionists sign document of defiance.

**25 November** 3 Venetian ships try to run the blockade of Rumeli Hisar and are bombarded; one ship is sunk and captured crew are taken to Sultan at Didymoteichon where crew beheaded and captain Antonio Enrizzo impaled.

**12 December** Isidore celebrates the Latin and Greek liturgy together in Hagia Sophia, and the name of Pope Nicholas is announced ahead of Patriarch Gregory; the decrees of Union are read out; after this much of populace boycotts cathedral services.

## 1453 **Byzantium**

Constantine organizes defences of city: 'Grand Duke' Lucas Notaras to command along Golden Horn; Demetrius Cantacuzene with 700 men as reserves at Church of Holy Apostles; John Cantacuzene and Theophilus Palaeologus at land-walls.

**26 January** Genoese galleys from Chios arrive with 700 men; commander Giovanni Giustiniani-Longo appointed commander-in-chief of land-forces and 'protostrator'.

Turahan Beg and his sons Ahmed and Omar Beg lead Thracian and Macedonian armies across the Isthmus of Corinth into the Peloponnesse **Winter** and ravage countryside to keep Thomas and Demetrius busy; Tripolis in Arcadia is sacked and the Turks ravage Messenia to Ithome, capturing Navarino/Pylos and besieging Siderokastron; Ahmed captured by Demetrius' brother-in-law Matthew Asen while advancing on Leontarion.

Mehmed 'test-fires' a cannon, twice the size of original one designed by Urban, at Adrianople; ball allegedly travels a mile.

**26 February** 6 Cretan and 1 Venetian ship flee the Golden Horn; 5 Genoese, 5 Venetian, 3 Cretan, 1 Ancona, 1 Spanish, 1 French, and 7 Byzantine vessels left to defend the harbour as giant chain constructed to block it; around 6,000 Byzantine and 3000 foreign troops in city.

Karadja Beg, commander in Thrace, takes Therapia on Bosphorus; **23 March** Mehmed leaves Adrianople, and while he leads main army on the capital Karadja Beg reduces Heraclea, Selymbria and Epitabai on the Propontis.

Mehmed's huge artillery-train arrives outside the city; **Easter Monday 2 April** Mehmed arrives with army of around 80,000–100,000 men, and the chain is raised to shut Golden Horn.

Mehmed encamps opposite St. Romanus Gate; Anatolian army to his South along walls to Propontis, European army to his North to the Golden Horn; Zaganos Pasha and Karadja Beg across the Horn facing Galata.

**Friday 6 April** The Turkish army advances to walls and commences siege; Constantine and Grustiniani take up positions at Gate of St. Romanus.

**17 April** Failure of night-time assault on walls.

**20 April** 3 Genoese ships from Chios and 1 Byzantine Moreot ship break Turkish naval blockade in battle in Bosphorus, and Mehmed rides into sea shouting at his sailors; admiral Baltaoglu narrowly escapes impalement for defeat and is replaced by Hamza Beg.

**21 April** Section of wall near St. Romanus Gate breached by cannons.

Council-of-war in Sultan's camp; Halli Pasha, apparently in touch with city, says Byzantines will pay 70,000 gold pieces for peace but the other viziers under Zaganos Pasha are more belligerent and Mehmed backs them.

Mehmed organizes construction of a 'slipway' around outside of Galata and rollers on which to move his ships from the Bosphorus across the land into the Golden Horn; **22 April** the first Turkish ships are moved along the slipway into the Horn, and the stunned Constantinopolitans make no effort to prevent their launching; 72 ships are duly floated inside the Horn.

(Before or after transfer to Horn ?) Venetian captain Jacob Cocco leads night-time raid on Turkish galleys to try to burn them, but they are discovered and defeated; 33 captured raiders are impaled along the Horn and the Turkish prisoners in city are executed on walls in retaliation.

Venetian fleet leaves Venice, far too late; a Venetian ship sent out from Constantinople sent to search for aid reports back that none coming and it adds to the gloom as supplies dwindle.

Money levied from citizens as funds for soldiers runs out and church plate confiscated; lower, outer wall of land-walls abandoned after damage.

**5 May** Turkish cannons start firing on ships in harbours at Galata; Genoese protest to no avail; cannons set up on temporary bridge across the upper Horn above Blachernae.

**18 May** Giant siege-tower is wheeled up to walls across a part of moat which Turks have filled in, but is set alight.

Mehmed sends brother-in-law, Ismail Beg of Sinope, into city to demand surrender; Constantine replies that they will only pay tribute and are willing to die defending city, refusing offer of rule over another city if he will leave peacefully.



**26 May** Fires start burning continuously in Turkish camp as engines are prepared for attack, and army is incited to enthusiasm for religious duty by preachers.

Giustiniani repairs breaches at St. Romanus Gate, but Notaras refuses him requested cannon and they nearly come to blows as Constantine arbitrates.

**28 May** Constantine spends the night at the Great Palace after final service at Hagia Sophia; the populace return to their cathedral in hour of extremity to await outcome of battle, even though Isidore conducts a Unionist service.

**Tuesday 29 May** Final assault on Constantinople, centring on the most damaged area of walls between St. Romanus Gate and Blachernae; battle rages in the early hours, while simultaneous attack on sea-walls from Horn; after several hours, at around dawn, Giustiniani is wounded by arrow in arm or leg and withdraws to Galata for treatment despite Constantine's pleas; the outer wall near Gate is taken and held, and then around 50 Janissaries hack way through blocked Kerkoporta postern-gate near the Xylokerkos Gate and climb tower to hoist banners.

Sight of Turkish banners on tower causes panic, and Christians start to retreat; as the Turks gain more of walls and open gates Constantine removes identifying insignia and charges into the advancing army where he is killed unrecognised, aged 48, and Italians try to escape to their ships at Galata; Turks gain the sea-walls too and advance through city; Angelo Lomellino, 'podesta' of Galata, surrenders.

Antonio Diedo leads Venetian and Genoese ships in breaking out of Galata harbour, and some inhabitants are on the fleet that escapes to Aegean safely; Isidore escapes in disguise via Galata and Giustiniani reaches Chios but dies there of injuries.

Constantinopolitans, betrayed by trust in prophecy that Turks will be thrown back from the Forum of Constantine by arrival of an angel, gather in Hagia Sophia; the Turks hack the doors down and round them up as slaves; according to legend the officiating priest escapes through secret door (and will return when Christian services resume); according to later verbal recollections from participants in the attack, Greek residents succeed in surrendering some districts of city to Turkish officers.

The city is pillaged, and that afternoon Mehmed enters to ride into the centre and inspect Hagia Sophia, which he orders preserved as a mosque; he receives captured Notaras and upbraids him for resistance but promises to make him head of Christian administration in city; he spends the night at Franciscan monastery and **30 May** tours the city, reputedly quoting poetry on impermanence of glory either at the Cathedral or Blachernae Palace.

Notaras is ordered to send his youngest son to Sultan's harem but refuses so Mehmed has him, sons, and son-in-law all executed and seizes wealth; **1 June** Sultan confirms existence and privileges of Genoese Galata; Venetian 'bailio' Girolamo Minotto and Catalan Consul Pere Julia among other victims of purge of captured defenders.

**2 June** Three-day looting halted, and army and navy ordered to leave capital, **21 June** Mehmed leads expedition back to Adrianople with train of slaves but permits some extortionate ransoms.

Byzantine Lemnos is mostly evacuated and remnants of population hand over control to Dorino Gattilusio of Mytilene; on Byzantine Imbros, Critoboulus (historian), judge, successfully obtains Sultan's permission for transfer of control to the Gattilusio family under Palamedes, lord of Aenus on the mainland.

Karistan Sulaiman Bay made governor of Constantinople, with garrison of 1500 Janissaries; walls to be repaired and new settlers brought in to restore size of decimated population – Greeks, mainly from Morea, concentrated in the 'Phanar' quarter along Golden Horn where the inhabitants are later able to prove that local residents on 29 May delivered keys to Sultan so they are entitled to privileges (and churches) as surrendered under Islamic Law to avoid pillage and confiscation.

**10 July** Halil the 'Grand Vizier' is executed.

John IV Comnenus of Trebizond pays 2000 ducats as annual tribute; Thomas and Demetrius Palaeologus in the Morea secure lands for 12,000 ducats per annum, as does **August** George Branković.

Mehmed decides to install a new anti-Unionistic Byzantine Patriarch in Constantinople to lead the Greek population in the new order; he sends envoys to look for Scholarius, finds him enslaved at Adrianople, and ransoms him as his choice.

## 1454 Constantinople Istanbul

**6 January** Scholarius, as Patriarch Gennadius, is invested with robes, staff and cross and received to dinner by the Sultan, and then escorted to Church of Holy Apostles to be consecrated Patriarch by the Archbishop of Heraclea; he tours city on a white horse presented by Sultan and takes up residence in new Patriarchal quarters at the Cathedral.

As leader of the Greek Christian '*Millet*' under Islamic Law, Gennadius takes charge of and responsibility for co-religionists, and his courts have

jurisdiction over all matters with a religious element (e.g. Inheritance, divorce, morals) and over commercial cases involving 2 Orthodox litigants; the synod and existing Patriarchal administration are maintained, and Patriarch to be (technically) only removable by Synod.

**Spring/Summer?** Due to local Turkish pressure and threats, Gennadius secures Mehmed's permission to move the headquarters of Patriarchate to church and monastery of Pammacaristus in the safer 'Phanar' quarter; Mohammed demolishes the crumbling Holy Apostles to build 'Mosque of the Conqueror'.

## Morea

Thomas and Demetrius decide to abandon Despotate sooner than pay more tribute and to embark for Italy, but their Albanian mercenaries refuse to go and revolt over lack of pay, led by chieftain Peter Boua; local Greek 'archons' join in under Manuel Cantacuzene and try to overthrow the Paleologi, and Centurione Zaccaria's son John Asen Zaccaria escapes from prison at Chloumitza to try to regain his father's lands in Achaia.

Despots appeal to Mehmed, and **October** he sends aged Turahan Beg into Morea with army; Turahan summons the Despots and tells them to rule in harmony together in future, and puts down rising.

**Winter** Second revolt by Greek 'archons', who appeal to Hassan, governor of Corinth, but are ignored as they cannot promise to keep up the existing level of tribute; the rebels appeal to Sultan who **26 December** grants them 'firman' (charter) promising autonomy from Despots under his direct rule for all who request it.

## 1455 Athens

Protests to Sultan from Athenian opponents of Duchess Chiara and her unpopular second husband Bartolommeo Contarini are taken up at Adrianople by the late Duke Nerio II's nephew Franco, son of Antonio II (usurper 1439–41); Mehmed appoints him to rule Athens, but he proceeds to murder Chiara in prison at Megara; Contarini confesses to Mehmed that he murdered his previous wife to make way for Chiara.

**1456 Athens**

Mehmed orders Omar Beg to occupy Athens; **June** as he enters the city the garrison on Acropolis holds out, but Franco surrenders and is allowed to keep Thebes.

**Serbia/Hungary**

**July** John Hunyadi successfully defeats Mehmed's siege of Belgrade.

**11 August** Hunyadi dies in epidemic of plague.

**24 December** Death of George Branković, aged c.81; succeeded by son Lazar, son-in-law of Thomas Palaeologus.

**1457 Serbia**

**May** Following family disputes, on death of Branković's widow their son Gregory, blind ex-hostage of Turks, and daughter 'Sultana' Mara flee to Adrianople.

**Morea**

Thomas and Demetrius fall into arrears for their 10,000 gold pieces p.a. tribute, and Mehmed orders them to pay up or leave the country.

**1458 Serbia**

**20 January** Death of Lazar; his widow Helena Palaeologina, blind brother Stephen, and noble Michael Angelović head regency but neighbour King Stephen of Bosnia invades and seizes Srebrenitsa.

**March** Rebel nobles seize Smederevo and offer it to Angelović in return for Serbia taking anti-Catholic stance under his rule; Helena arrests him, deports him to Hungary, and makes Stephen 'Despot'.

**April** Mehmed marches via Thessaly into Greece to evict the Palaeologi, and ignores their envoys who arrive at his camp at ruined 'Hexamilion' with the 4500 gold pieces of tribute due requesting peace; **15 May** Corinth besieged while Mehmed invades Achaea and sacks Phlius;

meanwhile vizier Mahmud Pasha invades Serbia and takes most of fortresses.

Akrivi sacked; Rupela surrenders and population enslaved; Pazeniki besieged and after Manuel Cantacuzene comes to Sultan's camp promising to talk Albanian garrison into surrender but fails Mehmed expels him; he flees to Hungary.

Muchli, near Tegea, under Demetrius Asen, has to surrender as water-supply cut; **July** Mehmed returns to Corinth to open siege, and cannons arrive at Cenchræe port to batter walls, pieces of marble from Greek ruins are also fired, but governor Matthew Asen refuses to surrender; after walls wrecked his officers force him to open negotiations.

Asen is informed that Mehmed wants Aigion, Corinth, Kalavryta, and Patras with lands – approximately the North-East half of Morea – and is sent to Tripolis to inform the Despots; they accept and swear to keep the peace.

Omar Beg installed as governor of Peloponnese; Mehmed visits Athens where Acropolis surrenders; he tours the sights, confirms privileges granted by Omar to inhabitants in 1456, but confiscates Acropolis with its churches for garrison; he visits Thebes; Demetrius' daughter Helena is summoned to harem, but is not handed over.

## Trebizond

Death of John IV, aged around 55; succeeded by brother David as nominal co-ruler with young son John; the late ruler's daughter is married to Uzun Hassan, Emir of the *White Sheep Turks* (*Ak-Koyunlu*) and ruler of Persia, Armenia, and Azerbaijan, the Ottoman's most powerful rival.

## Serbia

**October** King Matthias Corvinus of Hungary, Hunyadi' son, occupies Smederevo, the last fortress of Serbia to hold out against Turks; Despot Stephen is temporarily retained but soon deposed.

## 1459 Morea

**February** Thomas Palaeologus foolishly attempts a revolt against Turks, and as Demetrius will not join he attacks his territories too; Thomas fails to take Patras and his general Nicephorus Lucanes fails to take Corinth,

but Kalavryta is captured; Demetrius sends Matthew Asen to beg Mehmed for help, and loses Karytaina and the Maina peninsula to Thomas but temporarily captures his capital, Leontarion; Albanians join in civil war and start to massacre Greeks.

## Serbia

**21 March** Stephen of Bosnia installed as Matthias' client – Prince of Serbia and **1 April** marries Lazar and Helena's daughter Helena Branković; Turks invade Serbia and **20 June** Smederevo surrenders to Sultan; end of Serbian independence for 345 years.

Helena and daughters flee to Italy.

## Morea

Mehmed dismisses Omar Beg for allowing rebellion and **Summer** successor Hamza Beg invades Despotate; Thomas sends delegates to new Pope Pius II for help and is defeated outside his capital, Leontarion, and flees into Messenia.

Disease and poor supplies force Hamza to retire to Thessaly, but on his return with reinforcements Thomas sends envoys for peace; Sultan demands 3000 gold pieces, evacuation of all conquests, and appearance at Corinth in 20 days to sign treaty; Thomas obeys and is pardoned, and meets Demetrius at Kastritsa to swear friendship and peace under Turkish auspices.

## 1460 Morea

**Early** War between Thomas and Demetrius resumes, apparently at the latter's initiative; **March** Mehmed sends Zaganos Pasha into Morea with army; **May** Mehmed arrives at Corinth and summons Demetrius but he only sends brother-in-law Matthew Asen; vizier Mahmud Pasha marches on Mistra and besieges it, and **30 May** Demetrius surrenders; **31 May** Mehmed enters Mistra.

Demetrius promises to persuade Monemvasia to surrender, but its commander Manuel Paleologus refuses though he sends Demetrius' wife and daughter to Mistra as demanded; he pledges allegiance to Thomas, who hands over defence to Pope Pius.

Kastritsa captured and inhabitants massacred; Leontarion surrenders but Gastritsa resists so there is another massacre; Thomas flees to Pylos/Navarino, Venetian possession, as Sultan progresses through his dominions receiving surrender and enslaving population; as Sultan approaches Pylos Venetians fear his wrath and Thomas and family set sail; **28 July** they reach Corfu.

Graitzas Palaeologus leads successful defence at impregnable castle of Salmenikon, but Zaganos Pasha progresses through West and North of peninsula with bloodbath of inhabitants until Mehmed replaces him.

End of Despotate of Morea and Byzantine rule in Greece; on return journey Mehmed annexes Thebes too, summons Franco Acciajuoli for alleged plot, and executes him; Demetrius accompanies court back to Adrianople and is given the lordship of Imbros and Tenedos, together with Aenus on mainland.

**16 November** Thomas, leaving his family on Corfu, arrives at Ancona to seek aid from Pope Pius and donate the head of St. Andrew, precious relic from Patras, to him.

## 1461 **Italy**

**7 March** Thomas arrives at Rome and lodges at the hospital of Santo Spirito.

## **Trebizond**

Fearing the alliance of Trebizond with Uzun Hassan, ruler of the 'White Sheep' Turks ('Ak-Koyunlu'), Mehmed advances along the Black Sea coast while fleet sails parallel; he deposes his brother-in-law Ismail Beg of Sinope en route, then heads South-East inland to give impression he is heading for Erzurum to deal with Uzun Hassan first.

Mehmed meets Uzun Hassan's envoys, led by his Aramaic Christian mother Sara Hatun, near Erzinjan and agrees to peace; he crosses mountains via Zigana Pass into Trebizond's territory while his fleet arrives at the city to start bombardment.

32 days into naval siege, Sultan's vanguard arrives outside walls; its commander, 'Grand Vizier' Mahmud Pasha, tells Emperor David that he can live in comfort as Sultan's pensioner like Demetrius or face annihilation; David opens negotiations via 'protovestiarius' George Amiroutzes, related to Mahmud, and soon surrenders, as Sara Hatun influences Mehmed to agree.

**15 August** Trebizond handed over to Turkish army peacefully; David and family, minus youngest son who was reportedly taken to Georgia, are sent with courtiers on Turkish ships to Constantinople.

End of Empire of Trebizond after 257 years.

## Postscript

**1462 November** Amiroutzes secures Sultan's removal of Patriarch Joseph of Constantinople for opposing his marrying Duke of Athens' widow.

**1463 1 November** David Comnenus, his six elder sons, brother Alexander, and Alexander's son Alexius are executed at 'Castle of the Seven Towers' near Golden Gate in Constantinople; youngest son converted to Islam and daughter sent to harem.

Gennadius retires after brief final Patriarchate; succeeded by Sophronius I.

**1465 12 May** Death of Thomas Palaeologus in Rome, aged around 58; claim to Byzantine throne passes to worthless son Andrew, who arrives from Corfu with rest of family too late to see him.

Deported Trapezuntine nobles bribe Sultan to remove Patriarch Mark Zylocaravis.

**1467** Demetrius Palaeologus deprived of estates and reduced to poverty after accusation of embezzlement; eventually he is granted a lesser pension and becomes a monk.

**1470** Death of Demetrius.

**1472** Marriage of Thomas Palaeologus' daughter Zoe, now ward of Pope, to Grand Duke Ivan III of Moscow.

**18 November** Death of Cardinal Bessarion in exile in Rome, aged 70.



- 1478** Birth of Sophia/Zoe and Ivan's eldest son Vassily, later Grand Duke Vassily III of Moscow (d. 1533).
- 1494** Andrew Palaeologus joins French King Charles VIII's invasion of Italy, hoping he will go on to invade the Turkish domains, and sells his rights to the Byzantine throne to him.
- 1502** **June** Death of Andrew Paleologus; survived by illegitimate son Constantine.

### Primary sources

- Niccolo Barbaro, *Diary of the Siege of Constantinople 1453*, transl. J.R. Jones (New York, 1969).
- Byzantium, Europe and the Early Ottoman Sultans, 1373–1513: An Anonymous Greek Chronicle of the Seventeenth Century (Codex Barberinus Graecus 111)*, transl. Marcos Philippides (Late Byzantine and Ottoman Studies, vol. 4) (New Rochelle, New York, 1990).
- The Chronicle of Muntaner*, transl. Lady Goodenough (Hakluyt Society, London, 1920–1).
- Crusaders as Conquerors: The Chronicle of the Morea*, transl. H. Lurier (New York, 1964).
- Ducas, *Historia Turco-Byzantina*, transl. Harry Margoulias (Detroit, 1975).
- The History of Laonicus Chalcocondylas*, ed. E. Darko, 2 vols (Budapest, 1922–7).
- George Pachymeres, *Relations Historiques*, transl. A. Failler, in *Corpus Fontum Historiae Byzantinae*.
- 'George Sphrantzes', *Chronicon Maius*, ed. R. Maisano, in *Corpus Fontum Historiae Byzantinae*, vol. 39 (Rome, 1990).

### Secondary sources

- Franz Babinger, *Mehmed the Conqueror and His Time* (transl. Ralph Manheim) (Bollingen Series, University of Princeton) (1953, repr. Princeton, 1992).
- J. Barker, *Manuel II Paleologus (1391–1425): A Study in Late Byzantine Statesmanship* (New Jersey, 1968).
- Mark Bartusis, *The Late Byzantine Army and Society, 1204–1453* (Philadelphia, 1992).
- Claude Cahen, *Pre-Ottoman Turkey* (Paris, 1988).
- Cambridge Mediaeval History*, vol IV: ch. IX, K.M. Setton, 'The Latins in Greece and the Aegean from the Fourth Crusade to the End of the Middle Ages'.
- Nicholas Cheetham, *Mediaeval Greece* (New Haven, Conn., 1981).
- C. Dendrinos, J. Harris, E. Harvalai-Crook, and J. Herrin (eds), *Porphrogenita: Essays on the History and Literature of Byzantium and the Latin East in Honour of Julian Chrysostomides* (Aldershot, 2003): particularly essays:
- Deno Geanakopoulos, *Emperor Michael VIII Paleologus and the West* (Cambridge, Mass., 1959).
- J. Gill, *Byzantium and the Papacy, 1198–1400* (New Jersey, 1979).
- E. Janssen, *Trebizond en Colchide* (Brussels, 1969).
- A. Laoui, *Byzantium and the Latins: The Foreign Policy of Andronicus II, 1282–1328* (Cambridge, Mass., 1972).
- Ruth Macrides, 'The Thirteenth Century in Byzantine Historical Writing', pp. 63–76; Norman Russell, 'Palamism and the Circle of Demetrius Cydones', pp. 153–74.
- J. Meyendorff, *Byzantine Hesychasm* (London, 1974).

- , *Byzantium and the Rise of Russia: A Study of Byzantine–Russian Relations in the Fourteenth Century* (Cambridge, 1981).
- W. Miller, *The Latins in the Levant: A History of Frankish Greece, 1204–1566* (London, 1908).
- , *Trebizond: the Last Greek Empire* (London, 1926).
- Donald Nicol, *The Despotate of Epirus 1204–1267* (Oxford, 1957).
- , *Meteora: The Rock Monasteries of Thessaly* (London, 1963).
- , *The Byzantine Family of Kantakouzenos (Cantacuzenus), c.a. 1100–1468* (Washington, 1968).
- , *The Last Centuries of Byzantium 1261–1453* (London, 1972).
- , *The Despotate of Epirus, 1267–1479: a contribution to the History of Greece in the Middle Ages* (Cambridge, 1984).
- , *The Immortal Emperor: The Life and Legend of Constantine Palaiologos, Last Emperor of the Romans* (Cambridge, 1992).
- , *The Reluctant Emperor: A Biography of John Cantacuzene, Emperor and Monk, c.1295–1383* (Cambridge, 1996).
- A. Papadopoulos, *Versuch einer Genealogie der Palaiologen, 1259–1453* (Munich, 1938).
- Steven Runciman, *The Sicilian Vespers: A History of the Mediterranean World in the Later Thirteenth Century* (Cambridge, 1958).
- , *The Fall of Constantinople 1453* (Cambridge, 1965).
- , *The Great Church in Captivity: A Study of the Patriarchate of Constantinople from the Eve of the Turkish Conquest to the Greek War of Independence* (Cambridge, 1968).
- S. Vryonis, *The Decline of Mediaeval Hellnism in Asia Minor and the Process of Islamization from the Eleventh Century to the Fifteenth Century* (Los Angeles, 1971).

## Articles

- Byzantion*, vol. 13 (1938): P. Charanis, 'An important short chronicle of the fourteenth century', pp. 335–62.
- Byzantion*, vol. 15 (1940–1): P. Charanis, 'Internal Strife in Byzantium in the Fourteenth Century', pp. 208–30.
- Byzantion*, vol. 16 (1942–3): P. Charanis, 'The Strife among the Paleologi and the Ottoman Turks', pp. 286–134.
- Byzantion*, vol. 38 (1968): A. Laiou, 'A Byzantine Prince Latinised: Theodore Paleologus, Marquis of Montferrat', pp. 386–416.
- Byzantion*, vol. 41 (1971): Margaret Carroll, 'Notes on the "Siege" Section of the Chronicon Maius of Pseudo-Sphrantzes, Book III', pp. 28–44.
- Byzantion*, vol. 42, pt 1 (1972): *ibid.*, continued, pp. 5–22.
- Byzantion*, vol. 44 (1974–5): C. Tsirpanlis, 'The Career and Political Views of Mark Eugenicus', pp. 449–66.
- Byzantion*, vol. 48 (1978): C. Tsirpanlis, 'John Eugenicus and the Council of Florence', pp. 264–74.
- Byzantina Zeitschrift*, vol. 66 (1973): A. Bryer, 'The Fate of George Comnenus, ruler of Trebizond', pp. 332–50.
- Byzantine and Modern Greek Studies*, vol. 19 (1995): Rustam Shakirov, 'AIMA: The Blood of the Grand Komnenoi', pp. 187–488.
- Dumbarton Oaks Papers*, vol. 11 (1957): Dmitri Obolensky, 'Byzantium, Kiev and Moscow: a study in ecclesiastical relations', pp. 23–78.
- Ibid.*: 'Were Zealots really social revolutionaries? Nicholas Cabasilas' "Anti-Zealot Discourse": A Reinterpretation', pp. 79–171.
- Echos d'Orient*, vol. 38 (1939): R. Loerntz, 'La premiere insurrection d' Anronicus IV Paleologus', pp. 337–45.

- Jahrbuch der osterreichischen byzantinischen Gesellschaft*, vol. 16 (1967): G. Dennis, 'An unknown Byzantine Emperor: Andronicus V Paleologus, 1400–07?', pp. 175–87.
- Journal of Byzantine and Modern Greek Studies*, vol. 4 (1978): Dmitri Obolensky, 'A Byzantine Grand Embassy to Russia In 1400', pp. 123–32.
- Revue Etudes Byzantines*, vol. 27 (1969): V. Laurent, 'La chronologie des patriarches de Constantinople au XIII siecle (1208–1309)', pp. 129–33.
- , : *ibid.*, 'Notes de Chronologie et d'Histoire Byzantin de la Fin du XIIIeme Siecle', pp. 209–28.
- Revue des Etudes Byzantines*, vol. 29 (1971): A. Failler, 'Notes sur la Chronologie du regne de Jean Cantacuzene', pp. 293–302.
- Revue Etudes Byzantines*, vol. 31 (1973): A. Failler, 'The Deposition du patriarche Calliste I (1353).', pp. 5–163.
- Revue des Etudes Byzantines*, vol. 33 (1975): M. Kursanskis, 'La usurpation de Theodora Grand Comnene', pp. 187–210.
- Revue Etudes Byzantines*, vol. 38 (1980): A. Failler, 'Chronologie et composition dans l'Histoire de Georges Pachymere', pp. 5–103.
- Revue Etudes Byzantines*, vol. 39 (1981): A. Failler, *ibid.*, pp. 145–249.
- Revue des Etudes Byzantines*, vol. 46 (1988): M. Kursanskis, 'L'empire de Trebizond et les Turcs au XIIIeme siecle', pp. 109–24.
- Revue Etudes Byzantines*, vol. 48 (1990): A. Failler, *ibid.*, pp. 5–88.
- Revue des Etudes Byzantines*, vol. 57 (1999): A. Failler, 'Le Second Mariage d'Andronic II Palaiologos', pp. 226–35.
- Revue des Etudes Byzantines*, vol. 60 (2002): A. Failler, 'La Mission du Moine Sophronias en Italie et le mariage de Michel IX Palaiologos', pp. 151–66.
- Speculum*, vol. 44 (1970): A. Laios, 'Marino Sanudo Torsello, Byzantium and the Turks: the background to the anti-Turkish league of 1332–4', pp. 374–92.

# Sovereigns of the Byzantine World

## Byzantine emperors and empresses

(Numerals include Emperors of West; reigns are dated from effective assumption of power rather than nominal appointment.)

Constantine I	324–337
Constantius II	337–361
Julian	361–363
Jovian	363–364
Valentinian (acting)	364 (–375 in West)
Valens	364–378
Gratian (acting)	378–379 (383 in West)
Theodosius I	379–394
Arcadius	393–408
Theodosius II	408–450
(Pulcheria	414–453)
Marcian	450–457
Leo I	457–474
Leo II	474
Zeno	474–475
Basiliscus	475–476
Zeno (rest)	476–491
Anastasius	491–518
Justin	518–527
Justinian	527–565
Justin II	565–578
Tiberius II	578–582 (regent 574–578)
Maurice	582–602
Phocas	602–610
Heraclius	610–641
Constantine III	641
Constans II	641–668
Constantine IV	668–685
Justinian II	685–695
Leontius	695–698
Tiberius III (Apsimar)	698–705
Justinian II (rest)	705–711
Philippicus Bardanes	711–713
Anastasius II (Anthemius)	713–715/716
Theodosius III	715–717
Leo III (Conon)	717–741

Constantine V	741–775
(Artavasdus	741–743)
Leo IV	775–780
Constantine VI	780–797
Irene	797–802 (regent 780–790)
Nicephorus I	802–811
Stauracius	811
Michael I Rhangabe	811–813
Leo V	813–820
Michael II the Amorian	820–829
Theophilus	829–842
Michael III	842–867
(Theodora and Theoctistus, reg.	842–855)
Basil I the Macedonian	866/867–886
Leo VI the Wise	886–912
Alexander	912–913
Constantine VII Porphyrogenitus	913–959
Romanus I Lecapenus	919–944
Romanus II	959–963
(Basil II , titular	963–976)
(Constantine VIII, titular	963–1025)
Nicephorus II Phocas	963–969
John I Tzimisce	969–976
Basil II	976–1025
Constantine VIII	1025–1028
(Zoe, titular	1028–1042)
Romanus III Argyrus	1028–1034
Michael IV the Paphlagonian	1034–1041
Michael V Calaphates	1041–1042
Zoe and Theodora	1042
(Zoe, titular	1042–1050)
Constantine IX Monomachus	1042–1055
Theodora	1055–1056
Michael VI Stratoticus	1056–1057
Isaac I Comnenus	1057–1059
Constantine X Ducas	1059–1067
Michael VII	1067–1078
(Eudocia Macrembolitissa, regent	1067–1068)
Romanus IV Diogenes	1068–1072
Nicephorus III Botaneiates	1078–1081
Alexius I Comnenus	1081–1118
John II	1118–1143
Manuel I	1143–1180
Alexius II	1180–1183
(Maria of Antioch, reg.	1180–1182)
(Andronicus Comnenus, reg.	1182–1183)
Andronicus I	1183–1185
Isaac II Angelus	1185–1195
Alexius III Angelus	1195–1203
Isaac II (rest)	1203–1204
Alexius IV	1203–1204
Alexius V Murtzuphlus	1204

**Latin emperors in Constantinople**

Baldwin I of Flanders	1204–1205
Henry I of Flanders	1206–1216
Peter of Courtenay (titular)	1216–1217
Yolande of Courtenay	1217–1219
Robert of Courtenay	1221–1228
Baldwin II	1228–1261

**Emperors in Nicaea**

Theodore I Lascaris	1204/6–1221/2
John III Vatatzes	1221/2–1254
Theodore II Lascaris (Vatatzes)	1254–1258
John IV Lascaris	1258–1261
Michael VIII Palaeologus	1258–1261

**Despots of Epirus (and Thessalonica where stated)**

Michael I Angelus Ducas	1205–1213/14
Theodore (Emperor 1224) (Thessalonica 1224–30)	1213/14–1230
Manuel (Thessalonica)	1230–1237
John (Thessalonica)	1237–1244
Demetrius (Thessalonica)	1244–1246
Michael II	?1231–?1268
Nicephorus	?1268–1296
Thomas	1296–1318
Nicholas Orsini	1318–1323
John Orsini	1323–1335
Nicephorus II Orsini (Ducas)	1335–1337, 1339, ?1356–8.

**Emperors in Constantinople**

Michael VIII Palaeologus	1261–1282
Andronicus II	1282–1328
(Michael IX)	1295–1320)
Andronicus III	1325/8–1341
John V	1341–1376
(Anna of Savoy, regent)	1341–1347)
(John VI Cantacuzene, rebel)	1341–1347)
John VI Cantacuzene	1347–1354
(Matthew Cantacuzene)	1353–1357)
Andronicus IV	1376–1379
John V (rest)	1379–1390
John VII	1390

John V (rest)	1390–1391
Manuel II	1391–1425
(John VII, regent)	1399–1403)
John VIII	1421/5–1448
Constantine XI	1449–1453

## **Despots of the Morea**

Manuel Cantacuzene	1349–1380
Matthew Cantacuzene	1380–1383
Theodore I Palaeologus	1383–1407
Theodore II Palaeologus	1414–1443
Constantine (XI)	1426–1448
Thomas	1429–1460
Demetrius	1449–1460

## **Emperors of Trebizond**

Alexius I Comnenus	1204–1222
David (at Sinope)	1204–1214
Andronicus I Gidus	1222–1235
John I	1235–1238
Manuel I	1238–1263
Andronicus II	1263–1266
George	1266–1280
John II	1280–1297
Alexius II	1297–1330
Andronicus III	1330–1332
(Manuel II, titular)	1332)
Basil	1332–1340
Irene Palaeologina	1340–1341
Anna	1341
Michael	1341
Anna (rest)	1341–1342
John III	1342–1344
Michael (rest)	1344–1349
Alexius III	1349–1390
Manuel III	1390–1417
Alexius IV	1417–1429
John IV	1429–1458
David II	1458–1461

## **Patriarchs of Constantinople**

Alexander	324–337
Paul	337–339

Eusebius	339–341
Paul (rest)	341–342
Macedonius	342–346
Paul (rest)	346–351
Macedonius (rest)	351–360
Eudoxius	360–370
Demophilus	370–379
Gregory of Nazianzus	379–381
Nectarius	381–397
John Chrysostom	398–404
Arsacius	404–405
Atticus	406–425
Sisinnius	426–427
Nestorius	428–431
Maximian	431–434
Proclus	434–446
Flavian	446–449
Anatolius	449–458
Gennadius	458–471
Acacius	472–489
Fravitta	489–490
Euphemius	490–496
Macedonius II	496–511
Timotheus	511–518
John II	518–520
Epiphanius	520–535
Anthimus	535–536
Menas	536–552
Eutychius	552–565
John III	565–577
Eutychius (rest)	577–582
John IV the Faster	582–595
Cyriacus	595–606
Thomas	607–610
Sergius	610–638
Pyrrhus	638–641
Paul II	641–653
Pyrrhus (rest)	654
Peter	654–666
Thomas	666–669
John V	669–675
Constantine	675–677
Theodore	677–679
George	679–686
Theodore (rest)	686–687
Paul III	688–694
Callinicus	694–706
Cyrus	706–712
John VI	712–715
Germanus	715–730
Anastasius	730–754
Constantine II	754–766



Nicetas	766–780
Paul IV	780–784
Tarasius	784–806
Nicephorus	806–815
Theodotus Melissenus	815–821
Anthony Cassimatas	821–837
John VII the Grammarian	837–843
Methodius	843–847
Ignatius	847–858
Photius	858–867
Ignatius (rest)	867–877
Photius (rest)	877–886
Stephen	886–893
Anthony II Cauleas	893–901
Nicholas Mysticus	901–907
Euthymius	907–912
Nicholas Mysticus (rest)	912–925
Stephen II	925–927
Tryphon	927–931
Theophylact	931–956
Polyeuctus	956–970
Basil Scamandrenus	970–973
Anthony III of Studius	973–978
Nicholas II Chrysoberges	980–992
Sisinnius II	996–998
Sergius II	1001–1019
Eustathius	1019–1025
Alexius	1025–1043
Michael Cerularius	1043–1058
Constantine III Lichudes	1059–1063
John VIII Xiphilinus	1064–1075
Cosmas	1075–1081
Eustratius Garidas	1081–1084
Nicholas III Grammaticus	1084–1111
John IX Agapetus	1111–1134
Leo Stypiotes	1134–1143
Michael II Curcuas	1143–1146
Cosmas II Atticus	1146–1147
Nicholas IV Muzalon	1147–1151
Theodotus II	1151/2–1154
Constantine IV Chliarenius	1154–1157
Luke Chrysoberges	1157–1170
Michael III of Anchialus	1170–1178
Chariton Eugeniotēs	1178–1179
Theodosius Boradiotes	1179–1183
Basil II Camaterus	1183–1186
Nicetas II Muntanes	1186–1189
Dositheus of Jerusalem	1189
Leontius	1189
Dositheus (rest)	1189–1191
George II Xiphilinus	1191–1198
John IX Camaterus	1198–1206

**(Nicaean Empire: Patriarchs)**

Michael IV Autoreianus	1208–1214
Theodore II Irenicus	1214–1216
Maximus	1216
Manuel Sarantenus	1217–1222
Germanus II	1222–1240
Methodius II	1240
Manuel II	1244–1254
Arsenius Autoreianus	1254–1259
Nicephorus II	1259–1260

**Patriarchs of Constantinople (rest)**

Arsenius Autoreianus	1261–1263
Germanus III	1265–1266
Joseph	1266–1275
John XI Beccus	1275–1282
Joseph (rest)	1282–1283
Gregory II of Cyprus	1283–1289
Athanasius	1289–1293
John XII Cosmas	1294–1303
Athanasius (rest)	1303–1309
Niphon	1310–1314
John XIII Glycys	1315–1319
Gerasimus	1320–1321
Esaias	1323–1332
John XIV Calecas	1334–1347
Isidore Bucharis	1347–1350
Callistus	1350–1353
Philotheus Coccinus	1353–1354
Callistus (rest)	1355–1363
Philotheus (rest)	1364–1376
Macarius	1376–1379
Nilus	1380–1388
Anthony IV	1389–1390
Macarius (rest)	1390–1391
Anthony IV (rest)	1391–1397
Callistus II	1397
Matthew	1397–1410
Euthymius II	1410–1416
Joseph II	1416–1439
Metrophanes II	1440–1443
Gregory III Mammes	1443–1452

**Patriarchs of Alexandria**

Alexander	312–328
Athanasius	328–339

Gregory	339–345
Athanasius (rest)	345–356
George	356–362
Athanasius (rest)	362–373
Peter II	373–380
Timotheus I	380–385
Theophilus	385–412
Cyril	412–444
Dioscurus	444–451
Proterius	452–457
Timotheus II	457–460
Timotheus III	460–475
Timotheus II (rest)	475–477
Timotheus III (rest)	477–482
John	482
Peter III	482–489
Athanasius II	490–496
John II	496–505
John III	506–516
Dioscurus II	516–517
Timotheus IV	517–535
Gaian	535
Theodosius	535–536
Paul	537–542
Zoilus	542–551
Apollinarius	551–570
John IV	570–580
Eugenius	580–607
John V	607–619

### **Latin princes of Achaia**

William de Champlitte	1205–1210
Geoffrey I de Villehardouin	1210–?1228
Geoffrey II de Villehardouin	?1228–1246
William de Villehardouin	1246–1278
Charles of Anjou, King of Naples	1278–1285
Charles II of Anjou	1285–1289
Isabelle of Villehardouin	1289–1307
Florent of Hainault	1289–1301
Philip of Savoy	1301–1307
Philip of Taranto	1307–1313
Mahaut of Hainault	1313–1318
John of Gravina	1318–1333
Robert of Taranto	1333–1364
Marie de Bourbon	1364–1370
Philip II of Taranto	1370–1373
Joan, Queen of Naples	1373–1380

**Lords and (1263) Dukes of Athens**

(De la Roche)	
Otho	1205–1225
Guy	1225–1263
John	1263–1280
William	1280–1287
Guy II	1287–1308
(Acciajuoli)	
Nerio	1394
Antonio	1402–1435
Nerio II	1435–1439
Antonio II	1439–1441
Nerio II (rest)	1441–1451
Francesco	1451–?1452
Franco	?1452–1456

**Bulgarian Khanate/kingdom/empire**

Asparuch	681–c.701
Tervel	c.701–718
Sevar	c.718–750
Kormesios	750–763
Baian	763–765
Tokht	765
Telerich	765–777
Kardam	777–?803
Krum	?803–814
Ditzevg	814–815
Omurtag	815–831
Malamir	831–852
Boris	852–889
Vladimir	889–893
Simeon	893–927
Peter	927–969
Boris II	969–972
(Western Bulgaria)	
Romanus (titular)	c.977–997
Samuel (effective)	c.977–1014
Gabriel	1014–1015
John Vladislav	1015–1018

**Second Bulgarian kingdom/empire**

Asen	1186–1196
Peter	1186–1197
Kalojan	1197–1207

Boril	1207–1218
John Asen II	1214/1218–1241
Coloman	1241–1246
Michael Asen	1246–1257
Constantine Tich	1257–1277
Ivailo	1277–1279
John Asen III	1279–1280
George Terter	1280–1292
Smilec	1292–1298
Theodore Svetoslav	1298–1322
George II	1322–1323
Michael Sisman	1323–1330
John Stephen	1330–1331
John Alexander	1331–1371
John Sisman	1371–1393

### **Kings of Serbia**

Stephen Nemanja	1165–1196
Stephen II	1196–1228
Stephen III Radoslav	1228–1233
Vladislav	1233–1243
Stephen Uros	1243–1276
Stephen Dragutin	1276–1282
Stephen Milutin	1282–1321
Stephen Deskani	1321–1331
Stephen IV Dusan	1331–1355
Stephen V	1355–1366
Vukasin	1366–1371
Lazar	1374–1389
Stephen Lazarevic	1389–1427
George Brankovic	1427–1456
Lazar II	1456–1458

### **Arab caliphs**

Abu Bakr	632–634
Omar	634–644
Othman	644–656 (Ummayad)
Ali	656–661
Muawiya	656/661–680
Yazid	680–683
Muawiya II (Ummayads)	683–684
Marwan	684–685
Abd al-Malik	685–705
Walid	705–715
Sulaiman	715–717

Omar II	717–720
Yazid II	720–724
Hisham	724–743
Walid II	743–744
Yazid III	744
Marwan II	744–750

(Abbasids)

Abu'l-Abbas ('As-Saffah')	750–754
Al – Mansur	754–775
Al – Mahdi	775–785
Al – Hadi	785–786
Harun Al – Rashid	786–809
Al – Amin	809–813
Al – Mamun	813–833
Al – Mutasim	833–842
Al – Wathiq	842–847
Al – Mutawwakil	848–861
Al – Muntasir	861–862
Al – Mustaeen	862–866
Al – Mutazz	866–869
Al – Muhtadi	869–870
Al – Mutamid	870–892
Al – Mutadhid	892–902
Al – Muqtafi	902–908
Al – Muqtadir	908–932
Al – Qadir	932–934
Al – Radi	934–940
Al – Muqtafi	940–944
Al – Muqstafi	944–946
Al – Muti	946–974
Al – Ta'i	974–991
Al – Qahir	991–1031
Al – Qaim	1031–1075

**Seljuk sultans (Persia)**

Tughril Beg	1055–1063
Alp Arslan	1063–1072
Malik Shah	1072–1092
Barqiyaruq	1092–1104
Mohammed	1104–1118
Sanjar (Hamadan)	1118–1153, 1156–1157

**Seljuk sultans of 'Rum' (Nicaea to 1097, thence Iconium/Konya)**

Sulaiman	1077–1086
Kilij Arslan	1092–1107

Malik Shah	1109–1116
Mas'ud	1116–1155
Kilij Arslan II	1155–1187, ?1191–1192
Rukn al-Din Sulaiman Shah	1187/92–1204
Kilij Arslan III	1204–1205
Ghiyath al-Din Kaikhusraw	1205–1211
Izz ed-Din Kaykavus	1211–1220
Ala ed-Din Kaiqobad	1220–1237
Ghiyath al-Din Kaikhusraw II	1237–1245/6
Izz ed-Din Kaykavus II	1245/6–1261
Rukn al-Din Kilij Arslan	1248/61–1266
Ghiyath al-Din Kaikhusraw III	1266–1283
Ghiyath al-Din Mas'ud	1283–1298
Ala ed-Din Kaiqobad II	1298–1303
Ghiyath al-Din Kaikhusraw III (rest)	1303–?1307

### **Crusader kingdom of Jerusalem**

Godfrey of Bouillon	1099–1100
Baldwin I	1100–1118
Baldwin II	1118–1131
Fulk of Anjou	1131–1143
Melissende	1131–1152
Baldwin III	1143–1162
Amalric	1162–1174
Baldwin IV	1174–1185
Baldwin V	1183/5–1186
Guy of Lusignan	1186–1187/90
Sybilla	1186–1187/90

### **Ottoman emirs/sultans**

Osman	c.1300–1326
Orhan	1326–1362
Murad I	1362–1389
Bayezid I	1389–1402
Sulaiman (Europe only)	1402–1411
Musa (Asia to 1409)	1402/11–1413
Mehmed I (Asia to 1413)	1402/13–1421
Murad II	1421–1451
Mehmed II	1451–1481

# Glossary

- Anatolicon** 'Theme' of central Asia Minor, capital Amorion/Amorium
- Archontate** Minor province in middle Empire, governed by 'Archon'
- Armeniacon** 'Theme' of North-Eastern Asia Minor, named after the army corps from Armenian frontier settled there in the seventh century
- Augusta** Title given to some Empresses
- Augustus** Latin title of Emperor
- Basileopator** Title given to some Imperial fathers-in-law
- Basileus** Greek title of Emperor
- Bucellarii** Personal bodyguards of general under early Empire
- Bucellarion/Bucellarium** 'Theme' of Galatia, with Ancyra as capital
- Caesar** Title of deputy Emperor and heir to throne under Early Empire; later fifth in hierarchy
- Cancellarii** Palace officials
- Chartophylax** Archivist
- Chartularii** Minor officials under early Empire; later Heads of Imperial administrative departments
- Chrysobull** Official document signed with golden Imperial seal
- Cibyrrhaet** 'Theme' Military district/province of the southern coast of Asia Minor, capital Attaleia
- Clarissimi** Rank given to senators and senior officials
- Cleisura** Minor frontier province, from ninth century
- Consul** Title given to two annual officials (one in East, one in West) under early Empire; later the fifth rank in Imperial hierarchy
- Count ('Comes')** 'Companion'; title of senior civil or military official in Imperial entourage under early Empire
- Count of Domestics** Commander of Imperial officer-cadets
- Count of Excubitores** Commander of Imperial Guards regiments
- Count of the 'Res Privatae'** Comptroller of Imperial private estates
- Count of the 'Sacred Largesses'** Finance minister in early Empire
- Count of the Stable ('Constable')** Official in charge of Imperial and army horses under early Empire; later senior military rank commanding allied nations' regiments at Court, e.g. Latins under later Empire
- Cubicularii** Eunuch chamberlains in Palace household
- Curopalatus** Third rank in Imperial civil hierarchy
- Despot** Third rank in Imperial family in later Empire, also given to sovereigns of minor Byzantine states after 1204
- Dioceses** Groups of provinces governed by 'Vicar'
- Domestic of the 'Scholae'** Commander of that Imperial guards-regiment
- Domestics** Commanders of Guards at court
- Drungarius** Senior military commander or admiral
- Drungarius of the Watch** Commander of that regiment at Palace in the middle Empire; came to be honorary rank for civilian official
- Duces ('dukes')** Commanders of frontier districts
- Eparch** Praefect of Constantinople
- Exarch** Military governor-general of Italy or Africa
- Excubitores** Palace Guards regiment, second in rank to the 'Scholae'



- General Logothete** ('logothetos ton genikou') Chief finance minister in middle Empire
- Grand Domestic** Commander-in-chief in middle Empire
- Grand Duke** ('Megadux') Commander of Imperial navy in later Empire
- Foederati** ('federates') Contingents of troops from allied 'barbarian' tribes
- Hicanati** Guards regiment founded in ninth century
- Hyperpyron** Gold coinage of later Empire
- Illustres** Grade of rank for senatorial order
- Logothetes** Palace financial officials
- Logothete of the 'Drome'** Foreign minister in middle Empire, also in charge of the postal service
- Magister** Title for senior Imperial adviser
- Master of Both Services** ('Magister Utriusque Militiae') Commander-in-chief in early Empire
- Master of Horse** ('Magister Equitum') Cavalry commander-in-chief
- Master of Offices** ('Magister Officiorum') Chief civilian minister under early Empire
- Master of Soldiers** ('Magister Peditum') Infantry commander-in-chief
- Mesazon** Imperial chancellor under the later Empire
- Monostrategus** Military commander in control of several 'themes'
- Nobilissimus** Rank for junior member of Imperial family
- Nomisma** Main gold coinage of the Empire
- Numera** Infantry garrison/police regiment at capital – the name was also given to their prison there
- Opsicon** 'Theme' of North-Western Asia Minor, capital Nicaea
- Optimates** Originally a corps of muleteers in charge of army baggage; later a military corps settled in Bithynia
- Optimaton** 'Theme' of Bithynia, called after army corps settled there in eighth century
- Paracoemomenus** Senior chamberlain of Imperial household
- Patriarch** The three, later four senior 'metropolitan' bishops in the early Empire – Constantinople, Antioch, Alexandria, and later Jerusalem. After the Arab conquests only Constantinople remained under Imperial control
- Patrician** Senior honorary rank for officials and Imperial advisers; came to be top title outside Imperial family
- Porphyrogenitus** Honorary title for a prince born in the Imperial birth-chamber at the 'Sacred Palace'
- Praefect of the 'Annona'** official in charge of the capital's corn-dole
- Praefect of the City/Urban Praefect** ('Eparch') Civil administrator of the capital
- Praefect of the 'Vigiles'** Official in charge of the capital's firemen/police
- Praetor** Magistrate in capital
- Praetorian Praefect** Senior civilian/judicial minister and military adviser under early Empire, formerly commander of Imperial Guard
- Primicerius** Army clerk under early Empire; later Palace administrator. The 'Grand Primicerius' came to run Imperial ceremonial
- Protectores** Imperial officer-cadets attached to Palace
- Protoascretis** Head of Imperial records-office
- Protospatharius** Second-ranking title for top officials outside Imperial family
- Protostrator** Official in charge of Imperial stable
- Provestiarius** Official in charge of Emperor's personal Treasury, and nominally of the Wardrobe
- Quaestor of 'Sacred Palace'** Senior legal official under early Empire
- Sacellarius** Eunuch Palace financial officials; later treasurers in other bodies, e.g. Church
- Scholae** Imperial Guards regiments
- Sebastocrator** Title invented by Alexius I for second-ranking member of Imperial family below the sovereign
- Silentarius** Usher of Imperial Council

- Spatharius** Eunuch bodyguards at Palace
- Strategus** Military governor and commander of a 'theme'
- Syncellus** Chief assistant of a Patriarch
- Tagmata** Mobile army regiment stationed in or near capital in middle Empire
- Themes** Military district, thence province, from the seventh century
- Thraceion** 'Theme' of Western Asia Minor, centred on Ionia and Lydia; named after the 'Thracian' army corps settled there in the seventh century
- Tribunes** Regimental commanders
- Turmarch** Commander of a sub-district ('turma') within a 'theme'
- Vicars** Governors of dioceses
- Vigiles/'Watch'** Police/firemen in capital in early Empire, later the regiments of capital's garrison

# Index

- 'Ad Decimum' ('Tenth Milestone'), 101  
'Alania', 154  
'Albania', 154  
'Alexius II', 'lookalike' Illyrian peasant, 518  
'Al-Qasr', 402  
'Anadolu Hisar', fortress of, 695  
'Angelokastron', 531  
'Arminiya', 186  
'Ayyubid' dynasty, 509; princes, 533  
'Babylon' citadel, Egypt, 151  
'Banu Ammar' dynasty, library, 448  
'Bucellarii' regiment, 107  
'Burning Bush', Mount Sinai, 168  
'Busta Gallorum', battle of, 115  
'Buwayhid' Emirate, 303  
'Camel, battle of the', 173  
'Carabisiani' fleet, 175, 177, 199–200  
'Castle of the Seven Towers', Golden Gate, 732  
'Chandax', fortress, Crete, 244  
'Chiroinctus', envoy of Gabriel Radomir, 349  
'Curopalatus', 245  
'Cibyrrhaeot', 204  
'Emir' of Dvin/Tovin, 370  
'Exarchate', 166  
'Excubitors' regiment, 204  
'Field of Blood', battle, 319  
'Field of Cato', Africa, 112  
'Flacillianae' Palace, Constantinople, 100  
'Gabitha', 160  
'Gaethungi', 27  
'Golden Gate', Long Walls, Constantinople, 66, 395  
'Golden Horde', Serai, 632  
'Golden Horn' harbour, Constantinople, 7  
'Great Fence', Bulgarian frontier, 320  
'Great Lavra' monastery (Palestine), 84, 324  
'Hades', battle of, 383  
'Hesyachasts', 661, 665  
'Hexamilion', 707, 712, 719–20, 729  
'Hisni Zlad', 305  
'Horns of Hattin', battle of, 523  
'Ilkhan', 636  
'Irenopolis' (Berroea), 220  
'Janissaries', Sultan's, 718  
'Kose Dagh', battle of, 581  
'Koustouganēs', Turcoman Commander, 635  
'Leonine Wall', 257  
'Long Wall' of Anastasius, Thrace, 114, 119–20, 131, 136, 209  
'New Church' ('Nea'), Sacred Palace, 275, 277  
'Optimaton' district, 204  
'Ottomans'/'Osmanlis', 649  
'Pentapolis', 166  
'Phanar' quarter, Golden Horn, 727–8  
'Protos' of the 'Skete', 324  
'Qalat Symeon', 65  
'Ras Ain', 307  
'Rufinianae' Palace, Chalcedon, 108  
'Scholae' regiment, 204  
'The Bridge', battle, 160  
'The Oak' (Rufinus' palace), Bosphorus, 40  
'Tigranokert', Armenia, 154  
'Trajan's Gate', Hebrus valley, 526  
'Trojan Pass', Balkans, 137  
'Trojan's Gate', 334  
'Tunnelled Rock' pass, Italy, 105  
'Watch' regiment, 204  
Aachen, 219, 234, 237  
Aaron brothers, 446  
Aaron Ducas, governor of Vaspurakan, 373, 383  
Aaron, 508  
Aaron, son of Shishman, 324, 328, 334  
Abagha, Mongol 'Ilkhan', 605, 613–14, 621  
Abas of Kars, Prince, 357  
Abas, 281, 300  
Abas, King, 306, 312  
Abasgia, 192, 214, 251, 253, 331, 342, 352  
Abbas, 193, 246–7  
Abbasids, 206, 207, 209, 211, 271, 274, 507  
Abd-al-Kabir, general, 218  
Abdallah, 124  
Abdallah, son of Tahir, 242  
Abd-al-Malik, 'Emir' of Khorasan, 316  
Abd-al-Malik, 182–5, 196, 226  
Abdalrahman 125  
Abd-al-Rahman, 188  
Abd-al-Rahman, prince, 206  
Abdul Abbas, Caliph, 205

- Abdul Massib, General id Nur-ed-Din, 509  
 Abdul Qasim, 419, 425–6  
 Abdul Qasim, son of Mohammed ibn Tujj of Egypt, 310, 315  
 Abdullah ibn Mutazz, 290  
 Abdullah Ibn Zubayr, 179, 181, 182, 184, 185  
 Abdullah II, 'Emir', 287  
 Abdullah the Zirid, 363–4  
 Abdullah, governor of Egypt, 167  
 Abdullah, brother of Caliph Walid, 188  
 Abdullah, son of Ibrahim, 'Emir', 286  
 Abdullah Ibn Abi of Tripolitania, 167  
 Abelard, nephew of Robert Guiscard, 382, 391, 401, 410, 415  
 Abha, 'Mar', 'Catholics', 116  
 Ablabius, 11, 121  
 Abrahamites, 247  
 Abram, Bishop, 95  
 Abruzzi, 475, 478  
 Abu Abdallah, 287, 290  
 Abu Bakr, 159  
 Abu Fihri, 248  
 Abu Hafis, fl. 820s, 243–4  
 Abu Hafis, fl. 1030s, 361–2  
 Abu Hamza, 204  
 Abu Muslim, 205  
 Abu Sa'd al-Tustari, 371, 373  
 Abu Sa'id al-Jannabi, 297  
 Abu Sa'id, 252  
 Abu Sufyan, Mohammed's cousin, 152  
 Abu Talib, 149  
 Abu Talib/Taglib the Hamdanid of Mosul, 'Emir', 325, 327, 331  
 Abu Ubaydah, 159, 161, 162, 163  
 Abu'l Fath Ismail, 467  
 Abu'l-Ali ibn Marwan, 336  
 Abul Qasim, 'Emir', 417, 420, 426  
 Abuntiantus, 36  
 Abydos, 147, 196, 203, 228, 287, 415, 495, 532, 543; battle, 335  
 Abyssinia/Abyssinians, 124  
 Acacius of Constantinople, 68, 70, 78, 79, 80, 82, 83, 89, 91–3  
 Achaia/Achaian, 596, 606, 608, 612, 627, 629, 634, 644–5, 652, 654, 656–7, 674, 675, 677, 680, 682, 686, 690–1, 693, 707, 710, 728  
 Achard, Archbishop, 493  
 Acheloos, Epirus, 674  
 Acholis, Bishop of Thessalonica, 28  
 Achytacus, 559  
 Acre, 162, 450, 452, 478, 483, 512, 522, 524, 527, 530, 553  
 Acre, Bishop of, 506  
 Acrocorinth, 556–7  
 Acroinon, battle of, 202  
 Acropolis, 67, 122, 688–9, 711, 729–30  
 Acte, 313  
 Acyndynus, disciple of Barlaam of Calabria, Greek theologian, 656, 658, 661, 663  
 Adalbert of Ivrea, husband of Gisela, 298  
 Adaloald, 154–5  
 Adam of Baghras, Regent, 565  
 Adana (Cilicia), 319, 402–3, 416, 433, 440, 466, 471, 506; battle, 285  
 Adarnase IV of Iberia, 277, 297  
 Adarnase of Iberia, C7th, 180, 182  
 Adarnase of Tao, fl. 830, 245  
 Adarnase, Prince of Tao, 314, 317  
 Adarnase, Prince, 216  
 Adata, 175, 217–18, 220, 246; fortress, 217  
 Adda, River, 82  
 Addaeus, 122, 215, 217, 221  
 Ad-Dimas, 460  
 Adela, wife of Count Stephen of Blois, 438–9  
 Adelaide, daughter of Henry, Duke of Brunswick, 646  
 Adelaide, mother of Count Roger II of Sicily, 439, 444, 451–2, 455–6  
 Adelaide, widow of Lothar II, 311  
 Adelchis of Benevento, Prince, 222, 274  
 Ademar of Le Puy, Bishop, 429, 431  
 Adeodatus II, Pope, 177–8  
 Adeodatus/Deusdedit, Pope, 150–1  
 Adiabene, 15, 22  
 Adonis, 22  
 Adralestes, 296  
 Adramyttium, 195, 448, 450, 482, 535, 547, 559, 622, 636  
 Adrian Comnenus, 413, 420–1, 425, 444  
 Adrianople, 131, 201, 232, 236–7, 292, 296–7, 344, 351, 372, 409, 420, 422, 428, 438–9, 481, 523–4, 527, 532, 544, 547, 553–4, 593, 647, 650, 658, 661–3, 667–70, 679, 680, 702–3, 706, 717–19, 722–4, 727–9; battle, 27  
 Adriatic, 39, 52, 114, 115, 201, 252, 255, 340, 399, 413, 429, 444, 446, 679  
 Adud ad-Daula of Baghdad and Fars, 321, 330–2, 332  
 Adulis, 96  
 Aedesius, 48  
 Aegean Sea, 48, 177, 198–9, 260, 286–7, 425, 507, 520, 547, 606, 628, 635, 637, 642, 653–5, 660–2, 668, 684, 699, 726

- Aegina, 282, 541  
 Aelia Flacilla, 31  
 Aenus, Thrace, 425, 668  
 Aetherius, 122  
 Aetius, deacon, 17  
 Aetius, 51, 52, 54, 55, 61, 62, 63  
 Aetius, fl. c.800, 226, 227–8, 250  
 Afghanistan, 317, 358  
 Africa/African, 11, 14, 33, 36–7, 45, 48–9, 52–3, 55, 63, 64, 175, 181, 187, 243, 364, 394, 460, 480, 607, 619  
 Afridun, brother of Qasin the Danishmend of Melitene, 507, 509  
 Afshin, Caliph deputy, 283, 285  
 Afsin, 249–50  
 Agalliarus, ‘strategus’ of Hellas, 199  
 Agapitus, Pope, 103, 104  
 Agapitus II, Pope, 309, 312–3  
 Agatha Lecapena, sister of Empress Helena, 313  
 Agathias, 115  
 Agatho, Pope, 180  
 Aghlabids, 244, 290  
 Agila, King, 115  
 Agilulf, 134, 135  
 Agnellus Participazio, 234  
 Agnes of Courtenay, 493  
 Agnes of Montferrat, daughter of Boniface, 555  
 Agnes of Poitou, mother of Henry IV, 382  
 Agnes, daughter of Louis VII, 506–7, 513, 554  
 Agrigento, 390, 420  
 Agsarten of Kakhetia, Prince, 418  
 Agsarten, King, son of King Gagik of Kakhetia, 384  
 Agthamar, 300  
 Ahmad, ‘Emir Al-Umara’, 309  
 Ahmad ibn Buya, 309–10  
 Ahmed al-Janjani, ‘vizier’, 356  
 Ahmed Celebi, son of Sultan Murad, 722, 724  
 Ahmed Ibn Ismail, Samanid founder, 285  
 Ahmed Ibn Tulun, ‘Emir’, 271, 273, 279  
 Ahmed of Sicily, 291  
 Ahmed, ‘Emir’ of Tarsus, 254  
 Ahmed, ‘Emir’, 294, 323  
 Ahmed, brother of Yaqub, 277  
 Ahmed, son of Al Misk Kafur, 320, 322  
 Ahmed, son of Turahan Beg, 724  
 Ahudemmeh, 120  
 Aigion, 719, 730  
 Aigues, 608  
 Aigues-Mortes, 696  
 Aimery of Antioch, Patriarch, 491, 494–5, 506  
 Ain-al-Daula of Melitene, 486  
 Aistulf, Lombard ruler, 205, 207–9  
 Akbas, 130  
 Akhal, 362  
 Akova, 647, 693  
 Akrivi, 730  
 Akseray, 590  
 Al Misk Kafur, eunuch, chief minister of Egypt, 310, 315, 320, 322  
 Al Nu‘man, 85  
 Al-Abbas, Abdul Abbas’ great-grandfather, 206  
 Al-Abbas, Caliph, 208, 213  
 Al-Adid, Fatimid Caliph, 495  
 Al-Adil, brother of Saladin, 530, 533, 535, 538–9, 574  
 Al-Adil, Fatimid Caliph, 504, 507  
 Ala-ed-Din Kaiqobad, Sultan, 566–7, 569, 571, 573–4, 577, 583  
 Ala-ed-Din Kaiqobad II, Sultan, 633  
 Al-Afdal of Damascus, titular Sultan, son of Saladin, 532–3, 535, 538–9  
 Al-Afdal, Egyptian ‘Vizier’, 430, 437, 444, 447, 458  
 Elaine of Flanders, 449  
 Al-Akhal of Sicily, ‘Emir’, 361  
 Al-Amin, Caliph, 228, 233–5, 236  
 Al-Amir, Fatimid Caliph, son of Caliph Al-Mustaali, 440, 465  
 Alania, 182  
 Alans, 61, 125, 635–6, 638–9  
 Alaric, ‘King of West Goths, 35, 36, 39, 40, 43, 44, 45, 46  
 Alatheus, 27  
 Ala-ud-Din, Karamanid ‘emir’, 690  
 Alavivus, 26  
 Al-Aziz of Egypt, Sultan, son of Saladin, 532–3, 535, 538  
 Al-Aziz, Caliph, son of Al-Mu‘izz, 328–9, 339  
 Alba Dominica, 23  
 Albania, 572, 655, 674, 678, 716–17, 720, 722, 728, 730–1  
 Albano Contarini, Venetian ‘bailli’, 693–7  
 Al-Barmaki, 219  
 Al-Battal, commander, 202  
 Alberada, wife of Robert Guiscard, 384  
 Albergati, Cardinal, 713  
 Amulf, Emperor, 283  
 Alberic of Spoleto, 293

- Alberic, son of Marozia, 302, 304–5, 307, 309, 312–13  
 Albertinus, legate, 537  
 Alberto de Morra, 524  
 Albertus, legate, 537  
 Albistan, 525  
 Aldobrandini, Tuscan family, 546  
 Alemanni, 19, 23, 27, 115, 116  
 Aleppo/Aleppans 306, 308, 310, 313, 317–20, 322–3, 330, 332–3, 337–8, 341, 345, 352, 354, 357, 359, 363, 365, 384, 387, 411, 441, 459, 461, 463–4, 472–3, 484, 509–11, 516–17; battle, 419  
 Alexander II, Pope, 388, 390  
 Alexander III, Pope, 494, 497, 501–2, 506, 510, 515  
 Alexander IV, Pope, 589, 595  
 Alexander of Gravina, Count, 475, 512  
 Alexander, Bishop of Alexandria, 7, 8, 11  
 Alexander, brother of David Comnenus, 709, 733  
 Alexander, brother of Leo VI, Emperor, 265, 274, 285–6  
 Alexander, Count of Conversano, 503  
 Alexander, Count of Gravina, 487–8  
 Alexandretta (Syria), 147  
 Alexandria, 7, 8, 12, 13, 16, 18, 31, 33, 47, 54, 61, 79, 82, 85, 91, 93, 95, 108, 114–15, 175, 212, 243, 272, 676, 712, 714  
 Alexandria, Patriarch of, 621, 678  
 Alexis Metochites, ‘Grand Domestic’, 671  
 Alexis, Moscow’s choice for Metropolitan of Kiev, 670–1  
 Alexius ‘the Studite’, Patriarch, 355, 357, 362, 367–9  
 Alexius Apocaucus, ‘Grand Duke’ (admiral), Prefect of City, 658–61  
 Alexius Apocaucus, 647, 650  
 Alexius Aspietes, governor of Serres, 535  
 Alexius Axuch, 492–3, 500, 502  
 Alexius Branas, 517–18, 520–3  
 Alexius Branas, Manuel II’s envoy, 698, 700  
 Alexius Bryennius Comnenus, son of Anna Comnena, 473, 490, 497  
 Alexius Cabasilas, commander of Rogoi, 657  
 Alexius Comnenus Vatatzes, 521, 523  
 Alexius Comnenus, Emperor of Trebizond, 555, 567  
 Alexius Comnenus, Emperor Alexius I, 399, 404, 406, 408–17, 419–32, 434–54, 456  
 Alexius Contostephanus, 496, 498  
 Alexius Contostephanus, 534–5  
 Alexius Gidus, ‘Domestic of the East’, 520, 526, 532–3  
 Alexius II, Emperor, 504, 506–7, 513, 516–17, 634–5  
 Alexius II, Emperor of Trebizond, 632, 651  
 Alexius II, pretender, 532, 535–6  
 Alexius III, Emperor, 531, 534–7, 540–1, 543–4, 546–7, 553, 558, 561, 569, 666–7, 673, 684–5, 690  
 Alexius III of Trebizond, illegitimate son of Emperor Basil, 634–5, 665  
 Alexius IV, Emperor, 541–5  
 Alexius IV of Trebizond, 694, 705, 709  
 Alexius V (Ducas Murtzurphlus), 545–7  
 Alexius Kasianos, governor of Paphlagonia, 462  
 Alexius Lascaris, 568  
 Alexius Musele, 223, 248–51  
 Alexius Palaeologus, 538, 540–1  
 Alexius Philanthropenus, 629–31  
 Alexius Slav, independent Lord of Rhodope Mountains, 567  
 Alexius Strategopulus, general, 589, 594–5  
 Alexius the ‘cupbearer’, brother of Queen Maria of Jerusalem, 518, 520  
 Alexius the ‘Protostrator’, ‘Caesar’, 488, 502, 516, 519, 521  
 Alexius the Armenian, 274  
 Alexius, cousin of Isaac Angelus, 526  
 Alexius, illegitimate son of Manuel, 517–18  
 Alexius, Patriarch, 357, 362  
 Alexius, son of John II, 458, 476  
 Alexius, son of Theodore Metochites, 666  
 Alexius, the ‘protostrator’, nephew of Manuel I, 502  
 Al-Fadl, general, 215  
 Al-Fadl, Vizier, 239  
 Al-Faiz, Caliph, 488  
 Alfonso II of Aragon, 513  
 Alfonso Jordan, son of Raymond of Toulouse, 443, 447  
 Alfonso V of Aragon, ruler of Naples and Sicily, 720  
 Alfonso of Athens, bastard brother of Duke Manfred, Regent, 645–6, 652, 672  
 Alfonso X of Castile, 608  
 Alfonso, Prince, 475  
 Alfonso, son of Peter of Aragon, 626, 628  
 Al-Ghazi, Ayyubid prince, 581  
 Al-Hadi, son of Al-Mansur, 216  
 Al-Hadi, Caliph, 220  
 Al-Hafiz, Fatimid Caliph, 465

- Al-Hakim, Fatimid Caliph, 339, 342, 346, 350, 352
- Al-Harith II, 98, 107, 117, 121
- Ali al-Hadi, 'Imam', 271
- Ali al-Rida, 'Imam', 239
- Ali ibn Buya, 303, 309–10, 320
- Ali ibn Muh, 271
- Ali Pasha, 'Grand Vizier', 692
- Ali, ruler of Egypt, 320
- Ali, brother of Abdul Qasim, 315
- Ali, Caliph, 172–3, 179, 204, 271, 274
- Ali, Omar's son-in-law, 167
- Ali, son of Temim of Tunisia, Zirid 'Emir', 390
- Alicante, 65
- Alice, niece of Leo II of Armenia, 533, 536
- Alice, wife of Bohemund II, 462, 464–5, 469–70
- Alid succession, 286
- Aligern, 116
- Al-Kamil of Egypt, Sultan, 539, 574
- Allah ibn-Hatim, 186
- Allemanni, 46
- Al-Mahdi, Al-Mansur's son, 210
- Al-Mahdi, Caliph, 220–1
- Al-Malik al-Rahim, Caliph, 381
- Al-Mamun, Caliph, 228, 233–6, 239–41, 243, 245–7
- Al-Mansur, 309
- Al-Mansur, Caliph, 208, 216
- Al-Mansur, son of Al-Aziz of Egypt, 538
- Almos, lord of Croatia, 455, 463–4
- Al-Mu'izz, Caliph, 312, 314, 326
- Al-Muhtadi, Caliph, 271–2
- Al-Mukstafi, Caliph, 308–10
- Al-Mukstafi, son of Al-Mutadhid, 286
- Al-Muktafi, 471
- Al-Mundhir, 95, 98, 117, 129, 130
- Al-Muntasir, 258, 261
- Al-Muqallad the Uqaylid, Bedouin chieftain, 339, 344, 363
- Al-Muqtadi, son of Al-Qaim, 405, 427
- Al-Muqtadir, Caliph, 290, 293, 297, 299, 301–2
- Al-Musta'en, Caliph, 263–4
- Al-Mustaali, Caliph, son of Caliph Al-Mustansir, 427
- Al-Mustadi, Caliph, 496
- Al-Mustansir, Caliph, 361, 371, 427, 456
- Al-Mustansir, Emir, 608
- Al-Mustarshid, Abbasid Caliph, 470
- Al-Mustazhir, Caliph, 449
- Al-Mutadhid, Caliph, son of Mustawaffaq, 282, 285
- Al-Mutamid, Caliph, 272, 279, 281–2
- Al-Mutasim, Caliph, 246–50, 252
- Al-Mutawwakil, 255, 257, 258, 261, 264, 272
- Al-Mutazz, Caliph, 258, 261, 264, 271
- Al-Muti, Caliph, 310, 327
- Al-Muttaqi, Caliph, 306–8, 337
- Al-Nasir, Caliph, 516
- Al-Nu'man, 130
- Alousianus, Prince, 366
- Alp Arslan, 'Sultan', nephew of Tughril Beg, 389–402, 452, 467, 479
- Alps, 21, 39, 43, 104, 134, 208, 276
- Alptagin the Turk, 317
- Alptigin of Damascus, Turkish general, 328–30
- Al-Qahir, Caliph, 310, 302–3, 337, 359, 381, 384, 405
- Al-Qasim, Emir, 332
- Al-Rabi, 219
- Al-Radhi, Caliph, 303–6
- Al-Rashid, Caliph, son of Sultan Mas'ud, 470–1
- Al-Tai, Caliph, 327, 331, 334, 337
- Alvise Loredan, 718
- Al-Wathiq, Caliph, 252, 255, 271
- Al-Zafir, Fatimid Caliph, 488
- Al-Zahir, Fatimid Caliph, 352, 356, 361
- Amadeo IV of Savoy, John V's cousin, 677–8, 680
- Amadeo, 'Constable', 558
- Amalasintha, 97, 102, 104, 110, 114
- Amalfi, 256, 356, 376, 412, 466
- Amalric, King of Jerusalem, 493, 497, 499–500, 502–4, 506–9, 511
- Amalric, King of Cyprus, 533, 537, 542, 553
- Almaric IV, King of Cyprus, 630
- Amantius, 92, 118
- Amasea, 193, 324, 401, 406, 510
- Amaseia, 525
- Ambracia, 640
- Ambrose, Bishop of Milan, 26, 30, 31, 32, 33, 35, 36
- Amida, 'Emir' of, 310
- Amida, 20, 50, 87, 88, 98, 163, 258, 301, 311, 326
- Amisus, 262
- Ammatus, 101
- Ammianus, 20
- Ammonius, 48
- Amorgos, 606
- Amorium, 168, 176, 191, 195, 202, 223, 225, 250, 301, 330, 432, 454
- Ampoun, battle, 454

- Amr Ibn Said, 184  
 Amr, 117, 160, 164, 167 of Egypt, 172, 173  
 Amulf, Patriarch, 436  
 Anacletus II, Pope, 465, 467–8, 472–3  
 Anadolu Hisar, 718, 723  
 Anagast, 68  
 Anastasia (Theophano, q.v.), wife of  
     Romanus II, 313  
 Anastasius ‘Bibliothecarius’ 258  
 Anastasius I, Pope, 38, 39, 53  
 Anastasius II, Emperor, 194, 196–7  
 Anastasius II, Pope, 84–92, 97, 100, 107, 114,  
     122, 124, 135  
 Anastasius III, Pope, 290–2  
 Anastasius IV, Pope, 488–9  
 Anastasius of Antioch, Patriarch, 122, 124,  
     135, 150  
 Anastasius of Dyrrachium, 82  
 Anastasius of Jerusalem, Patriarch, 77  
 Anastasius the ‘Sacellarius’ 296  
 Anastasius, ‘apocrisarius’, 168  
 Anastasius, ‘Eparch’, 367  
 Anastasius, ‘Syncellus’, 200  
 Anastasius, Patriarch, 202–3, 208  
 Anatolia, 20, 24, 44, 149, 150, 161, 175, 191,  
     199, 205, 209, 210, 215, 223, 240, 248–9,  
     254, 258, 273–4, 278–9, 287, 302, 306, 311,  
     313, 316, 320, 326, 329, 334–5, 352, 384,  
     386, 395–9, 401, 403–4, 413, 430, 438–9,  
     442, 444, 449, 454, 482, 496, 510–11, 527,  
     556, 562, 580, 597, 613, 617, 628, 631,  
     638–9, 648, 681, 684, 688–91, 695, 698–9,  
     715–16, 718, 722, 724  
 Anatolicon, 185, 202, 215, 226, 230,  
     235–6, 241  
 Anatolicus, 21  
 Anatolius, 56, 58, 60, 64, 65, 100  
 Anazarbus, 257, 316, 416, 464, 471, 416, 498  
 Anchialus, 91, 130, 132, 133, 191, 213, 220,  
     294, 428, 524, 528, 607–8, 640–1, 651, 675,  
     699, 708; battle, 211  
 Ancona, 50, 105, 114, 252, 490, 492–3, 495,  
     534, 732  
 Ancyra, 12, 14, 15, 19, 23, 38, 150, 194, 217,  
     226, 242, 250, 291, 301, 439, 581  
 Ancyra, Bishop of, 19  
 Andragaitus, 30, 32  
 Andravida, 552, 558, 603, 632  
 Andrea Muroscio, Genoese admiral, 640  
 Andreas, ‘Patrician’, 154  
 Andreas, 276, 278  
 Andrei of Vladimir-Suzdal, Prince, 50  
 Andreolo Cattareo, ruler of New Phocaea, 651  
 Andrew of Crete, Archbishop, 202  
 Andrew I of Hungary, King, 373, 388  
 Andrew II of Hungary, King, 564, 575  
 Andrew III of Hungary, King, 657–8  
 Andrew of Rupecanino, 492–3  
 Andrew Palaeologus, ‘Zealot’ commander at  
     Thessalonica, 666  
 Andrew Palaeologus, son of Thomas, 734  
 Andrew, 132, 140  
 Andrew, general, 175, 176  
 Andrew, son of Thomas Palaeologus, 733  
 Andronicua Angelus, 512, 515, 517  
 Andronicus Asen, Byzantine governor, 647  
 Andronicus Asen, emissary of John V,  
     governor of Thessalonica, 663, 666–7  
 Andronicus Bryennius Comnenus, 531  
 Andronicus Comnenus, 504  
 Andronicus Contostephanus, ‘Megadux’, 502  
 Andronicus Contostephanus, son-in-law of  
     Euphrosyne, 526, 534  
 Andronicus Ducas, 396, 400–3, 405–6  
 Andronicus Ducas, 519  
 Andronicus Ducas, general, 286–90  
 Andronicus I Gidus, Emperor of Trebizond,  
     554, 567, 571, 576  
 Andronicus I, Emperor, 485, 487–8, 495,  
     498–500, 514–21, 546  
 Andronicus II, Emperor, 596, 602, 605, 608,  
     612–13, 617–18, 620–2, 624, 626–7,  
     630–41  
 Andronicus II, monk Antonius, 653  
 Andronicus III, Emperor, 633, 645–58  
 Andronicus III of Trebizond, elder son of  
     Alexius II, 651–3  
 Andronicus IV, son of John V, 664, 669, 673,  
     676, 679, 681, 683–5, 687  
 Andronicus V, 700–1  
 Andronicus Lampardas, general, 502, 516–17  
 Andronicus Nestongus, cousin of John  
     Vatatzes, 570  
 Andronicus of Sardes, Bishop, 621–2  
 Andronicus of Trebizond, 653  
 Andronicus Paleologus, ‘Grand Domestic’,  
     574, 581, 584  
 Andronicus Paleologus, son of Manuel II, 701,  
     704, 707–8, 710  
 Andronicus Vatatzes, 511  
 Andronicus, Bishop of Sardes, 596  
 Andronicus, brother of George Muzalon,  
     ‘Grand Domestic’, 590, 592  
 Andronicus, son of John II, 447



- Andronicus, son of John II's brother  
Isaac I, 487
- Andronicus, son of Alexius I, 454
- Andronicus, son of Michael VIII, 617
- Andronicus Cantacuzene, third son of John VI,  
663, 671
- Andros, 461
- Anemas, Tower of, 683
- Angeli dynasty, 517, 562
- Angelo Acciajuoli, Bishop of Patras, 677
- Angelo Lomellino, 'podesta' of Galata, 726
- Angelo, son of Marco Sanudo, 571
- Angevins, 608, 613, 615, 618, 620–1, 623,  
625, 628, 634, 637, 640, 645–6, 652–3, 656,  
658, 672
- Anglon, 109
- Ani, 336, 364, 370, 373, 375, 390, 458
- Anicetus, 16, 18
- Anicians, 66
- Ankara, 525, 535, 691, 698; battle, 704
- Anna Cantacuzene, 603
- Anna Comnena, daughter of Alexius I, 416,  
422, 428–9, 433, 454, 456, 473
- Anna Dalassena, mother of Alexius I, 386,  
401, 411–14, 442, 44
- Anna of Epirus, sister of Andronicus III, 637,  
640, 656
- Anna of Epirus, Regent, 637, 640
- Anna of Moscow, wife of John VIII,  
703, 705
- Anna, 195
- Anna, daughter of Eulogia, 621–2
- Anna, daughter of King Stephen II of  
Hungary, 609
- Anna, daughter of Michael VIII, 618
- Anna, sister of Basil II, wife of 'Grand Prince'  
Vladimir of Russia, 317, 335, 347
- Anna, sister of Emperor Basil of Trebizond,  
659–60
- Anna, wife of Stephen Lecapenus, 302
- Anne of Antioch, 504
- Anne of Hungary, 577, 619
- Anne, of Savoy, Empress, wife of Andronicus  
III, Regent, 649, 651, 655–6, 658–63, 667,  
669–70
- Anne/Anna of Nicaea, Angelina, Empress,  
560, 592–3
- Anseau of Cahieu, baron, regent, 568, 570,  
577, 594
- Anselm of Baggio, Bishop of Lucca, Pope  
Alexander II, 388
- Anselm of Canterbury, Archbishop, 435
- Anselm of Hareby, 487–8
- Anselm of Milan, Archbishop, 438–9
- Ansinon, 131
- Antalas, 110
- Antaradus, 339
- Anthemius of Tralles, 100
- Anthemius, Patriarch, 103, 104, 118
- Anthemius, Praefect, 42, 43, 44, 47, 48
- Anthemius, grandson of the Praefect and  
Emperor of the West, 63, 67, 68–9
- Anthony Cassimatas, 241
- Antonio I of Athens, illegitimate son of Nerio,  
692
- Antonio II of Athens, brother of Duke Nerio II,  
714–15, 728
- Anthony III, 326
- Anthony III, Patriarch, 689
- Anthony of Syllaëum, Bishop, 237
- Anthony, 'Domestis of Schools', 219
- Anthony, Patriarch, 240, 249
- Anthony, Patriarch, 690–2, 695
- Anthusa, sister of Nicephorus, 218
- Antigoni, island of, 296
- Antigonus, 'Domestic of Scholae', 259–60,  
264
- Antioch, 8, 11, 13, 15, 16, 18, 19, 20, 21, 22,  
23, 25, 26, 28, 29, 30, 31, 35, 36, 41, 49, 54,  
65, 68, 70, 78, 79, 80, 81, 89, 90, 92, 93, 94,  
96, 97, 98, 105, 107, 121–2, 124, 134, 141,  
148, 156, 161–2, 212, 272, 322–3, 325,  
327–8, 337–8, 342, 361, 411, 418, 433–5,  
441, 447, 449, 451–2, 457, 461–2, 465, 468,  
470, 472, 475–6, 479, 484, 486, 494, 497,  
499, 500, 503, 506, 527, 532–3, 538, 563,  
566, 712, 714
- Antiocheia, 511
- Antiochenes, 3, 21, 22, 55, 187, 500, 513, 525
- Antioch-in-Pisidia, 193
- Antiochus, Bishop of Ptolemais/Acre, 40
- Antoine de Flamenc, Frankish 'bailli', 637
- Antonina, 103, 104, 105, 109, 112, 122
- Antonio Acciajuoli of Thebes, 699, 711
- Antonio da Massa, Franciscan 'Provincial', 707
- Antonio Diedo, 726
- Antonio Enrizzo, Venetian captain, 723
- Antonius, Bishop of Ephesus, 39
- Antony Cauleas, 282, 285
- Apamea (Syria), 95, 107, 125, 148, 341, 445
- Apelles, 53
- Apennines, 104, 105, 115, 116
- Aphusia island, 236
- Apion, 93

- Apocaucus of Naupactus, Bishop, 566, 569  
 Apocaucus of Peloponnese, 'strategus', 339  
 Apollinaris, 124  
 Apollo, 22  
 Apollonaris, 114  
 Apollonia, 238, 426  
 Apros, Rhaedestus, 639  
 Apsimar, Emperor, 'drungarius' (Tiberius III), 187  
 Apathodocetism, 121  
 Apulia/Apulians, 89, 117, 304, 349, 361, 364, 368–9, 374, 377, 387, 445, 461–4, 465, 468, 470, 472, 474–5, 479, 483, 490–1, 495, 528–9, 532, 542, 606  
 Aqsonqor il-Bursuqi, governor of Mosul, 452, 461–2  
 Aqsonqor, governor of Aleppo, 427  
 Aqueduct of Valens, Constantinople, 190, 213  
 Aquileia, 14, 17, 21, 32, 52, 62  
 Aquino, 472  
 Aquitaine, 49, 89  
 Arab, brother of Sultan Mas'ud, 461–2  
 Arabissus, 157  
 Arabs, 53, 62, 85, 87, 95, 98, 101, 117, 120–1, 124, 129, 149, 158–64, 166, 202, 301, 304–6, 314–16, 330, 341, 357–8, 362–3, 387, 389, 396, 400, 420, 424–5, 457, 468  
 Aragon/Aragonese, 619, 622–3, 626, 628, 631, 639, 642, 645, 667–8, 700, 710, 724  
 Aras valley, 190  
 Araxes, River, 153  
 Arazas/Aras valley, 458  
 Arbazacius, 42  
 Arbetio, 21, 23  
 Arcadia, 48, 602  
 Arcadiopolis, 53, 57, 216, 237, 242, 324  
 Arcadius, Emperor, 30, 32, 33, 35, 36, 37, 38, 39, 40, 41, 43–4  
 Archaeopolis, 114  
 Archelaus, 96  
 Archesh, 216  
 Ardaburius, 50, 51, 52, 62, 64, 68  
 Ardarc, 61, 62  
 Ardas, 259  
 Ardashir II of Persia, 29  
 Ardashir III of Persia, 157–8  
 Ardoin of Ivrea, 344  
 Arduin, 365  
 Arenula, 350  
 Areobindus, 88, 90, 110, 111  
 Arethas, King, 125  
 Arezzo, 383, 612  
 Argentina Spinola, daughter of Genoese joint 'Captain of People', 640  
 Arghun, 'Ilkhan', Mongol ruler, 623–5, 633  
 Argobastes, 32, 33, 34  
 Argos, 36, 541, 596, 690–2, 695  
 Argyros, 'Catepan', son of rebel Melos, 363, 366–9, 376–80, 383  
 Argyrus Caralzus, 425  
 Ariadne, Empress, 67, 77, 78, 82, 83, 84, 91  
 Arians/Arianism, 8, 11, 12, 13, 14, 16, 17, 18, 19, 20, 21, 22, 23, 25, 26, 28, 29, 31, 37, 38, 41, 64, 68, 91, 94, 96, 97  
 Aricpert, 188  
 Ariebas the Armenian, 415  
 Ariminium, 55, 105, 115  
 Arintheus, 23  
 Arioald, 154–5  
 Arius, 7–8, 11, 12  
 Arles, 6, 17, 46, 49, 63, 64, 66  
 Armatus, 70–1  
 Armenia/Armenians, 12, 13, 15, 22, 23, 24, 30–1, 42, 87, 88, 89, 97, 105, 109, 111, 113, 125, 127, 134, 139, 141, 182, 183, 186, 187, 256, 258, 281, 285, 293, 296, 300, 304–6, 321, 326, 337, 342, 349, 356, 370, 372, 375–6, 381, 390, 408, 411, 413, 458, 505, 507, 532–3, 554, 563, 566, 581  
 Armeniacon, 26, 188, 193, 202–3, 212–3, 215–16, 223–4, 234  
 Armeria, 99, 101–3, 630  
 Arnegisclus, general, 59  
 Arnold of Brescia, 489  
 Arnulf of Jerusalem, Patriarch, 455  
 Arnulf of Milan, Archbishop, 344  
 Arnulf, Patriarch, 456  
 Arnulf, ruler of Germany, 283  
 Arpad, King of Magyars, 282, 289  
 Arqa, 436, 447  
 Arran, 458  
 Arretion, general, 162  
 Arsaber the 'Patrician', 'Quaestor', 232  
 Arsaces III, 16, 24  
 Arsaces, plotter against Justinian, 113  
 Arsacid, royal line, 111  
 Arsacius, 42  
 Arsaphius, 'Spatharius', 234  
 Arsenius, Autoreianus, Patriarch, 560, 588, 590, 592–3, 595–7, 601–5, 622  
 Arsinoe, 165  
 Arslan III of Iraq, Seljuk Sultan, 510  
 Arslan Shah, nephew of Kilij Arslan, 525  
 Arsuf, 437

- Arsuf, battle of, 530  
 Arta, 553, 557–8, 565, 572, 590, 594, 628, 637,  
 640, 652, 657, 672, 712, 721  
 Artabanes, 111, 113, 117  
 Artah, 500  
 Artavasdus, 'Heteriarch', 265  
 Artavasdus, 'strategus' of Armeniacon,  
 'Count' of Opsicion, 195, 197–8, 202–3  
 Artemius, 'protoascretis', 194  
 Artemius, Praeect of Egypt, 21  
 Artouch, general, 406  
 Arxamoun, 139  
 Arzanene, 127, 130  
 Arzn, Emir of, 256  
 Asad, 244  
 Ascalon, 329, 437, 504, 530  
 Ascanian Lake, 432  
 Asclettin, nephew of Count Rainulf of  
 Aversa, 311  
 Ascoli, 369  
 Asen, 522–3, 525, 535  
 Ashot 'the Great' of Iberia, King, 245  
 Ashot Artsruni of Vaspurakan, 256, 258  
 Ashot II of Armenia, 182  
 Ashot II of Iberia, 297, 300, 304, 313  
 Ashot III of Armenia, 312, 317, 330  
 Ashot III the Bagratid, 205  
 Ashot IV, son of King Gagik, co-ruler of  
 Armenia, 352, 363  
 Ashot of Armenia (C10th), King, son of  
 Sembat, 291  
 Ashot of Tarawn, King, 275, 279, 281  
 Ashot of Taron, governor of Dyrrachium, 343  
 Ashot the Bagratid, 231, 249, 262  
 Ashot-Isaac, son of Harmazasp, 326  
 Asia Minor, 149, 245, 322, 359, 368, 382, 426,  
 448, 547, 637  
 Asia, 187, 643  
 Askidas, 115  
 Aspar, 52, 54, 55, 60, 62, 63, 64, 65, 67, 68  
 Asparuch, 180, 189  
 As-Salih of Damascus, 509, 511, 515  
 Assyria, 107  
 Asterius, 37  
 Atenulf of Capua, 284, 293  
 Atenulf of Monte Cassino, abbot, 353  
 Atenulf, brother of Prince of Benevento, 366  
 Athalaric, 97, 102, 162  
 Athanagild, 115–16, 123  
 Athananaric, 'king', 24, 26, 28  
 Athanasius II of Antioch, Patriarch, 497, 500  
 Athanasius II of Alexandria, Patriarch, 82  
 Athanasius of Patras, Bishop, 230  
 Athanasius of Smederevo, Bishop, George  
 Brankovic's envoy to Adrianople, 717  
 Athanasius, Senator, 118  
 Athanasius, (C7th), 151–2  
 Athanasius, Bishop of Alexandria, 8, 11, 12,  
 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 21, 22, 23, 25, 118  
 Athanasius, Patriarch of Alexandria, 627,  
 629–30  
 Athanasius, Patriarch of Antioch, 158  
 Athanasius, Patriarch of Antioch  
 (C12th), 506  
 Athanasius, Patriarch (1290s), 636–9,  
 642–3  
 Athanasius/Anastasius, 140  
 Athaulf, 45, 46, 47, 48  
 Athena, 7; statue of, 545  
 Athenais, Empress (Endocia, q.v.), 50  
 Athenodorus, 85  
 Athens, Duke of, 732  
 Athens/Athenians, 7, 18, 36, 50, 77, 80, 98,  
 174, 219, 226, 232, 280, 351, 482, 547,  
 557, 686, 688, 691, 693, 699, 711, 717,  
 728–30  
 Athonite, 657  
 Athrib, battle of, 141  
 Atmanos, abbot of Armenian monastery,  
 Philippopolis, 504  
 Atmanus, 505  
 Atroa, 223  
 Atropatene, 109, 125, 126, 134, 156  
 Attaleia, 200, 223, 242, 287, 435, 438, 448, 457,  
 471, 475, 482, 559, 577  
 Attalus, Emperor, 45, 46  
 Attica, 36, 304, 339, 546, 686, 688, 693, 717  
 Atticus, Patriarch, 42, 47, 50, 52  
 Attila the Hun, 55, 57–62, 70  
 Atziz, 'Khwarezm Shah', 487, 491  
 Aubrey of Grantmesnil, 435  
 Augusta, Syracuse, 625  
 Augusteum, 41  
 Augustine, Bishop of Hippo, 36  
 Augustine, St., 47, 54  
 Augustodonum, 16  
 Aurelian, 36  
 Austrasia, 131, 132–4  
 Authari, King, 131, 133, 134  
 Autoninus, 20  
 Autun, 18  
 Avarair, 63  
 Avars, 118, 119, 120, 121, 122, 126–37, 139,  
 149, 150

- Avellino, 465  
 Aventine Hill, Rome, 343  
 Aversa, 358, 361  
 Avezzano, 606  
 Avignon, 649, 656, 663, 671, 678, 698  
 Avitus, 64  
 Avlona, 418, 446, 483, 593, 611, 645  
 Axuch, 'Grand Domestic', 477  
 Axum, 124, 125  
 Aydin, 637–8; 'Emir of', 651, 704, 718, 722  
 Ayesha, 172, 179, 181  
 Ayyub, Kurdish general, 475  
 Ayyub, Zirid emirate's general, 390, 396  
 Ayyubids, 574, 581  
 Azaz, 461  
 Azerbaijan, 'Emir' of, 341  
 Azerbaijan, 133, 154, 182, 246, 283, 573, 582  
 Az-Zahir of Aleppo, son of Saladin, 532, 538–9
- Baalbek, 328, 475  
 Baanes, 161, 188  
 Babak, 246, 249  
 Babylon, citadel of Memphis, 164–5  
 Bactria, 163  
 Badansius, 'Patrician', 203  
 Baduarius, 98, 125–7  
 Baetica (Spain), 48, 51  
 Bagawan, 217  
 Baghdad, 216, 233, 235–6, 239, 245, 248, 263, 282, 286–7, 289, 301–2, 305–7, 309, 330–1, 334, 345, 352, 355, 359, 384, 387, 402, 426, 446, 449, 471, 507  
 Baghras, 476, 533  
 Bagrae, 308  
 Bagrat I of Iberia, 245, 256, 275  
 Bagrat II of Iberia, King, 'the Simple', co-ruler, 314, 317, 327, 336, 338  
 Bagrat III of Iberia, later I of Georgia, 331, 338, 342, 346–8  
 Bagrat IV of Georgia, King, 356, 359–60, 374, 378, 386, 391, 402  
 Bagrat, son of King George I, 356  
 Bagratid dynasty, 348, 370  
 Bagratids, 193, 216, 256, 258  
 Bagravene, 216  
 Baha al-Daula, Buwayhid ruler of Baghdad, 336, 340, 347  
 Bahrain, 286  
 Bahram Chobin, Persian usurper, 133–4  
 Bahram, 'Great King', 50, 56  
 Baian, 'Khan', 212  
 Baibert, battle of, 381  
 Baichu, Mongol leader, 581  
 Baiju, 590  
 Bajezid, 723  
 Bajezid, Ottoman Sultan, 689–90, 691–9  
 Bajkam, chief minister of Baghdad, 305–6  
 Bakhtiyar the Buwayhid, 321, 327, 330  
 Balak, lord of Khanzit, nephew of Ilghazi, 459–60  
 Balanae, 334  
 Balathistes, forest of, 348  
 Balduk of Samosta, 433  
 Baldwin II, Latin Emperor, 564, 571, 573, 576–9, 580, 582–3, 585, 594–6, 601, 605–6  
 Baldwin II of Le Bourg, Prince of Edessa, King of Jerusalem, 430–1, 433–4, 437–8, 441–3, 445–6, 448, 452, 455, 457–60, 461–2, 465–6, 478  
 Baldwin III, King of Jerusalem, 484, 486, 493, 495, 497, 504  
 Baldwin IV, 509, 511–12 519  
 Baldwin V, son of Baldwin IV's sister Sibylla, 512, 519, 522  
 Baldwin of Antioch, 511  
 Baldwin of Flanders, 544–7  
 Baldwin of Germanicea, 470  
 Baldwin, Count of Flanders, 540  
 Baldwin, Norman commander, 520  
 Baldwin, son of Constance, daughter of Roger II of Sicily, 498  
 Balearics, 117  
 Balian of Ibelin, 511, 524, 533  
 Balkan/Balkans, 15, 16, 21, 29, 31, 50, 55, 57, 67, 81, 91, 95, 98, 99, 106, 127, 129, 131–2, 134–8, 180, 232, 303–4, 350, 360, 362, 372, 375, 386, 390–1, 396, 399, 408, 410, 420–1, 423, 438, 453, 486, 522, 525, 533, 541, 693–4, 715, 717  
 Balkh, 285  
 Baltaoglu, admiral, 725  
 Baltic, 440  
 Bapheus, Byzantium, 636  
 Barancs, 463–4  
 Barbarians, 91  
 Barbatio, 'Master of Soldiers', 19  
 Barca, Empress, wife of Leo V, 237, 240  
 Bardanes Turcus, 229–30, 237  
 Bardanes, Bishop of Corfu, 573  
 Bardas 'curopalatus', 260  
 Bardas Phocas, 'Domestic of Scholae', 308, 311–13, 318, 323–6, 330–5  
 Bardas Poilas, governor, 297

- Bardas Sclerus, brother-in-law of John Tzimisces, 324–5, 328–9, 334–6, 365
- Bardas Xiphilinus, 395
- Bardas, ‘Caesar’, uncle of Michael III, 240, 251, 258–61, 264–5
- Bardas, ex-‘strategos’ of Armeniacon, 217
- Bardziberd castle, 412
- Bargus, 36
- Bari, 252, 273, 275, 332, 344, 347, 365, 367, 373, 388, 396–9, 423, 435, 467, 471, 489
- Barietta, 490
- Barjawan, regent to Caliph Al-Hakim, 343
- Barkiyaruq, Sultan, son of Sultan Malik Shah, 426–8, 435, 442
- Barlaam of Calabria, Greek theologian, 654, 656–8, 657–8, 661–2
- Barmecids, 229
- Bartholomew of Gassiliato, 490
- Bartholomew of Grosseto, Bishop, 615
- Bartolomea, daughter of Nerio Acciajuoi, 689, 693
- Bartolommeo Contarini, husband of Duchess Chiara, 728
- Basasiri, chief minister, 381, 384, 387
- Bashir, general, 252
- Basil ‘Scamandrenus’, 323
- Basil ‘the Bird’, 316
- Basil Apocapes, 378, 390, 408, 416
- Basil Argyrus, ‘Catepan’, brother of Emperor Romanus III, 347, 350
- Basil Boiannes, ‘catepan’, 351–2, 354–5, 365–6
- Basil Camaterus, Praefect, 505
- Basil Camaterus, brother of Euphrosyne, 534
- Basil Camaterus, Patriarch, 521
- Basil Ducas Camaterus, ‘Logothete of Drome’, Patriarch, 517
- Basil I, the Macedonian, Emperor, 249, 256, 258–61, 263, 265, 272–4, 275–8
- Basil II, ‘porphyrogenitus’, Emperor, 314, 317, 328, 330, 334, 341–5, 357, 364, 691
- Basil of Antioch, Patriarch, 64
- Basil of Caesarea, 313
- Basil of Jerusalem, Patriarch, 248
- Basil Pediatides, 503
- Basil Pesarites, governor of Corfu, 561
- Basil Petinus, ‘protospatharius’, 308
- Basil Sclerus, 355
- Basil the ‘paracoemomenus’, eunuch, son of Romanus I, 309, 314–15, 318, 325, 328, 334, 336
- Basil the Bulgarian, ‘Duke’ of Mesopotamia, 399
- Basil Theodorocanus, ‘Grand Drungharius’, 369
- Basil Tzintiloucas, 489
- Basil Vatatzes, ‘Domestic of the West’, 531, 533
- Basil, ‘Syncellus’, 375
- Basil, Emperoe, 263, 265, 272–4
- Basil, Emperor of Trebizond, 653, 655, 657, 659
- Basil, ex-bishop of Reggio, 424
- Basil, leader of Bogomil ‘dualist’ sect, 453
- Basil, Patriarch, 326
- Basilacius, ‘prophetic’ hermit, 534
- Basilacius, 40, 400, 410
- Basilica Therna, 330
- Basilicianus, 265
- Basiliscus (Armatus’ son), 71
- Basiliscus, Emperor, 67, 70
- Basilius, ‘Count of the East’, 79, 89
- Basilius, Praefect (C5th), 79
- Basle, 711–12
- Basra, 188, 273, 297
- Batalas monastery, Bithynia, 505
- Battle of the Masts, 171
- Batu, leader of Mongol army, 578, 580–1, 584
- Bauto, 29, 35
- Baybars of Egypt, Sultan, 613
- Beatrice of Burgundy, 491
- Beatrice of Tuscany, Countess, 404
- Beatrice, daughter of Charles, Count of Anjou and Provence, 606, 610, 623, 626
- Beatrice, Queen, 484, 487
- Beatus of Venetia, Duke, 231–4
- Beaufort castle, 631
- Bebetziotes, 421
- Bec, 43
- Beder, battle of, 153
- Beirut, 100, 112, 162, 326, 328, 384, 436, 448–9, 497, 503–4, 524
- Beit-Nuba, Jerusalem, 530–1
- Bela II, 475, 485
- Bela III of Hungary, 455, 464, 466, 504, 508, 517, 521, 529, 533–4, 536
- Bela IV of Hungary, 575–6, 578, 593
- Bela, ‘Duke’, brother of Andrew, 373, 388
- Bela, uncle of Geza, 485, 498–500
- Belgrade, 111, 155, 487, 489, 498–9, 517, 529, 715, 717, 729
- Beliatoba, 417
- Belisarius, 97–113
- Benedetto Zaccaria, 655
- Benedetto, brother of Martino Zaccaria, Genoese lord, 651

- Benedict Gaetani, Cardianl, Pope Boniface VIII, 631
- Benedict I, Pope, 126, 128
- Benedict II, Pope, 181–2
- Benedict III, Pope, 258–9
- Benedict IV, Pope, 285, 287
- Benedict V, Pope, 318–19
- Benedict VI, Pope, 326–7
- Benedict VII, Pope, 327–8, 331, 333
- Benedict VIII, Pope, 347, 354
- Benedict IX, Pope, 360, 370–1, 373–4
- Benedict X, Pope, 384–5
- Benedict XI, Pope, 638
- Benedict XII, Pope, 655–6
- Benedict Zaccaria, co-Lord of Phocaea, 612, 619
- Benedict, Pope, 698
- Benenato, 541
- Benevento, 74, 124, 210, 220–1, 284, 325, 374–5, 377–8, 386, 403, 405, 408, 419, 462–3, 467, 471, 491, 604
- Benevento, Duke of, 209
- Benevento, Prince of, 366
- Benjamin, Patriarch, 160, 167
- Berat, 593, 611, 617–18, 655–6
- Berbers, 101, 106, 112, 197
- Berbits Pass, 234
- Berengar II of Friuli, 284–6, 288, 293, 296, 298
- Berengar II of Ivrea, 308, 311
- Berengaria of Navarre, fiancée of Richard I of England, 529
- Berenguer d'Enteca, 'Grand Duke', 638–9, 641
- Berenguer de Estanol, Regent, 644
- Berenguer de Rocafort, Catalan leader, 641–2
- Bernado Pignateli, Pope III, 479
- Bernard, Patriarch, 457
- Berroea (Veria), 18, 19, 107, 158, 220, 335, 337, 343
- Berroia, 660, 662, 666
- Bertha of Sulzbach, 475–6, 479, 481, 495
- Bertha, daughter of Hugh of Provence, 308
- Berthold of Kunsberg, general of Henry of Champagne, 533
- Bertrand of Tripoli, 450
- Bertrand of Tripoli, illegitimate son of Raymond of Toulouse, 447, 449–50
- Bertrand, Patriarch, 459
- Berytus (Beirut), 115
- Beser, general, 202
- Bessarion of Trebizond, Cardinal, titular Bishop of Nicaea, 708, 712–15, 733
- Bessas, 111, 117
- Beth Arabaye, 131
- Bethlehem, 8, 35, 45, 49, 71
- Biandrate, 569
- Biandrate, Count of, 439
- Birejek, 455
- Bishop of Caffa, 648
- Bishop of Patara, 105
- Bithynia, 13, 23, 41, 78, 152, 176, 195, 198, 205, 224, 241, 254, 306, 330, 335, 383, 399, 404, 406, 409–11, 413, 439, 451–2, 454, 511, 531, 536, 540, 553, 556, 559, 568, 584, 601, 604, 617, 636, 640, 649, 654, 662, 669, 700–1, 706
- Bitolia (Monastir), 348
- Biza'a, 473
- Bizye, 570, 585
- Bizye, Thrace, 171, 242
- Blachernae, Church of the Virgin at, 137, 147, 245, 253, 289, 669
- Blachernae Palace, 412, 417, 420, 431, 442, 492, 499, 507, 540, 544–5, 595, 618, 626, 633, 664, 666, 670, 683, 726
- Blachernae, Constantinople district, 71, 137, 155, 158, 190, 237, 241, 289, 365, 433, 439, 481, 516–17, 541, 544, 725, 726
- Black Forest, 21
- Black Sea, 7, 62, 85, 130, 132, 136, 192, 213, 238, 249, 262, 288, 294, 297, 306, 319, 324, 350, 352, 369, 441, 520, 540, 557, 595, 602, 676–7, 658, 667, 708, 718, 732
- Blackheath, England, 698
- Blarathus, River, 134
- Bleda, 55, 58
- Blois, Count of, 547
- Bocotia, 339
- Bodin of Zeta, 425
- Boeotia, 36, 688, 711, 718
- Boethius, 89, 94–5
- Bogomils, 475
- Bohemund I of Antioch, son of Robert Guiscard, 384, 414–16, 419, 422–3, 429–32
- Bohemians, 720
- Bohemund II, son of Bohemund I, 451, 458, 462, 464, 495
- Bohemund III of Antioch, 503, 506, 512, 514, 517, 523, 525, 532–3, 538–9, 541
- Bohemund IV, 541, 554, 556, 560, 566–7, 569, 574
- Bohemund V, 574
- Boleslav of Poland, 351
- Boleslav III of Poland, 481
- Bolkan of Zeta, 426–8, 444

- Bologna, 702  
 Bologna/Bononia, 110  
 Bolosu, chief of Magyars, 310  
 Bolsena, Lake, 102  
 Boniface I, Pope, 49, 50, 51, 52, 53  
 Boniface II, Pope, 99, 100  
 Boniface III, Pope, 140  
 Boniface IV, Pope, 141, 150  
 Boniface V, Pope, 151  
 Boniface VI, 283  
 Boniface VII, Pope, 327–8, 331, 333  
 Boniface VIII, Pope, 631, 634, 638  
 Boniface of Montferrat, Marquis, 522, 541, 542–3, 545–7, 553, 555–7  
 Boniface of Tuscany, Count, 374  
 Boniface, Count, 55  
 Boniface, Pope, 693, 695–7  
 Bononia (Bologna), 44, 45  
 Bonosus, ‘Count of Oriens’, 141, 147  
 Bonus, ‘Patrician’, 155  
 Boran, 158  
 Bordeaux, 622  
 Boril, cousin of John Asen, King of Bulgaria, 556, 558–9, 564  
 Borilus, Imperial adviser, 410–11, 413  
 Boris, ‘Khan’, son of Malamir, 256, 262–3, 280, 282  
 Boris, Czar, son of Czar Peter, 320, 322–3, 325, 329  
 Boris, son of ‘Grand Prince’ Vladimir of Russia, 347  
 Bosnia, 578, 689  
 Bosphorus, 5, 7, 115, 138, 161, 202–3, 214, 223, 225, 249, 251, 260, 288, 296, 335, 369, 380, 389, 399, 409, 411, 413, 430–1, 438, 442, 451, 507, 514, 516–17, 520, 523, 534, 536, 543, 546, 651, 658, 668, 695, 706, 718–19, 723–5  
 Botheric, 32–3  
 Boua Spata, Serb lord, 683  
 Boucoleon Harbour, 295, 507  
 Boucoleon Palace, Constantinople, 253, 294, 323, 413, 545–6, 595  
 Boudounitza, 547  
 Boulogne, Count of, 430  
 Bourbon, Count of, 482  
 Bovina, 377  
 Branicevo, 463, 481, 487, 489, 526  
 Branimir, 276  
 Brescia, 121  
 Brienne, Count of, 416  
 Brigetio, 26  
 Brindisi, 387–8, 391, 419, 431, 463–4, 490, 568–9, 623  
 Brindisi, Archbishop of, 566  
 Briso, 37  
 Britain/British, 6, 11, 14, 17, 30, 32, 42, 43  
 Bruno of Toul, Bishop, Pope Leo IX, 374  
 Brusa, 517, 546–7, 621, 639, 648–9, 688, 690–1, 701, 706, 718, 719, 723  
 Bryas, district near Constantinople, 249  
 Bryennius, general, 375, 380  
 Bryennius, Alexius Comnenus, 493  
 Buccelin, 115, 116, 117  
 Buccellion, 215  
 Buda, 676, 694, 717  
 Buffavento castle, 529  
 Bugha, general, 256, 258, 262, 264  
 Bukhara, 337  
 Buldaji, brother of Abul Qasim, 426  
 Bulgaria/Bulgarians, 216, 234, 237, 242, 254, 262, 273, 293, 294, 311, 320, 323–4, 328, 334–5, 336, 340, 343, 346–8, 351, 429, 522–3, 525, 528, 533, 535, 572, 576–7, 593, 608, 610, 615, 641, 658, 675–6, 677–8, 689, 692, 703, 718  
 Bulgaria, Archbishop of, 673  
 Bulgarophygon, 424  
 Bulgars, 78, 83, 85, 87, 90, 91, 97, 105–6, 119, 151, 180, 189, 216, 322, 532, 668  
 Bulla, 101  
 Buqala (Beka’a) valley, 475  
 Burgundy/Burgundians, 61, 69, 105–6, 570  
 Buri, son of Toghtekin, 446, 463, 467  
 Bursa, 722  
 Bursuq, 454, 456, 478  
 Bursuq, general of Turkish Nicaea, 420  
 Bursuq, governor, 454, 456  
 Burtzes, 107  
 Burtzes, lieutenant, ‘duke’ of Antioch, 328–30, 337–8  
 Busiris, battle of, 206  
 Busr the Arab, 169, 175  
 Butera, 422, 490  
 Butrinto, 41, 611  
 Butumites, general, 417, 419, 426, 430, 432, 436, 441, 449–50  
 Buwaib, battle of, 161  
 Buwayhids, 345, 352  
 Buzan, Turkish general, 421  
 Buzes, 105  
 Byblos, 328  
 Byzantium, 7  
 Byzas, 7

- Caballa, 242, 288  
 Cabasilas, 446, 688  
 Cadalus of Parma, Pope Honorius II, 388  
 Caesarea (Palestine), 8, 12, 80, 118, 153, 181, 198, 315, 318, 328–30, 395, 581, 698  
 Caesarea-in-Cappadocia, 141, 168, 509, 533, 581; Bishop of, 25, 411  
 Caesarius, 38, 150  
 Caffa, Crimea, 709  
 Cafforio, Genoese merchant, 535  
 Cairo (Qahira), 326, 345, 489, 504  
 Calabria, 244, 374, 382–3, 385, 387, 389, 400, 463, 475, 623  
 Calais, 697  
 Calandrio, 80–1  
 Caleb/Elesboas, King of Abyssinia/Axum, 96  
 Caliphate, 172  
 Callinicum, 32, 99, 108, 123, 137, 163  
 Callinicus of Hieropolis, 177  
 Callinicus, chamberlain, 122, 139  
 Callinicus, Patriarch, 186, 190  
 Calliopas, charioteer, 147  
 Callistus II, Pope, 457, 460–1  
 Callistus, 'Heyychast' Athonite monk, Patriarch, 665–6, 668–9, 671  
 Callistus, Patriarch, 673, 675  
 Callistus II, Patriarch, 695  
 Calocaerus, 12  
 Calocyras, governor of Cherson, 320–3  
 Calomodius, rich banker, 539  
 Calonymus, 147  
 Calospites, Greek Bishop of Larissa, 560  
 Calothetus, 575  
 Caltabelotta, 534  
 Calycadnus, River, 527  
 Camacha, 198, 209, 213, 224, 239, 242, 256  
 Campania, 71, 117, 124, 253–4, 320, 533, 572, 604  
 Campanus, conspirator, 584  
 Campus Mauriacus, battle of, 61, 63  
 Camtyzes, 427, 446  
 Camurla, Serbia, 703  
 Camytzes, 541  
 Candich, 119  
 Candidian, Count, 54  
 Canfranc, treaty of 626  
 Cannae, 351  
 Canosa, 416  
 Canterbury, 698  
 Capetra, battle of, 375  
 Cappadocia, 16, 28, 29, 37, 57, 71, 78, 91, 148, 155, 171, 217, 227, 231, 245–6, 251–2, 309, 329, 353, 370, 382, 395–6, 698  
 Capua, 92, 111, 325, 354–5, 362, 372, 420, 434–5, 471, 490  
 Caralis, Lake, 476, 480  
 Carcasan, 112  
 Caria, 108, 171, 194, 532, 536, 613, 637  
 Carianus, 259  
 Carinthia, Duke of, 593–4  
 Carinus, 5, 97  
 Carlo Tocco of Cephallonia, 692  
 Carlo II Tocco, 707–10, 712, 721  
 Carloman of Bavaria, 276  
 Carloman, son of King Pepin, 213  
 Carmalus, 286  
 Carrbeas, 254, 286  
 Cartagena, 116, 117, 149  
 Carthage/Carthaginians, 26, 45, 47, 49, 53, 55, 57, 63, 67, 101–4, 112, 147, 151, 166, 187  
 Carus, 297  
 Carykes, 426  
 Casia, 245  
 Caspax, governor of Smyrna, 432  
 Caspian Sea, 212  
 Cassandreia, 107, 642, 641  
 Castamona, 439, 462, 465–7, 469  
 Castamonites, 442  
 Castel St. Angelo, 302, 327, 389  
 Castinus, 51, 52  
 Castoria, 350, 415–16, 430, 587, 593–4, 654  
 Castrioti, John (Scanderbeg), 717, 720, 722  
 Catalacon Cecaumenus, 373, 375, 382, 384  
 Catacylas, 241–2  
 Catalan/Catalans, 637–44, 664, 670, 675, 682, 686, 689, 721  
 Catania, 103, 243, 400, 635  
 Catasyrtae, 294, 296  
 Caterina della Carceri, wife of William of Villehardouin, 589  
 Cathara, 225  
 Catherine Gattilusio of Lesbos, wife of Constantine XI, 715–16  
 Catherine (II) of Courtenay and Taranto, 652, 656–7, 672–3  
 Catherine of Courtenay, 'Latin Empress', 626, 630–1, 635, 641, 644, 656–7, 672–3  
 Catherine, daughter of Centurione Zaccaria, 710  
 Catholics, 77, 81, 84  
 Caucasia, 212  
 Caucasus, 35, 37, 44, 83, 91, 125, 170, 185, 197, 200, 251, 352, 459, 523



- Cauleus monastery, 682  
 Cecaumenas 'strategus' of Hellas, 331, 332  
 Cecaumenus, 446  
 Cecilia of France, wife of Tancred and Pons, 444, 451  
 Celbianum, 450  
 Celer, 88, 90, 91, 93  
 Celestine, Pope, 51, 52, 53, 54, 55  
 Celestine II, Pope, 478, 580  
 Celestine III, Pope, 529, 531, 537  
 Celestine IV, Pope, 630  
 Celestine V, Pope, 631  
 Cellas Vatari, 104  
 Cellia, 453  
 Celsus, 21  
 Celtzene, 397  
 Cenchrae, 704  
 Cenchrae port, 730  
 Cencio Savelli, Cardinal, Pope Honorius III, 563  
 Censu Frangipani, 278  
 Centumcellae, 257  
 Centurione Zaccaria, 'bailli', lord of Chalandritza, 677, 682, 699, 707, 710, 728  
 Cephallonia, 233, 418, 436, 462, 637, 721  
 Cephaloedion, 259  
 Cephissus, Athens, battle of, 643  
 Cepoy, 642  
 Ceprano, 412, 478  
 Cerami, 390  
 Cerasun, 540  
 Cerasus, Trebizond, 635  
 Ceylon, 96  
 Chagri Beg, 355  
 Chalbybia, Turcoman emir of, 673  
 Chalcedon/Chalcedonian, 14, 21, 24, 38, 40, 61, 62, 68, 8, 84, 89, 93, 104, 108, 139, 149–50, 155, 165, 169, 176, 193, 199, 208, 212, 389, 431, 481, 516, 543, 570, 576; battle of, 23  
 Chalcidice peninsula, 107, 641, 642  
 Chalcis, 705  
 Chalcis/Qinnasrin, 161  
 Chalcocondylas, 'archon', father of historian Laonicus Chalcocondylas, 711  
 Chaldia, 240–1, 249  
 Chandax, 291, 315–16  
 Chandrenus, leader of Byzantine army, 642  
 Charax, 512  
 Charbandan, Mongol prince, 641  
 Chariopolis, 421, 424; battle of, 375  
 Charisius Gate, Constantinople, 413, 685, 690  
 Chariton Eugeniotēs, Patriarch, 512–13  
 Charles 'the Fat' of Swabia, 277, 280  
 Charles III of Naples, 687  
 Charles III, 'the Bald' of France, Emperor, uncle of Louis II, 252, 275–6, 278  
 Charles Martel, 'Major of the Palace', 202  
 Charles II of Salerno, King of Naples and Sicily, 622–3, 626–7, 628–30  
 Charles of Valois, King of Sicily, brother of Philip IV France, 635, 641  
 Charles VI of France, 695–8  
 Charles VIII of France, King, 733  
 Charles, Count of Anjou and Provence, King of Sicily, 602–23  
 Charles/Charlemagne, son of King Pepin, 213, 215, 221–2, 226–8, 231, 234–7, 298  
 Charsianon, 246, 251–2, 290  
 Charzane, 414  
 Chataturius, 'Duke' of Antioch, 401–3  
 Chateaurand, 699  
 Chele, Black Sea, 520  
 Chernigov, 354, 380  
 Cherris, 80, 81  
 Cherson (Crimea), 11, 58, 107, 98, 119, 127, 171–2, 186, 190, 192, 217, 251, 322, 334–5, 428, 450  
 Chersonites, 189  
 Chiara Zorzi, widow of Nerio II, regent of Athens, 722, 728  
 Chilandari monastery, 538, 563  
 Childebert, King, 131, 133–4  
 China/Chinese, 116, 207  
 Chinardo, Michael VIII's admiral, 604–5  
 Chioggia, 686  
 Chios, 291, 325, 330, 422–3, 460, 507–8, 606, 628, 638, 655, 662, 665, 671, 684, 724–5, 726  
 Chirovachia, 425  
 Chliat, 399–400  
 Chloumitza, 728  
 Choereas, 242  
 Choerosphactes, 287  
 Cholazene, 347  
 Chomatianus of Ochrid, Archbishop, 566, 569, 573  
 Chonae, 398, 512  
 Chonarian, battle of, 260  
 Chora, monastery of, 148  
 Chormaqan, 573, 581  
 Chosroes I 'Anushirvan', 'Great King', 99, 101, 106, 107, 108–110, 112, 113, 115, 118–20, 128  
 Chosroes II, 133–4, 138, 153–6

- Chosroes III, 158  
 Chosroes IV, 159  
 Chosroes V, 159  
 Christians, 95, 96, 97, 98  
 Christodulus, 460  
 Christopher Lecapenus, co-emperor, eldest son of Romanus I, 296, 302, 307, 309  
 Christopher of Alexandria, Patriarch, 248  
 Christopher of Myra, Bishop, 501  
 Christopher, Bishop of Ancyra, 573  
 Christopher, Kilij Arslan's Greek chancellor, 497  
 Christopher, priest, Pope, 287  
 Christopher, son-in-law of Basil I, 273  
 Christophorus, son of Constantine Vand Eudocia, 208, 213  
 Christopolis, 664  
 Chrysaphius, chamberlain, 57, 58, 59, 60  
 Chrysobellum, 278  
 Chrysochir, 273  
 Chrysoloras, 698, 701–4  
 Chrysopolis, 7, 138, 155, 176, 195, 203, 219, 294, 318, 334, 380, 383, 402, 409, 411, 543; battle of, 335, 543, 651, 657, 663, 684, 703 monastery, 265  
 Chrysostom, John, 36–43, 49, 56  
 Cibossa, 17, 180  
 Cibotus, 426, 430, 555  
 Cibirrhæots, 200, 223, 242  
 Cilician Gates, 218, 230, 233, 246  
 Cilicia, 18, 35, 108, 149, 153, 161, 165, 170, 177, 182, 210, 215, 223, 230, 252, 254, 257, 276, 278, 287, 305, 309, 316–17, 319, 322, 401–2, 411–12, 414, 418, 433, 435, 441–3, 447, 474–5, 470–1, 473, 474–7, 482, 485, 493, 498, 500, 502–3, 506, 508, 527, 570  
 Cilida, 21  
 Cillium, 110  
 Cimbalongos, 348  
 Circessium, 134, 163  
 Circus Maximus, 19  
 Ciriacus, 717  
 Cirta, 53  
 Cius, 426  
 Civitate, 377; battle of 377  
 Civitavecchia, 116, 257  
 Clarenza, Morea, 645, 709  
 Classis, Ravenna, 128  
 Claudiopolis, 84, 513  
 Claudius Mamertinus, 21  
 Clazomenae, 422  
 Clement II, Pope, 371  
 Clement III, Pope, 524, 529  
 Clement IV, Pope, 603, 606–7  
 Clement V, Pope, 639, 641  
 Clement VI, Pope, 660, 665  
 Clement, anti-Pope, 421–2  
 Cleope Mathesta, daughter of Count of Rimini, 706  
 Cleph, 126  
 Clovis the Frank, 89  
 Cluniacs of Dijon, 354  
 Cluny, France, 457  
 Coelestius, heretic, 47, 49  
 Cologne, 18  
 Coloman, governor of Cilicia, 498, 500, 503, 506  
 Coloman, King of Hungary, 428, 442, 455  
 Colonea, 170, 180, 306, 384, 398–9, 442, 571  
 Colonna, Cardinal, Regent, 564–5  
 Colossi, 529  
 Comentiulus, general, 98, 131, 132, 136–8, 147  
 Comito, 97  
 Commachio, 233  
 Conan of Bethune, Regent, 540, 543, 563, 565  
 Conon, 108, 109  
 Conon, ex-bishop, 84  
 Conon, Pope, 183  
 Conrad Capece, Manfred's ex-governor, 606  
 Conrad II, Emperor, 362  
 Conrad III, Emperor, 475, 479–86  
 Conrad of Hildesheim, 536  
 Conrad of Montferrat, King of Jerusalem, 522–5, 528–30, 558  
 Conrad, Frederick's envoy, 508  
 Conrad IV, son of Emperor Frederick II, 586, 588, 592, 606  
 Conradin, son of King Conrad, 592, 606  
 Consentia, 46  
 Constance of Antioch, 486–7  
 Constance of Hohenstaufen, 596  
 Constance, Council of, 704  
 Constance, aunt of William II of Sicily, Regent, 521, 527–9, 531, 534, 537–8  
 Constance, daughter of Alice, wife of Bohemund II, 469, 476  
 Constance, daughter of King Philip I, 444  
 Constance, daughter of Manfred, 619  
 Constance, daughter of Roger II of Sicily, 488, 495, 498, 518  
 Constance, illegitimate daughter of Emperor Frederick II, 582  
 Constans I, 6, 11, 14, 16, 45, 46  
 Constans II, 158, 165, 166, 168–75

- Constantia, 7, 16, 26  
 Constantina, 101, 130, 132, 158  
 Constantina, ex-empress, 140  
 Constantine Palaeologus, 601, 603  
 Constantine (Cyril) of Thessalonica, 260  
 Constantine 'the Paphlagonian', brother of Michael IV, 362, 368  
 Constantine Angelus Ducas, 'Despot' of Naupactus, 566, 572–3  
 Constantine Angelus, 488  
 Constantine Argyrus, 359  
 Constantine Arianites, Duke of Adrianople, 372, 375  
 Constantine Boilas, 298  
 Constantine Cabasilas, 367  
 Constantine Caratenus, 357  
 Constantine Catepanus, 368  
 Constantine Chanaron, governor of Elbasan, 590  
 Constantine Chrysolalus, 475  
 Constantine Contomytes, 'Strategus', 252  
 Constantine Dalassenus, 'Strategus' of Thessalonica, 350, 359–61  
 Constantine Dalassenus, Comnene general, 423, 425  
 Constantine Dejanovic, 672  
 Constantine Diogenes, 349–50  
 Constantine Dragas, father-in-law of Manuel II, 689, 693–4  
 Constantine Ducas Angelus, 532  
 Constantine Ducas, 'Strategus', son of Andronicus Ducas, 286, 290, 292  
 Constantine Ducas, son of Michael VII, 405, 410, 422, 427  
 Constantine Ducas, 302  
 Constantine Euphorbenus, governor of Cyprus, 426  
 Constantine Gabras, 450, 452, 462, 465  
 Constantine Gongylas, 311  
 Constantine Humbertopulus, 412  
 Constantine I, 'the Great', Emperor, 5, 6, 7, 11, 12, 13, 16  
 Constantine II, Emperor, 6, 11, 14, 15  
 Constantine II of Abasgia, 293  
 Constantine III (East), 148, 163, 165  
 Constantine III (West), 43, 44, 45, 46  
 Constantine IV, Emperor, 170, 174–6  
 Constantine IV, Chliarenus, Patriarch, 488  
 Constantine V, Emperor, 196–7, 201–2, 217, 208, 224, 226, 236–8, 241, 253  
 Constantine VI, Emperor, 214, 217–19, 221–6, 230, 233  
 Constantine VII, Emperor, 292–3, 295, 305, 307–10, 314–15  
 Constantine VIII, co-emperor, son of Romanus II and Theophano, 316, 328, 331–2, 335, 338, 343, 355–6  
 Constantine IX, Emperor, 368–70, 372, 375, 377, 380–1  
 Constantine X Ducas, Emperor, 387–8, 391, 395  
 Constantine XI, Emperor, 700, 708–10, 711, 715, 716, 719–21, 724–5, 726  
 Constantine Lardys, 138  
 Constantine Lichudes, Patriarch, chief minister, 365, 369, 375  
 Constantine Macrodocas, 518–19  
 Constantine Melissenus of Thessaly, 578, 587  
 Constantine Mesopotamites, Archbishop of Thessalonica, 536, 569  
 Constantine Monomachus, 365, 368  
 Constantine of Corfu, Bishop, 501, 505  
 Constantine of Lampron, 'Constable', 564, 566, 569  
 Constantine of Manalali, 170, 180  
 Constantine of Neopatras, 637  
 Constantine of Rhodes, secretary, 299  
 Constantine of Syllaenum, Patriarch, 208  
 Constantine Opus, 362  
 Constantine Pacurianus, 412  
 Constantine Paleologus, 560  
 Constantine Philangopoulos, 540  
 Constantine Phocus, 312  
 Constantine Podopagurus, 213  
 Constantine (Michael) Psellus, 368–9, 371, 383, 385–7, 390  
 Constantine Rhales Palaeologus, 697, 700  
 Constantine Silvanus, 180  
 Constantine Sudes of Sicily, 243  
 Constantine Tarchaneiotis, John VI's commissioner, 664–5, 667–8  
 Constantine Taticius, 525  
 Constantine Tichomir, 595, 601–2, 607–8, 614  
 Constantine Tornices, 589  
 Constantine Tornicius, 'Logothete of Drome', 525  
 Constantine Tripsychus, 'Heteriarch', 517  
 Constantine, 'Domestic' of 'Excubitors', 218  
 Constantine, 174, 176  
 Constantine, Archbishop, 569–70  
 Constantine, Bishop of Nacolea, 198  
 Constantine, brother of Andronicus II, 629  
 Constantine, brother of Michael IV, 362  
 Constantine, brother of Theodore Lascaris, 553, 562

- Constantine, commander, 129
- Constantine, eunuch, 289
- Constantine, illegitimate son of Andrew Palaeologus, 733
- Constantine, Patriarch, 177, 179
- Constantine, Pope, 194
- Constantine, Anti-Pope, 213–16
- Constantine, Regent, 567
- Constantine, second son of Romanus Lecapenus, 298
- Constantine, son of Basil I, 259, 276
- Constantine, son of John ‘the Bastard’, ruler of Thessaly, 625
- Constantine, son of Leo the Armenian, 472
- Constantine, son of Leo VI and Zoe Carbonopsina, 288–9
- Constantine, son of Michael VIII, 616
- Constantine, son of Theodore Lascaris, 567
- Constantine, son of Theophilus and Theodora, 247–8
- Constantine/Cyril, St., 271
- Constantine Tichomir, King of Bulgaria, 591
- Constantinian, ‘Count of Stable, 103
- Constantinople, 5, 7, 12–16, 20, 21–3, 27–30, 32, 35, 36–40, 42–4, 47, 50–1, 55–6, 59–62, 65–8, 70–1, 77–8, 81–5, 90–6, 98–9, 101, 103–6, 108–12, 114–19, 121, 123, 125–6, 128–31, 133, 136, 138–9, 147–8, 157, 161, 176, 187, 202–3, 205, 237, 241, 262, 272, 277, 279, 293, 302, 304, 307–10, 312, 315–17, 320–1, 324–5, 328, 334, 341, 350, 355, 359, 371, 378, 386, 391, 409–10, 420, 442, 449, 451, 457, 467, 476, 487, 492, 497, 507–10, 520–1, 530–1, 543, 546, 570, 573, 576, 585, 594, 607, 622, 631–2, 636–7, 641, 648, 651, 662–3, 669, 674–5, 684, 696, 702, 712, 716, 721, 726; ‘Camilas’ apartment, 248; Church of St. Irene, 200; ‘Flacillianae’ Palace 100; Forum, 67, 90, 139, 67, 90, 139; Hagia Sophia, 67, 70, 93, 96, 100, 105, 119, 121, 122, 136, 165, 186, 194–5, 218, 226, 231, 237, 253, 265, 276, 288–90, 318, 323, 379, 383, 414, 491–2, 497, 501, 515, 520 Hagia Sophia, Hagia Sophia, Cathedral of, 67, 70, 93, 96, 100, 106, 119, 121, 122, 136, 138, 140, 153, 165, 186, 194–5, 218, 226, 231, 237, 318, 323, 379, 383, 414, 491–2, 497, 501, 515, 520, 522, 525, 531, 534, 539, 541, 544–6, 548, 554, 558, 577, 595, 620, 629, 636, 649, 662–3, 667, 670, 706, 714, 724, 726; Hippodrome, 69, 78, 82, 83, 85, 86, 89, 90, 91, 100, 102, 118, 186, 203, 213, 224, 245–6, 249, 273, 292, 316, 355, 367, 513, 519–20; Palace, 78, 82, 91, 93, 100, 122, 147, 179, 182, 185, 194, 196, 245, 250, 253, 258, 289, 292, 295, 308, 318, 368, 473, 517–18, 520: gatehouse, 100, gateway (‘Chalke’), 198; ‘Pearl’ apartment, 248; Praetorium Prison, 100; Senate House, 100; University of, 52, 53, 77; Xeuxippus Baths, 100
- Constantius Ducas, son of Empress Maria, 410–11, 413, 422, 428
- Constantius II, 6, 11, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19, 20, 21, 22, -3, 26, 47, 48, 49, 50
- Constantius III, 50
- Constantius, ally of C9th rebel Thomas, 241
- Constantius, brother of Michael VII, 409–11, 414
- Constans the ‘Sacellarius’, 219
- Constantina, Empress of Maurice, 138
- Contoleon Tornicius, ‘Catepan’, 350–1
- Contostephanus, 495, 499
- Contostephanus, general, 334, 447
- Coptics, 246
- Copts, 160, 167, 504, 508
- Corcondylas, silk-merchant, 631
- Corcyra, 114
- Cordoba, 117, 123, 125
- Cordyles, 248
- Corfu, 418, 436, 459, 482–3, 543, 554, 561, 572, 604, 732, 733
- Corinth, 36, 93, 174, 293, 339, 398, 482, 541, 547, 553, 593, 602, 664, 673, 676, 675, 691, 693, 696, 697, 700–1, 704, 712, 717, 719–20, 724, 729–31
- Corinth, Bishop of, 541
- Coron, 553, 557, 632; fortress, 245
- Corsica, 64, 114
- Corycus, 437
- Cos, 171, 244
- Cosenza, 374
- Cosmas of Sozopolis (John XII), Patriarch, 629
- Cosmas the ‘Logothete’, 298
- Cosmas Tzinticules, 366
- Cosmas, 96
- Cosmas, Heraclius’ envoy, 152
- Cosmas, Patriarch, 405, 413, 481
- Cosmas, rebel Emperor, 199
- Cosmas and Damian, Saints, Monastery of, 366
- Cosmidion, 297, 702
- Costenza, 286

- Cotron, Bishop of, 564  
 Cottomenes, 80  
 Cotyaeum, 58, 83, 329, 403, 409, 451  
 Coundoura, 553  
 Courticius, Basilicius, 442  
 Coutzina, 121  
 Crasus, 230  
 Craterus, 244, 313  
 Cratinus, 100  
 Crescentii family, 338, 348  
 Crescentius, Consul, 327, 340  
 Crete, 51, 153, 171, 177, 243–4, 257, 260, 264,  
 290–1, 311, 315–16, 346, 426, 529, 547,  
 572, 575, 724  
 Crimea, 98, 119, 127, 151, 172, 189, 335, 349,  
 354, 428  
 Crinites Argyrus, 303  
 Crispin, Western mercenary knights' leader,  
 397, 402  
 Crispus, 6, 7, 8  
 Critoboulus, historian, 727  
 Croatia, 299  
 Croton, 114, 115  
 Cryapege, 399  
 Ctesiphon, 22, 30, 107, 110, 133–4, 149–50,  
 156, 162  
 Cucusus, 42, 71  
 Cumae, 115, 116  
 Cumans, 421–3, 425, 428, 453, 481, 483, 497,  
 541–2, 553, 577–8, 580–1, 593–4, 523–4,  
 528–9, 536  
 Cunicpert, King, 188  
 Curcuas, John, 300–1, 303, 305–8  
 Curticius 'Drungarius of Watch', 308  
 Cyclades, 245  
 Cyparissia, 553  
 Cyparission, battle of, 417  
 Cyprian of Kiev, 684, 690  
 Cyprus, 12, 38, 40, 58, 147, 148, 168, 171,  
 182, 198, 204, 224, 230–1, 274, 319, 363,  
 368, 426, 436, 441, 443, 448–9, 485, 491,  
 497, 504, 519, 521, 523, 529, 533, 553, 55,  
 559, 566, 630, 654, 660  
 Cyriacus of Ancona, Italian antiquary, 712,  
 717, 719–20  
 Cyriacus, Patriarch, 136, 138  
 Cyril of Alexandria, 46, 47, 48, 49, 53, 54, 55,  
 58, 90  
 Cyrus, Bishop of Cotyaeum, Phrygia, 57–8  
 Cyrus, Bishop of Phasis, 158  
 Cyrus, Patriarch of Alexandria, 159–60,  
 164–6  
 Cyrus, Patriarch of Constantinople, 190, 192–3  
 Cyzicus, 7, 109, 147, 176, 411, 419, 426,  
 636, 638  
 Da'ud Shah of Erzinjan, 571  
 Dadibra, 536  
 Dadibryze, 627  
 Dagistheus, 112–14  
 Dahhak, 204–5, 231, 235–6, 239  
 Dailamites, 303  
 Daimbert of Pisa, Archbishop, Patriarch of  
 Jerusalem, 437–8, 445  
 Dalmatia/Dalmatian, 45, 64, 66, 69, 70, 135,  
 231, 235–6, 239, 343, 431, 461  
 Dalmatius, 11, 12, 13  
 Damalis, 413, 451, 454, 514  
 Damascenes, 472  
 Damascius, 98  
 Damascus, 98, 103, 113–14, 149, 159, 161, 181,  
 182, 184, 204, 206, 246, 283, 286, 328, 330,  
 338, 428, 433, 446, 452, 457, 469, 483, 499,  
 504, 509, 532, 535, 539  
 Damasus II, Pope, 374  
 Damasus, Pope, 24, 29, 30  
 Damianus Dalassenus, duke of Antioch, 338–41  
 Damianus the Slav, 258, 261  
 Damianus, 128  
 Damiatta, 165, 240, 257, 504, 585  
 Dan, ruler of Wallachians, 720  
 Danes, 441  
 Danielis, 258  
 Danishmend, 'Emir' of Pontus, 432, 436, 438,  
 441, 444  
 Danishmends, 439–40, 460, 462, 465–6,  
 470–1, 473, 497, 507–9, 511, 554  
 Danube, River, 7, 11–14, 19, 21, 24, 26, 27, 29,  
 31, 38, 45, 55, 57, 59, 60, 63, 67, 81, 88, 98,  
 119–20, 126, 128, 131–2, 135, 127, 180,  
 189, 210, 216, 237, 282, 342, 344, 360, 372,  
 386, 390–1, 421, 453, 481, 483, 485–6, 497,  
 499, River Danube, 307, 312, 323–4, 342,  
 344, 360, 372, 386, 390–1, 421, 453, 481,  
 483, 485–6, 497, 499, 501–2, 525, 577, 635,  
 676, 689, 694–5, 710, 716–18  
 Daphne, 22, 89, 107  
 Daphnesia island, 595  
 Dara, 22, 88, 97, 99, 101, 107, 111, 120, 125,  
 129, 131, 134, 138–40, 163, 307, 320  
 Daraza, Ismaili theologian, 350  
 Dardanus, 47  
 Darial Pass, 212  
 Dastegard, 156

- Datoyan, 139  
David Arianites, duke of Thessalonica, 350  
David Comnenus of Trebizond, 519–20, 546, 555–6, 561, 732  
David II of Iberia, 297, 304  
David III of Georgia, King, 423, 443, 458, 461  
David IV of Georgia, 489  
David V, King of Georgia, son of Roussadan, 575, 579, 582–3, 586, 626  
David VI, King of Georgia, 586, 607  
David VIII of Georgia, 662, 674  
David of Lori, King, 357  
David of Ochrid, Archbishop, 351  
David Saharuni, 167  
David Soslan, Georgian noble, 525  
David, Emperor, co-ruler of Trebizond, brother of John IV, 730, 732–3  
David, Heraclius' envoy, 157, 165  
David, Prince, 'Curopalatus', son of Adarnese of Tao, 317, 327, 330, 335–8, 341–2, 348  
David, son of Bagrat I, 275  
David, son of King Sennacherim-John of Vaspurakan, 353  
Dazimon, 250  
De Stromoncourt, lord of Boeotia, 643  
Dead Sea, 157, 160  
Decentius, 16, 17  
Decervium, 482  
Delphi, 712  
Demetrias, 611, 621  
Demetrias, Thessaly, 578  
Demetrius Branas, 478  
Demetrius Asen, 730  
Demetrius Cantacuzene, 687–8  
Demetrius Cantacuzene, officer to Constantine XI, 724  
Demetrius Chomatianus, Archbishop of Ochrid, 563  
Demetrius Cydones, 'Mesazon' to John V, 'Grand Logothete', 670, 674, 677–80, 696  
Demetrius II, King of Georgia, 607, 613, 626, 629  
Demetrius Lascaris Leontaris, Manuel II's minister, 700  
Demetrius Macrembolites, 481  
Demetrius of Georgia, 489, 491  
Demetrius of Lampe, 501  
Demetrius Palaeologus, 727–33  
Demetrius Rendis, Greek minister, 686  
Demetrius the Notary, 296  
Demetrius Tornicius, 'Great Logothete', 584  
Demetrius Tornicius, 'Logothete of Drome', 525  
Demetrius, 'Despot', 584  
Demetrius, 'Prince of the Albanians', 562  
Demetrius, Justinian's general, 108, 109  
Demetrius, brother of John VIII, 709, 712, 714, 716, 721  
Demetrius, King of Thessalonica, 556–7, 560, 563, 567  
Demetrius, nephew of King George II of Georgia, 509  
Demetrius, Prince of Georgia, 374  
Demophilus, Bishop of Constantinople, 25, 28  
Demosthenes, 93, 96, 98  
Desiderius of Tuscany, 209–10  
Desiderius the Lombard, 210, 213–15, 217  
Desiderius, Abbot, Pope Victor III, 419  
Despotate, 573  
Develtus, Thrace, 236, 262, 544  
Devliana, 325  
Devol, 447; treaty, 449  
Devol, River, 587  
Devra, 446  
Dhirgam, chamberlain, 499  
Dhu Nuwas, 95–6  
Dhu'l Nun, Prince, 511  
Dhu'l Qarnayn, 486  
Dhu'l-Nun, son of Mohammed the Danishmend, 476  
Diabasis, 242  
Didymoteichon, 336, 526, 553–4, 562, 639, 648–52, 658–61, 663–4, 667–9, 674–5, 678, 683–4, 723  
Dinar, 384  
Dioclea, 337, 342  
Diocletian, Caius Aurelius Valerius, Emperor, 5, 6; Palace of, 149  
Diocletian, Palace of, 149  
Diogenes, 22  
Diogenes, C5th general, 84  
Diogenes, C6th general, 113  
Diogenianus, 93  
Dionysius, Bishop of Milan, 18  
Dioscurus of Alexandria, 58, 59, 60, 61, 91, 93, 99  
Diosopolis, 48  
Diran, King, 13  
Diso, 263  
Ditzveg, 237  
Diyarbakr, 336  
Dnieper, River, 250, 257, 260, 325  
Dobromir Chrysus, 537  
Dobromir of Mesembria, 409  
Dobromir, Vlach lord, 535, 541

- Dobrudja, 26, 120, 131–2, 342  
 Domenico Michiel, doge of Venice, 464  
 Domenico Sanudo, Venetian envoy, 519  
 Domenico Silvio, Doge of Venice, 399  
 Domentius, 165  
 Domentzia, 140  
 Domentziolus, 139–41, 147  
 Dominico Cattaneo, Lord of Phocaea, 655  
 Dominico Morosini, doge of Venice, 483, 489  
 Domitian, 104  
 Domitian, Bishop of Melitene, 127, 134  
 Domnus of Antioch, Patriarch, 57, 60  
 Donatists, 42  
 Dorini Gattilusio, ‘Duke’, 717  
 Dorino Gattilusio of Mylitene, 727  
 Dorothea, prophetess, 381  
 Dorotheus, 100  
 Dorus, 220  
 Dorylaeum, 170, 202, 216–17, 250, 399, 432, 482, 486, 495, 510–11; battle of, 432  
 Dorystolon, 132  
 Dositheus, Patriarch of Jerusalem, personal friend of Isaac Angelus, 526, 530  
 Dou, 140  
 Doukas, historian, 703  
 Dover, 697  
 Dracon, River, 413  
 Dragas Dejanovic, 672  
 Dragotas, Byzantine commander, 589  
 Drevliana, 329  
 Drista, 321, 324, 421  
 Droctulft, general, 132  
 Drogo, Count, son of Tancred of Hauteville, 369, 372, 374–5  
 Drogo, son of Tancred of Hauteville, 361, 371  
 Drogomir, 236  
 Druet, French Sergeant, 619  
 Druzipara, 136  
 Drypia, 37  
 Ducas, John, 502  
 Dukum, Bulgar Khan, 237  
 Duqaq of Damascus, 428, 433, 441  
 Durazzo, 678, 683–4  
 Dusan of Serbia, Prince, 486  
 Dvin, 89, 53, 164, 170, 186, 282; ‘Emir’ of, 370, 372  
 Dyrrachium, 39, 57, 77, 83, 93, 111, 251, 335, 341, 350, 364, 369, 408, 411, 413–14, 419, 421, 429, 431, 439, 444, 446, 519–21, 553–4, 557, 564, 572, 590–1, 08, 611, 616, 625, 633, 640  
 Ebodich, general, 46  
 Ecbatana, 154  
 Ecdicius Olympus, 21  
 Ecry-sur-Aisne, 539  
 Edeco the Scirian, 59, 71  
 Edessa, 80, 82, 96, 110, 133, 141, 156, 158, 163, 201, 210, 306–7, 359, 362–3, 389, 399, 408, 416, 421, 433–4, 437, 440, 442–3, 446, 448, 452, 456, 458, 461, 479, 485, 494, 666  
 Edgar ‘Atheling’, rightful King of England, 434  
 Edmund ‘Ironside’, King, 373  
 Edward ‘Atheling’, Prince, 373  
 Edward I of England, King, 622  
 Egara, 682  
 Egypt, 20, 32, 33, 44, 61, 78, 83, 92, 93, 95, 98, 105, 108, 114, 128, 141, 147, 150–2, 157, 159–60, 177, 181, 204, 206, 235, 240, 243, 245–7, 257, 271, 287, 295, 304–5, 308, 310, 323, 326, 356, 384, 437, 444, 455, 488, 499–500, 503–4, 507, 511, 515, 585, 665, 676  
 Eladas, 292  
 Eleanor, Queen of France and England, 483, 529  
 Eleusis, 36  
 Eleutherius harbour, 544  
 Eleutherius, ‘Exarch’, 152  
 Eleutherius, Palace, 223, 226  
 Eliac, 62  
 Elias, ‘Catholikos’, 189  
 Elias, 84, 91  
 Elijah, 192–3  
 Elis, Morea, 36, 602–3, 645  
 Ellissaeus the ‘notary’, 219  
 Elpidius, 140  
 Elpidius, ‘the Patrician’, 218–19  
 Eltham Palace, London, 698  
 Emeric of Hungary, son of Bela III, 536  
 Emesa, 148, 160, 286, 322, 327, 338  
 England, 701  
 Enna, 388, 420  
 Enrico 553  
 Enrico Dandolo, Doge of Venice, 519, 531, 542–3, 545–6,  
 Enrico Pescatore, Genoese pirate, 547  
 Ephesus, 16, 47, 54, 60, 93, 212, 482, 638, 714  
 Ephesus, Bishop of, 453  
 Epigenes, 55  
 Epinicus, 77  
 Epiphania, Heraclius’ daughter, 148  
 Epiphania, Heraclius’ mother, 147  
 Epiphanius of Cyprus, 40

- Epiphanius of Laodicea, 288  
 Epiphanius the 'Spatharius', 304  
 Epiphanius, 93  
 Epiphanius, Bishop of Ticinum, 69  
 Epiphanius, Bishop of Tyre, 92  
 Epirots, 591  
 Epirus (Albania), 36, 108, 340, 364, 396, 399,  
     413, 415–16, 419, 430, 519, 534, 557, 562,  
     564, 572–3, 587, 592, 594, 601, 604, 615,  
     628–9, 633, 655, 656, 657, 664, 671–2,  
     709–10, 712  
 Epitabai, 673, 724; castle, 658; treaty, 648  
 EQUITIUS, 24  
 Eraric the Rugian, 107  
 Ergodotes, eunuch, 356  
 Eric 'the Evergood', King of Denmark, 440–1  
 Erisen, 398  
 Ermaneric, 68  
 Erythrae, Cape, 655  
 Erzerum, 573, 581, 732  
 Erzinjan, 732  
 Esaias, Patriarch, 648, 649–50, 653  
 Esau Buondelmonti, Italian lord of Ionnina, 703  
 Eski Zagora, 421, 458  
 Esrdo fortress, 718  
 Eteimon, 367  
 Euanthia, 222  
 Euboea, 492, 507, 543, 547, 546, 589, 592,  
     595, 611, 624, 642, 646, 653, 704–5,  
     707, 710  
 Euchaita, 167, 224, 234  
 Eucherius, 44  
 Eudaimon, 100  
 Eudocia Decapolitissa, Empress, 257  
 Eudocia Ingerina, wife of Basil I, 257, 263  
 Eudocia Macrembolitissa, wife of Constantine  
     X, 385, 391, 395–6, 4  
 Eudocia Palaeologina, mother of Emperor  
     Alexius II, 635  
 Eudocia, 'the Paphlagonian', wife of Leo VI,  
     284–5  
 Eudocia, Constantine V's wife, 207–8, 214  
 Eudocia, daughter of Alexius III, 186, 545–6  
 Eudocia, daughter of Constantine VIII, 330,  
     344, 356  
 Eudocia, daughter of Michael VIII, 619  
 Eudocia, daughter of Prince Leo and  
     Theophano, 277–8, 281  
 Eudocia, daughter of Theodore Lascaris,  
     567–8, 585  
 Eudocia, niece of Manuel I, 506, 512–13  
 Eudocia, sister of Andronicus II, 633  
 Eudocia, wife of Esau Buondelmonti, 703  
 Eudocia, wife of Stephen II of Serbia, daughter  
     of Alexius III, 538  
 Eudocia, wife of Theodosius II, 51, 56–8,  
     62–3, 66  
 Eudomiannes, 704  
 Eudoxia, 35, 37, 38, 39, 40, 41–2, 63, 66  
 Eudoxius, Bishop of Antioch, 19  
 Eudoxius, Bishop of Constantinople, 15, 20,  
     21, 23, 25  
 Eugenius, Pope, 171–2  
 Eugenius II, Pope, 243–4  
 Eugenius III, Pope, 479, 484–5, 487  
 Eugenius III, Pope, 711–15, 720  
 Eugenius, rebel (West), 33, 34, 60, 87  
 Eugenius, Steward, 60  
 Eugenius, general, 87  
 Eulalius, Pope, 49–50  
 Eulogia, sister of Michael VIII of Epirus, 595,  
     610, 615  
 Eulogius, 265  
 Eumathius Philocales, 436–8, 443, 448  
 Eumathius, envoy to Frederick, 527  
 Eumathius, 'Eparch', 536  
 Eunomianism, 28  
 Euphemia, 107  
 Euphemia, Empress, 63, 95  
 Euphemius, 243–4  
 Euphemius, 81, 83  
 Euphrasius, 94, 97  
 Euphrates, River, 22, 32, 134, 141, 158, 161,  
     188, 205, 249, 306, 308, 320, 322, 325,  
     359, 396, 433, 448, 458, 479, 514, 188,  
     205, 249, 696  
 Euphrosyne, daughter of Constantine VI, 242,  
     245, 247, 250  
 Euphrosyne, daughter of Michael VIII, 615–16  
 Euphrosyne, Empress, wife of Alexius III  
     Angelus, 534, 536–7, 545, 553, 559  
 Euphrosyne, mother of Isaac Angelus, 518  
 Euprepios, 54  
 Europe, 35  
 Eurotas, 36  
 Eusebia, Empress, 21  
 Eusebius, 121  
 Eusebius, Bishop of Dorylaeum, 59, 60  
 Eusebius, Bishop of Nicomedia, 11, 12, 13,  
     14, 1  
 Eustace, brother of Emperor Henry, 559  
 Eustathiasius, 'tabularius', 156  
 Eustathius Argyrus, 286–7  
 Eustathius Camytzes, 451–2, 454



- Eustathius Ciminianus, 446  
 Eustathius Daphnomelus, 345  
 Eustathius Maleinus, 330, 338–9  
 Eustathius of Dyrrachium, Bishop, 492  
 Eustathius of Nicaea, Bishop, 451, 453  
 Eustathius, 282  
 Eustathius, Bishop of Thessalonica, 513, 520  
 Eustathius, Patriarch, 351, 354–5  
 Eustathius, Pope, 351  
 Eustochius, 130  
 Eustratius Garidas, Patriarch, 413–14, 417, 420  
 Eutharic, 92  
 Eutherius, 20  
 Euthymios, Studius monastery monk, 324  
 Euthymius of Jerusalem, Patriarch, 415  
 Euthymius of Neopatra, Bishop, 501  
 Euthymius, 'the Iberian', 356  
 Euthymius, Iconodule 'martyr', 246  
 Euthymius, Atonite monk, 261  
 Euthymius, Patriarch, 291, 294  
 Euthymius, 53  
 Euthymius, Patriarch, 702, 705  
 Euthymus, 'Exarch', 203  
 Eutrepia, sister of Constantine IX, 372  
 Eutropia, 16  
 Eutropius, 35, 3, 37, 38  
 Eutropius, Chamberlain, 61  
 Eutyches, 59–62  
 Eutychian, 38  
 Eutychianus, 'protoasecreris', 238  
 Eutychius, 'Exarch', 199–201  
 Eutychius, 115, 116, 122, 127  
 Euzoius, 21  
 Evrenos Beg, leader of Turkish army, 693, 695  
 Excubitors, 67, 68, 91  
 Ezra, 'Catholicos', 158
- Fadalah, 176  
 Fakhr-al-Din Ali, Vizier, 622, 624  
 Fakhr-al-Mulk of Tripoli, 442, 446  
 Fakr al-Daula of Rayy, son of Rukn-al-Daula, 329, 332  
 Famagusta, Cyprus, 529  
 Fanum, 117  
 Farama, 504  
 Farfa, 479, 494  
 Faroald, 'Duke', 124, 128  
 Fars, West Persia, 187, 204, 303, 311, 456  
 Fatimids, 290–1, 294, 297, 302, 312, 314, 325–8, 330, 333–4, 337–9, 343, 350, 352, 354, 356, 361–3, 365, 384–5, 387, 398, 423, 427, 436, 502
- Fausta, wife of Constantine I, 6, 8, 166  
 Fausta, wife of Constans II, 166  
 Faustina, 21, 23  
 Faiva, Heraclius' fiancée (renamed 'Eudocia'), 147  
 Fayyum, the, 164–5  
 Felethius, King, 81  
 Felix I, Bishop of Rome, 18, 19, 22  
 Felix III, Pope, 79, 80, 83  
 Felix IV, Pope, 97, 99  
 Felix of Ravenna, Archbishop, 191  
 Felix, 'Count of Sacred Lagresses', 21  
 Felix, Count (West), 52–4  
 Ferdinand I of Aragon, 704  
 Ferdinand of Majorca, 'Infante', Frederick's nominee as Catalan leader, 641, 644–6  
 Ferdinand of Sicily, 642  
 Fernan Ximenes de Arena, Catalan commander, 641  
 Ferouk/'Shahbaraz' ('Wild Boar'), Chosroes II's general, 140  
 Ferrara, 524, 712–13  
 Fiesole, 42, 106  
 Firuz, 'Great King', 65, 67, 79  
 Flaminian Way, 115  
 Flanders, 578  
 Flanders, Count of, 482  
 Flanders, Count of, 625  
 Flavian of Antioch, 59, 60, 89–90  
 Flavius Bassus Herculanus, 61  
 Flavius Constantius, 4  
 Flavius Evodius, 31  
 Flavius, Bishop, 29, 31  
 Florence/Florentines, 42, 107–8, 381, 673, 688, 703, 711, 713–14  
 Florent d'Avesnes, Flemish nobleman, 627–32  
 Florus, 53, 61; monastery, 220  
 Foggia, 623  
 Formosus, Pope, 264, 275, 281, 283–4  
 Fortore, River, 377  
 Forum of 'Bovium', 147  
 France, 243, 247, 447, 507, 513, 539, 565, 596, 601, 626–7, 648–9, 654, 696, 698, 700–1  
 Franciscan, daughter of Nerio, 692  
 Francesco Condulmer, Cardinal, 718  
 Francesco di San Severino, Neapolitan 'bailli', 682  
 Francesco Draperio, friend of Cyriacus of Ancona, 719  
 Francesco Foscarini, Doge of Venice, 713  
 Francesco Gattilusio, Genoese adventurer, lord of Mytilene, 671

- Francesco Gattilusio, John V's brother-in-law, 677, 679, 688  
 Francesco II Gatillulio, Manuel II's father-in-law, 700, 704  
 Francia, 227, 236  
 Franciscans 726  
 Franco of Sykaminon, Duke, cousin of Antonio Acciajuoli, 711  
 Franco, nephew of Duke Nerio II, 728, 729  
 Frangipani 508  
 Franks, 32, 34, 35, 46, 89, 104–6, 115–16, 130–1, 134, 136, 207, 217, 226, 252, 383, 444–5, 481, 499–500, 593–4, 637, 710  
 Fravitta, 38–9, 81  
 Fraxinetum, 301  
 Frederick 'Barbarossa' of Swabia, German Emperor, 486–95, 497–9, 500, 506, 513, 518, 526–7  
 Frederick Duke of Swabla, 481  
 Frederick II, 'King of the Island of Sicily', 634–5, 637, 641, 644  
 Frederick II, Emperor, 537–8, 572, 580, 582, 586  
 Frederick III, King of Sicily, 631, 672  
 Frederick of Baden, 606  
 Frederick of Lorraine, lieutenant, abbot of MonteCassino, Pope Stephen IX, 374, 378, 383  
 Frederick of Swabia, younger son of Frederick 'Babarossa' of Swabia, 527  
 Frederick, envoy to Kilij Arslan, 527  
 Frejus (accent), 301, 306  
 Frigidus, River, 34  
 Fritigern, 26, 27, 28, 29  
 Friuli, 296  
 Fulk of Anjou, Count, King of Jerusalem, 464, 466, 468, 472, 478  
  
 Gabalas, 302  
 Gaban, 564  
 Gabras, 'duke' of Trebizond, 474–5  
 Gabriel, cleric, 300  
 Gabriel Condularmo, Pope Eugenius III, 711  
 Gabriel Radomir, son of Samuel of Bulgaria, 342, 348–9, 364  
 Gabriel, father-in-law of Baldwin Le Bourg, 440  
 Gaeta, 256, 626; Duke of, 377  
 Gaethungi, 31  
 Gagik IV of Armenia, 357, 370  
 Gagik of Kakheta King, 352, 384  
 Gagik of Lori, Prince, 357, 366  
 Gagik, son of Sembat II, 335  
 Gagik-Abas II of Kars, 390  
 Gagik-Abas, Prince, 357  
 Gagik, King of Armenia, 352  
 Gaimar III, Prince of Salerno and Capua, 356, 362, 366, 369, 371, 376  
 Gaimar V of Salerno, Prince, 362  
 Gaimar of Salerno, Prince, 290  
 Gainas the Goth, 35–6, 38, 43  
 Gaiseric, King of Vandals, 53, 55, 57, 63, 65, 66, 70, 77  
 Galacrenae, 289  
 Galata/Galatans, 543, 606, 632, 650, 653, 655, 662, 664, 666–9, 690, 683, 685, 725–7  
 Galatia, 121, 405  
 Galeran of Ivry, 'bailli', 615  
 Galerius, 5, 6  
 Galicia, 695  
 Galilee, 149, 437  
 Galla Placidia, Empress (West), 45, 51, 60, 61  
 Galla, wife of Theodosius I, 31, 33, 34  
 Gallio, 52  
 Gallipoli, 424, 506, 569, 575, 638–9, 641, 644, 670, 673, 680, 683–4, 698, 702, 705–6, 718, 722–3  
 Gallus, 13, 16, 17, 18  
 Gangra, 468–9, 536  
 Gantarith, 'Duke' of Numidia, 111  
 Ganzak, 153, 156  
 Garbas, Kilij Arslan's Trapezuntine 'Vizier', 513  
 Garidi, 682  
 Garigliano, River, 293, 352, 474  
 Garmoulius, 123  
 Garni, 570  
 Gastia, 250  
 Gastritsa, 732  
 Gaul, 6, 11, 14, 16, 17, 18, 19, 20, 32, 33, 43, 46, 49, 50, 52, 61, 63, 64, 69  
 Gaza, 151, 160, 162  
 Gazarenus Coloniatas, 242  
 Gebbard of Eichstatt, 380  
 Gebhard, Bishop, 381  
 Gegnesias, 197  
 Geikhatu, borthor of Arghun, Mongol 'Ilkhan', 623  
 Gelasius, II, Pope, 455, 457  
 Gelasius, Pope, 83, 84  
 Gelati monastery, 461  
 Gelimer, 99, 101, 102  
 Genesisios the 'Paulician', 205  
 Gennadius, 'Exarch', 136, 175  
 Gennadius, 168  
 Gennadius, 65, 68

- Gennadius, Patriarch, 732  
 Genoa/Genoese, 105, 124, 442, 448, 498, 505, 522, 530–2, 535, 541, 547, 595, 606, 621, 632–3, 639–40, 644, 648, 650, 655, 663–5, 667–8, 671, 682–6, 689–90, 695, 698, 701, 706, 709, 724–7  
 Geoffrey ‘the Monk’, 458  
 Geoffrey Burel, 430  
 Geoffrey d’Aulnay, ‘Constable’, 630  
 Geoffrey de Briel, Lord of Karytaina, 602, 612  
 Geoffrey I of Villehardouin, ‘Prince of Achaia’, 540, 544, 553, 557–8  
 Geoffrey II of Villehardouin (the younger), 547, 556, 576, 583  
 Geoffrey of Bruyeres, lord of Karytaina, 596  
 Geoffrey of Conversano, 396, 410  
 George (Yuri) of Vladimir, Prince, 525, 528  
 George Akropolites, governor of Macedonia and Albania, 587, 590–1, 610, 620  
 George Amiroutzes, Platonist philosopher, 712, 732–3  
 George Bardanes, Bishop of Corfu, 565  
 George Brankovic, successor to Stephen Iazarevic, 709–10, 716–20, 727, 729  
 George Buraphus, ‘Count’, 194  
 George Castriota, Albanian lord, 716  
 George Cantacuzene, 712  
 George Decanus, 427, 451  
 George Gemisthus Plethon, radical philosopher, 712  
 George I, King of Georgia, 348–9, 352–3, 356  
 George II of Abasgia, 293, 315  
 George II, King of Georgia, 402–3, 423  
 George III of Georgia, King, 491, 509, 519  
 George IV of Georgia, King, 560, 568  
 George VI of Georgia, 644, 662  
 George Lebnas, 452  
 George Maniaces, ‘strategus’ of Teluch, rebel (1043), 358–9, 361–4, 367–9  
 George Muzalon, chief minister, 588–90, 592  
 George of Antioch, 460, 464, 466, 482  
 George of Cyprus, Patriarch Gregory, 621–2, 626  
 George of Pisidia, 152  
 George of Trebizond, Aristotelian philosopher, 712  
 George Oinoiates, 534  
 George Palaeologus, brother-in-law of Alexius I, 413–14, 498, 503  
 George Paleologus, minister of Manuel I, 498, 503  
 George Scholarius, academic lawyer, Patriarch Gennadius, 712–13, 721, 723, 727–8  
 George Sianiates, 512  
 George Sphrantzes, historian and leader of Byzantine army, 709  
 George Sursubul, 299  
 George Terter, King of Bulgaria, 615, 617, 621, 628, 634  
 George Xiphilinus, Patriarch, 516, 530, 537  
 George, Bishop of Alexandria, 18, 20, 21  
 George, Bishop, 95  
 George, Emperor of Trebizond, 605, 613, 623  
 George, Patriarch, 179, 183  
 George, son of Liparit, 378  
 Georgia/Georgians, 231, 332, 335, 342, 346, 352–3, 376, 443, 458, 461, 515, 523, 568, 570, 586, 697, 732  
 Gepids, 61, 62, 82, 123  
 Gerace, 389  
 Gerard of Aurillac, Sylvester II, Pope, 341  
 Gerard of Lorraine, Pope Nicholas II, 385  
 Gerard, ‘Marshal’, 506  
 Gerardo Caccianemaici, Pope Lucius II, 478  
 Gerasimus, Abbot of Mangana, Patriarch, 646–7  
 Gerdich, 62  
 Germain, Imperial adviser to Nicephorus III, 410–11  
 Germanianus, 21  
 Germanicea, 52, 187, 189, 205, 214, 217, 308, 312, 317, 433, 441  
 Germanicopolis, 439  
 Germanus ‘Postumus’, 114, 128, 130  
 Germanus II, Archbishop of Adrianople, Patriarch, 604, 610  
 Germanus, ‘Duke’ of Phoenicia, 132  
 Germanus, ‘Patrician’, father-in-law to Maurice’s son Theodosius, 137–8  
 Germanus, Justinian I’s cousin, 92, 95, 104, 107, 111, 113–14, 118–19  
 Germanus, Bishop of Capua, 92  
 Germanus, Patriarch of Nicaea, 568, 574, 576, 579  
 Germanus, Patriarch of Constantinople, 195, 198, 200, 208  
 Germany/Germans, 18, 29, 31, 36, 43, 44, 61, 71, 82, 90, 94, 96, 99, 320–1, 325–6, 328, 332–3, 340, 353, 388, 399, 465, 468, 481, 483, 485–6, 490, 508, 520–1, 526–7, 532, 534, 592, 694, 720  
 Germiyan (Emirate of), 722  
 Gerontius, 43, 45, 46

- Gerontius, nominee for Metropolitan of Kiev, 642
- Gervasius, Papal candidate, 559, 562, 564–5
- Geza I, King of Hungary, 325, 340, 482, 485, 489, 496
- Geza II, King of Hungary, 405, 407, 428, 475
- Ghassanid tribal federation, 98, 107, 117, 121, 129, 130
- Ghaznavid realm, 342
- Ghazni, 317
- Ghiyath-al-Din Kaikhusraw, Seljuk Sultan, 577, 579, 581–3
- Ghiyath-al-Din Mas'ud, Seljuk Sultan, son of Izz-ed-Din II, 617, 622, 624, 633
- Ghuzz, 491
- Giacinto Bobo, Pope Celestine III, 529
- Giacomo Savelli, Pope Honorius IV, 623
- Gian Galeazzo Visconti, Duke, 697
- Giannitza, 630
- Giarmulius, 125
- Gibraltar, 48
- Gildo, 36, 37
- Gilpractus, German mercenary, 413
- Giovanni Gaetano, cardinal, Pope Nicholas III, 614
- Giovanni Giusiniani-Longo, commander-in-chief of Genoese land forces (1453), 724, 726
- Giovanni Participazio, Doge of Venice, 244, 248
- Giovanni Stirione, Calabrian pirate, 535
- Giovanni, cousin of Niccolò Acciajuoli, Catherine of Courtenay's Florentine Chamberlain, 674
- Giovanni, Galbaio, 'Doge' of Venice, 216, 230
- Girolamo Minotto, Venetian 'bailio', 727
- Girolamo Mischi, Pope Nicholas IV, 624
- Gisela, daughter of Berengar of Friuli, 298
- Gisela, daughter of King Pepin, 213
- Gisulf of Salerno, Count, 384, 401, 404–5, 407
- Giustiniani family, 671
- Giustiniano, 244
- Gleb, Prince of Murom, 347, 349
- Gleb, son of 'Grand Prince' Vladimir of Russia, 347
- Glycerius, ex-Emperor, Bishop of Ostia, 69, 78
- Goar the Alan, 46
- Gobazes, King of Lazica, 66, 107, 112, 114, 117, 118
- Godepert, 174
- Godfrey de Castiglione, Pope Celestine II, 580
- Godfrey of Bouillon, 430–2, 437
- Godfrey of Bures, 457
- Godfrey of Lorraine and Tuscany, Duke, 381, 384–5, 388, 404
- Golden Gate, Constantinople, 246, 318, 662, 670, 690, 732, 724–5
- Golden Horn, Constantinople, 91, 241, 265, 297, 431, 481, 535, 543, 545, 595, 602, 632–3, 636, 663–4, 668
- Golem, Albanian Lord of Kroia, ally of Michael II, 587
- Goloea, 421
- Golubac fortress, 718
- Gordi, 281
- Gordia, 138
- Goths/Gothic 11, 14, 24, 26, 27, 28, 29, 31, 32, 35, 38, 39, 40, 45, 48, 64, 67, 71, 87, 102–16, 121, 128
- Gounaria, 383
- Grasso, 530–1
- Gratian, Count, 23–4
- Gratian, Emperor (West), 26, 27, 29, 30, 42, 43, 45
- Gratus, 93
- Gravia, Lord of, 558
- Gravina, Count of, 503
- Great Library, Alexandria, 166
- Great Preslav, 324
- Greece/Greeks, 11, 19, 32, 35, 36, 49, 51, 52, 78, 106, 129, 186, 293, 312, 314, 339, 364, 377, 389, 557, 583, 602, 656, 673, 681, 693, 697, 703, 707, 710, 711, 717, 720, 726–9, 731
- Gregoria, 157
- Gregorio Conti, Pope Victor IV, 473
- Gregorio Papareschi, Pope Innocent II, 465
- Gregory Gabras, son of Theodore Gabas of Trebizond, 427
- Gregory I, Pope, 126, 128, 134–5, 139
- Gregory II, Pope, 192, 194, 197, 199–200
- Gregory III Mammias, Patriarch, 716, 723, 723
- Gregory III, Pope, 200–1, 202–3
- Gregory IV, Pope, 244, 254
- Gregory V, Pope Bruno of Carinthia, 339–41
- Gregory VI, Pope, 370
- Gregory VII, Pope, 374, 379–80, 384, 388, 403–6, 408–9, 412, 416–18
- Gregory VIII, 524
- Gregory IX, Pope, 571–2, 576, 580
- Gregory X, Pope, 608–12, 616
- Gregory XI, Pope, 682
- Gregory XV, Pope, 341
- Gregory Mamikonean of Armenia, 180, 182
- Gregory of Armenia, 'Catholicos', 501

- Gregory of Constantinople, Patriarch, 28–9  
 Gregory of Syracuse, Archbishop, 255, 259–60  
 Gregory of Taron, commander, 338  
 Gregory Palamas, Archbishop of Thessalonica, 656–9, 660–1, 663, 666–9, 674, 678  
 Gregory Psoterus, 240–1  
 Gregory Taronites, ‘Duke’ of Trebizond, 441–2  
 Gregory the Mamikonid, 205, 207  
 Gregory, ‘Aprocrisarius’, 132  
 Gregory, ‘Catholicos’, 171  
 Gregory, ‘Catholicos’, 537  
 Gregory, ‘Exarch’, 167  
 Gregory, Bishop of Alexandria, 16  
 Gregory, brother of Heraclius, 141  
 Gregory, Emperor Constans II’s cousin, 169  
 Gregory, deacon, 133  
 Gregory, Hamazasp’s brother, 174  
 Gregory, Patriarch of Antioch, 124, 128  
 Gregory, Patriarch of Constantinople, 721, 724  
 Gregory, Pope, 247  
 Gregory, postal ‘logothete’, 218  
 Gregory, son of George Brankovic, 729  
 Grimoald of Bari, 464, 467  
 Grimoald of Benevento, 174, 176, 221–2  
 Grotto of the Magi, Monastery of,  
 Guaram III of Iberia, Prince, 182, 185  
 Guaram, 133, 134  
 Guarnerio Giudice, envoy, 595  
 Guelfodi Paganello of Pisa, 512  
 Guercio, 537  
 Guibert of Parma, 438  
 Guido of Burgundy, Pope Callistus II, 457  
 Guido of Costello, Pope Celestine II, 478  
 Gulf of Garta, 105  
 Gumushtekin, ‘Ghazi’, son of Emir Danishmend, 444, 462, 464, 466–8  
 Gumushtekin, governor of Aleppo, 509–10  
 Gundobad, 69  
 Gundobald, 130  
 Gundohar the Burgundian, 46  
 Guneri Beg, Karamanid leader, 624  
 Gunthamund, King of Vandals, 53, 80, 81, 84  
 Gurgan II, King, 346  
 Gurgan of Tao, 277  
 Gurgan, son of King Bagrat ‘the Simple’, 327, 338, 342  
 Gurgan-Zagik of Vaspurakan, son of Ashot-Isaac, 333, 345  
 Guy d’Enghien, lord of Argos, 677  
 Guy de Charpigny, ‘bailli’ of Achaia, 627  
 Guy de Dramelay of Chalandritza, ‘bailli’ of Achaia, 620  
 Guy de la Roche, Duke, 570, 583, 589, 592, 596, 602  
 Guy II of Athens, Regent, 625, 630, 637, 642  
 Guy of Conversano, 446  
 Guy of Foulques, Archbishop of Narbonne, 603  
 Guy of Lusignan, 522–3, 525, 527–9, 533  
 Guy of Lusignan, second husband of Sibylla, sister of Baldwin IV, 519  
 Guy of Spoleto, Count, 265, 278, 280–2, 299  
 Guy Pallavicino, Regent, 547, 568–9  
 Guy, son of Robert Guiscard, 417  
 Gyula, Magyar chief, 312  
  
 Habib, 168  
 Hadath, 217, 276, 310  
 Hadrian I, Pope 215, 220, 225  
 Hadrian II, Pope, 265, 272–3  
 Hadrian III, Pope, 278–9  
 Hadrian IV, Pope (Nicholas Breakspear), 488–91, 493–4  
 Hadrian V, Pope, 612  
 Hadrian, 102  
 Adrianopolis, Bithynia, 175, 480  
 Hadrumetum, 101  
 Haemus (Sredna Gora), 77, 522  
 Haemus valley, 648  
 Hajjaj, general, 185, 186, 188  
 Halil Pasha, ‘Grand Vizier’, 717, 718–19, 722–3, 725, 727  
 Halil, leader of Turkish band in Macedonia and Thrace, 643–4  
 Halil, son of Ottoman Emir Orhan, 673  
 Halmyros, Thessaly, 506  
 Halmyrus, 642  
 Halys, River, 250  
 Halys valley, 262, 330–1, 467  
 Hama, 436, 473  
 Hamazasp the Mamikonid, 171, 172  
 Hamazasp, Persian usurper, 86  
 Hamdan Qarmat, 285  
 Hamdanid dynasty, 327, 345  
 Hamza Beg, Ottoman admiral, 725, 731  
 Hanafi ‘qadis’, 448  
 Hannibalianus, 12, 13, 16  
 Hanza, Ismaili theologian, 350  
 Harald Hardrada, King of Norway, 362  
 Haramvar, battle of, 463  
 Haran, brother of Jaysh, 283  
 Harath, 314  
 Harbanes, ‘Catholicos’ Harbanes, 300

- Harenc, 500  
 Harq district, 326  
 Harran, 163, 442, 448–9  
 Harthama, 235  
 Harun 'Al-Raschid', Caliph, 218–19, 221, 226, 228, 229–230  
 Hasan Ibn Gabras, Seljuk 'Vizier', 526  
 Hassan Ibn al-Numan, 187  
 Hassan, Caliph, 173  
 Hassan, governor of Corinth, 728  
 Hassan, son of Qahtaba, 206  
 Hayr-ed-Din Pasha, 'Vizier', 687  
 Hebdoman, 56, 58, 60, 64, 138, 318  
 Hebros, River, 425  
 Hebrus valley, 220, 232, 324, 522, 675  
 Helen, daughter of John Asen of Bulgaria, 571, 576, 578  
 Helena Argyra, wife of King Bagrat IV of Georgia, 359  
 Helena Dragases, Empress, 691, 721  
 Helena Ducaena, Manfred's widow, Regent of Sicily, 593, 604, 606, 623, 625  
 Helena Palaeologina, widow of Lazar, son of George Brankovic, 729, 731  
 Helena, mother of Constantine I, 5, 8, 18, 20, 32  
 Helena, betrothed to Constantine Ducas, 410, 412  
 Helena, daughter of 'Despot' Thomas Palaeologus, 719  
 Helena, daughter of Demetrius Asen, 730  
 Helena, Empress, daughter of John Cantacuzene, 658, 663, 685, 691  
 Helena Lecapena, Empress, wife of Constantine VII, 305, 308, 314, 316  
 Helena, sister of Constantine IX, 371  
 Helenopolis, 13, 399  
 Helga (Olfa) of Kiev, Princess-Regent, wife of Prince Igor, 309  
 Helias, governor, 192  
 Helio, 48, 51, 52, 54  
 Heliopolis, 161, 164  
 Hellas, 186, 241  
 Hellespont, 38, 177, 196, 203, 260, 287, 481, 504, 520, 527, 568, 581, 640, 643, 695–6, 715, 718  
 Henry 'the Lion', Duke of Saxony and Bavaria, 507  
 Henry Holt, prior of Hospitallers, England, 697  
 Henry I of England, King, 444  
 Henry II, German Emperor, 348, 353, 371–2, 374, 381  
 Henry II of Castile, King, 697  
 Henry III, Emperor, 370, 374, 376, 379–81, 384  
 Henry III, King of England, 578  
 Henry IV, King of England, 697–8  
 Henry IV, Emperor, 381, 407–8, 413, 415–17  
 Henry V, German Emperor, 229  
 Henry VI (Hohenstaufen), German Emperor, 529, 536–7, 553–7, 561, 563  
 Henry of Austria, 502  
 Henry of Bavaria, Duke, 471  
 Henry of Champagne, nephew of Richard I of England, 530–32, 537  
 Henry of Dietz, envoy to Frederick, King of Sicily, 526, 532–4  
 Henry of Flanders, Regent, 547, 553  
 Henry von Kalden, Marshal, 536  
 Henry, 508  
 Henry, Castilian Prince, 606  
 Henry, Duke of Austria, 482, 499  
 Henry, Duke of Brunswick, 646  
 Henry, son of Frederick, 506  
 Henry, son of Frederick, 521, 527  
 Heraclea, 231, 242, 246, 291, 406, 432, 439, 474, 507, 561, 595, 639, 667, 724;  
 Archbishop of, 727; Bishop of, 313, 389  
 Heracleonas, son of Heraclius, 155, 163, 165  
 Heraclia, Thrace, 90–1, 197  
 Heraclian, Count, 44, 45, 47  
 Heraclii, 141  
 Heraclius, Emperor, 132, 136, 141, 147, 151–65  
 Heraclius, son of Constans II, 173, 176  
 Heraclius, general, father of Emperor, 63, 67  
 Heraclius, Patriarch of Jerusalem, 524  
 Herman, nephew of Robert Guiscard, 401, 415–16  
 Hermenigild, Visigoth prince, 129–30  
 Hermogenes, 98, 99  
 Hermus, River, 638  
 Heruls, 61, 102, 114, 116  
 Herve Francopulus, 383  
 Hethoum of Armenia, son of Constantine, 570, 581  
 Hethoum II of Armenia, 608, 630–1  
 Hibat Allah, brother of Abu Taghlib of Mosul, 326  
 Hierapolis, 107, 127, 158, 291, 320, 397–8  
 Hieraea, 152; Palace, 208  
 Hierotheus, missionary bishop, 312  
 Hilario Doria, husband of Manuel's illegitimate daughter Zampia, 696

- Hilarion, 482  
 Hilarius, Bishop of Poitiers, 18, 31  
 Hilarius, Pope, 66, 68  
 Hildebrand, brother of King Liutprand, 204  
 Hilderic, King of the Vandals, 94, 99  
 Himerius, 'Great Drunghaire' 287, 289, 291  
 Hippo Regius, 101  
 Hippo, 47, 53  
 Hippus, River, 114  
 Hira, 85, 95, 98  
 Hisham, brother of Caliph Yazid II, 198, 200, 203  
 Holy Apostles, Church of, 122, 165, 370  
 Holy Sepulchre, Church of, Jerusalem, 346, 356, 436  
 Holy Spirit, Church of, Palermo, 619  
 Homs, 286, 322, 327, 333, 433, 472–3, 510  
 Honoratus, 'Count of Orliens', 18  
 Honoria, 51, 60, 61  
 Honorius I, Pope, 154, 160, 163  
 Honorius II, Pope, 388–90, 461–3, 465, 563–4, 566  
 Honorius III, Pope, 571  
 Honorius IV, Pope, 623, 625  
 Honorius, Emperor (West), 34, 35, 37, 39, 41, 42, 43, 44, 45, 46, 49, 50, 51  
 Hormisdas IV, King, 128, 133, 159  
 Hormisdas, Pope, 90–1, 93, 95  
 Hosius, Bishop of Cordoba, 18  
 Hospitaller castle, 569  
 Hromgla, 512  
 Hugh Eteriano, 501  
 Hugh I of Cyprus, King, 553  
 Hugh of Arles, 288  
 Hugh of Cyprus, 680  
 Hugh of Jabal, Bishop, 479  
 Hugh of Lusignan, nephew of King Peter of Cyprus, 677  
 Hugh of Lyons, 420  
 Hugh of Provence, Count, 'King of Italy', 299, 302, 304, 306, 308, 311  
 Hugh of Vermandois, 430, 435  
 Hugolino of Segni, Pope Gregory IX, 571  
 Hugues de Sully, Angevin commander-in-chief in Albania, 616–18  
 Humayd, 231  
 Humbert of Vienne, 'Dauphin', 662  
 Humbert of Moyenmoutier, Cardinal, 374, 377–9  
 Humbertopulus, 414, 420, 425  
 Humphrey de Hauteville brother of Drogo, 361, 376–8, 382  
 Humphrey of Toron, Count, 493  
 Humphrey, son of Tancred of Hauteville, 361  
 Hungary/Hungarians, 26, 282–3, 300, 310, 312, 340, 363, 385, 429–30, 438, 463–4, 481, 485–8, 496–7, 499–500, 502, 508, 526, 568, 581, 605, 654, 666, 682, 692–5, 708, 715–17, 720, 723, 729–30  
 Hunneric the Vandal, 63, 66, 77, 80  
 Huns, 26, 35, 38, 44, 51, 52, 55, 57, 58, 59, 61, 62, 65, 67, 68, 79, 83, 86, 88, 94, 98, 120  
 Husain ibn Ali, C8th rebel, 221  
 Hussain, son of Caliph Ali, 'Imam', 179  
 Hyacinthus monastery, 61, 559  
 Hyatius monastery, 255  
 Hypatia, 48  
 Hypatius, nephew of Emperor Anastasius, 86, 88, 90, 100  
 Iaropolk, brother of Mstislav, C12th, 467  
 Iaropolk, son of Prince Svyatoslav, 325, 329  
 Iazges, 26  
 Ibas of Edessa, 55, 109  
 Ibelard, 537  
 Iberia, 25, 79, 89, 97, 101, 113, 129, 133–4, 158, 182, 183, 193, 216, 231, 245, 275, 327, 330–1, 336, 353, 372  
 Iberitzes, 292  
 Ibn Abbas, 'Vizier', 488–9  
 Ibn al Ash'ath, general, 188  
 Ibn al-Furat, 290  
 Ibn al-Hawwas, Emir, 388, 396  
 Ibn al-Timnah, 388–9  
 Ibn Hamud, 420  
 Ibn Muawiya, 204–5  
 Ibn Raik of Wasit, general, 'Emir al-Umara', 304–5  
 Ibn Ruzzik, 'Vizier, 489  
 Ibn Ustad-Hummuz, 345  
 Ibn Wakkas, general, 214  
 Ibn-al-Arath, 211  
 Ibrahim Beg, leader of Karamanids, 716–18, 722–3  
 Ibrahim ibn Al-Aghlab, 227  
 Ibrahim Inal, Seljuk general, 375  
 Ibrahim, 'Emir', 286  
 Ibrahim, anti-Ommayad rebel, 205  
 Ibrahim, Yazid III's brother, 204  
 Iconium (Konya), 198, 318, 390, 397, 435, 439, 448, 455, 462, 473, 480, 507, 511, 513, 526–7, 530–2, 535, 540, 547, 553–4, 559, 579, 581

- Idris, 221  
 Iftihar-al-Daula, 436  
 Ignatius of Smolensk, Russian Archbishop, 691  
 Ignatius, Patriarch, 255, 260–1, 265, 275  
 Ignatius, anti-Union bishop, 616  
 Igor, Prince of Russia, 306–7, 309  
 Ibn Abi Aqil, 398  
 Ikshidids of Egypt, dynasty, 304, 322  
 Il Arslan, son of Atziz, 491  
 Ildebad, 106, 107, 108  
 Ildico, 62  
 Ildiger, 105  
 Ilghazi of Mardin, 457–9  
 Illus, 70, 71, 77, 79, 80, 81  
 Illynicum, 16  
 Illyria, 32, 34, 46, 77, 78, 82, 84, 91, 110, 114, 128, 155  
 Illyricum, 13, 14, 19, 23, 27, 28, 33, 35, 36, 43, 103, 115  
 Ilyas Beg of Mentеше, 723  
 Imad ad-Di Zengi, son of Aqsonqor, 462  
 Imad-ed-Din of Sanjar, 516–17  
 Imbros, 727  
 Inab, battle, 484  
 Indacus, 68  
 India, 358  
 Ingund, Hermengild's wife, 130  
 Innocent I, Pope, 39, 41, 45, 49  
 Innocent II, Pope, 474–5, 465, 467–8, 472–3, 478  
 Innocent III, Pope, 537–8, 540, 542–3, 561, 563, 571  
 Innocent IV, Pope, 582–3, 587, 589  
 Innocent V, Pope, 612  
 Innocent VI, Pope, 671–2  
 Ino, Empress, Tiberius' wife, 126, 127, 135  
 Ioannicius 'the Great', St., 255  
 Ioannina, 602, 628, 657  
 Ioannitsa, Czar of Bulgaria, brother of Peter and Asen, 525, 539–40, 553–6, 547  
 Ioannopolis, 324  
 Ioanopolites, envoy of Alexius III, 535  
 Ionian Islands, 418, 519, 522, 547, 703, 709, 712  
 Iraq, 185, 435, 456, 539  
 Irenaeus, 89  
 Irene, Empress, wife of Leo IV, 201, 214, 218–23, 225–9, 241  
 Irene Ducaena, Empress, grand-daughter of Andronicus Ducas, 408, 411–13, 416, 427  
 Irene, daughter of Isaac II, 542  
 Irene, / Pirosaka, wife of John II, 442, 453, 456, 459, 466, 468  
 Irene, cousin of Andronicus III, 657  
 Irene, daughter of Alexius III, 544  
 Irene, daughter of Isaac Angelus, 531, 534, 538  
 Irene, daughter of Michael VIII, 615  
 Irene, daughter of Theodore Angelus Ducas, 577  
 Irene, Empress, wife of Andronicus II, (Yolande, q.v.), 636  
 Irene, Empress, wife of Emperor John Cantacuzene, 659–60, 662, 668–70  
 Irene, illegitimate daughter of Andronicus I, 517  
 Irene, illegitimate daughter of Andronicus II, 655, 657  
 Irene, niece of Theodore Lascaris, 562, 579  
 Irene, widow of Andronicus I, 478  
 Irmengarde, 271  
 Isa, son of Bajezid, 698, 700  
 Isaac Aaron, 518  
 Isaac Comnenus, Emperor, 381–2, 385, 388, 396, 465, 467  
 Isaac Comnenus, nephew of Andronicus I, 525, 534–5  
 Isaac Contostephanus, 'Megadux', 446  
 Isaac Ducas Comnenus, 519, 523, 529, 542  
 Isaac Comnenus, 'Sebastocrator', brother of Alexius I, 403–4, 406, 411–14  
 Isaac Comnenus, brother of John II, 474  
 Isaac Comnenus, son of John II, 451, 477  
 Isaac II, Emperor, 517–18, 520–8, 534, 536, 541, 543–6  
 Isaac Lascaris, 569  
 Isaac the Syrian, 43  
 Isaac, (Belisarius' lieutenant), 111  
 Isaac, 'Exarch', 163, 164, 166  
 Isaac, Belisarius' servant, 121  
 Isaac, brother of Manuel, 510, 513  
 Isaac, commander of Varangian Guard, 488  
 Isabella de Villehardouin, 634, 641–2, 644  
 Isabella of Achaia, daughter of William Villehardouin, 606, 608, 614–15, 627, 632  
 Isabella of Sabran, daughter of Margaret of Akova, 644–5  
 Isabella, 553, 558  
 Isabella, daughter of John of Brienne, 572  
 Isabella, daughter of Leo of Armenia, 565–67, 569  
 Isauria/Isaurian, 24, 42, 59, 60, 67, 68, 70, 77, 80, 81, 82, 83, 84, 85, 111, 113, 168–9, 192–3, 197, 613



- Isfahan, 426, 471  
 Isfandiyar of Kastamonu (Paphlagonia),  
 'Emir', 699  
 Ishaq Pasha, 722  
 Ishaq, 'Baba', 580  
 Ishoyahb, 'Catholikos', 158  
 Isidore Glabas, Archbishop, 687  
 Isidore of Miletus, 100  
 Isidore Bucharis, Palamite monk, Patriarch,  
 663, 665  
 Isidore, abbot of St. Demetrius monastery,  
 Archbishop of Kiev, Cardinal, Papal Legate,  
 titular Patriarch of Kiev/Russia, 712–13,  
 715, 723–4, 726  
 Ismail Beg of Sinope, 725, 732  
 Ismail of Sebastea, 507  
 Ismail, son of Yaqub Arslan, 499  
 Ismail, Caliph, 312  
 Ismail, ruler of Damascus, 469  
 Ismail, Samanid ruler of Khorasan, 289  
 Ismailis, 452  
 Isova monastery, 602  
 Israel Beg, 355  
 Istria, 226, 252  
 Istrian Church, 132  
 Italy, 6, 11, 14, 17, 33, 34, 35, 39–40, 42, 43,  
 47, 51, 52, 55, 57, 62, 63, 64, 65, 66, 71, 77,  
 79, 81, 82, 95, 103, 107–10, 112–14, 136,  
 186–7, 273–4, 279, 278, 283, 285, 288, , 301,  
 304, 327–8, 332, 344, 349, 353–5, 362, 371,  
 377, 380, 386, 401, 403, 415, 424, 434, 443,  
 462, 467, 474, 497, 506, 515–16, 521, 641,  
 648, 653, 657–8, 678, 697, 699, 728,  
 731, 733  
 Ithome, 724  
 Ivan, ruler of Zeta, 503  
 Ivailo, 616  
 Ivan III of Moscow, Grand Duke, 733  
 Ivan Mytzes, Constantine Tichomir's  
 cousin, 615  
 Ivanko, 535, 539–41  
 Iveron monastery, Mount Athos, 331  
 Iyad, 163  
 Izz-ed-Din of Mosul, 514–16, 522  
 Izedh Gushnasp, 113, 118, 120  
 Iziaslav of Kiev, Prince, 485, 488  
 Iziaslav, Prince of Polotsk, 349, 380  
 Izz-ed-Din Kaykavus, Sultan, eldest son of  
 Kaikhusraw, 559, 563, 566, 577, 583, 585–6,  
 590–1, 594, 596  
 Izz-ed-Din of Mosul, 514–16, 532  
 Izz-ed-Din, Sultan, 603–4, 613, 617  
 Ja'afar, brother of Caliph Ali, 204  
 Ja'afar, Vizier, 229  
 Ja'far of Sicily, Emir, 351  
 Jabala, 161  
 Jacob Baradeus, Monophysite leader, 108,  
 120, 123, 124, 128  
 Jacob Cocoo, Venatia captain, 725  
 Jacob, envoy to Frederick, 527  
 Jacopo Morosini, Venetian commander, 553  
 Jacopo Tiepolo, Venetian 'Podesta', Doge of  
 Venice, 565, 572  
 Jacques de Baux, Provençal lord, son of Philip  
 of Taranto's sister, suzerain, 682, 686–7  
 Jacques Fournier, Pope Benedict XII, 655  
 Jacquintus, Prince, 474  
 Jaffa, 206, 530–1  
 Jalal-al-Daula, Prince, 355  
 James Fadrique, governor of Athens, son of  
 ex-regent Alfonso, 672, 674–5  
 James II of Aragon, King, 638, 644  
 James of Avesnes, 547  
 James of Sicily King, 626, 628  
 James Pantaleon, Pope Urban IV, 596  
 James, Bishop, 13  
 Janah-al-Daula, 433  
 Janarius, 23  
 Jandarid dynasty, 692  
 Janissaries, 726–7  
 Jawalli, governor of Harran, 442, 445  
 Jawhar, Fatimid general, 323, 329–30  
 Jaysh, son of Khumarawah, Tulunid 'Emir', 283  
 Jazirah (West Mesopotamia), 201  
 Jean Chauderon, 'Constable', 630  
 Jean de Catavas, Lord, 602  
 Jekermish of Mosul, 442–3, 445  
 Jelal-al-Din, Shah of Khwarezm, 570–1, 573  
 Jericho, 162  
 Jerome, 45, 47, 49  
 Jerusalem, 8, 12, 49, 51, 56, 58, 62, 65, 77, 81,  
 91, 92, 96, 116, 130, 149, 158, 160–2, 173,  
 212, 239, 248, 272, 328, 421, 434, 436–8,  
 459, 461, 464, 468, 483–4, 493, 497, 503,  
 512, 522–5, 528, 530, 537, 553, 558, 560,  
 697, 712, 712  
 Jerusalem, Patriarch of, 342, 678  
 Jesi, Ancona, 534  
 Jews/Jewish, 47, 48, 55, 56, 67, 89, 95, 98,  
 148–9, 156, 159  
 Joachim of Trnovo, Bishop, Patriarch, 576  
 Joan of England, Princess, Queen of Sicily,  
 510, 528–9  
 Joanna of Naples, Queen, 678, 682–4, 686–7

- Joannicus, son of John I of Trebizond, 578  
 Joannina, 415, 709–10; Bishop of, 710  
 Job of Antioch, Patriarch, 241  
 John I, Pope, 95, 96, 97  
 John I Comnenus of Trebizond, 576, 578  
 John I Tzimisces, Emperor, 313–14, 318–19,  
 323–8, 334  
 John II Comnenus, Emperor, 422, 425–6, 429,  
 456–9, 465, 467, 470–3, 477, 479  
 John II Ducas, 646  
 John II Orsini, 652, 655  
 John II, Pope, 101, 103  
 John II of Thessaly, 617, 619, 624, 631–2, 637,  
 642, 648  
 John II of Trebizond, 541  
 John III Vatatzes, Emperor, 562, 567–8, 570,  
 572–5, 577–88  
 John III, Pope, 120, 122, 126  
 John III of Trebizond, son of Michael, 660–1  
 John IV Lascaris of Nicaea, Emperor, 586,  
 592–3, 596, 601, 604–5, 617  
 John IV, ‘The Faster’, Patriarch, 130, 132, 136,  
 164–6  
 John IV Comnenus of Trebizond, 709, 722,  
 727, 730  
 John IV, ‘The Faster’, Patriarch, 130, 132, 136,  
 164–6  
 John V, Patriarch, 176  
 John V, Pope, 182–3  
 John V, Emperor, son of Andronicus III,  
 658–9, 662–3, 666–71, 672–88, 690–1  
 John VI (see John Cantacuzene), 694  
 John VI, Patriarch, 193  
 John VI, Pope, 189–90  
 John VII, Pope, 191  
 John VII, son of Andronicus IV, 681, 682,  
 684–5, 687, 690–2, 696–9, 701  
 John VIII, Emperor, 706, 708–10, 711–14,  
 716–17, 720–1  
 John VIII, Pope, 273–5, 276–8  
 John IX, Pope, 285, 293  
 John IX Agapetus, Patriarch, 450, 468  
 John X, Pope, 300  
 John XI, Pope, 301–2, 304  
 John XII, 636, 643  
 John XII, Pope, 313, 316, 318  
 John XII, Patriarch, 633  
 John XIII, Pope, 320, 325  
 John (XIII) Glykys, Patriarch, 645–6  
 John XIV, Pope, 333, 354  
 John XVI, Pope, John Philagathos, 340–1  
 John XVII, Pope, 345  
 John XXI, Pope, 612–13  
 John XXII, Pope, 655  
 John XXIII, Pope, 703  
 John of Thebes, Bishop, 501  
 John Xiphilinus, 371, 375, 390  
 John (nephew of Vitalian), 105, 106  
 John (son of Vitalian), 111  
 John (the younger) of Gravina, ruler of  
 Dyrrhichium/Durazzo, 678  
 John ‘Primacerius’, 51, 52  
 John ‘the Bastard’, ruler of Thessaly, 625  
 John ‘the Fearless’, Duke of Nevers, son of  
 Duke Philip of Burgundy, 694–5  
 John ‘the Grammarian’, 238, 241, 245, 247  
 John ‘the Hunchback’, 83, 84, 86  
 John ‘the patrician’, 187  
 John ‘the Scythian’, 78, 80, 83, 85  
 John Alexander, Czar of Bulgaria, 652, 658,  
 660, 668, 676–7, 680, 705  
 John Angelus Ducas, ‘Sebastocrator’, governor  
 of Thraciesion, ‘Sebastocrator’, 516, 520–2,  
 540  
 John Angelus, governor of Thessaly, 657, 663  
 John Aplaces, 236  
 John Asen III, Czar of Bulgaria, 615–16, 621  
 John Asen Zaccaria, son of Centurione  
 Zaccaria, 728  
 John Asen, son of Ioannitsa, ‘King of Vlachs  
 and Bulgarians’, 556, 559, 564, 570–2,  
 574–5, 577–8, 580  
 John Axuch, ‘Grand Domestic’, 483  
 John Bexius, ‘Chartophylax’ of Hagia Sophia,  
 Patriarch, 609–13, 615–16, 620–1, 624  
 John Bladynterus, envoy to Pope, 705  
 John Boucicaut, ‘Marshal’, renowned knight,  
 ‘Grand Constable’, governor of Genoa,  
 695–9  
 John Branas, 519  
 John Calecas, Patriarch, 654, 658–9, 660,  
 661–3  
 John Camaterus, ‘Chartophylax’, 537  
 John Camaterus, 494  
 John Camaterus, Patriarch, 554  
 John Cantacuzene, fl. 1140s, 489  
 John Cantacuzene, fl. 1180s, 521–2  
 John Cantacuzene, fl. 1240s, 585  
 John Cantacuzene, fl. 1270s, 615  
 John Cantacuzene, Emperor (John VI), 647–50,  
 651–2, 654–5, 657–70, 672, 675, 677,  
 685–7  
 John Cantacuzene, Constantine XI’s officer,  
 724

- John Choniates, Patriarch, 546  
 John Colobus, 272  
 John Comnenus, 'the Fat', rebel (1201), 541  
 John Comnenus of Dyrrachium, 444  
 John Comnenus Vatatzes, 516, 520  
 John Comnenus, nephew of Manuel I, 507, 512  
 John Comnenus, son of John II's brother Isaac, 475  
 John Contostephanus, Manuel I's general, 494–5  
 John Contostephanus, Isaac II's general, 523  
 John Crescentius, 333, 345  
 John Curcuas, 278, 297, 299  
 John de Chateamorand, Boucicaud's lieutenant, 696  
 John Drimys, leader of unsuccessful pro-Lascarid plot, 640  
 John Ducas Camaterus, 526  
 John Ducas of Thessaly, 620  
 John Ducas, 'Caesar', Constantine X's brother, 382, 396–7, 399–401, 403–6, 408–9, 411–13, 419, 426, 432  
 John Ducas, 'Great Heteriarch', 512  
 John Ducas, Manuel I's general, 490, 498  
 John Ducas, governor of Dyrrachium, 425  
 John Ducas, son of Andronicus Ducas, grandson of 'Caesar' John, 406  
 John Echinus, 242  
 John Eirenikos, 505  
 John Eludas, 292  
 John Gabalas, governor of Rhodes, 574–5, 579, 585  
 John Garidas, 294, 296  
 John Geometrus, poet, 334  
 John Glykys, 'Logothete of Drome', 630  
 John Gregorius, 537  
 John Hexabulius, 240, 242  
 John Hunyadi, Hungarian general, 715–18, 720, 729–30  
 John Italus, 414  
 John Lagus, governor, Praetorium prison, 539  
 John Lemigius, 147  
 John Lydus, Bishop of Ephesus, 108  
 John Marus, 164  
 John Mauropus of Euchaita, 368  
 John Mavrozomes, 520  
 John Monomachus, governor of Thessalonica, 641  
 John Moschus, 151, 160  
 John Mystacon, 130, 132, 134  
 John Mysticus, minister of Romanus I, 297–8  
 John of Alexandria, governor, 141  
 John of Amathus, Patriarch of Alexandria, 148–9, 151  
 John of Antioch, Patriarch, C5th, 53, 54, 55, 57  
 John of Antioch, Patriarch 248  
 John of Athens, Duke, 611–12  
 John of Bethune, Baldwin II's mercenary commander, 579  
 John of Brienne, King of Jerusalem, Regent of Latin Empire, 558, 560, 573–7  
 John of Cateas, 161  
 John of Cephallonia, Count, 645  
 John of Conza, 150, 151  
 John of Damascus, 199–201, 208  
 John of Gothia, Bishop, 220  
 John of Gravina (the younger), governor of Corinth, 673, 683, 687  
 John of Gravina, younger brother of Philip of Taranto, 646, 654  
 John of Ibelin, Lord of Beirut, 558  
 John of Larissa, Bishop, 501  
 John of Montferrat, Marquis, 639  
 John of Parma, minister-general of Franciscans, 585–6  
 John of Procida, 616, 619  
 John of Ravenna (John X), 292  
 John of Thessaly, 593, 608, 612, 614, 621  
 John of Trani, Bishop, 377  
 John of Tycopolis, 34  
 John of Velletri, Bishop, 384  
 John Oliver, Serb friend of Stephen Dusan, 659  
 John Orsini of Thessaly, 653  
 John Palaeologus, son of Andronicus II, governor of Thessalonica, 593, 603, 611, 626  
 John Parastron, Franciscan friar, 609  
 John Philagathos, 340  
 John Philagethus, Bishop of Piacenza, 338  
 John Platyn, 'Exarch', 183  
 John Rhodinus, 293, 297  
 John Rizocopus, 'Exarch', 192  
 John Rogathinus, 121  
 John Roger, 486  
 John Seismus, 155  
 John Sisman, Czar, 680, 689, 692  
 John Spyridonakes, governor of Smolena, 541  
 John Stephen, Serbia client, 652  
 John Stephen, son of Michael Sisman, 651  
 John Stirioni, 555  
 John Stracimir, 694  
 John Synadenus, 'Grand Stratopedarch', 618

- John Tarchaniotes, 400  
 John Tarchaneiotos, commander in Anatolia, 633–4  
 John Talaia, 79  
 John the ‘Military Logothete’, 221–2  
 John the ‘Orphanotropus’, eunuch, brother of Michael IV, 360, 362, 364–9  
 John the ‘protospatharius’, 303  
 John the ‘Rector’, 296  
 John the ‘Sacellarius’, 218  
 John the Cappadocian, 91, 98, 99, 100, 101, 105, 107  
 John the Grammarian, Patriarch, 251, 253  
 John the Presbyter, 294  
 John Troglita, 107, 110, 112–115, 118  
 John Tzibus, 107  
 John Ugijesa of Serres, 680  
 John Ugijesa, brother of Vukasin, 672  
 John Uros, son of Simeon Uros, lord of Thessaly, 681–2  
 John Xerus, Bishop of Naupachus, 587  
 John Vladimir of Dioclea, Serbian Prince, 341  
 John Vladislav, 349–51, 366  
 John Xerus, Bishop of Naupachus, 587  
 John Xiphilinus of Trebizond, Patriarch, 368, 395, 405  
 John, ‘Catholicos’, 291  
 John, ‘Emir’, 466  
 John, ‘Grand Domestic’, brother of Michael Palaeologus, 93  
 John, ‘Master of Soldiers’, 128  
 John, ‘Monophysite’, 91  
 John, ‘patrician’, 187  
 John, ‘spatharius’, 140  
 John, Archbishop, 185  
 John, biographer of Peter Thomas, Latin Bishop of Sozopolis, 673  
 John, brother of Isaac Comnenus, 386  
 John, co-ruler of Trebizond, son of David, 730  
 John, Duke of Lancaster (John of Gaunt), 693  
 John, elder son of Guy de la Roche, 602, 617  
 John, elder son of Theodore Angelus Ducas, 577, 582  
 John, general, 108  
 John, legate, 284  
 John, Patriarch (520s), 91–3  
 John, Patriarch (560s), 123, 124, 127, 134  
 John, Patriarch, 633–4, 635, 637  
 John, ruler of Thessaly, illegitimate son of Michael II, 593, 607  
 John, son of Alexius Apocaucus, governor of Thessalonica, 659, 661–2  
 John, son of Andronicus Contostephanus, 520  
 John, son of Count Richard Orsini, 637, 638  
 John Comnenus, son of John II’s brother Isaac, 475  
 John, son of Peter I Orseolo, 341, 345–6  
 John of Ibelin, son of Queen Maria Comnena, 533  
 John-Sembat of Armenia, King, 352–3, 357, 363  
 John-Sennacherim, King of Vaspurakan, 356  
 Jonah, proposed anti-Unionist successor to Cardinal Isidore, 723  
 Jordan, Count, son of Richard of Capua, 409–10, 418, 423  
 Jordan valley, 149  
 Joscelin of Molfetta, 398–9  
 Joscelin of Courtenay, 441–2, 445, 456–7, 459, 463, 465  
 Joscelin of Turbessel, 466, 459, 470, 472–3, 476, 479, 484, 493  
 Joseph Bringas, eunuch, 315–18  
 Joseph II, Patriarch, 705, 712–13, 732  
 Joseph of Cathara, 225–6, 231–3, 235  
 Joseph, archbishop of Thessalonica, 232  
 Joseph, Metropolitan of Kiev, 576  
 Joseph, Patriarch 643  
 Joseph, Patriarch, 605, 609–10, 612, 616, 620–1  
 Joseph, successor to Genesios as Paulician leader, 205  
 Jovian, Emperor, 22, 23  
 Jovinus, 21  
 Jovinus, rebel, 46–7  
 Jovinus, Western Minister, 45–6  
 Jovius, 21  
 Juan de Heredia, ‘Grand Master’, 683–4  
 Juan de Urtubia, co-leader of ‘Navvarese Company’, 683  
 Juansher of Kakhelia, 231  
 Judith of Evreux, wife of Roger, 389  
 Julian ‘Master of Soldiers’, 83  
 Julian Alps, 32, 34  
 Julian harbour, Constantinople, 544  
 Julian of Constantinople, 83  
 Julian the Chief Notary, 45  
 Julian, ‘Count of the East’, 21, 22  
 Julian, Emperor, 13, 16, 18, 19, 20, 21–3, Julian, heretic, 53  
 Julian, Samaritan rebel, 98  
 Julian, envoy, 125  
 Juliana Anicia, 90, 97  
 Julio Cesarini, Cardinal, 713–16, 718

- Julius 'Nepos', Emperor, 66, 69–70, 78  
 Julius Constantius, 13  
 Julius Valerianus Majorian (us), Emperor, 64  
 Julius, 'Master of Soldiers', 27  
 Julius, Bishop of Rome, 11, 13, 14, 15, 17  
 Junayd, ruler of Aydin, 704–5  
 Justatus, 80  
 Justin (Germanus' son), 113, 118, 122  
 Justin I, Emperor, 84, 91–8  
 Justin II, Emperor, 122–7  
 Justina, Empress, 16, 26, 30, 31  
 Justinian I, Emperor, 92–102, 112–18, 121–2, 127  
 Justinian II, Emperor, 176, 179, 182–7, 189–93, 245, 314  
 Justinian, Bishop of Colonea, 184  
 Justinian, son of Germanus, 126  
 Juvenal, 51, 61, 62, 65
- Kabul, 188  
 Kaikhusraw(II), Seljuk Sultan, 533, 535–6, 546, 554–6, 558–9, 564  
 Kaikhusraw (III), Seljuk Sultan, son of Sultan Rukn-al-Din, 604, 613, 617, 621–3  
 Kaisan, 466  
 Kakhetia, 390, 418, 443  
 Kalamata, 553, 630, 704  
 Kalavryta, 712, 730–1  
 Kaliman of Bulgaria, 580, 583  
 Kaliman II of Bulgaria, 593  
 Kalonoros, 567  
 Kantara, Cyprus, 529  
 Kara Arslan of Diyarbeka, 479  
 Kara Burun, 655  
 Karadja Beg, commander in Thrace, 724–5  
 Karakhanid emirate, 355  
 Karamanids, 613, 617, 688, 690, 695–6, 704, 716, 722  
 Karasi, 637; Emir of, 654  
 Karatay, minister to Izz-ed-Din, 585–6  
 Kardala, 80, 179  
 Kardam, 'Khan', 217, 223, 225, 228  
 Karistan Sulaiman Bay, governor of Constantinople, 727  
 Karpathos, 26  
 Kars, 285, 353, 378  
 Karytaina, 602, 647, 731  
 Kasim Beg, Turkish general, 716  
 Kastamoni (Castamona), 692  
 Kastritsa, 731–2  
 Kathun, stepmother of Barklyaruq, 426  
 Kavadh, 'Great King', 81, 86, 87, 88, 97, 99, 156–7
- Kavalla, 570  
 Kaward of Kerman, 'Emir', uncle of Malik Shah, 404  
 Kayseri, 613, 698  
 Kedrea, 454  
 Kerbogha, Emir, 434–5, 440  
 Kerman, 404  
 Khabur, River, 110, 445  
 Khadija, Mohammed's wife, 147, 152  
 Khagans, 119–20, 131, 135, 136, 153  
 Khalid Ibn Barmak, 212  
 Kharijah, 165  
 Kharijites, 187, 204  
 Kharput, 306  
 Khatsik, Bishop, 336  
 Khazars, 154–5, 182, 185, 189, 197, 200, 201, 212, 220, 231, 262, 319, 349  
 Khidr Shah Beg, 'Emir' of Saruchan, 699  
 Khilat, 306  
 Khitay Tartar nomads, 476  
 Khorasan, 187, 210 228, 230, 233, 236, 239, 242, 274–5, 277, 285, 317, 435, 442, 476  
 Khoros, 455  
 Khumarawah, son of Ahmed Ibn Tulun, 279  
 Khusraw, youngest son of Kilij Arslan, 525, 531  
 Kiev, 257, 320–1, 325, 330, 335, 349–51, 353, 380, 461, 505, 580, 667, 669, 715  
 Kilij Arslan (I), Seljuk Sultan, son of Sulaiman, 426, 430, 432, 435, 439–41, 445  
 Kilij Arslan (II), Seljuk Sultan, 489, 496–7, 507, 509, 511, 513–14, 516–17, 525–6, 530–1  
 Kilij Arslan III, Seljuk Sultan, son of Rukn-al-Din, 546, 554  
 Kirkuk, 156  
 Kocel, Prince, 272  
 Kogh Vasil, Armenian lord of Kaisun, 445, 448, 450  
 Konya, Anatolia, 591, 596, 614, 622–4, 695  
 Kopek, chief minister, 577, 579  
 Kormesios, 'Khan', 207, 211  
 Kose Dagh, battle of, 581  
 Kossovo, battle of, 689  
 Koule, battle, 421  
 Kovrat, Crimea, 151  
 Kroia, 655, 717; fortress, 722; Lord of, 562  
 Krules, 254  
 Krum, Khan, 228, 232–4, 236–7  
 Kufa, Mesopotamia, 162, 173, 179, 181, 185, 186, 204–5, 288  
 Kulayb, 328  
 Kur valley, 154  
 Kur Valley, Georgia, 570, 576

- Kuseila, 181  
 Kutaisi, Georgia, 231, 570  
 Kutlumish, cousin of Alp Arslan, 390  
 Kutrigurs, 98, 106, 119  
 Kuzin Pasha, Mongol chieftain, 636  
 Kvirike IV, King of Kakhetia, 418  
 Kypsela, 534  
 Kyra, convent of, 670  
 Kyrenia, Cyprus, 204, 426, 529
- Lacedaimon, 602  
 Lachanas/Ivailo, pretender to Bulgaria, 614–15, 630  
 Laconia, 303, 541, 601–2, 612, 719  
 Ladislas, brother of Stephen IV of Hungary, 496–7  
 Ladislas, St., King of Hungary, 407, 428  
 Laeta, 45  
 Lakhimid confederation, 95, 117  
 Lambert of Clermont, 435  
 Lambert of Ostia, Cardinal, Pope Honorius II, 461  
 Lambert, son of Guy of Spoleto, 265, 281–4  
 Lamboi, 702  
 Lamia, Thessaly, 583, 593, 643  
 Lampe, 448  
 Lampsacus, 570, 576, 589, 594, 674  
 Lamus, River, 230, 254, 305, 309  
 Lando, Pope, 292  
 Landulf of Benevento, 304  
 Landulf of Capua, Prince, 290  
 Landulph the Italian, 482  
 Landulph, 436, 442, 446  
 Laodicea Combustea, 214  
 Laodicea, Syria, 197, 290, 434, 436–8, 440, 441–3, 465, 470, 482, 495  
 Laonius Chalcocondylas, historian, 720  
 Larissa, 331, 334, 415, 546, 557, 560, 579, 79  
 Lateran, Rome, 86, 87, 170, 214, 254, 262, 319; basilica, 284, 468  
 Laurentius, 86, 87, 88  
 Lazar of Serbia, 681  
 Lazar, King, Sultan, 689  
 Lazar, son of George Brankovic of Serbia, 717, 729, 731  
 Lazarus, 250  
 Lazarus, Patriarch of Jerusalem, 662–3, 665  
 Lazica/Lazicans, 66, 94, 97, 101, 110, 112, 114, 117–20, 174  
 Lebanon, 112, 181, 183, 322, 328, 352  
 Lecce, 382, 534  
 Lecus of Philippopolis, 409
- Legates, 378–9  
 Lemnos, 297, 671, 688, 690, 700, 705, 706, 727  
 Leo ‘curopalatus’, brother of Nicophorus Phocas, 318, 321  
 Leo ‘the Armenian’, 236  
 Leo ‘the Mathematician’, 250–1  
 Leo Calothetus, Byzantine official, 665  
 Leo Calothetus, governor of Phocaea, 673  
 Leo Calothetus, leader of Greek uprising on Chios, 651  
 Leo Cephalas, 415  
 Leo Chamarethus, 541  
 Leo Chamodracon, 245  
 Leo Choerosphactes, 283, 287  
 Leo Diogenes, pretender, 428  
 Leo Diogenes, son of Romanus IV and Eudocia, 397, 453  
 Leo Gabalas, ruler of Rhodes, 579  
 Leo I, Pope, 57, 60, 61, 62, 63, 66  
 Leo I or II the Anchabadze, King of Abasgia, 214  
 Leo I, Emperor, 64–6, 68, 69, 70, 78, 80  
 Leo II, Emperor, 69–70  
 Leo II of Armenia, King, 521, 523, 532–3, 536–9, 556, 559, 563, 565  
 Leo II, Pope, 69, 70, 180, 181, 225  
 Leo III of Abasgia, 315  
 Leo III of Armenia, 608  
 Leo III, Emperor, 189, 192, 194–9, 201–2  
 Leo III, Pope, 238, 291  
 Leo IV, Emperor, 206, 217, 226–7  
 Leo V, Emperor, 237–9, 241, 245  
 Leo V, Pope, 287  
 Leo VI, Emperor, 264, 272, 274, 276–7, 279–88, 291, 294–5, 301  
 Leo VII, Pope, 304–5  
 Leo VIII, Pope, 318–19  
 Leo III of Abasgia, 315  
 Leo IV, Pope, 217–18, 255–8  
 Leo V, Pope, 287  
 Leo IX, Pope, 374–5, 376–9  
 Leo Lependrus, 362  
 Leo Melissenus, 334  
 Leo of Adrianople, Bishop, 501  
 Leo of Chalcedon, Bishop, 414, 417, 420  
 Leo of Ochrid, Archbishop, 377–8  
 Leo of Rhodes, Bishop, 501  
 Leo of Synnada, Bishop, 340  
 Leo of Thessalonica, Archbishop, 254  
 Leo of Tripoli, 287, 291, 297  
 Leo Paraspondylus, chief minister, 378

- Leo Phocas, 'strategus', 309, 315, 323, 325  
 Leo Phocus, general, son of the elder  
     Nicephorus Phocus, 293–5  
 Leo Sgurus, 541, 546, 556  
 Leo Stypes, Patriarch, 477  
 Leo the 'protospatharius', 329  
 Leo the 'spatharius', 228  
 Leo Tornicus, cousin of Constantine IX, 372  
 Leo I, Pope, 57, 60, 61, 62, 63, 66  
 Leo, 'Duke', 408  
 Leo, 'strategus' of Anatolicon, 195  
 Leo, 'strategus', 234, 236  
 Leo, 'strategus' of Thrace, 210  
 Leo, Bishop, Byzantine ambassador, 340  
 Leo, Cardinal, Papal Legate, 547  
 Leo, general, 38  
 Leo, Prince, 213, 217  
 Leo, ruler of Cilician Armenia, 472, 475  
 Leo, son of Constantine VI, 225  
 Leo, son of Thoros the Armenian, 463–6,  
     470–2  
 Leo, Stypes, Patriarch, 468  
 Leo, younger son of Bardas Phocus, 313, 335  
 Leo Vatatzes, 502  
 Leonardo Tocco of Cephallonia, Orsini  
     relative, 672, 682  
 Leonardo II Tocco, 721  
 Leonas, 20  
 Leonine City, Rome, 416  
 Leontari, 693, 695  
 Leontarion, Morea, 724, 731–2  
 Leontaris, 706  
 Leontia, 68, 78  
 Leontinoi, Sicily, 256  
 Leontius, 'strategus' of Anatolicon, Emperor,  
     185, 186, 187, 195  
 Leontius, 80, 81  
 Leontius, eunuch, 139  
 Leontius, monk of 'Theotokos' monastery,  
     526  
 Leontius, Patriarch, 526  
 Leovigild, King, 12  
 Lepanto, 683, 701; castle, 629  
 Lesbos, 229, 365, 410, 426, 606, 628, 638, 655,  
     671–2, 688, 717  
 Leuderis, 104  
 Leutharis, 115–17  
 Lewis 'the German', King, 252, 262, 273, 277  
 Lewis of Provence, 285–6, 288  
 Lexius Philanthropenus, 648  
 Libanias, 21  
 Libelarius, 'Duke' of Mesopotamia, 97  
 Liberius, Bishop of Rome, 17, 18, 19, 114,  
     115–17  
 Libius Severus, Emperor, 66, 67  
 Libya, 36  
 Licario, 611–13, 624  
 Lichudes, 371  
 Licinia Eudoxia, Empress (West), 51, 56, 57, 60  
 Licinius, Emperor, 6, 7  
 Liguria, 105, 124, 166  
 Lilius, 138  
 Limassol, Cyprus, 529  
 Limigantes, 19  
 Liparæ Islands, 277  
 Liparit, Georgian noble, 373, 378, 386  
 Lipenium, 426  
 Listven, 354  
 Lithuania, 671, 697, 712  
 Little Preslav, 321  
 Liutpert, 188  
 Liutprand of Cremona, Bishop, 321–2  
 Liutprand the Lombard, 193, 199–201, 203–4  
 Lobitzes, 525  
 Loire valley, 61  
 Lombards/Lombardy, 114, 115, 123–4, 126–9,  
     131, 134, 137, 166, 174, 176, 188, 202,  
     274–5, 296, 308, 311–12, 316, 350–1, 354,  
     364, 366–7, 377, 438–9, 494, 557, 562  
 London, 698  
 Longinus of Kardala, 80, 82, 83, 85  
 Lopadium, Bithynia, 451, 453–4, 480, 518;  
     Bishop of, 518  
 Loredan, 719  
 Lothar, Emperor, son of Louis 'the Pious', 239,  
     243, 247, 250, 252–3, 256, 258  
 Lothar, 'Holy Roman Emperor', 467–72  
 Lothar II, son of King Hugh of Provence, 311  
 Lothar, cardinal-deacon, Pope Innocent III,  
     537  
 Louis 'the Great' of Hungary, 676  
 Louis 'the Pious', Emperor, 237, 252–3  
 Louis II, Emperor, 256, 273–5, 258–9  
 Louis VII of France, 480–4, 499, 506–7, 513  
 Louis IX, King, 577, 579, 585, 587, 596, 601,  
     607–8  
 Louis of Burgundy, 644–5  
 Louis of Evreux, 678, 683  
 Louis of Hungary, 677  
 Louis of Orleans, Duke, 694  
 Louis VII of France, 480–4, 499, 506–7, 513  
 Lu'lu, Chamberlain, 345  
 Lucas Notaras, 'Grand Duke', 724  
 Lucera, 606

- Lucullan, 22  
 Lucius II, Pope, 478–9  
 Lucius III, Pope, 515, 521  
 Ludovico, Papal candidate, 559  
 Luke Chrysoberges, Patriarch of  
   Constantinople, 492, 497, 501, 506  
 Lulun, 247, 260, 275  
 Lulu, regent of Aleppo, 454  
 Lupinus, 23, 26  
 Lycandrus, 329, 396–7  
 Lycia, 23, 104, 177  
 Lycus valley 60  
 Lydia, 108, 177, 637  
 Lyons, 30, 33, 583, 604, 610, 694
- Mabricias, 391  
 Macarius of Antioch, Patriarch, 180  
 Macarius of Ochrid, Archbishop, 633  
 Macarius, 130  
 Macarius, Archbishop, 693  
 Macarius, Patriarch, 683–5  
 Macedonia/Macedonians, 28, 59, 135, 222,  
   236, 302, 324–5, 335, 343, 348, 365, 369,  
   380, 391, 534, 541, 583–4, 589, 601, 603,  
   617–18, 633, 641–3, 654, 659–60, 666, 674,  
   679, 686, 691, 724  
 Macedonius, Bishop of Constantinople, 15,  
   16, 20, 84, 89  
 Macri Plagi, battle of, 603  
 Macrael, 36, 37  
 Maeander, River, 264, 582  
 Maeander valley, 457, 481, 494–5, 511–12,  
   532, 536, 540, 546, 573, 603, 617–18, 621,  
   627–8, 638  
 Magdalena, niece of Carlo Tocco, 709  
 Magnaura Palace, Constantinople, 221, 250,  
   253, 314  
 Magnentius, 16, 17  
 Magnesia, Byzantium, 492, 593, 635–6, 638–9,  
   699, 718, 719, 722  
 Magnus Maximus, Emperor, 30, 31, 32  
 Magyars, 282–4, 299, 303–4, 307, 310, 312,  
   321, 386  
 Mahaut of Achaia, daughter of Isabella de  
   Villehardouin, 641, 644–6  
 Mahdiya, 460  
 Mahiot de Coquerel, co-leader of ‘Navvarese  
   Company’ of mercenaries, ‘bailli’, 683, 686  
 Mahmud of Ghazni, ‘Sultan’, 342, 344, 355, 358  
 Mahmud of Mesopotamia, Sultan, son of  
   Sultan Mohammed, 456–7, 458, 466  
 Mahmud Pasha, vizier, 730–2
- Mahmud, ruler of Damascus, 474  
 Mahmud, son of Kathun, 426  
 Mahmud, son of Nasr, 383  
 Maina peninsula, 731  
 Maina, 596, 601  
 Mainz, 380  
 Maio of Bari, ‘Grand Admiral’, 488, 490, 495–6  
 Majorian, Emperor (West), 65, 66  
 Malaga, 117, 157  
 Malagina, 221, 226, 229, 254  
 Malamir, ‘Khan’ of Bulgaria, 249, 256  
 Malamocco, 233–4  
 Malatya (Melitene), 591, 696  
 Malek, 175  
 Malik Nazir Hasan, Sultan of Egypt, 665  
 Malik Shah, eldest son of Kilij Arslan II, 525–7,  
   530  
 Malik Shah, Seljuk Sultan, son of Kilij Arslan I,  
   445, 448, 450–1, 453–5  
 Malik Shah, Sultan, son of Alp Arslan, 402,  
   404, 409, 418–19, 425–6, 434  
 Malta, 400, 425  
 Mamalas, servant of Alexius the ‘protostrator’,  
   519  
 Mameluke, 697  
 Mamikonid family, 170, 216  
 Mamistra, 319, 440  
 Manalough/Monolyk, ‘Emir’, 451, 454  
 Manasses, Bishop, 440  
 Manes, ‘strategus’ of Cibyrrhaeots, 201  
 Manfred, illegitimate son of Emperor  
   Frederick II, 589, 591–3, 601–4, 623  
 Manfred, second son of Frederick II of Sicily, 644  
 Mangana convent, 413  
 Mangana monastery, Constantinople, 372,  
   456, 670  
 Mangana Palace, Constantinople, 360, 388, 516  
 Mangaphas, Philadelphia, 526  
 Manisa, 718  
 Manjutakids, 571  
 Manjutakin, Fatimid general, 337–8  
 Mankaphas, ruler of Philadelphia, 526  
 Mankaphas, ruler of Smyrna, 557  
 Manolada, 645  
 Manicheans, 53  
 Mansur, brother of Abd-al- Malik, 316  
 Mansur, Samanid ‘Emir’ of Khorasan, 329, 342  
 Mansur, son of Nuh II, 340  
 Mantua, 62, 134, 390  
 Manuel Asen, 660  
 Manuel Curticius, 308  
 Manuel Melachrinus, 708



- Manuel, son of Andronicus of Trebizond, 653  
 Manuel ('Maximus') Planudes, eminent scholar, 640  
 Manuel Camytzes, 535  
 Manuel Cantacuzene, 728, 730  
 Manuel Comnenus, father of Isaac I, 335  
 Manuel Comnenus, brother of Alexius I, 396, 398–9, 405  
 Manuel I Comnenus, Emperor, 457, 477–515, 521, 547  
 Manuel Chrysoloras, Greek scholar, professor at Florence, 697  
 Manuel I of Trebizond, 578, 602  
 Manuel II, Emperor, 664–5, 671, 676, 679–82, 685–8, 690–705, 708, 723  
 Manuel II of Trebizond, 653  
 Manuel III of Trebizond, son of Alexius III, 690, 705  
 Manuel Lascaris, governor of Didymoteichon, 589  
 Manuel of Nicaea, Patriarch, 565, 582  
 Manuel Philanthropenus, 694, 706  
 Manuel Santanarenius, Patriarch, 563  
 Manuel the Armenian, 167, 240, 245–6  
 Manuel, 253  
 Manuel, 696  
 Manuel, brother of John Vatatzes, 578  
 Manuel Cantacuzene, 'Despot', 660, 662–3, 665, 671–2, 675, 677, 685  
 Manuel, brother of Theodore Angelus Ducas, 570, 573, 577–80  
 Manuel, nephew of Nicephorus, 319  
 Manuel, Patriarch, 565, 567, 582  
 Manuel, son of Alexius Apocaucus, governor of Adrianople, 659, 661  
 Manuel, son of Andronicus Contostephanus, 520  
 Manuel, son of Isaac II, 558–9  
 Manuel, younger brother of Andronicus III, 647  
 Manzikert, 169, 199, 305, 337, 400, 573; battle, 378, 400–1  
 Mar'ash, 317  
 Mara, 'Sultana', daughter of George Brankovic, 722, 29  
 Marble Palace, Constantinople, 321  
 Marcellae, 210, 223, 234  
 Marcellinus, Count (C5th), 64, 66, 67  
 Marcellinus, Count (C14th), 16, 31, 32,  
 Marcellus, 'Count of Excubitors', 108, 113, 120–1  
 Marcellus, Bishop of Ancyra, 12, 14, 15, 24  
 Marcian, Emperor, 60, 62, 63, 64, 67, 78, 80  
 Marcian, C6th general, 121, 125  
 Marcianopolis, 24, 132  
 Marco Gradenigo, 'Podesta', 595  
 Marco Sanudo of Naxos, Duke, 611  
 Marco Sanudo, Venetian 'Duke of Naxos and the Archipelago', 547, 556, 561, 571  
 Marcus Flavius Eparchus Avitus, Emperor, 63  
 Marcus, British usurper, 42  
 Marcus, son of Basiliacus, 70  
 Mardaites, 184  
 Mardin, 440, 459, 480  
 Margaret of Akova, younger sister of Isabella of Villehardouin, 644–5  
 Margaret of Hungary, 546  
 Margaret, daughter of Bela III, 521, 556–8  
 Margaret, mother of William II of Sicily, 502  
 Margaritone, Sicilian adventurer, first 'Count of Cephallonia', 519, 523  
 Margus, 5, 57  
 Maria 'the Alan', Princess, wife of Michael VII, 403, 410–11, 413, 422–3  
 Maria Cantacuzene, 607, 672  
 Maria Argyra, cousin of Basil, wife of John (son of Doge Peter I Orseolo), 345–6  
 Maria Comnena, Queen of Jerusalem, 503, 511, 512, 518, 524, 528, 533, 558  
 Maria despina 641  
 Maria Melissena, Duchess, wife of Duke Antonio Acciajuoli  
 Maria of Amnia, 222, 230  
 Maria of Brienne, wife of Baldwin II, 585  
 Maria of Montferrat, Queen of Jerusalem, 558, 560  
 Maria Sclerena, 365, 368–70  
 Maria, daughter of Andrew of Hungary, 564  
 Maria, daughter of Andronicus I, 515  
 Maria, daughter of John Asen, 570  
 Maria, daughter of Manuel I, 486, 498, 506, 513  
 Maria, daughter of Nicephorus of Epirus, 629  
 Maria, daughter of Theodore Vatatzes, 586, 590  
 Maria, daughter of Theophilus, 248  
 Maria of Antioch, Empress of Manuel I, 495, 497, 514–17  
 Maria, Empress of Honorius (West), 37  
 Maria, Empress, mother of Andronicus III, 653  
 Maria, Empress, wife of Michael VII and Nicephorus III, 410–11, 413, 423  
 Maria, great-niece of Manuel, 502  
 Maria, niece of Andronicus II, 637  
 Maria, niece of Manuel I 491, 495–7  
 Maria, niece of Michael II of Epirus, 610  
 Maria, Queen, 504, 506–7

- Maria, sister of John V, 671  
 Maria, sister of Manuel I and wife of John Roger, 479  
 Maria, third wife of John VIII, 709  
 Maria, wife of Constantine Tichomir, 614  
 Maria, wife of Constantine V, 206–7  
 Maria, wife of John Vladislav, 351  
 Maria (Rita), wife of Michael IX, 631, 633  
 Maria, 'Despina Khatun', illegitimate daughter of Michael VIII, 605, 608, 615, 641  
 Maria?, daughter of Constantine IX, 372  
 Marianus, Praefect, 265  
 Marianus Argyrus, 'catepan', 308, 313, 315, 317–18  
 Marianus, 447  
 Marianus, the 'Cubicularius', 164  
 Marie de Bourbon, 677  
 Marina, 48  
 Marino Sanudo Torcello, Venetian Crusading enthusiast, 653  
 Marino Zeno, 'Podesta', 553–4  
 Marinus II, Pope, 307, 309  
 Marinus, 80, 90, 91, 93  
 Marinus, Bishop of Caere, 278  
 Marinus, Pope, 278  
 Mario Orsini of Cephallonia, 555  
 Maritsa, River, 590, 60, 668  
 Maritsa valley, 297, 334, 344, 419–20, 463, 481, 485, 572, 648, 680  
 Marj-al-Rabit, battle of, 181  
 Mark Eugenicus, theologian, Archbishop of Ephesus, 713–15, 716, 718  
 Mark Zylocaravis, 733  
 Mark, Bishop of Rome, 12  
 Marko Kraljevic, ally of Manuel II, 694  
 Markward, Chamberlain, envoy from Frederick Barbarossa, 526  
 Marmaem, general, 294  
 Marmara, Sea of, 633  
 Marozia, daughter of Theophylact, 287, 295, 299–302  
 Marsa, 35  
 Marseilles, 47  
 Martha, 670  
 Martha, daughter of Bagrat of Georgia, 391  
 Martin I of Aragon, King, 696–8  
 Martin I, Pope, 168–72  
 Martin IV, Pope, 618–19, 623  
 Martin V, Pope, 705, 710–11  
 Martin, 'Master of Soldiers', 105, 107, 109  
 Martin, general, 117–18  
 Martina, Heraclius' niece and wife, 152, 154, 165  
 Martinianus, 77  
 Martino Zaccaria, Genoese Lord, 651  
 Martinus, 165  
 Martyrius, 68, 77, 81  
 Martyropolis, 87  
 Marwan I, Caliph, 181–2  
 Marwan II, Caliph, 201, 203–5  
 Marwinid dynasty, 336–7  
 Mary of Hungary, 585  
 Mary, daughter of Empress Yolande, 565  
 Marytropolis, 163  
 Marzana, 242  
 Mas'ud of Iconium/Konya, Seljuk Sultan, 454–6, 461–2, 465, 480, 484–6, 489  
 Mas'ud of Mesopotamia, 462  
 Mas'ud Shah the Seljuk, 535–6, 540  
 Mas'ud, brother of Sultan Tughril II of Iraq, 469–71, 473  
 Mas'ud, Sultan, son of Mahmud of Ghazni, 358  
 Masimian tribes, Lazica, 118  
 Maslamah, 191–2, 194–6  
 Matasuntha, Ostrogothic Queen, 104, 114  
 Maternus Cynegius, 30  
 Mathew Bonellus, 496  
 Matilda of Tuscany, Countess, 421, 468  
 Matilda, wife of Count Rainulf of Alife, 467  
 Matteo de Peralta, 'Vicar-General' of Athens, 680  
 Mattheo de Montana, castellan of Acropolis, 693  
 Matthew Asen, 724, 730–1  
 Matthew Moncada, Seneschal of Sicily, governor of Athens, 674  
 Matthew, co-Emperor, son of John Cantacuzene, 657, 662–4, 666–71, 672–3, 675–6, 685, 687  
 Matthew, Patriarch of Constantinople, 567, 570  
 Matthew, Patriarch, 695, 702  
 Matthias Corvinus of Hungary, King, 730–1  
 Mauretania/Mauretanian, 55, 121, 123, 125  
 Maurianus, 170  
 Maurice (son of Mundus), 103, 127  
 Maurice, Emperor, 127, 129–38  
 Mauroleon, governor, 296–7  
 Maurus, 192  
 Mausoleum of Hadrian, Rome, 104, 113  
 Mavordius, 52  
 Mavrocatalon, 447  
 Mavrozomes, 546, 555  
 Mawdud of Mosul, 445, 448–9, 452  
 Maxentius, Emperor, 6  
 Maximian of Constantinople, 54, 55

- Maximian, Marcus Aurelius Valerius, Emperor, 5, 6  
 Maximin Diaia, Emperor, 6  
 Maximin, envoy to Attila, 59  
 Maximin, Justinian I's general, 108–9  
 Maximus 'the Confessor', 167, 171–2, 174  
 Maximus, Patriarch, 562  
 Maximus, rebel (410), 65  
 Maximus, Petronius, Emperor, 60  
 Mayyafariqin, 325–6, 336, 459, 581  
 Mazdakites, 95  
 Mecca, 124, 147, 157, 167, 181, 185, 204–5, 220, 228, 328  
 Media, 153  
 Medina, 23, 172, 179, 181, 204–5, 211, 221  
 Mediterranean, 7, 48, 107, 480  
 Megara, 74, 691  
 Mehmed I, Sultan, 698, 702–6  
 Mehmed II, Sultan, 701, 717–18, 719, 722, 728, 731  
 Mehmed II, Karamanid ruler, 699  
 Melangia, 479  
 Melania, 56, 57  
 Melas, River, 210  
 Meletius, anti-Union bishop, 616  
 Melfi, 365, 369, 383, 386–7, 403, 462, 464, 468, 471  
 Melias, general, 299, 301, 325–6  
 Melissende Queen, daughter of King Baldwin of Jerusalem, 464, 466, 478, 483–4, 493, 497  
 Melitene, 85, 87, 26, 161, 175, 187, 207, 209, 249, 274, 278, 296, 299, 301, 303, 312, 325, 334, 342, 384, 438, 440–1, 445, 460, 542  
 Melitias, 687  
 Melnik, 587  
 Melo of Bari, Prince, 346, 349, 351–2  
 Melos, rebel, 364  
 Meludion Palace, 520  
 Membrasa, 103  
 Memnon, Bishop, 54  
 Memphis, 151  
 Menas, Antiochene police-chief, 86  
 Menas, traveller to India, 96  
 Menas, Patriarch, 103–4, 111, 115  
 Menteshes, 'Emirate' of, 637, 718, 722  
 Merobaudes, 26  
 Mersivan, 439  
 Merv, 236, 492; battle, 342  
 Mesembria, 180, 216, 236, 238, 294, 299, 602, 607–8, 640–1, 648, 651, 677, 708, 714, 723  
 Mesopotamia, 13, 19, 20, 22, 50, 55, 86, 97, 107–8, 112, 125, 127, 129, 131–2, 172, 186, 204–6, 235–6, 271, 273, 275, 277, 285–6, 305, 307, 312, 319, 321–2, 325–7, 330, 358, 361, 381, 384, 445, 465, 470  
 Messenia, 677, 724, 731  
 Messina, 354, 362–3, 387–400, 402, 490, 528, 534, 619–20, 634, 645,  
 Meteora, 682  
 Meteoron, 595  
 Methodius, Abbot of Hyacinthus monastery, 579  
 Methodius, Patriarch, 253, 255, 262, 271–4, 278–9  
 Methosius, 46, 241  
 Metopa, 238  
 Metrophanes, Bishop of Cyzicus, Patriarch, 714, 716  
 Metz, 61  
 Mezezius, Count of 'Opsikion', 175  
 Michael Curcuas, Patriarch, 477  
 Michael Anemas, 442  
 Michael Angelovic, noble, 729  
 Michael Angelus Ducas, ruler of Epirus, 527, 540, 547, 553, 556–8, 561–2  
 Michael Asen, half-brother of Kaliman of Bulgaria, 583–4, 589, 591  
 Michael Autoreianos, Patriarch, 505, 556, 560–1  
 Michael Branas, governor of Armenia, 481, 491  
 Michael Burtzes, 322–3, 382  
 Michael Cantacuzene, 603  
 Michael Cerularius, Patriarch, 365, 369, 375, 377–81, 385  
 Michael Choniates, Bishop of Athens, 537, 542  
 Michael Ducas, brother-in-law of Alexius I, 406, 425, 540, 573  
 Michael Duceianus, 364–5  
 Michael Gabras, general, 502  
 Michael Glabas Tarchaneiotas, 'Grand Constable', 620, 628, 632  
 Michael Glykys, 494  
 Michael Hagiotheodorites, 518  
 Michael I Rhangabe, Emperor, 234–6, 251–3, 254–5  
 Michael II of Epirus, 580, 583, 586–7, 592–4, 596, 601–7  
 Michael II, Emperor, 240, 244–5  
 Michael III, Emperor, 251–3, 257–60, 262, 264–5, 28  
 Michael of Trebizond, Emperor, 666, 659, 661, 665, 666  
 Michael IV, Emperor, 360–2, 364–6, 386

- Michael V Calaphates, Emperor, 365–8  
 Michael VI Stratioticus, Emperor, 381–3  
 Michael VII, Emperor, son of Constantine X  
 Ducas, 387, 391, 395–6, 401, 403–10  
 Michael VIII, Emperor, 593–5, 601–3, 605–22,  
 632, 678  
 Michael IX, son of Andronicus II, 620, 626,  
 630–1, 635–9, 641, 644, 647  
 Michael Lachanodracon, ‘strategus’ of  
 Thraciesion, 212–13, 217–19, 224  
 Michael Lascaris, commander at Thessalonica,  
 588, 590–1  
 Michael Monomachus, governor of Thessaly,  
 657  
 Michael of Anchialus, Patriarch, 506  
 Michael of Bethlehem, Bishop, 695  
 Michael of Kiev, Bishop, 482  
 Michael of Kolomma, candidate for  
 Metropolitanate in Moscow, 684–5  
 Michael of Otranto, 503  
 Michael of Synnada, Bishop, 235  
 Michael of Thessaly, 621  
 Michael of Thessalonica, 492  
 Michael of Tver, senior Russian ruler, 642  
 Michael Palaeologus, C12th general, 481, 490  
 Michael Sisman, ruler of Bulgaria, 648–50,  
 651, 658  
 Michael Tarchaneotes, ‘Grand Domestic’, 617  
 Michael Toxoras, 293  
 Michael, Abbot, 220  
 Michael, Bishop, 546  
 Michael, governor of Pamormus/Palermo, 244  
 Michael, governor of Akrounos, 451  
 Michael, imperial cupbearer, 427  
 Michael, son of Christopher Lecapenus, 309  
 Michael, son of Mauroleon, 296  
 Michael, son of Queen Maria of Bulgaria, 615  
 Michiel of Venice, Doge, 508  
 Mieh, son of Leo the Armenian, 472  
 Mignano, 474; treaty 478  
 Mihr-Mihroe, Persian general, 99, 110, 113, 114  
 Milan, 521  
 Milan, 6, 18, 26, 30, 31, 32, 33, 34, 35, 37, 39,  
 45, 68, 69, 105–6, 124, 521, 708  
 Miletius, Bishop of Antioch, 20, 21, 22, 29  
 Mileto, 389, 439  
 Miletus, 630  
 Milvian Bridge, 6  
 Minas, 162  
 Minervina, 6  
 Mircea, Prince, 694  
 Mirdasids, 34, 358–9, 387  
 Misilmen, battle of, 396  
 Misithia, 193  
 Mistra, Sparta, 592–3, 596, 601, 645, 675,  
 685–6, 689, 701, 704, 709, 716, 720, 721,  
 731; garrison, 697  
 Mitrus, brother of Ivanko, 540  
 Mleh, uncle of Ling Rupen of Armenia, 506,  
 508–9  
 Modares, 28  
 Modena, 134  
 Modestus, 158  
 Modon, 547, 557, 695, 697, 699; ‘*archo*’ of, 553  
 Modrene, 203  
 Moesia, 26, 29, 79, 81, 88, 128 Lower, 59  
 Moglena, 349  
 Moguntiacum/Mainz, 43  
 Mohammad Ibn Ziyad, 240  
 Mohammed Al-Mahdi, 274  
 Mohammed Danish 474–5  
 Mohammed Ibn Juatri, 244  
 Mohammed Ibn Marwan, 190  
 Mohammed ibn Tujj, 304–5, 307–8, 310  
 Mohammed Sultan, brother of Sultan  
 Barklyaruq, 442, 445, 447–8, 452, 454, 456  
 Mohammed, Abd-al-Malik’s brother, 188, 201  
 Mohammed, brother of Barkiyaruk, 435  
 Mohammed, Danishmend emir, 462, 474–5  
 Mohammed, Prophet, 124, 147, 152–3, 157,  
 159  
 Moldavia, 695, 712  
 Momcilo, Slav brigand, 661  
 Monastira, 425, 438, 442–3, 450, 452  
 Monaxius, 44  
 Monemvasia, 488, 553, 584, 596, 601, 628,  
 697, 731  
 Mongols, 568, 570, 573, 577–8, 581–2, 585,  
 590, 596, 613, 617, 622, 624, 626, 633, 636,  
 641, 648,  
 Monobatae monastery, 367  
 Monocarton, 131  
 Monomachatus, governor of Dyrrachium,  
 411, 413  
 Monophysites, 79, 82, 83, 89, 90, 92, 93, 101,  
 103, 105, 108, 109, 114, 120, 121, 122–4,  
 150  
 Monopoli, 397  
 Monotheodorus of Philadelphia, 557  
 Monotheodorus, 546  
 Monte Cassino, 128, 129, 205, 422;  
 monastery, 362, 471  
 Monte Gargano, 349, 377  
 Monte Ilaro castle, 376

- Monte Siricolo, battle of, 366  
 Monteferrat, 627  
 Monte-Maggiore, 365  
 Montepoloso, 396, 468  
 Montferrand, castle, 472  
 Montferrat, 513, 522, 557, 640, 646  
 Montius, 'Quaestor', 18  
 Montpellier, 513  
 Moors, 30, 121, 136, 181  
 Mopsucrene, 21  
 Mopsuestia, Cilicia, 189, 215, 319, 466, 471, 485, 494, 498, 506  
 Moravia, 263, 271, 274, 278, 279  
 Morea, the, 573, 578, 608, 647, 658, 671, 685–6, 688, 700, 704, 706–9, 711, 716, 727–8, 730–1, Morocco, 221  
 Morozamalca, 22  
 Moscow, 578, 670, 683–4, 697, 712  
 Moslems, 311, 321, 338, 344, 350, 356, 370, 379, 36, 448, 452, 455, 458, 461, 473, 476, 479, 485, 504, 506, 522, 524, 528, 530, 603, 689  
 Mosul, 206, 302, 306, 326–7, 331, 339, 344, 362, 433–5, 454, 462, 479, 516, 519  
 Mosynopolis, 351, 520, 539, 546, 570  
 Mother of God convent, Principo, 229  
 Motya, Sicily, 254  
 Mount Aragatz, 283  
 Mount Athos monastery, 261, 272, 280, 312, 314–15, 319, 324, 332, 352, 356, 538, 563, 648, 656, 661, 670, 678, 688, 699, 701, 715  
 Mount Auxentius, 212  
 Mount Boradion, Bithynia 513  
 Mount Kunavica, 717  
 Mount Kyrinos, Bithynia, 312  
 Mount Lactantius, 115  
 Mount Latrus, 252  
 Mount Levunion, battle of, 425  
 Mount Ohud, 153  
 Mount Olympus, 255, 260–1, 45  
 Mount Papas, 101, 102  
 Mount Pholoe, 36  
 Mount Seleucus, Battle of, 17  
 Mount Sinai, 168, 574  
 Mount Sondis (Haemus range), 77  
 Mount Sophon, 383, 405–6  
 Mount Tabor, 328  
 Mount Taygetus, 303, 601, 630  
 Mount Vesuvius, 115, 474  
 Mstislav of Chernigov and Tmutorokan, Prince, 349, 353–4  
 Mstislav, son of Vladimir 'Monomakh' of Kiev, 461, 467  
 Mu'ayyid al-Daula, son of Rukn-al-Daula of Rayy, 329, 332  
 Muawiya II, Caliph, 181  
 Muawiya, Caliph, 162–3, 167–73, 176–7, 179  
 Mucelium, Battle of, 107  
 Muchli, Tegea, 730  
 Mughith-al-Din Tughril Shah of Erzerum, 570  
 Muhadhab-ad-Din, 'Vizier', 481–2  
 Muhallab, general, 187  
 Muin-al-Din Sulaiman, 596  
 Muizz al-Daula, 321  
 Mujir-ed-Din, 484  
 Mukhtar, 181–2  
 Mundilas, 105  
 Mundo, 88  
 Mundus, general, 99, 100, 103  
 Munis, general, 291, 299, 302–3  
 Munster, Bishop of, envoy to Frederick, 526  
 Murad II, Sultan, 706, 708–10, 726–8, 730–3, 711, 714–22  
 Murad, Emir, son of Orhan, 674–5, 680–1, 683–6, 688–9  
 Mursa, 15, 16, 19, 20  
 Musa of Aydin, 'Emir', 699  
 Musa, son of Bajezid, 698, 700, 702–3  
 Musegh, brother of Gregory the Mamikonid, 207  
 Musegh/Musel, 170  
 Musele, Admiral, 296  
 Musele, Prince of Kars, brother of Ashot II of Armenia, 317, 333  
 Mushegh, 216  
 Musonius, 'Vicar', 24  
 Musta'en, 262  
 Mustafa, younger brother of Sultan Mehmed, 704–7  
 Muta, battle of, 157  
 Muthanna, 160  
 Muwaffaq, 272, 277, 281  
 Muzaffar-ud-Din of Mentеше, 'Emir', 699  
 Muzalon, general, Alans, 635–6  
 Mylae, 280  
 Mylos, 446  
 Myra, 232  
 Myriocephalum, 511  
 Myron, the postal 'logothete', 245  
 Mysia, 637  
 Mytilene, 260, 308, 365, 368, 426, 655  
 Nablus, 524  
 Nacolea, 219  
 Nacoli, battle of, 24

- Nahrawan Canal, 305  
 Nahrawan, battle, 172  
 Naissus, 23, 57, 59, 150, 430, 463, 481, 517, 526, 687  
 Najran, 95  
 Nakhichevan, 190  
 Nalssus, 5  
 Namur, 579  
 Naples, 104–5, 108, 109, 129, 150, 170, 174, 192, 256, 355–7, 408–9, 469–70, 529, 534, 601, 604, 606, 608, 619, 627, 630–1, 642, 646, 679, 682  
 Naples, Bay of, battle of, 623  
 Narbonne, 47  
 Narjot of Toucy, 571  
 Narni, 115  
 Narses Kamsarakan, 170, 184  
 Narses, ‘Catholicos’, 170, 500–1, 505  
 Narses, Justinian’s general, 98, 105, 108, 111, 114–18, 134, 138–9, 217  
 Narses, Maurice’s general, 134, 138–9  
 Nasir ad-Daula of Mosul, ‘Emir’, 305, 307  
 Nasr al-Din Mohammed, son of Gumushtekin, 469  
 Nasr, ‘Emir’ of Khorasan, 207  
 Nasr, ‘Emir’, 358, 363, 365  
 Nasr, 296  
 Nasr-ed-Din, son of Kilij Arslan 525  
 Naupactus, 593, 683, 701; castle, 629  
 Nauplia, 553, 701  
 Navarino, 724, 732  
 Navarre/Navarrese, 678, 683–7, 691, 693, 701, Naxos, 170, 547, 628  
 Nazareth, 328  
 Nazianzus, 28  
 Nea Justinianopolis, 185  
 Nea Metanoia, convent of, 147  
 Nea Peribleptos monastery, 670  
 Neapolis (Nablus), 98  
 Neapolitan, 723  
 Nebridius, 21  
 Nebulus, 185  
 Nectarius of Constantinople, Patriarch, 29, 36, 42  
 Nedao, battle of, 62  
 Negroponte, 705, 707  
 Neocaesarea, 397, 474, 510–11, 525  
 Neomaterea convent, 536  
 Neopatras, 646, 664  
 Neophytus I, Patriarch, 487  
 Neopatras, 611  
 Nepotianus, 16  
 Nerio, cousin of Niccolo Acciajuoli, Duke of Athens, 675–6, 688–93  
 Nerio II, Duke, 711, 714–15, 717, 719, 722, 728  
 Nesi castle, 632  
 Nestorians, 54, 55, 78, 80, 84, 89, 109, 116  
 Nestorius, Patriarch, 52–5, 61  
 Nevers, 504  
 Nevitta, 21  
 Nicaea, 23, 25, 71, 78, 85, 195–6, 198, 221, 229, 330, 383, 390, 409, 419–29, 425–6, 430–2, 453–4, 482, 515, 517–18, 546–7, 555–7, 567, 574, 577, 588, 589, 592, 593, 594, 601, 639, 651–2  
 Niccolo Acciajuoli of Corinth, Catherine of Courtenay’s Florentine Chamberlain, 673–6, 682, 685  
 Niccolo Pisani, commander of Venetian Fleet, 667  
 Nicens, 8, 12, 14–15, 28, 29  
 Nicephorus Lucanes, Thomas Palaeologus’ general, 730  
 Nicephoritzes, enuch, ‘Logothete of the Drome’, 404–6, 408–9  
 Nicephorus Basilaces, 492  
 Nicephorus Basilitzes, commander of Arta, 657  
 Nicephorus Blemmydes, 584  
 Nicephorus Botaneites, Emperor Nicephorus III, 383, 393, 405, 408–10  
 Nicephorus Bryennius, 375, 381–2, 400, 409  
 Nicephorus Bryennius, grandson of above, 400, 409, 421, 428, 433, 447, 453, 456, 472–3  
 Nicephorus Chalouphas, governor of Dalmatia, 501–2  
 Nicephorus Chumnus, ‘Grand Logothete’, 629, 634  
 Nicephorus Comnenus, ‘catepan’, 351  
 Nicephorus Decanus, 446  
 Nicephorus Diogenes, son of Romanus IV and Eudocia, 397, 427  
 Nicephorus Ducas Orsini, ‘Despot’, 657, 663  
 Nicephorus Gregoras, 658  
 Nicephorus I, Emperor, 229, 231–4, 235, 237–8, 241  
 Nicephorus II Ducas Orsini, 655–6, 666, 672, 674  
 Nicephorus II (Phocas), Emperor, 309, 314–23, 324, 334  
 Nicephorus II, Patriarch, 494  
 Nicephorus Melissenus, 412–13  
 Nicephorus Paleologus, 514  
 Nicephorus Phocas, grandfather of Emperor Nicephorus II, 279, 284–5

- Nicephorus Phocas, great-nephew of Emperor  
Nicephorus, 353
- Nicephorus Uranius, 331, 339–40, 342
- Nicephorus Xiphias, 'strategos' of  
Philippopolis, 348–9
- Nicephorus, elder son of Bardas Phocus, 313,  
335
- Nicephorus, governor of Bulgaria, 380
- Nicephorus, half-brother of Leo IV, 213, 217,  
218, 224
- Nicephorus, Patriarch, 235, 253
- Nicephorus, Patriarch, Bishop of Epirus, 581,  
595
- Nicephorus, son of Michael II of Epirus, 586,  
590, 593, 607, 611–12, 616, 618–19, 621,  
628–9, 632
- Nicephorus, son of patriarch Anastasius, 202
- Nicerites, 446
- Nicetas 'the Patrician', 231–2
- Nicetas Chalcutzes, 319
- Nicetas Choniates, 494, 544, 555, 589
- Nicetas Muntanes, Patriarch, 521, 525–6
- Nicetas of Maroneia, Bishop, 501
- Nicetas Stethatus, 379
- Nicetas, 'Count' of Opsicion, 219
- Nicetas, 'Patrician', 295, 300
- Nicetas, 'Praefect', 157
- Nicetas, cousin of Heraclius, 141, 147–9, 151
- Nicetas, 203, 212–13, 231
- Nicetas, governor of Naissus, 429–30
- Nicetas, Patriarch, 217
- Nicetas, son of Leo V, 237
- Nicetas, son of Shahbaraz, 157, 161
- Nicetas, Southern Syria, 148
- Nicholas Canabas, noble, 545
- Nicholas Breakspear, Pope Hadrian IV, 488
- Nicholas Cabatzes, 296
- Nicholas della Porta, Patriarch of  
Constantinople, 573, 583
- Nicholas Eroticas, 'patrician', 322
- Nicholas I, Patriarch, 280, 285–6, 288–9,  
291–2, 294–5, 297
- Nicholas I, Pope, 256–61, 263, 264–5, 272
- Nicholas II, Patriarch, 336
- Nicholas II, Pope, 388
- Nicholas III Kyrdiniates Grammaticus,  
Patriarch, 417, 450
- Nicholas III, Pope, 614–15, 617, 627
- Nicholas IV Muzalon, Patriarch, 481, 485
- Nicholas IV, Pope, 625–6, 628
- Nicholas V, Pope, 720, 724
- Nicholas Lancia, governor of Sicily, 652
- Nicholas Mavrocatalon, Admiral, 421,  
424, 429
- Nicholas Notaras, 695
- Nicholas of Cotrone, 603
- Nicholas of Manivault, 568–9
- Nicholas of St. Omer, 'bailli', 558, 625, 634, 641
- Nicholas Orsini, Count of Cephalonia, 646,  
648
- Nicholas Picingli, 292
- Nicholas Rosso, Lombard, 543
- Nicholas Sigerus, Byzantine envoy, 671
- Nicholas, 'patrician', 325
- Nicholas, legate, 284
- Nicholas, Patriarch, 424
- Nicomachus Flavianus, 33, 34
- Nicomedia, 5, 7, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 153, 192,  
195, 196, 202, 203, 229, 241, 291, 351, 383,  
406, 426, 430, 439, 453, 521, 554–5, 559,  
635–6, 651, 654, 656, 654
- Nicopolis, 689, 692, 694–5
- Nigde, 525
- Nikli, 596
- Nile, River, 112, 167, 206, 455
- Nilus, Patriarch, 685, 689
- Nineveh, 156
- Ninfa, 494
- Niphon the Bogomil, 481
- Niphon, Bishop of Cyzicus, Patriarch, 643, 645
- Nis, 5, 687, 716
- Nishapur, 274, 363
- Nisibis, 13, 15, 22, 97, 107, 120, 125, 134, 163,  
208, 306, 320, 325
- Nitria oasis, 39
- Nitrians, 40, 48
- Nizam Al-Mulk, 'Vizler', 402
- Nocera, 467
- Nogaj, Mongul Khan, 615–16, 620
- Nomus, 60
- Noricum, 21, 32, 43, 45
- Normans, 349, 356, 358, 361, 363–4, 366–7,  
369, 374–5, 377–8, 382–3, 385, 391,  
396–7, 400, 409, 414, 416, 419, 423–4, 434,  
444, 447, 462, 474, 488, 520–1
- Nota, 424
- Notaras, 726–7
- Novae, 59
- Novgorod, 257, 325, 349, 353
- Novo fortress, 718
- Nubians, 504
- Nuh I, son of Nasr, Samanid Emir, 307, 329
- Nuh II, Samanid 'Emir', 340
- Numerian, 5

- Numidia/Numidian, 53, 54, 104, 111, 160  
 Nur-ed-Din of Aleppo, son of Zengi, 480,  
 484–5, 494–5, 499–500, 504, 506–9  
 Nur-ed-Din, the Ortoqid of Mardin, 514  
 Nyassa, 617  
 Nymphaeum, 559, 588, 627–9; treaty, 595–6  
  
 Obelearius delgi Antonii of Venice, 231–4  
 Oberto of Biandrate, Regent, 556–7  
 Ochrid, 349, 351, 414–15, 562, 572, 593, 672;  
 Archbishop of, 425, 517  
 Ochrid, Lake, 587  
 Octavian, bastard son of Alberic II of Rome, 313  
 Octavian, Cardinal, Pope Victor IV, 478, 494  
 Odessus, 90, 135  
 Odo Frangipani, 506  
 Odo of Ostia, Bishop, Pope Urban II, 420, 422  
 Odovacer, King, 71, 77, 78, 81, 82  
 Oenoe, 514–15  
 Ofanto, River, 365  
 Ogodei, 'Great Khan', 581  
 Olbianus, 214, 242  
 Oleg, Prince of Russia, 288  
 Oleg, son of Prince Svyatoslav, 325, 329  
 Oleron, 626  
 Olybrius, Praefect, 27  
 Olybrius, Emperor (West), 66–7  
 Olgerd, Grand Duke of Lithuania, 668–9  
 Olivento, River, 365  
 Olybrius, 27, 66, 67  
 Olympia, 7, 602  
 Olympian, 'Patrician', 150  
 Olympius, 'Exarch', 169, 170  
 Olympus, minister, 44, 45  
 Omar Beg, commander in Thessaly, 718–19,  
 724, 729–31  
 Omar I, Caliph, 162, 167  
 Omar II, Caliph, 196–7  
 Omar of Melitene, 248, 254, 260, 262  
 Ommayads, 152, 167, 172, 181, 205, 206, 243,  
 310, 314  
 Omurtag, 'Khan' of Bulgaria, 238–9, 241–3  
 Ono Mastropietro, 505  
 Onugur Bulgars, tribe, 151  
 Ooryphas, 245, 271  
 Opsaras, imperial agent, 382  
 Opsicion, 176, 193–4, 203, 204, 211, 213, 223,  
 226, 240, 250, 302  
 Opus, Byzantine commander, 423  
 Orbeliani family, 509  
 Orhan, Emir, son of Osman, 649, 651, 654,  
 661–4, 666, 668–9, 672, 675, 702, 722–3  
 Orchomenus, Boeotia, 643  
 Orestes the 'protospatharius', 355  
 Orestes, Praefect, 47–8  
 Orestes, Count, 59, 70, 71  
 Origen, 39, 40, 109  
 Orio Malipiero, Doge of Venice, 512  
 Orleans, 61  
 Orontes, River, 338, 433, 454, 472–3, 483, 494  
 Orontes valley, 35, 149, 433–5  
 Orsini, 594  
 Ortoqids, 480  
 Ortosa, 338  
 Orvieto, 618; Bishop of, 589, 591  
 Oshin, Armenian lord of Lampron, 443  
 Oshin, governor of Cilicia, 446, 448  
 Osimo, 106  
 Osman, 'Emir', 'Ghazi' founder of Ottoman  
 dynasty, 636, 649  
 Osrhoene (Western Mesopotamia), 86  
 Ostia, 45, 47, 105, 255–6  
 Ostian Gate, Rome, 113  
 Ostrogoths, 26, 38, 42, 61, 63, 65, 68, 69, 81, 82  
 Ostrovo, 349; battle, 369  
 Ostrovo, Lake, 349  
 Ostrys, Count, 68  
 Othman, Caliph, 167, 172  
 Otranto, 399, 446  
 Otto de la Roche, Burgundian lord, 547, 570  
 Otto I, King and Emperor of Germany, 311,  
 316–21, 325–6  
 Otto II, son of Otto I, 321–2, 325–6, 332–3  
 Otto III, Emperor of Germany, 338–41, 343–4  
 Otto of Brunswick, 538  
 Otto of Saxony and Bavaria, 492–3, 502  
 Otto Orseolo, doge of Venice, 355  
 Otto, son of Peter I Orseolo of Venice, 346  
 Ottobuono Freschi, Pope Hadrian V, 612  
 Ottomans, 651–2, 661, 669, 675, 680, 687,  
 689, 697, 716–17, 722, 730  
 Oultrejourdan, 510, 522  
 Our Lady, Church of Athens (formerly the  
 Parthenon), 351  
 Oxus, River, 79, 342, 476  
  
 Pacurianus, 'Grand Domestic', 414–15, 419  
 Padua, 697  
 Pagan, 79, 87, 97, 98  
 Paganino Doria, Genoese ruler, 667  
 Palace of Dukes of Ferrara, 713  
 Palalatzin, Lake, 352  
 Palama, 666  
 Palamedes, lord of Aenus, 727



- Palasch, King, 79, 81  
 Palatines, 174  
 Palatinus, 'Catepan', 373  
 Paleologus, George, 424–5  
 Palermo, 344, 363, 390–1, 396, 400–1, 451, 465, 478, 485, 496, 527–8, 533–4, 592, 619  
 Palestine/Palestinians, 8, 12, 39, 47, 48, 49, 53, 61, 62, 71, 80, 84, 85, 98, 147, 150, 157, 162–3, 248, 305, 307, 323, 328, 407, 415, 423, 436, 441, 444, 455, 458, 493, 504, 507, 510, 526–9, 533, 542, 547, 574, 609  
 Palestrina, 374  
 Palladius, 63  
 Pallavicini of Boudounitsa, 558  
 Pallavicini, Marquis, 583, 592  
 Pallavicini, senior lord, 643  
 Pallene, 661  
 Pallio, 414  
 Pammacaristus monastery, 728  
 Pamphronius, 127  
 Pamphylia, 38, 292, 434, 530  
 Pamprepius of Panopolis, 77, 78, 79, 80  
 Panachanitus monastery, 616  
 Pancratius, Constantine, Court astrologer, 223–4  
 Pandolfo Malatesta, Archbishop of Patras, 710  
 Pandulf 'the wolf of Abruzzi' of Capua and Salerno, 354–6, 361–2, 369, 371–2, 374  
 Pandulf, son of Pandulf, 382  
 Pannonia, 17, 23, 28, 42, 55, 59, 61, 62, 81, 88, 114 East, 51  
 Panon, 242  
 Panopolis, 77, 78, 79  
 Panormus (Palermo), 103, 246, 248  
 Pantanessa monastery, 545  
 Pantheon, 174  
 Pantherius, Lecapenid relative, 308  
 Pantocrator monastery, Constantinople, 456, 477, 514  
 Pantocrator, church of, 708  
 Paolo Scolari, Pope Clement III, 524  
 Paolo Zenò, Venetian negotiator, 701  
 Pap, King of Armenia, 24  
 Papadopulus, rebel leader, 619  
 Paphlagonia, 222, 240, 251, 432, 439, 462, 465, 467–8, 474, 513, 555, 691–2  
 Paphos Cathedral, 441  
 Paris, 20, 30, 243, 444, 697–9  
 Paristrion (Lower Danube), 351  
 Parma, 116  
 Parthenon, 7, 351–3, 545, 691  
 Pascal, deacon, 183  
 Paschal I, Pope, 239, 241–2  
 Paschal II, Pope, 437, 440, 444, 449–50, 455  
 Passianus, general, 350–1  
 Patarenos, 398  
 Patras, Morea, 230, 258, 553, 593, 645, 656, 707, 709–10, 712, 719, 730, 732  
 Patricius 'Caesar', 65, 68, 70  
 Patricius, 'Master of Soldiers', 88, 90  
 Patricius, 'illustris', 140  
 Patrikiotes, tax-collector, 658  
 Paul 'the Patrician', 233  
 Paul I, Bishop of Constantinople, 14, 15, 16  
 Paul I, Pope, 210–13  
 Paul II, Patriarch, 165–6, 168, 170  
 Paul III, Patriarch, 184, 186  
 Paul IV, Patriarch, 217, 220  
 Paul of Antioch, 94, 129  
 Paul of Cephallonia, 'strategus', 233  
 Paul of Serbia, 297  
 Paul of Smyrna, Papal envoy, 677–7  
 Paul of Thessalonica, Archbishop, 168  
 Paul, 'Catepan', 399  
 Paul, 'Exarch', 199  
 Paul, 'strategus' of Armeniacon, 210  
 Paul, Belisarius' steward, 121  
 Paul, cousin of Peter of Serbia, 294  
 Paul, Latin Archbishop of Smyrna, 671  
 Paul, Maurice's father, 135  
 Paulicians, 57–8, 197, 272, 410, 412, 414, 453, 554  
 Paulinus, Bishop, 21, 22, 28, 29  
 Paulus 'The Chain', 17, 21  
 Pavia, 106, 115, 134, 174, 203, 208–9, 215, 284, 340, 489, 495  
 Payn of Orleans, 547  
 Pazeniki, 730  
 Pec, Archbishop of, Patriarch, 662  
 Pechenegs, 283, 293, 307, 319, 321–2, 325, 350, 360, 362, 71–3, 375, 385, 410, 417, 419–21, 423–5, 431, 445, 458  
 Pectarit of Milan, 174, 177  
 Pedro de la Saga, co-leader of 'Navarrese Company' of mercenaries, 683  
 Pedro de Pau, Catalan commander, 'Vicar-General', 675, 688  
 Pedro of Braga, Archbishop, Pope John XXI, 612  
 Pedro Tafur, Castilian visitor, 712  
 Pegae, 29, 555  
 Pegae, Byzantium, 637–8  
 Pegae, Propontis, 675  
 Pelagians, 49, 52, 53  
 Pelagius, 45, 47, 48, 49

- Pelagius I, Pope, 117–18, 120  
 Pelagius II, Pope, 128, 132–3  
 Pelagius, Cardinal, 561, 567  
 Pelagonia, 487–8, 503, 558, 562, 593–4  
 Pelecanon, 432  
 Pelekanon, 651  
 Peloponnese, 258, 303, 482, 520, 541, 547,  
 553, 556, 571, 596, 693, 701, 707, 709, 719,  
 724, 730  
 Pelusium, 164, 455, 499, 504  
 Peneius valley, 35  
 Pentaclius, 20  
 Pentegostis, 427  
 Pepin, King of Franks, 208, 213, 231, 233–4  
 Pera, 91, 431  
 Perche, Count of, 547  
 Pere Julia, Catalan consul, 727  
 Pereiaslavl, 380  
 Perenus of Dyrrachium, ‘Duke’, 399  
 Pergamum, 195, 450–1, 482, 636–7  
 Perinthus, 27, 153, 242  
 Perisabora, 22  
 Pernik, 345  
 Persarmenia, 125  
 Persia/Persians, 5, 7, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 20,  
 22, 24, 25, 27, 50, 51, 63, 79, 82, 83, 86, 87,  
 88, 90, 94, 97, 98–9, 101, 105, 107–9,  
 111–14, 116–18, 120–1, 124, 188, 342,  
 344, 352, 363, 373, 381, 402, 418, 426,  
 435, 492, 581, 605, 621, 623, 636  
 Perugia, 115, 563, 572, 623  
 Pesaro, 117, 373  
 Peter ‘the Fuller’, Patriarch of Antioch, 68, 70,  
 80  
 Peter ‘the Hermit’, 429–30  
 Peter Aliphas, 416  
 Peter Barsymes, 109  
 Peter Boua, Albanian chieftain, 728  
 Peter Candiano, Doge of Venice, 307, 315, 329  
 Peter Canepanova, Bishop of Pavia, 333  
 Peter Capuano, legate, 539  
 Peter de Courtenay, Latin Emperor, 563–4  
 Peter Delyan, son of Gabriel Radomir?, 364, 366  
 Peter I Orseolo, Doge of Venice, 329, 331, 337,  
 341, 343–6  
 Peter II, King of Aragon, 619, 622  
 Peter IV, King of Aragon, 686  
 Peter Mongus, 78, 79, 82  
 Peter of Amalfi, 378  
 Peter of Antioch, Patriarch, 539, 554  
 Peter of Aragon, King, 619, 626  
 Peter of Bracieux, 547  
 Peter of Bracieux, 559  
 Peter of Capuanao, legate of Pope Innocent,  
 548  
 Peter of Cyprus, King, 676–7  
 Peter of Milan, Archbishop, 451  
 Peter of Morrone, Pope Celestine IV, 630  
 Peter of Serbia, 294  
 Peter Orseolo, King of Hungary, 363, 365–6,  
 370, 373  
 Peter Phocas, ‘startopedarch’, 322–3, 328–9  
 Peter Pierleoni, Pope Anacletus, II, 465  
 Peter Polani, doge of Venice, 464, 483  
 Peter the Sicilian, 271  
 Peter Thomas, Carmelite bishop, Papal Legate,  
 673–4  
 Peter, ‘Master of Soldiers’, 121  
 Peter, Bishop of Alexandria, 28  
 Peter, commander in Numidia, 160  
 Peter, Czar of Bulgaria, 311, 320–2  
 Peter, envoy, 102, 106, 107  
 Peter, Metropolitan of Kiev, 642  
 Peter, King of Bulgaria, 522–3, 525–6, 535  
 Peter, Maurice’s brother, 135, 137  
 Peter, Patriarch of Constantinople, 171, 175  
 Peter, Patriarch of Jerusalem, 116, 120  
 Peter, son of Simeon, 299  
 Petinus, ‘Grand Heteriarch’, 308  
 Petra, 10, 112, 114  
 Petriion convent, 412  
 Petriion monastery, 359, 367  
 Petriion district, Constantinople, 544  
 Petronas, ‘Count’ of Opsicion, 221  
 Petronas, uncle of Michael III, 251, 253, 258,  
 262, 265  
 Petronia, maid to Constantina, 140  
 Petronius Maximus, Emperor (West), 63, 64  
 Petronius Probus, 31  
 Petronius, 23  
 Petroula, 446  
 Pharas, 102  
 Phasiane (Imeretia), 352  
 Phasis, 193  
 Phasis, River, 353  
 Philadelphia, 450, 508, 516, 525, 546–7, 56,  
 588, 638, 648, 684, 690  
 Philagrius, 165  
 Philanthropenos, leader of Byzantine fleet,  
 611, 627  
 Philaretus the Armenian, 408, 416, 424  
 Phileta, 495  
 Philetus, ‘strategus’ of Thrace, 222  
 Philip Chinardo, Admiral, 591

- Philip Dalmau, 'Vicar-General', 686  
 Philip I of France, King 430, 444  
 Philip II Augustus of France, King, 528–9, 542  
 Philip II of France, King, 608, 623  
 Philip IV of France, King, 626, 635, 641, 644  
 Philip of Antioch, co-ruler of Armenia, 567, 569–70  
 Philip of Burgundy, Duke, 694  
 Philip of Courtenay, 585, 606, 610, 618, 626  
 Philip of Flanders, Count, 512  
 Philip of Savoy (Achaia), Count, 634, 637, 641  
 Philip of Swabia, 534, 538  
 Philip of Taranto, 652, 654  
 Philip (I) of Taranto, suzerain of Achaia, 628, 630, 632, 634, 640–1, 644, 646, 652, 654  
 Philip (II) of Taranto, ruler of Achaia, 676, 677–8, 682  
 Philip, Patriarch, 559  
 Philip, priest, 214  
 Philip, son of Charles, Count of Anjou and Provence, 605, 608, 614  
 Philippa, niece of Leo of Armenia, 560, 565  
 Philippa of Antioch, 503–4  
 Philippicus, general to Maurice, 131–3, 147, 149  
 Philippopolis, 57, 220, 232, 323, 334, 341, 417, 423, 425, 430, 438, 453, 463, 475, 481, 483, 498, 502, 520, 526, 528, 532, 535, 539, 554, 648, 675  
 Phillippicus Bardanes, Emperor, 192–3  
 Philocales the 'protovestiarus', 339  
 Philokrene, 651  
 Philomelium, 432, 434–5, 439, 454, 480, 536  
 Philopation Palace, 481, 516  
 Philopation, 431, 456; Palace, 481, 516; Park, 458  
 Philotheus 'the Red-Haired', Bishop of Heraclea, 669  
 Philotheus, Bishop of Euchaita, 322  
 Philotheus, Patriarch, 670, 676–8, 683  
 Philoxenos, Bishop of Hierapolis, 89  
 Phiscardo Bay, 48  
 Phlius, 729  
 Phocaea, 312, 325, 342, 422, 612, 630, 673, 684, 719  
 Phocaea, New, 651, 655, 665  
 Phocas, Bishop of Philadelphia, 587  
 Phocas, Emperor, 137–41, 147  
 Phocis, 558  
 Phocus, 110  
 Phoenice, Caria, 171  
 Phoenicia, 35  
 Photinians, 28  
 Photinus, 'Strategus' of Anatolicon, 244  
 Photinus, 85  
 Photius, stepson of Belisarius, 107–8  
 Photius, Patriarch, 255, 257, 259–63, 265, 272, 274, 280–1, 284  
 Phrygia, 24, 38, 58, 109, 342, 408–9, 412, 432, 451, 459, 473, 479, 495, 510, 624  
 Piacenza, 429, 467  
 Picenum, 105  
 Pigidium, 481  
 Picridium, Constantinople district, 681  
 Piedmontese, 634  
 Piero Fancesco, Papal Legate, 706  
 Pierre de St. Superan, Navarrese commander, 691  
 Pierre of Tarantaise, Pope Innocent V, 612  
 Pietro Loredan, Venetian Admiral, 705  
 Pietro Tradonico, Doge of Venice, 248, 263, 553  
 Pietro Ziani, Venetian envoy, 519  
 Pimen, Metropolitan of Moscow and Kiev, 685, 688–90  
 Pincian Palace, Rome, 104  
 Pindus Mountains, 350, 414–15, 446, 488, 564  
 Pisa/Pisan, 390, 405, 436, 450, 468, 471, 498, 506, 524, 530, 532, 535, 539, 541, 606  
 Pisidia, 89, 638  
 Pityus, 36, 43, 49  
 Pius II, Pope, 731–2  
 Placentia, 64, 71  
 Placidia, Empress Galla (West), 46, 47, 48, 49, 50, 51, 52, 55  
 Placidia, daughter of Valentinian III, 66, 69  
 Placidius, 52  
 Plataea, 7  
 Plate island, 236; monastery, 255  
 Plato of Saccudion, 225, 230–1, 233, 237  
 Plato, Euphemius' lieutenant, 243–4  
 Plethon, lay delegate, 713–14, 720  
 Plintha, Count, 49  
 Plinthas, 55  
 Pliska, 233–4  
 Po, River, 17, 39, 106, 116  
 Podandus, 222, 232, 247, 276, 305  
 Poemamenum, 451, 454, 559, 568  
 Poland, 351, 706  
 Pollentia, 40  
 Polotsk, 329  
 Polybotus, 432, 454  
 Polyuctus, Patriarch, 313, 318, 321, 323

- Pompeius, 92, 97, 98  
 Ponico Castro ('Mouse Castle'), 553  
 Pons, Count of Tripoli, 450–1, 472  
 Pontus, 12, 13, 65, 141, 152, 155, 306, 324, 331, 335, 407, 460, 462, 464, 507, 510–11, 514  
 Poppo of Brixen (Bavaria), Bishop, Pope Damasus II, 374  
 Porphyrius, charioteer, 89  
 Porpyrius, Bishop of Gaza, 39  
 Porta Asinaria, Rome, 111  
 Porta Pinciana, Rome, 105  
 Portus (Ostia), 115  
 Portus, 69, 105, 111  
 Pothus Argyrus, general, 296  
 Poucheas, governor of Tyragion, 454  
 Praenetus, 41, 138, 410  
 Preslav, capital of Bulgaria, 297, 323, 334, 373, 375, 421  
 Priene, 546  
 Prilep, 348, 541, 562, 570, 572, 587, 590–1, 672  
 Princes' Islands, 140, 212, 229, 233, 241, 212, 255, 507, 510–11, 514, 516, 520–1, 636  
 Princes's Islands, 516  
 Principo island, 242, 367, 520  
 Priscus, general to Anastasius, 85  
 Priscus, general to Maurice, 132, 134–7, 147–8  
 Pristina, 659  
 Probus/Photius, Patrician, 147  
 Prochorius, expelled monk, brother of Demetrius Cydones, 678  
 Proclus, Patriarch, 55, 56, 59  
 Proclus, head of 'Academy' at Athens, 77, 80  
 Proconessus, 7, 260, 308, 385  
 Procopia, 234–6  
 Procopius, 'Protovestiarius', 278  
 Procopius, envoy, 169  
 Procopius, historian, 105  
 Procopius, plotter against Leo I, 78  
 Procopius, rebel, cousin of Julian, 22, 23, 24  
 Proculus, 32  
 Profutus, 26, 27  
 Promotus, 31, 32, 35  
 Propontis, 7, 66, 85, 147, 176, 197, 246, 260, 296, 324, 385, 421, 424, 426, 482, 546, 559, 569, 639, 667, 724–5  
 Prosako, 541  
 Prosakon, 537  
 Prosuch, envoy, 481  
 Prote, Island of, 308, 310, 36, 403  
 Proterius of Alexandria, 61, 64  
 Provence, 46, 301, 623  
 Prusa, 451  
 Prusianus, son of ex-King of Bulgaria, 358  
 Psamathia, 43  
 Psellus, Michael VII's ex-tutor, 401, 407–8, 414  
 Psoterus, 241  
 Pterigionites, eunuch, 517  
 Ptolemy, 161, 163  
 Pudentius, 101  
 Pulcheria, 'Augusta', 37, 48, 50, 53, 54, 58, 60, 62  
 Pulcheria, sister of Emperor Romanus Argyrus, 355  
 Pylae, Bithynia, 152, 226  
 Pylos, 724, 732  
 Pyramus valley, 329  
 Pyrenees, 43, 47  
 Pyrrhus, Patriarch, 163, 165, 171  
 Pythia, 540  
 Qadisiya, 162  
 Qahtaba, general, 205  
 Qaim, Caliph, 303  
 Qairouan, Tunisia, 176, 181, 209, 211, 290  
 Qaraqanids, 337, 342, 344  
 Qarghyah, chamberlain to 'Emir' Sa'd al-Daula of Aleppo, 323  
 Qarmatians, 297, 299  
 Qasim the Danishmend of Melitene, 507  
 Qasim, 229  
 Qasvin, 456  
 Qirwash the Yqaylid of Mosul, 374  
 Qirwash, son of Al-Muqallad, 344  
 Quryash, tribe of, 153  
 Qongqurtay, Mongol general, 617, 621  
 Quadi, 19  
 Quierzy, 208  
 Rabban Sauma, Chinese Nestorian monk, 625  
 Radagaius, 42  
 Radelchis of Benevento, Prince, 251, 253  
 Radinus, 544  
 Radulf/Raoul, Count, 412  
 Radulph of Antioch, Patriarch, 469–70  
 Raginpert of Milan, Count, 188  
 Ragusa, 255, 271, 503, 507  
 Rahova, 694  
 Rainald of Dassel, 492  
 Rainald, commander in First Crusade, 430  
 Rainulf II Trincanocte, cousin of Asclettin, 371–2 377  
 Rainulf of Alife, Count, Duke, 462, 464, 467–8, 471–2, 474

- Rainulf of Aversa, Count, 361–3, 369, 371  
 Ramon de Villanova, Aragonese ‘Vicar-General’, 686  
 Raoul brothers, 612  
 Raoul of Pontoise, 415  
 Rapsomates, 426  
 Raqqa, 308  
 Ratchis, duke of Friuli, 204–5  
 Ratiaria, 57  
 Ratisbon, 481  
 Ravano delle Carceri, principal Lombard lord of Euboea, 557, 562  
 Ravenna, 39, 43, 44–6, 49, 51, 52, 54, 62, 70, 71, 82, 83, 87, 96, 104, 106, 114–16, 126, 128, 134, 150, 152, 169, 182, 186, 191–2, 199, 201, 203, 207–8  
 Raymond of Poitou and Antioch, 470, 478  
 Raymond of Toulouse, Count of Tripoli, 431–2, 435–41, 443, 447  
 Raymond II of Tripoli, Count, 472–3, 476–8, 495, 509–10, 519  
 Raymond II of Tripoli, Count, 522–3, 532  
 Raymond, father of Melissende, 497  
 Raymond, son of Bohemund III, ruler of Tripoli, 533, 536  
 Raymond, son of Bohemund IV, 560  
 Raymond-Rupen of Antioch, Prince, 536, 538, 563, 565–6  
 Rayy, 234  
 Rayy, battle of, 428  
 Recitach, 78  
 Red Sea, 96  
 Regata, 104  
 Reggio, 104, 114, 117, 174, 230, 387, 462, 620, 622–3  
 Reginald of Chatillon, 487, 491, 494–5, 510–11, 522–3  
 Renier of Montferrat, 513–15, 518, 547  
 Renier, Latin commander, 554  
 Reynald of Dassel, 493  
 Rhaedestus, 261, 324, 421, 438, 534, 553, 620, 639  
 Rhaetia, 39  
 Rhageas, 329  
 Rhales Palaeologus, 701  
 Rheae, 383  
 Rhegium, 81, 595, 639, 647  
 Rhine, 16, 19, 20, 23, 27, 30, 35, 43, 46, 61  
 Rhineland, 430  
 Rhodes, 165, 171, 177, 179, 195, 232, 308, 436, 460, 529–30, 574, 585, 655, 676, 697  
 Rhodope Mountains, 589  
 Rhone, River, 43, 18–20  
 Rhyndacus, River, 465, 469, 559  
 Rialto Islands, 123, 233, 713  
 Richard ‘of the Principate’, 443, 445–6, 450  
 Richard I of England, King, 528, 530–1, 533  
 Richard II of England, King, 696–7  
 Richard of Andria, 490  
 Richard of Aversa, 382  
 Richard of Camville, 529  
 Richard of Capua, Count, Prince, 386, 401, 403, 408–9  
 Richard of Turnham, 529  
 Richard Orsini of Cephallonia, Count, 628–9, 632, 637–8, 644  
 Richard, Norman commander, 520  
 Richard, heir to Capua, 434  
 Richomer, Count, general, 27, 29, 32  
 Ricimer, Count, 64, 66, 67, 68, 69  
 Ridwan of Aleppo, 428, 433, 443, 452  
 Rimini, 20, 45  
 Rinaldo Conti, Pope Alexander IV, 589  
 Risus, 376  
 River Phasis, 353  
 River Tigris, 15, 22, 129, 130, 162, 173, 248  
 Robert Guiscard, Duke of Apulia, 374, 377, 382, 384–1, 396, 398–408, 410–13, 415–19  
 Robert II of Capua, Count, 471, 465, 467–9, 470–1  
 Robert of Achaia, 677  
 Robert of Anjou, 635  
 Robert of Artois, Count, 623  
 Robert of Capua, 407, 490  
 Robert of Courtenay, Latin Emperor 566–8, 570–1  
 Robert of Flanders, Count, 421–2, 430, 437  
 Robert of Loritello, 489–90  
 Robert of Messina, Bishop, 434  
 Robert of Naples, King, 626, 628, 634–5, 645–6  
 Robert of Normandy, Duke, 430–2, 437  
 Robert of Selby, governor of Apulia and Calabria, 471, 475  
 Robert of Taranto, ruler of Achaia, 654, 656, 676  
 Roch Vehan (‘Rhezates’), 156  
 Rodoslav, ruler of Zeta  
 Roger Borsa, ruler of Apulia, 403, 418–20, 422–3, 449  
 Roger de Flor, ex-Templar Catalan knight, ‘Grand Duke’, ‘Caesar’, 637–9  
 Roger de Lluria (Loria), ‘Marshal’, 675  
 Roger Deslaur, Bonigazio of Verona, 644

- Roger I, Count of Sicily, 384, 387–91, 396, 399, 402, 416, 418–20, 422, 425, 434–5, 439
- Roger II, Count of Sicily, King of (Naples and) Siciy, 444, 451, 455, 460, 462–6, 471–2, 475, 481–3, 485, 487, 518
- Roger of Andria, Count, 528
- Roger of Antioch, 454, 457
- Roger of Apulia, Duke, son of Roger II, 474–5, 483
- Roger of Apulia, eldest son of Tancred, 531
- Roger of Loria, Sicilian admiral, 623, 625, 628
- Roger, son of Richard of the Principate, 451
- Roger, son of Tancred de Hauteville, 384, 387–91
- Rogoi castle, 657
- Rogvolod of Polotsk, Prince, 329
- Roland Bandinelli, Pope Alexander III, 494
- Romanus Argyrus, Emperor, 342, 355–6
- Romanus Boilas, 376
- Romanus I Lecapenus, Emperor, 284, 291, 293–5, 297, 299–302, 306–10, 315, 318, 345, 356
- Romanus II, co-emperor, son of Constantine VII and Helena, 305, 308–9, 313, 315–17, 320, 322, 324, 329, 340
- Romanus III Argyrus, Emperor, 358–60, 368
- Romanus IV Diogenes, Emperor, 395–403, 422
- Romanus of Bulgaria, Prince, 344
- Romanus Sclerus, 368, 383
- Romanus, 'dux', 85
- Romanus, 'Patrician', 140
- Romanus, commander, 133, 136
- Romanus, son-in-law of Andronicus I, 518–19
- Rome/Romans, 6, 7, 8, 11, 12, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19, 21, 24, 27, 28, 29, 31, 32, 34, 35, 36, 41, 44, 45, 47, 49, 51, 52, 55, 57, 58, 59, 61, 63, 64, 69, 70, 77, 79, 83, 85, 86, 88, 92, 100–1, 104–5, 110, 113, 115, 117–18, 123, 126–8, 132–5, 152, 241–3, 255, 261, 263, 265, 271, 283, 287, 299–302, 316, 318, 320, 325, 327, 331, 338, 340–1, 343–5, 360, 370–1, 374, 378–9, 381, 385, 389, 406, 415–16, 421, 423, 427, 465, 468, 473, 478–9, 487, 501, 524, 529, 564, 604, 609, 634, 678–9, 687, 693, 703, 711, 715, 732
- Romeo de Bellarbe, leader of Catalans, 686
- Rometta, 363
- Romuald, Archbishop, 462
- Romulus Augustulus, Emperor (West), 71
- Romulus, Count, 70
- Rostislav of Kiev, 500
- Rostislav of Moravia, Prince, 261
- Rostislav of Smolensk, 488
- Rostislav, Serb prince, 591
- Rothari, King, 169
- Rothrud, fiancée of Constantine VI, 218–19, 221
- Roussadan, Queen, sister of George IV of Georgia, 568, 573, 575–6, 579, 582–3
- Roussell of Bailleul, 403–6
- Rovine, 694
- Rua, King of Huns, 55
- Rudolf of Burgundy, 296, 299
- Rufinus, 34, 35, 87, 99
- Rugians, 61, 81, 107
- Rukn al-Daula of Rayy, one of Buwayhid brothers, 310, 329
- Rukn-al-Din Kiliç Arslan, Seljuk Sultan, 583–5, 590–1, 594, 596, 604
- Rukn-al-Din Sulaiman Shah, Sultan, 540, 542, 546
- Rumeli Hisar, 723
- Rupel Pass, 348
- Rupela, 730
- Rupen the Armenian, 412
- Rupen II, son of Leo the Armenian, 472
- Rupen III, King, son of Thoros II, 503, 506, 509, 521
- Rupert of Nassau, envoy to Frederick, 526
- Rurik, Viking, 257
- Russia/Russian, 127, 274, 291, 306, 319–22, 330, 335, 349, 354, 369, 371, 373, 375, 440, 453, 493, 525, 556, 559, 568, 670, 683, 712, 715
- Rustem, 160, 162
- Rustem, leader of Turcomans, 523
- Ruy Gonzalez de Clavijo, 700
- Ryazan, Russia, 578
- Sa'd al-Daula of Aleppo, 320, 330, 332, 336
- Sa'd, 161, 162
- Sa'id ad-Daula of Aleppo, 307–8, 310, 336, 338, 341, 345
- Sabbas of Priene, 557
- Sabbas, 546
- Sabbatius the Armenian, 515
- Sabeiroi, 91
- Sabin, 211
- Sabinian, 20
- Sabinian, C5th general, 78
- Sabinian, Pope, 139
- Sabuktagin, general, 327
- Saccudion, 224, 226

- Sacred Palace Constantinople, 78, 82, 91, 93, 100, 122, 147, 182, 185, 186, 194, 401, 403, 413, 442
- Saffarid dynasty, 285
- Sahel, 'Lavra' at, 53
- Saif ad-Daula, 'Emir', 305–6, 311–13, 317, 319–20
- Saif-ed-Din of Mosul, nephew of Nur-ed-Din, 509, 514
- Saif-ed-Din of Mosul, son of Zengi, 480
- Saladin, governor of Egypt, 502, 504, 507–11, 514–15, 516–19, 522–5, 530–2, 538
- Salamis, 541
- Salernitans, 364
- Salerno, 332, 363, 371, 376, 382, 407–8, 412, 449, 462, 469, 471, 489, 497, 529, 534
- Salih bin Mirdas, 'Emir', 354, 358
- Sallust, 20, 22, 23, 84
- Sallustius, 81
- Salman, deputy governor of Nasr al-Daulah, 359
- Salmon, Isauria, 70
- Salona, 51, 103, 114, 150
- Salona (Phocis), Count of, 547, 686, 688
- Salonica, 414
- Salutius Secundus, 21
- Samanids, 285, 317, 337, 342, 344
- Samaritans 17, 97, 99, 118
- Samarra, 248–8, 251, 258, 262, 264, 274
- Sami, general, governor of Tarsus, 301
- Samonas, eunuch adviser of Leo VI, 286–7, 289
- Samos, 413, 426, 436, 606
- Samosota, 29, 163, 187, 214, 217, 258, 260, 274, 301, 314, 358
- Samothrace, 240, 308
- Samsam ad-Daula, 332, 334, 340
- Samsun, 571
- Samuel Aba, 366, 370
- Samuel Alousianus, 397
- Samuel of Bulgaria, Czar, son of Shishman, 324, 328–9, 331, 332–5, 338–40, 341–2, 345–6, 348, 364
- Samuel, Czar, 541
- Samuh, Turkish chieftain, 381, 386
- San Germano, 493
- Sangarius valley, 405, 473–4, 617, 620, 627, 636
- Saniana, 242
- Sanjar of Khorasan, Sultan, brother of Sultan Mohammed, 425, 456, 458, 476, 487, 491–2
- Sanjar Shah, brother of Kilij Arslan, 525
- Sanoeces, 52
- Sansam al-Daula of Fars, 336
- Santa Maria basilica, Rome, 402
- Santabarenus, 279–80
- Santo Spirito hospital, 732
- Saphrax, 27
- Sapor, 'strategus' of Armeniakon, 175–6
- Sara Hatun, Aramaic Christian mother of Uzun Hassan, 732
- Sarablangas, 154
- Sarapata, 495
- Sardes, 150
- Sardica, 15, 68, 114, 232, 341, 372
- Sardinia, 67, 101, 114, 187
- Sarmatians, 11, 12, 14, 19, 80
- Saronic Gulf, 704
- Saros, River, 154
- Saruj, 440
- Sarukhan, 637, 718; Emir of, 651, 655
- Sarus the Goth, 43, 44, 45, 46, 48
- Satala, 140
- Satdica, 233
- Saturminus, general of Theodosius I, 29, 38
- Saturminus, general of Theodosius II, 58
- Sauromax, 'king', 24–5
- Sava, Archbishop of Serbia, 563, 565, 574–5, 578
- Sava, St., son of Stephen Nemanja, 58
- Sawada, Emir of, 245
- Save, River, 429
- Sawar, governor of Aleppo, 468–9
- Sawdji/Saudzi, son of Ottoman emir Murad, 681
- Scandinavia, 329, 375
- Scilla, rock of, 387
- Scirians, 61
- Sclerus of Hellas, 'Strategus', 230
- Sclerus, 329–31, 334–7, 442
- Scribia castle, 374
- Scupi/Skopje, 135, 344–5, 351, 364, 528
- Scutari, 684, 703, 706
- Scyros, 241, 508
- Scythia/Scythian, 27, 59, 78
- Sea of Marmara, 7
- Sebastea, 154, 309, 386, 398–9, 437–8, 471, 497, 508–9, 511, 525, 581, 697
- Sebastian Ziani, 505
- Sebastian, Count, 27
- Sebastian, Western rebel, 46–7
- Sebastian, C5th general, 55
- Sebastiano Ziani, Doge of Venice, 508, 512
- Sebastopolis, 185
- Seleucia, 18, 20, 251, 569
- Seljuk Turks, 314, 355, 363–4, 381, 409, 451, 467, 470–1, 473–5, 480, 486–7, 492, 494–6, 507, 510–11, 531–2, 553, 555, 561, 563–4, 571, 580, 590, 613

- Seljuk, Turkish military leader, 314  
 Selymbria, 119, 216, 296, 379, 502, 546, 594,  
     620, 640, 649, 662, 678, 685, 686–7, 690,  
     696, 716, 720–1, 724  
 Sembat Bagratuhi, 245  
 Sembat II, son of Ashot III, 330, 335  
 Sembat IV of Armenia, 184, 185, 187–90  
 Sembat of Iberia, King, brother of Ashot II,  
     313, 333  
 Sembat VI, 191, 193  
 Sembat VII, 211, 215  
 Sembat VIII, 258  
 Sembat, grandson of Sembat VIII, 281–2, 285, 291  
 Sennacherim, lord of Arta, 547  
 Sennacherim-John of Vaspurakan, King, 345,  
     352–3  
 Sena Gallica, 114  
 Sens, 18  
 Sentinum, 115  
 Sepphoris, 17  
 Septem/Ceuta, 110  
 Serapion, deacon, 39  
 Serapis, 33  
 Serbia, 337, 340, 364, 369, 408, 425–6, 484–6,  
     297, 501–3, 508, 542, 565, 609, 633, 644,  
     649, 651, 653–4, 658–9, 660–2, 664, 666,  
     668, 671–3, 678–9, 683–4, 687, 694, 703,  
     704, 716–18, 720, 722, 729–31  
 Serdica, 150, 418, 716  
 Serena, 31, 34, 44  
 Sergiopolis, 108  
 Sergius II, Pope, 254–5, 287–90, 343, 351  
 Sergius III, Pope, 301  
 Sergius IV, Pope, 347–8, 355  
 Sergius of Amalfi, Duke, 404  
 Sergius of Naples, 254, 361, 468  
 Sergius the ‘Spatharius’, 247  
 Sergius VII of Naples, 466  
 Sergius, nephew of Aetherius, 121  
 Sergius, ‘Duke’ of Tripolitania, 110  
 Sergius, ‘strategus’, 196  
 Sergius, bishop of Caere, Pope, 284  
 Sergius, Christopher’s son, 214  
 Sergius, eunuch, 175  
 Sergius, general to Constantine V, 213  
 Sergius, Patriarch, 147, 152, 155, 160, 163,  
     165, 167  
 Sergius, Pope, 183, 185, 186, 189  
 Sergius, Prince of Lazica, 187  
 Serlo, nephew of Roger Guiscard, 388, 402  
 Serros, 427, 520, 535, 557, 567, 584, 587, 589,  
     616, 660–2, 672, 675, 680–1, 687, 692, 719  
 Servia, 343, 413, 590  
 Sestos, 504  
 Setcenitsa, 485  
 Sevar, ‘Khan’, 207  
 Severian, Bishop of Gabala, 39, 40  
 Severinus, Pope, 163, 164  
 Severus, Emperor (West), 6  
 Severus, Patriarch of Antioch, 89, 90,  
     92, 105  
 Severus, Patrician’, 171, 175  
 Seville, 123  
 Sgouromallis ‘Michael’ of Taygetus, 630  
 Sguros, 542  
 Sgurus, 541, 547  
 Shahap, lord, 261  
 Shahbaraz, 148–9, 151–8  
 Shahin, general, 141, 148–50, 154  
 Shahinshah of Amkara, cousin of Kilij Arslan,  
     509  
 Shaizar, 433, 436, 473  
 Shams-al-Din Isfahani, ‘Vizier’, 585  
 Shapur II, ‘Great King’ of Persia, 13, 19,  
     20, 23  
 Shapur III, ‘Great King’ of Persia, 9, 31  
 Sharaf al-Daula of Baghdad and Fars, Buwayid  
     ‘Emir’, 336  
 Sharaf al-Daula of Fars, 332, 334, 336  
 Shawar, ‘Vizier, 499, 502, 504  
 Shayban, ‘Emir’, 287  
 Shi’a, 326  
 Shi’ites, 274, 356  
 Shiraz, 303  
 Shirin, 156  
 Shirkuh, governor of Egypt, 499,  
     502–4  
 Shishman of Bulgaria, 324, 328  
 Shurahbil, 160, 162  
 Siblylla, daughter of King Amalric of  
     Jerusalem, 507, 511–13, 519, 522, 533  
 Sicard of Benevento, Prince, 251  
 Sicco of Spoleto, Count, 327  
 Siconulf of Salerno, 251  
 Sichelgaita, wife of Richard of Capua, 403,  
     407, 410, 414  
 Sicily, 32, 46, 57, 58, 64, 66, 67, 103, 114,  
     130, 169, 174, 175, 181, 187, 201, 205–8, 213,  
     218–19, 228, 244, 249–51, 259, 277–8, 280,  
     294, Sicily, 305, 319, 332, 344, 354–5, 362–3,  
     365, 386–7, 389, 396, 398–400, 400, 424,  
     462–4, 468, 486, 490, 492, 502, 510, 516,  
     518–19, 521, 523, 534, 586, 589, 602, 606, 608,  
     616, 619, 622, 625, 628, 634–5, 637, 682



- Sicyon, 719  
 Siderokastron, 724  
 Sidon, 162, 328, 448, 511, 524,  
 Siena, 385  
 Siffin, battle of, 172  
 Sigeric, 48  
 Sigirtze, general, 294  
 Sigismund, 693–5, 703, 706, 708, 711  
 Sigisvult, 53  
 Sigurd of Norway, King, 449  
 Silistria, 453  
 Silvanus, 18  
 Silverius, Pope, 104, 105  
 Silvester II, anti-Pope, 449  
 Simeon ‘the young’, St., 353  
 Simeon II, Greek Patriarch of Constantinople,  
 554, 556, 573–4  
 Simeon of Bulgaria, Czar, 282–3, 286, 294,  
 296–9  
 Simeon Uros, brother of Stephen Dusan, lord  
 of Thessaly, 681  
 Simeon, ‘Drungarius of the Watch’, 356  
 Simeon, Archbishop of Thessalonica, 710  
 Simeon-Titus, 184  
 Simon of Brie, French ex-chancellor to Louis  
 XIV, Pope Martin IV, 618  
 Simon of Perugia, Patriarch, 572  
 Simon, Count of Sicily, 439, 444  
 Simone Vignosi, Genoese commander in  
 Chios, 665  
 Simonis, Queen of Serbia, daughter of  
 Andronicus II, 633  
 Simplicius, Pope, 68, 79, 98  
 Sinan Pasha, governor-general of ‘Rumelia’,  
 710  
 Sinan, Sulaiman’s general, 702  
 Singara, 127; battle of, 15  
 Singidunum, 50, 57, 59, 130, 135, 137  
 Sinibaldo Fieschi, Pope Innocent IV, 582  
 Sinope, 193, 250, 546, 561, 588, 594, 613,  
 617, 691; Bishop of, 224  
 Siponto, 377  
 Siricius, Pope, 30, 38  
 Sirmium (Upper Danube), 14, 16, 19, 21, 27,  
 28, 59, 82, 123, 128, 130, 133, 351, 463–4,  
 499–500  
 Sisarbanon, battle of, 133  
 Sisaurana, 107  
 Sisebut, King, 149, 150  
 Sisily, 361  
 Sisinnius of Thraciesion, ‘Strategus’, 203  
 Sisinnius I, Patriarch, 52  
 Sisinnius II, Patriarch, 339–40  
 Sisinnius, Pope, 191  
 Sisium, 189  
 Sitt-al-Mulk, sister of Caliph Al-Hakim, Regent  
 of Egypt, 352, 356  
 Sittas, 97, 99  
 Studger of Bamberg (Bavaria), Pope Clement  
 II, 371  
 Sivas, 697  
 Siwnik, 154  
 Sixtus (Xystus), Pope, 55, 57  
 Siyavsh, son of Izz-ed-Din, 617  
 Skepes, 272  
 Skiathos, 699  
 Skopelos, 699  
 Skopia, 415  
 Skorta, 602, 612, 631  
 Skyros, 699  
 Slavs, 91, 95, 98–9, 105, 111, 112, 114–15,  
 128–9, 131–2, 134–5, 153, 155, 173, 219  
 Smaragdus, ‘Exarch’, 131, 133, 139, 147  
 Smederevo, 714, 729–31; fortress, 710, 718  
 Smilec, 634  
 Smilec, puppet Mongol Czar, 628  
 Smolensk, 380  
 Smyrna, 240, 413, 432, 561, 575, 637, 653–4,  
 674, 660–2, 664, 699, 704  
 Sochi, 350  
 Sofia, 15, 233, 334, 430, 463, 481, 486, 498,  
 502, 508, 517, 675, 716, 720  
 Soissons, 540  
 Solachon, 131  
 Solomon of Hungary, King, 388, 421  
 Soloman, general of Justinian I, 102, 103,  
 105, 110  
 Soloman, principal senator, 442  
 Sontius, River, 81  
 Sophia, Theodora’s niece, wife of Justin II,  
 122, 125, 126, 127, 128  
 Sophia, Harbour of, 147  
 Sophia, wife of Christopher Lecapenus, 296,  
 302  
 Sophia, wife of John VIII, 706, 708  
 Sophronius ‘the Sophist’, Patriarch of  
 Jerusalem, 151, 160, 162  
 Sophronius I, Patriarch, 732  
 Sophronius of Alexandria, Patriarch, 497  
 Sophronius, monk, 630–1  
 Soqman Ibn Ortoq of Jerusalem and Mardin,  
 433, 440, 442–3, 448  
 Soriano, 617  
 Soterichus, 492

- Sozopetra, 205, 242, 249  
 Sozopolis, 190, 420, 467, 476, 517, 525, 667, 677  
 Spain, 6, 11, 14, 27, 32, 43, 45, 46–8, 53, 65, 110, 206, 243, 251, 310, 314  
 Spania, province of, 117  
 Spalata/Salona, 149  
 Spanish, 702  
 Sparta/Spartans, 36, 313  
 Spercheius, River, 340  
 Spetsai, 602  
 Speyer, 480  
 Sphrantzes, George, friend of Constantine XI, historian, 711, 721–2  
 Spoleto, 200, 210, 275, 287  
 Spoleto, Duke of, 134, 209  
 Spondyles, ‘duke’ of Antioch, 357  
 Srebrenitsa, 729  
 Sredna Gora Mountains, 528, 535  
 Sredra Gore mountains, 716  
 St, Nicholas monastery, 475  
 St. Andrew, 732  
 St. Andrew, Island of, 246  
 St. Antony, 18  
 St. Athanasius (of Mount Athos), 312, 315, 318, 324  
 St. Basil, shrine, 395  
 St. Benedict, 88  
 St. Catherine’s monastery, 168  
 St. Chrysogonus, church of, 69  
 St. Clement, relics, 271  
 St. Cosmas and Damian monastery, 543  
 St. Daniel, 84  
 St. Demetrius chapel, 522  
 St. Demetrius, 415, 520, 556, 687  
 St. Denis Church, 698  
 St. Diomedes monastery, 256, 517  
 St. Euphemia, Church of, 61, 115, 225  
 St. Euphemia-in Petriion, nunnery, 295  
 St. Euphemius, 63  
 St. George, battle of, 647  
 St. George, castle of, 631  
 St. George, chapel of, 529  
 St. Gilles, France, 499  
 St. Hilarion castle, 529  
 St. Irene, church of, 200  
 St. Jerome, 35, 36  
 St. John Climacus, 168  
 St. John Colobus, 280  
 St. John the Baptist, 322  
 St. John, Church of, 515  
 St. John, monastery of, 66  
 St. John, shrine of, 271  
 St. Ladislav, King, 442  
 St. Lawrence, church of, 564  
 St. Luke of Stiris, 283, 312  
 St. Luke the ‘Stylite’, 304  
 St. Mamas monastery, 138, 353  
 St. Mamas, Palace, 223, 225, 265  
 St. Mark’s, Venice, 542, 708  
 St. Matrona, 95  
 St. Michael Maleinus, 312  
 St. Michael, shrine of, 398  
 St. Mocius, Church of, 286  
 St. Nicholas Molyboton, monastery, 395  
 St. Olaf of Norway, ex-King, 362  
 St. Peter ‘the Athonite’, 261, 280  
 St. Peter’s, Rome, 87, 118, 199, 316, 318, 420, 449  
 St. Sabas, 84, 101  
 St. Sergius and Bacchus monastery, 232, 238, 241  
 St. Simeon ‘the Young’, 311  
 St. Simeon Stylites, 49, 51, 63, 64  
 St. Stephen ‘the younger’, 212  
 St. Stephen, King, 363  
 St. Symeon, 482  
 St. Thecla, church, 386  
 St. Theodora, Church of, 121  
 St. Theodore of Siceon, 147, 148–9  
 St. Theodore, 324, 515  
 St. Theodosius, 151, 160  
 St. Tommaso Abbey, 373  
 Sta Maria Maggiore, Pope, 86  
 Stamford Bridge, York, 362  
 Stara Zagora, 458  
 Stauracius eunuch, 218  
 Stauracius, Emperor, 223, 229, 232, 234–5  
 Stauracius, adviser to Irene, 219–20, 226  
 Stenimachus, 540, 554  
 Stenum, 90  
 Stephen Asmicus, 192  
 Stephen Contostephanus, 483  
 Stephen Dandolo, 656  
 Stephen Deskani, King of Serbia, 647, 649–52  
 Stephen Dragutin, son of Stephen Uros, 613, 616, 618  
 Stephen Drzislav of Serbis, 340  
 Stephen Dusan, ‘Emperor of the Serbs and Greeks’, 652–4, 658–60, 662–4, 666–8, 671, 675, 684  
 Stephen Gabrielopulus, lord of Thessaly, 653  
 Stephen Hagiochristophorites, 517–18, 520  
 Stephen I, King of Hungary, 342–3

- Stephen II of Hungary, King, 463–4, 455  
 Stephen II of Serbia, 538, 562–3, 572, 593  
 Stephen II, King, 496  
 Stephen II, Pope, 207–10  
 Stephen III of Hungary, King, 501–2, 508  
 Stephen III, 497–500  
 Stephen III, Pope, 214–15, 217  
 Stephen 'IV' of Hungary, pretender, 497–500  
 Stephen IV, Pope, 238–9  
 Stephen V of Serbia, 671, 681  
 Stephen V, Pope, 279, 281  
 Stephen VI, Pope, 283–4  
 Stephen VII, Pope, 301  
 Stephen VIII, Pope, 305, 307  
 Stephen IV of Hungary, 609  
 Stephen IX, Pope, 383–4  
 Stephen Lazarevic of Serbia, 689, 692, 694, 704, 709  
 Stephen Lecapenus, Patriarch, 298, 302, 308  
 Stephen Maxentius, 278  
 Stephen Miliutin, King of Serbia, 618, 632–3, 647  
 Stephen Nemanja of Serbia, 'Grand Zupan', 501, 503, 508, 514, 526, 528, 538  
 Stephen of Amasea, Patriarch, 298  
 Stephen of Blois, Count, 430, 435, 438–40  
 Stephen of Bosnia, King, 'Despot', 729–31  
 Stephen of Burgundy, 439–40  
 Stephen of Iberia, 171  
 Stephen of Servia, 590  
 Stephen Pateranus, 'Catepan', 397  
 Stephen Radoslav, son of Stephen II of Serbia, 572, 574  
 Stephen the 'Magister', 292, 295  
 Stephen Uros, 613  
 Stephen, Bishop, of Antioch, 15  
 Stephen, brother of Lazar, son of George Brankovic, 729  
 Stephen, brother of Prince Thoros of Armenia, 498  
 Stephen, eunuch 'sacellarius', 186  
 Stephen, lord of Cholarzene, 156  
 Stephen, Patriarch, brother of Leo VI, 280, 282, 300  
 Stephen, proconsul, 118  
 Stephen, son of Basil and Eudocia, 272  
 Stephen, son of George Brankovic of Serbia, 717  
 Stephen, son of Leo the Armenian, 472  
 Stephen. 'Domestic of Scholae', 236  
 Steppes, 62, 98, 114, 119, 123, 125, 132, 182  
 Stulich, 30, 31, 35, 36, 37, 39–44  
 Stilo, Calabria, battle, 332  
 Stojko Gizdavic, Kind Ladislav's envoy to Adrianople, 717  
 Stotzas, 103, 104  
 Strachimir, Prince, half-brother of John Sisman, 692, 695  
 Stracimir, son of John Alexander, 676  
 Strasbourg, Battle of, 19  
 Strategius Musonianus, 18  
 Strategius Strabo, 437  
 Strategius, commander of 'Excubitors', 213  
 Struma valley, 345, 348, 351  
 Strumnitsa, 350, 535, 537, 673  
 Strymon valley, 220, 222, 232  
 Strymon, 254  
 Strymon, River, 520, 538, 666, 722  
 Studius Monastery, Constantinople, 62, 66, 226, 230, 232–3, 243, 324, 357, 379, 386, 410, 526  
 Stylianus Zautzes, 277, 279, 282, 284  
 Stylite, 84  
 Stylanos, Bishop, 284  
 Stypes, priest, 368  
 Styppiotēs, general, 278  
 Suania (Svanetia), 121  
 Subiaco, 88  
 Sublaeum, 51, 510  
 Subotai, 568  
 Suevic, 64  
 Sufetala, 68  
 Sulaiman Pasha, 717  
 Sulaiman Shah (Rukn-al-Din), 525  
 Sulaiman, 'Pervane', 604, 613–14  
 Sulaiman, Caliph, 194, 196–7  
 Sulaiman, elder son of Orchan, 664, 666, 669, 673–4  
 Sulaiman, Ottoman Sultan, eldest son of Bajezid, 698–703  
 Sulaiman, governor of Adata, 220  
 Sulaiman, governor of Aleppo, son of Ilghazi, 458–9  
 Sulaiman, son of 'Emir' of Saruchan, 661  
 Sulaiman, 'Emir' and Sultan of Nicaea (Seljuk), 409, 411, 413, 415–16, 418–19  
 Sultan Shah, brother of Malik Shah, 533  
 Sultan-al-Daula, son of Baha-al-Daula, 347, 352  
 Sultanshah, brother of Alp Arslan, 452, 460  
 Suml of Tarsus, 306  
 Superan, St., commander of Navarrese, ruler of Achaia, 693, 699  
 Sura, 107  
 Sursubul, 299

- Sutri, 371, 490  
 Sutri, Bishop of, 327  
 Svengel, 324  
 Svetigrad, 720  
 Sviatopolk of Kiev, 'Grand Prince', 452  
 Sviatopolk, Prince of Turov, 349–51  
 Svyatoslav, Prince, son of Prince Igor and Helga, 309, 319–23, 325, 380  
 Swabia/Swabian, 132, 273, 377, 380  
 Sweden, 353  
 Sycæ, 187, 215  
 Syllaeum, 241  
 Sylvester II, Pope, 341, 343, 371, 373  
 Sylvester, Bishop of Rome, 12  
 Symbatius, 264  
 Symbatius, son of Leo V, 237–8  
 Symeon the 'Spatharius', Governor, 246  
 Symeon Uros, uncle of Stephen V, 671  
 Symmachus, Praefect of Rome, 49  
 Symmachus, Pope, 86, 87, 88, 90  
 Synadenus, duke of Dyrrachium, 364–5  
 Synadenus, general, 555  
 Synadenus, nephew of Nicephorus III, 411  
 Synesius, Bishop of 'Pentapolis', 46  
 Synesius, general, Alexius Comnenus' negotiator, 422, 425  
 Syracuse, 101, 103, 109, 117, 174–5, 243, 276, 319, 418  
 Syrez, Vlach lord, 558  
 Syrgiannes Palaeologus, commander in Thrace, 647–8, 650, 653–4  
 Syria/Syrian, 21, 27, 30, 35, 52, 85, 87, 95, 98–9, 107–8, 121, 125, 127–8, 161, 175, 181, 184, 188, 194, 200, 204, 206, 217, 235, 248, 276, 286, 290, 306, 310–11, 320, 322–3, 327–8, 338, 341, 357, 383, 397–8, 400, 405, 407, 419, 426–7, 433, 436–7, 439–40, 442, 452, 454, 470, 476, 482, 494, 497, 500, 505, 507, 517–18, 529, 613, 697  
 Sypiritis, lord of, 249  
 Szeged, 717  
  
 Tabaristan, 212, 274  
 Tabriz, 570, 617  
 Tabuc, 158  
 Taceddin, Emir of Limnia, 685  
 Tagliocozzo, 606  
 Tahir 'the Ambidexterous', 234–5, 236, 242  
 Tahirid dynasty, 274  
 Taif, 157, 353  
 Taksony, King, 325  
 Talas, River, 207  
 Talha, son of Tahir, 242  
 Tamara of Georgia, Queen, 546, 560  
 Tancred of Conversano, 467–8  
 Tancred of Hauteville, Norman knight, 361, 374  
 Tancred of Lecce, King of Sicily, 491, 496, 519–20, 527–8, 532–3  
 Tancred, Prince of Antioch, nephew of Bohemund, 429, 431–3, 437–45  
 Tancred, son of Duke of Apulia, 464  
 Tao, Armenia, 245, 348, 352  
 Taormina, 276, 286  
 Taranto, 174, 251, 273, 277, 300, 325, 373, 387, 390–1, 410, 419, 463, 508, 534, 656  
 Tarasius, chieftain (Zeno), see Zeno  
 Tarasius, Patriarch, 220, 221, 226, 232–3, 249  
 Tarawn (see also Taron), 320–1  
 Tarchaneiotes, governor, 577  
 Tarchaneiotes, 'Grand Domestic', 618  
 Tarchaniotes, general of Romanus IV, 400  
 Tarentum, 109, 110, 115  
 Taron, Armenia, 256, 321  
 Taronites the 'Magister', 335  
 Tarraco, 45, 48  
 Tarsus, Cilicia, 21, 23, 80, 177, 230, 246, 300–1, 309, 319, 416, 439–40, 448, 471, 493, 506, 566  
 Tartars, 620  
 Tashkent, 207  
 Tata, 101  
 Tatian, 32, 34  
 Taticius, general, 414, 417, 420, 433, 436  
 Tatranus, deserter, 423  
 Tatzates of Bucellarion, 'strategus', 219  
 Taurocomos, 424  
 Taurus Mountains, 232, 254, 275, 441–2, 527  
 Taurus, 189, 424, 462–3, 466, 472, 564, 617  
 Teano, Count of, 355, 376–7  
 Tebaldo Visconti, archdeacon of Liege, Pope Gregory X, 608  
 Teguder (Ahmad), brother of Mongol 'Ilkhan' Abagha, 621–2  
 Teias, 115–16  
 Telanissos, 49  
 Tel-Danith, 454  
 Telemachus, 41  
 Telerich, 'Khan' of Bulgaria, 215–17  
 Telets, 'Khan' of Bulgaria, 211  
 Telha, 172  
 Tempe, Vale of, 642  
 Templar fortress, Baghras, 506  
 Tenedos, 668–9, 672, 679, 683–4, 686

- Teobaldo, Cardinal priest, 461  
 Tephrike, 271, 273, 282; fortress 254, 258  
 Terebinthos, 259–60; monastery, 255  
 Terentius, 25  
 Terracina, 420, 422  
 Tervel, Bulgar Khan, 189, 190, 191, 193  
 Tervingi (Visigoths), 26, 28  
 Tamar, daughter of Nicephorus of Epirus, 628–30, 637  
 Tamar/Tamara, Queen, daughter of George III of Georgia, 519, 525, 528  
 Thasos, 308, 704  
 Thebasa, fort, 224  
 Thebes, 36, 365, 482, 488, 557, 592, 611, 625, 644, 653, 675, 681, 685–6, 691–2, 711, 719–20, 729–30  
 Thecla, daughter of Theophilus and Theodora, 246, 263  
 Thecla, wife of Michael II, 242  
 Theiss, River, 137  
 Themistius, 30  
 Thens, 693  
 Theobald of Champagne, Count, 538, 541  
 Theocritus, 92  
 Theoctise, 246  
 Theoctistus Bryennius, 254–5  
 Theoctistus, ‘Magister’, 234, 236  
 Theoctistus, 254, 257–8  
 Theoctitus, 240  
 Theodahad, 102, 103, 104  
 Theodebert, King 106  
 Theodemir, 61, 65  
 Theodora Cantacuzene, 694  
 Theodora Comnena, mistress of Prince Andronicus, 510, 512, 514  
 Theodora Comnena, Princess, 521  
 Theodora Petralipha, 573  
 Theodora, relative of Alexius III, 540  
 Theodora, daughter of John Cantacuzene, 662  
 Theodora, daughter of John VI’s cousin Nicephorus, 667  
 Theodora, daughter of Michael IX, 641  
 Theodora, Empress to Justinian, 89, 91, 93, 95, 97, 100, 102, 103, 107–9, 111, 112  
 Theodora (St.), Empress to Theophilus, 245, 253–4, 257, 259  
 Theodora, Empress, daughter of Constantine VIII, 332, 359, 367–8, 372, 380–2  
 Theodora, grand-daughter of Andronicus II, 646  
 Theodora, half-sister of John II of Trebizond, rebel (1285), 621–2, 624  
 Theodora, Ivanko’s widow, 541  
 Theodora, Manuel I’s niece, 497, 512  
 Theodora, mother of John Cantacuzene, 658–9  
 Theodora, niece of Manuel, 512  
 Theodora, Princess, married to Henry of Austria, 482–3, 493  
 Theodora, Romanus II’s sister, 324  
 Theodora, sister of Andronicus III, 648  
 Theodora, sister of Alexius III of Trebizond, 673  
 Theodora, sister of Hethoum of Armenia, 631  
 Theodora, sister of Isaac Angelus, 522–3  
 Theodora, widow of Baldwin II, 504  
 Theodora, wife of Leo Diogenes, 428  
 Theodora, wife of Michael II of Epirus, 590, 595  
 Theodora, wife of Romanus Lecapenus, 295–6  
 Theodore ‘the Patrician’, 218  
 Theodore Alyattes, 401  
 Theodore Angelus Ducas, ‘Despot’, 558, 562–4, 566–72, 577, 581, 586–7  
 Theodore Askidas, 104, 109  
 Theodore Balsamon, Patriarch of Antioch, 526  
 Theodore Branas, feudal lord of Didymoteichon, 554  
 Theodore Calliopas, ‘Exarch’, 170  
 Theodore Camulianus, 223  
 Theodore Cantacuzene, 517  
 Theodore Castamonitzes, Minister of Finance, 521, 530  
 Theodore Chumnus, ‘Chartulary’, 532  
 Theodore Crithinius, 243–4  
 Theodore Dabibrenus, adviser to Andronicus Angelus, 517  
 Theodore Gabras of Trebizond, 407, 427, 436  
 Theodore I Lascaris, Emperor of Nicaea, 538, 546, 553, 555–6, 559–62, 565, 567  
 Theodore I, Despot of Mistra, 683–4, 686–7, 689–90, 693, 695, 691–2  
 Theodore II Vatatzes Lascaris, Emperor of Nicaea, 576, 588–92  
 Theodore II Eirenicus, Patriarch, 561–2, 590  
 Theodore II, Pope, 284  
 Theodore II, Despot of Mistra, 701, 704–5, 707–8, 716, 720  
 Theodore Mankaphas of Philadelphia, 525, 531–2  
 Theodore Matzuces, 294–5  
 Theodore Mavrozomes, 518  
 Theodore Metochites, ‘Grand Logothete’, 620–1, 629–30  
 Theodore Metochites, 649–50, 666, 670

- Theodore of Cappadocia, 103  
 Theodore of Mopsuestia, 109  
 Theodore of Saccudion, 225  
 Theodore of Smyrna, 420  
 Theodore of Studios, 235  
 Theodore of Studios, monk, 224, 231–2, 235, 238, 240–2  
 Theodore of Syceon, hermit, 141  
 Theodore of Syracuse, Archbishop, 251  
 Theodore Padiates, 503  
 Theodore Palaeologus Cantacuzene, 696–7  
 Theodore Petraliphas, governor of Nicaea, 587  
 Theodore Rshuni of Armenia, prince, 166, 170, 171  
 Theodore Santabarenus, bishop of Euchaita, 278  
 Theodore Styppeiotes, 494  
 Theodore Svetoslav of Bulgaria, son of George Terter, 634, 638, 640–1, 647–8  
 Theodore Synadenus, 647, 650, 656–7, 659  
 Theodore Trithurius, ‘Sacellarius’, 161  
 Theodore Vatatzes, 485, 493  
 Theodore, ‘duke’, 164–5  
 Theodore, ‘Eparch’, 140  
 Theodore, ‘Master of Offices’, 162  
 Theodore, alleged plotter, 25  
 Theodore, archpriest, 182  
 Theodore, Bishop of Bostra, 108  
 Theodore, Bishop, 141, 149  
 Theodore, brother of Andronicus II, 630  
 Theodore, brother to Heraclius, 154–5, 156–7, 160  
 Theodore, envoy, 127  
 Theodore, general to Maurice, 132  
 Theodore, lord of Vodena, 579  
 Theodore, Palestinian monk, 247, 250  
 Theodore, Patriarch, 179, 183, 191–2  
 Theodore, Pope, 166–8  
 Theodore, Praetorian Prefect, 123  
 Theodore, presbyter, 183  
 Theodore, son of Andronicus Angelus, 517–18  
 Theodore of Montferrat, son of Andronicus II, 627, 639–40, 646  
 Theodore, son of John ‘the Bastard’, ruler of Thessaly, 625  
 Theodore, son of Manuel, 701  
 Theodore, son of Michael II, 591  
 Theodore of Mopsuestia, Bishop, 116  
 Theodoret of Cyrrhus, 109, 116  
 Theodoret, candidate for Metropolitan of Russia, 668–70  
 Theodoretus the Chamberlain, 296  
 Theodorianus, 505  
 Theodoric ‘Strabo’ (the Squinter), 68, 69, 70, 77  
 Theodoric II, 50, 61, 63, 64  
 Theodoric the Amal, 65, 77, 78–80, 9, 94–7, 110  
 Theodorocanus, Basil’s general, 242  
 Theodorus, eunuch, 383  
 Theodosia, 237  
 Theodosia, Empress, 238  
 Theodosian dynasty, 97  
 Theodosiopolis, 184, 209, 216, 301, 342, 353, 378, 399  
 Theodosius (son of Athaulf & Placidia), 47  
 Theodosius Babutzicius, 251, 253  
 Theodosius I, Emperor, 26–35, 38, 90  
 Theodosius II, Emperor, 39, 43, 48, 50, 51, 53, 54, 55, 56, 57, 58, 60, 62  
 Theodosius Matzukos, secretary of Andronicus Contostephanus, 518  
 Theodosius of Alexandria, 108  
 Theodosius of Ephesus, Archbishop, 208  
 Theodosius, adopted son of Belisarius, 103, 107, 108  
 Theodosius, son of Leo V, 241  
 Theodosius, general to Leo VI, 283  
 Theodosius, abbot of monastery on Mount Boradion, Bithynia, Patriarch, 513, 515–17  
 Theodosius, abbot, 71  
 Theodosius, Constans II’s brother, 173–4  
 Theodosius, Count, father of Theodosius I, 26, 27  
 Theodosius, King of Abasgia, 331  
 Theodosius, Maurice’s eldest son, 130, 133, 137–8  
 Theodosius, tax collector, Emperor (III), 195  
 Theodote, second wife of Constantine VI, 224–5, 233  
 Theodotus (monk), 186, 299  
 Theodotus II, Patriarch, 485, 487  
 Theodotus Melissenus, 238  
 Theodotus of Sicily, 243  
 Theodotus, Patriarch, 239, 241  
 Theodotus, Praefect, 108  
 Theognostus, 262  
 Theognostus, Byzantine, Metropolitan of Kiev, 650  
 Theognostus, Metropolitan of Russia, 668–9  
 Theoleptus of Philadelphia, Bishop, 624, 626, 634, 647  
 Theologus Korax, interpreter, 706  
 Theon, 48

- Theophanes, 'Monotres' (One –Ear), 202  
 Theophanes, 240, 247, 250  
 Theophanes, Bishop of Nicaea, 610  
 Theophanes, diplomat, 'paracoemomenus', 303, 306  
 Theophano Martinaces/Martinakiou, 277  
 Theophano, Empress, wife of Stauracius, 232, 235  
 Theophano, Empress, wife of Romanus II and Nicephorus II, 314–15, 317–1, 323, 333, 337  
 Theophano, Empress, wife of Leo VI, 284  
 Theophano, niece of John Tzimisces, 325  
 Theophilites, 258–9  
 Theophilus Eroticus, 364  
 Theophilus of Alexandria, 31, 33, 36, 39, 40, 41, 47, 100, 122, 127  
 Theophilus Palaeologus, 724  
 Theophilus, 'strategus', 223  
 Theophilus, 301  
 Theophilus, son of Michael I, 241, 245–6, 248–50  
 Theophylact, envoy of Manuel I, 495  
 Theophobus, 249, 251–2  
 Theophylact Lecapenus, Patriarch, son of Romanus I, 301–2, 311–13  
 Theophylact, Archbishop of Ochrid, 424  
 Theophylact, cousin of Irene, 227  
 Theophylact, orator, 424  
 Theophylact, Papal envoy, 297  
 Theophylact, secretary to George Muzalon, 492  
 Theophylact, senator, 292–3, 295  
 Theophylact, son of Count of Tusculum, Pope Benedict VIII, 347  
 Theorianos, 505  
 Theotistus, 254  
 Thephano, 234  
 Thephylact, son of Michael I, 235–6  
 Thera, 196, 198  
 Therapia, 724  
 Thermantia, wife of Honorius, 43, 44  
 Thermopylae, 36, 59, 106, 119, 340, 547, 717, 719  
 Thessalonica, 28, 31, 32, 52, 56, 85, 93, 106, 131, 147, 150, 153, 155, 173, 195, 196, 219, 233, 249, 282, 287, 314, 338–9, 348–9, 410, 431, 446, 483, 513, 519–20, 522, 547, 553, 555–7, 559, 563–4, 566–8, 577, 580–1, 584, 586–7, 593, 622, 633–4, 636–7, 639, 641–2, 646, 650, 653–4, 656–7, 659, 662–4, 666–7, 670, 679, 681, 686–8, 699, 700–1, 704, 707–10  
 Thessaly, 28, 29, 35, 79, 91, 286, 331, 333–4, 339, 343, 351, 364, 391, 415, 541, 560, 583, 593, 611, 614, 621, 642, 647, 653, 660, 664, 671, 692–4, 705, 729, 731  
 Theudebald, King, 115  
 Thibaut de Cepoy, Charles of Valois' Local commander, 642  
 Thierry of Walincourt, 568–9  
 Thimal the Mirdasid, 384  
 Thimal, brother of Nasr, 365  
 Thomas d'Autremencourt of Salona, 558  
 Thomas d'Autremencourt, 547  
 Thomas I, Patriarch of Constantinople, 140  
 Thomas II, Patriarch of Constantinople, 175  
 Thomas Morosini, Patriarch, 546, 553, 559  
 Thomas Palaeologus, 'Despot', brother of Constantine, 709–10, 719–20, 724, 727–33  
 Thomas Palaeologus, Praefect of City, 671  
 Thomas the Slav, rebel, 241–2  
 Thomas, governor of Cilicia, 484–5  
 Thomas, Praefect, 128  
 Thomas Ducas of Epirus, son of Nicephorus, 628–9, 632, 646  
 Thomokastron, fortress of, 657  
 Thoros of 'Armenia', Prince, 455, 462–3  
 Thoros II of Armenia, Prince, 472, 475, 477–8, 485, 491, 493–4, 498, 503  
 Thoros, Armenian ruler of Edessa, 433  
 Thrace, 7, 18, 23, 24, 27–9, 33, 35, 38, 57, 58, 59, 63–5, 68, 69, 70, 77, 81, 83, 85, 87, 90, 91, 92, 98, 107, 113–14, 119–20, 130–3, 136, 152–3, 155, 171, 172, 190, 193, 202, 213, 219, 236, 241–2, 273, 281, 297, 323–4, 372–3, 375, 390, 411, 414, 421, 424, 426, 431, 439, 458, 518, 520, 542, 553–5, 558, 568, 575, 585, 590, 594, 601, 603, 620, 635, 637, 640–1, 643–4, 647–8, 650–1, 658, 660–1, 664, 666, 668–9, 671–2, 696, 698, 702–3, 706, 724  
 Thraceseion, 193, 195, 213, 219, 238, 240, 252, 264, 511, 523–4, 526, 533, 536, 54, 548, 637  
 Thrasamund, King of the Vandals, 84, 94  
 Thuringians, 61  
 Tiber, River, 6, 111, 284  
 Tiber Island, 422  
 Tiberias, 328  
 Tiberius II, Emperor, 125–30  
 Tiberius III, Emperor, 187, 189, 190  
 Tiberius IV, Justinian II's son, 190, 192, 201  
 Tiberius, son of Constans II, 173, 179

- Tibur, 110  
 Tichomir, 365  
 Ticinum, 42, 44, 71  
 Tiflis, Zerbil/Yabghu, 156  
 Tiflis/Tbilisi, 390, 458  
 Tigris, River, 15, 22, 129–30, 162, 173, 248  
 Timasius, 32, 34, 36  
 Timotheus 'Aelurus', Patriarch of Alexandria, 64–5, 70, 95  
 Timotheus II, Patriarch of Constantinople, 91  
 Timotheus III ('Salophacialus'), Patriarch of Alexandria, 65, 78, 92  
 Timur 'The Lame' (aka 'Tamerlane'), ruler of Persia and Transoxiana, 697–9  
 Timurtash, 459–60  
 Tiridates II, King, 16  
 Tivoli 318, 478, 487, 490, 494  
 Tmutorokan, 354  
 Toghril Arslan, half-brother of Toghril Arslan and son of Kilij Arslan, 445, 458, 460  
 Toghril Shah, son of Kilij Arslan, 525  
 Toghril, Regent of Aleppo, 570  
 Toghtekin, 'atabeg' of Damascus, 426, 433, 441, 446, 450, 452, 454, 457, 463  
 Toghtekin, son of Tuctush, 428  
 Tokat, 525, 581  
 Toktu, 212  
 Tomi, 136  
 Tommaso Paruntucelli, Pope Nicholas V, 720  
 Tortona, 106  
 Tortosa, 436–7, 447  
 Toti of Nepi, Duke, 213  
 Totila, 108–17  
 Toulouse (Tolosa), 49, 63  
 Trajan, 26, 27, 126  
 Tralles, 13, 511, 617–18, 621  
 Trani, 403, 410, 468, 474, 490, 593, 604  
 Transoxiana, 207, 342, 355, 479  
 Transylvania/Transylvanians, 26, 373, 694, 716, 723  
 Trapezuntine, 312  
 Traulus, Thraclan 'Paulician' leader, 417  
 Trebizond, 103, 118, 168, 407, 442, 474–5, 510, 546, 571, 615, 722, 732–3  
 Treminthos, Cyprus, 529  
 Tribigild, 38  
 Tribonian, 98, 99–100  
 Tribunio Meno, Doge of Venice, 331  
 Tribunus, 110  
 Tricameron, 101  
 Trier, 12, 14, 17, 18, 30, 31, 32, 34  
 Trifolius, 32  
 Trikkala, Thessaly, 415, 672, 694; battle, 416  
 Tripoli, 162, 327–8, 338, 341–2, 436, 441, 443, 446–9, 480, 523, 525, 573, 730  
 Tripolitania/Tripolitanians, 67, 110, 141, 166, 174  
 Tripolos, 724  
 Tripsychos, 518  
 Tripsychus, adviser to Andronicus Angelus, 517  
 Tritheist, 123  
 Trnovo, Bulgaria, 522, 535, 556, 564, 572, 574–5, 591, 615, 677, 689, 692  
 Troad, the, 323, 448, 622, 636–7  
 Trocandrus, 70  
 Troia, 351, 366, 377, 390, 462, 464, 474; battle of, 364  
 Troodos Mountains, Cyprus, 529  
 Troyes, 6, 18  
 Trullan Hall, Sacred Palace, Constantinople, 179, 185, 513  
 Tryphon, Patriarch, 301  
 Tuctush, Emir, 406, 407, 419–20, 428  
 Tuctush II, son of Duqaq of Damascus, 441  
 Tughril, son of Arslan II of Iraq, 510  
 Tughril Beg the Seljuk, 363–4, 373, 381, 385, 387  
 Tughril of Iraq, Seljuk Sultan, 457, 486, 468–9  
 Tunis, 303, 608  
 Tunisia, 176, 227, 295, 297, 314 361, 401  
 Turahan Beg, Sultan Murad's general, 711, 724, 728  
 Turbessel, 469, 476, 484–5  
 Turcoman, 523, 580, 590, 593, 613, 617, 624, 627, 673, 635  
 Turcopuli, 604  
 Turkestan, 314, 344 487  
 Turkey/Turks, 123, 125–6, 132, 314, 328, 342, 352–3, 370, 373–4, 376, 378, 380, 383–4, 386, 389–90, 395, 397, 399–401, 403–4, 408, 411, 433, 433, 439, 448, 453–4, 474, 476, 479–80, 482, 496, 510–13, 523, 573, 588, 594, 602, 621, 635–40, 642–4, 648–9, 651, 654, 656–7, 660–1, 663, 666, 670–2, 674–5, 679–81, 684, 688–9, 691–3, 696, 698, 702, 704–5, 707, 725, 691–3, 696, 698, 715–18, 720, 724, 726, 728, 730–2  
 Turuhan Beg, Turkish general, 707  
 Tuscany, 108, 116, 384, 408, 415, 471  
 Tusculum dynasty, 347, 374, 384  
 Tusculum, 484, 490  
 Tutan Shah, brother of Saladin, governor of Egypt, 508  
 Tuzun, chief minister, 308



- Tyana, 191, 231, 247  
 Tyrach, 372  
 Tyragion, 454  
 Tyre, 12, 92, 162, 340, 398, 450, 460, 503,  
     524–5, 530, 558  
 Tyrpaeum, 401  
 Tzachas of Smyrna, 'Emir', 413, 419, 422–6, 432  
 Tzani, 65, 119  
 Tzath, 94  
 Tzelgu, Pecheneg chieftain, 421  
 Tzibritze Pass, 511  
 Tzibus, 107  
 Tzittus, 140  
 Tzurolon, 132, 236, 412, 423, 536, 546, 577,  
     579, 585
- Ubaidullah 'Al-Mahdi', Fatimid Caliph, 291,  
     295, 297, 303  
 Urbano Allucingoli, Pope Lucius III, 515  
 Ujayf, general 247  
 Uldin the Hun, 38, 44  
 Ulfila the Goth, 46  
 Ulfilas, Bishop, 14  
 Ullais, battle of, 160  
 Umar of Aydin, 653  
 Umberto Crivelli, Pope Urban III, 521  
 Umbria, 117 Northern, 116  
 Umur of Aydin, 658, 660–1, 664, 655  
 Unur of Damascus, 474, 480, 484  
 Uqailid dynasty, 411  
 Uqba, 176  
 Uraias, 105, 106, 107  
 Urban II, Pope, 422–4, 426, 429, 434–5, 437  
 Urban III, Pope, 521, 524  
 Urban IV, 596  
 Urban IV, Pope, 601–3  
 Urban, Pope, 678, 681  
 Urban, Transylvanian cannoneer, 723–4  
 Urmia, Lake, 134, 156  
 Uros of Serbia, 'Grand Zupan', 486, 488, 497  
 Ursinicus, 20  
 Ursinus, Deacon, 24  
 Ursulus, 21  
 Utamish, 262  
 Utigurs, 119, 120  
 Uzes, 371, 391  
 Uzun Hassan, Emir of the White Sheep Turks  
     and ruler of Persia, Armenia and Azerbaijan,  
     730, 732
- Vaccarizza, battle of, 350  
 Vahan, Mamikond prince of Georgia, 79  
 Vahtang II of Iberia, 626, 628  
 Vakha, 474  
 Vakhtang 'Gorgesal' ('Wolf-Lion'), King of  
     Georgia, 86  
 Val Demone, 402  
 Valence, 47  
 Valens, 'Master of Soldiers', 45  
 Valens, Bishop of Mursa, 15, 17, 19, 20  
 Valens, Emperor, 23, 24, 25, 26, 27, 234  
 Valentine, Pope, 244  
 Valentinian I, Emperor (West), 16, 23–4, 26, 29  
 Valentinian II, Emperor (West), 26, 30, 31,  
     32, 33  
 Valentinian III, Emperor (West), 50, 51, 52,  
     55, 60, 63, 66  
 Valentinus, chief minister/commander-in-  
     chief to Constans II, 165–6  
 Valentinus, 127  
 Valerian, Justinian I's general, 114–15  
 Valerian, Emperor, 401  
 Valona, 416  
 Van, Lake, 130, 154, 300, 352, 375  
 Vandals, 54, 55, 58, 63, 64, 77, 65, 67, 77, 80,  
     94, 99, 101–2  
 Varangian Guard, 342, 375, 381, 383, 414–15,  
     441–2, 458, 488, 553–4, 557–8, 564, 575,  
     577, 579, 583, 595  
 Varangians, 342, 375, 381, 383  
 Varaz-Tirots, prince, 162  
 Vardan, King, 63  
 Vardar, River, 344, 431, 557, 590  
 Vardar valley 415  
 Varna, 180, 210, 528, 541, 677, 699, 718  
 Varronian, 23  
 Vasil Dgha, son of Kogh Vasil of Kaisun, 452,  
     455  
 Vasilopotamo, treaty of, 700  
 Vaspurakan, 326, 352–3, 356, 370  
 Vassily II of Moscow, Grand Duke, 691  
 Vassily III of Moscow, Grand Duke, son of  
     Grand Duke Ivan III of Moscow and  
     Zoe, 733  
 Vatatzes brothers, 516  
 Vatican 104, 255–7, 385, 422, 468, 490  
 Vatopedi monastery, 538  
 Vcherna valley, 348  
 Velbuzd, Bulgaria, 651, 672  
 Venice/Venetians, 107, 117, 123, 229, 232–3,  
     235–6, 251, 263, 337, 359, 414, 461–2, 498,  
     505–8, 510, 519, 522, 540, 542–3, 545, 547,  
     553–4, 557–8, 564, 575, 577, 579, 583, 595,  
     Venice, 601–2, 606, 618–19, 624, 632, 633,

- 636, 642–3, 649–50, 653–4, 660, 662, 664–5, 667–8, 653–4, 660, 662, 664–5, 667–8, 673, 676–8, 682, 684, 690–6, 698–9, 701–2, 706, 708, 713, 719, 724–5, 726–7, 732
- Venosa, Cathedral of, 386
- Vera monastery, 534
- Veria, 415
- Verina, Empress, 67, 69, 70, 77–8, 80
- Veroli, 506
- Verona, 40, 115
- Versincia, 225; battle of, 236
- Vetranio, 16, 17
- Vetrano, rebel Venetian commander, 554
- Vezelay, 480
- Via Egnatia, 348, 369, 414, 421, 430–1, 439, 482, 519–20, 534
- Viacheslav, son of Prince Yaroslav, 380
- Victor II, Pope, 381–3
- Victor III, Pope, 419–21
- Victor IV, Pope, 473, 494, 497
- Victor, 23, 27, 30, 32
- Vidin, 344, 676
- Vienne, 20, 33, 43, 46
- Vigilius, Pope and 'Apocrisarius, 100, 104, 105, 109, 111–17
- Viking, 362
- Villehardouin, 543, 546
- Viminiacum, 13, 57, 130
- Vinekh, 'Khan', 211–12
- Virgin Hodegetria monastery, 658, 663
- Virgin, Church of, Blachernae, 663
- Visigoths, 26, 33, 43, 45, 46, 47, 49, 50, 61, 64, 82, 89, 110, 115, 117, 123–4, 129–30, 149–50, 157
- Vitale Candiano, Doge of Venice, 331
- Vitale Falier, Doge of Venice, 417, 429
- Vitale II Michiel, Doge of Venice, 489
- Vitale Michiel, Doge of Venice, 429
- Vitalian, Count, 90–2, 93, 105, 106 111
- Vitalian, Pope, 172, 174, 176–7
- Vitalius, 110
- Viterbo, 404, 479
- Viterbo, 601, 606, 609, 612
- Vitislav, John Hunyadi's envoy to Adrianople, 717
- Vitus, 121
- Vivius, 65
- Vlachs, 391, 493, , 532, 536, 557
- Vlad, Prince of Wallachia, 'Dracul', 718
- Vladimir 'Monomakh', son of Vsevolod and Constantine IX's daughter, 376, 452–3, 458, 461
- Vladimir of Dioclea, 349
- Vladimir of Novgorod, Grand Prince of Russia, son of Prince Svytoslav, 325, 329–30, 335, 347
- Vladimir of Novgorod, son of Yaroslav, 369
- Vladimir, Khan of Bulgaria, 280, 282
- Vladimir, ruler of Zeta, 503
- Vladimir-Suzdal, 505
- Vladislav of Bohemia, 481, 499
- Vladislav, brother of King Stephen Radoslav of Serbia, 574
- Vodena, Macedonia, 348, 587, 589, 591
- Vojihna, Serb lord of Drama, 672
- Volhynia/Galicia, 380
- Volos, Gulf of, 447
- Volturno, River, 117
- Vsevolod, brother of Prince Andrei of Vladimir-Suzdal, 510
- Vsevolod, son of Prince Yaroslav, 372, 376, 380
- Vukasin of Prilep, 'Despot', 672, 680
- Walid, Caliph, 187–8, 190
- Walid II, Caliph, Hisham's nephew, 203–4
- Wallachia, 11, 128, 283, 421, 423, 500, 615, 674, 694, 703, 712, 717–18, 720
- Wallia, King of Visigoths, 48, 49, 50, 64
- Walrub, Count, envoy to Frederick, 526
- Walter 'the Penniless', 429–30
- Walter of Brienne, Duke of Athens, 642–4, 652–3
- Walter, son of Walter of Brienne, 652
- Wasif, 264
- Welf, Duke of Bavaria, 439
- Wibald of Stablo, 492
- William Brown, English minister in Sicily, 488
- William Conti, Latin Bishop of Sozopolis, 673
- William de Hauteville, Count of Apulia, 363, 369, 371, 384
- William de la Roche, 617
- William I of Sicily, 487, 489, 491, 493, 495–7, 502
- William II of Sicily, 502, 506, 508, 510, 518–19, 521, 525, 527
- William III of Sicily, 533–4
- William of Apulia, Count, 462
- William of Athens, Duke, 'bailli' of Achaia, 623, 625
- William of Bures, 457
- William of Champlitte, Lord of the Morea, 553, 556–7

- William of Grantmesnil, 435  
 William of Montferrat, 512  
 William of Montferrat, half-brother of Demetrius, 569  
 William of Montpellier, 513  
 William of Tyre, Archbishop, 503, 513  
 William Villehardouin, 601–3, 605–6, 608, 611, 615  
 William Visconti, envoy, 595  
 William, brother of Duke Manfred, 645  
 William, Count of Montferrat, 622  
 William, Count of Nevers, 439  
 William, Duke of Aquitaine, 439  
 William, elder son of Boniface, 557  
 William, nephew of Bohemund, 449  
 William, son of Count of Montferrat, 511, 513  
 William, son of Roger Borsa, 449  
 William, son of Roger II of Sicily, 485  
 William, younger brother of Geoffrey II of Villehardouin, 583–5, 589, 592–3, 596  
 William-Jordan of Cerdagne, Count, 443, 447  
 Witigis, King of Ostrogoths, 104, 105, 106  
 Wladyslaw Jagiellon of Poland, King, 695  
 Wladyslaw/Ladislas, King of Hungary and Poland, 715, 717–18  
 Worms, 374; Bishop of, 508  
  
 Xanthi, 570  
 Xerigordon, 430  
 Xerus, ex-prefect of Constantinople, 442  
 Xeuxippus Baths, Constantinople, 100  
 Xiphias, 'strategus' of Anatolicon, 353  
  
 Yaghi-Siyan of Antioch, 433–4  
 Yakub ibn Kiilis, chief minister, 328  
 Yakub Pasha, 689, 695  
 Yaqub 'the Brassworker', 274–5, 277  
 Yaqub Arslan the Danishmend of Sebastea, 494, 499  
 Yarmuk, the, battle of, 161  
 Yarmuk, River, 161, 457  
 Yaroslav of Galicia, 499–500  
 Yaroslav, Prince, governor of Novgorod, 349–50, 353–4, 371, 375, 380  
 Yasin, 156  
 Yazdagerd III, 'Great King', 160, 162–3  
 Yazdegerd I, 37, 43, 50, 65  
 Yazid I, Caliph, 176–7, 179, 181  
 Yazid II, Caliph, 193, 197–8  
  
 Yazid III, Caliph, 204  
 Yazid, brother of Muawiya, 162–3  
 Yazid, general, 232  
 Yemen, 95, 96, 124–5, 204, 509  
 Yolande, daughter of Frederick III of Sicily, 631  
 Yolande, daughter of William, Count of Montferrat, 622  
 Yolande, Latin Empress, sister of Emperor Henry, 563–5  
 Yolande/Irene, Empress, wife of Andronicus II, 634, 637, 639, 641, 646  
 Yuri 'Dolguruki' of Suzdal, brother of Mstislav, 461, 493  
 Yusuf, 'Emir' in Armenia, 256, 291  
 Yusuf, 389  
  
 Zabergan, 119  
 Zaccaria, 'Grand Constable', 693  
 Zaccaria, Archbishop, 701  
 Zacharias of Serbia, Prince, 295, 297–8  
 Zacharias, 'protospatharius', 186  
 Zacharias, Patriarch, 149  
 Zacharias, Pope, 203–7  
 Zacynthos, 436  
 Zaganos Pasha, 725, 731  
 Zagros Mountains, 162, 163, 247, 303  
 Zamnaxes, 94  
 Zampia, illegitimate daughter of Manuel, 696  
 Zante, 721  
 Zapetra, 274  
 Zara, 542–3  
 Zdeslav, Prince, 276  
 Zemlin, 429, 485, 500–1  
 Zengi of Mosul, 463–4, 468–9, 472–3, 475, 479–80  
 Zeno, Isaurian chieftain, 67, 68, Emperor, 70–1, 77–83  
 Zeno, Isaurian general, 59, 60  
 Zenonis, wife of Basiliscus, 70  
 Zerdana, 461  
 Zeta, 503  
 Zeus, 7  
 Zigana, Pass, 732  
 Zirid emirate, 396, 401  
 Zirids, 361  
 Ziyadat-Allah I of Tunisia, 'Emir', 244  
 Ziyadat-Allah III, 287, 290  
 Zobe monastery, Armeniacon, 220  
 Zoe Carbonopsina, 285, 287, 292–5  
 Zoe, daughter of Stylianus Zautzes, 277, 279, 284  
 Zoe, daughter of Thomas Palaeologus, 733

- Zoe, grand-daughter of Russian 'Grand Prince'  
Vladimir Monomakh, 361, 365–8, 370,  
375, 459
- Zompus Bridge, Anatolia, 405, 443–4, 446
- Zoroastrians, 50, 97
- Zosimus, Pope, 49
- Zotro of Benevento, 'Duke, 129
- Zsolt, son of Arpad of Hungary, 289
- Zubayr, 164–5, 172
- Zusti, Aldobrandino, 719